

Aruba 3810 / 5400R Management and Configuration Guide for ArubaOS-Switch 16.08



a Hewlett Packard
Enterprise company

Part Number: 5200-5491a
Published: January 2019
Edition: 2

Notices

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice. The only warranties for Hewlett Packard Enterprise products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. Hewlett Packard Enterprise shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Confidential computer software. Valid license from Hewlett Packard Enterprise required for possession, use, or copying. Consistent with FAR 12.211 and 12.212, Commercial Computer Software, Computer Software Documentation, and Technical Data for Commercial Items are licensed to the U.S. Government under vendor's standard commercial license.

Links to third-party websites take you outside the Hewlett Packard Enterprise website. Hewlett Packard Enterprise has no control over and is not responsible for information outside the Hewlett Packard Enterprise website.

Acknowledgments

Intel[®], Itanium[®], Pentium[®], Xeon[®], Intel Inside[®], and the Intel Inside logo are trademarks of Intel Corporation in the U.S. and other countries.

Microsoft[®] and Windows[®] are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Adobe[®] and Acrobat[®] are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Java[®] and Oracle[®] are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

UNIX[®] is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

Chapter 1 About this guide	33
Applicable products	33
Switch prompts used in this guide	33
Chapter 2 Time synchronization	34
NTP	34
NTP related commands	34
timesync	34
timesync ntp	35
ntp	35
[no] ntp	35
ntp enable	36
ntp authentication	37
ntp max-associations	38
ntp server	38
ntp server key-id	40
ntp ipv6-multicast	40
debug ntp	41
ntp trap	41
show ntp servers	42
show ntp statistics	42
show ntp status	43
show ntp authentication	43
show ntp associations	44
FQDN support for NTP servers	45
FQDN support for NTP servers	45
Elements of time synchronization	47
Time synchronization protocols	47
timesync	48
Setting a time protocol on the switch	48
The SNTP protocol	48
Selecting and configuring SNTP	49
Prerequisites	49
sntp	50
Enabling SNTP in Broadcast mode	51
Configuring SNTP in unicast mode	51
Viewing SNTP parameters	53
Viewing SNTP server addresses using the CLI	53
Enabling SNTP client authentication	54
Requirements to enable SNTP client authentication	54
Viewing all SNTP authentication keys that have been configured on the switch	55
SNTP poll interval	55
sntp poll-interval	55
SNTP unicast time polling with multiple SNTP servers	56
SNTP server priority	56
sntp server priority	56
SNTP software version	57
sntp server <version>	57
SNTP server address	57

ntp server <ip-address>.....	57
Adding SNTP server addresses.....	57
SNTP authentication trusted keys.....	58
trusted.....	58
Configuration files and the <code>include-credentials</code> command.....	58
Configuring the key-identifier, authentication mode, and key-value.....	59
ntp authentication.....	59
Configuring a key-id as trusted.....	60
Associating a key with an SNTP server.....	61
ntp server priority.....	62
Enabling and disabling SNTP client authentication.....	62
Viewing SNTP authentication configuration information.....	62
Viewing statistical information for each SNTP server.....	64
SNTP messages in the event log.....	65
Storing security information in the running-config file.....	66
The TimeP Protocol.....	66
Enabling TimeP mode.....	66
timesync timep.....	67
TimeP in DHCP mode.....	67
Enabling TimeP for DHCP.....	67
TimeP operation in manual mode.....	68
timesync timep.....	68
ip timep.....	68
Current TimeP configuration.....	69
show timep.....	69
show management.....	70
Change from one TimeP server to another.....	70
TimeP poll interval.....	70
ip timep.....	70
Disable time synchronization protocols.....	70
Disabling TimeP in manual mode.....	70
no ip timep.....	71
Disabling time synchronization.....	71
no timesync.....	71
Disabling timesync using the GUI.....	71
Disabling the TimeP mode.....	71
no ip timep.....	72
Disabling time synchronization without changing the SNTP configuration.....	72
timesync.....	72
Disabling SNTP mode.....	73
Disabling SNTP Mode.....	73
no sntp.....	73
Deleting an SNTP server.....	73
Disabling SNTP by deleting a server.....	74
Disabling time synchronization in DHCP mode by disabling the TimeP mode parameter.....	74
ip timep.....	74
Other time protocol commands.....	75
Show management command.....	75
show management.....	75
Show SNTP command.....	75
show sntp.....	75
Show TimeP command.....	77
show.....	77

Chapter 3 Resource usage..... 79

Viewing current resource usage.....	79
showquos.....	79
Viewing information on resource usage.....	80
When insufficient resources are available.....	81
Policy enforcement engine.....	81
Usage notes for show resources output.....	82

Chapter 4 Hardware components..... 84

Services.....	84
Show services.....	84
No parameters.....	84
show services.....	84
Show services locator.....	85
Show services device.....	86
show services device.....	86
Requesting a reboot.....	87
Services in Operator/Manager/Configure context.....	87
Services (operator).....	87
Services (manager).....	88
Services (configure).....	89
Enable or disable devices.....	90
no services.....	90
Accessing CLI-passthrough.....	90
Show services set locator module.....	91
command name.....	91
Reloading services module.....	91
command name.....	91
Connection to the application via a serial port.....	91
command name.....	92
Shutdown the services module.....	92
command name.....	92
Transceiver status.....	92
Operating notes.....	92
show interfaces transceivers.....	93
Configuring the type of a module.....	93
module type.....	93
Clearing the module configuration.....	94
Configuring transceivers and modules that have not been inserted.....	94
Transceivers.....	94
Modules.....	94
Clearing the module configuration.....	94
Power consumption.....	95
show system power-supply.....	95
Fans.....	98
show system.....	99
show system fans.....	100
show system power-supply.....	102
Fan failures and SNMP traps.....	106
System boot diagnostics.....	106
show system post.....	106
show system post member.....	107
show system post vsf member.....	108

Chapter 5 Port status and configuration..... 110

Viewing port status and configuration.....	110
show interfaces.....	110
Viewing transceiver information.....	112
The port VLAN tagged status.....	113
Dynamically updating the show interfaces command.....	114
command name.....	114
Customizing the show interfaces command.....	115
show interfaces custom.....	115
show interface smartrate.....	116
show interface port utilization	116
Enabling or disabling ports and configuring port mode.....	117
interface.....	117
Basic USB port commands.....	118
usb-port.....	119
show usb-port.....	119
Enabling or disabling flow control.....	119
interface flow-control.....	120
Configuring auto-MDIX.....	121
interface mdix-mode.....	121
show interfaces config.....	121
show interfaces brief.....	122
Configuring friendly port names.....	123
interface name.....	123
Configuring a single port name.....	123
Configuring the same name for multiple ports.....	123
Viewing friendly port names with other port data.....	124
show name.....	124
show interface.....	124
show config.....	124
Listing all ports or selected ports with their friendly port names.....	124
show name.....	124
Including friendly port names in per-port statistics listings.....	125
show interface.....	125
Searching the configuration for ports with friendly port names.....	127
show config.....	127
Configuring uni-directional link detection.....	127
interface link-keepalive.....	127
Enabling UDLD.....	128
Changing the keepalive interval.....	128
Changing the keepalive retries.....	129
Configuring UDLD for tagged ports.....	129
Viewing UDLD information.....	129
show link-keepalive.....	129
clear link-keepalive.....	130
Viewing summary information on all UDLD-enabled ports.....	130
Viewing detailed UDLD information for specific ports.....	130
Port status and Port parameters.....	131
Connecting transceivers to fixed-configuration devices.....	131
Error messages associated with the show interfaces command.....	133
Using pattern matching with the show interfaces custom command	134
Auto-MDIX configurations.....	134
Manual override.....	134
About using friendly port names.....	135
Configuring and operating rules for friendly port names.....	135
Uni-directional link detection (UDLD).....	136
Configuring UDLD.....	136

Prerequisites.....	137
Uplink Failure Detection.....	137
Configuration Guidelines for UFD.....	139
UFD enable/disable.....	139
uplink-failure-detection.....	139
UFD configuration.....	139
uplink-failure-detection track.....	139
show uplink-failure-detection.....	140
Port Shutdown with Broadcast Storm.....	141
Configuration Commands.....	141
fault-finder broadcast-storm.....	141
Viewing broadcast-storm configuration.....	142
show fault-finder broadcast-storm.....	143
Broadcast-storm event logs.....	145
Multicast Storm Control.....	146
Overview.....	146
fault-finder multicast-storm.....	146
fault-finder multicast-storm action.....	148
show running-config.....	149
show logging.....	150
Restrictions.....	150

Chapter 6 Power over ethernet (PoE/PoE+) operation..... 151

PoE	151
PoE terminology.....	151
Planning and implementing a PoE configuration.....	151
Power requirements.....	151
Assigning PoE ports to VLANs.....	152
Applying security features to PoE configurations.....	152
Assigning priority policies to PoE traffic.....	152
PoE operation.....	152
PoE configuration options.....	153
PD support.....	153
PoE power priority.....	154
Assigning PoE priority with two or more modules.....	154
About configuring PoE.....	154
Disabling or re-enabling PoE port operation.....	156
interface.....	157
Enabling support for pre-standard devices.....	157
power-over-ethernet.....	157
Configuring the PoE port priority.....	157
interface.....	157
Controlling PoE allocation.....	158
int.....	158
Manually configuring PoE power levels.....	159
Detection status: fault.....	160
Configuring PoE redundancy (chassis switches only).....	160
power-over-ethernet redundancy.....	160
Changing the threshold for generating a power notice.....	161
power-over-ethernet slot.....	161
Enabling or disabling ports for allocating power using LLDP.....	161
int poe-lldp-detect.....	161
Enabling PoE detection via LLDP TLV advertisement.....	162
lldp config.....	162
Negotiating power using the DLL.....	162

int poe-lldp-detect.....	162
Initiating advertisement of PoE+ TLVs.....	164
lldp config.....	164
Temporary PoE+ power drop.....	164
Viewing PoE when using LLDP information.....	165
show lldp config.....	165
Viewing the global PoE power status of the switch.....	167
show power-over-ethernet.....	167
Viewing PoE status on all ports.....	168
show power-over-ethernet.....	169
Viewing the PoE status on specific ports.....	170
show power-over-ethernet.....	170
Configuring thresholds for generating a power notice.....	173
PoE/PoE+ allocation using LLDP.....	173
LLDP with PoE.....	173
LLDP with PoE+.....	173
PoE+ with LLDP Overview.....	173
PoE allocation.....	174
Operation note.....	174

Chapter 7 Port trunking..... 175

Port trunking overview.....	175
Port trunk connections and configuration.....	175
Viewing and configuring port trunk groups.....	176
Viewing static trunk type and group for all ports or for selected ports.....	176
show trunks.....	176
Viewing static LACP and dynamic LACP trunk data.....	177
show lacp.....	177
Configuring a static trunk or static LACP trunk group.....	177
trunk.....	177
Removing ports from a static trunk group.....	178
no trunk.....	178
Enabling dynamic LACP trunk groups.....	178
interface lacp active.....	178
Remove ports from a dynamic LACP trunk group.....	179
no interface lacp.....	179
Set the LACP key.....	179
lacp.....	179
Specifying Minimum Active Links for LACP.....	180
lacp min-active-links.....	180
lacp enable-timer.....	181
show lacp min-active-links.....	182
Limitations.....	183
Viewing and configuring a static trunk group (Menu).....	183
Enable L4-based trunk load balancing.....	185
trunk-load-balance.....	185
Viewing trunk load balancing.....	186
show trunks.....	186
Operating notes.....	187
Distributed trunking.....	187
Configure ISC ports.....	187
switch-interconnect.....	187
Configuring distributed trunking ports.....	188
trunk.....	188
Configuring peer-keepalive links.....	188

distributed-trunking.....	189
Viewing distributed trunking information.....	189
show lacp distributed.....	189
show distributed-trunk.....	190
Viewing peer-keepalive configuration.....	191
Viewing switch interconnect.....	191
Port trunk operations.....	191
Fault tolerance.....	191
Trunk configuration methods.....	191
Dynamic LACP trunk.....	191
Dynamic LACP Standby Links.....	192
Viewing LACP Local Information.....	192
Viewing LACP Peer Information.....	192
Viewing LACP Counters.....	193
Using keys to control dynamic LACP trunk configuration.....	193
Static trunk.....	193
Operating port trunks.....	194
Show port-security log.....	196
Static or dynamic trunk group overview.....	197
Enabling a dynamic LACP trunk group.....	197
Dynamic LACP standby links.....	198
Viewing LACP local information.....	198
Viewing LACP peer information.....	199
Viewing LACP counters.....	199
Trunk group operation using LACP.....	200
Default port operation.....	202
LACP operating notes and restrictions.....	204
802.1X (Port-based access control) configured on a port.....	204
Port security.....	204
Changing trunking methods.....	204
Static LACP trunks.....	204
Dynamic LACP trunks.....	205
VLANs and dynamic LACP.....	205
Blocked ports with older devices.....	205
Spanning Tree and IGMP.....	206
Half-duplex, different port speeds, or both not allowed in LACP trunks.....	206
Dynamic/static LACP interoperation.....	206
Trunk group operation using the "trunk" option.....	206
Viewing trunk data on the switch.....	207
Outbound traffic distribution across trunked links.....	207
Trunk load balancing using Layer 4 ports.....	208
Distributed trunking overview.....	208
Distributed trunking interconnect protocol.....	210
Configuring distributed trunking.....	210
Configuring peer-keepalive links.....	211
Maximum DT trunks and links supported.....	212
Forwarding traffic with distributed trunking and spanning tree.....	213
Forwarding unicast traffic.....	213
Forwarding broadcast, multicast, and unknown traffic.....	214
IP routing and distributed trunking.....	215
Distributed trunking restrictions.....	217
Updating software versions with DT.....	218
Chapter 8 Port Traffic Controls.....	221
ICMP rate-limiting.....	221

Guidelines for configuring ICMP rate-limiting	221
Configuring ICMP rate-limiting	222
Using both ICMP rate-limiting and all-traffic rate-limiting on the same interface	223
Viewing the current ICMP rate-limit configuration	223
Operating notes for ICMP rate-limiting	224
ICMP rate-limiting trap and Event Log messages	225
Determining the switch port number used in ICMP port reset commands	225
Configuring inbound rate-limiting for broadcast and multicast traffic	226
Operating Notes	228
Guaranteed minimum bandwidth (GMB)	228
GMB operation	228
Impacts of QoS queue configuration on GMB operation	229
Configuring GMB for outbound traffic	230
Viewing the current GMB configuration	232
GMB operating notes	233
Impact of QoS queue configuration on GMB commands	233
Rate-limiting Unknown Unicast Traffic	233
rate-limit unknown-unicast in percent	233
rate-limit unknown-unicast in kbps	234
show rate-limit unknown-unicast	235
Jumbo frames	236
Operating rules	236
Jumbo traffic-handling	237
Configuring jumbo frame operation	238
Overview	238
Viewing the current jumbo configuration	238
Enabling or disabling jumbo traffic on a VLAN	240
Configuring a maximum frame size	240
Configuring IP MTU	241
SNMP implementation	241
Displaying the maximum frame size	241
Operating notes for maximum frame size	241
Troubleshooting	242
A VLAN is configured to allow jumbo frames, but one or more ports drops all inbound jumbo frames	242
A non-jumbo port is generating "Excessive undersize/giant frames" messages in the Event Log	242
Fault Finder	242
Fault Finder thresholds	243
Enabling Fault Finder	243

Chapter 9 Configuring for Network Management Applications..... 247

Configuring the switch to filter untagged traffic	247
ignore-untagged-mac	247
Viewing configuration file change information	247
show running-config	247
Minimal interval for successive data change notifications	249
setmib	249
Viewing the current port speed and duplex configuration on a switch port	249
show interfaces	250
Viewing the configuration	251
show running-config	251
RMON advanced management	251
rmon alarm	252
Configuring UDLD verify before forwarding	255

UDLD time delay	255
Restrictions	255
UDLD configuration commands	255
link-keepalive mode	256
show link-keepalive	256
RMON generated when user changes UDLD mode	257
MAC configurations	257
Configuring the MAC address count option	257
snmp-server mac-count-notify	257
Configuring the MAC address table change option	257
snmp-server mac-notify	258
Per-port MAC change options for mac-notify	258
mac-notify traps	258
Viewing the mac-count-notify option	259
show mac-count-notify	259
Viewing mac-notify traps configuration	261
show mac-notify traps	261
Configuring sFlow	261
sflow	262
sFlow Configuring multiple instances	263
Viewing sFlow Configuration and Status	263
show sflow agent	263
show snmpv3 user	265
Configuring SNMP	266
Network security notifications	266
SNMP traps on running configuration changes	266
Source IP address for SNMP notifications	267
Listening mode	267
Group access levels	267
SNMPv3 communities	269
SNMPv2c informs	269
SNMP notifications	269
Supported Notifications	270
Configuring SNMP notifications	270
SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c Traps	270
SNMPv3 users	277
Adding users	278
SNMP tools for switch management	278
SNMP management features	278
SNMPv1 and v2c access to the switch	279
SNMPv3 access to the switch	279
Enabling SNMPv3	280
Configuring users in SNMPv3	281
snmpv3 user	281
Switch access from SNMPv3 agents	281
snmpv3 enable	281
Restrict access from SNMPv3 agents	281
snmpv3 only	281
Restrict non-SNMPv3 agents to read-only access	282
snmpv3 restricted-access	282
Operating status of SNMPv3	282
show snmpv3	282
Non-SNMPv3 message reception status	282
show snmpv3 only	282
Non-SNMPv3 write message status	282
show snmpv3 restricted-access	282
Viewing and configuring non-version-3 SNMP communities (Menu)	282

SNMP trap receiver configuration	283
snmp-server host	283
SNMPv2c inform option	284
snmp-server host	284
Configuring SNMPv3 notifications (CLI)	285
SNMPv3 community mapping	288
snmpv3 community	288
Running configuration changes and SNMP traps	289
Startup configuration changes and SNMP traps	289
snmp-server enable traps startup-config-change	290
Source IP address for SNMP notifications	291
snmp-server response-source	291
snmp-server trap-source	292
SNMP replies and traps configuration	293
SNMP notification configuration	293
show snmp-server	293
Assign users to groups	294
snmpv3 group	294
snmp-server community	295
Community names and values	296
Enabling or disabling notification/traps for network security failures and other security events (CLI)	297
Viewing the current configuration for network security notifications (CLI)	298
Link-Change Traps	299
snmp-server enable traps link-change	299
Viewing SNMP notification configuration (CLI)	299
Listening mode	300
snmp-server listen	300
CDP configuration	301
CDP mode	301
cdp moden	301
CDPv2 for voice transmission	301
cdp mode pre-standard-voice	302
CDP operation on individual ports	303
cdp enable	303
CDP Operation	304
cdp run	304
CDP information filter	304
CDP switch configuration view	304
show cdp	304
CDP neighbors switch table view	305
show cdp neighbors	305
LLDP configuration	306
LLDP and CDP data management	306
LLDP and CDP neighbor data	306
CDP operations	307
LLDP	307
LLDP operations	308
Packet boundaries in a network topology	308
LLDP operation configuration options	308
Transmit and receive mode	309
Options for reading LLDP information collected by the switch	311
LLDP and LLDP-MED standards compatibility	311
Port trunking	311
IP address advertisements	311
Spanning-tree blocking	312
802.1X blocking	312

LLDP operation on the switch	312
Time-to-Live for transmitted advertisements	312
Delay interval between advertisements	312
Re-initialize delay interval	313
SNMP notification support	313
Changing the minimum interval	313
Basic LLDP per-port advertisement content	313
Port VLAN ID TLV support on LLDP	314
LLDP-MED	314
LLDP-MED classes	316
LLDP-MED operational support	316
Configuring per-port transmit and receive modes	316
lldp admin-status	317
Remote management address for outbound LLDP advertisements	317
lldp config ipAddrEnable	317
lldp config basicTlvEnable	318
Port speed and duplex advertisement support	318
lldp config dot3TlvEnable	319
Location data for LLDP-MED devices	319
lldp config medPortLocation	319
LLDP data change notification for SNMP trap receivers	320
lldp enable-notification	320
LLDP operation on the switch	321
lldp run	321
LLDP-MED fast start control	321
lldp fast-start-count	321
Changing the packet transmission interval	322
lldp refresh-interval	322
Changing the time-to-live for transmitted advertisements	322
lldp holdtime-multiplier	322
Delay interval	322
set mib lldpTxDelay.0	323
Changing the reinitialization delay interval	323
setmib lldpReinitDelay.0	323
PVID mismatch log messages	324
logging filter	324
Viewing port configuration details	324
show lldp config	324
Available switch information available outbound advertisements	325
show lldp info local-device	325
LLDP statistics	327
show lldp stats	327
Global LLDP, port admin, and SNMP notification status	329
show lldp config	329
LLDP-MED connects and disconnects—topology change notification	329
lldp top-change-notify	330
Device capability, network policy, PoE status and location data	330
Network policy advertisements	330
Policy elements	331
PoE advertisements	331
Location data for LLDP-MED devices	332
Viewing the current port speed and duplex configuration	334
Viewing LLDP statistics	334
LLDP over OOBM	334
LLDP operating notes	339
Advertisements currently in the neighbors MIB	340
show lldp info remote-device	340

PoE advertisements	341
show lldp info remote-device	342
show power	342
Overview	342
Commands	342
[no] lldp config basicTlvEnable management_addr	342
lldp config	343
Show commands	343
TVL configuration	344
VLAN ID TLV	344
lldp config dot1T1vEnable	344
Advertised TLVs	344
show lldp config	344
TLVs controlled by medTLvEnable	346
lldp config medTlvEnable	346
Generic header ID in configuration file	347
DHCP auto deployment	347
Add-Ignore-Tag option	347
Configuration commands for the add-ignore-tag option	348
Show logging commands for the add-ignore-tag option	348
Exclusions	348

Chapter 10 DHCPv4 server..... 349

Overview	349
IP pools	349
DHCP options	349
BootP support	349
Authoritative server and support for DHCP inform packets	349
Authoritative pools	350
Authoritative dummy pools	350
Change in server behavior	350
DHCPv4 configuration commands	351
DHCPv4 server	351
dhcp-server	351
DHCP address pool name	351
dhcp-server pool	351
Authoritative	353
DHCP client boot file	353
bootfile-name	353
DHCP client default router	353
default-router	353
DNS IP servers	353
dns-server	354
Configure a domain name	354
domain-name	354
Configure lease time	354
lease	354
NetBIOS WINS servers	354
NetBIOS node type	355
net bios-ode-type	355
Subnet and mask	355
network	355
DHCP server options	355
Configure DHCP server options	355
IP address range	357

range.....	357
Static bindings.....	357
static-bind.....	357
TFTP server domain name.....	357
tftp-server.....	358
Configure the TFTP server address.....	358
tftp-server.....	358
Number of ping packets.....	358
dhcp-server ping.....	358
Save DHCP server automatic bindings.....	359
dhcp-server database.....	359
DHCP server and SNMP notifications.....	359
snmp-server enable traps.....	359
Conflict logging on a DHCP server.....	359
dhcp-server conflict-logging.....	360
Enable the DHCP server on a VLAN.....	360
dhcp-server.....	360
Clear commands.....	360
clear dhcp-server conflicts.....	360
Reset all DHCP server and BOOTP counters.....	360
clear dhcp-server statistics.....	360
Delete an automatic address binding.....	361
clear dhcp-server statistics.....	361
Show commands.....	361
show dhcp-server.....	361
Event log.....	362
Event Log Messages.....	362

Chapter 11 DHCPv6 server..... 365

DHCPv6 hardware address.....	365
DHCPv6 snooping and relay.....	365
dhcpv6-snooping.....	365
dhcpv6 snooping trust.....	366
dhcpv6-snooping authorized-server.....	367
ddhcpv6-snooping database file.....	367
dhcpv6-snooping max-bindings.....	368
dhcpv6-relay option 79.....	369
snmp-server enable traps dhcpv6-snooping.....	369
clear dhcpv6-snooping stats.....	370
debug security dhcpv6-snooping.....	370
ipv6 source-lockdown ethernet.....	370
ipv6 source-binding.....	372
snmp-server enable traps dyn-ipv6-lockdown.....	373
debug security dynamic-ipv6-lockdown.....	374
Show commands for DHCPv6-snooping.....	374
show dhcpv6-snooping.....	374
show dhcpv6 snooping bindings.....	374
show dhcpv6 snooping statistics.....	374
show ipv6 source-lockdown.....	375
show ipv6 source-lockdown status.....	375
show snmp-server traps.....	376
show distributed-trunking consistency-parameters.....	376
show distributed-trunking consistency-parameters.....	377
show dhcpv6 relay.....	378
DHCPv6 event log.....	379

Chapter 12 Zero Touch Provisioning with AirWave and Central..... 385

ZTP with AirWave.....	385
DHCP-based ZTP with AirWave.....	385
Configuring DHCP-based ZTP with AirWave.....	386
DHCP server configuration for DHCP based ZTP.....	387
Limitations.....	401
Best Practices.....	401
Configure AirWave details manually.....	401
amp-server.....	402
debug ztp.....	404
Stacking support.....	404
Disabling ZTP.....	404
Image Upgrade.....	405
Troubleshooting.....	405
AMP server messages.....	405
Activate based ZTP with AirWave.....	405
Configuring Activate-based ZTP with AirWave.....	405
IPsec for AirWave Connectivity.....	406
Overview.....	406
IPsec for Management Traffic.....	406
IPsec Tunnel Establishment.....	407
IPsec Tunnel Failures.....	408
IPsec tunnel to secondary controller.....	408
AirWave IP after discovery.....	411
Configuring the Aruba controller.....	411
AirWave Controller IP configuration commands.....	411
aruba-vpn type.....	411
Show commands.....	412
show aruba-vpn.....	412
show ip route.....	413
show interfaces tunnel aruba-vpn.....	413
show crypto-ipsec sa.....	414
show running-configuration.....	415
ZTP with Aruba Central.....	416
LED Blink feature.....	417
Aruba Central Configuration manually.....	417
Activating ArubaOS-Switch Firmware Integration.....	417
activate software-update enable.....	418
activate software-update check.....	418
activate software-update update.....	419
show activate software-update.....	419
Show activate provision.....	420
aruba-central.....	422
Troubleshooting.....	423
Show aruba-central.....	423
Error reason for Aruba Central.....	424
debug ztp.....	426
Error Reason log for Activate Provision.....	426
Stacking support.....	427
Fault finder switch events.....	427
interface device-type network-device.....	427
HTTP Proxy support with ZTP overview.....	428
e Proxy Configuration.....	428

proxy server.....	434
proxy exception ip host.....	434
show proxy config.....	435
Chapter 13 File transfers.....	436
File transfer methods.....	436
TFTP.....	436
Prerequisites.....	436
Downloading switch software.....	436
copy tftp flash.....	437
boot system flash.....	437
reload.....	437
Enabling tftp.....	438
tftp.....	438
Automatic software download from a TFTP server.....	439
auto-tftp.....	439
Downloading to primary flash using TFTP.....	440
Disabling TFTP and auto-TFTP for enhanced security.....	441
Enabling SSH V2 (required for SFTP).....	443
Authentication.....	444
Troubleshooting SSH, SFTP, and SCP operations.....	445
Use USB to transfer files to and from the switch.....	446
SCP and SFTP.....	447
Enabling SCP and SFTP.....	447
Using SCP and SFTP.....	447
Xmodem.....	448
Downloading software using Xmodem.....	448
Prerequisites.....	449
Downloading to Flash.....	449
Downloading to primary flash using Xmodem (Menu).....	450
USB.....	451
Downloading switch software using USB.....	451
Enable or disable the USB port.....	451
Prerequisites.....	451
USB port status.....	451
show usb-port.....	451
.....	452
Switch to Switch.....	452
Switch-to-switch download.....	452
OS download from another switch.....	452
copy tftp flash.....	453
copy tftp flash os.....	453
Copying.....	454
Software images.....	454
copy flash tftp.....	454
copy flash xmodem.....	454
Copying using USB.....	455
Copying diagnostic data to a remote host, USB device, PC, or UNIX workstation.....	455
copy command-output.....	455
copy command-log.....	456
copy event-log.....	456
copy crash-data.....	457
copy crash-data (redundant management).....	457
copy crash-log.....	458
copy crash-log (redundant management).....	458

copy core-dump (standby module).....	459
copy fdr-log.....	460
Copy diagnostic data to a remote host, USB device, PC or UNIX workstation.....	460
Transferring.....	460
Switch configuration transfer.....	461
TFTP.....	461
Xmodem.....	463
USB.....	464
ACL command file transfer.....	465
tftp.....	465
Xmodem.....	466
USB.....	467
Switch software download.....	467
Switch software download rules.....	468
TFTP download failures.....	468
Single copy command.....	469
copy source.....	469
copy crash-files.....	472
copy crash-files member.....	472
copy crash-files crash-file-options.....	473

Chapter 14 Monitoring and Analyzing Switch Operation..... 474

Switch and network operations.....	474
Status and counters data.....	474
show system.....	474
chassislocate.....	475
Chassislocate at startup.....	476
Collecting processor data with the task monitor.....	477
task-monitor cpu.....	477
Switch management address information access.....	477
show management.....	477
Component information views.....	477
show modules.....	478
Compatibility mode for v2 zl and zl modules.....	479
allow-v1-modules.....	479
Port status.....	480
show interfaces brief.....	480
Accessing port and trunk group statistics.....	480
Trunk bandwidth utilization.....	480
show interfaces.....	480
show interfaces trunk-utilization.....	482
Statistic interactions of interface counters.....	483
Reset port counters.....	484
clear statics.....	484
MAC address tables.....	485
MAC address views and searches.....	485
show mac-address.....	485
show mac-add detail.....	486
show mac-address <MAC-ADDRESS> detail.....	487
Using the menu to view and search MAC addresses.....	487
Finding the port connection for a specific device on a VLAN.....	488
Viewing and searching port-level MAC addresses.....	489
Determining whether a specific device is connected to the selected port.....	490
MSTP data.....	490
show spanning-tree.....	490

IP IGMP status.....	491
show ip igmp.....	491
VLAN information.....	493
show vlan.....	493
WebAgent status information.....	495
Configuring local mirroring.....	495
Local mirroring sessions.....	496
Traffic-direction criteria.....	496
interface monitor all.....	496
ACL criteria for inbound traffic — deprecated.....	496
interface monitor ip.....	497
Mirror policy for inbound traffic.....	497
class [ipv4 ipv6].....	497
policy mirror.....	497
MAC-based criteria to select traffic.....	497
monitor mac.....	497
Remote mirroring destination on a remote switch.....	498
Remote mirroring destination on a local switch.....	498
mirror remote ip.....	498
Local mirroring destination on the local switch.....	498
mirror port.....	498
Monitored traffic.....	498
interface.....	499
monitor all.....	499
service-policy.....	499
Configuring local mirroring (Menu).....	499
Destination mirror on a remote switch.....	501
mirror endpoint.....	501
Source mirror on the local switch.....	502
mirror remote ip.....	502
Traffic-direction criteria.....	502
Configure ACL criteria to select inbound.....	502
interface monitor ip access-group.....	502
Mirror policy for inbound traffic.....	502
class [ipv4 ipv6].....	502
policy mirror.....	503
Configuring a destination switch in a remote mirroring session.....	503
Configuring a source switch in a local mirroring session.....	504
Configuring a source switch in a remote mirroring session.....	504
Selecting all traffic on a port interface for mirroring according to traffic direction.....	506
Selecting all traffic on a VLAN interface for mirroring according to traffic direction.....	507
Configuring a MAC address to filter mirrored traffic on an interface.....	507
Configuring classifier-based mirroring.....	508
Applying a mirroring policy on a port or VLAN interface.....	510
Viewing a classifier-based mirroring configuration.....	510
Viewing all mirroring sessions configured on the switch.....	511
Viewing the remote endpoints configured on the switch.....	512
Viewing the mirroring configuration for a specific session.....	513
Viewing a remote mirroring session.....	514
Viewing a MAC-based mirroring session.....	515
Viewing a local mirroring session.....	515
Viewing information on a classifier-based mirroring session.....	516
Viewing information about a classifier-based mirroring configuration.....	516
Viewing information about a classifier-based mirroring configuration.....	517
Viewing information about statistics on one or more mirroring policies.....	517
Viewing resource usage for mirroring policies.....	518
Viewing the mirroring configurations in the running configuration file.....	519

Compatibility mode.....	520
Port and trunk group statistics and flow control status.....	521
Traffic mirroring overview.....	521
Mirroring overview.....	521
Mirroring destinations.....	522
Mirroring sources and sessions.....	522
Mirroring sessions.....	522
Mirroring session limits.....	523
Selecting mirrored traffic.....	523
Mirrored traffic destinations.....	523
Local destinations.....	523
Remote destinations.....	524
Monitored traffic sources.....	524
Criteria for selecting mirrored traffic.....	524
Mirroring configuration.....	524
Remote mirroring endpoint and intermediate devices.....	525
Migration to release K.12.xx.....	525
Bootimg from software versions earlier than K.12.xx.....	525
Maximum supported frame size.....	525
Frame truncation.....	525
Migration to release K.14.01 or greater.....	526
Using the Menu to configure local mirroring.....	526
Menu and WebAgent limits.....	526
Remote mirroring overview.....	527
Quick reference to remote mirroring setup.....	527
High-level overview of the mirror configuration process.....	528
Determine the mirroring session and destination.....	528
For a local mirroring session.....	528
For a remote mirroring session.....	528
Configure a mirroring destination on a remote switch.....	528
Configure a destination switch in a remote mirroring session.....	529
Configure a mirroring session on the source switch.....	529
Configure a source switch in a remote mirroring session.....	529
Configure the monitored traffic in a mirror session.....	529
Traffic selection options.....	529
Mirroring-source restrictions.....	530
About selecting all inbound/outbound traffic to mirror.....	530
Untagged mirrored packets.....	530
About using SNMP to configure no-tag-added.....	531
Operating notes.....	531
About selecting inbound traffic using an ACL (deprecated).....	532
About selecting inbound/outbound traffic using a MAC address.....	532
About selecting inbound traffic using advanced classifier-based mirroring.....	533
Classifier-based mirroring configuration.....	534
Classifier-based mirroring restrictions.....	536
About applying multiple mirroring sessions to an interface.....	537
Mirroring configuration examples.....	538
Maximum supported frame size.....	542
Enabling jumbo frames to increase the mirroring path MTU.....	542
Effect of downstream VLAN tagging on untagged, mirrored traffic.....	543
Operating notes for traffic mirroring.....	543
Troubleshooting traffic mirroring.....	545
Chapter 15 Virtual Technician.....	546
Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP).....	546

show cdp traffic.....	546
clear cdp counters.....	546
show cdp neighbors detail.....	547
Enable/Disable debug tracing for MOCANA code.....	547
debug security.....	547
User diagnostic crash via Front Panel Security (FPS) button.....	547
front-panel-security password-clear.....	548
front-panel-security diagnostic-reset.....	548
show front-panel-security.....	549
Diagnostic table.....	550
Validation rules.....	551
FPS Error Log.....	551
User initiated diagnostic crash via the serial console.....	553
front-panel-security diagnostic-reset serial-console.....	553
Serial console error messages.....	554

Chapter 16 Troubleshooting.....555

Overview.....	555
Troubleshooting approaches.....	555
Browser or Telnet access problems.....	556
Cannot access the WebAgent.....	556
Cannot Telnet into the switch console from a station on the network.....	556
Unusual network activity.....	557
General problems.....	557
The network runs slow; processes fail; users cannot access servers or other devices.....	557
Duplicate IP addresses.....	557
Duplicate IP addresses in a DHCP network.....	557
The switch has been configured for DHCP/Bootp operation, but has not received a DHCP or Bootp reply.....	558
802.1Q Prioritization problems.....	558
Ports configured for non-default prioritization (level 1 to 7) are not performing the specified action.....	558
Addressing ACL problems.....	558
ACLs are properly configured and assigned to VLANs, but the switch is not using the ACLs to filter IP layer 3 packets.....	558
The switch does not allow management access from a device on the same VLAN.....	559
Error (Invalid input) when entering an IP address.....	559
Apparent failure to log all "deny" matches.....	559
The switch does not allow any routed access from a specific host, group of hosts, or subnet.....	560
The switch is not performing routing functions on a VLAN.....	560
Routing through a gateway on the switch fails.....	560
IGMP-related problems.....	561
IP multicast (IGMP) traffic that is directed by IGMP does not reach IGMP hosts or a multicast router connected to a port.....	561
IP multicast traffic floods out all ports; IGMP does not appear to filter traffic.....	561
LACP-related problems.....	561
Unable to enable LACP on a port with the <code>interface <port-number> lacp</code> command.....	562
Port-based access control (802.1X)-related problems.....	562
The switch does not receive a response to RADIUS authentication requests.....	562
The switch does not authenticate a client even though the RADIUS server is properly configured and providing a response to the authentication request.....	562
During RADIUS-authenticated client sessions, access to a VLAN on the port used for the client sessions is lost.....	562

The switch appears to be properly configured as a supplicant, but cannot gain access to the intended authenticator port on the switch to which it is connected.....	563
The supplicant statistics listing shows multiple ports with the same authenticator MAC address.....	563
The <code>show port-access authenticator <port-list></code> command shows one or more ports remain open after they have been configured with <code>control unauthorized</code>	563
RADIUS server fails to respond to a request for service, even though the server's IP address is correctly configured in the switch.....	563
The authorized MAC address on a port that is configured for both 802.1X and port security either changes or is re-acquired after execution of <code>aaa port-access authenticator <port-list> initialize</code>	564
A trunked port configured for 802.1X is blocked.....	564
QoS-related problems.....	564
Loss of communication when using VLAN-tagged traffic.....	564
Radius-related problems.....	564
The switch does not receive a response to RADIUS authentication requests.....	564
RADIUS server fails to respond to a request for service, even though the server's IP address is correctly configured in the switch.....	565
MSTP and fast-uplink problems.....	565
Broadcast storms appearing in the network.....	565
STP blocks a link in a VLAN even though there are no redundant links in that VLAN.....	565
Fast-uplink troubleshooting.....	566
SSH-related problems.....	566
Switch access refused to a client.....	566
Executing IP SSH does not enable SSH on the switch.....	566
Switch does not detect a client's public key that does appear in the switch's public key file (<code>show ip client-public-key</code>)	566
An attempt to copy a client public-key file into the switch has failed and the switch lists one of the following messages.....	566
Client ceases to respond ("hangs") during connection phase.....	567
TACACS-related problems.....	567
Event Log.....	567
All users are locked out of access to the switch.....	567
No communication between the switch and the TACACS+ server application.....	567
Access is denied even though the username/password pair is correct.....	568
Unknown users allowed to login to the switch.....	568
System allows fewer login attempts than specified in the switch configuration.....	568
TimeP, SNTP, or Gateway problems.....	568
The switch cannot find the time server or the configured gateway.....	568
VLAN-related problems.....	568
Monitor port.....	568
None of the devices assigned to one or more VLANs on an 802.1Q-compliant switch are being recognized.....	569
Link configured for multiple VLANs does not support traffic for one or more VLANs.....	569
Duplicate MAC addresses across VLANs.....	569
Fan failure.....	570
Mitigating flapping transceivers.....	570
Fault Finder thresholds.....	571
Viewing transceiver information.....	574
Viewing information about transceivers (CLI).....	576
MIB support.....	576
Viewing transceiver information.....	576
Information displayed with the detail parameter.....	577
Viewing transceiver information for copper transceivers with VCT support.....	581
Testing the Cable.....	581

Using the Event Log for troubleshooting switch problems	583
Event Log entries	583
Using the Menu	584
Using the CLI	585
Clearing Event Log entries	586
Turning event numbering on	586
Using log throttling to reduce duplicate Event Log and SNMP messages	586
Log throttle periods	586
Example: of event counter operation	588
Reporting information about changes to the running configuration	588
Debug/syslog operation	589
Debug/syslog messaging	589
Hostname in syslog messages	589
Logging origin-id	590
Viewing the identification of the syslog message sender	592
SNMP MIB	593
Debug/syslog destination devices	593
Debug/syslog configuration commands	594
Configuring debug/syslog operation	594
Viewing a debug/syslog configuration	595
Debug command	597
Debug messages	598
Debug destinations	598
Logging command	598
Configuring a syslog server	599
Adding a description for a Syslog server	602
Adding a priority description	602
Configuring the severity level for Event Log messages sent to a syslog server	603
Configuring the system module used to select the Event Log messages sent to a syslog server	603
Enabling local command logging	604
Operating notes for debug and Syslog	604
Diagnostic tools	605
Port auto-negotiation	605
Ping and link tests	605
Ping test	605
Link test	605
Executing ping or link tests (WebAgent)	606
Testing the path between the switch and another device on an IP network	606
Issuing single or multiple link tests	607
Tracing the route from the switch to a host address	607
Halting an ongoing traceroute search	608
A low maxttl causes traceroute to halt before reaching the destination address	608
If a network condition prevents traceroute from reaching the destination	608
Viewing switch configuration and operation	609
Viewing the startup or running configuration file	609
Viewing the configuration file (WebAgent)	609
Viewing a summary of switch operational data	609
Saving show tech command output to a text file	610
Viewing more information on switch operation	611
Searching for text using pattern matching with show command	612
Displaying the information you need to diagnose problems	613
Restoring the factory-default configuration	614
Resetting to the factory-default configuration	614
Using the CLI	614
Using Clear/Reset	615
Restoring a flash image	615

Recovering from an empty or corrupted flash state.....	615
DNS resolver.....	617
Basic operation.....	617
Configuring and using DNS resolution with DNS-compatible commands.....	618
Configuring a DNS entry.....	619
Using DNS names with ping and traceroute: Example:.....	620
Viewing the current DNS configuration.....	621
Operating notes.....	622
Event Log messages.....	622
Chapter 17 Job Scheduler.....	623
Job Scheduler.....	623
Commands.....	623
Job at delay enable disable	623
Show job.....	624
Show job <Name>.....	625
Chapter 18 Configuration backup and restore without reboot.....	626
Overview.....	626
Benefits of configuration restore without reboot.....	626
Recommended scenarios.....	626
Use cases.....	626
Switching to a new configuration.....	627
Rolling back to a stable configuration using job scheduler.....	628
Commands used in switch configuration restore without reboot.....	629
Configuration backup.....	629
cfg-backup.....	630
show config files.....	630
Configuration restore without reboot	632
cfg-restore.....	632
Force configuration restore.....	634
cfg-restore non-blocking.....	635
cfg-restore recovery-mode.....	636
cfg-restore verbose.....	638
cfg-restore config_bkp.....	639
Configuration restore with force option.....	640
System reboot commands.....	641
Configuration restore without force option.....	642
show cfg-restore status.....	642
Viewing the differences between a running configuration and a backup configuration.....	644
Show commands to show the SHA of a configuration.....	646
show hash.....	646
Scenarios that block the configuration restoration process.....	647
Limitations.....	647
Blocking of configuration from other sessions.....	647
Troubleshooting and support.....	648
debug cfg-restore.....	648
Chapter 19 Virtual Switching Framework (VSF).....	649
Overview of VSF.....	649
Benefits of VSF.....	650
Member roles.....	650
Commander.....	650

Standby	650
Management module	650
VSF member ID	651
VSF link	651
vsf member link	651
Validation rules for VSF member	652
Physical VSF ports	653
VSF domain ID	653
VSF split	654
VSF merge	654
Member priority	654
Interface naming conventions	654
Running-configuration synchronization	655
VSF deployment methods	655
Discovered configuration mode procedure	655
Provisioned configuration mode procedure	655
Configuration commands	656
copy core-dump	656
copy crash-data	656
copy crash-files	656
copy crash-log vsf-member	657
copy fdr-log	657
erase fdr-log vsf	658
power-over-ethernet vsf-member	658
redundancy switchover	659
snmp-server enable traps vsf	659
Validation rules	659
vsf domain	659
Validation rules	659
vsf enable	659
vsf disable	660
Validation rules	660
vsf member reboot	660
vsf member remove	661
Validation rules	661
vsf member shutdown	662
Validation rules	662
vsf member priority	663
vsf member type	663
Validation rules	664
Show commands	664
show vsf	664
Validation rules	665
show vsf link	665
show vsf member	666
show system information vsf member	667
show system chassislocate	668
show boot-history	669
show system temperature	669
show system fans	670
show CPU	671
show CPU process slot	672
show modules	673
show power-over-ethernet	675
show system power-supply	676
OOBM-MAD commands	680
vsf oobm-mad	680

Validation rules	680
oobm vsf member	680
oobm vsf member interface speed-duplex	681
show oobm vsf member	682
show oobm ip	682
show oobm discovery	683
show running-config oobm	684
show vsf trunk-designated-forwarder	684
Validation rules	685
LLDP-MAD	685
VSF split and MAD operation	685
MAD readiness check	686
vsf lldp-mad ipv4	686
Validation rules	687
show vsf lldp-mad	687
VSF re-join after a split	688
Mad assist device requirements	688
Limitations of MAD	688
VSF restrictions	688
Updates for a VSF virtual chassis	688
VSF Fast Software Upgrade	688
Upgrading the VSF stack software	689
vsf sequenced-reboot	689

Chapter 20 Simplifying Wireless and IoT Deployments..... 691

Overview	691
Auto configuring Aruba APs	691
Associating a device with a profile	691
device-profile name	691
device-profile type	693
device-profile type device-name	694
show device-profile	694
show command device-profile status	695
show device-profile config	696
show device-profile status	697
Default AP Profile	698
allow-jumbo-frames	698
Auto configuring IoT Devices	698
Creating a device identity and associating a device type	698
show device-identity	699
device-profile type-device associate	700
show device-profile config	700
show device-profile status	701
Support for Aruba device types	701
Isolating Rogue APs	702
Using the Rogue AP Isolation feature	702
rogue-ap-isolation	703
rogue-ap-isolation action	703
rogue-ap-isolation whitelist	704
clear rogue-ap-isolation	704
Feature Interactions	705
L3 MAC	705
Limitations	705
Troubleshooting	706
Switch does not detect the rogue AP TLVs	706

Show commands.....	706
Requirements.....	706
Limitations.....	706
Feature Interactions.....	707
Profile Manager and 802.1X.....	707
Profile Manager and LMA/WMA/MAC-AUTH.....	707
Profile manager and Private VLANs.....	707
MAC lockout and lockdown.....	707
LMA/WMA/802.1X/Port-Security.....	708
Troubleshooting.....	708
Dynamic configuration not displayed when using “show running-config”.....	708
The show run command displays non-numerical value for untagged-vlan.....	708
Show commands.....	709

Chapter 21 IP Service Level Agreement.....710

Overview.....	710
How IP SLA works.....	712
Configuration commands.....	712
[no] ip-sla <ID>.....	712
ip-sla <ID> clear.....	713
[no] ip-sla <ID> history-size.....	713
[no] ip-sla <ID> icmp-echo.....	714
[no] ip-sla <ID> udp-echo.....	714
[no] ip-sla <ID> tcp-connect.....	714
[no] ip-sla <ID> monitor threshold-config.....	714
[no] ip-sla <ID> monitor packet-loss.....	715
[no] ip-sla <ID> monitor test-completion.....	715
[no] ip-sla <ID> schedule.....	716
[no] ip-sla <ID> tos.....	716
[no] ip-sla responder.....	716
[no] ip-sla <ID> udp-jitter.....	716
[no] ip-sla <ID> udp-jitter-voip.....	717
Show commands.....	717
show ip-sla <ID>.....	717
show ip-sla <ID> history.....	718
show ip-sla <ID> message-statistics.....	718
show ip-sla <ID> results.....	719
show ip-sla <ID> aggregated-results.....	720
show ip-sla responder.....	721
show ip-sla responder statistics.....	721
show tech ip-sla.....	722
clear ip-sla responder statistics.....	724
Validation rules.....	724
Event log messages.....	727
Interoperability.....	728
IP SLA UDP Jitter and Jitter for VoIP.....	728
Overview.....	728
Significance of jitter.....	729
Solution components.....	729
SLA Measurements.....	729

Chapter 22 Dynamic Segmentation.....732

Definition of Terms.....	732
Overview.....	732

Benefits of Dynamic Segmentation.....	733
Use Cases.....	733
Users/Devices and Policy Enforcement Recommendations.....	735
Colorless Ports.....	736
Port-Based Tunneling.....	736
Configuring Port-Based Tunneling.....	737
Operating notes.....	738
Interaction table.....	738
Restrictions.....	739
Preventing double tunneling of Aruba Access Points.....	740
Preventing double tunneling using device profile.....	741
User-Based Tunneling.....	744
User Authentication Workflow.....	744
How it works.....	745
Licensing Requirements.....	746
Dependencies.....	747
Simplifying User-Based Tunneling with Reserved VLAN.....	748
Configuration and show commands.....	749
Commands to configure a tunneled node server on the switch.....	749
Show commands.....	753
Commands to configure VLAN ID in user role.....	759
Tunneled Node profile on a Mobility Controller and Cluster.....	760
Using User Roles with User-Based Tunneling.....	760
User-Based Tunneling in v6 networks.....	762
PAPI security.....	762
Protocol Application Programming Interface (PAPI).....	762
PAPI configurable secret key.....	762
papi-security.....	763
Frequently Asked Questions.....	764

Chapter 23 Cable Diagnostics.....767

Virtual cable testing.....	767
Cable Diagnostics.....	767
show cable-diagnostics.....	770
clear cable-diagnostics.....	770
Limitations.....	770

Chapter 24 Monitoring Static IP Devices.....772

ip client-tracker.....	772
ip client-tracker probe-delay.....	774

Chapter 25 Network Out-of-Band Management (OOBM)775

OOBM concepts.....	775
OOBM and switch applications.....	776
Example.....	776
OOBM Configuration.....	777
Entering the OOBM configuration context from the general configuration context.....	777
Enabling and disabling OOBM.....	777
Enabling and disabling the OOBM port.....	778
Setting the OOBM port speed.....	778
Configuring an OOBM IPv4 address.....	779
Configuring an OOBM IPv4 default gateway.....	779
Configuring an IPv6 default gateway for OOBM devices.....	780

oobm ipv6 default-gateway.....	780
oobm member ipv6 default-gateway.....	780
IPv6 default router preferences.....	781
ipv6 nd ra router-preference.....	781
OOBM show commands	782
Showing the global OOBM and OOBM port configuration.....	782
Showing OOBM IP configuration.....	782
Showing OOBM ARP information.....	783
show oobm ipv6.....	783
show oobm ipv6 (for stacked switches).....	783
show oobm ipv6 member (for stacked switches).....	784
show oobm ip detail (for stacked switches).....	785
Application server commands.....	786
Application client commands.....	786

Chapter 26 Websites..... 789

Chapter 27 Support and other resources..... 790

Accessing Hewlett Packard Enterprise Support.....	790
Accessing updates.....	790
Customer self repair.....	791
Remote support.....	791
Warranty information.....	791
Regulatory information.....	792
Documentation feedback.....	792

Chassis Redundancy (5400R Switches)..... 793

Overview of chassis management redundancy.....	793
Nonstop switching with redundant management modules.....	793
How the management modules interact.....	793
About using redundant management.....	793
Transition from no redundancy to nonstop switching.....	794
About setting the rapid switchover stale timer.....	794
About directing the standby module to become active.....	794
Preferred management module.....	794
redundancy active-management.....	795
redundancy preferred-active-management.....	796
show redundancy.....	797
Determining active module.....	798
Diagram of the decision process.....	799
Hotswapping management modules.....	799
Hotswapping out the active management module.....	800
Management module switchover.....	800
Events that cause a switchover.....	800
What happens when switchover occurs.....	801
When switchover will not occur.....	801
When a management module crashes while the other management module is rebooting.....	801
Hotswapping out the active management module.....	801
When the standby module is not available.....	801
Hotswapping in a management module.....	802
Software version mismatch between active and hotswapped module.....	802
Other software version mismatch conditions.....	802

About turning off redundant management.....	803
Disable management module redundancy with two modules present.....	803
Disable management module redundancy with only one module present.....	804
Active management module commands.....	804
Viewing modules.....	804
Syncing commands.....	804
Using the WebAgent for redundant management.....	805
Enabling or disabling redundant management.....	806
Transitioning from <code>no redundancy</code> to <code>nonstop switching</code>	809
Setting the Rapid Switchover Stale Timer.....	809
Directing the standby module to become active.....	810
Directing the standby module to become active.....	811
Setting the active management module for next boot.....	812
Resetting the management module.....	814
Viewing management information.....	815
Viewing information about the management and fabric modules.....	816
Viewing information about the redundancy role of each management module.....	816
Viewing which software version is in each flash image.....	817
Viewing system software image information for both management modules.....	817
Viewing the status of the switch and its management modules.....	818
Standby management module commands.....	818
Viewing redundancy status on the standby module.....	818
Viewing the flash information on the standby module.....	819
Viewing the version information on the standby module.....	819
Setting the default flash for boot.....	820
Bootting the active management module from the current default flash.....	820
<code>boot</code> command.....	821
<code>Boot</code> and <code>reload</code> commands with OSPFv2 or OSPFv3 enabled.....	823
Modules operating in nonstop mode.....	823
Additional commands affected by redundant management.....	823
Displaying module events.....	825
Viewing log events.....	825
Copying crash file information to another file.....	826
Viewing saved crash information.....	827
Enabling and disabling fabric modules.....	827
Nonstop switching features.....	828
Nonstop switching with VRRP.....	828
Example nonstop routing configuration.....	829
Nonstop forwarding with RIP.....	830
Nonstop forwarding with OSPFv2 and OSPFv3.....	830
Enabling nonstop forwarding for OSPFv2.....	831
Configuring restart parameters for OSPFv2.....	831
Viewing OSPFv2 nonstop forwarding information.....	832
Enabling nonstop forwarding for OSPFv3.....	832
About downloading a new software version.....	833
File synchronization after downloading.....	833
Potential software version mismatches after downloading.....	834
Downloading a software version serially if the management module is corrupted.....	835
Unsupported zl modules.....	835
Hot swapping of management modules.....	836
Rapid routing switchover and stale timer.....	836
Task Usage Reporting.....	836
Help text.....	836
<code>process-tracking help</code>	836
<code>show cpu help</code>	836
<code>show cpu process help</code>	837

Command tab.....	837
process-tracking.....	837
show cpu process.....	837
Command output.....	838
show cpu process.....	838
show cpu process slot <SLOT-LIST>.....	838
LACP-MAD Passthrough.....	840
Overview.....	840
LACP-MAD Passthrough Configuration.....	840
interface lacp.....	840
show lacp.....	841
clear lacp statistics.....	841
Smart Rate Technology.....	842
Show Smart Rate port.....	842
Rate-Limiting — GMB features when Fast-Connect SmartRate ports are configured.....	843
Error messages.....	844
Speed-duplex.....	844
Limitations on 5Gbps ports.....	844
Error messages.....	845
100 Mbps Support on Smart Rate ports.....	845
Overview.....	845
interface speed-duplex auto-100.....	845
show interfaces smartrate.....	846
show interface config.....	847
show running-config.....	847
Downgrade with CLI reboot command.....	847
Downgrade without CLI reboot command (power cycle).....	848
Networking 6th Generation Switch ASIC.....	849
Introduction.....	849
Commands.....	849
Configuration setup.....	849
V3 to V2 compatibility.....	850
allow-v2-modules.....	850
show running-config v3-specific.....	850
Show commands.....	851
Show system.....	851
Show system information.....	851
Show running configuration.....	852
Event logging.....	853
Version 2 — version 3 blade compatibility on the 5400R switch.....	853
Allow V2 command.....	853
Validation rules.....	853
Show commands.....	853
MAC Address Management.....	855
Overview.....	855
Determining MAC addresses.....	855
Viewing the MAC addresses of connected devices.....	855
Viewing the switch's MAC address assignments for VLANs configured on the switch.....	856

Viewing the port and VLAN MAC addresses.....	857
--	-----

Configuration backup and restore without reboot.....	860
---	------------

This guide provides information on how to configure, manage, and monitor basic switch operation.

Applicable products

This guide applies to these products:

Aruba 3810 Switch Series (JL071A, JL072A, JL073A, JL074A, JL075A, JL076A)

Aruba 5400R zl2 Switch Series (J9821A, J9822A, J9850A, J9851A, JL001A, JL002A, JL003A, JL095A)

Switch prompts used in this guide

Examples in this guide are representative and may not match your particular switch/environment. Examples use simplified prompts as follows:

Prompt	Explanation
switch#	# indicates manager context (authority).
switch>	> indicates operator context (authority).
switch(config) #	(config) indicates the config context.
switch(vlan-x) #	(vlan-x) indicates the vlan context of config, where x represents the VLAN ID. For example: switch(vlan-128) #.
switch(eth-x) #	(eth-x) indicates the interface context of config, where x represents the interface. For example: switch(eth-48) #.
switch-Stack#	Stack indicates that stacking is enabled.
switch-Stack(config) #	Stack(config) indicates the config context while stacking is enabled.
switch-Stack(stacking) #	Stack(stacking) indicates the stacking context of config while stacking is enabled.
switch-Stack(vlan-x) #	Stack(vlan-x) indicates the vlan context of config while stacking is enabled, where x represents the VLAN ID. For example: switch-Stack(vlan-128) #.
switch-Stack(eth-x/y) #	Stack(eth-x/y) indicates the interface context of config, in the form (eth-<member-in-stack>/<interface>). For example: switch(eth-1/48) #

Using time synchronization ensures a uniform time among interoperating devices. This helps you to manage and troubleshoot switch operation by attaching meaningful time data to event and error messages.

For successful time protocol setup and specific configuration details, contact your system administrator regarding your local configuration. The ArubaOS-Switch utilizes the Network Time Protocol (NTP)

NTP

NTP synchronizes the time of day among a set of distributed time servers and clients in order to correlate events when receiving system logs and other time-specific events from multiple network devices. NTP uses the User Datagram Protocol (UDP) as its transport protocol.

All NTP communications use Coordinated Universal Time (UTC). An NTP server usually receives its time from an authoritative time source, such as a radio clock or an atomic clock attached to a time server, and then distributes this time across the network. NTP is extremely efficient; no more than one packet per minute is necessary to synchronize two machines to within a millisecond of each other.

NTP uses a stratum to describe the distance between a network device and an authoritative time source:

- A stratum 1 time server is directly attached to an authoritative time source (such as a radio or atomic clock or a GPS time source).
- A stratum 2 NTP server receives its time through NTP from a stratum 1 time server.

Before synchronizing, NTP compares the time reported by several network devices and does not synchronize with one that is significantly different, even if it is a stratum 1.

You can use the security features of NTP to avoid the accidental or malicious setting of incorrect time. One such mechanism is available: an encrypted authentication mechanism.

Though similar, the NTP algorithm is more complex and accurate than the Simple Network Time Protocol (SNTP).



IMPORTANT:

Enabling this feature results in synchronizing the system clock; therefore, it may affect all sub-systems that rely on system time.

NTP related commands

The following commands allow the user to configure NTP or show NTP configurations.

timesync

Syntax

```
[no]timesync [timep | sntp | timep-or-sntp | ntp]
```

Description

Use this command to configure the protocol for network time synchronization.

Parameters and options

no

Deletes all timesync configurations on the device.

timep

Updates the system clock using TIMEP.

sntp

Updates the system clock using SNTP.

timep-or-sntp

Updates the system clock using TIMEP or SNTP (default).

ntp

Updates the system clock using NTP

timesync

```
Switch(config)# timesync
sntp           Update the system clock using SNTP.
timep          Update the system clock using TIMEP.
timep-or-sntp  Update the system clock using TIMEP or SNTP.
ntp            Update the system clock using NTP.
```

timesync ntp

Syntax

```
timesync ntp
```

Description

Use this command to update the system clock using NTP.

ntp

Syntax

```
[no] ntp [broadcast|unicast]
```

Description

This command selects the operating mode of the NTP client. Defaults to broadcast.

Parameters and options

no

Using **no ntp** disables NTP and removes all NTP configurations on the device.

no ntpExample

```
switch(config)# no ntp
This will delete all NTP configurations on this device. Continue [y/n]?
```

broadcast

Sets ntp client to operate in broadcast mode.

unicast

Sets ntp client to operate in unicast mode.

[no] ntp

This command disables NTP and removes all NTP configurations on the device.

Syntax

```
[no] ntp [authentication <key-id>
| broadcast | enable | max-association
<integer> | server
<IP-ADDR> | trap
<trap-name> | unicast]
```

Description

Disable NTP and removes the entire NTP configuration.

Options

authentication

Configure NTP authentication.

broadcast

Operate in broadcast mode.

enable

Enable/disable NTP.

max-association

Maximum number of Network Time Protocol (NTP) associations.

server

Configure a NTP server to poll for time synchronization.

trap

Enable/disable NTP traps.

unicast

Operate in unicast mode.

Example

```
switch(config)# no ntp
```

This will delete all NTP configurations on this device. Continue [y/n]?

ntp enable

Syntax

```
ntp enable
```

Description

Use this command to enable or disable NTP on the switch.

Restrictions

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
If timeSync is in SNTP or Timep when NTP is enabled.	Timesync is not configured to NTP.
When timesync is NTP and ntp is enabled and we try to change timesync to SNTP.	Disable NTP before changing timesync to SNTP or TIMEP

Enable ntp

```
switch(config)# ntp
enable          Enable/disable NTP.
```

ntp authentication

Syntax

```
ntp authentication key-id <KEY-ID> [authentication-mode <MODE> key-value <KEY-STRING>] [trusted]
```

Description

This command is used for authentication of NTP server by the NTP client.

Parameters and options

key-id <KEY-ID>

Sets the key-id for the authentication key.

authentication-mode

Sets the NTP authentication mode

key-value <KEY-STRING>

Sets the key-value for the authentication key.

[trusted]

Sets the authentication key as trusted.

ntp authentication

```
Switch(config)# ntp
Authentication      Configure NTP authentication.
```

```
Switch(config)# ntp authentication
key-id             Set the key-id for this authentication key.
```

```
Switch(config)# ntp authentication key-id
<1-4294967295>     Set the authentication key-id.
```

```
Switch(config)# ntp authentication key-id 1
authentication-mode Set the NTP authentication mode.
trusted            Set this authentication key as trusted.
```

```
Switch(config)# ntp authentication key-id 1
authentication-mode|trusted md5
Authenticate using MD5.
```

```
Switch(config)# ntp authentication key-id 1
authentication-mode|trusted md5key-value Set the NTP authentication key.
```

```
Switch(config)# ntp authentication key-id 1
```

```
authentication-mode|trusted md5 key-value  
KEY          Enter a string to be set as the NTP authentication key.
```

ntp max-associations

Syntax

```
ntp max-associations <number>
```

Description

Use this command to configure the maximum number of servers associated with this NTP client.

Parameters and options

<number>

Sets the maximum number of NTP associations, in the range of 1–8.

ntp max-associations

```
Switch(config)# ntp  
max-associations          Maximum number of NTP associations.
```

```
Switch(config)# ntp max-associations  
<1-8>                    Enter the number.
```

Restrictions

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
When the number of configured NTP servers is more than the max-associations value.	The maximum number of NTP servers allowed is <number>.
When the max-associations value is less than the (n) number of configured NTP servers.	Max-associations value cannot be less than the number of NTP servers configured.

ntp server

Syntax

```
ntp server [IP-ADDR|IPv6-ADDR] [<SERVER-NAME>] [key <KEY-ID>] [OOBM]  
[max-poll <MAX-POLL-VAL>][min-poll <MIN-POLL-VAL>][burst | iburst] [version <1-4>]
```

```
no ntp server [<IP-ADDR|IPv6-ADDR>] [server-name] [key <KEY-ID>] [oobm] [max-poll  
<MAX-POLL-VAL>][min-poll <MIN-POLL-VAL>][burst | iburst] [version <1-4>]
```

Description

This command is used to configure the NTP servers using a variety of parameters. A maximum of 8 NTP servers may be configured.

The **no** version of this command removes parameters from the NTP servers.

Parameters

IP-ADDR

Sets the IPv4 address of the NTP server.

IPv6-ADDR

Sets the IPv6 address of the NTP server.

SERVER-NAME

User configured host name will be saved in config. Hostname is resolved and IP address is updated to the existing NTP protocol data structure.

KEY-ID

Specifies the authentication key.

OOBM

Specifies that the NTP Unicast server is accessible over an OOBM interface.

MIN-POLL-VAL

Configures the minimum time intervals in seconds. Range is 4–17.

MAX-POLL-VAL

Configures the maximum time intervals in power of 2 seconds. Range is 4–17 (e.g., 5 would translate to 2 raised to 5 or 32).

BURST

Enables burst mode.

iBURST

Enables initial burst mode.

VERSION NUMBER

Sets version 1–4.

ntp server configuration

```
Switch(config)# ntp
server          Allow the software clock to be synchronized by an NTP
time server.
broadcast       Operate in broadcast mode.
unicast         Operate in unicast mode.
```

```
Switch(config)# ntp server
IP-ADDR        IPv4 address of the NTP server.
IPv6-ADDR      IPv6 address of the NTP server.
NAME           Server name of NTP servers.
```

```
Switch(config)# ntp server <IP-ADDR>
Key            Specify the authentication key.
```

```
Switch(config)# ntp server <IP-ADDR> key key-id
Max-poll       Configure the maximum time intervals in seconds.
```

```
Switch(config)# ntp server <IP-ADDR> key key-id max-poll
<4-17>        Enter an integer number.
```

```
Switch(config)# ntp server <IP-ADDR> key key-id
Min-poll          Configure the minimum time intervals in seconds.

Switch(config)# ntp server <IP-ADDR> key key-id min-poll
<4-17>           Enter an integer number.

Switch(config)# ntp server <IP-ADDR> key key-id prefer max-poll
<max-poll-val> min-poll <min-poll-val>
iburst           Enable initial burst (iburst) mode.
burst            Enable burst mode.

Switch(config)# ntp server IP-ADDR key key-id prefer maxpoll <number>
minpoll <number> iburst
```

ntp server key-id

Syntax

```
ntp server <IP-ADDR | IPV6-ADDR>
key-id <key-id> [max-poll
<max-poll-val>] [min-poll
<min-poll-val>] [burst | iburst]
```

Description

Configure the NTP server. <IP-ADDR> indicates the IPv4 address of the NTP server. <IPV6-ADDR> indicates the IPv6 address of the NTP server.

Options

burst

Enables burst mode.

iburst

Enables initial burst (iburst) mode.

key-id

Set the authentication key to use for this server.

max-poll <max-poll-val>

Configure the maximum time intervals in seconds.

min-poll <min-poll-val>

Configure the minimum time intervals in seconds.

ntp ipv6-multicast

Syntax

```
ntp ipv6-multicast
```

Description

Use this command to configure NTP multicast on a VLAN interface.

Restrictions

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
If ipv6 is not enabled on vlan interface	IPv6 address not configured on the VLAN.

ntp ipv6-multicast

```
Switch(vlan-2)# ntp
ipv6-multicast      Configure the interface to listen to the NTP multicast packets.
```

debug ntp

Syntax

```
debug ntp [event|packet]
```

Description

Use this command to display debug messages for NTP.

Parameters and options

event

Displays event log messages related to NTP.

packets

Displays NTP packet messages.

debug ntp

```
Switch(config)# debug ntp
event          Display event log messages related to NTP.
packet         Display NTP packet messages.
```

ntp trap

Syntax

```
[no] ntp trap <TRAP-NAME>
```

Description

Use this command to configure NTP traps.

Parameters and options

no

Disables NTP traps.

TRAP-NAME

Specifies the NTP trap name.

Specifiers

Specify trap names as follows:

```
ntp-mode-change
ntp-stratum-change
ntp-peer-change
ntp-new-association
```

```
ntp-remove-association
ntp-config-change
ntp-leapsec-announced
ntp-alive-heartbeat
```

Usage

The traps defined below are generated as the result of finding an unusual condition while parsing an NTP packet or a processing a timer event. Note that if more than one type of unusual condition is encountered while parsing the packet or processing an event, only the first one will generate a trap. Possible trap names are:

- 'ntpEntNotifModeChange' The notification to be sent when the NTP entity changes mode, including starting and stopping (if possible).
- 'ntpEntNotifStratumChange' The notification to be sent when stratum level of NTP changes.
- 'ntpEntNotifSyspeerChanged' The notification to be sent when a (new) syspeer has been selected.
- 'ntpEntNotifAddAssociation' The notification to be sent when a new association is mobilized.
- 'ntpEntNotifRemoveAssociation' The notification to be sent when an association is demobilized.
- 'ntpEntNotifConfigChanged' The notification to be sent when the NTP configuration has changed.
- 'ntpEntNotifLeapSecondAnnounced' The notification to be sent when a leap second has been announced.
- 'ntpEntNotifHeartbeat' The notification to be sent periodically (as defined by ntpEntHeartbeatInterval) to indicate that the NTP entity is still alive.

show ntp servers

Syntax

```
show ntp servers
```

Description

to display configured NTP server detail.

Command context

```
config
```

Examples

Shows NTP servers in detail.

```
switch# show ntp servers
```

show ntp statistics

Syntax

```
show ntp statistics
```

Description

Use this command to show NTP statistics.

show ntp statistics

```
Switch(config)# show ntp statistics
```

NTP Global statistics information

```
NTP In Packets           : 100
NTP Out Packets          : 110
NTP Bad Version Packets  : 4
NTP Protocol Error Packets : 0
```

show ntp status

Syntax

```
show ntp status
```

Description

Use this command to show the status of the NTP.

show ntp status

```
Switch(config)# show ntp status
```

NTP Status information

```
NTP Status           : Disabled           NTP Mode           : Broadcast
Synchronization Status : Synchronized     Peer Dispersion    : 8.01 sec
Stratum Number        : 2                 Leap Direction     : 1
Reference Assoc Id     : 1                 Clock Offset       : 0.0000 sec
Reference              : 192.0.2.1         Root Delay         : 0.00 sec
Precision              : 2**7              Root Dispersion    : 15.91 sec
NTP Uptime             : 01d 09h 15m       Time Resolution    : 1
Drift                  : 0.000000000 sec/sec
```

```
System Time           : Tue Aug 25 04:59:11 2015
Reference Time         : Mon Jan 1 00:00:00 1990
```

show ntp authentication

Syntax

```
show ntp authentication
```

Description

Use this command to show the authentication status of the NTP.

show ntp authentication

```
Switch(config)# show ntp authentication
```

NTP Authentication Information

Key-ID	Auth Mode	Trusted
67	md5	yes
7	md5	no

show ntp associations

Syntax

```
show ntp associations
```

Description

Use this command to show the NTP associations configured for your system.

show ntp associations

```
Switch(config)# show ntp associations
```

NTP Associations Entries								
Address	St	T	When	Poll	Reach	Delay	Offset	Dispersion
121.0.23.1	16	u	-	1024	0	0.000	0.000	0.000
231.45.21.4	16	u	-	1024	0	0.000	0.000	0.000
55.21.56.2	16	u	-	1024	0	0.000	0.000	0.000
23.56.13.1	3	u	209	1024	377	54.936	-6.159	12.688
91.34.255.216	4	u	132	1024	377	1.391	0.978	3.860

show ntp associations detail

Syntax

```
show ntp associations detail <IP ADDR>
```

Description

Use this command to show the detailed status of NTP associations configured for your system.

Parameters and options

IP-ADDR

Specify the IPv4 address of the NTP server.

show ntp association detail

```
Switch(config)# show ntp association detail <IP ADDR>
```

NTP association information

IP address	: 172.31.32.2	Peer Mode	: Server
Status	: Configured, Insane, Invalid	Peer Poll Intvl	: 64
Stratum	: 5	Root Delay	: 137.77 sec
Ref Assoc ID	: 0	Root Dispersion	: 142.75
Association Name	: NTP Association 0	Reach	: 376
Reference ID	: 16.93.49.4	Delay	: 4.23 sec
Our Mode	: Client	Offset	: -8.587 sec
Our Poll Intvl	: 1024	Precision	: 2**19
Dispersion	: 1.62 sec		
Association In Packets	: 60		
Association Out Packets	: 60		
Association Error Packets	: 0		
Origin Time	: Fri Jul 3 11:39:40 2015		
Receive Time	: Fri Jul 3 11:39:44 2015		
Transmit Time	: Fri Jul 3 11:39:44 2015		

Filter Delay =	4.23	4.14	2.41	5.95	2.37	2.33	4.26	4.33
Filter Offset =	-8.59	-8.82	-9.91	-8.42	-10.51	-10.77	-10.13	-10.11

FQDN support for NTP servers

FQDN support for NTP servers

Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) for a NTP server allows for the configuration of server names. Support for handling multiple IP addresses is resolved as part of a DNS resolution. NTP unicast server configuration with the FQDN option can support up to 8 NTP servers including a NTP server configured using an IPv4 address. The user configured host name will be saved in configuration and during NTP protocol updates, the hostname will resolve and the IP address updated to the existing NTP protocol data structure. Actual NTP server request will happen through IP address only.

NTP server configuration should allow sever name (FQDNs) to be configured without breaking backward compatibility.

For more information on configuring NTP servers, refer to the *Management and Configuration Guide* for your switch.

Usage

- When NTP server details are configured using 'server-name' option, it will postpone the NTP protocol update until DNS resolution is completed or DNS resolution completes.
- If there is any failure or delay in DNS resolution, it can delay the usage of configured server for further NTP process.
- If the user provided NTP server names fail to resolve, the `show ntp servers` output will show each server name and the corresponding resolution status. The NTP server will not retry resolving any failed entries. Retrying the same server name will attempt resolution without incrementing the total NTP server count.

Restrictions

- NTP server will not support resolving server hostname on every NTP poll sequence.
- NTP does not check for the directed broadcast IP.

ntp server

Syntax

```
ntp server [IP-ADDR|IPv6-ADDR] [<SERVER-NAME>] [key <KEY-ID>] [OOBM]
[max-poll <MAX-POLL-VAL>] [min-poll <MIN-POLL-VAL>] [burst | iburst] [version <1-4>]
```

```
no ntp server [<IP-ADDR|IPv6-ADDR>] [server-name] [key <KEY-ID>] [oobm] [max-poll
<MAX-POLL-VAL>] [min-poll <MIN-POLL-VAL>] [burst | iburst] [version <1-4>]
```

Description

This command is used to configure the NTP servers using a variety of parameters. A maximum of 8 NTP servers may be configured.

The `no` version of this command removes parameters from the NTP servers.

Parameters

IP-ADDR

Sets the IPv4 address of the NTP server.

IPv6-ADDR

Sets the IPv6 address of the NTP server.

SERVER-NAME

User configured host name will be saved in config. Hostname is resolved and IP address is updated to the existing NTP protocol data structure.

KEY-ID

Specifies the authentication key.

OOBM

Specifies that the NTP Unicast server is accessible over an OOBM interface.

MIN-POLL-VAL

Configures the minimum time intervals in seconds. Range is 4–17.

MAX-POLL-VAL

Configures the maximum time intervals in power of 2 seconds. Range is 4–17 (e.g., 5 would translate to 2 raised to 5 or 32).

BURST

Enables burst mode.

iBURST

Enables initial burst mode.

VERSION NUMBER

Sets version 1–4.

ntp server configuration

```
Switch(config)# ntp
server          Allow the software clock to be synchronized by an NTP
time server.
broadcast       Operate in broadcast mode.
unicast         Operate in unicast mode.
```

```
Switch(config)# ntp server
IP-ADDR         IPv4 address of the NTP server.
IPv6-ADDR       IPv6 address of the NTP server.
NAME            Server name of NTP servers.
```

```
Switch(config)# ntp server <IP-ADDR>
Key             Specify the authentication key.
```

```
Switch(config)# ntp server <IP-ADDR> key key-id
Max-poll        Configure the maximum time intervals in seconds.
```

```
Switch(config)# ntp server <IP-ADDR> key key-id max-poll
<4-17>         Enter an integer number.
```

```
Switch(config)# ntp server <IP-ADDR> key key-id
Min-poll          Configure the minimum time intervals in seconds.
```

```
Switch(config)# ntp server <IP-ADDR> key key-id min-poll
<4-17>           Enter an integer number.
```

```
Switch(config)# ntp server <IP-ADDR> key key-id prefer max-poll
<max-poll-val> min-poll <min-poll-val>
iburst           Enable initial burst (iburst) mode.
burst            Enable burst mode.
```

```
Switch(config)# ntp server IP-ADDR key key-id prefer maxpoll <number>
minpoll <number> iburst
```

show ntp servers

Syntax

```
show ntp servers
```

Description

to display configured NTP server detail.

Command context

```
config
```

Examples

Shows NTP servers in detail.

```
switch# show ntp servers
```

Elements of time synchronization

Time synchronization contains several elements. These include:

- **Protocol** — SNTP or TimeP. The switch offers TimeP and SNTP (Simple Network Time Protocol) and a `timesync` command for changing the time protocol selection (or turning off time protocol operation.)
- **Authentication modes** — Broadcast or Unicast for SNTP, and DHCP or Manual for TimeP
- **Status** — Enabled or Disabled. Simply selecting a time synchronization protocol does not enable that protocol on the switch. You must also enable the protocol itself by setting the appropriate parameter (enabled or disabled).

Although you can create and save configurations for both time protocols without conflicts, the switch allows only one active time protocol at any time. In addition, the switch retains the parameter settings for both time protocols, even if you change from one protocol to the other. Thus, if you select a time protocol, the switch uses the parameters you last configured for the selected protocol.

Time synchronization protocols

Use the `timesync` command to set the time synchronization protocol, either SNTP or TimeP.

- **SNTP**—To run SNTP as the switch's time synchronization protocol, you must also select SNTP as the time synchronization method using the CLI `timesync` command, or the menu interface **Time Sync Method** parameter.
- **TimeP**—You can manually assign the switch to use a TimeP server or use DHCP to assign the TimeP server. In either case, the switch can get its time synchronization updates from only one, designated TimeP server. This option enhances security by specifying which time server to use.

timesync

Syntax

```
timesync [timep|sntp]
```

Description

The `timesync` command configures the network time protocol for `sntp` or `timep`.

Parameters and options

sntp

Sets the time protocol to SNTP.

TimeP

Sets the time protocol to TIMEP.

timesync [timep | sntp]

```
switch# timesync timep
```

```
switch# timesync sntp
```

Setting a time protocol on the switch

Procedure

1. Select a time synchronization protocol: SNTP or TimeP (the default). See [timesync](#) on page 48.
2. Enable the protocol. Choose one:
 - SNTP: Broadcast or Unicast
 - TimeP: DHCP or Manual
3. Configure the remaining parameters for the time protocol you selected.
4. View the configuration.

The SNTP protocol

SNTP provides the following operating modes:

- **Broadcast mode**

The switch acquires time updates by accepting the time value from the first SNTP time broadcast detected. (In this case, the SNTP server must be configured to broadcast time updates to the network broadcast address; see the documentation provided with your SNTP server application.) Once the switch detects a particular server, it ignores time broadcasts from other SNTP servers unless the configurable Poll Interval expires three

consecutive times without an update received from the first-detected server. If the Poll Interval (configurable up to 720 seconds) expires three times without the switch detecting a time update from the original server, the switch accepts a broadcast time update from the next server it detects. Directs the switch to acquire its time synchronization from data broadcast by any SNTP server to the network broadcast address. The switch uses the first server detected and ignores any others. However, if the Poll Interval (configurable up to 720 seconds) expires three times without the switch detecting a time update from the original server, the switch accepts a broadcast time update from the next server it detects.



NOTE: To use Broadcast mode, the switch and the SNTP server must be in the same subnet.

- **Unicast mode**

Directs the switch to poll a specific server periodically for SNTP time synchronization. The default value between each polling request is 720 seconds, but can be configured. At least one manually configured server IP address is required.



NOTE: At least one `key-id` must be configured as `trusted`, and it must be associated with one of the SNTP servers. To edit or remove the associated `key-id` information or SNTP server information, SNTP authentication must be disabled.

The switch periodically requests a time update, for the purposes of time synchronization, from the configured SNTP server. (You can configure one server using the menu interface, or up to three servers using the CLI `sntp server` command.) This option provides increased security over the Broadcast mode by specifying which time server to use instead of using the first one detected through a broadcast. The default value between each polling request is 720 seconds, but can be configured. At least one manually configured server IP address is required.

When running SNTP unicast time polling as the time synchronization method, the switch requests a time update from the server you configured, with either the server address parameter in the menu interface, or the primary server in a list of up to three SNTP servers configured using the CLI. If the switch does not receive a response from the primary server after three consecutive polling intervals, the switch tries the next server (if any) in the list. If the switch tries all servers in the list without success, it sends an error message to the Event Log and reschedules to try the address list again after the configured `Poll Interval` time has expired.

If there are already three SNTP server addresses configured on the switch, and you want to use the CLI to replace one of the existing addresses with a new one, you must delete the unwanted address before you configure the new one.

Selecting and configuring SNTP

Procedure

Use the `Sntp` command to specify whether the switch operates in broadcast or unicast mode. With no mode specified, the setting defaults to broadcast.

Prerequisites

- Configure at least one `key-id` as `trusted`, and then associate it with one of the SNTP servers (see **SNTP authentication trusted keys** on page 58)
- Configure the appropriate parameters, such as poll interval, server address and version
- To edit or remove the associated `key-id` information or SNTP server information, disable SNTP authentication

**IMPORTANT:**

To enable authentication, you must configure either unicast or broadcast mode. After authentication is enabled, changing the mode from unicast to broadcast or vice versa is not allowed; you must disable authentication and then change the mode.

To set the SNTP mode or change from one mode to the other, enter the appropriate command.

Syntax

```
sntp
```

Description

This command configures SNTP, including specifying whether the switch operates in broadcast or unicast mode.

Parameters and options**Disabled**

The Default. SNTP does not operate, even if specified by the Menu interface **Time Sync Method** parameter or the CLI `timesync` command.

Unicast

Directs the switch to poll a specific server for SNTP time synchronization. Requires at least one server address.

Broadcast

Directs the switch to acquire its time synchronization from data broadcast by any SNTP server to the network broadcast address. The switch uses the first server detected and ignores any others. However, if the Poll Interval expires three times without the switch detecting a time update from the original server, the switch accepts a broadcast time update from the next server it detects.

Poll interval (seconds)

In Unicast Mode: Specifies how often the switch polls the designated SNTP server for a time update.

In Broadcast Mode: Specifies how often the switch polls the network broadcast address for a time update.

Value is between 30 to 720 seconds.

Server Address

Used only when the **SNTP Mode** is set to `Unicast`. Specifies the IP address of the SNTP server that the switch accesses for time synchronization updates. You can configure up to three servers; one using the menu or CLI, and two more using the CLI.

Server Version

Specifies the SNTP software version to use and is assigned on a per-server basis. The version setting is backwards-compatible. For example, using version 3 means that the switch accepts versions 1 through 3. Default: 3; range: 1 to 7.

Priority

Specifies the order in which the configured servers are polled for getting the time.

Value is between 1 and 3.

oobm

For switches that have a separate out-of-band management port, specifies that SNTP traffic goes through that port. (By default, SNTP traffic goes through the data ports.)

sntp broadcast|unicast output

```
switch# sntp broadcast
```

```
switch# sntp unicast
```

Enabling SNTP in Broadcast mode

Because the switch provides an SNTP polling interval (default: 720 seconds), you need only **timesync** on page 48 and **sntp** on page 50 commands for minimal SNTP broadcast configuration.

Figure 1: SNTP in Broadcast Mode on page 51 shows time synchronization in the factory default configuration, TimeP.

Procedure

1. To view the current time synchronization, enter `show sntp`.
2. Use the `timesync` command to set SNTP as the time synchronization mode:

```
timesync sntp
```
3. Use the `SNTP` command to enable SNTP for Broadcast mode:

```
sntp broadcast
```
4. View the SNTP configuration again to verify the configuration.

Figure 1: SNTP in Broadcast Mode

```
Switch(config)# show sntp
SNTP Configuration
  Time Sync Mode: Timep
  SNTP Mode : disabled
  Poll Interval (sec) [720] :720
```

show sntp displays the SNTP configuration and also shows that TimeP is the currently active time synchronization mode.

```
Switch(config)# timesync sntp
Switch(config)# sntp broadcast
```

show sntp again displays the SNTP configuration and shows that SNTP is now the currently active time synchronization mode and is configured for broadcast operation.

```
Switch(config)# show sntp
SNTP Configuration
  Time Sync Mode: Sntp
  SNTP Mode : Broadcast
  Poll Interval (sec) [720] :720
```

Configuring SNTP in unicast mode

As with broadcast mode, configuring SNTP for unicast mode enables SNTP. For unicast operation, however, you must also specify the IP address of at least one SNTP server. The switch allows up to three unicast servers. You can use the Menu interface or the CLI to configure one server or to replace an existing unicast server with another. To add a second or third server, you must use the CLI.

The following is an example of a full SNTP unicast operation.

Procedure

1. Select the SNTP protocol:

```
switch(config)# timesync sntp
```

2. Set the mode to unicast:

```
switch(config)# sntp unicast
```

3. Specify the SNTP server and set the server priority:

```
switch(config)# sntp server priority 1 10.28.227.141
```

This specifies the SNTP server and accepts the current SNTP server version (default: 3).

```
switch(config)# show sntp
SNTP Configuration
SNTP Authentication : Disabled
Time Sync Mode: Timep
SNTP Mode : disabled
Poll Interval (sec) [720] : 720
Source IP Selection: Outgoing Interface
switch(config)# timesync sntp
switch(config)# sntp broadcast
switch(config)# show sntp
SNTP Configuration
SNTP Authentication : Disabled
Time Sync Mode: Sntp
SNTP Mode : Broadcast
Poll Interval (sec) [720] : 720
Source IP Selection: Outgoing Interface
```

If the SNTP server you specify uses SNTP v4 or later, use the `sntp server` command to specify the correct version number. For example, suppose you learned that SNTP v4 was in use on the server you specified above (IP address 10.28.227.141.) You would use the following commands to delete the server IP address , re-enter it with the correct version number for that server.

```
switch(config)# sntp server priority 1 10.28.227.141 4
switch(config)# show sntp
SNTP Configuration
SNTP Authentication : Disabled
Time Sync Mode: Sntp
SNTP Mode : Unicast
Poll Interval (sec) [720] : 720
Source IP Selection: Outgoing Interface
Priority SNTP Server Address Version Key-id
```

1 10.28.227.141 4 0

Figure 2: SNTP in unicast mode

```
Switch(config)# show sntp
```

SNTP Configuration

Time Sync Mode: Sntp
SNTP Mode : Unicast
Poll Interval (sec) [720] : 720

Priority	SNTP Server Address	Protocol Version
1	2001:db8::215:60ff:fe79:8980	7
2	10.255.5.24	3
3	fe80::123%vlan10	3

In this example, the **Poll Interval** and the **Protocol Version** appear at their default settings.

Both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are displayed.

Note: Protocol Version appears only when there is an IP address configured for an SNTP server.

If the SNTP server you specify uses SNTP v4 or later, use the `sntp server` command to specify the correct version number. For example, suppose SNTP v4 is in use on the server you specified above (IP address 10.28.227.141.) Use the SNTP commands shown in the following figure to delete the server IP address, and then re-enter it with the correct version number for that server.

Figure 3: Specifying the SNTP protocol version number

```
Switch(config)# no sntp server 10.28.227.141
Switch(config)# sntp server 10.28.227.141 4
Switch(config)# show sntp
```

SNTP Configuration

Time Sync Mode: Sntp
SNTP Mode : Broadcast
Poll Interval (sec) [720] : 600

IP Address	Protocol Version
10.28.227.141	4

Deletes unicast SNTP server entry.

Re-enters the unicast server with a non-default protocol version.

show sntp displays the result.

Viewing SNTP parameters

Viewing SNTP server addresses using the CLI

The System Information screen in the menu interface displays only one SNTP server address, even if the switch is configured for two or three servers.

show management

Syntax

`show management`

Description

Displays all configured SNTP servers on the switch.

Viewing SNTP server addresses using the GUI

```
switch# show management
```

```
Status and Counters - Management Address Information
Time Server Address : fe80::215:60ff:fe7a:adc0%vlan10
```

```
Priority    SNTP Server Address Protocol Version
```

```
-----
1          2001:db8::215:60ff:fe79:8980 7
2          10.255.5.24 3
3          fe80::123%vlan10 3
```

```
Default Gateway : 10.0.9.80
```

VLAN Name	MAC Address	IP Address
-----	-----	+ -----
DEFAULT_VLAN	001279-88a100	Disabled
VLAN10	001279-88a100	10.0.10.17

Enabling SNTP client authentication

The command `sntp authentication` enables SNTP client authentication on the switch. If SNTP authentication is not enabled, SNTP packets are not authenticated.

Enabling SNTP authentication allows network devices such as switches to validate the SNTP messages received from an NTP or SNTP server before updating the network time. NTP or SNTP servers and clients must be configured with the same set of authentication keys so that the servers can authenticate the messages they send and clients (switches) can validate the received messages before updating the time.

This feature provides support for SNTP client authentication on switches, which addresses security considerations when deploying SNTP in a network.

Requirements to enable SNTP client authentication

You must configure all of the the following items to enable SNTP client authentication on the switch.

SNTP client Authentication Support Requirements

- Timesync mode must be SNTP. Use the `timesync sntp` command. SNTP is disabled by default.
- SNTP must be in unicast or broadcast mode.
- The MD5 authentication mode must be selected.
- An SNTP authentication key-identifier (`key-id`) must be configured on the switch and a value (`key-value`) must be provided for the authentication key. A maximum of 8 sets of `key-id` and `key-value` can be configured on the switch.
- Among the keys that have been configured, one key or a set of keys must be configured as trusted. Only trusted keys will be used for SNTP authentication.
- If the SNTP server requires authentication, one of the trusted keys has to be associated with the SNTP server.
- SNTP client authentication must be enabled on the switch. If client authentication is disabled, packets are processed without authentication. All of the above steps are necessary to enable authentication on the client.

SNTP server authentication support

The following must be performed on the SNTP server:

- The same authentication key-identifier, trusted key, authentication mode and key-value that were configured on the SNTP client must also be configured on the SNTP server.
- SNTP server authentication must be enabled on the server. If any of the parameters on the server are changed, the parameters have to be changed on all the SNTP clients in the network as well. The authentication check will fail on the clients otherwise, and the SNTP packets will be dropped.



NOTE:

SNTP server is not supported on HPE products.



IMPORTANT:

If any of the parameters on the server are changed, the parameters have to be changed on all the SNTP clients in the network as well. The authentication check fails on the clients otherwise, and the SNTP packets are dropped.

Viewing all SNTP authentication keys that have been configured on the switch

Enter the `show sntp authentication` command.

Show SNTP authentication command output

```
switch(config)# show sntp authentication
```

```
SNTP Authentication Information
```

```
SNTP Authentication : Enabled
```

Key-ID	Auth Mode	Trusted
55	MD5	Yes
10	MD5	No

SNTP poll interval



IMPORTANT:

This parameter is different from the *poll interval* parameter used for the TimeP operation. Enabling SNTP mode also enables the SNTP poll interval.

sntp poll-interval

Syntax

```
sntp poll-interval <30-720>
```

Description

Configures the poll interval to specify the amount of time between updates of the system clock using SNTP. Defaults to 720 seconds, and the range is 30 to 720 seconds.

Changing an SNTP poll interval to 300 seconds

```
switch# sntp 300
```

SNTP unicast time polling with multiple SNTP servers

When you use the Menu interface to configure an SNTP server IP address, the new address writes over the current primary address, if one is configured.

When running SNTP unicast time polling as the time synchronization method, the switch requests a time update from the server you configured with either the `Server Address` parameter in the menu interface, or the primary server in a list of up to three SNTP servers configured using the CLI. If the switch does not receive a response from the primary server after three consecutive polling intervals, the switch tries the next server (if any) in the list. If the switch tries all servers in the list without success, it sends an error message to the Event Log and reschedules to try the address list again after the configured *Poll Interval* time has expired.

If there are already three SNTP server addresses configured on the switch, and you want to use the CLI to replace one of the existing addresses with a new one, you must delete the unwanted address before you configure the new one.

SNTP server priority

Set the server priority to choose the order in which to poll configured servers.

sntp server priority

Syntax

```
[no] sntp server priority <ip-address>
```

Description

Polls for the current time among configured SNTP servers.

Parameters and options

no

Deletes a server address. If there are multiple addresses and you delete one of them, the switch re-orders the address priority.

server priority <1-3>

Specifies the polling order of the configured SNTP servers. Value is between 1 and 3.

<IP-ADDRESS>

Supports both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

Set the server priority

To set one server to priority 1 and another to priority 2:

```
switch# sntp server priority 1 10.28.22.141
switch# sntp server priority 2 2001:db8::215:60ff:fe79:8980
```

Delete a server address

To delete the primary address and automatically convert the secondary address to primary:

```
switch(config)# no sntp server 10.28.227.141
```

SNTP software version

sntp server <version>

Syntax

```
sntp server [<IP-ADDRESS>] [<VERSION>]
```

Description

Specifies the SNTP software version to use. Assigned on a per-server basis.

Parameters and options

<IP-ADDRESS>

SNTP server ip-address

<VERSION>

The version setting is backwards-compatible. For example, using version 3 means that the switch accepts versions 1 through 3. Default: 3; range: 1 to 7.

SNTP server address

Required only for unicast mode. Specifies the IP address of the SNTP server that the switch accesses for time synchronization updates. You can configure up to three servers; one using the menu or CLI, and two more using the CLI.

sntp server <ip-address>

Syntax

```
sntp server <ip-address>
```

Description

Specifies the IP address of the SNTP server for use in unicast mode.

Parameters and options

<ip-address>

An IPv4 or IPv6 address of an SNTP server.

Adding SNTP server addresses

You can configure one SNTP server address using either the Menu interface or the CLI. To configure a second and third address, you must use the CLI. To configure these remaining two addresses, you would do the following:

Creating additional SNTP server addresses with the CLI

```
Switch(config)# no sntp server priority 1 2001:db8::215:60ff:fe79:8980
Switch(config)# no sntp server priority 2 10.255.5.24
```



NOTE: If there are already three SNTP server addresses configured on the switch, and you want to use the CLI to replace one of the existing addresses with a new one, you must delete the unwanted address before you configure the new one.

SNTP authentication trusted keys

Trusted keys are used in SNTP authentication. In unicast mode, you must associate a key with a specific NTP/SNTP server. That key is used for authenticating the SNTP packet.

In unicast mode, a specific server is configured on the switch so that the SNTP client communicates with the specified server to get the date and time.

In broadcast mode, the SNTP client switch checks the size of the received packet to determine if it is authenticated. If the broadcast packet is authenticated, the key-id value is checked to see if the same key-id value is configured on the SNTP client switch. If the switch is configured with the same key-id value, and the key-id value is configured as "trusted," the authentication succeeds. Only trusted key-id value information is used for SNTP authentication.

If the packet contains key-id value information that is not configured on the SNTP client switch, or if the received packet contains no authentication information, it is discarded. The SNTP client switch expects packets to be authenticated if SNTP authentication is enabled.

When authentication succeeds, the time in the packet is used to update the time on the switch.

trusted

Syntax

```
trusted
```

Description

Parameters and options

Configuration files and the `include-credentials` command

You can use the `include-credentials` command to store security information in the running-config file. This allows you to upload the file to a TFTP server and then later download the file to the switches on which you want to use the same settings.

The authentication key values are shown in the output of the `show running-config` and `show config` commands only if the `include-credentials` command was executed.

When SNTP authentication is configured and `include-credentials` has not been executed, the SNTP authentication configuration is not saved.

The following example shows an enabled SNTP authentication with a key-id of 55.

Configuration file with SNTP authentication information

```
switch(config) # show config
Startup configuration:
timesync sntp
sntp broadcast
sntp 50
sntp authentication
sntp server priority 1 10.10.10.2.3 key-id 55
sntp server priority 2 fe80::200:24ff:fec8:4ca8 4 key-id 55
```

In this example, the `include-credentials` command has not been executed and is not present in the configuration file. The configuration file is subsequently saved to a TFTP server for later use. The SNTP authentication information is not saved and is not present in the retrieved configuration files, as shown in the following example.

Retrieved configuration file when include credentials is not configured

```
switch(config) # copy tftp startup-config 10.2.3.44 config1
Switch reboots ...
Startup configuration
timesync sntp
sntp broadcast
sntp 50 sntp server priority 1 10.10.10.2.3
sntp server priority 2 fe80::200:24ff:fec8:4ca8 4
```



IMPORTANT: The SNTP authentication line and the Key-ids are not displayed. Reconfigure SNTP authentication.

If `include-credentials` is configured, the SNTP authentication configuration is saved in the configuration file. When the `show config` command is entered, all of the information that has been configured for SNTP authentication displays, including the key-values.

Figure 4: Saved SNTP Authentication information when `include-credentials` is configured

```
Switch(config)# show config

Startup configuration:

.
.
.
include-credentials
timesync sntp
sntp broadcast
sntp 50
sntp authentication
sntp authentication key-id 55 authentication-mode md5 key-value "secretkey1"
trusted
sntp authentication key-id 2 authentication-mode md5 key-value "secretkey2"
sntp server priority 1 10.10.10.2 3 key-id 55
sntp server priority 2 fe80::200:24ff:fec8:4ca8 4 key-id 55
sntp server priority 3 10.10.4.60 3
.
.
.
```

Include-credentials is configured.

All of the SNTP authentication information displays in the configuration file, including the key-values.

Configuring the key-identifier, authentication mode, and key-value

Configures the `key-id`, `authentication-mode`, and `key-value`, which are required for authentication. It is executed in the global configuration context.

At least one `key-id` must be configured as `trusted`, and it must be associated with one of the SNTP servers. To edit or remove the associated `key-id` information or SNTP server information, SNTP authentication must be disabled.

A numeric key identifier in the range of 1-4,294,967,295 (2^{32}) that identifies the unique key value. It is sent in the SNTP packet.

The secret key that is used to generate the message digest. Up to 32 characters are allowed for `key-string`.

sntp authentication

Syntax

```
sntp authentication key-id <KEY-ID> authentication-mode md5 key-value <key-string> trusted [encrypted-key <key-string>]
```

Description

Configures a key-id, authentication-mode (MD5 only), and key-value, which are required for authentication.

Parameters and options

KEY-ID

A numeric key identifier in the range of 1-4,294,967,295 (2^{32}) that identifies the unique key value. It is sent in the SNMP packet.

key-value <KEY-STRING>

The secret key that is used to generate the message digest. Up to 32 characters are allowed for *key-string*.

Disabling key-id snmp authentication key-id

Syntax

```
no snmp authentication key-id <KEY-ID>
```

Description

The `no` version of the command deletes the authentication key.

Default: No default keys are configured on the switch.

Setting parameters for SNMP authentication

```
switch# snmp authentication key-id 55 authentication-mode md5 key-value secretkey1
```

Configuring a key-id as trusted

Trusted keys are used during the authentication process. You can configure the switch with up to eight sets of key-id/key-value pairs. Select one, specific set for authentication; this is done by configuring the set as `trusted`. The `key-id` itself must already be configured on the switch. To enable authentication, at least one `key-id` must be configured as `trusted`.

- Trusted keys are used in SNMP authentication.
- If the packet contains key-id value information that is not configured on the SNMP client switch, or if the received packet contains no authentication information, it is discarded. The SNMP client switch expects packets to be authenticated if SNMP authentication is enabled.
- When authentication succeeds, the time in the packet is used to update the time on the switch.
- In unicast mode: The trusted key is associated with a specific NTP/SNTP server, and configured on the switch so that the SNMP client communicates with the server to get the date and time. The key is used for authenticating the SNMP packet.
- In : The SNMP client switch checks the size of the received packet to determine if it is authenticated. If the broadcast packet is authenticated, the key-id value is checked to see if the same key-id value is configured on the SNMP client switch. If the switch is configured with the same key-id value, and the key-id value is configured as "trusted," the authentication succeeds. Only trusted key-id value information is used for SNMP authentication.

sntp authentication key-id trusted

Syntax

```
[no] sntp authentication key-id <KEY-ID> trusted
```

Description

Trusted keys are used during the authentication process. You can configure the switch with up to eight sets of key-id/key-value pairs. Select one, specific set for authentication; this is done by configuring the set as `trusted`. The `key-id` itself must already be configured on the switch.

Parameters and options

no

The `no` version of the command indicates the key is unreliable (not trusted).

Default: No key is trusted by default.

key-id <KEY-ID>

trusted

To enable authentication, configure at least one `key-id` as `trusted`.

Associating a key with an SNTP server

sntp server

Syntax

```
[no] sntp server priority <1-3> <IP-ADDRESS> <VERSION-NUM> <KEY-ID>  
<1-4,294,967,295>
```

Description

Configures a `key-id` to be associated with a specific server. The key itself must be configured on the switch.

The `no` version of the command disassociates the key from the server. This does not remove the authentication key.

Default: No key is associated with any server by default.

Parameters and options

priority <1-3>

Specifies the order in which the configured servers are polled for getting the time.

<IP-ADDRESS>

The IP address of the server. Supports IPv4 or IPv6.

version-num

Specifies the SNTP software version to use and is assigned on a per-server basis. The version setting is backwards-compatible. For example, using version 3 means that the switch accepts versions 1 through 3. Default: 3; range: 1 - 7.

<KEY-ID>

Optional command. The key identifier sent in the SNTP packet. This `key-id` is associated with the SNTP server specified in the command.

Associating a key-id with a specific server

```
switch(config)# sntp server priority 1 10.10.19.5 2 key-id 55
```

sntp server priority

Syntax

```
[no] sntp server priority 1-3 [<IP-ADDRESS>]<VERSION-NUM>[<KEY-ID> <1-4,294,967,295>]
```

Description

Configures a key to be associated with a specific server. The key itself must already be configured on the switch. Default: No key is associated with any server by default.

Parameters and options

no

Disassociates the key from the server. This does not remove the authentication key.

priority

Specifies the order in which the configured servers are polled for getting the time.

version-num

Specifies the SNTP software version to use and is assigned on a per-server basis. The version setting is backwards-compatible. For example, using version 3 means that the switch accepts versions 1 through 3. Default: 3; range: 1 - 7.

key-id

Optional command. The key identifier sent in the SNTP packet. This `key-id` is associated with the SNTP server specified in the command.

Associating a key-id with a specific server

```
switch# sntp server priority 1 10.10.19.5 2 key-id 55
```

Enabling and disabling SNTP client authentication

The `sntp authentication` command enables SNTP client authentication on the switch. If SNTP authentication is not enabled, SNTP packets are not authenticated.

sntp authentication

Syntax

```
[no] sntp authentication
```

Description

Enables the SNTP client authentication. SNTP client authentication defaults to disabled.:

Parameters and options

no

Disables authentication.

Viewing SNTP authentication configuration information

show sntp

Syntax

```
show sntp authentication
```

Description

The `show sntp` command displays SNTP configuration information, including any SNTP authentication keys that have been configured on the switch.

show sntp authentication

To display all the SNTP authentication keys that have been configured on the switch, enter the `show sntp authentication` command.

```
switch(config) # show sntp authentication
SNTP Authentication Information
SNTP Authentication: Enabled
Key-ID           Auth Mode           Trusted
-----
55                MD5                YES
10                MD5                NO
```

Show SNTP authentication command output

```
switch(config)# show sntp authentication

SNTP Authentication Information

SNTP Authentication : Enabled

Key-ID  Auth Mode  Trusted
-----
55      MD5     Yes
10      MD5     No
```

Viewing all SNTP authentication keys that have been configured on the switch

SNTP configuration information

```
switch(config)# show sntp

SNTP Configuration

SNTP Authentication : Enabled
Time Sync Mode: Sntp
SNTP Mode : Unicast
Poll Interval (sec) [720] : 720

Priority  SNTP Server Address           Protocol Version  KeyId
-----
1         10.10.10.2                   3                55
2         fe80::200:24ff:fec8:4ca8    3                55
```

SNTP Statistics command output

To display the statistical information for each SNTP server, enter the `sntp statistics` command. The number of SNTP packets that have failed authentication is displayed for each SNTP server address.

```
switch(config) # show sntp statistics
SNTP statistics
Received Packets:    0
Sent Packets:       3
Dropped Packets:    0

SNTP Server Address          Auth Failed Pkts
-----
10.10.10.1                   0
fe80::200:24ff:fec8:4ca8    0
```

The `show sntp` command displays SNTP configuration information, including any SNTP authentication keys that have been configured on the switch.

SNTP configuration information

```
switch# show sntp

SNTP Configuration

SNTP Authentication : Enabled
Time Sync Mode: Sntp
SNTP Mode : Unicast
Poll Interval (sec) [720] : 720

Priority  SNTP Server Address          Protocol Version  KeyId
-----
1         10.10.10.2                   3                 55
2         fe80::200:24ff:fec8:4ca8    3                 55
```

show sntp authentication command output

To display all the SNTP authentication keys that have been configured on the switch, enter the `show sntp authentication` command.

```
switch(config) # show sntp authentication
SNTP Authentication Information
SNTP Authentication: Enabled
Key-ID          Auth Mode          Trusted
-----
55              MD5              YES
10              MD5              NO
```

Displays all SNTP authentication keys configured on the switch.

```
switch(config) # show sntp authentication
SNTP Authentication Information
SNTP Authentication: Enabled

Key-ID  Auth Mode  Trusted
-----
55 MD5 YES
10 MD5 NO
```

Viewing statistical information for each SNTP server

To display the statistical information for each SNTP server, enter the `show sntp statistics` command.

The number of SNTP packets that have failed authentication is displayed for each SNTP server address.

show sntp statistics

```
switch(config)# show sntp statistics
SNTP Statistics
```

```
Received Packets : 0
Sent Packets : 3
Dropped Packets : 0
```

SNTP Server Address	Auth Failed Pkts
10.10.10.1	0
fe80::200:24ff:fec8:4ca8	0

To display the statistical information for each SNTP server, enter the `show sntp statistics` command.

show sntp statistics

Syntax

```
show sntp statistics
```

Description

Shows the number of SNTP packets that have failed authentication for each SNTP server address.

SNTP authentication statistical information

Shows the statistical information for each SNTP server. The number of SNTP packets that have failed authentication is displayed for each SNTP server address.

```
switch(config) # show sntp statistics
SNTP statistics
Received Packets: 0
Sent Packets: 3
Dropped Packets: 0
SNTP Server Address      Auth Failed Pkts
-----
10.10.10.1                0
fe80::200:24ff:fec8:4ca8  0
```

```
switch# show sntp statistics
SNTP Statistics
```

```
Received Packets : 0
Sent Packets : 3
Dropped Packets : 0
```

SNTP Server Address	Auth Failed Pkts
10.10.10.1	0
fe80::200:24ff:fec8:4ca8	0

SNTP messages in the event log

If an SNTP time change of more than three seconds occurs, the switch's Event Log records the change. SNTP time changes of less than three seconds do not appear in the Event Log.

Storing security information in the running-config file

Enter the `include-credentials` command.

The TimeP Protocol

Enabling TimeP as the time protocol means configuring it for either DHCP or manual mode.

To run TimeP as the time synchronization protocol, you must also select TimeP as the time synchronization method by using the CLI `timesync` command or the menu interface **Time Sync Method** parameter.

Procedure

1. To view the current time synchronization, enter `show timep`.
2. Use the `timesync` command to set TimeP as the time synchronization mode:

```
timesync timep
```
3. Use the `ip timep` command to enable timep for dhcp or manual mode:

```
ip timep dhcp|manual
```
4. View the SNTP configuration again to verify the configuration.

Enabling TimeP mode

Enabling the TimeP mode configures it for either broadcast or unicast. Run TimeP as the switch's time synchronization protocol and select TimeP as the time synchronization method by using the CLI `timesync` command (or the menu interface **Time Sync Method** parameter).

Procedure

1. View the current time synchronization using `show sntp`.
2. Set TimeP as the synchronization mode using `timesync sntp`.
3. Enable TimeP for DHCP mode using `sntp broadcast`.
4. View the TimeP configuration using `show sntp`.

Figure 5: *Enabling TimeP operation in DHCP mode*

```
Switch(config)# show sntp
SNTP Configuration
  Time Sync Mode: Timep
  SNTP Mode : disabled
  Poll Interval (sec) [720] :720

Switch(config)# timesync sntp

Switch(config)# sntp broadcast

Switch(config)# show sntp
SNTP Configuration
  Time Sync Mode: Sntp
  SNTP Mode : Broadcast
  Poll Interval (sec) [720] :720
```

show sntp displays the SNTP configuration and also shows that TimeP is the currently active time synchronization mode.

show sntp again displays the SNTP configuration and shows that SNTP is now the currently active time synchronization mode and is configured for broadcast operation.

timesync timep

Syntax

```
timesync timep
```

Description

Selects TimeP as the time synchronization method.

TimeP in DHCP mode

Because the switch provides a TimeP polling interval (default: 720 minutes), you need the **timesync timep** on page 67 and `ip timep dhcp` commands only, for a minimal TimeP DHCP configuration.

ip timep dhcp

Syntax

```
ip timep dhcp
```

Description

Configuring TimeP for DHCP operation

```
switch# show timep

Timep Configuration

Time Sync Mode: Sntp
TimeP Mode : Disabled
Poll Interval (min) [720] : 720

switch# timesync timep

switch# ip timep dhcp

switch# show timep

Timep Configuration
Time Sync Mode: Timep
TimeP Mode : DHCP Poll Interval (min): 720
```

Enabling TimeP for DHCP

Suppose time synchronization is configured for SNTP. Following this example to enable TimeP for DHCP.

Procedure

1. View the current time synchronization.
2. `show timep` displays the TimeP configuration and also shows that SNTP is the currently active time synchronization mode.
3. Select TimeP as the time synchronization mode.
4. Enable TimeP for DHCP mode.
5. View the TimeP configuration.

6. `show timep` again displays the TimeP configuration and shows that TimeP is now the currently active time synchronization mode.

```
switch(config)# show timep

Timep Configuration

Time Sync Mode: Sntp
TimeP Mode : Disabled
Poll Interval (min) [720] : 720

switch(config)# timesync timep

switch(config)# ip timep dhcp

switch(config)# show timep

Timep Configuration
Time Sync Mode: Timep
TimeP Mode : DHCP Poll Interval (min): 720
```

TimeP operation in manual mode

As with DHCP mode, configuring `timep` for Manual Mode enables `timep`; but for manual operation, you must also specify the IP address of the `timep` server. (The switch allows only one `timep` server.)

timesync timep

Syntax

```
timesync timep
```

Description

Activates TimeP in manual mode with a specified TimeP server. By default, SNTP traffic goes through the data ports.

ip timep

Syntax

```
ip timep manual<IP-ADDR>
```

Description

Activate TimeP in manual mode with a specified TimeP server. (By default, SNTP traffic goes through the data ports.)

Parameters and options

manual

<IP-ADDR>

Enabling TimeP in manual mode

Select TimeP and configure it for manual operation using a TimeP server address of 10.28.227.141, and the default poll interval (720 minutes, assuming the TimeP poll interval is already set to the default).

Procedure

1. Select TimeP:

```
switch(config)# timesync timep
```

2. Activate TimeP in manual mode:

```
switch(config)# ip timep manual 10.28.227.141
```

3. Review the TimeP status:

```
switch(config)# show timep
```

show timep output

```
switch(config)# show timep
Timep Configuration

Time Sync Mode: Timep
TimeP Mode : Manual          Server Address : 10.28.227.141
Poll Interval (min) : 720
```

Current TimeP configuration

Using different `show` commands, you can display either the full TimeP configuration or a combined listing of all TimeP, SNTP, and VLAN IP addresses configured on the switch.

show timep

Syntax

```
show timep
```

Description

Lists both the time synchronization method (TimeP, SNTP, or None) and the TimeP configuration, even if SNTP is not the selected time protocol. (If the TimeP Mode is set to `Disabled` or `DHCP`, the Server field does not appear.)

TimeP configuration when TimeP is the selected Time synchronization method

If you configure the switch with TimeP as the time synchronization method, then enable TimeP in DHCP mode with the default poll interval, `show timep` lists the following:

```
switch(config)# show timep

Timep Configuration

Time Sync Mode: Timep
TimeP Mode [Disabled] : DHCP      Server Address : 10.10.28.103
Poll Interval (min) [720] : 720
```

TimeP configuration when TimeP is not the selected time synchronization method

If SNTP is the selected time synchronization method, `show timep` still lists the TimeP configuration even though it is not currently in use. Even though, in this example, SNTP is the current time synchronization method, the switch maintains the TimeP configuration.

```
switch(config)# show timep

Timep Configuration
```

```
Time Sync Mode: Sntp
TimeP Mode [Disabled] : Manual   Server Address : 10.10.28.100
Poll Interval (min) [720] : 720
```

show management

Syntax

```
show management
```

Description

Examine and compare the IP addressing on the switch. It lists the IP addresses for all time servers configured on the switch plus the IP addresses and default gateway for all VLANs configured on the switch.

Show IP addressing for all configured time servers and VLAN

```
switch(config)# show management
```

```
Status and Counters - Management Address Information
```

```
Time Server Address : 10.10.28.100
```

Priority	SNTP Server Address	Protocol Version
1	10.10..28.101	3
2	10.255.5.24	3
3	fe80::123%vlan10	3

```
Default Gateway : 10.0.9.80
```

VLAN Name	MAC Address	IP Address
DEFAULT_VLAN	001279-88a100	10.30.248.184
VLAN10	001279-88a100	10.0.10.17

Change from one TimeP server to another

To change from one TimeP server to a different server, use the `no ip timep` command to disable TimeP mode then reconfigure TimeP in manual mode with the new server IP address.

TimeP poll interval

ip timep

Syntax

```
ip timep [dhcp|manual] interval [1-9999]
```

Description

Specifies how long the switch waits between time polling intervals. The default is 720 minutes and the range is 1 to 9999 minutes. (This parameter is separate from the `poll interval` parameter used for SNTP operation.)

Disable time synchronization protocols

Disabling TimeP in manual mode

no ip timep

Syntax

```
[no] ip timep
```

Description

Disables TimeP.

Parameters and options

no

To change from one TimeP server to another, you must use the `no ip timep` command to disable TimeP mode, then reconfigure TimeP in manual mode with the new server IP address.

Disabling time synchronization

Either of these methods can be used to disable time synchronization without changing the Timep or SNTP configuration.

no timesync

Syntax

```
[no] timesync
```

Description

Disables time synchronization by changing the `Time Sync Mode` configuration to `Disabled`. This halts time synchronization without changing your TimeP configuration. The recommended method for disabling time synchronization is to use the `timesync` command.

TimeP with time synchronization disabled

Suppose TimeP is running as the switch's time synchronization protocol, with `DHCP` as the TimeP mode, and the factory-default polling interval. You would halt time synchronization with this command:

```
switch(config)# no timesync
```

If you then viewed the TimeP configuration, you would see the following:

```
switch(config)# show timep

Timep Configuration
Time Sync Mode: Disabled
TimeP Mode : DHCP Poll Interval (min): 720
```

Disabling timsync using the GUI

Procedure

1. Set the `Time Synch Method` parameter to `None`.
2. Press **[Enter]**, then **[S]** (for **Save**.)

Disabling the TimeP mode

no ip timep

Syntax

```
no ip timep
```

Description

Disables TimeP by changing the TimeP mode configuration to `Disabled` and prevents the switch from using it as the time synchronization protocol, even if it is the selected `Time Sync Method` option.

Disabling time synchronization by disabling the TimeP mode parameter

If the switch is running TimeP in DHCP mode, `no ip timep` changes the TimeP configuration as shown below and disables time synchronization. Even though the TimeSync mode is set to TimeP, time synchronization is disabled because `no ip timep` has disabled the TimeP mode parameter.

```
switch(config)# no ip timep

switch(config)# show timep

Timep Configuration
  Time Sync Mode: Timep
  TimeP Mode : Disabled
```

Disabling time synchronization without changing the SNTP configuration

timesync

Syntax

```
[no] timesync
```

Description

Recommended method for disabling time synchronization. Halts time synchronization without changing your SNTP configuration.

Halt time synchronization

Suppose SNTP is running as the switch's time synchronization protocol, with `broadcast` as the SNTP mode and the factory-default polling interval. You would halt time synchronization with this command:

```
switch(config)# no timesync
```

If you then viewed the SNTP configuration, you would see the following:

SNTP with time synchronization disabled

```
switch(config)# show sntp
SNTP Configuration
SNTP Authentication : Disabled
Time Sync Mode: Sntp
SNTP Mode : Unicast
Poll Interval (sec) [720] : 720
```

Disabling SNTP mode

Procedure

1. To view the current time synchronization, enter `show sntp`.
2. Use the `sntp` command to disable sntp mode:
`no sntp`
3. View the SNTP configuration again to verify the configuration.

Disabling SNTP Mode

If you want to prevent the SNTP from being used even if it is selected by `timesync` (or the Menu interface's **Time Sync Method** parameter), configure the SNTP mode as disabled.

no sntp

Syntax

```
[no] sntp
```

Description

Disables SNTP by changing the SNTP mode configuration to `Disabled`.

Disabling time synchronization by disabling the SNTP mode

If the switch is running SNTP in unicast mode with an SNTP server at 10.28.227.141 and a server version of 3 (the default), `no sntp` changes the SNTP configuration as shown below and disables time synchronization on the switch.

```
switch(config)# no sntp
switch(config)# show sntp
```

```
SNTP Configuration
SNTP Authentication : Disabled
Time Sync Mode: SNTP
SNTP Mode : disabled
Poll Interval (sec) [720] : 719
Source IP Selection: Outgoing Interface
```

Priority	SNTP Server Address	Version	Key-id
1	2001:db8::215:60ff:fe79:8980	7	0
2	10.255.5.24	3	0

Deleting an SNTP server

Syntax

```
[no] sntp server priority <PRIORITY> <IP-ADDRESS>
```

Description

Deletes the specified SNTP server.



IMPORTANT: Deleting an SNTP server when only one server is configured disables SNTP unicast operation.

Disabling SNTP by deleting a server sntp server priority

Syntax

```
[no] sntp server priority <PRIORITY> <IP-ADDRESS> version key-id <KEY_ID>
```

Description

Disabling SNTP by deleting the specified SNTP server. Uses the `no` version of the command to disable SNTP.

Disabling time synchronization in DHCP mode by disabling the TimeP mode parameter

The `[no] ip timep` command changes the TimeP configuration for both DHCP and manual modes, as shown below, and disables time synchronization. Even though the TimeSync mode is set to TimeP, time synchronization is disabled because the `no ip timep` command has disabled the TimeP mode parameter.

ip timep

Syntax

```
[no] ip timep
```

Description

To change from one TimeP server to another, you must use the `no ip timep` command to disable TimeP mode, then reconfigure TimeP in manual mode with the new server IP address.

Disabling TimeP in manual mode

```
Timep Configuration
Time Sync Mode: Sntp
TimeP Mode : Disabled
Poll Interval (min) [720] : 720

switch# timesync timep

switch# ip timep manual

switch# show timep

Timep Configuration
Time Sync Mode: Timep
TimeP Mode : DHCP Poll Interval (min): 720
```

Disabling TimeP in DHCP mode

```
switch# no ip timep

switch# show timep
```

Other time protocol commands

Features that apply to both SNTP and TimeP protocols.

Show management command

show management

Syntax

```
show management
```

Description

This command shows the switch addresses available for management, and the time server if the switch uses one. It can help you to easily examine and compare the IP addressing on the switch. It lists the IP addresses for all time servers configured on the switch, plus the IP addresses and default gateway for all VLANs configured on the switch.

Display showing IP addressing for all configured time servers and VLANs

```
switch(config)# show management
Status and Counters - Management Address Information

Time Server Address : 10.10.28.100

Priority  SNTP Server Address  Protocol Version
-----  -
1         10.10.28.101           3
2         10.255.5.24            3

Default Gateway      : 10.0.9.80

VLAN Name    MAC Address    | IP Address
-----+-----
DEFAULT_VLAN 001871-c42f00 | 10.30.248.184
VLAN10       001871-c42f00 | 10.0.10.17

Internet (IPv6) Service

Interface Name : DEFAULT_VLAN
IPv6 Status    : Disabled

Interface Name : VLAN10
IPv6 Status    : Disabled
```

Show SNTP command

In the factory-default configuration (where TimeP is the selected time synchronization method), `show sntp` still lists the SNTP configuration, even though it is not currently in use.

show sntp

Syntax

```
show sntp [authentication|statistics]
```

Description

Shows configured time protocol and servers. Lists both the time synchronization method (TimeP, SNTP, or None) and the SNTP configuration, even if SNTP is not the selected time protocol. Configure the switch with SNTP as the time synchronization method, and then enable SNTP in broadcast mode with the default poll interval, `show sntp`.

Parameters and options

Authentication

Displays all the configured SNTP authentication information.

Statistics

Displays SNTP protocol statistics.

Figure 6: SNTP configuration when SNTP is not the selected time synchronization method

```
Switch(config)# show sntp
SNTP Configuration
Time Sync Mode: Timep
SNTP Mode : disabled
Poll Interval (sec) [720] :720
```

`show sntp` displays the SNTP configuration and also shows that TimeP is the currently active time synchronization mode.

```
Switch(config)# timesync sntp
Switch(config)# sntp broadcast
```

`show sntp` again displays the SNTP configuration and shows that SNTP is now the currently active time synchronization mode and is configured for broadcast operation.

```
Switch(config)# show sntp
SNTP Configuration
Time Sync Mode: Sntp
SNTP Mode : Broadcast
Poll Interval (sec) [720] :720
```

`show sntp authentication` command with authentication disabled

To display all the SNTP authentication keys that have been configured on the switch, enter the `show sntp authentication` command.

```
switch(config) # show sntp authentication
SNTP Authentication Information
SNTP Authentication: Enabled
```

Key-ID	Auth Mode	Trusted
55	MD5	YES
10	MD5	NO

To display the statistical information for each SNTP server, enter the `sntp statistics` command. The number of SNTP packets that have failed authentication is displayed for each SNTP server address.

```
switch(config) # show sntp statistics
SNTP statistics
Received Packets: 0
Sent Packets: 3
Dropped Packets: 0
SNTP Server Address      Auth Failed Pkts
```



```
-----
10.10.10.1          0
fe80::200:24ff:fec8:4ca8  0
```

Show TimeP command

Using different `show` commands, you can display either the full TimeP configuration or a combined listing of all TimeP, SNTP, and VLAN IP addresses configured on the switch.

show

Syntax

```
show timep | management
```

Description

Displays the timep and management information for the switch.

Parameters and options

timep

Lists both the time synchronization method (TimeP, SNTP, or None) and the TimeP configuration, even if SNTP is not the selected time protocol. (If the TimeP Mode is set to `Disabled` or `DHCP`, the `Server` field does not appear.)

management

Helps you to easily examine and compare the IP addressing on the switch. It lists the IP addresses for all time servers configured on the switch plus the IP addresses and default gateway for all VLANs configured on the switch.

TimeP configuration when TimeP is the selected Time synchronization method

If you configure the switch with TimeP as the time synchronization method, then enable TimeP in DHCP mode with the default poll interval, `show timep` lists the following:

```
switch# show timep

Timep Configuration

Time Sync Mode: Timep
TimeP Mode [Disabled] : DHCP      Server Address : 10.10.28.103
Poll Interval (min) [720] : 720
```

TimeP configuration when TimeP is not the selected time synchronization method

If SNTP is the selected time synchronization method, `show timep` still lists the TimeP configuration even though it is not currently in use. Even though, in this example, SNTP is the current time synchronization method, the switch maintains the TimeP configuration (see data in bold below):

```
switch# show timep

Timep Configuration

Time Sync Mode: Sntp
TimeP Mode [Disabled] : Manual    Server Address : 10.10.28.100
Poll Interval (min) [720] : 720
```

Display showing IP addressing for all configured time servers and VLANs

```
switch# show management
```

Status and Counters - Management Address Information

Time Server Address : 10.10.28.100

Priority	SNTP Server Address	Protocol Version
1	10.10..28.101	3
2	10.255.5.24	3
3	fe80::123%vlan10	3

Default Gateway : 10.0.9.80

VLAN Name	MAC Address	IP Address
DEFAULT_VLAN	001279-88a100	10.30.248.184
VLAN10	001279-88a100	10.0.10.17

Viewing current resource usage

showquos

Syntax

```
showqos|access-list|policyresources
```

Description

Displays the resource usage of the policy enforcement engine on the switch by software feature. For each type of resource, the amount still available and the amount used by each software feature is shown.

Parameters and options

show resources

This output allows you to view current resource usage and, if necessary, prioritize and reconfigure software features to free resources reserved for less important features.

qos|access-list|openflow|policy

Display the same command output and provide different ways to access task-specific information. See the *OpenFlow administrators guide*.

Unavailable resources

The resource usage on a switch configured for ACLs, QoS, RADIUS-based authentication, and other features:

- The "Rules Used" columns show that ACLs, VT, mirroring, and other features (for example, Management VLAN) have been configured globally or per-VLAN, because identical resource consumption is displayed for each port range in the switch. If ACLs were configured per-port, the number of rules used in each port range would be different.
- The switch is also configured for VT and is either blocking or throttling routed traffic with a high rate-of-connection requests.

- Varying ICMP rate-limiting configurations on ports 1 to 24, on ports 25 to 48, and on slot A, have resulted in different meter usage and different rule usage listed under QoS. Global QoS settings would otherwise result in identical resource consumption on each port range in the switch.
- There is authenticated client usage of IDM resources on ports 25 to 48.

Figure 7: Viewing current QoS resource usage on a series 3500yl switch

```
Switch# show qos resources
```

Resource usage in Policy Enforcement Engine									
Ports	Rules		Rules Used						
	Available		ACL	QoS	IDM	VT	Mirror	Other	
1-24	3014		15	11	0	1	0	3	
25-48	3005		15	10	10	1	0	3	
A	3017		15	8	0	1	0	3	

Ports	Meters		Meters Used						
	Available		ACL	QoS	IDM	VT	Mirror	Other	
1-24	250			5	0			0	
25-48	251			4	0			0	
A	253			2	0			0	

Ports	Application		Application Port Ranges Used						
	Port Ranges	Available	ACL	QoS	IDM	VT	Mirror	Other	
1-24		3014	2	0	0		0	0	
25-48		3005	2	0	0		0	0	
A		3017	2	0	0		0	0	

0 of 8 Policy Engine management resources used.

Key:

ACL = Access Control Lists

QoS = Device & Application Port Priority, QoS Policies, ICMP rate limits

IDM = Identity Driven Management

VT = Virus Throttling blocks

Mirror = Mirror Policies, Remote Intelligent Mirror endpoints

Other = Management VLAN, DHCP Snooping, ARP Protection, Jumbo IP-MTU.

Resource usage includes resources actually in use, or reserved for future use by the listed feature. Internal dedicated-purpose resources, such as port bandwidth limits or VLAN QoS priority, are not included.

Viewing information on resource usage

Cause

The switch allows you to view information about the current usage and availability of resources in the Policy Enforcement engine, including the following software features:

- Access control lists (ACL)
- Quality-of-service (QoS), including device and application port priority, ICMP rate-limiting, and QoS policies
- Dynamic assignment of per-port or per-user ACLs and QoS through RADIUS authentication designated as "IDM"
- Virus throttling (VT) using connection-rate filtering
- Mirroring policies, including switch configuration as an endpoint for remote intelligent mirroring
- Other features, including:

- Management VLAN
- DHCP snooping
- Dynamic ARP protection
- Jumbo IP-MTU

When insufficient resources are available

Cause

The switch has ample resources for configuring features and supporting:

- RADIUS-authenticated clients (with or without the optional IDMAapplication)
- VT and blocking on individual clients.



NOTE: Virus throttling does not operate on IPv6 traffic.

If the resources supporting these features become fully subscribed:

- The current feature configuration, RADIUS-authenticated client sessions, and VT instances continue to operate normally.
- The switch generates an event log notice to say that current resources are fully subscribed.
- Currently engaged resources must be released before any of the following actions are supported:
 - Modifying currently configured ACLs, IDM, VT, and other software features, such as Management VLAN, DHCP snooping, and dynamic ARP protection.

You can modify currently configured classifier-base QoS and mirroring policies if a policy has not been applied to an interface. However, sufficient resources must be available when you apply a configured policy to an interface.

- Acceptance of new RADIUS-based client authentication requests (displayed as a new resource entry for IDM.)

Failure to authenticate a client that presents valid credentials may indicate that insufficient resources are available for the features configured for the client in the RADIUS server. To troubleshoot, check the event log.

- Throttling or blocking of newly detected clients with high rate-of-connection requests (as defined by the current VT configuration.)

The switch continues to generate Event Log notifications (and SNMP trap notification, if configured) for new instances of high-connection-rate behavior detected by the VT feature.

Policy enforcement engine

Cause

The policy enforcement engine is the hardware element in the switch that manages QoS, mirroring, and ACL policies, as well as other software features, using the rules that you configure. Resource usage in the policy enforcement engine is based on how these features are configured on the switch:

- Resource usage by dynamic port ACLs and VT is determined as follows:

- Dynamic port ACLs configured by a RADIUS server for an authenticated client determine the current resource consumption for this feature on a specified slot. When a client session ends, the resources in use for that client become available for other uses.
- A VT configuration (connection-rate filtering) on the switch does not affect switch resources unless traffic behavior has triggered either a throttling or blocking action on the traffic from one or more clients. When the throttling action ceases or a blocked client is unblocked, the resources used for that action are released.
- When the following features are configured globally or per-VLAN, resource usage is applied across all port groups or all slots with installed modules:
 - ACLs
 - QoS configurations that use the following commands:
 - QoS device priority (IP address) through the CLI using the `qos device-priority` command
 - QoS application port through the CLI using `qos tcp-port` or `qos udp-port`
 - VLAN QoS policies through the CLI using `service-policy`
 - Management VLAN configuration
 - DHCP snooping
 - Dynamic ARP protection
 - Remote mirroring endpoint configuration
 - Mirror policies per VLAN through the CLI using `monitor service`
 - Jumbo IP-MTU
- When the following features are configured per-port, resource usage is applied only to the slot or port group on which the feature is configured:
 - ACLs or QoS applied per-port or per-user through RADIUS authentication
 - ACLs applied per-port through the CLI using the `ip access-group` or `ipv6 traffic-filter` commands
 - QoS policies applied per port through the CLI using the `service-policy` command
 - Mirror policies applied per-port through the CLI using the `monitor all service` and `service-policy` commands
 - ICMP rate-limiting through the CLI using the `rate-limit icmp` command
 - VT applied to any port (when a high-connection-rate client is being throttled or blocked)

Usage notes for show resources output

Cause

- A 1:1 mapping of internal rules to configured policies in the switch does not necessarily exist. As a result, displaying current resource usage is the most reliable method for keeping track of available resources. Also, because some internal resources are used by multiple features, deleting a feature configuration may not increase the amount of available resources.
- Resource usage includes resources actually in use or reserved for future use by the listed features.
- "Internal dedicated-purpose resources" include the following features:

- Per-port ingress and egress rate limiting through the CLI using `rate-limit in/out`
- Per-port ingress and egress broadcast rate limiting through the CLI using `rate-limit bcst/mcast`
- Per-port or per-VLAN priority or DSCP through the CLI using `qos priority` or `qos dscp`
- Per protocol priority through the CLI using `qos protocol`
- For chassis products (for example, the 5400zl or 8212zl switches), 'slots' are listed instead of 'ports,' with resources shown for all installed modules on the chassis.
- The "Available" columns display the resources available for additional feature use.
- The "IDM" column shows the resources used for RADIUS-based authentication.
- "Meters" are used when applying either ICMP rate-limiting or a QoS policy with a rate-limit class action.

Services

The `services` command requires a slot-name parameter followed by an option. Options permitted in this command depend on the context (operator, manager, or configure).

Show services

Syntax

```
show services <SLOT-ID>[details | device]
```

Description

Show services modules information.

Parameters

Slot-id

Show services modules information

Options

<SLOT-ID> details

Display application information for the specified slot.

<SLOT-ID> device

Display the current configuration of the devices.

Show services

```
switch# show services
```

Slot	Installed Services		Name
	Index	Description	
H,L	1.	Services zl Module	services-module
L	2.	HP ProCurve MSM765 zl Int-Ctrlr	msm765-applicati
H	3.	Threat Management Services zl Module	tms-module

No parameters

This `no parameters` command lists only installed modules which have applications running that provide a pass-through CLI feature.

show services

Syntax

```
show services
```

Description

Show services of only installed modules.

Show services

```
switch# show services
```

Installed Services

Slot	Index	Description	Name
H,L	1.	Services zl Module	services-module
L	2.	HP ProCurve MSM765 zl Int-Ctrlr	msm765-applicati
H	3.	Threat Management Services zl Module	tms-module

Show services locator

Syntax

```
show services <SLOT-ID>[details | device]
```

Description

Show services information.

Parameters

details

Display application information for the specified slot.

device

Display the current configuration of the devices.

Options

Slot-id

Display summary table for the specified slot.

Show services f

```
switch# show services f
Status and Counters - Services Module F Status
HPE Services zl Module J9840A
Versions          :
Current status    : running
For more information, use the show commands in services context
```

Show servers f details

```
switch# show services f details
Status and Counters - Services Module F Status
HPE Services zl Module J9840A
Versions          :
Current status    : running
```

Description	Version	Status
-------------	---------	--------

Services z1 Module		hardware
HPE MSM775 z1 Premium Controller	J9840A	installed

For more information, use the show commands in services context

Show services f status

Status and Counters - Services Module F Status

HPE Services z1 Module J9840A

Versions

Current status : running

Description	Version	Status
Services z1 Module		hardware
HPE Adv Services v2 z1 Module w/ HDD	J9857A	installed

For more information, use the show commands in services context

Show services device

Adding the keyword “device” displays information about whether certain external devices are enabled or disabled. This command is equivalent to the “services <slot> device” command with no additional parameters.

show services device

Syntax

show services *slot-id* device

Description

- USB port (x86-side) May be one of:
 - “disabled” (normal state)
 - “enabled” – enabled once the x86 boots into the OS, but disabled before OS boot to prevent inadvertently booting to an inserted USB key.
 - “boot” – enabled all the time, both for and after x86 OS boot.
- ShutdownFront-panel shutdown/reset button:
 - “enabled” – default state
 - “disabled” – for increased physical security
- PXE (PXE-boot)Not displayed for all modules.

Show services device

```
switch# show services d device
Services Module Device Configuration
Device          | State
-----|-----
USB             | disabled
Shutdown        | enabled
PXE             | enabled
```

Requesting a reboot

Syntax

```
services <SLOT>boot[product|PXE|service|USB]
```

Description

This command requests a reboot (graceful shutdown and restart) of the x86.

Parameters

product

Boot to the Product OS.

PXE

Boot to the PXE or Product OS (if supported).

service

Boot to the Service OS.

USB

Boot to the USB or Product OS (if supported).

If no parameters are given, the switch attempts to boot to the same OS (product, service, or USB) that was enabled before the command was given. If the `services <slot> boot product|usb` command is given on a non-permitted module, one of the following error messages is returned:

Services b boot

```
switch# services b boot product
Command not supported for the Services module in slot B.

switch# services b boot pxe
Command not supported for the Services module in slot B.

switch# services b boot usb
Command not supported for the Services module in slot B.
```

Services in Operator/Manager/Configure context

This top-level command requires a slot-name parameter followed by a subcommand. Permitted subcommands depend on one of the three contexts: operator, manager, or configure.

Services (operator)

Syntax

```
services <SLOT-ID>[<INDEX>| locator | name <NAME>]
```

Description

Displays applications installed and running for the services module in the Operator context.

Parameters

Integer

Index of the services CLI to access.

Locator

Control services module locator LED.

Name

Name of the services CLI to access.

Options

<SLOT-ID>

Device slot identifier for the services module.

<SLOT-ID> <INDEX>

Configure parameters for the installed application.

<SLOT-ID> locator

Controls services module locator LED.

<SLOT-ID> name <NAME>

Configure parameters for the installed application.

Services (manager)

Syntax

```
services <SLOT-ID>[<INDEX> | boot | locator | name <NAME> | reload | serial | shutdown]
```

Description

Display applications installed and running for the services module or change the module's state (reload or shutdown).

Parameters

Boot

Reboot the services module.

Integer

Index of the services CLI to access.

Locator

Control services module locator LED.

Name

Name of the services CLI to access.

Reload

Reset the services module.

Serial

Connect to application via serial port.

Shutdown

Shutdown (halt) the services module.

Options

slot-id

Device slot identifier for the services module.

<slot-id> <index>

Configure parameters for the installed application.

<slot-id> boot

Reboot the services module.

<slot-id> locator

Controls services module locator LED.

<slot-id> name <name>

Configure parameters for the installed application.

<slot-id> reload

Reset the services module.

<slot-id> serial

Connect to services module via serial port.

<slot-id> shutdown

Shutdown (halt) the services module.

Services (configure)

Syntax

```
[no] services [<SLOT-ID> <INDEX> boot | locator | name <NAME> | reload | serial | shutdown] services <slot-id> device [shutdown | usb]
```

Description

Configure parameters for the services module or change the module's state (reload or shutdown).

Parameters and options

slot-id

Device slot identifier for the services module.

<SLOT-ID> <INDEX>

Configure parameters for the installed application.

<SLOT-ID> boot

Reboot the services module.

<SLOT-ID> locator

Controls services module locator LED.

<SLOT-ID> name<NAME>

Configure parameters for the installed application.

<SLOT-ID> reload

Reset the services module.

<SLOT-ID> serial

Connect to services module via serial port.

<SLOT-ID> shutdown

Shutdown (halt) the services module.

Enable or disable devices.

Enable or disable devices. This command must be run from the configure context.

no services

Syntax

```
no services <SLOT> device [PXE|shutdown|USB|CF]
```

Parameters

PXE

Enable or disable booting from PXE (if supported).

shutdown

Enable or disable the shutdown or reset button.

USB

Enable or Disable the USB after boot.

CF

Enable or disable the Compact Flash or SD1 card.

Accessing CLI-passthrough

Accessing the CLI-passthrough feature on modules that support the feature. Feature can be reported by the `show services` command given with no additional parameters.

services

Syntax

```
services <SLOT> [<INDEX>|<NAME>]
```

Description

Parameters

ASCII-STR

Enter an ASCII string.

Show services

```
switch# show services
```

Installed Services

Slot	Index	Description	Name
H,L	1.	Services zl Module	services-module
L	2.	HPE ProCurve MSM765 zl Int-Ctrlr	msm765-applicati
H	3.	Threat Management Services zl Module	tms-module

Show services set locator module

This command sets the Module Locator LED to either solid-on, off or slow-blink for a specified duration of time or to turn it off before the previously-specified time has passed. Options are permitted in this command for the Operator.

command name

Syntax

```
show services <SLOT>[blink <1-1440>|off|on]
```

Parameters

blink

Blink the locator LED. Default 30 mins. Range <1-1440>.

off

Turn the locate led off.

on

Turn the locate led on.

show services d

```
switch# show services d locator blink
```

Reloading services module

command name

Syntax

```
services <SLOT> reload
```

Description

Reloads the services module and is similar to the command `services<slot> boot` with no additional parameters given.

Connection to the application via a serial port



WARNING:

You are entering a mode on this product that is Hewlett Packard Enterprise Confidential and Proprietary. This mode, the commands and functionality specific to this mode, and all output from this mode are Hewlett Packard Enterprise Confidential and Proprietary. You may use this mode only by specific permission of, and under the direction of, an Hewlett Packard Enterprise support engineer or Hewlett Packard Enterprise technical engineer. Unauthorized or improper use of this mode will be considered by Hewlett Packard Enterprise to be unauthorized modification of the product, and any resulting defects or issues are not eligible for coverage under the Hewlett Packard Enterprise product warranty or any Hewlett Packard Enterprise support or service. UNAUTHORIZED OR IMPROPER USE OF THIS MODE CAN MAKE THE PRODUCT COMPLETELY INOPERABLE.

SvcOS login: <CTRL-Z>

command name

Syntax

```
services <SLOT>serial
```

Description

Starts a serial-passthrough session to the x86.

Shutdown the services module.

command name

Syntax

```
services <SLOT>shutdown
```

Description

Similar to `services <slot>boot` with no additional parameters given. This command is similar in that it attempts a graceful shutdown of the x86 except that this command does not restart the x86. If the graceful-shutdown attempt fails, no follow-up attempt is made to do a hard shutdown.

Transceiver status

The following information is displayed for each installed transceiver:

- Port number on which transceiver is installed.
- Type of transceiver.
- Product number — Includes revision letter, such as A, B, or C. If no revision letter follows a product number, this means that no revision is available for the transceiver.
- Part number — Allows you to determine the manufacturer for a specified transceiver and revision number.

Operating notes

- For a non-switches installed transceiver (see line 23 **Figure 8: Example of show tech transceivers command** on page 93), no transceiver type, product number, or part information is displayed. In the Serial Number field, `non-operational` is displayed instead of a serial number.
- The following error messages may be displayed for a non-operational transceiver:
 - `Unsupported Transceiver. (SelfTest Err#060)`
Check: http://www.hpe.com/rnd/device_help/2_inform for more info.
 - `This switch only supports revision B and above transceivers.`
Check: http://www.hpe.com/rnd/device_help/2_inform for more info.
 - `Self test failure.`
 - `Transceiver type not supported in this port.`

- Transceiver type not supported in this software version.
- Not a Switch Transceiver.
Go to: http://www.hpe.com/rnd/device_help/2_inform for more info.

show interfaces transceivers

Syntax

```
show interfaces transceivers
```

Description

Figure 8: Example of show tech transceivers command on page 93 shows sample output from the `show tech transceivers` command. The Part # column enables you to determine the manufacturer for a specified transceiver and revision number.

- Remotely identify transceiver type and revision number without having to physically remove an installed transceiver from its slot.
- Display real-timestatus information about all installed transceivers, including non-operational transceivers.

Figure 8: Example of show tech transceivers command

```
Switch# show tech transceivers
```

Transceiver Technical Information:				
Port #	Type	Prod #	Serial #	Part #
21	1000SX	J4858B	CN605MP23K	
22	1000LX	J4859C	H117E7X	2157-2345
23	??	??	non operational	
25	10GbE-CX4	J8440A	US509RU079	
26	10GbE-CX4	J8440A	US540RU002	
27	10GbE-LR	J8437B	PPA02-2904:0017	2157-2345
28	10GbE-SR	J8436B	01591602	2158-1000
29	10GbE-ER	J8438A	PPA03-2905:0001	

The following transceivers may not function correctly:

Port #	Message
Port 23	Self test failure.

Configuring the type of a module

module type

Syntax

```
module <module-num> type <module-type>
```

Description

Allows you to configure the type of the module.

Clearing the module configuration

Syntax

```
no module <SLOT>
```

Description

Allows removal of the module configuration in the configuration file after the module has been removed. Enter an integer between 1 and 12 for *slot*.

- This command can be used to swap a module for a different type.
- This command will save the changes to both the running and startup configuration without a user issuing a 'write memory'

Example

```
switch# no module 3
```

Configuring transceivers and modules that have not been inserted

Transceivers

Previously, a port had to be valid and verified for the switch to allow it to be configured. Transceivers are removable ports and considered invalid when not present in the switch, so they cannot be configured unless they are already in the switch. For switches, the verification for allowable port configurations performed by the CLI is removed and configuration of transceivers is allowed even if they are not yet inserted in the switch.

Modules

You can create or edit configuration files (as text files) that can be uploaded to the switch without the modules having been installed yet. Additionally, you can pre-configure the modules with the CLI `module` command.

The same `module` command used in an uploaded configuration file is used to define a module that is being pre-configured. The validation performed when issued through the CLI is still performed just as if the command was executed on the switch, in other words, as if the module were actually present in the switch.



NOTE:

You cannot use this method to change the configuration of a module that has already been configured. The slot must be empty and the configuration file must not have a configuration associated with it.

Clearing the module configuration

Because of the hot-swap capabilities of the modules, when a module is removed from the chassis, the module configuration remains in the configuration file. `[no] module slot` allows you to remove the module configuration information from the configuration file.

This does not change how hot-swap works.

Power consumption



NOTE: The `show system power-supply detailed` command is only supported on the 5400R and 3810M switches.

show system power-supply

Syntax

```
show system power-supply [detailed | fahrenheit]
```

Description

Shows power supply information in either full detail or full detail in Fahrenheit only. Default temperature is displayed in degrees Celsius.

Command context

manager and operator

Parameters

detailed

Shows detailed switch power supply sensor information.

fahrenheit

Shows detailed switch power supply sensor information with temperatures in degrees Fahrenheit.

Usage

- The `show system power-supply detailed` command shows detailed information for the local power supplies only.
- The `show system power-supply detailed` command shows detailed information for power supplies in the powered state only.

Examples

Use of the command `show system power-supply` shows the power supply status for all active switches.

```
Switch# show system power-supply
```

```
Power Supply Status:
```

PS#	Model	Serial	State	AC/DC	+ V	Wattage
1	J9828A	IN30G4D009	Powered	AC	120V/240V	700
2	J9828A	IN30G4D00C	Powered	AC	120V/240V	700
3			Not Present	--	-----	0
4	J9830A	IN43G4G05H	Powered	AC	120V/240V	2750

```
3 / 4 supply bays delivering power.  
Total power: 4150 W
```

Use of the command `show system power-supply detailed` shows the power supply status in detail for all active switches.

```
Switch# show system power-supply detailed
```

Status and Counters - Power Supply Detailed Information

PS#	Model	Serial	State	Status
1	J9828A	IN30G4D009	Powered	AC Power Consumption : 44 Watts AC MAIN Voltage : 209 Volts Power Supplied : 31 Watts Power Capacity : 700 Watts Inlet Temp (C/F) : 27.0C/80.6F Internal Temp (C/F) : 30.5C/86.0F Fan 1 Speed : 1600 RPM (47%) Fan 2 Speed : 1600 RPM (47%)
2	J9828A	IN30G4D00C	Powered	AC Power Consumption : 46 Watts AC MAIN Voltage : 209 Volts Power Supplied : 21 Watts Power Capacity : 700 Watts Inlet Temp (C/F) : 27.7C/80.6F Internal Temp (C/F) : 32.5C/89.6F Fan 1 Speed : 1600 RPM (47%) Fan 2 Speed : 1600 RPM (47%)
3			Not Present	
4	J9830A	IN43G4G05H	Powered	AC Power Consumption : 90 Watts AC MAIN/AUX Voltage : 210/118 Volts Power Supplied : 16 Watts Power Capacity : 2750 Watts Inlet Temp (C/F) : 30.9C/86.0F Internal Temp (C/F) : 65.6C/149.0F Fan 1 Speed : 2000 RPM (37%) Fan 2 Speed : 1950 RPM (36%)

3 / 4 supply bays delivering power.
Currently supplying 68 W / 4150 W total power.

Use of the command `show system power-supply fahrenheit` shows the power supply status in Fahrenheit for all active switches.

```
Switch# show system power-supply detailed fahrenheit
```

Power Supply Status:

Mem	PS#	Model	Serial	State	Status
1	1	J9830A	IN5BGZ81KZ	Powered	Power Consumption : 95 Watts AC MAIN/AUX Voltage : 118/208 Volts Inlet/Internal Temp : 85.6F/87.7F Fan 1 Speed (util) : 1650RPM (20%) Fan 2 Speed (util) : 1600RPM (19%)
1	2	J9829A	IN5BGZ81KX	Powered	Power Consumption : 51 Watts AC Input Voltage : 208 Volts Inlet/Internal Temp : 85.6F/87.7F Fan 1 Speed (util) : 1650RPM (20%) Fan 2 Speed (util) : 1600RPM (19%)
1	3	J9828A	IN5BGZ81KY	Powered	Power Consumption : 43 Watts AC Input Voltage : 119 Volts Inlet/Internal Temp : 85.6F/87.7F Fan 1 Speed (util) : 1650RPM (20%) Fan 2 Speed (util) : 1600RPM (19%)

```

1      4                               Not Present

2      1      J9830A  IN5BGZ81KZ  Powered      Power Consumption      : 95 Watts
                                         AC MAIN/AUX Voltage    : 118/208 Volts
                                         Inlet/Internal Temp    : 85.6F/87.7F
                                         Fan 1 Speed (util)    : 1650RPM (20%)
                                         Fan 2 Speed (util)    : 1600RPM (19%)

2      2      J9829A  IN5BGZ81KX  Powered      Power Consumption      : 51 Watts
                                         AC Input Voltage      : 208 Volts
                                         Inlet/Internal Temp    : 85.6F/87.7F
                                         Fan 1 Speed (util)    : 1650RPM (20%)
                                         Fan 2 Speed (util)    : 1600RPM (19%)

2      3      J9828A  IN5BGZ81KY  Powered      Power Consumption      : 43 Watts
                                         AC Input Voltage      : 119 Volts
                                         Inlet/Internal Temp    : 85.6F/87.7F
                                         Fan 1 Speed (util)    : 1650RPM (20%)
                                         Fan 2 Speed (util)    : 1600RPM (19%)

2      4                               Not Present
-----
      6 / 8 supply bays delivering power.
      Total Input Power: 378 Watts

```

Use of the command `show system power-supply detailed` shows the power supply status all active switches including a nonpowered J9830A PSU.

```
switch# show system power-supply detailed
```

```

Status and Counters - Power Supply Detailed Information

PS# Model      Serial      State      Status
---
1      J9828A  IN30G4D009  Powered      AC Power Consumption : 44 Watts
                                         AC MAIN Voltage      : 209 Volts
                                         Power Supplied       : 31 Watts
                                         Power Capacity       : 700 Watts
                                         Inlet Temp (C/F)     : 27.0C/80.6F
                                         Internal Temp (C/F)  : 30.5C/86.0F
                                         Fan 1 Speed          : 1600 RPM
                                         Fan 2 Speed          : 1600 RPM

2      J9828A  IN30G4D00C  Powered      AC Power Consumption : 46 Watts
                                         AC MAIN Voltage      : 209 Volts
                                         Power Supplied       : 21 Watts
                                         Power Capacity       : 700 Watts
                                         Inlet Temp (C/F)     : 27.7C/80.6F
                                         Internal Temp (C/F)  : 32.5C/89.6F
                                         Fan 1 Speed          : 1600 RPM
                                         Fan 2 Speed          : 1600 RPM

3                               Not Present

4      J9830A  IN43G4G05H  Aux Not Powered

      2 / 4 supply bays delivering power.
      Currently supplying 68 W / 4150 W total power.

```

Use of the command `show system power-supply` shows the power supply status all active switches with power supply #2 showing permanent failure.


```
switch# show system power-supply
```

Power Supply Status:

PS#	Model	Serial	State	AC/DC	+ V	Wattage
1			Not Present	--	-----	0
2	J9829A	IN30G4D00C	Permanent Failure	AC	120V/240V	1100
3	J9829A	IN30G4D00D	Powered	--	-----	1100
4	J9829A	IN43G4G05H	Powered	AC	120V/240V	1100

3 / 4 supply bays delivering power.
Total power: 3300 W

Table 1: Field key for output of `show system power-supply detailed`

Field	Description
AC Power Consumption	Actual power consumed from AC input
AC MAIN/AUX Voltage	Actual voltage measured on AC Input: <ul style="list-style-type: none">Two voltages are displayed for PS#4, as the J9830A includes two AC input IEC connectors.Most power-supplies contain a single AC Input IEC connector and are labeled MAIN.
Power Supplied	Actual voltage being supplied from the power-supply to the switch for general power and PoE.
Power Capacity	The maximum power that the power-supply can provide to the switch.
Inlet Temp (C/F)	The thermal sensor at the inlet of the power-supply - shown in both Celsius and Fahrenheit
Internal Temp (C/F)	The thermal sensor internal to the power-supply (will vary depending upon the model) - shown in both Celsius and Fahrenheit. <div> NOTE: There is no "Output Temperature Sensor" on either the 5400R or 3810M switches.</div>
Fan Speed	Shows the current fan speed in RPM and the percent of total fan speed utilization. For PSUs that contain more than one fan, a separate line will be included for each.
Currently Supplying	A summary of the total power being supplied and the total capacity (same summary as seen on the command <code>show system power-supply</code>).

Fans

There are three fan types:

- Power supply fans
- Fan-tray fans
- Stacking switch fans

show system

Syntax

```
show system [chassislocate | information | temperature]
```

Description

Shows global system information and operational parameters for the switch.

Command context

manager and operator

Parameters

chassislocate

Shows the chassis locator LED status. Possible values are ON, Off, and Blink. When the status is On or Blink, the number of minutes that the Locator LED will continue to be on or to blink is displayed.

information

Displays global system information and operational parameters for the switch.

temperature

Shows system temperature and settings.

Usage

- To show system fans, see [show system fans](#)
- To show chassis power supply and settings, see [show system power-supply](#)
- To show system fans for VSF members, see [show system fans vsf](#)

Examples

Locating the system chassis by LED blink using the `show system chassislocate` command.

```
Switch(config)# show system chassislocate
Chassis Locator LED: ON 5 minutes 5 seconds
Switch(config)# show system chassislocate
Chassis Locator LED: BLINK 10 minutes 6 seconds
Switch(config)# show system chassislocate
Chassis Locator LED: OFF
```

Showing the general switch system information by using the `show system` command.

```

Switch(config)# show system

Status and Counters - General System Information

System Name       : Switch
System Contact    :
System Location   :

MAC Age Time (sec) : 300

Time Zone         : 0
Daylight Time Rule : None

Software revision : T.13.XX      Base MAC Addr   : 001635-b57cc0
ROM Version       : K.12.12      Serial Number    : LP621KI005

Up Time           : 51 secs       Memory - Total   : 152,455,616
CPU Util (%)      : 3             Free            : 110,527,264

IP Mgmt  - Pkts Rx : 0             Packet - Total   : 6750
          Pkts Tx : 0             Buffers  Free    : 5086
                                   Lowest    : 5086
                                   Missed    : 0

```

show system fans

Syntax

```
show system fans
```

Description

Shows the state, status, and location of system fans.

Command context

manager and operator

Usage

Command can be executed using various command contexts. See examples for use of command context PoEP and VSF.

Examples

The state of all system fans is shown by using the command `show system fans`.

```
Switch# show system fans
```

```

Fan Information
  Num | State           | Failures | Location
-----+-----+-----+-----
Fan-1 | Fan OK          | 0         | Fan Tray
Fan-2 | Fan OK          | 0         | Fan Tray
Fan-3 | Fan OK          | 0         | Fan Tray
Fan-4 | Fan OK          | 0         | Fan Tray
Fan-5 | Fan OK          | 0         | Fan Tray
Fan-6 | Fan OK          | 0         | Fan Tray
Fan-7 | Fan Removed     | 0         | PS 1
Fan-8 | Fan Failed      | 2         | PS 2
Fan-9 | Fan OK          | 0         | PS 3
Fan-10 | Fan OK         | 0         | PS 4

```



```
1 / 10 Fans in Failure State
1 / 10 Fans have been in Failure State
```

The state of all system fans within the PoEP context is shown by using the command `show system fans`.

```
Switch(PoEP)# show system fans
```

```
Fan Information
  Num | State          | Failures | Location
-----+-----+-----+-----
Fan-1 | Fan OK         | 0        | Chassis
Fan-2 | Fan OK         | 0        | Chassis
Fan-3 | Fan OK         | 0        | Chassis
Fan-4 | Fan Removed    | 0        | PS 1
Fan-5 | Fan Failed     | 2        | PS 2
```

```
1 / 5 Fans in Failure State
1 / 5 Fans have been in Failure State
```

The state of all stacked switch system fans is shown by using the command `show system fans` within the stacked context.

```
Switch(stacked)# show system fans
```

```
Fan Information
Member 1
```

```
  Num | State          | Failures | Location
-----+-----+-----+-----
Sys-1 | Fan OK         | 0        | Chassis
Sys-2 | Fan OK         | 0        | Chassis
Sys-3 | Fan OK         | 0        | Chassis
Sys-4 | Fan Removed    | 0        | PS 1
Sys-5 | Fan Failed     | 2        | PS 2
```

```
0 / 5 Fans in Failure State
0 / 5 Fans have been in Failure State
```

```
Member 2
```

```
  Num | State          | Failures | Location
-----+-----+-----+-----
Sys-1 | Fan OK         | 0        | Chassis
Sys-2 | Fan OK         | 0        | Chassis
Sys-3 | Fan OK         | 0        | Chassis
Sys-4 | Fan OK         | 0        | PS 1
Sys-5 | Fan OK         | 0        | PS 2
```

```
0 / 5 Fans in Failure State
0 / 5 Fans have been in Failure State
```

The state of all VSF switch members system fans is shown by using the command `show system fans from` within the VSF context.

```
VSF-Switch# show system fans
```

```
Fan Information
VSF-Member 1
```

```
  Num | State          | Failures | Location
-----+-----+-----+-----
Sys-1 | Fan OK         | 0        | Fan Tray
Sys-2 | Fan OK         | 0        | Fan Tray
```

```
Sys-3 | Fan OK | 0 | Fan Tray
Sys-4 | Fan OK | 0 | Fan Tray
Sys-5 | Fan Removed | 0 | PS 1
Sys-6 | Fan Failed | 2 | PS 2
```

```
1 / 6 Fans in Failure State
1 / 6 Fans have been in Failure State
```

VSF-Member 2

Num	State	Failures	Location
Sys-1	Fan OK	0	Fan Tray
Sys-2	Fan OK	0	Fan Tray
Sys-3	Fan OK	0	Fan Tray
Sys-4	Fan OK	0	Fan Tray
Sys-5	Fan OK	0	PS 1
Sys-6	Fan OK	0	PS 2

```
0 / 6 Fans in Failure State
0 / 6 Fans have been in Failure State
```

show system power-supply

Syntax

```
show system power-supply [detailed | fahrenheit]
```

Description

Shows power supply information in either full detail or full detail in Fahrenheit only. Default temperature is displayed in degrees Celsius.

Command context

manager and operator

Parameters

detailed

Shows detailed switch power supply sensor information.

fahrenheit

Shows detailed switch power supply sensor information with temperatures in degrees Fahrenheit.

Usage

- The `show system power-supply detailed` command shows detailed information for the local power supplies only.
- The `show system power-supply detailed` command shows detailed information for power supplies in the powered state only.

Examples

Use of the command `show system power-supply` shows the power supply status for all active switches.

```
Switch# show system power-supply

Power Supply Status:
```

PS#	Model	Serial	State	AC/DC + V	Wattage
1	J9828A	IN30G4D009	Powered	AC 120V/240V	700
2	J9828A	IN30G4D00C	Powered	AC 120V/240V	700
3			Not Present	--	0
4	J9830A	IN43G4G05H	Powered	AC 120V/240V	2750

3 / 4 supply bays delivering power.
Total power: 4150 W

Use of the command `show system power-supply detailed` shows the power supply status in detail for all active switches.

Switch# `show system power-supply detailed`

Status and Counters - Power Supply Detailed Information

PS#	Model	Serial	State	Status
1	J9828A	IN30G4D009	Powered	AC Power Consumption : 44 Watts AC MAIN Voltage : 209 Volts Power Supplied : 31 Watts Power Capacity : 700 Watts Inlet Temp (C/F) : 27.0C/80.6F Internal Temp (C/F) : 30.5C/86.0F Fan 1 Speed : 1600 RPM (47%) Fan 2 Speed : 1600 RPM (47%)
2	J9828A	IN30G4D00C	Powered	AC Power Consumption : 46 Watts AC MAIN Voltage : 209 Volts Power Supplied : 21 Watts Power Capacity : 700 Watts Inlet Temp (C/F) : 27.7C/80.6F Internal Temp (C/F) : 32.5C/89.6F Fan 1 Speed : 1600 RPM (47%) Fan 2 Speed : 1600 RPM (47%)
3			Not Present	
4	J9830A	IN43G4G05H	Powered	AC Power Consumption : 90 Watts AC MAIN/AUX Voltage : 210/118 Volts Power Supplied : 16 Watts Power Capacity : 2750 Watts Inlet Temp (C/F) : 30.9C/86.0F Internal Temp (C/F) : 65.6C/149.0F Fan 1 Speed : 2000 RPM (37%) Fan 2 Speed : 1950 RPM (36%)

3 / 4 supply bays delivering power.
Currently supplying 68 W / 4150 W total power.

Use of the command `show system power-supply fahrenheit` shows the power supply status in Fahrenheit for all active switches.

Switch# `show system power-supply detailed fahrenheit`

Power Supply Status:

Mem	PS#	Model	Serial	State	Status
1	1	J9830A	IN5BGZ81KZ	Powered	Power Consumption : 95 Watts AC MAIN/AUX Voltage : 118/208 Volts Inlet/Internal Temp : 85.6F/87.7F

```

Fan 1 Speed (util) : 1650RPM (20%)
Fan 2 Speed (util) : 1600RPM (19%)

1 2 J9829A IN5BGZ81KX Powered Power Consumption : 51 Watts
AC Input Voltage : 208 Volts
Inlet/Internal Temp : 85.6F/87.7F
Fan 1 Speed (util) : 1650RPM (20%)
Fan 2 Speed (util) : 1600RPM (19%)

1 3 J9828A IN5BGZ81KY Powered Power Consumption : 43 Watts
AC Input Voltage : 119 Volts
Inlet/Internal Temp : 85.6F/87.7F
Fan 1 Speed (util) : 1650RPM (20%)
Fan 2 Speed (util) : 1600RPM (19%)

1 4 Not Present

2 1 J9830A IN5BGZ81KZ Powered Power Consumption : 95 Watts
AC MAIN/AUX Voltage : 118/208 Volts
Inlet/Internal Temp : 85.6F/87.7F
Fan 1 Speed (util) : 1650RPM (20%)
Fan 2 Speed (util) : 1600RPM (19%)

2 2 J9829A IN5BGZ81KX Powered Power Consumption : 51 Watts
AC Input Voltage : 208 Volts
Inlet/Internal Temp : 85.6F/87.7F
Fan 1 Speed (util) : 1650RPM (20%)
Fan 2 Speed (util) : 1600RPM (19%)

2 3 J9828A IN5BGZ81KY Powered Power Consumption : 43 Watts
AC Input Voltage : 119 Volts
Inlet/Internal Temp : 85.6F/87.7F
Fan 1 Speed (util) : 1650RPM (20%)
Fan 2 Speed (util) : 1600RPM (19%)

2 4 Not Present
-----
6 / 8 supply bays delivering power.
Total Input Power: 378 Watts

```

Use of the command `show system power-supply detailed` shows the power supply status all active switches including a nonpowered J9830A PSU.

```
switch# show system power-supply detailed
```

Status and Counters - Power Supply Detailed Information

PS#	Model	Serial	State	Status
1	J9828A	IN30G4D009	Powered	AC Power Consumption : 44 Watts AC MAIN Voltage : 209 Volts Power Supplied : 31 Watts Power Capacity : 700 Watts Inlet Temp (C/F) : 27.0C/80.6F Internal Temp (C/F) : 30.5C/86.0F Fan 1 Speed : 1600 RPM Fan 2 Speed : 1600 RPM
2	J9828A	IN30G4D00C	Powered	AC Power Consumption : 46 Watts AC MAIN Voltage : 209 Volts Power Supplied : 21 Watts Power Capacity : 700 Watts Inlet Temp (C/F) : 27.7C/80.6F Internal Temp (C/F) : 32.5C/89.6F Fan 1 Speed : 1600 RPM

```

Fan 2 Speed : 1600 RPM

3 Not Present

4 J9830A IN43G4G05H Aux Not Powered

2 / 4 supply bays delivering power.
Currently supplying 68 W / 4150 W total power.

```

Use of the command `show system power-supply` shows the power supply status all active switches with power supply #2 showing permanent failure.

```
switch# show system power-supply
```

Power Supply Status:

PS#	Model	Serial	State	AC/DC + V	Wattage
1			Not Present	-- -----	0
2	J9829A	IN30G4D00C	Permanent Failure	AC 120V/240V	1100
3	J9829A	IN30G4D00D	Powered	-- -----	1100
4	J9829A	IN43G4G05H	Powered	AC 120V/240V	1100

3 / 4 supply bays delivering power.
Total power: 3300 W

Table 2: Field key for output of `show system power-supply` detailed


Field	Description
AC Power Consumption	Actual power consumed from AC input
AC MAIN/AUX Voltage	Actual voltage measured on AC Input: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Two voltages are displayed for PS#4, as the J9830A includes two AC input IEC connectors. Most power-supplies contain a single AC Input IEC connector and are labeled MAIN.
Power Supplied	Actual voltage being supplied from the power-supply to the switch for general power and PoE.
Power Capacity	The maximum power that the power-supply can provide to the switch.
Inlet Temp (C/F)	The thermal sensor at the inlet of the power-supply - shown in both Celsius and Fahrenheit
Internal Temp (C/F)	The thermal sensor internal to the power-supply (will vary depending upon the model) - shown in both Celsius and Fahrenheit. <div>  <p>NOTE: There is no "Output Temperature Sensor" on either the 5400R or 3810M switches.</p> </div>

Table Continued

Field	Description
Fan Speed	Shows the current fan speed in RPM and the percent of total fan speed utilization. For PSUs that contain more than one fan, a separate line will be included for each.
Currently Supplying	A summary of the total power being supplied and the total capacity (same summary as seen on the command <code>show system power-supply</code>).

Fan failures and SNMP traps

Power supply fan-fault

Power supply events indicating an internal fan-fault are reported by SNMP traps issued up to 10 seconds after the corresponding power supply fan fault occurs.

For single event power supply fan faults, a corresponding SNMP trap is issued.

Single event and corresponding SNMP trap issued for a power supply fan-fault and recovery

Shown is a fan-fault (fan 1 of 2) and spontaneous recovery a few seconds after within power supply in bay number 2. The event is issued as informative (I).

```
I 11/30/16 14:01:59 02778 chassis: AM1: Internal power supply 2: Fan 1 OK.
```

Fan-tray fan-fault events

For single event fan-tray fan-faults, the corresponding SNMP traps are issued only for fans within the fan-tray.

Single event and corresponding SNMP trap issued for a fan-tray fan-fault and recovery

Shown is a fan-tray fan-fault (fan number 3) and spontaneous recovery a few seconds after. The event is issued as "Informative" (I).

```
I 11/30/16 14:03:08 00070 chassis: AM1: Fan OK: Fan: 3 Failures: 1
```

Shown is a fan-tray fan-fault (fan number 3) failure. The event is issued as a "Warning" (w).

```
W 11/30/16 14:02:38 00070 chassis: AM1: Fan failure: Fan: 3 Failures: 1
```

System boot diagnostics

Power-on self-test (POST) is the diagnostic testing sequence that runs on start-up to verify hardware functionality. The command `show system post` provides information by slot or interface module, which aids in troubleshooting issues at startup.

show system post

Syntax

```
show system post <SLOT>
```

Description

Shows detailed POST information by slot or interface module, which aids in troubleshooting issues at start-up.

Command context

manager

Parameters

<SLOT>

Specifies the slot number for detailed POST information.

Example

Show the detailed POST information on slot 1.

```
switch# show system post 1
```

Slot 1 POST results

Failed Results:

Timestamp	Test Type	Port	Error Code
01/25/15 11:02:32	Loopback	2	0x1010060
01/25/15 11:02:50	Loopback	7	0x1032000
01/25/15 11:02:59	POE	10	0xFFFFFFFF
01/25/15 11:02:50	MACSEC	21	0x1082000

All Ports except the ones listed above have passed the following self-tests

1. Loopback
2. POE
3. MACSEC

Note: This is just a reference. POE and MACSEC tests may not show up in cases where there is no support.

Field descriptions

Table 3: Field descriptions

Field	Description
Timestamp	Time and date of the POST failure result
Test Type	There are 3 types of tests: Loopback Packet loopback test PoE PoE controller test MACSEC Loopback test with MACSEC enabled
Port	Slot port number
Error Code	Reason behind failure

show system post member

Syntax

```
show system post member <MEMBER-ID>
```

Description

Shows the detailed POST results for the specified stack member.

Command context

manager

Parameters

<MEMBER-ID>

Specifies the member ID for the stack.

Examples

Show the POST results for the stack member 1.

```
switch-stack# show system post member 1
```

POST results for member 1

Failed Results:

Timestamp	Test Type	Port	Error Code
-----	-----	----	-----
01/25/15 11:02:32	Loopback	1/2	0x1010060
01/25/15 11:02:50	Loopback	1/7	0x1032000
01/25/15 11:02:59	POE	1/10	0xFFFFFFFF
01/25/15 11:02:50	MACSEC	1/21	0x1082000

All Ports except the ones listed above have passed the following self-tests

1. Loopback
2. POE
3. MACSEC

Note: This is just a reference. POE and MACSEC tests may not show up in cases where there is no support.

show system post vsf member

Syntax

```
show system post vsf member <MEMBER-ID>
```

Description

Shows the detailed POST results for the specified VSF stack member.

Command context

manager

Parameters

<MEMBER-ID>

Specifies the member ID of the VSF stack.

Examples

Show the VSF member 1 detailed POST results.

```
switch-VSF# show system post vsf member 1
```

POST results for vsf member 1

Failed Results:

Timestamp	Test Type	Port	Error Code
-----	-----	----	-----
01/25/15 11:02:32	Loopback	1/2	0x1010060
01/25/15 11:02:50	Loopback	1/7	0x1032000
01/25/15 11:02:59	POE	1/10	0xFFFFFFFF
01/25/15 11:02:50	MACSEC	1/21	0x1082000

All Ports except the ones listed above have passed the following self-tests

1. Loopback
2. POE
3. MACSEC

Note: This is just a reference. POE and MACSEC tests may not show up in cases where there is no support.

Viewing port status and configuration

show interfaces

Syntax

```
show interfaces [brief | config | <PORT-LIST>]
```

Description

Shows interface information for ports or trunk groups in brief or configuration detail.

Command context

operator or manager

Parameters

brief

Shows the current operating status for all ports or trunk groups on the switch in brief detail.

config

Shows the configuration data for all ports or trunk groups on the switch.

<PORT-LIST>

Specifies the list of ports for which status information will be shown.

<TRUNK-GROUP>

Specifies the trunk group for which status information will be shown. The status information shown consists of total transmit and receive counters and weighted average rate for the trunk group specified. The weighted average rate is calculated in 5 minute intervals.

Usage

Both external and internal ports are supported on the same module. Internal ports have an “I” suffix in the output of the show command to indicate that they are internal ports.

- “10GbE-INT” – Internal 10G data-plane ports (1i-2i, 4i-5i)
- “1GbE-INT” – Internal 1G control-plane port (3i)
- Port 3i always shows as link-down.

Examples

Show brief information and status of all interfaces.

```
switch# show interfaces brief
```

```
Status and Counters - Port Status
Port  Type      | Intrusion
      | Alert      Enabled Status Mode      MDI   Flow  Bcast
      |           |          |         |         | Mode  Ctrl Limit
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+

```

B1	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	Auto-10-100	Auto	off	0
B2	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B3	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B4	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B5	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B6	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0

Show the configuration of the interfaces currently available.

```
switch# show interfaces config
```

Port Settings

Port	Type	Enabled	Mode	Flow Ctrl	MDI
-----	-----	+	-----	-----	-----
B1	100/1000T	Yes	Auto-10-100	Disable	Auto
B2	100/1000T	Yes	Auto	Disable	Auto
B3	100/1000T	Yes	Auto	Disable	Auto
B4	100/1000T	Yes	Auto	Disable	Auto
B5	100/1000T	Yes	Auto	Disable	Auto
B6	100/1000T	Yes	Auto	Disable	Auto

Show brief information and status of interfaces for ports D1i, D2i, and D3i.

```
switch# show interfaces brief d1i-d3i
```

Status and Counters - Port Status

Port	Type	Intrusion				MDI	Flow	Bcast
			Alert	Enabled	Status			
-----	-----	+	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
D1i	10GbE-INT	No	Yes	Up	10GigFD	NA	off	0
D2i	10GbE-INT	No	Yes	Up	10GigFD	NA	off	0
D3i	1GbE-INT	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	NA	off	0

Show the brief information and status of interfaces for ports B1 through internal port B3i.

```
switch# show interfaces brief b1-b3i
```

Status and Counters - Port Status

Port	Type	Intrusion				MDI	Flow	Bcast
			Alert	Enabled	Status			
-----	-----	+	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
B1	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B2	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B3	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B4	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B5	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B6	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B7	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B8	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B9	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B10	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B11	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B12	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B1i	10GbE-INT	No	Yes	Up	10GigFD	NA	off	0
B2i	10GbE-INT	No	Yes	Up	10GigFD	NA	off	0
B3i	1GbE-INT	No	Yes	Up	1000FDx	NA	off	0

Show detailed interface information for port trunk 1.

```
switch# show interface trk1
```

Status and Counters - Port Counters for port Trk1

```
Name : Trk1
MAC Address : 3464a9-b1b8bf
```

```

Link Status      : Up
Totals (Since boot or last clear) :
  Bytes Rx       : 777,713,956
  Unicast Rx     : 1,154,693
  Bcast/Mcast Rx : 48,563
Errors (Since boot or last clear) :
  FCS Rx        : 0
  Alignment Rx   : 0
  Runts Rx      : 0
  Giants Rx     : 0
  Total Rx Errors : 0
Others (Since boot or last clear) :
  Discard Rx     : 0
  Unknown Protos : 0
Rates (5 minute weighted average) :
  Total Rx(Kbps) : 76,800
  Unicast Rx (Pkts/sec) : 21
  B/Mcast Rx (Pkts/sec) : 114,878
  Utilization Rx : 00.76 %
Utilization Tx  : 00.76 %

Bytes Tx        : 596,853,141
Unicast Tx     : 0
Bcast/Mcast Tx : 607,474,910

Drops Tx       : 0
Collisions Tx  : 0
Late Colln     : 0
Excessive Colln : 0
Deferred Tx    : 0

Out Queue Len  : 0

Total Tx(Kbps) : 76,800
Unicast Tx (Pkts/sec) : 0
B/Mcast Tx (Pkts/sec) : 114,900

```

Viewing transceiver information



NOTE: 40G QSFP+ BIDI transceiver support is available only on switches running KB software.

This feature provides the ability to view diagnostic monitoring information for transceivers with Diagnostic Optical Monitoring (DOM) support. The following table indicates the support level for specific transceivers:

Product #	Description	Support ¹
J8436A	10GbE X2-SC SR Optic	V
J8437A	10GbE X2-SC LR Optic	V
J8440B	10GbE X2-CX4 Xcver	NA
J8440C	10GbE X2-CX4 Xcver	NA
J4858A	Gigabit-SX-LC Mini-GBIC	V
J4858B	Gigabit-SX-LC Mini-GBIC	V
J4858C	Gigabit-SX-LC Mini-GBIC	V (some)
J9054B	100-FX SFP-LC Transceiver	N
J8177C	Gigabit 1000Base-T Mini-GBIC	NA

Table Continued

Product #	Description	Support ¹
J9150A	10GbE SFP+ SR Transceiver	D
J9151A	10GbE SFP+ LR Transceiver	D
J9152A	10GbE SFP+ LRM Transceiver	D
J9153A	10GbE SFP+ ER Transceiver	D
J9144A	10GbE X2-SC LRM Transceiver	D
J8438A	10GbE X2-SC ER Transceiver	D
JH233A	40G QSFP+ MPO eSR4 Transceiver	V
JH232A	40G QSFP+ LC LR4 SM Transceiver	V
JL308A	40G QSFP+BI-DI	V
JH231A	40G QSFP+ MPO SR4 Transceiver	V

¹ Support indicators:

- V - Validated to respond to DOM requests
- N - No support of DOM
- D - Documented by the component suppliers as supporting DOM
- NA - Not applicable to the transceiver (copper transceiver)



NOTE: Not all transceivers support Digital Optical Monitoring. If DOM appears in the Diagnostic Support field of the `show interfaces transceiver detail` command, or the `hpicfTransceiverMIB hpicfXcvrDiagnostics` MIB object, DOM is supported for that transceiver.

The port VLAN tagged status

The `show interfaces status` command displays port status, configuration mode, speed, type and tagged or untagged information.

Tagged values can be:

- VLAN ID: When the VLAN number is displayed, the port is a member of a single tagged VLAN.
- multi: When “multi” is displayed, the port is a member of multiple tagged VLANs.
- no: When “no” is displayed, the port is not a member of any tagged VLAN.

Untagged values can be:

- VLAN-ID: When the VLAN number is displayed, the port is a member of a single untagged VLAN.
- multi: When “multi” is displayed, the port is added to multiple untagged VLANs.
- no: When “no” is displayed, the port is not a member of any tagged VLAN.

If the port is part of a trunk, then the trunk_VLAN membership is displayed in the Tagged and Untagged columns.

show interfaces

```
switch(config)# show interfaces status
Port Name Status Config-mode Speed Type Tagged Untagged
-----
A1 Up Auto 1000FDx 100/1000T 2 1
A2 Down 10HDx 10HDx 100/1000T multi 2
A3 Down 100HDx 100HDx 100/1000T multi 3
A4 Down 10FDx 10FDx 100/1000T 5 4
A5-Trk1 Down 100FDx 100FDx 100/1000T No No
A6 Down Auto 1000FDx 100/1000T No 6
A7 Down Auto-10 10HDx 100/1000T No 7
```

Dynamically updating the show interfaces command

command name

Syntax

```
show interfaces display
```

Description

Uses the **display** option to initiate the dynamic update of the `show interfaces` command, with the output being the same as the `show interfaces` command.

Usage

Select **Back** to exit the display.

show interfaces display

```
switch# show interfaces display
```

When using the **display** option in the CLI, the information stays on the screen and is updated every 3 seconds, as occurs with the display using the menu feature. The update is terminated with **CTRL-C**.

You can use the arrow keys to scroll through the screen when the output does not fit in one screen.

Figure 9: *show interfaces display* command with dynamically updating output

Status and Counters - Port Counters							
Port	Total Bytes	Total Frames	Errors Rx	Drops Tx	Flow Ctrl	Bea	Lim
1	2,164,277	20,366	0	0	off	0	0
2	0	0	0	0	off	0	0
3	0	0	0	0	off	0	0
4	0	0	0	0	off	0	0
5	0	0	0	0	off	0	0
6	0	0	0	0	off	0	0
7	0	0	0	0	off	0	0
8	0	0	0	0	off	0	0
9	0	0	0	0	off	0	0
10	0	0	0	0	off	0	0
11	0	0	0	0	off	0	0
Actions-> Back Show details Reset Help							
Use up/down arrow keys to scroll to other entries, left/right arrow keys to change action selection, and <Enter> to execute action.							

Customizing the show interfaces command

You can create `show` commands displaying the information that you want to see in any order you want by using the option.

show interfaces custom

Syntax

```
show interfaces custom <PORT-LIST> <COLUMN-LIST>
```

Description

Select the information that you want to display. Supported columns are shown in the following section.

Parameters and options

port

port identifier, such as A2.

type

Port type, such as 100/1000T

status

Port status, up or down.

speed

Connection speed and duplex, such as 1000FDX

mode

Configured mode, auto, auto-100, 100FDX

mdi

MDI mode, auto, MDIX

flow

Flow control, on or off

name

Friendly port name

vlanid

The vlan id this port belongs to, or “tagged” if it belongs to more than one vlan.

enabled

Port is or is not enabled, yes or no.

intrusion

Intrusion alert status, no.

bcast

Broadcast limit, 0

You can specify the column width by entering a colon after the column name, then indicating the number of characters to display. In **Example of the custom show interfaces command** on page 116, the Name column displays only the first four characters of the name. All remaining characters are truncated.

Each field has a fixed minimum width to be displayed. If you specify a field width smaller than the minimum width, the information is displayed at the minimum width. For example, if the minimum width for the Name field is 4 characters and you specify Name:2, the Name field displays 4 characters.

You can enter parameters in any order. There is a limit of 80 characters per line; if you exceed this limit an error displays.

Example of the custom show interfaces command

```
switch# show int custom 1-4 port name:4 type vlan intrusion speed enabled mdi
```

Status and Counters - Custom Port Status

Port	Name	Type	VLAN	Intrusion Alert	Speed	Enabled	MDI-mode
1	Acco	100/1000T	1	No	1000FDx	Yes	Auto
2	Huma	100/1000T	1	No	1000FDx	Yes	Auto
3	Deve	100/1000T	1	No	1000FDx	Yes	Auto
4	Lab1	100/1000T	1	No	1000FDx	Yes	Auto

show interface smartrate

Syntax

```
show interface <PORT-LIST> smartrate
```

Description

The option `smartrate` has been added to the `show interface <PORT-LIST>` command. This option is used to display port diagnostics on a Smart Rate port only. If the command is run on a non - Smart Rate port, a message similar to Port A1: This command is only applicable to Smart Rate ports will display.

show interface port utilization

Syntax

```
show interface port-utilization
```

Description

Use the `show interface port-utilization` command to view a real-time rate display for all ports on the switch. **show interface port-utilization command** on page 117 shows a sample output from this command.

- For each port on the switch, the command provides a real-time display of the rate at which data is received (Rx) and transmitted (Tx) in terms of kilobits per second (KBits/s), number of packets per second (Pkts/s), and utilization (Util) expressed as a percentage of the total bandwidth available.
- The `show interfaces <PORT-LIST>` command can be used to display the current link status and the port rate average over a 5 minute period. Port rates are shown in bits per second (bps) for ports up to 1 Gigabit; for 10 Gigabit ports, port rates are shown in kilobits per second (Kbps.)

show interface port-utilization command

```
Switch(config)# show interfaces port-utilization
Status and Counters - Port Utilization
```

Port	Mode	Rx			Tx		
		Kbits/sec	Pkts/sec	Util	Kbits/sec	Pkts/sec	Util
B1	1000FDx	0	0	0	0	0	0
B2	1000FDx	0	0	0	0	0	0
B3	1000FDx	0	0	0	0	0	0
B4	1000FDx	0	0	0	0	0	0
B5	1000FDx	0	0	0	0	0	0
B6	1000FDx	0	0	0	0	0	0
B7	100FDx	624	86	00.62	496	0	00.49

Enabling or disabling ports and configuring port mode

You can configure one or more of the following port parameters.

interface

Syntax

```
interface <PORT-LIST> [disable|enable]
```

Description

Disables or enables the port for network traffic. Does not use the `no` form of the command. Defaults to `enable`. You can substitute `int` for `interface` (for example, `int <PORT-LIST> .`)

Parameters and options

speed-duplex [`auto-10`|`10-full`|`10-half`|`100-full`|`100-half`|`auto`|`auto-100`|`1000-full`]

Specifies the port's data transfer speed and mode. Does not use the `no` form of the command. Default: `auto`.

The 10/100 auto-negotiation feature allows a port to establish a link with a port at the other end at either 10 Mbps or 100 Mbps, using the highest mutual speed and duplex mode available. Only these speeds are allowed with this setting.

Configure port C5 for auto-10-100

```
switch# int c5 speed-duplex auto-10-100
```

Configure ports C1 through C3 and port C6 for 100Mbps full-duplex

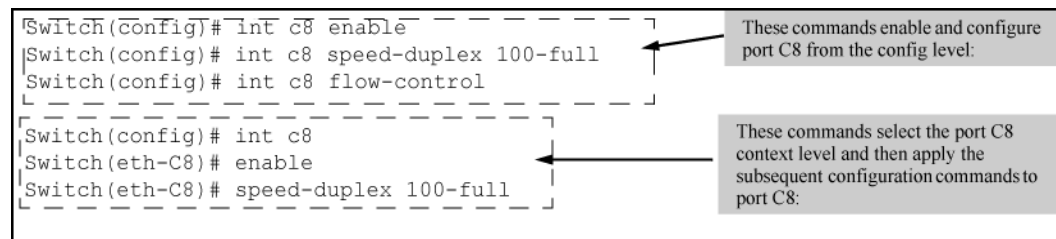
```
switch# int c1-c3,c6 speed-duplex 100-full
```

Similarly, to configure a single port with the above command settings, you could either enter the same command with only the one port identified or go to the context level for that port and then enter the command. For example, to enter the context level for port C6 and then configure that port for 100FDx:

```
switch# int e c6
switch(eth-C6#) speed-duplex 100-full
```

If port C8 was disabled, and you wanted to enable it and configure it for 100FDx with flow-control active, you could do so with either of the following command sets:

Figure 10: Two methods for changing a port configuration



Basic USB port commands

This feature allows configuration of the USB port with either the CLI or SNMP.

Syntax

```
show usb-port
```

Description

To display the status of the USB port: Displays the status of the USB port. It can be enabled, disabled, or not present.

show usb-port command output

```
switch# show usb-port

USB port status: enabled
USB port power status: power on      (USB device detected in port)
```

One of the following messages indicates the presence or absence of the USB device:

- Not able to sense device in USB port
- USB device detected in port
- no USB device detected in port

usb-port

Syntax

```
usb-port
```

```
no usb-port
```

Description

Enables the USB port.

The `no` form of the command disables the USB port and any access to the device.

Command context

Config

show usb-port

Syntax

```
show usb-port
```

Description

Displays the status of the USB port. It can be enabled, disabled, or not present.

Command context

operator

Usage

One of the following messages indicates the presence or absence of a USB device:

- Not able to sense device in USB port
- USB device detected in port
- no USB device detected in port

Example

Display USB port status.

```
switch# show usb-port
```

```
USB port status: enabled
USB port power status: power on      (USB device detected in port)
```

Enabling or disabling flow control

You must enable flow control on both ports in a given link. Otherwise, flow control does not operate on the link and appears as `Off` in the `show interfaces brief` port listing, even if flow control is configured as enabled on the port in the switch. Also, the port (speed-duplex) mode must be set to `Auto` (the default).

To disable flow control on some ports, while leaving it enabled on other ports, just disable it on the individual ports you want to exclude.

interface flow-control

Syntax

```
interface <PORT-LIST> flow-control
```

Description

Enables or disables flow control packets on the port. Default: Disabled.

Parameters

no

The `no` form of the command disables flow control on the individual ports.

Examples

```
no interface <PORT-LIST> flow-control
```

Usage

1. You want to enable flow control on ports A1-A6.
2. Later, you decide to disable flow control on ports A5 and A6.
3. As a final step, you want to disable flow control on all ports.

Assuming that flow control is currently disabled on the switch, you would use these commands:

Configuring flow control for a series of ports

```
switch# int a1-a6 flow-control
switch# show interfaces brief
```

Status and Counters - Port Status

Port	Type	Intrusion		Enabled	Status	Mode	MDI Mode	Flow Ctrl	Bcast Limit
		Alert							
A1	10GbE-T	No		Yes	Up	1000FDx	NA	on	0
A2	10GbE-T	No		Yes	Up	10GigFD	NA	on	0
A3	10GbE-T	No		Yes	Up	10GigFD	NA	on	0
A4	10GbE-T	No		Yes	Up	10GigFD	NA	on	0
A5	10GbE-T	No		Yes	Up	10GigFD	NA	on	0
A6	10GbE-T	No		Yes	Up	10GigFD	NA	on	0
A7	10GbE-T	No		Yes	Down	10GigFD	NA	off	0
A8	10GbE-T	No		Yes	Up	10GigFD	NA	off	0

Example continued from Configuring flow control for a series of ports

```
switch# no int a5-a6 flow-control
switch# show interfaces brief
```

Status and Counters - Port Status

Port	Type	Intrusion		Enabled	Status	Mode	MDI Mode	Flow Ctrl	Bcast Limit
		Alert							
A1	10GbE-T	No		Yes	Up	1000FDx	NA	on	0
A2	10GbE-T	No		Yes	Down	10GigFD	NA	on	0
A3	10GbE-T	No		Yes	Down	10GigFD	NA	on	0

A4	10GbE-T		No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	NA	on	0
A5	10GbE-T		No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	NA	off	0
A6	10GbE-T		No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	NA	off	0
A7	10GbE-T		No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	NA	off	0
A8	10GbE-T		No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	NA	off	0

Example continued from Example continued from Configuring flow control for a series of ports

```
switch# no int a1-a4 flow-control
switch# show interfaces brief
```

Status and Counters - Port Status

Port	Type		Intrusion Alert	Enabled	Status	Mode	MDI Mode	Flow Ctrl	Bcast Limit
A1	10GbE-T		No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	NA	off	0
A2	10GbE-T		No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	NA	off	0
A3	10GbE-T		No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	NA	off	0
A4	10GbE-T		No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	NA	off	0
A5	10GbE-T		No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	NA	off	0
A6	10GbE-T		No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	NA	off	0
A7	10GbE-T		No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	NA	off	0
A8	10GbE-T		No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	NA	off	0

Configuring auto-MDIX

interface mdix-mode

Syntax

```
interface <PORT-LIST> mdix-mode [auto-mdix|mdi|mdix]
```

Description

The auto-MDIX features apply only to copper port switches using twisted-pair copper Ethernet cables.

Parameters

auto-mdix

The automatic, default setting. This configures the port for automatic detection of the cable (either straight-through or crossover.)

mdi

The manual mode setting that configures the port for connecting to either a PC or other MDI device with a crossover cable, or to a switch, hub, or other MDI-X device with a straight-through cable.

mdix

The manual mode setting that configures the port for connecting to either a switch, hub, or other MDI-X device with a crossover cable, or to a PC or other MDI device with a straight-through cable.

show interfaces config

Syntax

```
show interfaces config
```

Description

Lists the current per-port Auto/MDI/MDI-X configuration.

show interfaces brief

Syntax

```
show interfaces brief
```

Description

- Where a port is linked to another device, this command lists the MDI mode the port is currently using.
- In the case of ports configured for `Auto` (`auto-mdix`), the MDI mode appears as either `MDI` or `MDIX`, depending upon which option the port has negotiated with the device on the other end of the link.
- In the case of ports configured for `MDI` or `MDIX`, the mode listed in this display matches the configured setting.
- If the link to another device was up, but has gone down, this command shows the last operating MDI mode the port was using.
- If a port on a given switch has not detected a link to another device since the last reboot, this command lists the MDI mode to which the port is currently configured.

`show interfaces config` displays the following data when port A1 is configured for `auto-mdix`, port A2 is configured for `mdi`, and port A3 is configured for `mdix`:

Example of displaying the current MDI configuration

```
switch# show interfaces config
```

Port Settings

Port	Type		Enabled	Mode	Flow Ctrl	MDI
-----	-----	+	-----	-----	-----	----
A1	10GbE-T		Yes	Auto	Disable	Auto
A2	10GbE-T		Yes	Auto	Disable	MDI
A3	10GbE-T		Yes	Auto	Disable	MDIX
A4	10GbE-T		Yes	Auto	Disable	Auto
A5	10GbE-T		Yes	Auto	Disable	Auto
A6	10GbE-T		Yes	Auto	Disable	Auto
A7	10GbE-T		Yes	Auto	Disable	Auto
A8	10GbE-T		Yes	Auto	Disable	Auto

Example of displaying the current MDI operating mode

```
switch# show interfaces brief
```

Status and Counters - Port Status

Port	Type		Intrusion				MDI	Flow	Bcast
-----	-----	+	-----	-----	-----	-----	----	----	----
A1	10GbE-T		No	Yes	Up	1000FDx	MDIX	off	0
A2	10GbE-T		No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	MDI	off	0
A3	10GbE-T		No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	MDIX	off	0
A4	10GbE-T		No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	Auto	off	0
A5	10GbE-T		No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	Auto	off	0
A6	10GbE-T		No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	Auto	off	0
A7	10GbE-T		No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	Auto	off	0
A8	10GbE-T		No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	Auto	off	0

Configuring friendly port names

interface name

Syntax

```
interface <PORT-LIST> name <port-name-string>
```

Description

Assigns a port name to <PORT-LIST>.

Parameter

no

Deletes the port name from <PORT-LIST>.

Configuring a single port name

Suppose that you have connected port A3 on the switch to Bill Smith's workstation, and want to assign Bill's name and workstation IP address (10.25.101.73) as a port name for port A3:

Example of configuring a friendly port name

```
switch# int A3 name Bill_Smith@10.25.101.73
switch# write mem
switch# show name A3
```

```
Port Names
Port : A3
Type : 10/100TX
Name : Bill_Smith@10.25.101.73
```

Configuring the same name for multiple ports

Suppose that you want to use ports A5 through A8 as a trunked link to a server used by a drafting group. In this case you might configure ports A5 through A8 with the name "Draft-Server:Trunk."

Example of configuring one friendly port name on multiple ports

```
switch# int a5-a8 name Draft-Server:Trunk
switch# write mem
switch# show name a5-a8
```

```
Port Names

Port : A5
Type : 10GbE-T
Name : Draft-Server:Trunk
Port : A6
Type : 10GbE-T
Name : Draft-Server:Trunk
Port : A7
Type : 10GbE-T
Name : Draft-Server:Trunk
Port : A8
Type : 10GbE-T
Name : Draft-Server:Trunk
```

Viewing friendly port names with other port data

show name

Syntax

```
show name
```

Description

Displays a listing of port numbers with their corresponding friendly port names and also quickly shows you which ports do not have friendly name assignments. (`show name` data comes from the running-config file.)

show interface

Syntax

```
show interface <PORT-NUMBER>
```

Displays the friendly port name, if any, along with the traffic statistics for that port. (The friendly port name data comes from the running-config file.)

show config

Syntax

```
show config
```

Description

Includes friendly port names in the per-port data of the resulting configuration listing. (`show config` data comes from the startup-config file.)

Listing all ports or selected ports with their friendly port names

show name

Syntax

```
show name <PORT-LIST>
```

Description

Lists the friendly port name with its corresponding port number and port type. The `show name` command without a port list shows this data for all ports on the switch.

Example of friendly port name data for all ports on the switch

```
switch# show name
Port Names
```

Port	Type	Name
A1	10GbE-T	
A2	10GbE-T	
A3	10GbE-T	Bill_Smith@10.25.101.73
A4	10GbE-T	

A5	10GbE-T	Draft-Server:Trunk
A6	10GbE-T	Draft-Server:Trunk
A7	10GbE-T	Draft-Server:Trunk
A8	10GbE-T	Draft-Server:Trunk

Example of friendly port name data for specific ports on the switch

```
switch# show name A3-A5
```

Port Names

```
Port : A3
Type : 10GbE-T
Name : Bill_Smith@10.25.101.73
Port : A4
Type : 10GbE-T
Name :
Port : A5
Type : 10GbE-T
Name : Draft-Server:Trunk
```

Including friendly port names in per-port statistics listings

show interface

Syntax

```
show interface <PORT-NUMBER>
```

Description

Includes the friendly port name with the port's traffic statistics listing. A friendly port name configured to a port is automatically included when you display the port's statistics output.

If you configure port A1 with the name "O'Connor_10.25.101.43," the `show interface` output for this port appears similar to the following:

Usage

```
switch(config)# show interfaces 1
switch(config)# show interface 1 hc
switch(config)# show int queues 1
```

Example show interfaces 1

```
switch(config)# show interfaces 1
```

Status and Counters - Port Counters for port 1

```
Name :
MAC Address      : 1cc1de-4d8d7f
Link Status      : Up
Port Enabled     : <Yes/No>
Totals (Since boot or last clear) :
  Bytes Rx       : 218,939
  Unicast Rx     : 538
  Bcast/Mcast Rx : 1,132
  Bytes Tx       : 99,019
  Unicast Tx     : 290
  Bcast/Mcast Tx : 166
Errors (Since boot or last clear) :
  FCS Rx        : 0
  Alignment Rx   : 0
  Drops Tx      : 0
  Collisions Tx : 0
```

```

Runts Rx      : 0
Giants Rx     : 0
Total Rx Errors : 0
Others (Since boot or last clear) :
Discard Rx    : 0
Unknown Protos : 0
Rates (5 minute weighted average) :
Total Rx (bps) : 0
Unicast Rx (Pkts/sec) : 0
B/Mcast Rx (Pkts/sec) : 0
Utilization Rx : 0 %

Late Colln Tx : 0
Excessive Colln : 0
Deferred Tx   : 0
Out Queue Len : 0

Total Tx (bps) : 0
Unicast Tx (Pkts/sec) : 0
B/Mcast Tx (Pkts/sec) : 0
Utilization Tx : 0 %

```

Example show interface 1 hc

```

switch(config)# show interface 1 hc
Status and Counters - Port Counters for port 1

Name :
MAC Address : 1cc1de-4d8d7f
Link Status : Up
Port Enabled : <Yes/No>
Totals (Since boot or last clear) :
  Bytes Rx : 221,044
  Unicast Rx : 545
  Bcast/Mcast Rx : 1,143
Errors (Since boot or last clear) :
  FCS Rx : 0
  Alignment Rx : 0
  Runts Rx : 0
  Giants Rx : 0
  Total Rx Errors : 0
Others (Since boot or last clear) :
  Discard Rx : 0
  Unknown Protos : 0
Rates (5 minute weighted average) :
  Total Rx (bps) : 0
  Unicast Rx (Pkts/sec) : 0
  B/Mcast Rx (Pkts/sec) : 0

Bytes Tx : 100,043
Unicast Tx : 294
Bcast/Mcast Tx : 168

Drops Tx : 0
Collisions Tx : 0
Late Colln Tx : 0
Excessive Colln : 0
Deferred Tx : 0
Out Queue Len : 0

Total Tx (bps) : 0
Unicast Tx (Pkts/sec) : 0
B/Mcast Tx (Pkts/sec) : 0
switch(config)#

```

Example show int queues 1

```

switch(config)# show int queues 1
Status and Counters - Port Counters for port 1

Name :
MAC Address : 1cc1de-4d8d7f
Link Status : Down
Port Enabled : <Yes/No>
Port Totals (Since boot or last clear) :
  Rx Packets : 1,754
  Rx Bytes : 229,698
  Rx Drop Packets : 0
  Rx Drop Bytes : 0
  Tx Packets : 482
  Tx Bytes : 103,963
  Tx Drop Packets : 0
  Tx Drop Bytes : 0

Egress Queue Totals (Since boot or last clear) :
  Tx Packets  Dropped Packets  Tx Bytes  Dropped Bytes
Q1  0         0              0          0
Q2  0         0              0          0
Q3  313       0             59,681       0
Q4  0         0              0          0

```

Q5	0	0	0	0
Q6	0	0	0	0
Q7	0	0	0	0
Q8	169	0	44,282	0



NOTE: For a given port, if a friendly port name does not exist in the running-config file, the Name line in the above command output appears as `Name : not assigned`.

Searching the configuration for ports with friendly port names

This option tells you which friendly port names have been saved to the startup-config file. (`show config` does not include ports that have only default settings in the startup-config file.)

show config

Syntax

```
show config
```

Description

Includes friendly port names in a listing of all interfaces (ports) configured with non-default settings. Excludes ports that have neither a friendly port name nor any other non-default configuration settings.

If you configure port A1 with a friendly port name:

Figure 11: Listing of the startup-config file with a friendly port name configured

```
Switch(config)# int A1 name Print_Server@10.25.101.43
Switch(config)# write mem
Switch(config)# int A2 name Herbert's_PC

Switch(config)# show config

Startup configuration:
; J9091A Configuration Editor; Created on release K.15.05.xxxx
hostname "Switch"
interface AQ
    name "Print_Server@10.25.101.43"
exit

snmp-server community "public" Unrestricted
.
.
.
```

This command sequence saves the friendly port name for port A1 in the startup-config file. The name entered for port A2 is not saved because it was executed after **write memory**.

Configuring uni-directional link detection

interface link-keepalive

Syntax

```
interface <PORT-LIST> link-keepalive
```

Description

Enables UDLD on a port or range of ports. Default: UDLD disabled

Parameters and options

no

To disable this feature, enter the **no** form of the command.

link-keepalive interval <INTERVAL>

Determines the time interval to send UDLD control packets. The *interval* parameter specifies how often the ports send a UDLD packet. You can specify from 10 to 100, in 100-ms increments, where 10 is 1 second, 11 is 1.1 seconds, and so on.

Default: 50 (5 seconds)

link-keepalive retries <NUM>

Determines the maximum number of retries to send UDLD control packets. The *num* parameter specifies the maximum number of times the port will try the health check. You can specify a value from 3 to 10.

Default: 5

link-keepalive vlan <VID>

Assigns a VLAN ID to a UDLD-enabled port for sending tagged UDLD control packets. Under default settings, untagged UDLD packets can still be transmitted and received on tagged only ports; however, a warning message is logged.

The **no** form of the command disables UDLD on the specified ports.

Default: UDLD packets are untagged; tagged-only ports transmit and receive untagged UDLD control packets

Enabling UDLD

UDLD is enabled on a per-port basis.

When at least one port is UDLD-enabled, the switch will forward out UDLD packets that arrive on non-UDLD-configured ports out of all other non-UDLD configured ports in the same vlan. That is, UDLD control packets will “pass through” a port that is not configured for UDLD. However, UDLD packets will be dropped on any blocked ports that are not configured for UDLD.

Enable UDLD on port a1

```
switch# interface a1 link-keepalive
```

Enter the appropriate port range to enable the feature on a trunk group

```
switch#interface a1-a4 link-keepalive
```

Changing the keepalive interval

By default, ports enabled for UDLD send a link health-check packet once every 5 seconds. You can change the interval to a value from 10 to 100 deciseconds, where 10 is 1 second, 11 is 1.1 seconds, and so on.

Change packet interval to seven seconds

```
switch# link-keepalive interval 70
```

Changing the keepalive retries

By default, a port waits 5 seconds to receive a health-check reply packet from the port at the other end of the link. If the port does not receive a reply, the port tries four more times by sending up to four more health-check packets. If the port still does not receive a reply after the maximum number of retries, the port goes down.

You can change the maximum number of keepalive attempts to a value from 3 to 10.

Change the maximum number of attempts to four

```
switch# link-keepalive retries 4
```

Configuring UDLD for tagged ports

The default implementation of UDLD sends the UDLD control packets untagged, even across tagged ports. If an untagged UDLD packet is received by a non-Hewlett Packard Enterprise switch, that switch may reject the packet. To avoid such an occurrence, you can configure ports to send out UDLD control packets that are tagged with a specified VLAN.

enable ports to receive and send UDLD control packets tagged with a specific VLAN ID

```
switch# interface llink-keepalive vlan 22
```

- You must configure the same VLANs that will be used for UDLD on all devices across the network; otherwise, the UDLD link cannot be maintained.
- If a VLAN ID is not specified, UDLD control packets are sent out of the port as untagged packets.
- To re-assign a VLAN ID, re-enter the command with the new VLAN ID number. The new command overwrites the previous command setting.
- When configuring UDLD for tagged ports, you may receive a warning message if there are any inconsistencies with the VLAN configuration of the port. See [Viewing port status and configuration](#) on page 110 for potential problems.

Viewing UDLD information

show link-keepalive

Syntax

```
show link-keepalive
```

Description

Displays all the ports that are enabled for `link-keepalive`.

Parameters

statistics

Displays detailed statistics for the UDLD-enabled ports on the switch.

clear link-keepalive

Syntax

```
clear link-keepalive statistics
```

Description

Clears UDLD statistics. This command clears the packets sent, packets received, and transitions counters in the `show link-keepalive statistics` display.

Parameters

statistics

Displays detailed statistics for the UDLD-enabled ports on the switch.

Viewing summary information on all UDLD-enabled ports

Enter the `show link-keepalive` command.

show link-keepalive command

Figure 12: `show link-keepalive`

The figure shows the output of the `show link-keepalive` command on a switch. The output includes summary statistics and a table of port details. Annotations explain the status of each port.

```
Switch(config)# show link-keepalive

Total link-keepalive enabled ports: 4
Keepalive Retries: 3           Keepalive Interval: 1 sec
```

Port	Enabled	Physical Status	Keepalive Status	Adjacent Switch	UDLD VLAN
1	Yes	up	up	00d9d-f9b700	200
2	Yes	up	up	01560-7b1600	
3	Yes	down	off-line		
4	Yes	up	failure		
5	No	down	off-line		

Annotations:

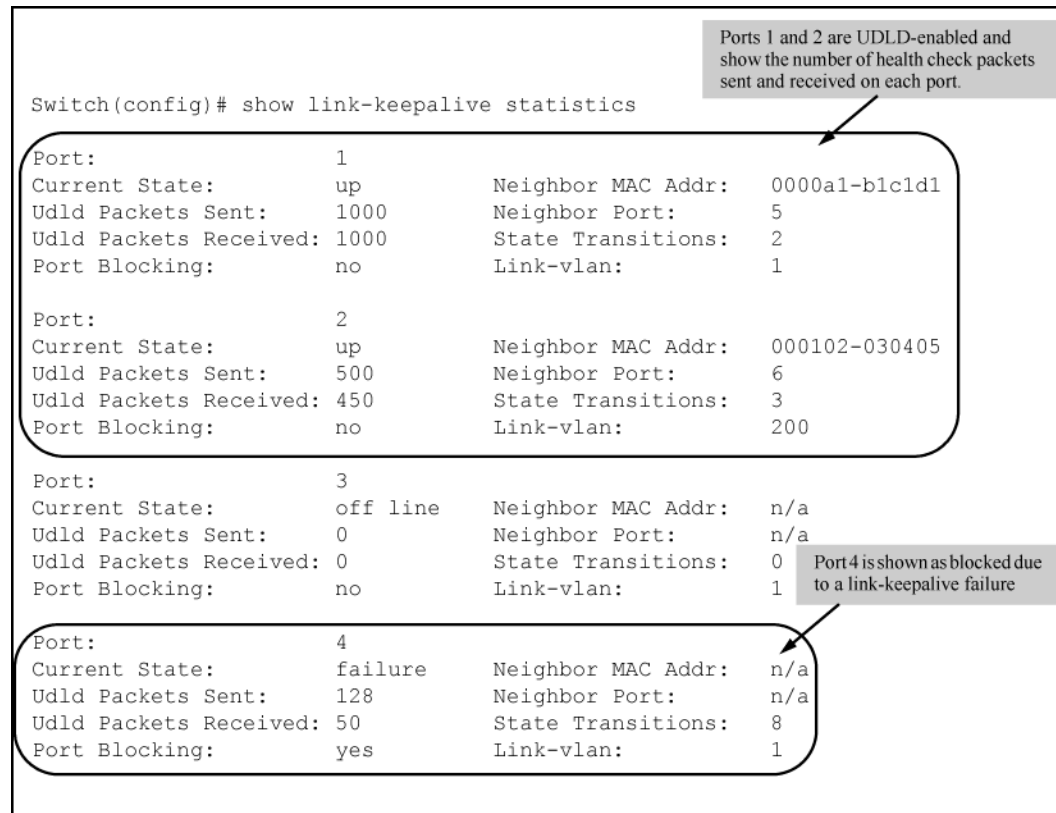
- Port 1 is UDLD-enabled, and tagged for a specific VLAN.
- Port 3 is UDLD-enabled, but has no physical connection.
- Port 4 is connected, but is blocked due to a link-keepalive failure.
- Port 5 has been disabled by the System Administrator.

Viewing detailed UDLD information for specific ports

Enter the `show link-keepalive statistics` command.

show link-keepalive command

Figure 13: *show link-keepalive statistics*



Port status and Port parameters

Connecting transceivers to fixed-configuration devices

Cause

If the switch either fails to show a link between an installed transceiver and another device or demonstrates errors or other unexpected behavior on the link, check the port configuration on both devices for a speed and/or duplex (mode) mismatch.

- To check the mode setting for a port on the switch, use either the Port Status screen in the menu interface or `show interfaces brief` in the CLI.
- To display information about the transceivers installed on a switch, enter the `show tech receivers` command in the CLI.

Enabled

Yes (default): The port is ready for a network connection.

No: The port will not operate, even if properly connected in a network. Use this setting, for example, if the port needs to be shut down for diagnostic purposes or while you are making topology changes.

Status (read-only)

Up: The port senses a link beat.

Mode

The port's speed and duplex (data transfer operation) setting.

10/100/1000Base-T Ports:

- **Auto-MDIX (default):** Senses speed and negotiates with the port at the other end of the link for port operation (MDI-X or MDI.)
To see what the switch negotiates for the auto setting, use the CLI `show interfaces brief` command or the 3. Port Status option under 1. Status and Counters in the menu interface.
- **MDI:** Sets the port to connect with a PC using a crossover cable (manual mode—applies only to copper port switches using twisted-pair copper Ethernet cables)
- **MDIX:** Sets the port to connect with a PC using a straight-through cable (manual mode—applies only to copper port switches using twisted-pair copper Ethernet cables)
- **Auto-10:** Allows the port to negotiate between half-duplex (HDx) and full-duplex (FDx) while keeping speed at 10 Mbps. Also negotiates flow control (enabled or disabled.) Hewlett Packard Enterprise recommends auto-10 for links between 10/100 auto-sensing ports connected with Cat 3 cabling. (Cat 5 cabling is required for 100 Mbps links.)
- **10HDx:** 10 Mbps, half-duplex
- **10FDx:** 10 Mbps, full-duplex
- **Auto-100:** Uses 100 Mbps and negotiates with the port at the other end of the link for other port operation features.
- **Auto-10-100:** Allows the port to establish a link with the port at the other end at either 10 Mbps or 100 Mbps, using the highest mutual speed and duplex mode available. Only these speeds are allowed with this setting.
- **Auto-1000:** Uses 1000 Mbps and negotiates with the port at the other end of the link for other port operation features.
- **100Hdx:** Uses 100 Mbps, half-duplex.
- **100Fdx:** Uses 100 Mbps, full-duplex

Gigabit Fiber-Optic Ports (Gigabit-SX, Gigabit-LX, and Gigabit-LH):

- **1000FDx:** 1000 Mbps (1 Gbps), full-duplex only
- **Auto (default):** The port operates at 1000FDx and auto-negotiates flow control with the device connected to the port.

Gigabit Copper Ports:

- **1000FDx:** 1000 Mbps (1 Gbps), full-duplex only
- **Auto (default):** The port operates at 1000FDx and auto-negotiates flow control with the device connected to the port.

10-Gigabit CX4 Copper Ports:

Auto: The port operates at 10 gigabits FDX and negotiates flow control. Lower speed settings or half-duplex are not allowed.

10-Gigabit SC Fiber-Optic Ports (10-GbE SR, 10-GbE LR, 10-GbE ER):

Auto: The port operates at 10 gigabits FDX and negotiates flow control. Lower speed settings or half-duplex are not allowed.



NOTE: Conditioning patch cord cables are not supported on 10-GbE.

Auto-MDIX

The switch supports Auto-MDIX on 10Mb, 100Mb, and 1 Gb T/TX (copper) ports. (Fiber ports and 10-gigabit ports do not use this feature.)

- **Automdix:** Configures the port for automatic detection of the cable type (straight-through or crossover.)
- **MDI:** Configures the port to connect to a switch, hub, or other MDI-X device with a straight-through cable.
- **MDIX:** Configures the port to connect to a PC or other MDI device with a straight-through cable.

flow-control

- **Disabled (default):** The port does not generate flow control packets, and drops any flow control packets it receives.
- **Enabled:** The port uses 802.3x link layer flow control, generates flow-control packets, and processes received flow-control packets.

With the port mode set to `Auto` (the default) and flow control enabled, the switch negotiates flow control on the indicated port. If the port mode is not set to `Auto`, or if flow control is disabled on the port, flow control is not used. Note that flow control must be enabled on both ends of a link.

Broadcast limit

Specifies the percentage of the theoretical maximum network bandwidth that can be used for broadcast traffic. Any broadcast traffic exceeding that limit will be dropped. Zero (0) means the feature is disabled.

The broadcast-limit command operates at the port context level to set the broadcast limit for a port on the switch.



NOTE: This feature is not appropriate for networks that require high levels of IPX or RIP broadcast traffic.

Error messages associated with the `show interfaces` command

Requesting too many fields (total characters exceeds 80)

Total length of selected data exceeds one line

Field name is misspelled

Invalid input: *input*

Mistake in specifying the port list

Module not present for port or invalid port: *input*

The port list is not specified

Incomplete input: custom

Using pattern matching with the `show interfaces custom` command

Cause

If you have included a pattern matching command to search for a field in the output of the `show int custom` command, and the `show int custom` command produces an error, the error message may not be visible and the output is empty. For example, if you enter a command that produces an error (such as `vlan` is misspelled) with the pattern matching `include` option, the output may be empty:

```
switch# show int custom 1-3 name [vlun|include vlan1]
```

Try the `show int custom` command first to ensure there is output, and then enter the command again with the pattern matching option.

You can substitute `int` for `interface`; that is: `show int custom`.

Auto-MDIX configurations

Copper ports on the switch can automatically detect the type of cable configuration (MDI or MDI-X) on a connected device and adjust to operate appropriately.

This means you can use a "straight-through" twisted-pair cable or a "crossover" twisted-pair cable for any of the connections—the port makes the necessary adjustments to accommodate either one for correct operation. The following port types on your switch support the IEEE 802.3ab standard, which includes the "Auto MDI/MDI-X" feature:

- 10/100-TX xl module ports
- 100/1000-T xl module ports
- 10/100/1000-T xl module ports

Using the above ports:

- If you connect a copper port using a straight-through cable on a switch to a port on another switch or hub that uses MDI-X ports, the switch port automatically operates as an MDI port.
- If you connect a copper port using a straight-through cable on a switch to a port on an end node—such as a server or PC—that uses MDI ports, the switch port automatically operates as an MDI-X port.

Switch auto-MDIX supports operation in forced speed and duplex modes.

For more information on this subject, see the IEEE 802.3ab standard reference. For more information on MDI-X, see the installation and getting started guide.

Manual override

If you require control over the MDI/MDI-X feature, you can set the switch to either of these non-default modes:

- Manual MDI
- Manual MDI-X

Table 4: Cable types for auto and manual MDI/MDI-X settings

Setting	MDI/MDI-X device type	
	PC or other MDI device type	Switch, hub, or other MDI-X device
Manual MDI	Crossover cable	Straight-through cable
Manual MDI-X	Straight-through cable	Crossover cable
Auto-MDI-X (the default)	Either crossover or straight-through cable	

The AutoMDIX features apply only to copper port switches using twisted-pair copper Ethernet cables.

About using friendly port names

Optional: This feature enables you to assign alphanumeric port names of your choosing to augment automatically assigned numeric port names. This means you can configure meaningful port names to make it easier to identify the source of information listed by some `show` commands. (Note that this feature **augments** port numbering, but **does not replace** it.)

Configuring and operating rules for friendly port names

- At either the global or context configuration level, you can assign a unique name to a port. You can also assign the same name to multiple ports.
- The friendly port names you configure appear in the output of the `show name<PORT-LIST>`, `show config`, and `show interface port-number` commands. They do not appear in the output of other `show` commands or in Menu interface screens. (See [Viewing friendly port names with other port data](#) on page 124.)
- Friendly port names are not a substitute for port numbers in CLI commands or Menu displays.
- Trunking ports together does not affect friendly naming for the individual ports. (If you want the same name for all ports in a trunk, you must individually assign the name to each port.)
- A friendly port name can have up to 64 contiguous alphanumeric characters.
- Blank spaces within friendly port names are not allowed, and if used, cause an **invalid input** error. (The switch interprets a blank space as a name terminator.)
- In a port listing, **not assigned** indicates that the port does not have a name assignment other than its fixed port number.
- To retain friendly port names across reboots, you must save the current running-configuration to the startup-config file after entering the friendly port names. (In the CLI, use the `write memory` command.)

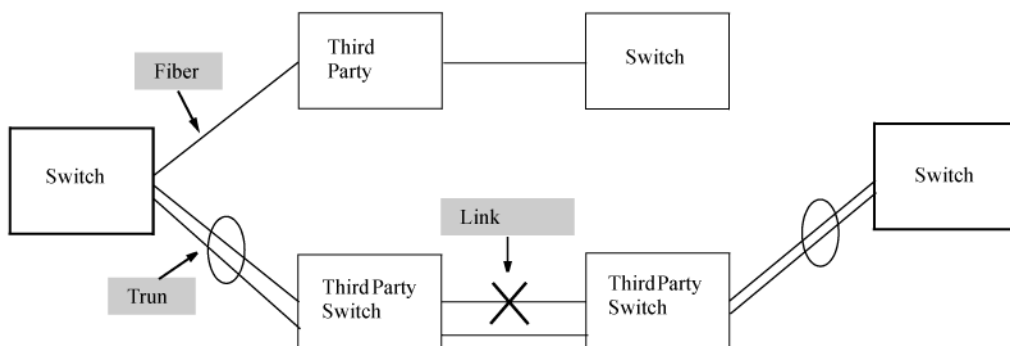
Uni-directional link detection (UDLD)

Uni-directional link detection (UDLD) monitors a link between two switches and blocks the ports on both ends of the link if the link fails at any point between the two devices. This feature is particularly useful for detecting failures in fiber links and trunks. **Figure 14: UDLD** on page 136 shows an example.

Figure 14: UDLD

Scenario 1 (No UDLD): Without UDLD, the switch ports remain enabled despite the link failure. Traffic continues to be load-balanced to the ports connected to the failed link.

Scenario 2 (UDLD-enabled): When UDLD is enabled, the feature blocks the ports connected to the failed link.



In this example, each switch load balances traffic across two ports in a trunk group. Without the UDLD feature, a link failure on a link that is not directly attached to one of the switches remains undetected. As a result, each switch continues to send traffic on the ports connected to the failed link. When UDLD is enabled on the trunk ports on each switch, the switches detect the failed link, block the ports connected to the failed link, and use the remaining ports in the trunk group to forward the traffic.

Similarly, UDLD is effective for monitoring fiber optic links that use two uni-directional fibers to transmit and receive packets. Without UDLD, if a fiber breaks in one direction, a fiber port may assume the link is still good (because the other direction is operating normally) and continue to send traffic on the connected ports. UDLD-enabled ports; however, will prevent traffic from being sent across a bad link by blocking the ports in the event that either the individual transmitter or receiver for that connection fails.

Ports enabled for UDLD exchange health-check packets once every five seconds (the link-keepalive interval.) If a port does not receive a health-check packet from the port at the other end of the link within the keepalive interval, the port waits for four more intervals. If the port still does not receive a health-check packet after waiting for five intervals, the port concludes that the link has failed and blocks the UDLD-enabled port.

When a port is blocked by UDLD, the event is recorded in the switch log or via an SNMP trap (if configured); and other port blocking protocols, like spanning tree or meshing, will not use the bad link to load balance packets. The port will remain blocked until the link is unplugged, disabled, or fixed. The port can also be unblocked by disabling UDLD on the port.

Configuring UDLD

Consult the release notes and current manuals for required software versions and to determine if your switch model interoperates with UDLD.

When UDLD is enabled on at least one port, UDLD packets received on a UDLD-disabled port will be re-forwarded out on all other UDLD-disabled ports on the same VLAN as per the below conditions.

Procedure

1. If the incoming port itself is already blocked on the VLAN it will be dropped right away, and no re-forwarding will be done.
2. UDLD packet will be re-forwarded to other UDLD disabled ports of the same VLAN that are in forwarding state(non blocked ports).

Prerequisites

Procedure

1. When configuring UDLD, keep the following considerations in mind:
 - a. UDLD is configured on a per-port basis and must be enabled at both ends of the link. See the note below for a list of switches that support UDLD.
 - b. To configure UDLD on a trunk group, you must configure the feature on each port of the group individually. Configuring UDLD on a trunk group's primary port enables the feature on that port only.
 - c. Dynamic trunking is not supported. If you want to configure a trunk group that contains ports on which UDLD is enabled, you must remove the UDLD configuration from the ports. After you create the trunk group, you can re-add the UDLD configuration.

Uplink Failure Detection

Uplink Failure Detection (UFD) is a network path redundancy feature that works in conjunction with NIC teaming functionality. UFD continuously monitors the link state of the ports configured as links-to-monitor (LtM), and when these ports lose link with their partners, UFD will disable the set of ports configured as links-to-disable (LtD.) When an uplink port goes down, UFD enables the switch to auto-disable the specific downlinks connected to the NICs. This allows the NIC teaming software to detect link failure on the primary NIC port and fail over to the secondary NIC in the team.

NIC teams must be configured for switch redundancy when used with UFD, that is, the team spans ports on both Switch A and Switch B. The switch automatically enables the downlink ports when the uplink returns to service. For an example of teamed NICs in conjunction with UFD, see **Figure 15: Teamed NICs in conjunction with UFD** on page 138.) For an example of teamed NICs with a failed uplink, see **Figure 16: Teamed NICs with a failed uplink** on page 138.

For UFD functionality to work as expected, the NIC teaming must be in Network Fault Tolerance (NFT) mode.

Figure 15: *Teamed NICs in conjunction with UFD*

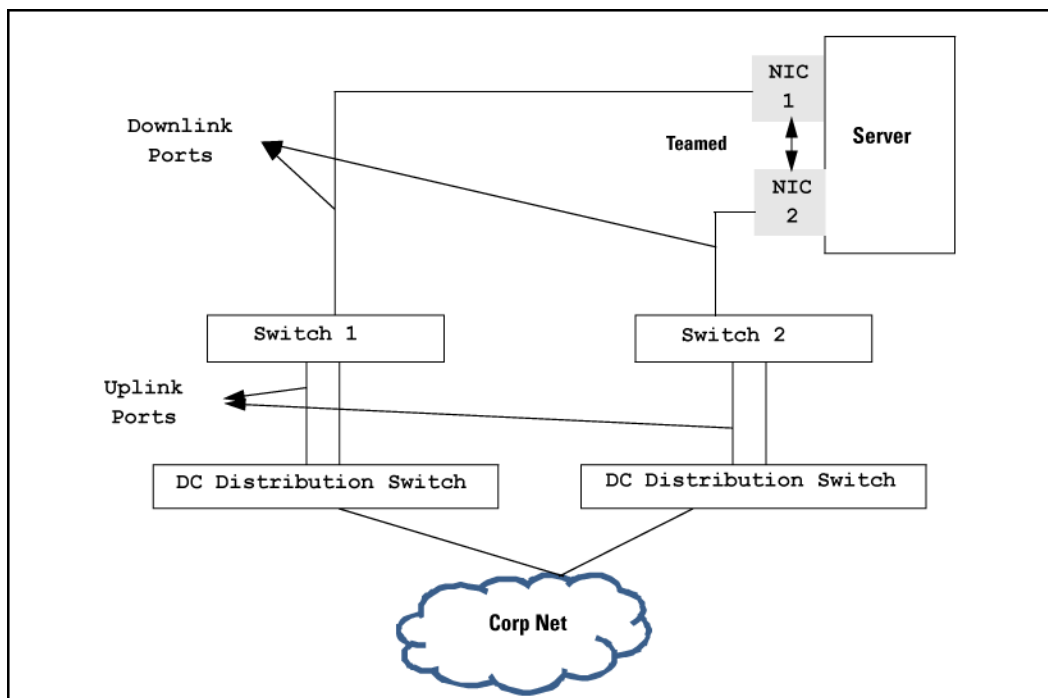
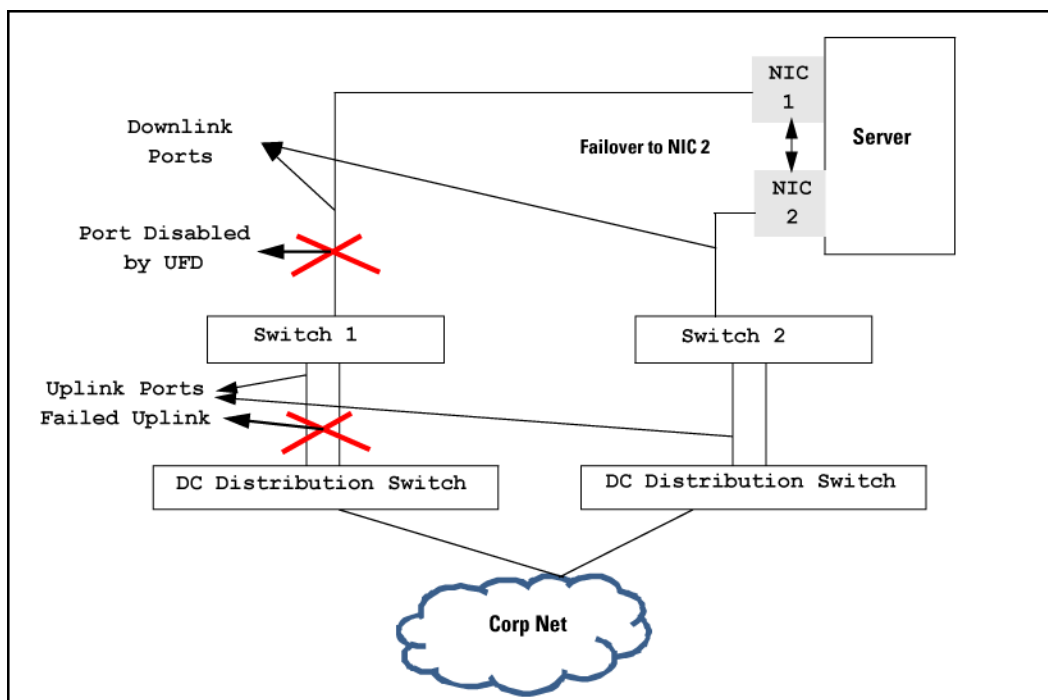


Figure 16: *Teamed NICs with a failed uplink*



NOTE: The state of the LtD is purely governed by the state of the LtM, and is independent of the physical state of the ports in the LtD.

Configuration Guidelines for UFD

Below is a list of configuration guidelines to be followed for UFD. These are applicable only to blade switches where there is a clear distinction between downlink and uplink ports.

1. UFD is required only when uplink-path redundancy is not available on the blade switches.
2. An LtM can be either one or more uplink ports or one or more multi-link trunk group of uplink ports.
3. Ports that are already members of a trunk group are not allowed to be assigned to an LtM or LtD.
4. A trunk group configured as an LtM can contain multiple uplink ports, but no downlink ports or ISL (Inter-Switch-Link) ports.
5. A port cannot be added to a trunk group if it already belongs to an LtM or LtD.
6. An LtD can contain one or more ports, and/or one or more trunks
7. A trunk group configured as an LtD can contain multiple downlink ports, but no uplink ports or ISL (Inter-Switch-Link) ports.

A common API will be provided for higher layers, like CLI and SNMP, which will determine if a port-list can be an LtM or LtD. The API will handle the platform specific details and ensure a uniform code flow for blade and other switch families.

Switches do not have a clear distinction between uplink and downlink ports so some of the points listed above may not be applicable.

UFD enable/disable

uplink-failure-detection

Syntax

```
uplink-failure-detection
```

Description

Used to globally enable UFD. The [no] option globally disables UFD.

UFD configuration

uplink-failure-detection track

Syntax

```
uplink-failure-detection track <track_ID> links-to-monitor <port-list> links-to-disable <port-list>
delay <delay_value>

no uplink-failure-detection track <track_ID> links-to-monitor <port-list> links-to-disable <port-list>
delay <delay_value>
```

Description

Configures LtM and LtD ports for track-id. UFD delay is configured in seconds until when uplink must remain in a stable state before restoring the downlink. UFD delay is configurable between 0 to 300 seconds. The default delay value is 0.

The `no` form of this command resets the parameter.

Command context

config

Parameters

<track_ID>

Specifies the track id.

<Port-List>

Specifies the port list.

<delay_value>

Specifies the delay value.

Examples

Configure port A8 as LtM, port A6 as LtD, and delay value as 100 for track 1:

```
Switch(config)# uplink-failure-detection track 1 links-to-monitor A8  
links-to-disable A6 delay 100
```

```
switch(config)# show running-config
```

Running configuration:

```
; J9851A Configuration Editor; Created on release #KB.16.08.0001  
; Ver #14:01.4f.f8.1d.fb.7f.bf.bb.ff.7c.59.fc.7b.ff.ff.fc.ff.ff.3f.ef:4e  
hostname "switch"  
module A type j9993a  
module L type j9992a  
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted  
oobm  
    ip address dhcp-bootp  
    exit  
uplink-failure-detection  
uplink-failure-detection track 1 links-to-monitor A8 links-to-disable A6 delay 100  
vlan 1  
    name "DEFAULT_VLAN"  
    untagged A1-A8,L1-L21  
    ip address dhcp-bootp  
    ipv6 enable  
    ipv6 address dhcp full  
    exit
```

To set delay value to 2:

```
switch(config)# uplink-failure-detection track 1 delay 2
```

To set delay value to 0:

```
switch(config)#no uplink-failure-detection track 1 delay 2
```

Alternately, to set delay value to 0, a user can also use the following command:

```
switch(config)#uplink-failure-detection track 1 delay 0
```

show uplink-failure-detection

Syntax

```
show uplink-failure-detection
```


Description

Shows the uplink failure detection information.

Command context

manager

Examples

```
switch# show uplink-failure-detection
```

Uplink Failure Detection Information

UFD Enabled : Yes

Track ID	Monitored Links	Links to Disable	LtM State	LtD State	LtM LACP Key	LtD LACP Key	Delay (sec)
1	Dyn1	Dyn2	Up	Up	1	2	0
32	Trk1	Trk3	Up	Up			300
50	Trk2	Trk4	Up	Up			120
64	2/12	2/14	Up	Up			150

If there is a failure, and one track is in Down/Auto-Disabled state, the `show uplink-failure-detection` command displays:

```
switch(config)# show uplink-failure-detection
```

Uplink Failure Detection Information

UFD Enabled : Yes

Track ID	Monitored Links	Links to Disable	LtM State	LtD State	LtM LACP Key	LtD LACP Key	Delay (sec)
1	Trk1	A4	Up	Up			100
2	A5	A6	Down	Auto-Disabled			0

Port Shutdown with Broadcast Storm

A LAN broadcast storm arises when an excessively high rate of broadcast packets flood the LAN. Occurrence of LAN broadcast storm disrupts traffic and degrades network performance. To prevent LAN traffic from being disrupted, the use of fault-finder commands trigger a port disablement when a broadcast storm is detected. Commands can be used only to support broadcast traffic and not multicast and unicast types of traffic.

The waiting period range for re-enabling ports is 0 to 604800 seconds. The default waiting period to re-enable a port is zero which prevents the port from automatic re-enabling.



IMPORTANT: Avoid port flapping when choosing the waiting period by considering the time to re-enable carefully.

Configuration Commands

fault-finder broadcast-storm

Syntax

```
fault-finder broadcast-storm [ethernet] <PORT-LIST> action [warn|warn-and-disable <SECONDS>][percent <PERCENT>|pps <RATE>
```

Descripton

Use the following commands to configure the broadcast-storm on a port.

Parameters and options

ethernet

—

action

—

warn

—

warn-and-disable

—

percent

—

pps

—

<PORT-LIST>

—

<SECONDS>

—

<PERCENT>

—

<RATE>

—

Usage

To remove the current configuration of broadcast-storm on a port, use:

```
no fault-finder broadcast-storm [ethernet] <PORT-LIST>
```

Configuration example 1

```
switch(config)# fault-finder broadcast-storm [ethernet] <AI> action [warn-and-disable <65535>]<percent 10>
```

Configuration example 2

```
switch(config)# fault-finder broadcast-storm [ethernet] <A2> action [warn-and-disable] pps <100>
```

Configuration example 3

```
switch(config)# fault-finder broadcast-storm [ethernet] <A22> action [warn] pps <100>
```

Viewing broadcast-storm configuration

show fault-finder broadcast-storm

Syntax

```
show fault-finder broadcast-storm [ethernet <PORT-LIST>]
```

Description

Display the broadcast-storm-control configuration.

Parameters

broadcast-storm

Configure broadcast storm control.

pps

Rising threshold level in number of broadcast packets per second.

Percent

Rising threshold level as a percentage of bandwidth of the port. The percentage is calculated on 64 byte packet size.

warn

Log the event only.

warn-and-disable

Log the event and disable the port.

seconds

Re-enable the port after waiting for the specified number of seconds. Default is not to re-enable.

show example 1

Port

A1

Bcast storm

Yes

Port status

Down

Rising threshold

10%

Action

warnanddisable

Disable timer

65535

Disable timer left

—

Show example 2

```
switch(config)# show fault-finder broadcast-storm
```

Port

A1

Bcast storm

Yes

Port status

Down

Rising threshold

200 pps

Action

warnanddisable

Disable timer

10

Disable timer left

9

Show example 3

```
switch(config)# show fault-finder broadcast-storm A1
```

Port

A1

Bcast storm

No

Port status

Up

Rising threshold

—

Action

none

Disable timer

—

Disable timer left

—

Show example 4

```
switch(config)# show fault-finder broadcast-storm
```

Port

A1

Bcast storm

Yes

Port status

Up

Rising threshold

75%

Action

warn

Disable timer

—

Disable timer left

—

Broadcast-storm event logs

Depending on the configuration of broadcast storm control, several of the following messages can be logged:

- FFI: port <ID>-Administrator action required to re-enable.
- FFI: port <ID>-Excessive Broadcasts. Broadcast-storm control threshold <configured value> percent exceeded.
- FFI: port <ID>-Excessive Broadcasts. Broadcast-storm control threshold <configured value>pps exceeded.
- FFI: port <ID>-Port disabled by Fault-finder.
- ports:Fault-Finder(<FF ID>) has disabled port A1 for 100 Seconds.

The following messages can be logged after the port is enabled:

- ports: port <ID> timer (<FF ID>) has expired.
- ports: port <ID> is now on-line.

Event log

```
1 01/01/90 00:35:20 00025 ip: DEFAULT_VLAN: ip address 10.100.38.231/24 configured on vlan 1
1 01/01/90 00:35:20 00083 dhcp: updating IP address and subnet mask
1 01/01/90 00:35:05 00076 ports: port A1 is now on-line
1 01/01/90 00:35:02 00900 ports: port A1 timer (71) has expired
W 01/01/90 00:34:13 00026 ip: DEFAULT_VLAN: ip address 10.100.38.231/24 removed from vlan 1
1 01/01/90 00:34:12 00077 ports: port A1 is now off-line
1 01/01/90 00:34:12 00898 ports:Fault-Finder(71) has disabled port A1 for 5seconds
M 01/01/90 00:34:12 02673 FFI: port A1-Port disabled by Fault-finder.
W 01/01/90 00:34:12 02676 FFI: port A1-Excessive Broadcasts. Broadcast-storm control threshold 4 percent exceeded.
---- Reverse event Log listing: Events Since Boot ----
I 01/01/90 00:08:44 00025 ip: DEFAULT_VLAN: ip address 10.100.38.231/24 configured on vlan 1
I 01/01/90 00:08:44 00083 dhcp: updating IP address and subnet mask
I 01/01/90 00:08:11 00076 ports: port A1 is now on-line
I 01/01/90 00:08:08 00900 ports: port A1 timer (71) has expired
W 01/01/90 00:06:29 00026 ip: DEFAULT_VLAN: ip address 10.100.38.231/24 removed from vlan 1
I 01/01/90 00:06:28 00077 ports: port A1 is now off-line
I 01/01/90 00:06:28 00898 ports:Fault-Finder(71) has disabled port A1 for 100 seconds
M 01/01/90 00:06:28 02673 FFI: port A1-Port disabled by Fault-finder.
W 01/01/90 00:06:28 02675 FFI: port A1-Excessive Broadcasts. Broadcast-storm control threshold 10 pps exceeded.
```

Multicast Storm Control

Overview

A multicast storm arises when excessive multicast traffic is exchanged on network ports. Excessive traffic includes more than expected traffic, or which exceeds a limit value or some percentage of network traffic, or a percentage of network channel capacity.

To prevent this, a warning message, along with port-shutdown option, is displayed to the user when the network detects similar multicast packets. At this time, the user can disable the port temporarily and enable it again, or permanently disable it.

fault-finder multicast-storm

Syntax

```
fault-finder multicast-storm <PORT-LIST> action {warn | warn-and-disable <Seconds>} {percent <Percent> | pps <Rate>}  
no fault-finder multicast-storm <PORT-LIST> action {warn | warn-and-disable <Seconds>} {percent <Percent> | pps <Rate>}
```

Description

Per-port command to configure multicast-storm. The `no` form of the command disables multicast-storm configuration on the port.

Parameters

PORT-LIST

Enable multicast storm control on a list of ports.

Seconds

Configure the number of seconds for which the port remains disabled.

Percent

Rising threshold level as a percentage of bandwidth of the port. The percentage is calculated on 64 byte packet size.

Rate

Rising threshold level in number of multicast packets per second

Command context

config

Examples

```
switch(config)# fault-finder multicast-storm  
action          Configure the action taken when a fault is detected.  
[ethernet] PORT-LIST The ports on which to enable Multicast Storm Control.  
sensitivity      Configure the fault sensitivity level.  
  
switch(config)# fault-finder multicast-storm ethernet  
PORT-LIST       Enter a port number, a list of ports or 'all' for all  
ports.  
  
switch(config)# fault-finder multicast-storm ethernet 1/1  
action          Configure the action taken when a multicast storm is  
detected.  
  
switch(config)# fault-finder multicast-storm ethernet 1/1 action  
warn            Log an event only.  
warn-and-disable Log an event and disable the port.
```

```

switch(config)# fault-finder multicast-storm ethernet 1/1 action warn-and-disable
SECONDS          Configure the number of seconds for which the port
                  remains disabled. A value of 0 means that the port will
                  remain disabled until manually re-enabled.

switch(config)# fault-finder multicast-storm ethernet 1/1 action warn-and-disable 10
percent          Configure the number of inbound multicast packets per
                  second that is considered a multicast storm. This
                  threshold is computed assuming a size of 64 bytes per
                  incoming multicast packet.
pps             Configure the number of inbound multicast packets per
                  second that is considered a multicast storm.

switch(config)# fault-finder multicast-storm ethernet 1/1 action warn-and-disable 10 percent
<1-100>          The percentage that is considered a multicast storm.

switch(config)# fault-finder multicast-storm ethernet 1/1 action warn-and-disable 10 percent 40

```

Per port show fault-finder output:

```
switch(config)# show fault-finder multicast-storm 1/1
```

Port	Mcast Storm	Port Status	Rising Threshold	Action	Disable Timer	Disable Time Left
1/1	Yes	Down	40%	warn-and-disable	10	-

```
switch(config)# show fault-finder multicast-storm
```

Port	Mcast Storm	Port Status	Rising Threshold	Action	Disable Timer	Disable Time Left
1/1	Yes	Down	40%	warn-and-disable	10	-
1/2	Yes	Down	50%	warn-and-disable	10	-
1/3	Yes	Down	50%	warn-and-disable	10	-
1/4	Yes	Down	50%	warn-and-disable	10	-
1/5	Yes	Down	50%	warn-and-disable	10	-
1/6	Yes	Down	50%	warn-and-disable	10	-
1/7	Yes	Down	50%	warn-and-disable	10	-
1/8	Yes	Down	50%	warn-and-disable	10	-
1/9	Yes	Down	50%	warn-and-disable	10	-
1/10	Yes	Down	50%	warn-and-disable	10	-
1/11	Yes	Down	50%	warn-and-disable	10	-
1/12	Yes	Down	50%	warn-and-disable	10	-

Configure ports 1/1 to 1/5 for multicast storm control, and warn and disable the ports after 100 seconds, with a rising threshold of 20%:

```
switch(config)# fault-finder multicast-storm ethernet 1/1-1/5 action
warn-and-disable 100 percent 20
```

```
switch(config)# show fault-finder multicast-storm ethernet 1/1-1/5
```

Port	Mcast Storm	Port Status	Rising Threshold	Action	Disable Timer	Disable Time Left
1/1	Yes	Down	20%	warn-and-disable	100	-
1/2	Yes	Down	20%	warn-and-disable	100	-
1/3	Yes	Down	20%	warn-and-disable	100	-

1/4	Yes		Down	20%	warn-and-disable	100	-
1/5	Yes		Down	20%	warn-and-disable	100	-

Disable multicast storm control on port 1/1:

```
switch(config)# no fault-finder multicast-storm ethernet 1/1
switch(config)# show fault-finder multicast-storm ethernet 1/1
```

Port	Mcast Storm		Port Status	Rising Threshold	Action	Disable Timer	Disable Time Left
1/1	No		Down	-	none	-	-

fault-finder multicast-storm action

Syntax

```
fault-finder multicast-storm [action {warn | warn-and-disable}] [sensitivity {low | medium | high}]
no fault-finder multicast-storm [action {warn | warn-and-disable}] [sensitivity {low | medium | high}]
```

Description

Global command to configure multicast-storm. The **no** form of the command disables multicast-storm configuration on the port. The default sensitivity is **medium** and the default action is **warn**.

Parameters

warn

Log an event only

warn-and-disable

Log an event and disable the port

low

Low sensitivity

medium

Medium sensitivity

high

High sensitivity

Command context

config

Examples

```
switch(config)# fault-finder multicast-storm action warn
sensitivity      Configure the fault sensitivity level.

switch(config)# fault-finder multicast-storm action warn sensitivity
low              Low sensitivity.
medium           Medium sensitivity.
high             High sensitivity.

switch(config)# fault-finder multicast-storm action warn-and-disable
sensitivity      Configure the fault sensitivity level.

switch(config)# fault-finder multicast-storm action warn-and-disable sensitivity
```



```
low          Low sensitivity.
medium       Medium sensitivity.
high        High sensitivity.
```

```
switch(config)# fault-finder multicast-storm action warn-and-disable sensitivity high
```

Global show command for auto-100 duplex Smart Rate port:

```
switch(config)# show fault-finder
```

Fault Finder

Fault ID	Sensitivity	Action
bad-driver	medium	warn
bad-transceiver	medium	warn
bad-cable	medium	warn
too-long-cable	medium	warn
over-bandwidth	medium	warn
broadcast-storm	medium	warn
loss-of-link	medium	warn
duplex-mismatch-hdx	medium	warn
duplex-mismatch-fdx	medium	warn
multicast-storm	high	warn-and-disable
link-flap	medium	warn

show running-config

Syntax

```
show running-config
```

Description

Displays information about the current configuration.

Command context

Manager

Example

```
switch(config)# show running-config
```

Running configuration:

```
; hpStack_WC Configuration Editor; Created on release #WC.16.06.0000x
; Ver #13:03.f8.1c.9b.3f.bf.bb.ef.7c.59.fc.6b.fb.9f.fc.ff.ff.37.ef:49

stacking
  member 1 type "JL320A" mac-address 941882-dccf00
  member 1 flexible-module A type JL081A
  exit
hostname "switch"
fault-finder multicast-storm sensitivity high action warn-and-disable
fault-finder multicast-storm 1/1 action warn-and-disable 100 percent 20
fault-finder multicast-storm 1/2 action warn-and-disable 100 percent 20
fault-finder multicast-storm 1/3 action warn-and-disable 100 percent 20
fault-finder multicast-storm 1/4 action warn-and-disable 100 percent 20
fault-finder multicast-storm 1/5 action warn-and-disable 100 percent 20
fault-finder multicast-storm 1/7 action warn-and-disable 10 pps 100
fault-finder multicast-storm 1/8 action warn-and-disable 10 percent 20
fault-finder multicast-storm 1/9 action warn-and-disable 10 percent 20
```

```
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
oobm
  ip address dhcp-bootp
  member 1
    ip address dhcp-bootp
  exit
```

show logging

Syntax

```
show logging
```

Description

Checks the FFI multicast-storm logging message.

Command context

Manager

Example

```
switch# show logging
Keys:    W=Warning    I=Information
        M=Major      D=Debug E=Error

---- Event Log listing: Events Since Boot ----
I 01/07/90 20:22:55 00076 ports: port 3 is now on-line
M 01/07/90 20:22:52 02677 FFI: port 3-Port enabled by Fault-finder.
I 01/07/90 20:22:33 00077 ports: port 3 is now off-line
M 01/07/90 20:22:33 02676 FFI: port 3-Re-enable after 20 seconds.
M 01/07/90 20:22:33 02673 FFI: port 3-Port disabled by Fault-finder.
M 01/07/90 20:22:33 02675 FFI: port 3-Excessive Multicast-storm control threshold 10 % exceeded.
```

Restrictions

Multicast storm control is not supported in the following scenarios:

- Unicast packet traffic
- If the port is configured as a VSF port
- If the port is configured as a trunk port

PoE

PoE technology allows IP telephones, wireless LAN access points, and other appliances to receive power and transfer data over existing ethernet LAN cabling. For more information about PoE technology, see the PoE planning and implementation guide, which is available on the Networking website at

<http://www.hpe.com/networking/support>.

PoE terminology

Power-over-ethernet (PoE) and Power-over-ethernet plus (PoE+ or POEP) operate similarly in most cases. The CLI commands are the same for a PoE module or a PoE+ zl module. Any differences between PoE and PoE+ operation are noted; otherwise, the term "PoE" is used to designate both PoE and PoE+ functionality.

Planning and implementing a PoE configuration

This section provides an overview of some considerations for planning a PoE application. For additional information on this topic, refer to the PoE planning and implementation guide which is available on the Networking web site at <http://www.hpe.com/networking/support>.

Some of the elements you may want to consider for a PoE installation include:

- Port assignments to VLANs
- Use of security features
- Power requirements

This section can help you to plan your PoE installation. If you use multiple VLANs in your network, or if you have concerns about network security, you should read the first two topics. If your PoE installation comes close to (or is likely to exceed) the system's ability to supply power to all devices that may request it, then you should also read the third topic. (If it is unlikely that your installation will even approach a full utilization of the PoE power available, then you may find it unnecessary to spend much time on calculating PoE power scenarios.)

Power requirements

To get the best PoE performance, you should provide enough PoE power to exceed the maximum amount of power that is needed by all the PDs that are being used.

By connecting an external power supply you can optionally provision more PoE wattage per port and or supply the switch with redundant 12V power to operate should an internal power supply fail.

By installing a second power supply in the 5406zl or a third power supply in a 5412zl chassis, depending on how many PoE ports are being supplied with power, the switch can have redundant power if one power supply fails. A Power Supply Shelf (external power supply) can also be connected to the 5400zl switches to provide extra or redundant PoE power.

For example, if the 5406zl has two 24-port PoE modules (J8702A) installed, and all ports are using 15.4 watts, then the total wattage used is 739.2 watts (48 x 15.4.) To supply the necessary PoE wattage a J8713A power supply is installed in one of the power supply slots.

To gain redundant power, a second J8713A must be installed in the second power supply slot. If the first power supply fails, then the second power supply can supply all necessary power.

See the PoE planning and implementation guide for detailed information about the PoE/PoE+ power requirements.

Assigning PoE ports to VLANs

If your network includes VLANs, you may want to assign various PoE-configured ports to specific VLANs. For example, if you are using PoE telephones in your network, you may want to assign ports used for telephone access to a VLAN reserved for telephone traffic.

Applying security features to PoE configurations

You can utilize security features built into the switch to control device or user access to the network through PoE ports in the same way as non-PoE ports.

Using Port Security, you can configure each switch port with a unique list of MAC addresses for devices that are authorized to access the network through that port. For more information, see the Access security guide for your switch.

Assigning priority policies to PoE traffic

You can use the configurable QoS (Quality of Service) features in the switch to create prioritization policies for traffic moving through PoE ports.

Table 5: *Classifiers for prioritizing outbound packets*

Priority	QoS classifier
1	UDP/TCP application type (port)
2	Device priority (destination or source IP address)
3	IP type of service (ToS) field (IP packets only)
4	VLAN priority
5	Incoming source-port on the switch
6	Incoming 802.1 priority (present in tagged VLAN environments)

For more on this topic, see the advanced traffic management guide.

PoE operation

Using the commands described in this chapter, you can:

- Enable or disable PoE operation on individual ports.
- Monitor PoE status and performance per module.
- Configure a non-default power threshold for SNMP and Event Log reporting of PoE consumption on either all PoE ports on the switch or on all PoE ports in one or more PoE modules.
- Specify the port priority you want to use for provisioning PoE power in the event that the PoE resources become oversubscribed.

Power-sourcing equipment (PSE) detects the power needed by a powered device (PD) before supplying that power, a detection phase referred to as "searching." If the PSE cannot supply the required amount of power, it does not supply any power. For PoE using a Type 1 device, a PSE will not supply any power to a PD unless the

PSE has at least 17 watts available. For example, if a PSE has a maximum available power of 382 watts and is already supplying 378 watts, and is then connected to a PD requiring 10 watts, the PSE will not supply power to the PD.

For PoE+ using Type 2 devices, the PSE must have at least 33 watts available. A slot in a zl chassis can provide a maximum of 370 watts of PoE/PoE+ power to a module.

PoE configuration options

In the default configuration, PoE support is enabled on the ports in a PoE module installed on the switch. The default priority for all ports is **low** and the default power notification threshold is **80%**. Using the CLI, you can:

- Disable or re-enable PoE operation on individual PoE ports
- Enable support for pre-standard devices
- Change the PoE priority level on individual PoE ports
- Change the threshold for generating a power level notice
- Manually allocate the amount of PoE power for a port by usage, value, or class
- Allocate PoE power based on the link-partner's capabilities via LLDP

The ports support standard networking links and PoE links. You can connect either a non-PoE device or a PD to a port enabled for PoE without reconfiguring the port.

PD support

To best utilize the allocated PoE power, spread your connected PoE devices as evenly as possible across modules. Depending on the amount of power delivered to a PoE module, there may or may not always be enough power available to connect and support PoE operation on all ports in the module. When a new PD connects to a PoE module and the module does not have enough power left for that port, if the new PD connects to a port "X" that has a:

Higher

PoE priority than another port "Y" that is already supporting another PD, the power is removed from port "Y" and delivered to port "X." In this case the PD on port "Y" loses power and the PD on port "X" receives power.

Lower

priority than all other PoE ports currently providing power to PDs, power is not supplied to port "X" until one or more PDs using higher priority ports are removed.

In the default configuration (usage), when a PD connects to a PoE port and begins operating, the port retains only enough PoE power to support the PD's operation. Unused power becomes available for supporting other PD connections. However, if you configure the `poe-allocate-by` option to either value or class, all of the power configured is allocated to the port.

For PoE (not PoE+), while 17 watts must be available for a PoE module on the switch to begin supplying power to a port with a PD connected, 17 watts per port is not continually required if the connected PD requires less power. For example, with 20 watts of PoE power remaining available on a module, you can connect one new PD without losing power to any connected PDs on that module. If that PD draws only 3 watts, 17 watts remain available, and you can connect at least one more PD to that module without interrupting power to any other PoE devices connected to the same module. If the next PD you connect draws 5 watts, only 12 watts remain unused. With only 12 unused watts available, if you then connect yet another PD to a higher-priority PoE port, the lowest-priority port on the module loses PoE power and remains unpowered until the module once again has 17 or more watts available.

For PoE+, there must be 33 watts available for the module to begin supplying power to a port with a PD connected. A slot in a zl chassis can provide a maximum of 370 watts of PoE/PoE+ power to a module.

Disconnecting a PD from a PoE port makes that power available to any other PoE ports with PDs waiting for power. If the PD demand for power becomes greater than the PoE power available, power is transferred from the lower-priority ports to the higher-priority ports. (Ports not currently providing power to PDs are not affected.)

PoE power priority

If a PSE can provide power for all connected PD demand, it does not use its power priority settings to allocate power. However, if the PD power demand oversubscribes the available power, the power allocation is prioritized to the ports that present a PD power demand. This causes the loss of power from one or more lower-priority ports to meet the power demand on other, higher-priority ports. This operation occurs regardless of the order in which PDs connect to the module's PoE-enabled ports.

Power allocation is prioritized according to the following methods:

Priority class

Assigns a power priority of **low** (the default), **high**, or **critical** to each enabled PoE port.

Port-number priority

A lower-numbered port has priority over a higher-numbered port within the same configured priority class, for example, port A1 has priority over port A5 if both are configured with **high** priority.

Assigning PoE priority with two or more modules

Ports across two or more modules can be assigned a class priority of low (the default), high, or critical. For example, A5, B7, and C10 could all be assigned a priority class of **Critical**. When power is allocated to the ports on a priority basis, the **Critical** priority power requests are allocated to module A first, then Module B, then C, and so on. Next, the **High** priority power requests are allocated, starting with module A, then B, then C, and the remaining modules in order. Any remaining power is allocated in the same manner for the **Low** priority ports, beginning with module A though the remaining modules. If there is not enough PoE power for all the PDs connected to PoE modules in the switch, power is allocated according to priority class across modules.

All ports on module C are prioritized as Critical.

```
switch# interface c1-c24 power-over-ethernet
        critical
```

All ports on module A are prioritized as Low.

```
switch# interface a1-a24 power-over-ethernet
        low
```

There are 48 PDs attached to all ports of modules A and C (24 ports each module); however, there is enough PoE power for only 32 ports ($8.5 \text{ watts} \times 32 \text{ ports} = 273 \text{ watts}$.) The result is that all the **Critical** priority ports on module C receive power, but only 8 ports on module A receive power.

On module A, the port A1 has the highest priority of the ports in that module if all ports are in the same priority class, which is the case for this example. Since a minimum $17 + 5$ watts of power is allocated per PoE module for PoE, port A1 will always receive PoE power. If another port on module A had a higher priority class than port A1, that port would be allocated the power before port A1.

For PoE+ modules there must be a minimum of $33 + 5$ watts of power allocated per PoE+ module.

About configuring PoE

In the default configuration, PoE support is enabled on the ports in a PoE module installed on the switch. The default priority for all ports is **low** and the default power notification threshold is **80%**.

Using the CLI, you can:

- Disable or re-enable PoE operation on individual PoE ports.
- Enable support for pre-standard devices.
- Change PoE priority level on individual PoE ports.
- Change the threshold for generating a power level notice.
- Manually allocate the amount of PoE power for a port by usage, value, or class.
- Allocate PoE power based on the link-partner's capabilities via LLDP.

For a given level, ports are prioritized by port number in ascending order. For example, if ports A1 to A24 have a priority level of critical, port A1 has priority over ports A2 to A24.

If there is not enough power available to provision all active PoE ports at a given priority level, the lowest-numbered port at that level is provisioned first. For chassis switches, the lowest-numbered port at that level starting with module A, then B, C, and so on is provisioned. PoE priorities are invoked only when all active PoE ports cannot be provisioned (supplied with PoE power.)

In chassis switches, you can use one command to set the same priority level on PoE ports in multiple modules. For example, to configure the priority to **High** for ports c5 to c10, C23 to C24, D1 to D10, and D12, you could use this command:

```
switch# interface c5-c10,c23-c24,d1-d10,d12 power-over-ethernet high
```

PoE priority example

Table 6: PoE priority operation on a PoE module

Port	Priority setting	Configuration command and resulting operation with PDs connected to ports C3 through C24
C3 - C17	Critical	<p>In this example, the following CLI command sets ports C3 to C17 to Critical:</p> <pre>switch# interface c3-c17 power-over-ethernet critical</pre> <p>The critical priority class always receives power. If there is not enough power to provision PDs on all ports configured for this class, no power goes to ports configured for high and low priority. If there is enough power to provision PDs on only some of the critical-priority ports, power is allocated to these ports in ascending order, beginning with the lowest-numbered port in the class, which, in this case, is port 3.</p>
C18 - C21	high	<p>In this example, the following CLI command sets ports C19 to C22 to high:</p> <pre>switch# interface c19-c22 power-over-ethernet high</pre> <p>The high priority class receives power only if all PDs on ports with a critical priority setting are receiving power. If there is not enough power to provision PDs on all ports with a high priority, no power goes to ports with a low priority. If there is enough power to provision PDs on only some of the high-priority ports, power is allocated to these ports in ascending order, beginning, in this example, with port 18, until all available power is in use.</p>
C22 - C24	low	<p>In this example, the CLI command sets ports C23 to C24 to low¹:</p> <pre>switch# interface c23-c24 power-over-ethernet low</pre> <p>This priority class receives power only if all PDs on ports with high and critical priority settings are receiving power. If there is enough power to provision PDs on only some low- priority ports, power is allocated to the ports in ascending order, beginning with the lowest-numbered port in the class (port 22, in this case), until all available power is in use.</p>
C1 - C2	N/A	<p>In this example, the CLI command disables PoE power on ports C1 to C2:</p> <pre>switch# no interface c1-c2 power-over-ethernet</pre> <p>There is no priority setting for the ports in this example.</p>

¹ In the default PoE configuration, the ports are already set to **low** priority. In this case, the command is not necessary.

Disabling or re-enabling PoE port operation

interface

Syntax

```
interface <PORT-LIST> power-over-ethernet
```

Description

Re-enables PoE operation on <PORT-LIST> and restores the priority setting in effect when PoE was disabled on <PORT-LIST>.

Default: All PoE ports are initially enabled for PoE operation at Low priority. If you configure a higher priority, this priority is retained until you change it.

For PoE, disabling all ports allows the 22 watts of minimum PoE power or the 38 watts for PoE+ power allocated for the module to be recovered and used elsewhere. You must disable ALL ports for this to occur.

Options

no

The **no** form of the command disables PoE operation on <PORT-LIST>

<PORT-LIST>

—

Enabling support for pre-standard devices

power-over-ethernet

Syntax

```
power-over-ethernet pre-std-detect
```

Description

Detects and powers pre-802.3af standard devices. The switches covered in this guide also support some pre-802.3af devices. The default setting for the `pre-std-detect` PoE parameter has changed. In earlier software, the default setting is "on." In K.15.02 and later software, the default setting is "off."

Options

no

—

Configuring the PoE port priority

interface

Syntax

```
interface <PORT-LIST> power-over-ethernet [critical|high|low]
```

Description

Reconfigures the PoE priority level on <PORT-LIST>. For a given level, ports

Parameters

critical

Specifies the highest-priority PoE support for *<PORT-LIST>*. The active PoE ports at this level are provisioned before the PoE ports at any other level are provisioned.

high

Specifies the second priority PoE support for *<PORT-LIST>*. The active PoE ports at this level are provisioned before the `Low` priority PoE ports are provisioned.

low

(Default) Specifies the third priority PoE support for *<PORT-LIST>*. The active PoE ports at this level are provisioned only if there is power available after provisioning any active PoE ports at the higher priority levels.

Controlling PoE allocation

int

Syntax

```
int <PORT-LIST> poe-allocate-by [usage|class|value]
```

Description

Allows you to manually allocate the amount of PoE power for a port by either its class or a defined value.

The default option for PoE allocation is `usage`, which is what a PD attached to the port is allocated. You can override this value by specifying the amount of power allocated to a port by using the `class` or `value` options.

Parameters

no

usage

(Default) The automatic allocation by a PD. The allowable PD requirements are lower than those specified for PSEs to allow for power losses along the Cat-5 cable.

class

Uses the power ramp-up signature of the PD to identify the device power class.

value

A user-defined level of PoE power allocated for that port.

Table 7: Power classes and their values

Power class	Value
0	Depends on cable type and PoE architecture. Maximum power level output of 15.4 watts at the PSE. This is the default class; if there is not enough information about the load for a specific classification, the PSE classifies the load as class 0 (zero.)
1	Requires at least 4 watts at the PSE.
2	Requires at least 7 watts at the PSE.
3	15.4 watts
4	For PoE+Maximum power level output of 30 watts at the PSE.

PoE port allocation by class

To allocate by class for ports 6 to 8:

```
switch# int 6-8 PoE-allocate-by class
```

Manually configuring PoE power levels

You can specify a power level (in watts) allocated for a port by using the `value` option. This is the maximum amount of power that will be delivered.

Procedure

1. To configure a port by value, first set the PoE allocation by entering the `poe-allocate-by value` command:

```
switch(config) # int A6 poe-allocate-by value
```

or in interface context:

```
switch(eth-A6) # poe-allocate-by value
```

2. Then select a value:

```
switch(config) # int A6 poe-value 15
```

or in interface context:

```
switch(eth-A6) # poe-value 15
```

3. To view the settings, enter the `show power-over-ethernet` command, shown below.

Figure 17: *Displaying PoE allocation by value and the maximum power delivered*

```
Switch(config)# show power-over-ethernet A6
```

Status and Counters - Port Power Status for port A6			
Power Enable	: Yes	LLDP Detect	: enabled
Priority	: low	ConfigureType	: value
AllocateBy	: value	Value	: 15 W
Detection Status	: Delivering	Power Class	: 2
Over Current Cnt	: 0	MPS Absent Cnt	: 0
Power Denied Cnt	: 0	Short Cnt	: 0
Voltage	: 55.1 V	Current	: 154 mA
Power	: 8.4 W		

Detection status: fault

Symptom

A **fault** occurs, as shown in Figure **Figure 18: Showing PoE power value set too low for the PD** on page 160.

Figure 18: Showing PoE power value set too low for the PD

```
Switch(config)# int A7 poe-value 4
Switch(config)# show power-over-ethernet A7

Status and Counters - Port Power Status for port A7

Power Enable      : Yes
Priority           : low
AllocateBy        : value
Detection Status  : fault
Over Current Cnt  : 1
Power Denied Cnt  : 2
Voltage           : 55.1 V
Power             : 8.4 W
LLDP Detect       : enabled
Configured Type   :
Value            : 4 W
Power Class       : 2
MPS Absent Cnt    : 0
Short Cnt         : 0
Current           : 154 mA
```

Cause

Setting the PoE maximum value to less than what the PD requires.

Action

Increase the PoE maximum value.

Configuring PoE redundancy (chassis switches only)

PoE redundancy occurs automatically when enabled. The switch keeps track of power use and does not supply PoE power to additional PoE devices trying to connect if that results in the switch not having enough power in reserve for redundancy.

power-over-ethernet redundancy

Syntax

```
power-over-ethernet rdundancy [n+1|full]
```

Description

Allows you to set the amount of power held in reserve for redundancy.

Parameters

no	Means that all available power can be allocated to PDs. Default: No PoE redundancy enforced.
n+1	One of the power supplies is held in reserve for redundancy. If a single power supply fails, no powered devices are shut down. If power supplies with different ratings are used, the highest-rated power supply is held in reserve to ensure full redundancy.
full	Half of the available power supply is held in reserve for redundancy. If power supplies with different ratings are used, the highest-rated power supply is held in reserve to ensure full redundancy.

Changing the threshold for generating a power notice

power-over-ethernet slot

Syntax

```
power-over-ethernet [slot <SLOT-ID-RANGE> <threshold 1 - 99>]
```

Description

This command configures the notification threshold for PoE power usage on either a global or per-module (slot) basis.

Parameters and options

slot <SLOT-ID-RANGE>

Specifies the PoE usage level (as a percentage of the PoE power available on a module) at which the switch generates a power usage notice. This notice appears as an SNMP trap and a corresponding Event Log message and occurs when a PoE module's power consumption crosses the configured threshold value. That is, the switch generates a notice whenever the power consumption on a module either exceeds or drops below the specified percentage of the total PoE power available on the module.

Without the `slot PoE <SLOT-ID-RANGE>` option, the switch applies one power threshold setting on all PoE modules installed in the switch.

<THRESHOLD 1–99>

—

Enabling or disabling ports for allocating power using LLDP

int poe-ldp-detect

Syntax

```
int <PORT-LIST> poe-ldp-detect [enabled|disabled]
```

Description

Enables or disables ports for allocating PoE power based on the link-partner's capabilities via LLDP.

Default: Enabled

Enable LLDP detection

```
switch(config) # int A7 poe-lldp-detect enabled
```

Interface context

```
switch(eth-A7) # poe-lldp-detect enabled
```

Enabling PoE detection via LLDP TLV advertisement

lldp config

Syntax

```
lldp config <port-number>
```

Description

Configure the lldp for the desired port by number.

Parameter

basicTlvEnable

Enables the basic advertised TLV for each port by number.

Options

<management_addr>

Use the option <management_addr> to specify specific devices to enable TLV advertisement.

Usage

```
lldp config <port_num> basicTlvEnable <management_addr>
```

Negotiating power using the DLL

When a PD requests power on a PoE port, LLDP interacts with PoE to see if there is enough power to fulfill the request. Power is set at the level requested. If the PD goes into power-saving mode, the power supplied is reduced; if the need for power increases, the amount supplied increases. PoE and LLDP interact to meet the current power demands.

int poe-lldp-detect

Syntax

```
int <PORT-LIST> poe-lldp-detect [enabled|disabled]
```

Description

Allows the data link layer to be used for power negotiation between a PD on a PoE port and LLDP.

Default: Disabled

Enable LLDP

```
switch(config) # int 7 PoE-lldp-detect enabled
```

Interface context

```
switch(eth-7) # PoE-lldp-detect enabled
```



NOTE: Detecting PoE information via LLDP affects only power delivery; it does not affect normal Ethernet connectivity.

Port with LLDP configuration information obtained from the device

```
switch(config)# show power-over-ethernet brief
Status and Counters - Port Power Status
System Power Status      : No redundancy
PoE Power Status         : No redundancy
```

```
Available: 273 W   Used: 0 W Remaining: 273 W
```

```
Module A Power
```

```
Available: 273 W   Used: 0 W Remaining: 273 W
```

PoE Port	Power Enable	Power Priority	Alloc By	Alloc Power	Actual Power	Configured Type	Detection Status	Power Class
Pre-std Detect								
A1 off	Yes	low	usage	17 W	0.0 W		Searching	0
A2 off	Yes	low	usage	17 W	0.0 W		Searching	0
A3 off	Yes	critical	usage	17 W	0.0 W		Searching	0
A4 off	Yes	critical	usage	17 W	0.0 W		Searching	0
A5 off	Yes	critical	usage	17 W	0.0 W		Searching	0
A6 off	Yes	high	usage	17 W	0.0 W		Searching	0
A7 off	Yes	high	usage	17 W	0.0 W		Searching	0
A8 off	Yes	high	usage	17 W	0.0 W		Searching	0
A9 off	Yes	low	usage	17 W	0.0 W		Searching	0
A10 off	Yes	low	usage	17 W	0.0 W		Searching	0
A11 off	Yes	low	usage	17 W	0.0 W		Searching	0
A12 off	Yes	low	usage	17 W	0.0 W		Searching	0
A13 off	Yes	low	usage	17 W	0.0 W		Searching	0
A14	Yes	low	usage	17 W	0.0 W		Searching	0

```

off
A15    | Yes    low    usage  17 W  0.0 W           Searching  0
off
A16    | Yes    low    usage  17 W  0.0 W           Searching  0

```

Figure 19: Port with LLDP configuration

```

switch(config)# show power-over-ethernet brief

Status and Counters - Port Power Status

System Power Status      : No redundancy
PoE Power Status         : No redundancy

Available: 300 W  Used: 0 W  Remaining: 300 W

Module A Power
Available: 300 W  Used: 5 W  Remaining: 295 W

PoE    | Power  Power  Alloc Alloc Actual Configured  Detection  Power
Port   | Enable Priority By   Power Power  Type           Status      Class
-----+-----
A1     | Yes    low    usage  17 W  5.0 W  Phone1         Delivering  1
A2     | Yes    low    usage  17 W  0.0 W           Searching  0
A3     | Yes    low    usage  17 W  0.0 W           Searching  0
A4     | Yes    low    usage  17 W  0.0 W           Searching  0
A5     | Yes    low    usage  17 W  0.0 W           Searching  0
A6     | Yes    low    usage  17 W  0.0 W           Searching  0

```

Initiating advertisement of PoE+ TLVs

lldp config

Syntax

```
lldp config <PORT-LIST>lldp config dot3TlvEnable poe_config
```

Description

Enables advertisement of data link layer power using PoE+ TLVs. The TLV is processed only after the physical layer and the data link layer are enabled. The TLV informs the PSE about the actual power required by the device.

Default: Enabled

Temporary PoE+ power drop

Symptom

A temporary PoE+ power drop occurs.

Cause

If LLDP is disabled at runtime, and a PD is using PoE+ power that has been negotiated through LLDP, there is a temporary power drop; the port begins using PoE+ power through the PLC. This event is recorded in the Event Log. When LLDP is enabled again, it causes a temporary power drop. This event is also recorded in the Event Log.

Sample event log messages:

```

W 08/04/10 13:35:50 02768 ports: Port A1 PoE power dropped.
Exceeded physical classification for a PoE Type1 device (LLDP process disabled)

```


W 08/04/10 13:36:31 02771 ports: Port A1 PoE power dropped.
Exceeded physical classification due to change in classification type (LLDP process enabled)

Viewing PoE when using LLDP information

show lldp config

Syntax

```
show lldp config <PORT-LIST>
```

Description

Displays the LLDP port configuration information, including the TLVs advertised.

LLDP port configuration information with PoE

Figure **Figure 21: Local power information** on page 166 shows an example of the local device power information using the `show lldp info local-device <PORT-LIST>` command.

Figure 20: LLDP port configuration information with PoE

```
Switch(config)# show lldp config 4

LLDP Port Configuration Detail

Port : 4
AdminStatus [Tx_Rx] : Tx_Rx
NotificationEnabled [False] : False
Med Topology Trap Enabled [False] : False

TLVS Advertised:
* port_descr
* system_name
* system_descr
* system_cap

* capabilities
* network_policy
* location_id
* poe

* macphy_config
* poeplus_config

IpAddress Advertised:
```

Figure 21: Local power information

```
switch(config) show lldp info local-device A1

LLDP Local Port Information Detail

Port      : A1
PortType  : local
PortId    : 1
PortDesc  : A1
Pvid      : 1

Poe Plus Information Detail

Poe Device Type      : Type2 PSE
Power Source         : Primary
Power Priority        : low
PD Requested Power Value : 20 Watts
PSE Actual Power Value  : 20 Watts
```

Figure **Figure 22: Remote power information** on page 167 shows an example of the remote device power information using the `show lldp info remote-device <PORT-LIST>` command.

Figure 22: Remote power information

```
switch(config) show lldp info remote-device A3

LLDP Remote Device Information Detail

Local Port      : A3
ChassisType     : mac-address
ChassisId       : 00 16 35 ff 2d 40
PortType        : local
PortId          : 23
SysName         : Switch
System Descr    : Switch 3500-24, revision K.14.xx
PortDescr       : 23
Pvid            : 55

System Capabilities Supported : bridge, router
System Capabilities Enabled   : bridge

Remote Management Address
  Type      : ipv4
  Address   : 10.0.102.198

Poe Plus Information Detail

Poe Device Type      : Type2 PD
Power Source         : Only PSE
Power Priority        : low
PD Requested Power Value : 20 Watts
PSE Actual Power Value  : 20 Watts
```

Viewing the global PoE power status of the switch

show power-over-ethernet

Syntax

```
show power-over-ethernet [brief] [ethernet <PORT-LIST>] [slot <SLOT-ID-RANGE>]
```

Description

Displays the switch's global PoE power status, including:

- Total Available Power

Lists the maximum PoE wattage available to provision active PoE ports on the switch. This is the amount of usable power for PDs.

- **Total Failover Power**

Lists the amount of PoE power available in the event of a single power supply failure. This is the amount of power the switch can maintain without dropping any PDs.

- **Total Redundancy Power**

Indicates the amount of PoE power held in reserve for redundancy in case of a power supply failure.

- **Total Remaining Power**

The amount of PoE power still available.

Parameters

brief

Displays PoE information for each port.

Options

<PORT-LIST>

Displays PoE information for the ports in PORT-LIST.

<SLOT-ID-RANGE>

Displays PoE information for the selected slots. Enter the `all` option to display the PoE information for all slots.

Show power-over-ethernet

The command `show power-over-ethernet` displays data similar to that shown in **Figure 23: show power-over-ethernet command output** on page 168.

Figure 23: *show power-over-ethernet command output*

```
Switch(config)# show power-over-ethernet

Status and Counters - System Power Status

Pre-standard Detect      : On
System Power Status      : No redundancy
PoE Power Status         : No redundancy

Chassis power-over-ethernet:

Total Available Power    : 600 W
Total Failover Power     : 300 W
Total Redundancy Power   : 0 W
Total used Power         : 9 W +/- 6W
Total Remaining Power    : 591 W

Internal Power
 1 300W/POE /Connected.
 2 300W/POE /Connected.
 3 Not Connected.
 4 Not Connected.

External Power
EPS1 /Not Connected.
EPS2 /Not Connected.
```

Viewing PoE status on all ports

show power-over-ethernet

Syntax

```
show power-over-ethernet brief
```

Description

Displays the port power status.

- **PoE Port**
Lists all PoE-capable ports on the switch.
- **Power Enable**
Shows **Yes** for ports enabled to support PoE (the default) and **No** for ports on which PoE is disabled.
- **Power Priority**
Lists the power priority (Low, High, and Critical) configured on ports enabled for PoE.
- **Alloc by**
Displays how PoE is allocated (usage, class, value)
- **Alloc Power**
The maximum amount of PoE power allocated for that port (expressed in watts.)Default: 17 watts for PoE; 33 watts for PoE+.
- **Actual Power**
The power actually being used on that port.
- **Configured Type**
If configured, shows the user-specified identifier for the port. If not configured, this field is empty.
- **Detection Status:**
 - **Searching:** The port is trying to detect a PD connection.
 - **Delivering:** The port is delivering power to a PD.
 - **Disabled:** On the indicated port, either PoE support is disabled or PoE power is enabled but the PoE module does not have enough power available to supply the port's power needs.
 - **Fault:** The switch detects a problem with the connected PD.
 - **Other Fault:** The switch has detected an internal fault that prevents it from supplying power on that port.
- **Power Class** Shows the 802.3af power class of the PD detected on the indicated port.

Table 8: Power Classes

Power class	Description
0	0.44 to 12.95 watts can be drawn by the PD. Default class.
1	0.44 to 3.84 watts
2	3.84 to 6.49 watts

Table Continued

Power class	Description
3	6.49 to 12.95 watts
4	For PoE+; up to 25.5 watts can be drawn by the PD

Show power-over-ethernet brief

show power-over-ethernet brief displays this output:

Figure 24: *show power-over-ethernet brief command output*

```
Switch(config)# show power-over-ethernet brief
```

Status and Counters - Port Power Status								
System Power Status		: No redundancy						
PoE Power Status		: No redundancy						
Available: 600 W Used: 9 W Remaining: 591 W								
Module A Power								
Available: 408 W Used: 9 W Remaining: 399 W								
PoE Port	Power Enable	Power Priority	Alloc By	Alloc Power	Actual Power	Configured Type	Detection Status	Power Class
A1	Yes	low	usage	17 W	0.0 W		Searching	0
A2	Yes	low	usage	17 W	0.0 W		Searching	0
A3	Yes	low	usage	17 W	0.0 W		Searching	0
A4	Yes	low	usage	17 W	0.0 W		Searching	0
A5	Yes	low	usage	17 W	0.0 W		Searching	0
A6	Yes	low	usage	17 W	8.4 W		Delivering	2
A7	Yes	low	usage	17 W	0.0 W		Searching	0
A8	Yes	low	usage	17 W	0.0 W		Searching	0
A9	Yes	low	usage	17 W	0.0 W		Searching	0

You can also show the PoE information by **slot**:

Figure 25: *Showing the PoE information by slot*

```
Switch(config)# show power-over-ethernet slot A
```

Status and Counters - System Power Status for slot A			
Maximum Power	: 408 W	Operational Status	: On
Power In Use	: 9 W +/- 6 W	Usage Threshold (%)	: 80

Viewing the PoE status on specific ports

show power-over-ethernet

Syntax

```
show power-over-ethernet <PORT-LIST>
```

Description

Displays the following PoE status and statistics (since the last reboot) for each port in <PORT-LIST>:

Power Enable	Shows Yes for ports enabled to support PoE (the default) and No for ports on which PoE is disabled. For ports on which power is disabled, this is the only field displayed by <code>show power-over-ethernet <PORT-LIST></code> .
Priority	Lists the power priority (Low, High, and Critical) configured on ports enabled for PoE.
Allocate by	How PoE is allocated (usage, class, value.)
Detection Status	<p>Searching</p> <p>The port is available to support a PD.</p> <p>Delivering</p> <p>The port is delivering power to a PD.</p> <p>Disabled</p> <p>PoE power is enabled on the port but the PoE module does not have enough power available to supply the port's power needs.</p> <p>Fault</p> <p>The switch detects a problem with the connected PD.</p> <p>Other Fault</p> <p>The switch has detected an internal fault that prevents it from supplying power on that port.</p>
Over Current Cnt	Shows the number of times a connected PD has attempted to draw more than 15.4 watts for PoE or 24.5 watts for PoE+. Each occurrence generates an Event Log message.
Power Denied Cnt	Shows the number of times PDs requesting power on the port have been denied because of insufficient power available. Each occurrence generates an Event Log message.
Voltage	The total voltage, in volts, being delivered to PDs.
Power	The total power, in watts, being delivered to PDs.
LLDP Detect	Port is enabled or disabled for allocating PoE power, based on the link-partner's capabilities via LLDP.
Configured Type	If configured, shows the user-specified identifier for the port. If not configured, the field is empty.
Value	The maximum amount of PoE power allocated for that port (expressed in watts.) Default: 17 watts for PoE; 33 watts for PoE+

Table Continued

Power Class	Shows the power class of the PD detected on the indicated port. Classes include: 0 0.44 to 12.95 watts 1 0.44 to 3.84 watts 2 3.84 to 6.49 watts 3 6.49 to 12.95 watts 4 For PoE+; up to 25.5 watts can be drawn by the PD
MPS Absent Cnt	Shows the number of times a detected PD has no longer requested power from the port. Each occurrence generates an Event Log message. ("MPS" refers to the "maintenance power signature.")
Short Cnt	Shows the number of times the switch provided insufficient current to a connected PD.
Current	The total current, in mA, being delivered to PDs.

PoE status of ports

If you want to view the PoE status of ports A6 and A7, you would use `show power-over-ethernet A6-A7` to display the data:

Figure 26: `show power-over-ethernet PORT-LIST` output

```
Switch(config)# show power-over-ethernet A6-A7
```

Status and Counters - Port Power Status for port A6			
Power Enable	: Yes	LLDP Detect	: enabled
Priority	: low	Configured Type	:
AllocateBy	: value	Value	: 17 W
Detection Status	: Delivering	Power Class	: 2
Over Current Cnt	: 0	MPS Absent Cnt	: 0
Power Denied Cnt	: 0	Short Cnt	: 0
Voltage	: 55.1 V	Current	: 154 mA
Power	: 8.4 W		
Status and Counters - Port Power Status for port A7			
Power Enable	: yes	LLDP Detect	: disabled
Priority	: low	Configured Type	:
AllocateBy	: value	Value	: 17 W
Detection Status	: Searching	Power Class	: 0
Over Current Cnt	: 0	MPS Absent Cnt	: 0
Power Denied Cnt	: 0	Short Cnt	: 0
Voltage	: 0 V	Current	: 0 mA
Power	: 0 W		

Configuring thresholds for generating a power notice

You can configure one of the following thresholds:

A global power threshold that applies to all modules on the switch.

This setting acts as a trigger for sending a notice when the PoE power consumption on any PoE module installed in the switch crosses the configured global threshold level. (Crossing the threshold level in either direction—PoE power usage either increasing or decreasing—triggers the notice.) The default setting is 80%.

A per-slot power threshold that applies to an individual PoE module installed in the designated slot.

This setting acts as a trigger for sending a notice when the module in the specified slot exceeds or goes below a specific level of PoE power consumption.

setting global notification

Suppose slots A, B, and C each have a PoE module installed. In this case, executing the following command sets the global notification threshold to 70% of available PoE power.

```
switch# power-over-ethernet threshold
      70
```

With this setting, if module B is allocated 100 watts of PoE power and is using 68 watts, and then another PD is connected to the module in slot B that uses 8 watts, the 70% threshold of 70 watts is exceeded. The switch sends an SNMP trap and generates this Event Log message:

```
Slot B POE usage has exceeded threshold of 70%.
```

If the switch is configured for debug logging, it also sends the Event Log message to the configured debug destinations.

On any PoE module, if an increasing PoE power load (1) exceeds the configured power threshold—which triggers the log message and SNMP trap—and then (2) later decreases and drops below the threshold again, the switch generates another SNMP trap, plus a message to the Event Log and any configured Debug destinations.

PoE/PoE+ allocation using LLDP

LLDP with PoE

When using PoE, enabling `poe-lldp-detect` allows automatic power configuration if the link partner supports PoE. When LLDP is enabled, the information about the power usage of the PD is available, and the switch can then comply with or ignore this information. You can configure PoE on each port according to the PD (IP phone, wireless device, and so on) specified in the LLDP field. The default configuration is for PoE information to be ignored if detected through LLDP.

Detecting PoE information via LLDP affects only power delivery; it does not affect normal Ethernet connectivity.

LLDP with PoE+

PoE+ with LLDP Overview

The DLC for PoE provides more exact control over the power requirement between a PSE and PD. The DLC works in conjunction with the PLC and is mandatory for any Type-2 PD that requires more than 12.95 watts of input power.

**NOTE:**

DLC is defined as part of the IEEE 802.3at standard.

You can implement the power negotiation between a PSE and a PD at the physical layer or at the data link layer. After the link is powered at the physical layer, the PSE can use LLDP to query the PD repeatedly to discover the power needs of the PD. Communication over the data link layer allows finer control of power allotment, which makes it possible for the PSE to supply dynamically the power levels needed by the PD. Using LLDP is optional for the PSE but mandatory for a Type 2 PD that requires more than 12.95 watts of power.

If the power needed by the PD is not available, that port is shut off.

PoE allocation

There are two ways LLDP negotiates power with a PD:

- Using LLDP MED TLVs

Disabled by default. Enable using the `int <PORT-LIST> PoE-lldp-detect [enabled|disabled]` command, as shown below.

LLDP MED TLVs sent by the PD are used to negotiate power only if the LLDP PoE+ TLV is disabled or inactive; if the LLDP PoE+ TLV is sent as well (not likely), the LLDP MED TLV is ignored.

- Using LLDP PoE+ TLVs

Enabled by default. The LLDP PoE+ TLV is always advertised unless it has been disabled (enable it by using the `lldp config <PORT-LIST> dot3TlvEnable poeplus_config` command.)

It always takes precedence over the LLDP MED TLV.

Enabling `PoE-lldp-detect` allows the data link layer to be used for power negotiation. When a PD requests power on a PoE port, LLDP interacts with PoE to see if there is enough power to fulfill the request. Power is set at the level requested. If the PD goes into power-saving mode, the power supplied is reduced; if the need for power increases, the amount supplied is increased. PoE and LLDP interact to meet the current power demands.

Operation note

The advertisement of power with TLVs for LLDP PoE+ is enabled by default. If LLDP is disabled at runtime and a PD is using PoE+ power that has been negotiated through LLDP, there will be a temporary power drop. The port will begin using PoE+ power through the PLC. This event is recorded in the event log. An example message would look like the following:

```
W 08/04/10 13:35:50 02768 ports: Port A1 PoE power dropped. Exceeded physical classification for a PoE Type1 device (LLDP process disabled)
```

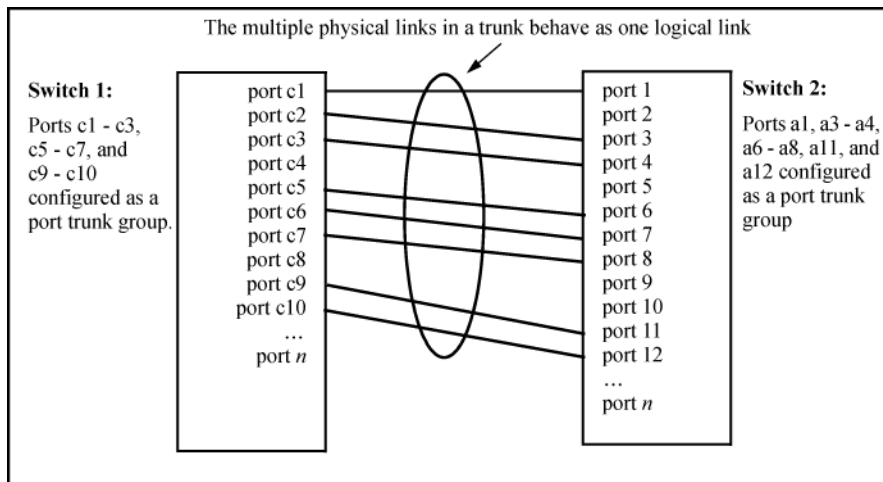
When LLDP is enabled again, it causes a temporary power drop. This event is also recorded in the event log. An example message looks like the following:

```
W 08/04/10 13:36:31 02771 ports: Port A1 PoE power dropped. Exceeded physical classification due to change in classification type (LLDP process enabled)
```

Port trunking overview

Port trunking allows you to assign up to eight physical links to one logical link (trunk) that functions as a single, higher-speed link providing dramatically increased bandwidth. This capability applies to connections between backbone devices as well as to connections in other network areas where traffic bottlenecks exist. A trunk group is a set of up to eight ports configured as members of the same port trunk. The ports in a trunk group do not have to be consecutive. For example:

Figure 27: Conceptual example of port trunking



Port trunk connections and configuration

All port trunk links must be point-to-point connections between a switch and another switch, router, server, or workstation configured for port trunking. No intervening, non-trunking devices are allowed. It is important to note that ports on both ends of a port trunk group must have the same mode (speed and duplex) and flow control settings.

Link connections

The switch does not support port trunking through an intermediate, non-trunking device such as a hub, or using more than one media type in a port trunk group. Similarly, for proper trunk operation, all links in the same trunk group must have the same speed, duplex, and flow control.

Port security restriction

Port security does not operate on a trunk group. If you configure port security on one or more ports that are later added to a trunk group, the switch resets the port security parameters for those ports to the factory-default configuration.



IMPORTANT:

To avoid broadcast storms or loops in your network while configuring a trunk, first disable or disconnect all ports you want to add to or remove from the trunk. After you finish configuring the trunk, enable or re-connect the ports.

Viewing and configuring port trunk groups

You can list the trunk type and group for all ports on the switch or for selected ports. You can also list LACP-only status information for LACP-configured ports.



IMPORTANT:

To avoid broadcast storms or loops in your network while configuring a trunk, first disable or disconnect all ports you want to add to or remove from the trunk. After you finish configuring the trunk, enable or re-connect the ports.

Viewing static trunk type and group for all ports or for selected ports

show trunks

Syntax

```
show trunks <PORT-LIST>
```

Description

Omitting the <PORT-LIST> parameter results in a static trunk data listing for all LAN ports in the switch.

Static trunk group

In a switch where ports A4 and A5 belong to Trunk 1 and ports A7 and A8 belong to Trunk 2, you have the options shown in **Figure 28: Listing specific ports belonging to static trunks** on page 176 and **Example of a show trunk listing without specifying ports** on page 177 for displaying port data for ports belonging to static trunks.

Using a port list specifies, for switch ports in a static trunk group, only the ports you want to view. In this case, the command specifies ports A5 through A7. However, because port A6 is not in a static trunk group, it does not appear in the resulting listing:

Figure 28: Listing specific ports belonging to static trunks

Port 5 appears with an example of a name that you can optionally assign using the Friendly Port Names feature. (Refer to "Using Friendly (Optional) Port Names".)

```
Switch> show trunks e 5-7
```

Load Balancing

Port	Name	Type	Group	Type
5	Print-Server-Trunk	10/100TX	Trk1	Trunk
7		10/100TX	Trk2	Trunk

Port 6 does not appear in this listing because it is not assigned to a static trunk.

The `show trunks <PORT-LIST>` command in the above example includes a port list, and thus shows trunk group information only for specific ports that have membership in a static trunk. In **Example of a show trunk listing without specifying ports** on page 177, the command does not include a port list, so the switch lists all ports having static trunk membership.

Example of a show trunk listing without specifying ports

```
switch# show trunks
```

Load Balancing

Port	Name	Type	Group	Type
4	Print-Server-Trunk	10/100TX	Trk1	Trunk
5	Print-Server-Trunk	10/100TX	Trk1	Trunk
7		10/100TX	Trk2	Trunk
8		10/100TX	Trk2	Trunk

Viewing static LACP and dynamic LACP trunk data

show lacp

Syntax

```
show lacp
```

Description

Lists data for only the LACP-configured ports.

Example of a show LACP listing

Ports A1 and A2 have been previously configured for a static LACP trunk.

```
switch# show lacp
```

Port	LACP Enabled	Trunk Group	Port Status	LACP Partner	LACP Status	Admin Key	Oper Key
A1	Active	Trk1	Up	Yes	Success	0	250
A2	Active	Trk1	Up	Yes	Success	0	250
A3	Active	A3	Down	No	Success	0	300
A4	Passive	A4	Down	No	Success	0	0
A5	Passive	A5	Down	No	Success	0	0
A6	Passive	A6	Down	No	Success	0	0

Configuring a static trunk or static LACP trunk group



IMPORTANT:

Configure port trunking before you connect the trunked links between switches. Otherwise, a broadcast storm could occur. If you need to connect the ports before configuring them for trunking, you can temporarily disable the ports until the trunk is configured.

trunk

Syntax

```
trunk <PORT-LIST> <trk1 | trk2 | ..... trkN> [trunk | lacp | dt-lacp | dt-trunk]
```

Description

Configures the specified static trunk type.

Static trunk group

This example uses ports C4 to C6 to create a non-protocol static trunk group with the group name `Trk2`.

```
switch# trunk c4-c6 trk2 trunk
```

Removing ports from a static trunk group



IMPORTANT:

Removing a port from a trunk can create a loop and cause a broadcast storm. When you remove a port from a trunk where spanning tree is not in use, Switch recommends that you first disable the port or disconnect the link on that port.

no trunk

Syntax

```
no trunk <PORT-LIST>
```

Description

Removes the specified ports from an existing trunk group.

remove ports from an existing trunk group

To remove ports C4 and C5 from an existing trunk group:

```
switch# no trunk c4-c5
```

Enabling dynamic LACP trunk groups

An individual trunk can have up to eight links, with additional standby links if you are using LACP.

interface lacp active

Syntax

```
interface <PORT-LIST> lacp active
```

Description

Configure trunk group types. Configures `<PORT-LIST>` as LACP active. If the ports at the other end of the links on `<PORT-LIST>` are configured as LACP passive, this command enables a dynamic LACP trunk group on `<PORT-LIST>`.

Enable a dynamic LACP trunk group

This example uses ports C4 and C5 to enable a dynamic LACP trunk group.

```
switch# interface c4-c5 lacp active
```

Remove ports from a dynamic LACP trunk group

To remove a port from dynamic LACP trunk operation, you must turn off LACP on the port. (On a port in an operating, dynamic LACP trunk, you cannot change between LACP *Active* and LACP *passive* without first removing LACP operation from the port.)



IMPORTANT:

Unless spanning tree is running on your network, removing a port from a trunk can result in a loop. To help prevent a broadcast storm when you remove a port from a trunk where spanning tree is not in use, Hewlett Packard Enterprise recommends that you first disable the port or disconnect the link on that port.

no interface lacp

Syntax

```
no interface <PORT-LIST> lacp
```

Description

Removes <PORT-LIST> from any dynamic LACP trunk and returns the ports in <PORT-LIST> to passive LACP.

Using no interface lacp

Port C6 belongs to an operating, dynamic LACP trunk. To remove port C6 from the dynamic trunk and return it to passive LACP, do the following:

```
switch# no interface c6 lacp
switch# interface c6 lacp passive
```

If the port on the other end of the link is configured for active LACP or static LACP, the trunked link will be re-established almost immediately.

Set the LACP key

During dynamic link aggregation using LACP, ports with the same key are aggregated as a single trunk.

lacp

Syntax

```
lacp [active|passive|key 0-65535]
```

Enable LACP and configure an LACP key

```
switch# int A2-A3 lacp active
switch# int A2-A3 lacp key 500
```

```
switch# show lacp
```

LACP							
Port	LACP Enabled	Trunk Group	Port Status	Partner	LACP Status	Admin Key	Oper Key
----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
A2	Active	A2	Down	No	Success	500	500
A3	Active	A3	Down	No	Success	500	500

Interface configured with a different LACP key

```
switch# int A5 lacp active
switch# int A5 lacp key 250
```

```
switch# show lacp
```

LACP

Port	LACP Enabled	Trunk Group	Port Status	Partner	LACP Status	Admin Key	Oper Key
A1	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success	100	100
A2	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success	100	100
A3	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success	100	100
A4	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success	100	100
A5	Active	A5	Up	No	Success	250	250

Specifying Minimum Active Links for LACP

Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) allows the operator to configure a minimum number of active member links in a trunk group to remain operational. When the number of active member links in the trunk is less than the configured threshold value, the LACP trunk will be shut down. An additional option is provided to configure an `enable-timer`, on expiry of which the LACP trunk brought down by the `min-active-links` functionality, will be re-enabled. Once the trunk member ports are re-enabled, the validation for the active links against the configured threshold is performed after a minute and the trunk state will be decided accordingly. The trunk will be up and the traffic will be forwarded though the LACP trunk during this period.



NOTE:

- If the minimum active links are configured without `enable-timer` configuration, the LACP trunk disabled by the feature will remain down until the operator explicitly disables and re-enables the port or triggers a port up indication by any alternative means.
- If the number of active links in a LACP trunk is less than the threshold value, the trunk will not be functional and traffic will not pass through the respective trunk.
- If the number of active links in the trunk drops below the threshold, the entire trunk will be brought down and complete traffic flowing through the same will be dropped. Hence, this configuration must be used carefully in a topology where there is a redundant traffic path.
- It is recommended to configure the `min-active-links` on one side of the trunk.

`lacp min-active-links`

Syntax

```
lacp min-active-links <value>
```

```
no lacp min-active-links <value>
```

Description

Configures the minimum threshold value for the active member links in a LACP trunk group.

The `no` form of this command deletes the configured threshold and sets the threshold value to default.

Command context

interface

Example: eth-Trk

Parameters

value

Sets the threshold value for LACP trunk. The value is an integer that ranges from zero to eight which represents the number of minimum active links. The default value is zero which disables the minimum active links.

Example

```
Switch(eth-Trk11)# lacp
enable-timer          Configure the time in seconds to wait before re-enabling
                      the trunk disabled by LACP feature for minimum active links.
key                   Set the LACP key.
mad-passthrough       Enable or disable MAD passthrough on the LACP trunks.
min-active-links     Configure the threshold for the minimum number of active
                      member links in a LACP trunk group, for it to be operational.
active               Enable active LACP.
passive              Enable passive LACP.
static               Set the mode of a static LACP port to active or passive.
Switch(eth-Trk11)# lacp min-active-links
<0-8>                Enter a number.
Switch(eth-Trk11)# lacp min-active-links 5
WARNING: This configuration can result in disabling the trunk, if the
number of active links in the trunk drops below the configured threshold.
Continue (y/n)? y
```

lacp enable-timer

Syntax

lacp enable-timer <value>

no lacp enable-timer <value>

Description

Configures the timer on expiry of which the member links disabled by LACP min-active-links functionality, will be re-enabled.

The no form of this command deletes the configured time and sets the time to default.

Command context

interface

Example: eth-Trk

Parameters

value

Sets the time duration to wait before enabling the disabled trunk. The time duration ranges from 0 to 604800 seconds. The default value is zero which disables the timer.

Example

```
Switch(eth-Trk11)# lacp
enable-timer          Configure the time in seconds to wait before re-enabling
                      the trunk disabled by LACP feature for minimum active links.
key                   Set the LACP key.
mad-passthrough       Enable or disable MAD passthrough on the LACP trunks.
min-active-links       Configure the threshold for the minimum number of active
                      member links in a LACP trunk group, for it to be operational.
active                Enable active LACP.
passive               Enable passive LACP.
static                Set the mode of a static LACP port to active or passive.
Switch(eth-Trk11)# lacp enable-timer
<0-604800>            Enter a number.
Switch(eth-Trk11)# lacp enable-timer 120
```

show lacp min-active-links

Syntax

```
show lacp min-active-links
```

Description

Shows the LACP minimum active links information for each trunk group.

Example

```
switch# show lacp min-active-links
```

Trunk Group	Minimum active Links	Enable-Time (seconds)
Trk1	0	0
Trk3	0	0
Trk11	5	120
Trk12	3	356

show running-configuration

```
switch# show running-config
```

Running configuration:

```
; hpStack_KB Configuration Editor; Created on release #KB.16.08.0000x
; Ver #14:0f.6f.f8.1d.fb.7f.bf.bb.ff.7c.59.fc.7b.ff.ff.fc.ff.ff.3f.ef:60
```

```
stacking
  member 1 type "JL074A" mac-address ecebb8-117400
  member 1 flexible-module A type JL079A
  member 2 type "JL074A" mac-address ecebb8-1d1580
  member 2 flexible-module A type JL079A
  member 3 type "JL075A" mac-address 1c98ec-996c80
  member 3 flexible-module A type JL083A
  member 3 flexible-module B type JL081A
  exit
hostname "Switch-2"
mirror 1 port 1/16
mirror 2 port 1/32
trunk 1/35-1/36,2/35-2/36 trk1 lacp
trunk 1/A1,1/A2,2/A1,2/A2 trk3 lacp
trunk 1/1-1/2,2/1-2/2,3/1-3/3 trk11 lacp
trunk 3/13-3/14,3/A1-3/A2 trk12 lacp
interface Trk11
```

```
lacp min-active-links 5
lacp enable-timer 120
exit
interface Trk12
lacp min-active-links 3
lacp enable-timer 356
exit
```

Limitations

- Dynamic LACP, static trunks, and distributed trunks will not support this feature.
- The command is not available for REST/next Gen UI.
- If the LACP trunk is down due to lack of active links with the timer enabled, a dynamic update to the `enable-timer` by configuration will not take effect immediately as the current timer runs with the previously configured value.
- When the LACP trunk is blocked by `min-active-links` and the `enable-timer` is running, the member links will be prevented from becoming operational even if there is an external intervention caused by configuration or topology changes.
- If the `enable-timer` is not configured, the operator must restore the member links of the LACP trunk which are blocked by the minimum active links.
- If there is a flap in any member links, the LACP trunk disabled by `min-active-links` may end up flapping when `enable-timer` is not configured.
- The `min-active-links` feature is not supported on the previous releases (that is prior to 16.08 version). On downgrading the switch to the previous version, the configuration will be removed without any warning.

Viewing and configuring a static trunk group (Menu)

Prerequisites

To avoid a broadcast storm, configure port trunking **before** you connect the trunked links to another switch, routing switch, or server. (If you need to connect the ports before configuring them for trunking, you can temporarily disable the ports until the trunk is configured. See "Enabling or Disabling Ports and Configuring Port_Mode".)

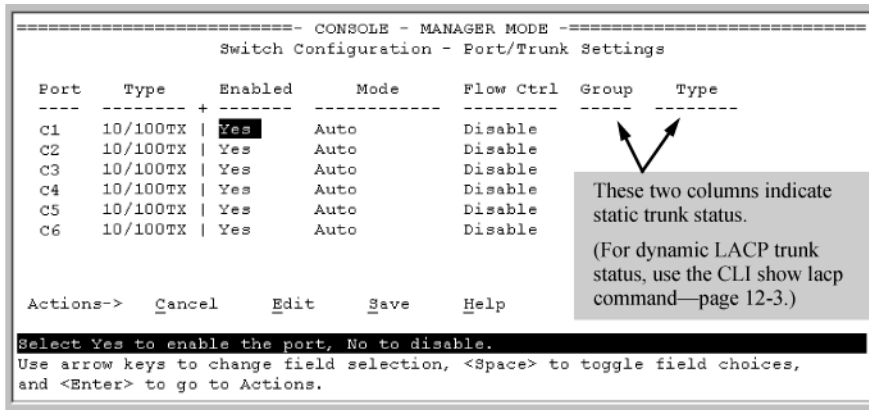
This procedure uses the Port/Trunk Settings screen to configure a static port trunk group on the switch.

Procedure

1. Review the Prerequisites.
2. From the Main Menu, select **Switch Configuration ...** , and then select **Port/Trunk Settings**.

3. On the keyboard, press **[E]** (for Edit), and then use the arrow keys to access the port trunk parameters.

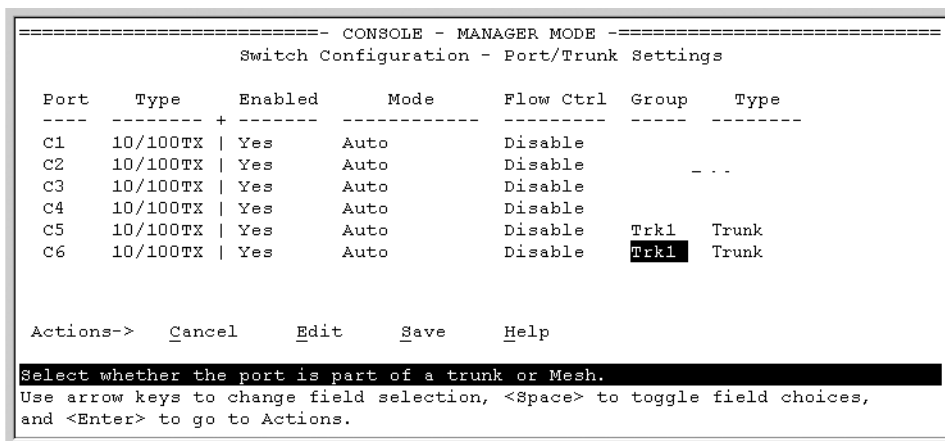
Figure 29: Menu screen for configuring a port trunk group



4. In the Group column, move the cursor to the port you want to configure.
5. Use the Space bar to choose a trunk group assignment (Trk1, Trk2, and so on) for the selected port.
 - a. For proper trunk operation, all ports in a trunk must have the same media type and mode (such as 10/100TX set to 100FDx, or 100FX set to 100FDx.) The flow control settings must also be the same for all ports in a given trunk.
 - b. You can configure the trunk group with up to eight ports per trunk. If multiple VLANs are configured, all ports within a trunk will be assigned to the same VLAN or set of VLANs. (With the 802.1Q VLAN capability built into the switch, more than one VLAN can be assigned to a trunk. See the *Advanced Traffic Management Guide*.

(To return a port to a non-trunk status, keep pressing the Space bar until a blank appears in the highlighted Group value for that port.)

Figure 30: Configuration for a Two-Port Trunk Group



6. Move the cursor to the Type column for the selected port and use the Space bar to select the trunk type:
 - a. LACP
 - b. Trunk (the default type if you do not specify a type)

All ports in the same trunk group on the same switch must have the same Type (LACP or Trunk.)

7. When you are finished assigning ports to the trunk group, press **[Enter]**, then **[S]** (for `Save`) and return to the Main Menu. (It is not necessary to reboot the switch.)

During the Save process, traffic on the ports configured for trunking is delayed for several seconds. If the Spanning Tree Protocol is enabled, the delay may be up to 30 seconds.

8. Connect the trunked ports on the switch to the corresponding ports on the opposite device. If you previously disabled any of the trunked ports on the switch, enable them now. (See "Viewing Port Status and Configuring Port Parameters")

Check the Event Log to verify that the trunked ports are operating properly.

Enable L4-based trunk load balancing

Use this command with the `L4-based` option to enable load balancing on Layer 4 information when it is present.

trunk-load-balance

Syntax

```
trunk-load-balance [L3-based|L4-based]
```

Description

When the `L4-based` option is configured, enables load balancing based on Layer 4 information if it is present. If it is not present, Layer 3 information is used if present; if Layer 3 information is not present, Layer 2 information is used. The configuration is executed in global configuration context and applies to the entire switch.

Defaults to L3-based load balancing.

Parameters

L3-based

Load balance on Layer 3 information if present, or Layer 2 information.

L4-based

Load balance on Layer 4 port information if present, or Layer 3 if present, or Layer 2.

Enabling L4-based trunk load balancing

Figure 31: Enabling L4-based trunk load balancing

```
switch(config)# trunk-load-balance L4-based
```

Figure 32: Output when L4-based trunk load balancing is enabled

```
switch(config)# show trunk

Load Balancing Method: L4-based

  Port | Name                                     Type      | Group  Type
  ---- + -
  41    |                                     100/1000T  | Trk1   Trunk
  42    |                                     100/1000T  | Trk1   Trunk
```

Figure 33: Running config file when L4-based trunk load balancing is enabled

```
Switch(config) # show running-config

Running configuration:

; J9091A Configuration Editor; Created on release #K.15.02.0001x

hostname "Switch"
module 1 type J8702A
module 5 type J9051A
module 7 type J8705A
module 10 type J8708A
module 12 type J8702A
trunk-load-balance L4-based
vlan 1
  name "DEFAULT VLAN"
  untagged A1-A24,G1-G24,J1-J4,L1-L24
  ip address dhcp-bootp
  tagged EUP
  no untagged EDP
  exit
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
```

If L4 trunk load balancing is enabled, a line appears in the running-config file. If it is not enabled, nothing appears as this is the default and the default values are not displayed.

Viewing trunk load balancing

The `show trunks load-balance interface` command displays the port on which the information will be forwarded out for the specified traffic flow with the specified source and destination address.

show trunks

Syntax

```
show trunks load-balance interface <trunk-id> mac <src-addr> <dest-addr> [ip <src-addr> <dest-addr> <src-tcp-port> <src-udp-port> <dest-tcp-port> <dest-udp-port> inbound-port <port-num>]
```

Description

Displays the port on which the information will be forwarded out for the specified traffic flow with the specified source and destination address.

Options

trunk-id

The trunk id (trk1, trk2, etc.)

mac src-addr dest-addr

The source MAC address and the destination MAC address.

ip src-addr dest-addr

The source IPv4 /IPv6 address and the destination IPv4/IPv6 address.

[src-tcp-port|src-udp-port]

The source TCP port or the source UDP port.

[dest-tcp-port|dest-udp-port]

The destination TCP port or the destination UDP port.

inbound-port port-num

the port number of which the traffic is received.

Information about the forwarding port

```
switch# show trunks load-balance interface trk1 mac 424521-498421 534516-795463 inbound-port a5
Traffic in this flow will be forwarded out port 23 based on the configured L2 load balancing.
```

Operating notes

The port cannot be determined if:

- All the ports in the trunk are down.
- The MAC address is all zeros.
- The source MAC address is broadcast or multicast.

Distributed trunking

Configure ISC ports

Configure the ISC ports before you configure the trunks for distributed trunking.

switch-interconnect

Syntax

```
[no] switch-interconnect <PORT-LIST>|<TRK1|TRK2|...TRKn>
```

Configures an InterSwitch-Connection (ISC) port. Override an ISC configuration by configuring the command with a different value.



IMPORTANT:

A port that is already part of a trunk cannot be configured as an ISC interface.

Parameters

no

Removes the ISC interface configuration.

<PORT-LIST>|<trk1| trk2| ... trkN>

The interconnect interface that connects two distributed trunking switches. It can be a physical port, manual LACP trunk, or manual non-protocol trunk.

Configuring distributed trunking ports

Distributed trunking ports must be configured manually.

trunk

Syntax

```
trunk <PORT-LIST> <trk1|trk2|...trkN> trunk <PORT-LIST>|lacp | dt-lacp | dt-trunk
```

Description

Configures distributed trunking on a switch. Use either the `dt-lacp` or `dt-trunk` option.

The trunk groups and trunk types must be identical in both switches. For example, if Switch Local is configured with `trk1` and uses the `dt-lacp` option, Switch Remote also must be configured with `trk1` and use the `dt-lacp` option to form a distributed trunk. Similarly, if Switch Local is configured with `trk2` and uses the `dt-trunk` option, Switch Remote must be configured with `trk2` and use the `dt-trunk` option to form the distributed trunk.

DT requires that the platforms at both ends of the DT-link be the same and running the same software version.

Parameters

no

The `no` form of the command removes the distributed trunking configuration on the switch.

ISC port configuration

Figure 34: Configuring distributed trunking on page 188 shows an ISC port being configured for the local switch and the remote switch.

Figure 34: *Configuring distributed trunking*

```
Switch Local(config)# switch-interconnect a7
Switch Remote(config)# switch-interconnect a8

Switch Local(config)# trunk a9-a10 trk10 dt-lacp
Switch Remote(config)# trunk a5-a6 trk10 dt-lacp

Switch Local(config)# trunk a1-a2 trk20 dt-trunk
Switch Remote(config)# trunk a3-a4 trk20 dt-trunk
```

Configuring peer-keepalive links

distributed-trunking

Syntax

```
distributed-trunking [hold-timer 3-10 | peer-keepalive <DESTINATION> ip-address | vlan <VID> [interval <400-10000>] [timeout <3-20>] [udp-port <1024-49151>]
```

Description

Distributed trunking uses a VLAN interface between DT peers to transmit periodic peer-keepalive messages. This command configures the peer-keepalive parameters for distributed trunking.

Parameters and options

no

The **no** form of the command removes the distributed trunking configuration on the switch.

hold-timer

Configures the hold time in seconds. The range is 3–10 seconds, and defaults to 3.

peer-keepalive

—

<DESTINATION>

The destination IPv4 address to be used by DT switches to send peer-keepalive messages to the peer DT switch when the ISC is down.

vlan <VID>

The VID of the VLAN used exclusively for sending and receiving peer-keepalive messages.

interval

The interval between peer-keepalive messages (in milliseconds), in the range of 400–10000 milliseconds. Defaults to 1000 milliseconds.

timeout

The peer-keepalive timeout in seconds, in the range of 3–10 seconds. Defaults to 5 seconds.

udp-port

The source UDP port to be used for transmitting peer-keepalive HELLO messages, in the range of 1024–49151.

Viewing distributed trunking information

show lacp distributed

Syntax

```
show lacp distributed
```

Description

Displays information about distributed trunks and LACP status.

Example

```
Switch Local (config)#: show lacp distributed
                        Distributed LACP
Local Port Status:
```

LACP	Trunk	Port	LACP	LACP	Admin	Oper
------	-------	------	------	------	-------	------

Port	Enabled	Group	Status	Partner	Status	Key	Key
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	---
A9	Active	Trk10	Up	Yes	Sucess	350	350
A10	Active	Trk10	Up	Yes	Sucess	350	350

Remote Port	Status	LACP	Trunk	Port	LACP	LACP	Oper
Port	Enabled	Group	Status	Partner	Status	Key	Key
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
A5	Active	Trk10	Up	Yes	Sucess	200	
A6	Active	Trk10	Up	Yes	Sucess	200	

show distributed-trunk

Syntax

```
show distributed-trunk consistency-parameters global
```

Description

This command displays configured features on VLANs that have dt - lacp or dt - trunk ports as member port. This command also displays VLAN memberships and loop - protect status of a given DT trunk. You can use this command to determine if there is any mismatch in the configuration parameters on VLANs configured for DT ports or on DT interfaces.

show distributed-trunk

```
show distributed-trunk consistency-parameters global
```

	Local	Peer
	-----	-----
Image Version	K.15.XX	K.15.XX
IP Routing	Enabled	Enabled
Peer-keepalive interval (ms)	1000	1000

IGMP enabled VLANs on Local : 1-10, 100-110, 501 ,600
610 ,800

IGMP enabled VLANs on Peer : 1-10, 100-110, 501 ,600

DHCP-snooping enabled VLANs on Local : 1,2

DHCP-snooping enabled VLANs on Peer : 1

Loop-protect enabled VLANs on Local : 1,4

Loop-protect enabled VLANs on Peer : 1,5

MLD enabled VLANs on Local : 1-10

MLD enabled VLANs on Peer : 1-10

Example

```
Show distributed-trunk
consistency-parameters trunk <trk1...trkN>
Allowed VLANs on Local : 1-10, 100-110, 501 ,600
610 ,800
Allowed VLANs on Peer : 1-10, 100-110, 501 ,600
610 ,800
```

Name	Local Value	Peer Value
-----	-----	-----
Loop-protect	Enabled	Enabled

Viewing peer-keepalive configuration

Viewing switch interconnect

Syntax

```
show switch-interconnect
```

Description

Displays information about switch interconnect settings.

Figure 35: *Switch-interconnect settings*

```
Switch(config)# show switch-interconnect
Port           :Trk2
Status         :Up
Active VLANs   :2,3,4,30
```

Port trunk operations

The switches covered in this guide offer these options for port trunking:

- LACP: IEEE 802.3ad—
- Trunk: Non-Protocol—

Up to 144 trunk groups are supported on the switches. The actual maximum depends on the number of ports available on the switch and the number of links in each trunk. (Using the link aggregation control protocol—LACP—option, you can include standby trunked ports in addition to the maximum of eight actively trunking ports.) The trunks do not have to be the same size; for example, 100 two-port trunks and 11 eight-port trunks are supported.

LACP requires full-duplex (FDx) links of the same media type (10/100Base-T, 100FX, and so on) and the same speed, and enforces speed and duplex conformance across a trunk group. For most installations, Switch recommends that you leave the port Mode settings at `Auto` (the default.) LACP also operates with `Auto-10`, `Auto-100`, and `Auto-1000` (if negotiation selects FDx), and `10FDx`, `100FDx`, and `1000FDx` settings. (The 10-gigabit ports available for some switch models allow only the `Auto` setting.)

Fault tolerance

If a link in a port trunk fails, the switch redistributes traffic originally destined for that link to the remaining links in the trunk. The trunk remains operable as long as there is at least one link in operation. If a link is restored, that link is automatically included in the traffic distribution again. The LACP option also offers a standby link capability, which enables you to keep links in reserve for service if one or more of the original active links fails. (See [Trunk group operation using LACP](#) on page 200.)

Trunk configuration methods

Dynamic LACP trunk

The switch automatically negotiates trunked links between LACP-configured ports on separate devices, and offers one dynamic trunk option: LACP. To configure the switch to initiate a dynamic LACP trunk with another device, use the `interface` command in the CLI to set the default LACP option to `active` on the ports you want to use for the trunk. For example, the following command sets ports C1 to C4 to `LACP active`:

```
switch(config) int c1-c4 lacp active
```

The preceding example works if the ports are not already operating in a trunk. To change the LACP option on ports already operating as a trunk, you must first remove them from the trunk. For example, if ports C1 to C4 are LACP-active and operating in a trunk with another device, you would do the following to configure them to LACP-passive:

```
switch# no int c1-c4 lacp
```

Removes the ports from the trunk:

```
switch# int c1-c4 lacp passive
```

Dynamic LACP Standby Links

Dynamic LACP trunking enables you to configure standby links for a trunk by including more than eight ports in a dynamic LACP trunk configuration. When eight ports (trunk links) are up, the remaining link(s) will be held in standby status. If a trunked link that is “Up” fails, it will be replaced by a standby link, which maintains your intended bandwidth for the trunk. In this example, ports A1 through A9 have been configured for the same LACP trunk. Notice that one of the links shows Standby status, while the remaining eight links are “Up”.

```
switch# show lacp
```

Port	LACP Enabled	Trunk Group	LACP		LACP Status	Admin Key	Oper Key
			Port Status	Partner			
A1	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success	100	100
A2	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success	100	100
A3	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success	100	100
A4	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success	100	100
A5	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success	100	100
A6	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success	100	100
A7	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success	100	100
A8	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success	100	100
A9	Active	Dyn1	Standby	Yes	Success	100	100

Viewing LACP Local Information

```
switch# show lacp local
LACP Local Information.
System ID: 001871-b98500
```

Port	Trunk	LACP		Tx Timer	Rx Timer Expired
		Mode	Aggregated		
A2	A2	Active	Yes	Fast	No
A3	A3	Active	Yes	Fast	No

Viewing LACP Peer Information

Use the `show lacp peer` command to display information about LACP peers. The System ID represents the MAC address of a partner switch. It will be zero if a partner is not found.

```
switch# show lacp peer
LACP Peer Information.
System ID: 001871-b98500
```

Local Port	Local Trunk	System ID	Port	Priority	Oper Key	LACP Mode	Tx Timer
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

A2	A2	123456-654321	2	0	100	Passive	Fast
A3	A3	234567-456789	3	0	100	Passive	Fast

Viewing LACP Counters

Use the `show lacp counters` command to display statistical information about LACP ports.

Note on the Marker Protocol. Data traffic can be dynamically redistributed in port channels. This may occur when a link is added or removed, or there is a change in load-balancing. Traffic that is redistributed in the middle of a traffic flow could potentially cause mis-ordered data packets.

LACP uses the marker protocol to prevent data packets from being duplicated or reordered due to redistribution. Marker PDUs are sent on each port-channel link. The remote system responds to the marker PDU by sending a marker responder when it has received all the frames received on this link prior to the marker PDU. When the marker responders are received by the local system on all member links of the port channel, the local system can redistribute the packets in the traffic flow correctly.

For the switches covered in this guide, the marker BPDUs are not initiated, only forwarded when received, resulting in the Marker fields in the output usually displaying zeros.

```
switch# show lacp counters
LACP Port Counters.
```

Port	Trunk	LACP PDUs Tx	LACP PDUs Rx	Marker Req. Tx	Marker Req. Rx	Marker Resp. Tx	Marker Resp. Rx	Error
A2	A2	1234	1234	0	0	0	0	0
A3	A3	1234	1234	0	0	0	0	0

Using keys to control dynamic LACP trunk configuration

The `lacp key` option provides the ability to control dynamic trunk configuration. Ports with the same key will be aggregated as a single trunk.

There are two types of keys associated with each port, the Admin key and the Operational key. The Operational key is the key currently in use. The Admin key is used internally to modify the value of the Operational key. The Admin and Operational key are usually the same, but using static LACP can alter the Operational key during runtime, in which case the keys would differ.

The `lacp key` command configures both the Admin and Operational keys when using dynamic LACP trunks. It only configures the Admin key if the trunk is a static LACP trunk. It is executed in the interface context.

Static trunk

The switch uses the links you configure with the Port/Trunk Settings screen in the menu interface or the `trunk` command in the CLI to create a static port trunk. The switch offers two types of static trunks: LACP and Trunk.

Table 9: *Trunk types used in static and dynamic trunk groups*

Trunking method	LACP	Trunk
Dynamic	Yes	No
Static	Yes	Yes

Table 10: Trunking options for LACP and Trunk protocols

Protocol	Trunking Options
LACP (802.3ad)	<p>Provides dynamic and static LACP trunking options.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Dynamic LACP — Use the switch-negotiated dynamic LACP trunk when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The port on the other end of the trunk link is configured for Active or Passive LACP. You want fault-tolerance for high-availability applications. If you use an eight-link trunk, you can also configure one or more additional links to operate as standby links that will activate only if another active link goes down. Static LACP — Use the manually configured static LACP trunk when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The port on the other end of the trunk link is configured for a static LACP trunk. You want to configure non-default spanning tree or IGMP parameters on an LACP trunk group. You want an LACP trunk group to operate in a VLAN other than the default VLAN and GVRP is disabled. You want to use a monitor port on the switch to monitor an LACP trunk.
Trunk(non-protocol)	<p>Provides manually configured, static-only trunking to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Most Switch and routing switches not running the 802.3ad LACP protocol. Windows NT and UX workstations and servers <p>Use the Trunk option when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The device to which you want to create a trunk link is using a non-802.3ad trunking protocol. You are unsure which type of trunk to use, or the device to which you want to create a trunk link is using an unknown trunking protocol. You want to use a monitor port on the switch to monitor traffic on a trunk.

Operating port trunks

Media:

For proper trunk operation, all ports on both ends of a trunk group must have the same media type and mode (speed and duplex.) (For the switches, Switch recommends leaving the port Mode setting at `Auto` or, in networks using Cat 3 cabling, `Auto-10`.)

Port Configuration

The default port configuration is `Auto`, which enables a port to sense speed and negotiate duplex with an auto-enabled port on another device. Switch recommends that you use the `Auto` setting for all ports you plan to use for trunking. Otherwise, you must manually ensure that the mode setting for each port in a trunk is compatible with the other ports in the trunk.

Recommended port mode setting for LACP

```
switch# show interfaces config
```

Port Settings

Port	Type	Enabled	Mode	Flow Ctrl	MDI
1	10/100TX	Yes	Auto	Enable	Auto
2	10/100TX	Yes	Auto	Enable	MDI

All of the following operate on a per-port basis, regardless of trunk membership:

- Enable/Disable
- Flow control (Flow Ctrl)

LACP is a full-duplex protocol.

Trunk configuration:

All ports in the same trunk group must be the same trunk type (LACP or trunk.) All LACP ports in the same trunk group must be either all static LACP or all dynamic LACP.

A trunk appears as a single port labeled `Dyn1` (for an LACP dynamic trunk) or `Trk1` (for a static trunk of type LACP, Trunk) on various menu and CLI screens.

For spanning-tree or VLAN operation, configuration for all ports in a trunk is done at the trunk level. (You cannot separately configure individual ports within a trunk for spanning-tree or VLAN operation.)

Traffic distribution:

All of the switch trunk protocols use the SA/DA (source address/destination address) method of distributing traffic across the trunked links.

Spanning Tree:

802.1D (STP) and 802.1w (RSTP) Spanning Tree operate as a global setting on the switch (with one instance of Spanning Tree per switch.) 802.1s (MSTP) Spanning Tree operates on a per-instance basis (with multiple instances allowed per switch.) For each Spanning Tree instance, you can adjust Spanning Tree parameters on a per-port basis.

A static trunk of any type appears in the Spanning Tree configuration display, and you can configure Spanning Tree parameters for a static trunk in the same way that you would configure Spanning Tree parameters on a non-trunked port. (Note that the switch lists the trunk by name—such as `Trk1`—and does not list the individual ports in the trunk.) For example, if ports C1 and C2 are configured as a static trunk named `Trk1`, they are listed in the Spanning Tree display as `Trk1` and do not appear as individual ports in the Spanning Tree displays.

When Spanning Tree forwards on a trunk, all ports in the trunk will be forwarding. Conversely, when Spanning Tree blocks a trunk, all ports in the trunk are blocked.



NOTE:

A dynamic LACP trunk operates only with the default Spanning Tree settings. Also, this type of trunk appears in the CLI `show spanning-tree` display, but not in the Spanning Tree Operation display of the Menu interface.

If you remove a port from a static trunk, the port retains the same Spanning Tree settings that were configured for the trunk.

Figure 36: Example of a port trunk in a Spanning Tree listing

In this example showing part of the <code>show spanning-tree</code> listing, ports C1 and C2 are members of TRK1 and do not appear as individual ports in the port configuration part of the listing.	Port	Type	Cost	Priority	State	Designated Bridge
	C3	100/1000T	5	128	Forwarding	0020c1-b27ac0
	C4	100/1000T	5	128	Forwarding	0060b0-889e00
	C5	100/1000T	5	128	Disabled	
	C6	100/1000T	5	128	Disabled	
	Trk1		1	64	Forwarding	0001e7-a0ec00

IP multicast protocol (IGMP):

A static trunk of any type appears in the IGMP configuration display, and you can configure IGMP for a static trunk in the same way that you would configure IGMP on a non-trunked port. (Note that the switch lists the trunk by name—such as Trk1—and does not list the individual ports in the trunk.) Also, creating a new trunk automatically places the trunk in IGMP Auto status if IGMP is enabled for the default VLAN.

A dynamic LACP trunk operates only with the default IGMP settings and does not appear in the IGMP configuration display or `show ip igmp` listing.

VLANs:

Creating a new trunk automatically places the trunk in the DEFAULT_VLAN, regardless of whether the ports in the trunk were in another VLAN. Similarly, removing a port from a trunk group automatically places the port in the default VLAN. You can configure a static trunk in the same way that you configure a port for membership in any VLAN.



NOTE:

For a dynamic LACP trunk to operate in a VLAN other than the default VLAN (DEFAULT_VLAN), GVRP must be enabled.

Port security

Trunk groups (and their individual ports) cannot be configured for port security, and the switch excludes trunked ports from the `show port-security` listing. If you configure non-default port security settings for a port, then subsequently try to place the port in a trunk, you see the following message and the command is not executed:

```
<PORT-LIST> Command cannot operate over a logical port.
```

Monitor port



NOTE:

A trunk cannot be a monitor port. A monitor port can monitor a static trunk but cannot monitor a dynamic LACP trunk.

Show port-security log

Syntax

```
show port-security intrusion-log
```

Description

show port-security intrusion-log

```
switch(config)# sh port-security intrusion-log
```

Status and Counters - Intrusion Log

Port	MAC Address	Date / Time
23	000087-c78b49	11/19/14 11:09:30
23	000087-c78041	11/19/14 11:12:29
23	000087-c781c1	11/19/14 11:14:08

Static or dynamic trunk group overview

Configure port trunking before you connect the trunked links between switches.



IMPORTANT: Failure to configure port trunking before connecting the trunked links between switches can result in a broadcast storm. If you need to connect the ports before configuring them for trunking, you can temporarily disable the ports until after you have configured the trunk.

An individual trunk can have up to eight links, with additional standby links if you are using LACP. You can configure trunk group types as follows:

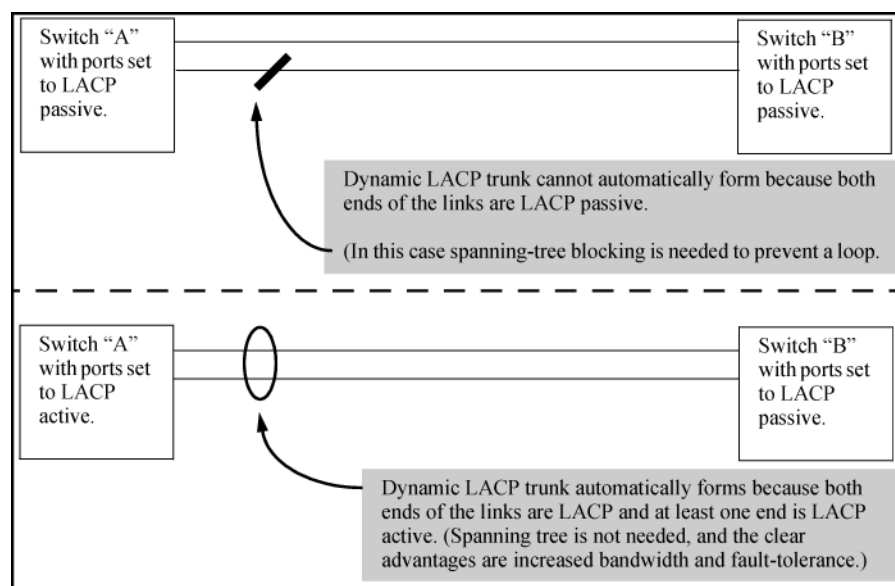
Trunk Type	Trunk Group Membership	
	TrkX (static)	DynX (dynamic)
LACP	Yes	Yes
Trunk	Yes	No

Enabling a dynamic LACP trunk group

In the default port configuration, all ports on the switch are set to disabled. To enable the switch to automatically form a trunk group that is dynamic on both ends of the link, the ports on one end of a set of links must be LACP Active. The ports on the other end can be either LACP Active or LACP Passive. The `active` command enables the switch to automatically establish a (dynamic) LACP trunk group when the device on the other end of the link is

configured for LACP Passive. **Figure 37: Criteria for automatically forming a dynamic LACP trunk** on page 198 provides an example.

Figure 37: Criteria for automatically forming a dynamic LACP trunk



Dynamic LACP standby links

Dynamic LACP trunking enables you to configure standby links for a trunk by including more than eight ports in a dynamic LACP trunk configuration. When eight ports (trunk links) are up, the remaining links are held in standby status. If a trunked link that is "Up" fails, it is replaced by a standby link, which maintains your intended bandwidth for the trunk. In this example, ports A1 through A9 have been configured for the same LACP trunk. Notice that one of the links shows *Standby* port status, while the remaining eight links show *Up* port status.

A dynamic LACP trunk with one standby link

```
switch# show lacp
```

LACP							
Port	LACP Enabled	Trunk Group	Port Status	Partner	LACP Status	Admin Key	Oper Key
A1	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success	100	100
A2	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success	100	100
A3	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success	100	100
A4	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success	100	100
A5	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success	100	100
A6	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success	100	100
A7	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success	100	100
A8	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success	100	100
A9	Active	Dyn1	Standby	Yes	Success	100	100

Viewing LACP local information

Example of LACP local information

```
switch# show lacp local
```

LACP Local Information.

System ID: 001871-b98500

Port	Trunk	LACP Mode	Aggregated	Tx Timer	Rx Timer Expired
A2	A2	Active	Yes	Fast	No
A3	A3	Active	Yes	Fast	No

Viewing LACP peer information

Use the `show lacp peer` command to display information about LACP peers. The System ID represents the MAC address of a partner switch. It will be zero if a partner is not found.

Example of LACP peer information

```
switch# show lacp peer
```

LACP Peer Information.

System ID: 001871-b98500

Local Port	Local Trunk	System ID	Port	Port Priority	Oper Key	LACP Mode	Tx Timer
A2	A2	123456-654321	2	0	100	Passive	Fast
A3	A3	234567-456789	3	0	100	Passive	Fast

Viewing LACP counters

Use the `show lacp counters` command to display statistical information about LACP ports.



NOTE:

Data traffic can be dynamically redistributed in port channels. This may occur when a link is added or removed, or there is a change in load-balancing. Traffic that is redistributed in the middle of a traffic flow could potentially cause mis-ordered data packets.

LACP uses the marker protocol to prevent data packets from being duplicated or reordered due to redistribution. Marker PDUs are sent on each port-channel link. The remote system responds to the marker PDU by sending a marker responder when it has received all the frames received on this link prior to the marker PDU. When the marker responders are received by the local system on all member links of the port channel, the local system can redistribute the packets in the traffic flow correctly.

For the switches covered in this guide, the marker BPDUs are not initiated, only forwarded when received, resulting in the Marker fields in the output usually displaying zeros.

Example of LACP counters output

```
switch# show lacp counters
```

LACP Port Counters.

LACP Port	Trunk	LACP PDUs Tx	Marker PDUs Rx	Marker Req. Tx	Marker Req. Rx	Marker Resp. Tx	Marker Resp. Rx	Error
A2	A2	1234	1234	0	0	0	0	0
A3	A3	1234	1234	0	0	0	0	0

Trunk group operation using LACP

The switch can automatically configure a dynamic LACP trunk group, or you can manually configure a static LACP trunk group.



NOTE: LACP requires full-duplex (FDx) links of the same media type (10/100Base-T, 100FX, and so on) and the same speed and enforces speed and duplex conformance across a trunk group. For most installations, Switch recommends that you leave the port mode settings at `Auto` (the default.) LACP also operates with `Auto-10`, `Auto-100`, and `Auto-1000` (if negotiation selects FDx), and `10FDx`, `100FDx`, and `1000FDx` settings.

LACP trunk status commands include:

Trunk display method	Static LACP trunk	Dynamic LACP trunk
CLI <code>show lacp</code> command	Included in listing.	Included in listing.
CLI <code>show trunk</code> command	Included in listing.	Not included.
Port/Trunk Settings screen in menu interface	Included in listing.	Not included

Thus, to display a listing of dynamic LACP trunk ports, you must use the `show lacp` command.

In most cases, trunks configured for LACP on the switches operate as follows:

Table 11: LACP trunk types

LACP port trunk configuration	Operation
<p>Dynamic LACP</p>	<p>This option automatically establishes an 802.3ad-compliant trunk group, with LACP for the port Type parameter and DynX for the port Group name, where X is an automatically assigned value from 1 to 144, depending on how many dynamic and static trunks are currently on the switch. (The switch allows a maximum of 144 trunk groups in any combination of static and dynamic trunks.)</p> <div></div> <p>NOTE: Dynamic LACP trunks operate only in the default VLAN (unless GVRP is enabled and <code>Forbid</code> is used to prevent the trunked ports from joining the default VLAN.) Thus, if an LACP dynamic port forms using ports that are not in the default VLAN, the trunk automatically moves to the default VLAN unless GVRP operation is configured to prevent this from occurring. In some cases, this can create a traffic loop in your network.</p> <p>Under the following conditions, the switch automatically establishes a dynamic LACP port trunk group and assigns a port Group name:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The ports on both ends of each link have compatible mode settings (speed and duplex.) • The port on one end of each link must be configured for LACP Active and the port on the other end of the same link must be configured for either LACP Passive or LACP Active. For example: <div> <pre> graph LR subgraph Switch1 [Switch 1] direction TB P1[Port X: LACP Enable: Active] P2[Port Y: LACP Enable: Active] end subgraph Switch2 [Switch 2] direction TB P3[Port A: LACP Enable: Active] P4[Port B: LACP Enable: Passive] end P1 --- Active-to-Active P3 P2 --- Active-to-Passive P4 </pre> </div> <p>Either of the above link configurations allows a dynamic LACP trunk link.</p> <p>Backup Links: A maximum of eight operating links are allowed in the trunk, but, with dynamic LACP, you can configure one or more additional (backup) links that the switch automatically activates if a primary link fails. To configure a link as a standby for an existing eight-port dynamic LACP trunk, ensure that the ports in the standby link are configured as either active-to-active or active-to-passive between switches.</p> <p>Displaying dynamic LACP trunk data: To list the configuration and status for a dynamic LACP trunk, use the CLI <code>show lacp</code> command.</p> <div></div> <p>NOTE: The dynamic trunk is automatically created by the switch and is not listed in the static trunk listings available in the menu interface or in the CLI <code>show trunk</code> listing.</p>
<p>Static LACP</p>	<p>Provides a manually configured, static LACP trunk to accommodate these conditions:</p>



LACP port trunk configuration	Operation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The port on the other end of the trunk link is configured for a static LACP trunk. • You want to configure non-default Spanning Tree or IGMP parameters on an LACP trunk group. • You want an LACP trunk group to operate in a VLAN other than the default VLAN and GVRP is disabled. • You want to use a monitor port on the switch to monitor an LACP trunk. <p>The trunk operates if the trunk group on the opposite device is running one of the following trunking protocols:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Active LACP • Passive LACP • Trunk <p>This option uses LACP for the port Type parameter and TrkX for the port Group parameter, where X is an automatically assigned value in a range corresponding to the maximum number of trunks the switch allows.</p> <p>Displaying static LACP trunk data : To list the configuration and status for a static LACP trunk, use the CLI <code>show lacp</code> command. To list a static LACP trunk with its assigned ports, use the CLI <code>show trunk</code> command or display the menu interface Port/Trunk Settings screen. Static LACP does not allow standby ports.</p>

Default port operation

In the default configuration, LACP is disabled for all ports. If LACP is not configured as Active on at least one end of a link, the port does not try to detect a trunk configuration and operates as a standard, untrunked port. To display this data for a switch, execute the following command in the CLI:

```
switch# show lacp
```

Table 12: LACP port status data

Status name	Meaning
Port Numb	Shows the physical port number for each port configured for LACP operation (C1, C2, C3) Unlisted port numbers indicate that the missing ports that are assigned to a static trunk group are not configured for any trunking.
LACP Enabled	<p>Active: The port automatically sends LACP protocol packets.</p> <p>Passive: The port does not automatically send LACP protocol packets and responds only if it receives LACP protocol packets from the opposite device. A link having either two active LACP ports or one active port and one passive port can perform dynamic LACP trunking.</p> <p>A link having two passive LACP ports does not perform LACP trunking because both ports are waiting for an LACP protocol packet from the opposite device.</p> <hr/> <p> NOTE: In the default switch configuration, LACP is disabled for all ports.</p> <hr/>
Trunk Group	<p>TrkX: This port has been manually configured into a static LACP trunk.</p> <p>Trunk group same as port number: The port is configured for LACP, but is not a member of a port trunk.</p>
Port Status	<p>Up: The port has an active LACP link and is not blocked or in standby mode.</p> <p>Down: The port is enabled, but an LACP link is not established. This can indicate, for example, a port that is not connected to the network or a speed mismatch between a pair of linked ports.</p> <p>Disabled: The port cannot carry traffic.</p> <p>Blocked: LACP, Spanning Tree has blocked the port. (The port is not in LACP standby mode.) This may be caused by a (brief) trunk negotiation or a configuration error, such as differing port speeds on the same link or trying to connect the switch to more trunks than it can support.</p> <hr/> <p> NOTE: Some older devices are limited to four ports in a trunk. When eight LACP-enabled ports are connected to one of these older devices, four ports connect, but the other four ports are blocked.</p> <hr/> <p>Standby: The port is configured for dynamic LACP trunking to another device, but the maximum number of ports for the dynamic trunk to that device has already been reached on either the switch or the other device. This port will remain in reserve, or "standby" unless LACP detects that another, active link in the trunk has become disabled, blocked, or down. In this case, LACP automatically assigns a standby port, if available, to replace the failed port.</p>
LACP Partner	<p>Yes: LACP is enabled on both ends of the link.</p> <p>No: LACP is enabled on the switch, but either LACP is not enabled or the link has not been detected on the opposite device.</p>
LACP Status	<p>Success: LACP is enabled on the port, detects and synchronizes with a device on the other end of the link, and can move traffic across the link.</p> <p>Failure: LACP is enabled on a port and detects a device on the other end of the link, but is not able to synchronize with this device, and therefore is not able to send LACP packets across the link. This can be caused, for example, by an intervening device on the link (such as a hub), a bad hardware connection, or if the LACP operation on the opposite device does not comply with the IEEE 802.3ad standard.</p>

LACP operating notes and restrictions

802.1X (Port-based access control) configured on a port

To maintain security, LACP is not allowed on ports configured for 802.1X authenticator operation. If you configure port security on a port on which LACP (active or passive) is configured, the switch removes the LACP configuration, displays a notice that LACP is disabled on the port, and enables 802.1X on that port.

```
switch# aaa port-access authenticator b1
LACP has been disabled on 802.1x port(s.)
switch#
```

The switch does not allow you to configure LACP on a port on which port access (802.1X) is enabled. For example:

```
switch# int b1 lacp passive
Error configuring port port-number : LACP and 802.1x cannot
be run together.
switch#
```

To restore LACP to the port, you must first remove the 802.1X configuration of the port and then re-enable LACP active or passive on the port.

Port security

To maintain security, LACP is not allowed on ports configured for port security. If you configure port security on a port on which LACP (active or passive) is configured, the switch removes the LACP configuration, displays a notice that LACP is disabled on the port, and enables port security on that port. For example:

```
switch# port-security a17 learn-mode static address-
limit 2 LACP has been disabled on secured port(s.)
switch#
```

The switch does not allow you to configure LACP on a port on which port security is enabled. For example:

```
switch# int a17 lacp passive
Error configuring port A17: LACP and port security cannot be
run together.
switch#
```

To restore LACP to the port, you must remove port security and re-enable LACP active or passive.

Changing trunking methods

To convert a trunk from static to dynamic, you must first eliminate the static trunk.

Static LACP trunks

When a port is configured for LACP (active or passive), but does not belong to an existing trunk group, you can add that port to a static trunk. Doing so disables dynamic LACP on that port, which means you must manually configure both ends of the trunk.



NOTE:

Static LACP allows ports with different speed to be part of the same trunk.

Dynamic LACP trunks

You can configure a port for LACP-active or LACP-passive, but on a dynamic LACP trunk you cannot configure the other options that you can on static trunks. If you want to manually configure a trunk, use the `trunk` command. (See "Using the CLI To Configure a Static or Dynamic Trunk Group")

VLANs and dynamic LACP

A dynamic LACP trunk operates only in the default VLAN (unless you have enabled GVRP on the switch and use `Forbid` to prevent the ports from joining the default VLAN.)

If you want to use LACP for a trunk on a non-default VLAN and GVRP is disabled, configure the trunk as a static trunk.

Blocked ports with older devices.

Some older devices are limited to four ports in a trunk. When eight LACP-enabled ports are connected to one of these older devices, four ports connect, but the other four ports are blocked. The LACP status of the blocked ports is shown as "Failure."

If one of the other ports becomes disabled, a blocked port replaces it (Port Status becomes "Up".) When the other port becomes active again, the replacement port goes back to blocked (Port Status is "Blocked".) It can take a few seconds for the switch to discover the current status of the ports.

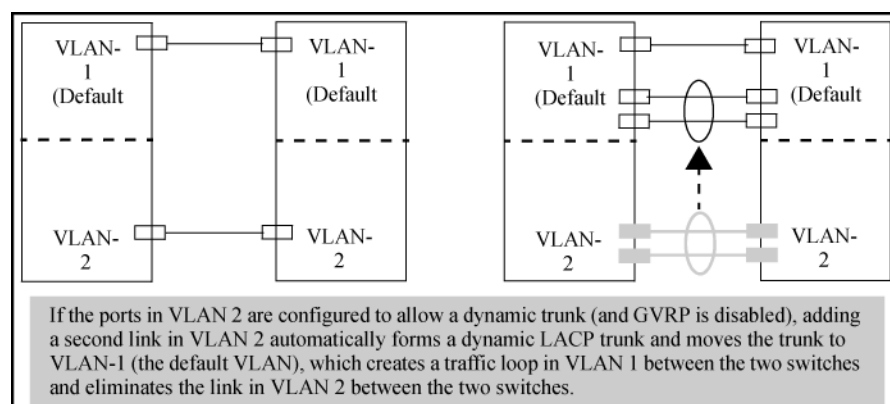
Figure 38: *Blocked ports with LACP*

```
Switch(eth-B1-B8)# show lacp
```

LACP					
PORT NUMB	LACP ENABLED	TRUNK GROUP	PORT STATUS	LACP PARTNER	LACP STATUS
B1	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success
B2	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success
B3	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success
B4	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success
B5	Active	Dyn1	Blocked	Yes	Failure
B6	Active	Dyn1	Blocked	Yes	Failure
B7	Active	B7	Down	No	Success
B8	Active	B8	Down	No	Success

If there are ports that you do not want on the default VLAN, ensure that they cannot become dynamic LACP trunk members. Otherwise a traffic loop can unexpectedly occur. For example:

Figure 39: A dynamic LACP trunk forming in a VLAN can cause a traffic loop



Easy control methods include either disabling LACP on the selected ports or configuring them to operate in static LACP trunks.

Spanning Tree and IGMP

If Spanning Tree, IGMP, or both are enabled in the switch, a dynamic LACP trunk operates only with the default settings for these features and does not appear in the port listings for these features.

Half-duplex, different port speeds, or both not allowed in LACP trunks

The ports on both sides of an LACP trunk must be configured for the same speed and for full-duplex (FDx.) The 802.3ad LACP standard specifies a full-duplex (FDx) requirement for LACP trunking. (10-gigabit ports operate only at FDx.)

A port configured as LACP passive and not assigned to a port trunk can be configured to half-duplex (HDx.) However, in any of the following cases, a port cannot be reconfigured to an HDx setting:

- If the port is a 10-gigabit port.
- If a port is set to LACP Active, you cannot configure it to HDx.
- If a port is already a member of a static or dynamic LACP trunk, you cannot configure it to HDx.
- If a port is already set to HDx, the switch does not allow you to configure it for a static or dynamic LACP trunk.

Dynamic/static LACP interoperation

A port configured for dynamic LACP can properly interoperate with a port configured for static (TrkX) LACP, but any ports configured as standby LACP links are ignored.

Trunk group operation using the "trunk" option

This method creates a trunk group that operates independently of specific trunking protocols and does not use a protocol exchange with the device on the other end of the trunk. With this choice, the switch simply uses the SA/DA method of distributing outbound traffic across the trunked ports without regard for how that traffic is handled by the device at the other end of the trunked links. Similarly, the switch handles incoming traffic from the trunked links as if it were from a trunked source.

When a trunk group is configured with the `trunk` option, the switch automatically sets the trunk to a priority of "4" for Spanning Tree operation (even if Spanning Tree is currently disabled.) This appears in the running-config file as `spanning-tree Trkn priority 4`. Executing `write memory` after configuring the trunk places the same entry in the startup-config file.

Use the `trunk` option to establish a trunk group between a switch and another device, where the other device's trunking operation fails to operate properly with LACP trunking configured on the switches.

Viewing trunk data on the switch

Static trunk group

Appears in the menu interface and the output from the CLI `show trunk` and `show interfaces` commands.

Dynamic LACP trunk group

Appears in the output from the CLI `show lacp` command.

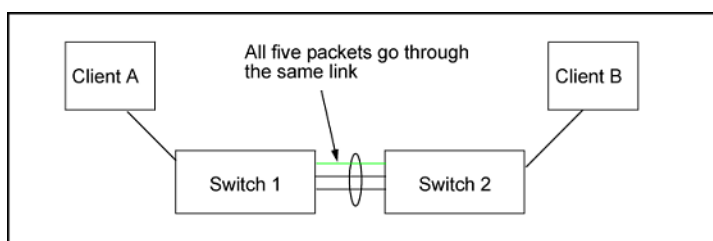
Interface option	Dynamic LACP trunk group	Static LACP trunk group	Static non-protocol
Menu interface	No	Yes	Yes
CLI <code>show trunk</code>	No	Yes	Yes
CLI <code>show interfaces</code>	No	Yes	Yes
CLI <code>show lacp</code>	Yes	Yes	No
CLI <code>show spanning-tree</code>	No	Yes	Yes
CLI <code>show igmp</code>	No	Yes	Yes
CLI <code>show config</code>	No	Yes	Yes

Outbound traffic distribution across trunked links

The two trunk group options (LACP and trunk) use SA/DA pairs for distributing outbound traffic over trunked links. That is, the switch sends traffic from the same source address to the same destination address through the same trunked link, and may also send traffic from the same source address to a different destination address through the same link or a different link, depending on the mapping of path assignments among the links in the trunk. Likewise, the switch distributes traffic for the same destination address but from different source addresses through links depending on the path assignment.

The load-balancing is done on a per-communication basis. Otherwise, traffic is transmitted across the same path. That is, if Client A attached to Switch 1 sends five packets of data to Server A attached to Switch 2, the same link is used to send all five packets. The SA/DA address pair for the traffic is the same. The packets are not evenly distributed across any other existing links between the two switches; they all take the same path.

Figure 40: Example of single path traffic through a trunk



The actual distribution of the traffic through a trunk depends on a calculation using bits from the SA/DA. When an IP address is available, the calculation includes the last five bits of the IP source address and IP destination

address; otherwise, the MAC addresses are used. The result of that process undergoes a mapping that determines which link the traffic goes through. If you have only two ports in a trunk, it is possible that all the traffic will be sent through one port even if the SA/DA pairs are different. The more ports you have in the trunk, the more likely it is that the traffic will be distributed among the links.

When a new port is added to the trunk, the switch begins sending traffic, either new traffic or existing traffic, through the new link. As links are added or deleted, the switch redistributes traffic across the trunk group.

Figure 41: Example of port-trunked network

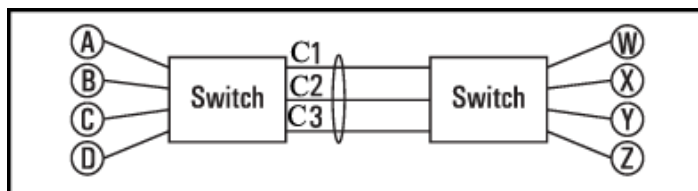


Table 13: Example of link assignments in a trunk group (SA/DA distribution)

Source	Destination	Link
Node A	Node W	1
Node B	Node X	2
Node C	Node Y	3
Node D	Node Z	1
Node A	Node Y	2
Node B	Node W	3

Because the amount of traffic coming from or going to various nodes in a network can vary widely, it is possible for one link in a trunk group to be fully utilized while other links in the same trunk have unused bandwidth capacity, even if the assignments were evenly distributed across the links in a trunk.

Trunk load balancing using Layer 4 ports

Trunk load balancing using Layer 4 ports allows the use of TCP/UDP source and destination port number for trunk load balancing. This is in addition to the current use of source and destination IP address and MAC addresses. Configuration of Layer 4 load balancing would apply to all trunks on the switch. Only non-fragmented packets will have their TCP/UDP port number used by load balancing. This ensures that all frames associated with a fragmented IP packet are sent through the same trunk on the same physical link.

The priority for using Layer 4 packets when this feature is enabled is as follows:

1. If the packet protocol is an IP packet and has Layer 4 port information, use Layer 4.
2. If the packet protocol is an IP packet and does **not** have Layer 4 information, use Layer 3 information.
3. If the packet is **not** an IP packet, use Layer 2 information.

Distributed trunking overview

The IEEE standard 802.3ad requires that all links in a trunk group originate from the same switch. Distributed trunking uses a proprietary protocol that allows two or more port trunk links distributed across two switches to

create a trunk group. The grouped links appear to the downstream device as if they are from a single device. This allows third party devices such as switches, servers, or any other networking device that supports trunking to interoperate with the distributed trunking switches (DTs) seamlessly. Distributed trunking provides device-level redundancy in addition to link failure protection.

DTs are connected by a special interface called the InterSwitch-Connect (ISC) port. This interface exchanges information so that the DTs appear as a single switch to a downstream device, as mentioned above. Each distributed trunk (DT) switch in a DT pair must be configured with a separate ISC link and peer-keepalive link. The peer-keepalive link is used to transmit keepalive messages when the ISC link is down to determine if the failure is a link-level failure or the complete failure of the remote peer.

The downstream device is a distributed trunking device (DTD.) The DTD forms a trunk with the DTs. The connecting links are DT links and the ports are DT ports. A distributed trunk can span a maximum of two switches.



IMPORTANT: Before you configure the switch, Hewlett Packard Enterprise recommends that you review the **Distributed trunking restrictions** on page 217 for a complete list of operating notes and restrictions.



NOTE: DT is not supported between different platforms. The generic application of the DT protocol across series is not supported. For example:

DT is not supported between an Aruba 3810M switch and an Aruba 5400R switch.

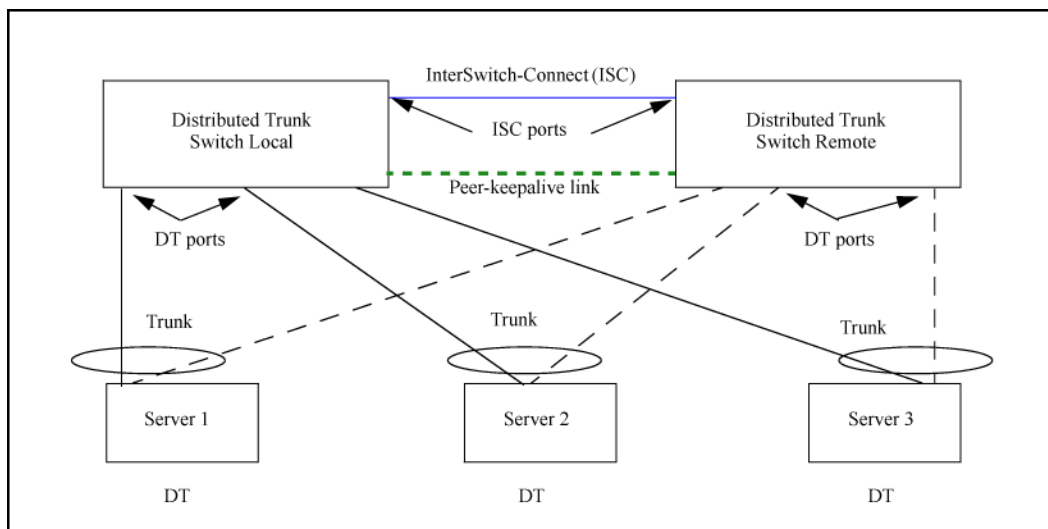
You can group together distributed trunks by configuring two individual dt-lacp/dt-trunk trunks with the same trunk group name in each switch. The DT ports are grouped dynamically after the configuration of distributed trunking.



NOTE: Before you configure the switch, Hewlett Packard Enterprise recommends that you review the **Distributed trunking restrictions** on page 217 for a complete list of operating notes and restrictions.

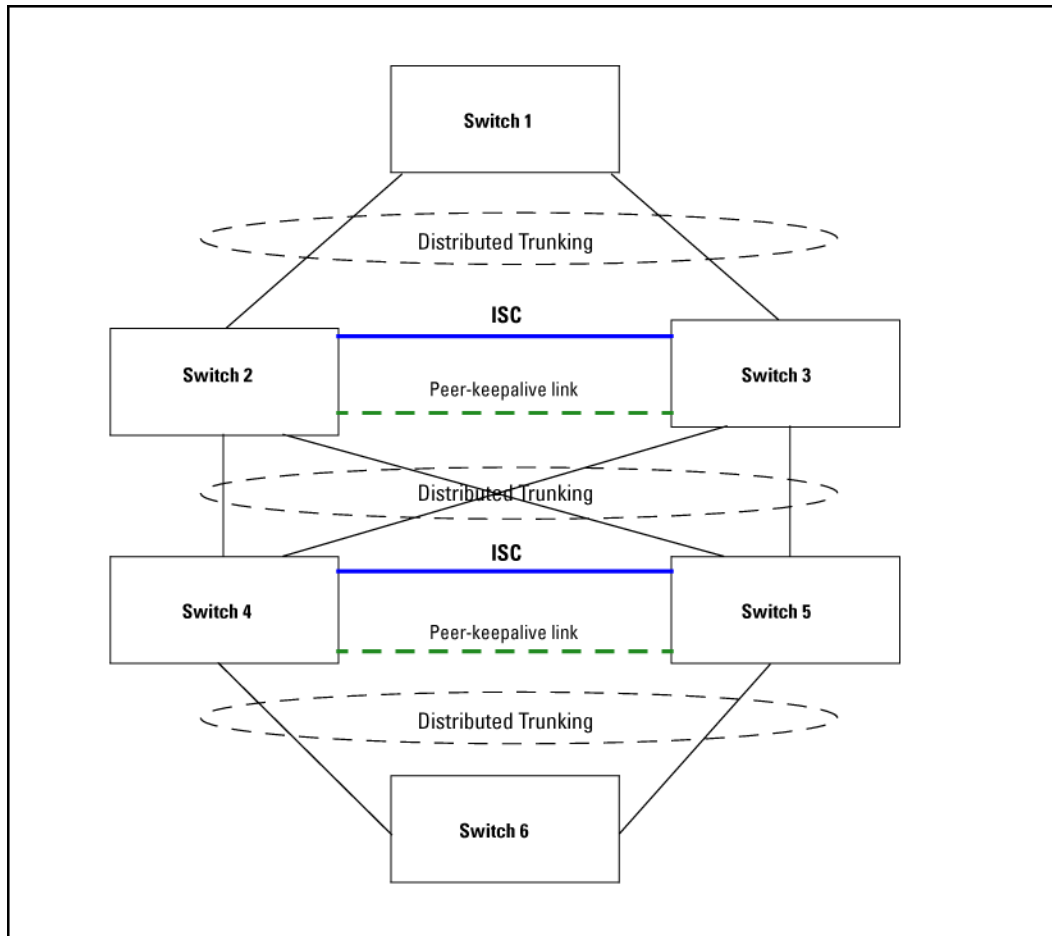
In **Figure 42: Example of distributed trunking with three different distributed trunks with three servers** on page 209, three different distributed trunks with three different servers have one common ISC link. Each trunk spans only two DTs, which are connected at the ISC ports so they can exchange information that allows them to appear as one device to the server.

Figure 42: Example of distributed trunking with three different distributed trunks with three servers



An example of distributed trunking switch-to-switch in a square topology is shown in **Figure 43: Distributed trunking switch-to-switch square topology** on page 210.

Figure 43: *Distributed trunking switch-to-switch square topology*



Distributed trunking interconnect protocol

Distributed trunking uses the distributed trunking interconnect protocol (DTIP) to transfer DT-specific configuration information for the comparison process and to synchronize MAC and DHCP snooping binding data between the two DT peer switches.



NOTE:

For DHCP snooping to function correctly in a DT topology, the system time must be the same on both switches, and the ISC must be trusted for DHCP snooping.

Configuring distributed trunking

The following parameters must be configured identically on the peer devices or undesirable behavior in traffic flow may occur:

- The ISC link must have a VLAN interface configured for the same VLAN on both DT switches.
- VLAN membership for all DT trunk ports should be the same on both DT switches in a DT pair.

- IGMP-snooping or DHCP-snooping configuration on a DT VLAN should be the same on both DT switches. For example, for a DT, if IGMP-snooping or DHCP-snooping is enabled on a VLAN that has a DT port as a member port of the VLAN, the same must be configured on the peer DT on the same VLAN.
- Loop-protection configuration on a DT VLAN should be the same for both DT switches.

Configuring peer-keepalive links

Distributed trunking uses UDP-based peer-keepalive messages to determine if an ISC link failure is at the link level or the peer has completely failed. The following operating rules must be followed to use peer-keepalive links:

- An IP address must be configured for a peer-keepalive VLAN interface and the same IP address must be configured as a peer-keepalive destination on the peer DT switch.
- There must be logical Layer 3 connectivity between the two IP addresses configured for the peer-keepalive VLAN interface.
- Only peer-keepalive messages are sent over the peer-keepalive VLAN (Layer 3 link.) These messages indicate that the DT switch from which the message originates is up and running. No data or synchronization traffic is sent over the peer-keepalive VLAN.
- STP cannot run on peer-keepalive links.
- The peer-keepalive VLAN can have only one member port. If you attempt to assign a second member port to this VLAN, or if you attempt to configure a VLAN that has more than one member port as a peer-keepalive VLAN, this message displays:

```
A keepalive VLAN can only have one member port.
```

- A port cannot be a member of a regular VLAN and a peer-keepalive VLAN. An error message displays:

```
A port cannot simultaneously be a member of a keepalive and a non-keepalive VLAN.
```

- The DEFAULT VLAN cannot be a peer-keepalive VLAN. An error message displays:

```
The default VLAN cannot be configured as a keepalive VLAN.
```



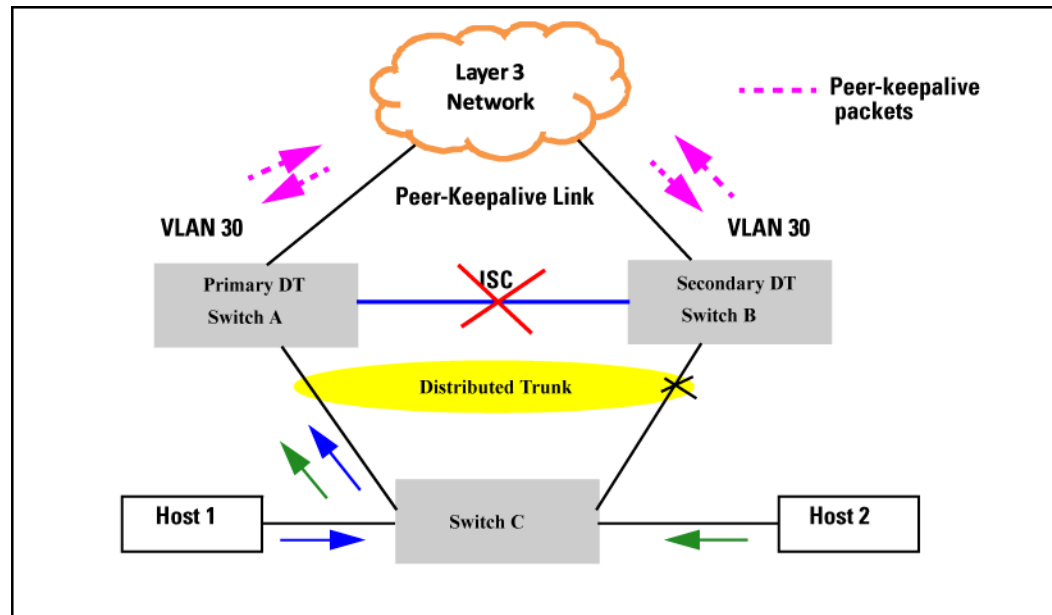
NOTE: If you are upgrading your software from a version prior to K.15.05.xxxxx with a configuration that violates any of the above operating rules, the following message displays:

```
DT: Keepalive mis-configuration detected. Reconfigure the keepalive VLAN.
```

You must then manually correct the configuration.

DT switches have an operational role that depends on the system MAC address. The bridge with the lowest system MAC address acts as the DT primary device; the other device is the DT secondary device. These roles are used to determine which device forwards traffic when the ISC link is down.

Figure 44: ISC link failure with peer-keepalive



Peer-keepalive messages are sent by both the DT switches as soon as the switches detect that the ISC link is down. Peer-keepalive message transmission (sending and receiving) is suspended until the peer-keepalive hold timer expires. When the hold timer expires, the DT switches begin sending peer-keepalive messages periodically while receiving peer-keepalive messages from the peer switch. If the DT switch fails to receive any peer-keepalive messages for the timeout period, it continues to forward traffic, assuming that the DT peer switch has completely failed.

Conversely, if the failure is because the ISC link went down and the secondary DT switch receives even one peer-keepalive message from the primary peer, the secondary switch disables all its DT ports. The primary switch always forwards the traffic on its DT ports even if it receives peer-keepalive messages from the secondary DT switch.

In both situations, if the ISC link or the DT switch becomes operational, both the DT peers sync the MAC addresses learned during the failover and continue to forward traffic normally. The peer-keepalive timers and operation is halted.

Maximum DT trunks and links supported

Table 14: Maximum supported DT trunks and links

Description	Max number
Maximum number of groups (DT trunks) in a DT switch (that is, maximum number of servers supported)	144
Maximum number of switches that can be aggregated	2
Maximum number of physical links that can be aggregated in a single switch from a server (that is, maximum number of ports that can be in a trunk connected to a single switch)	4

From the server perspective, this means that there could be a maximum total of 60 servers connected to two DT switches. Each server can have up to four physical links aggregated in a single switch, meaning that a single server could have a maximum of eight links (that is, four on each DT switch) in a DT trunk.

Forwarding traffic with distributed trunking and spanning tree

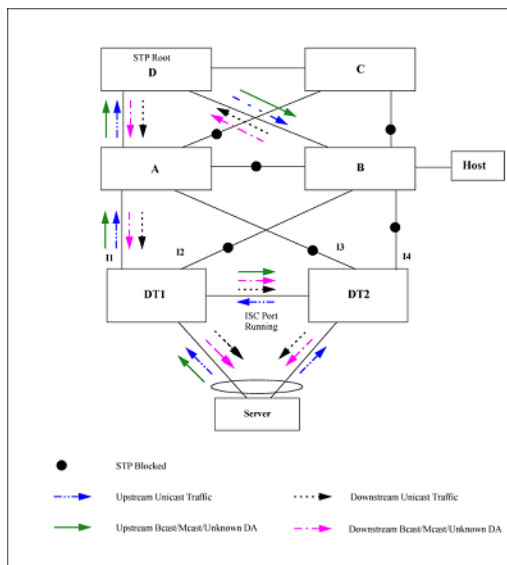
Refer to **Figure 45: Distributed trunking with STP forwarding unicast, broadcast, and multicast traffic** on page 213 for the following discussion about forwarding traffic when spanning tree is enabled. In this example, it is assumed that traffic is sent from a host off switch B to a server, and from the server back to the host. STP can block any one of the upstream links; in this example, STP has blocked all the links except the I1 link connected to DT1.



NOTE:

STP is automatically disabled on the DT ports.

Figure 45: *Distributed trunking with STP forwarding unicast, broadcast, and multicast traffic*

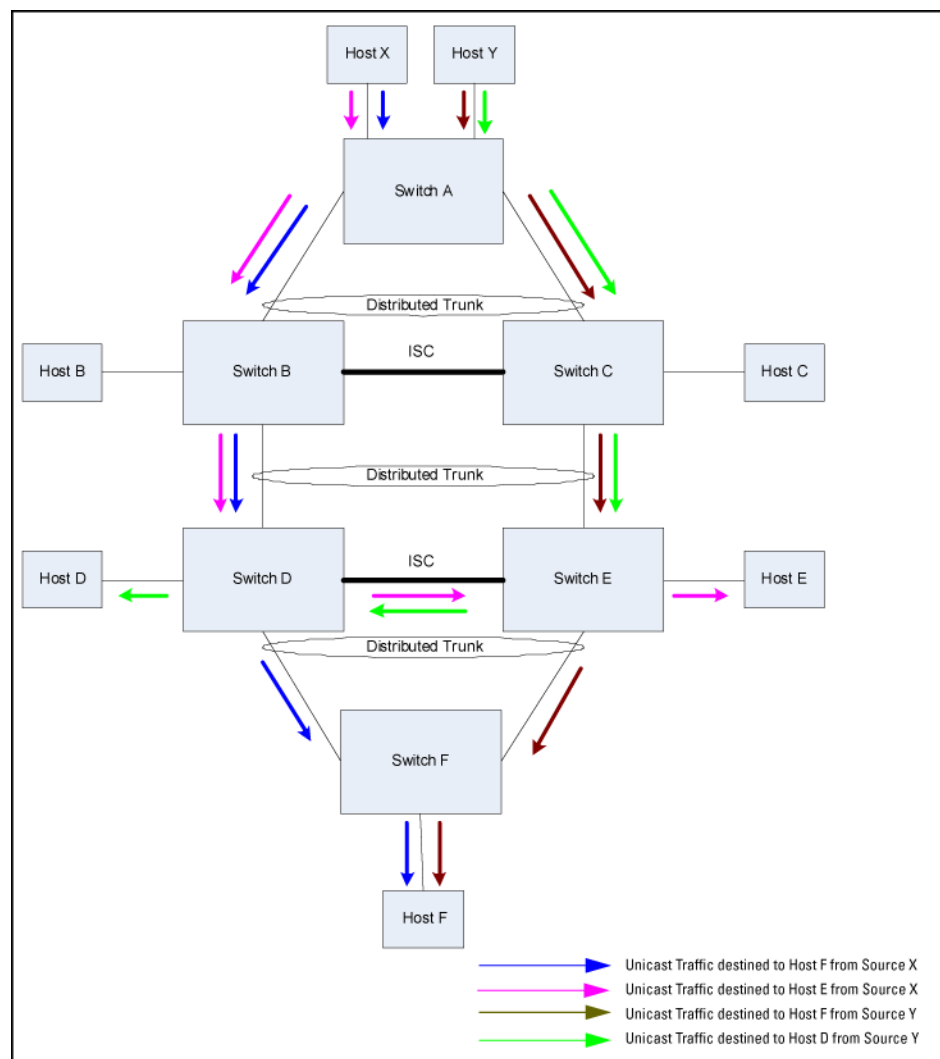


Forwarding unicast traffic

Refer to **Figure 46: Unicast traffic flow across DT switches** on page 214 for the following discussion about forwarding traffic with switch-to-switch distributed trunking. Traffic from Host X or Y that is destined for Host F is always forwarded by Switch A over one of its standard 802.1AX trunk links to either Switch B or Switch C. When either Switch B or Switch C receives incoming traffic from Switch A, the traffic is directly forwarded to Switch F without traversing the ISC link.

Traffic from Host Y to Host D may go over the ISC if Switch A sends it to Switch C instead of sending it to Switch B.

Figure 46: *Unicast traffic flow across DT switches*

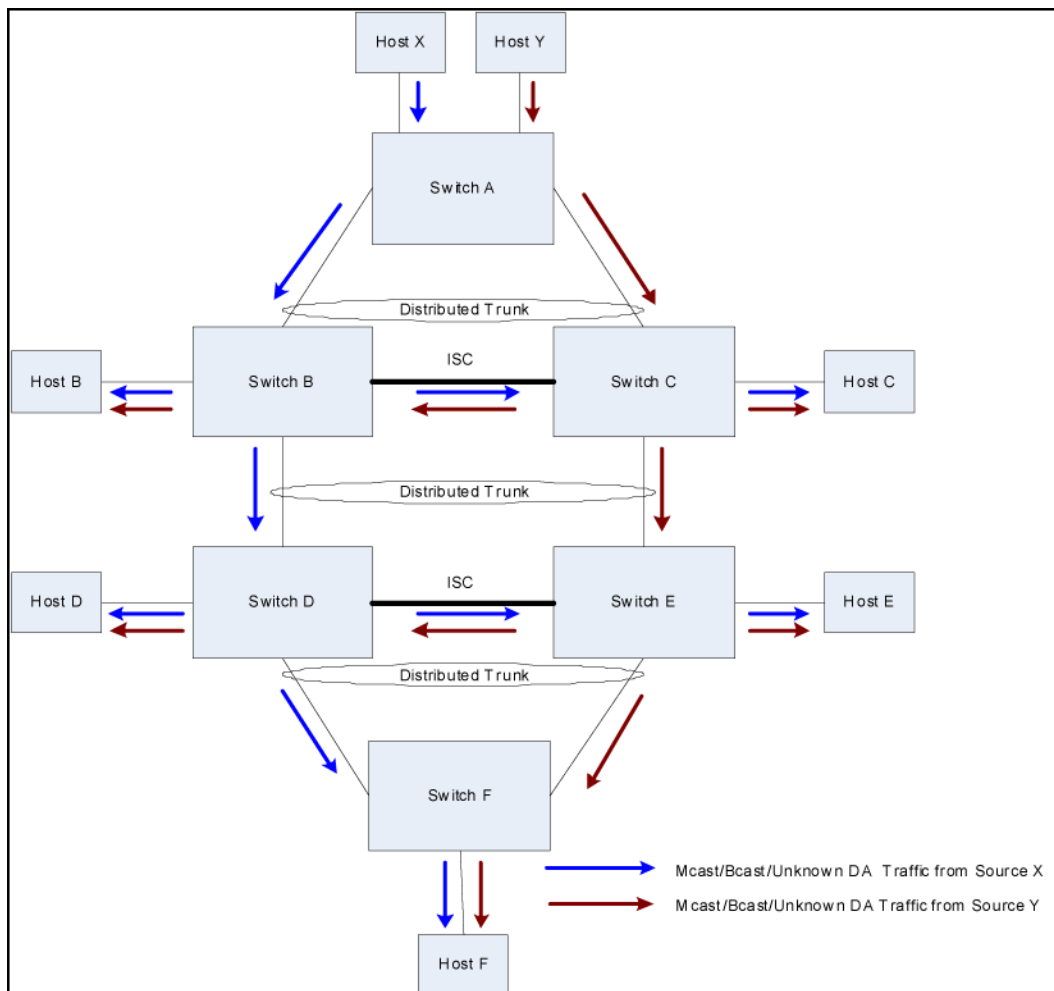


Forwarding broadcast, multicast, and unknown traffic

In the example shown in **Figure 47: Broadcast/multicast/unknown traffic flow across DT switches** on page 215, multicast/broadcast/unknown traffic from Host X or Y is always forwarded by Switch A over one of its standard 802.3ad trunk links to either Switch B or C. Switch B or C forwards the traffic on all the links including the ISC port, but not on the port that the traffic was received on. The peer DT switch (B or C) that receives broadcast/multicast/unknown traffic over the ISC port does not forward the packets to any of the DT trunks; the packet is

sent only over the non-DT ports. The one exception is if the DT trunk on the peer aggregation device is down, then traffic received over the ISC is forwarded to the corresponding DT trunk.

Figure 47: Broadcast/multicast/unknown traffic flow access DT switches



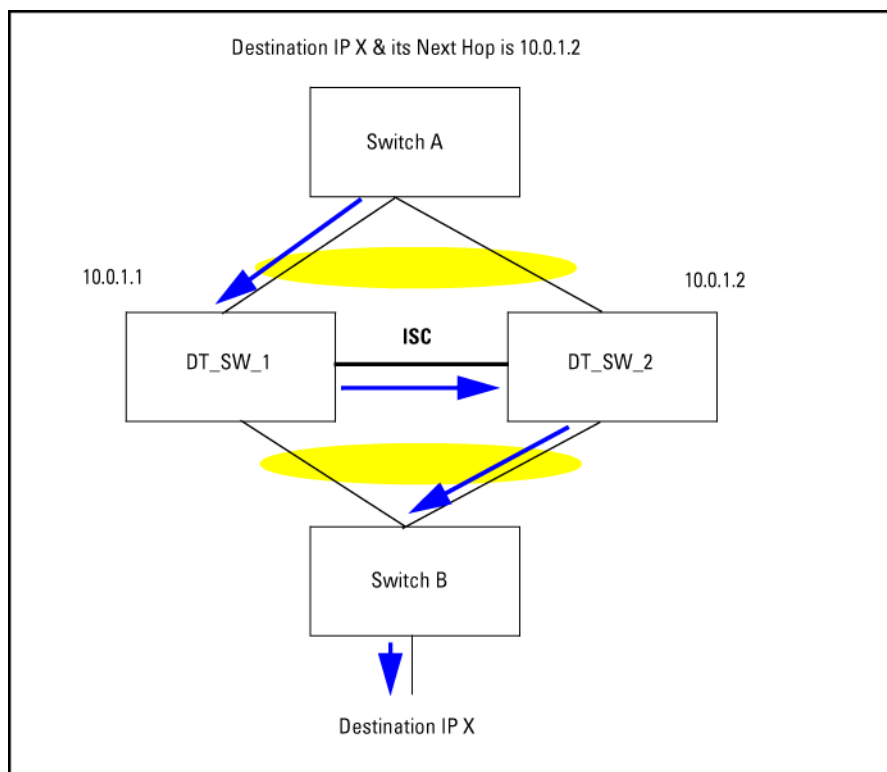
IP routing and distributed trunking

In switch-to-switch distributed trunking, the peer DT switches behave like independent Layer 3 devices with their own IP addresses in each active VLAN. If a DT switch receives a packet destined for the peer DT switch, it switches the packet through the ISC link. Interfaces on a VLAN using DT typically use a single default gateway pointing to only one of the DT switches in a DT pair.

The example in the following figure shows Layer 3 (IP unicast) forwarding in a DT topology. The packet is sent as follows:

1. Switch A selects the link (using the trunk hash) to the DT pair. The packet is sent to the selected link DT_SW_1.
2. When DT_SW_1 receives the packet, it determines, based on the MAC address, that the packet must be sent over the ISC link to DT_SW_2.
3. When the packet arrives, DT_SW_2 performs a lookup and determines that the packet needs to be sent to Switch B.

Figure 48: Layer 3 forwarding (IP unicast) in DT topology

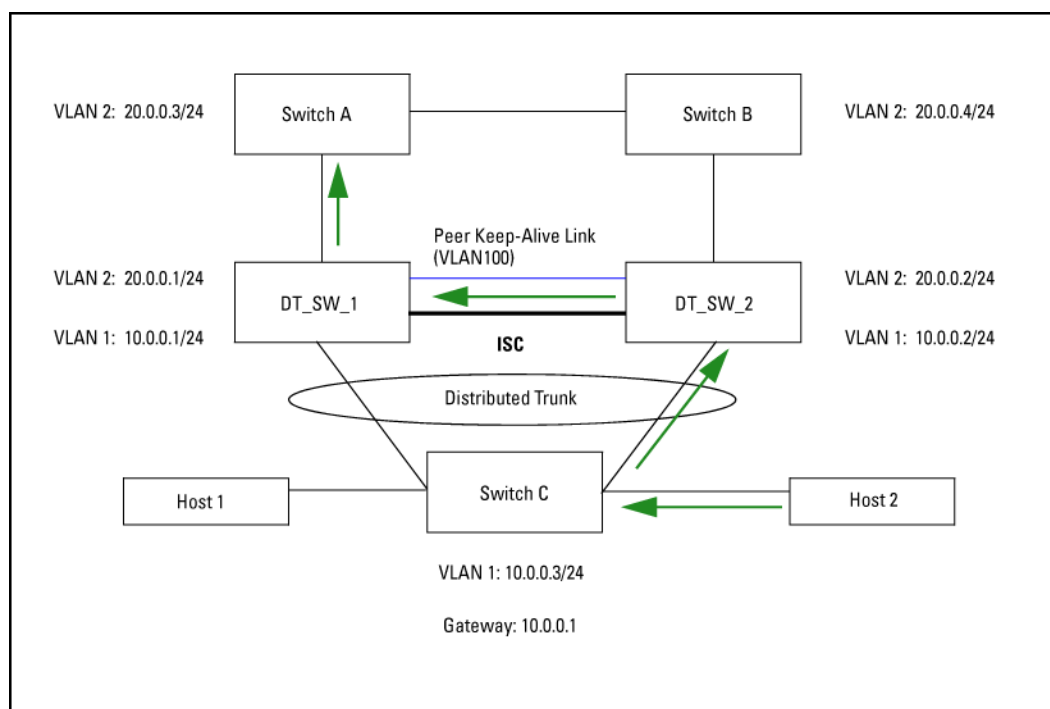


Another example in the next figure shows Layer 3 (IP unicast) forwarding in a DT topology. The packet is sent as follows:

1. Host 2 sends a packet to Switch C.
2. Switch C performs a lookup in the routing table and determines that the default gateway IP address is 10.0.0.1.
3. Layer 2 lookup determines that the outgoing interface is the DT port.
4. Hashing determines that the trunk member chosen is DT_SW_2 and the packet is sent there.
5. DT_SW_2 determines that the packet needs to be sent over the ISC link to DT_SW_1 based on the MAC address.
6. DT_SW_1 performs a lookup and determines that the packet goes to Switch A.

The packet is only forwarded if the outgoing interface is not a DT port, or if the outgoing DT port does not have an active interface on the peer switch.

Figure 49: Layer 3 forwarding (IP unicast) in DT topology



Distributed trunking restrictions

There are several restrictions with distributed trunking:

- Beginning with software version K.15.07, the switch will not allow both Distributed Trunking and MAC-based mirroring to function simultaneously. The switch will respond as follows:
 - If the user attempts to configure both, an error message will appear.
 - When a switch is updated from older software to K.15.07, if the older config file has both Distributed Trunking and MAC-based mirroring, the switch will automatically remove the MAC-based mirroring lines from the config file, and will give an explanatory error message.

If a switch is running K.15.07 and an existing config file that has both Distributed Trunking and MAC-based mirroring is loaded onto the switch, the switch will automatically remove the MAC-based mirroring lines from the config file, and will give an explanatory error message.

- All DT linked switches must be running the same software version.
- The port trunk links should be configured manually (using manual LACP or manual trunks.) Dynamic linking across switches is not supported.
- A distributed trunk can span a maximum of two switches.
- A maximum total of 144 servers can be connected to two DT switches. Each server can have up to four physical links aggregated in a single switch, meaning that there can be a maximum of eight ports (four aggregated links for each DT switch) included in a DT trunk.

- Only one ISC link is supported per switch, with a maximum of 60 DT trunks supported on the switch. The ISC link can be configured as a manual LACP trunk, non-protocol trunk, or as an individual link. Dynamic LACP trunks are not supported as ISCs.
- An ISC port becomes a member of all VLANs that are configured on the switch. When a new VLAN is configured, the ISC ports become members of that VLAN.
- Port trunk links can be done only on a maximum of two switches that are connected to a specific server.
- Any VLAN that is in a distributed trunk must be configured on both switches. By default, the distributed trunk belongs to the default VLAN.
- There can be eight links in a distributed trunk grouped across two switches, with a limit of four links per distributed trunking switch.
- The limit of 144 manual trunks per switch includes distributed trunks as well.
- ARP protection is not supported on the distributed trunks.
- Dynamic IP Lockdown protection is not supported on the distributed trunks.
- QinQ in mixed VLAN mode and distributed trunking are mutually exclusive.
- Source Port Filter cannot be configured on an InterSwitch Connect (ISC) port.
- Features not supported include:
 - SVLANs in mixed mode on DT or ISC links
 - Meshing
 - IPv6 routing

Updating software versions with DT

For 15.14.x and later

Beginning with software release 15.14.x, when updating to a new software release on switches configured for DT (Distributed Trunking) on LACP type trunks, you must update the DT partner with the lowest Base MAC address first. When this partner returns to operation, then update the other partner. Use the `show system` command to determine the base MAC address on a given switch.

From no DT Keepalive support to shared DT Keepalive support

When updating software from a version that does not support DT Keepalive (prior to version K.15.03) to a version that supports shared DT keepalive (K.15.03 and greater), use the following procedure:

Procedure

1. Disable the ISC interface on both switches, and then upgrade the software. Assume a2 is configured as switch-interconnect.

```
switch# int a2 disable
switch# write mem
```

2. Configure one of the existing uplink VLANs as a keepalive VLAN, and then configure the destination keepalive IP address (peer's keepalive IP address) on both switches at bootup.

```
switch# distributed-trunking
peer-keepalive vlan 2
switch# distributed-trunking
peer-keepalive destination 20.0.0.2
```

3. Ping the keepalive destination address to make sure that there is connectivity between the two DT switches (keepalive VLANs.)
4. Enable the ISC link on both switches and then execute `write memory`. Assume a2 is configured as switch-interconnect.

```
switch# int a2 enable
switch# write mem
```

From no DT Keepalive support to dedicated point-to-point DT Keepalive support

When updating software from a software version that does not support DT keepalive (prior to version K.15.03) to a version with dedicated point-to-point keepalive (K.15.03 and greater), use the following procedure:

- Disable the ISC interface on both switches, and then upgrade the software. Assume a2 is configured as switch-interconnect.

```
switch# int a2 disable
switch# write mem
```

- At switch bootup, create a dedicated VLAN for keepalive, and assign only the keepalive link port as a member port of the VLAN. Configure the keepalive destination IP address.

```
switch# distributed-trunking
peer-keepalive vlan 2
switch# distributed-trunking
peer-keepalive destination 20.0.0.2
```

- Ping the keepalive destination address to make sure that there is connectivity between the two DT switches (keepalive VLANs.)
- Enable the ISC link on both switches, and then execute `write memory`. Assume a2 is configured as switch-interconnect.

```
switch# int a2 enable
switch# write mem
```

From shared DT Keepalive support to point-to-point Keepalive support

When updating software from a software version that does support shared DT keepalive (K.15.03, K.15.04) to a version that supports dedicated point-to-point keepalive (K.15.05), use the following procedure:

- Disable the ISC interface and undo the keepalive configuration on both switches. Ignore the warning message that is displayed by the keepalive command while undoing the configuration. Upgrade the software. Assume a2 is configured as switch-interconnect.

```
switch# int a2 disable
switch# no distributed-trunking
peer-keepalive vlan
switch# write mem
```

- At switch bootup, create a dedicated VLAN for keepalive and assign only the keepalive link port as a member port of the VLAN. Configure the keepalive destination IP address.

```
switch# vlan 10 (dedicated point-to-point VLAN interface)
switch(vlan-10)#
switch(vlan-10)# untagged b2 (keepalive link port)
switch(vlan-10)# ip address 10.0.0.1/24
switch(vlan-10)# exit
switch# distributed-trunking
peer-keepalive vlan 10
```

```
switch# distributed-trunking  
peer-keepalive destination 10.0.0.2
```

- Ping the keepalive destination address to make sure that there is connectivity between the two DT switches (keepalive VLANs.)
- Enable the ISC link on both switches, and then execute `write memory`. Assume a2 is configured as switch-interconnect.

```
switch# int a2 enable  
switch# write mem
```


ICMP rate-limiting

In IP networks, ICMP messages are generated in response to either inquiries or requests from routing and diagnostic functions. These messages are directed to the applications originating the inquiries. In unusual situations, if the messages are generated rapidly with the intent of overloading network circuits, they can threaten network availability. This problem is visible in denial-of-service (DoS) attacks or other malicious behaviors where a worm or virus overloads the network with ICMP messages to an extent where no other traffic can get through. (ICMP messages themselves can also be misused as virus carriers). Such malicious misuses of ICMP can include a high number of ping packets that mimic a valid source IP address and an invalid destination IP address (spoofed pings), and a high number of response messages (such as Destination Unreachable error messages) generated by the network.

ICMP rate-limiting provides a method for limiting the amount of bandwidth that may be used for inbound ICMP traffic on a switch port. This feature allows users to restrict ICMP traffic to percentage levels that permit necessary ICMP functions, but throttle additional traffic that may be caused by worms or viruses (reducing their spread and effect). In addition, ICMP rate-limiting preserves inbound port bandwidth for non-ICMP traffic.



CAUTION:

ICMP is necessary for routing, diagnostic, and error responses in an IP network. ICMP rate-limiting is primarily used for throttling worm or virus-like behavior and should normally be configured to allow one to five percent of available inbound bandwidth (at 10 Mbps or 100 Mbps speeds) or 100 to 10,000 kbps (1Gbps or 10 Gbps speeds) to be used for ICMP traffic. **This feature should not be used to remove all ICMP traffic from a network.**



NOTE:

ICMP rate-limiting does not throttle non-ICMP traffic. In cases where you want to throttle both ICMP traffic and all other inbound traffic on a given interface, you can separately configure both ICMP rate-limiting and all-traffic rate-limiting.

The all-traffic rate-limiting command (`rate-limit all`) and the ICMP rate-limiting command (`rate-limit icmp`) operate differently:

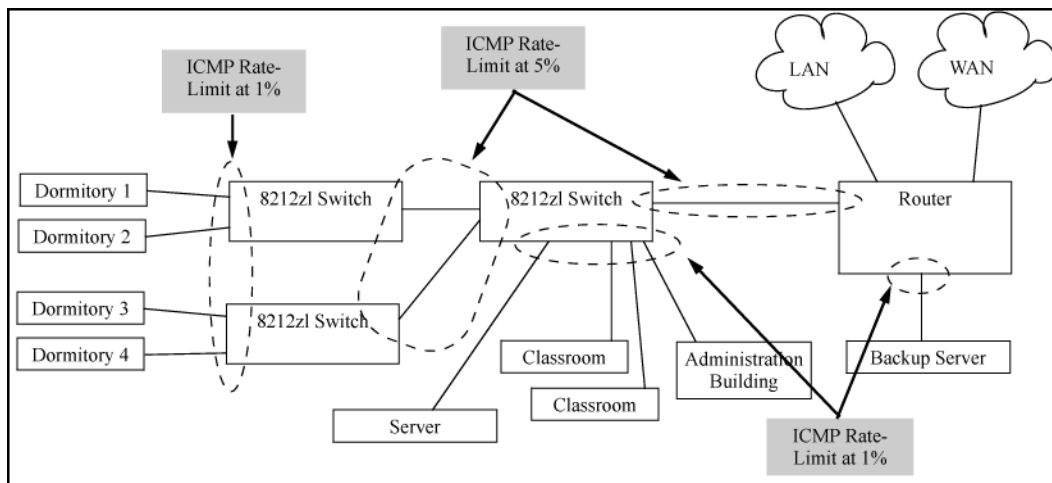
- All-traffic rate-limiting applies to both inbound and outbound traffic and can be specified either in terms of a percentage of total bandwidth or in terms of bits per second;
- ICMP rate-limiting applies only to inbound traffic and can be specified as only a percentage of total bandwidth.

Guidelines for configuring ICMP rate-limiting

Apply ICMP rate-limiting on all connected interfaces on the switch to effectively throttle excessive ICMP messaging from any source. **Figure 50: Example: of ICMP rate-limiting** on page 222 shows an Example: of how to configure this for a small to mid-sized campus though similar rate-limit thresholds are applicable to other network environments. On edge interfaces, where ICMP traffic should be minimal, a threshold of 1% of available bandwidth should be sufficient for most applications. On core interfaces, such as switch-to-switch and switch-to-

router, a maximum threshold of 5% should be sufficient for normal ICMP traffic. ("Normal" ICMP traffic levels should be the maximums that occur when the network is rebooting.)

Figure 50: Example: of ICMP rate-limiting



Configuring ICMP rate-limiting

For detailed information about ICMP rate-limiting, see **ICMP rate-limiting** on page 221.

The `rate-limit icmp` command controls inbound usage of a port by setting a limit on the bandwidth available for inbound ICMP traffic.

Syntax:

```
[no] int <port-list> rate-limit icmp {< percent < 0-100 > | kbps < 0-10000000 > | [trap-clear]}
```

Configures inbound ICMP traffic rate-limiting. You can configure a rate limit from either the global configuration level (as shown above) or from the interface context level. The `no` form of the command disables ICMP rate-limiting on the specified interfaces.

(Default: Disabled.)

<code>percent <1-100></code>	Values in this range allow ICMP traffic as a percentage of the bandwidth available on the interface.
<code>kbps <0-10000000></code>	Specifies the rate at which to forward traffic in kilobits per second.
<code>0</code>	Causes an interface to drop all incoming ICMP traffic and is not recommended. See the caution .
<code>trap-clear</code>	Clears existing ICMP rate limiting trap condition.

Note: ICMP rate-limiting is not supported on meshed ports. (Rate-limiting can reduce the efficiency of paths through a mesh domain).

Example:

Either of the following commands configures an inbound rate limit of 1% on ports A3 to A5, which are used as network edge ports:

```
switch(config) # int a3-a5 rate-limit icmp 1
switch(eth-A3-A5) # rate-limit icmp 1
```



NOTE: When using kbps-mode ICMP rate-limiting, the rate-limiting only operates on the IP payload part of the ICMP packet (as required by metering RFC 2698). This means that effective metering is at a rate greater than the configured rate, with the disparity increasing as the packet size decreases (the packet to payload ratio is higher).

Also, in kbps mode, metering accuracy is limited at low values, For example, less than 45 Kbps. This is to allow metering to function well at higher media speeds such as 10 Gbps.

For information on using ICMP rate-limiting and all-traffic rate-limiting on the same interface, see [**Using both ICMP rate-limiting and all-traffic rate-limiting on the same interface**](#) on page 223.

Using both ICMP rate-limiting and all-traffic rate-limiting on the same interface

ICMP and all-traffic rate-limiting can be configured on the same interface. All-traffic rate-limiting applies to all inbound or outbound traffic (including ICMP traffic), while ICMP rate-limiting applies only to inbound ICMP traffic.



NOTE: If the all-traffic load on an interface meets or exceeds the currently configured all-traffic inbound rate-limit while the ICMP traffic rate-limit on the same interface has not been reached, all excess traffic is dropped, including any inbound ICMP traffic above the all-traffic limit (regardless of whether the ICMP rate-limit has been reached).

Example:

Suppose:

- The all-traffic inbound rate-limit on port "X" is configured at 55% of the port's bandwidth.
- The ICMP traffic rate-limit on port "X" is configured at 2% of the port's bandwidth.

If at a given moment:

- Inbound ICMP traffic on port "X" is using 1% of the port's bandwidth, and
- Inbound traffic of all types on port "X" demands 61% of the ports's bandwidth,

all inbound traffic above 55% of the port's bandwidth, including any additional ICMP traffic, is dropped as long as all inbound traffic combined on the port demands 55% or more of the port's bandwidth.

Viewing the current ICMP rate-limit configuration

The `show rate-limit icmp` command displays the per-interface ICMP rate-limit configuration in the running-config file.

Syntax:

```
show rate-limit icmp [< port-list >]
```

Without `[port-list]`, this command lists the ICMP rate-limit configuration for all ports on the switch.

With `[port-list]`, this command lists the rate-limit configuration for the specified interfaces. This command operates the same way in any CLI context

If you want to view the rate-limiting configuration on ports 1–6:

Listing the rate-limit configuration

```
switch(config)# show rate-limit icmp 1-6
```

Inbound ICMP Rate Limit Maximum Percentage

Port	Mode	Rate Limit
1	Disabled	Disabled
2	kbits	100
3	%	5
4	%	1
5	%	1
6	Disabled	Disable

The `show running` command displays the currently applied setting for any interfaces in the switch configured for all traffic rate-limiting and ICMP rate-limiting.

The `show config` command displays this information for the configuration currently stored in the `startup-config` file. (Note that configuration changes performed with the CLI, but not followed by a `write mem` command, do not appear in the `startup-config` file.)

Operating notes for ICMP rate-limiting

ICMP rate-limiting operates on an interface (per-port) basis to allow, on average, the highest expected amount of legitimate, inbound ICMP traffic.

- **Interface support:** ICMP rate-limiting is available on all types of ports (other than trunk ports or mesh ports), and at all port speeds configurable for the switch.
- **Rate-limiting is not permitted on mesh ports:** Either type of rate-limiting (all-traffic or ICMP) can reduce the efficiency of paths through a mesh domain.
- **ICMP percentage-based rate-limits are calculated as a percentage of the negotiated link speed:** For example, if a 100 Mbps port negotiates a link to another switch at 100 Mbps and is ICMP rate-limit configured at 5%, the inbound ICMP traffic flow through that port is limited to 5 Mbps. Similarly, if the same port negotiates a 10 Mbps link, it allows 0.5 Mbps of inbound traffic. If an interface experiences an inbound flow of ICMP traffic in excess of its configured limit, the switch generates a log message and an SNMP trap (if an SNMP trap receiver is configured).
- **ICMP rate-limiting is port-based:** ICMP rate-limiting reflects the available percentage of an interface's entire inbound bandwidth. The rate of inbound flow for traffic of a given priority and the rate of flow from an ICMP rate-limited interface to a particular queue of an outbound interface are not measures of the actual ICMP rate limit enforced on an interface.
- **Below-maximum rates:** ICMP rate-limiting operates on a per-interface basis, regardless of traffic priority. Configuring ICMP rate-limiting on an interface where other features affect inbound port queue behavior (such as flow control) can result in the interface not achieving its configured ICMP rate-limiting maximum. For example, in some situations with flow control configured on an ICMP rate-limited interface, there can be enough "back pressure" to hold high-priority inbound traffic from the upstream device or application to a rate that does not allow bandwidth for lower-priority ICMP traffic. In this case, the inbound traffic flow may not permit the forwarding of ICMP traffic into the switch fabric from the rate-limited interface. (This behavior is termed "head-of-line blocking" and is a well-known problem with flow-control.) In cases where both types of rate-limiting (`rate-limit all` and `rate-limit icmp`) are configured on the same interface, this situation is more likely to occur.

In another type of situation, an outbound interface can become oversubscribed by traffic received from multiple ICMP rate-limited interfaces. In this case, the actual rate for traffic on the rate-limited interfaces may be lower

than configured because the total traffic load requested to the outbound interface exceeds the interface's bandwidth, and thus some requested traffic may be held off on inbound.

- **Monitoring (mirroring) ICMP rate-limited interfaces:** If monitoring is configured, packets dropped by ICMP rate-limiting on a monitored interface are still forwarded to the designated monitor port. (Monitoring shows what traffic is inbound on an interface, and is not affected by "drop" or "forward" decisions.)
- **Optimum rate-limiting operation:** Optimum rate-limiting occurs with 64-byte packet sizes. Traffic with larger packet sizes can result in performance somewhat below the configured inbound bandwidth. This is to ensure the strictest possible rate-limiting of all sizes of packets.
- **Outbound traffic flow:** Configuring ICMP rate-limiting on an interface does **not** control the rate of outbound traffic flow on the interface.

ICMP rate-limiting trap and Event Log messages

If the switch detects a volume of inbound ICMP traffic on a port that exceeds the ICMP rate-limit configured for that port, it generates one SNMP trap and one informational Event Log message to notify the system operator of the condition. (The trap and Event Log message are sent within two minutes of when the event occurred on the port.) For Example:

```
I 06/30/05 11:15:42 RateLim: ICMP traffic exceeded configured limit on port A1
```

These trap and Event Log messages provide an advisory that inbound ICMP traffic on a given interface has exceeded the configured maximum. The additional ICMP traffic is dropped, but the excess condition may indicate an infected host (or other traffic threat or network problem) on that interface. The system operator should investigate the attached devices or network conditions further; the switch does not send more traps or Event Log messages for excess ICMP traffic on the affected port until the system operator resets the port's ICMP trap function.

The switch does not send more traps or Event Log messages for excess ICMP traffic on the affected port until the system operator resets the port's ICMP trap function. The reset can be done through SNMP from a network management station or through the CLI with the `trap-clear` command option.

Syntax:

```
interface <port-list> rate-limit icmp trap-clear
```

On a port configured with ICMP rate-limiting, this command resets the ICMP trap function, which allows the switch to generate a new SNMP trap and an Event Log message if ICMP traffic in excess of the configured limit is detected on the port.

Example:

An operator noticing an ICMP rate-limiting trap or Event Log message originating with port 1 on a switch would use the following command to reset the port to send a new message if the condition occurs again:

```
Switch(config)# interface 1 rate-limit icmp trap-clear
```

Determining the switch port number used in ICMP port reset commands

To enable excess ICMP traffic notification traps and Event Log messages, use the `setmib` command described on **ICMP rate-limiting trap and Event Log messages** on page 225. The port number included in the command corresponds to the internal number the switch maintains for the designated port and not the port's external identity.

To match the port's external slot/number to the internal port number, use the `walkmib ifDescr` command, as shown in the following example:

Matching internal port numbers to external port numbers

```
switch# walkmib ifDescr
ifDescr.1 = 1
ifDescr.2 = 2
ifDescr.3 = 3
ifDescr.4 = 4
ifDescr.5 = 5
ifDescr.6 = 6
ifDescr.7 = 7
ifDescr.8 = 8
ifDescr.9 = 9
ifDescr.10 = 10
ifDescr.11 = 11
ifDescr.12 = 12
ifDescr.13 = 13
ifDescr.14 = 14
ifDescr.15 = 15
ifDescr.16 = 16
ifDescr.17 = 17
ifDescr.18 = 18
ifDescr.19 = 19
ifDescr.20 = 20
ifDescr.21 = 21
ifDescr.22 = 22
ifDescr.23 = 23
ifDescr.24 = 24
ifDescr.210 = Trk1
ifDescr.211 = Trk2
ifDescr.330 = DEFAULT_VLAN
ifDescr.4425 = Switch software loopback interface
ifDescr.4426 = Switch software loopback interface
.
.
.
```

Configuring inbound rate-limiting for broadcast and multicast traffic

You can configure rate-limiting (throttling) of inbound broadcast and multicast traffic on the switch, which helps prevent the switch from being disrupted by traffic storms if they occur on the rate-limited port. The rate-limiting is implemented as a percentage of the total available bandwidth on the port.

The `rate-limit` command can be executed from the global or interface context, for Example:

```
switch(config)# interface 3 rate-limit bcast in percent 10
```

or

```
switch(config)# interface 3
switch(eth-3)# rate-limit bcast in percent 10
```

Syntax:

```
rate-limit {< bcast | mcast >} in percent < 0-100 >
```

Option

```
in percent <0-100>
```

Also supports configuring limit in *kbps*

```
[no] rate-limit {<bcast | [mcast >]} in
```

Enables rate-limiting and sets limits for the specified inbound broadcast or multicast traffic. Only the amount of traffic specified by the percent is forwarded.

Default: Disabled

If you want to set a limit of 50% on inbound broadcast traffic for port 3, you can first enter interface context for port 3 and then execute the `rate-limit` command, as shown in **Inbound broadcast rate-limiting of 50% on port 3** on page 227. Only 50% of the inbound broadcast traffic will be forwarded.

Inbound broadcast rate-limiting of 50% on port 3

```
switch(config)# int 3
switch(eth-3)# rate-limit bcast in percent 50
```

```
switch(eth-3)# show rate-limit bcast
Broadcast-Traffic Rate Limit Maximum %
```

Port	Inbound Limit	Mode	Radius Override
1	Disabled	Disabled	No-override
2	Disabled	Disabled	No-override
3	Disabled	%	No-override
4	Disabled	Disabled	No-override
5	Disabled	Disabled	No-override

If you rate-limit multicast traffic on the same port, the multicast limit is also in effect for that port, as shown in **Inbound multicast rate-limiting of 20% on port 3** on page 227. Only 20% of the multicast traffic will be forwarded.

Inbound multicast rate-limiting of 20% on port 3

```
switch(eth-3)# rate-limit mcast in percent 20
switch(eth-3)# show rate-limit mcast
```

```
Multicast-Traffic Rate Limit Maximum %
```

Port	Inbound Limit	Mode	Radius Override
1	Disabled	Disabled	No-override
2	Disabled	Disabled	No-override
3	20	%	No-override
4	Disabled	Disabled	No-override

To disable rate-limiting for a port enter the `no` form of the command, as shown in **Disabling inbound multicast rate-limiting for port 3** on page 227.

Disabling inbound multicast rate-limiting for port 3

```
switch(eth-3)# no rate-limit mcast in
```

```
switch(eth-3)# show rate-limit mcast
```

```
Multicast-Traffic Rate Limit Maximum %
```

Port	Inbound Limit	Mode	Radius Override
1	Disabled	Disabled	No-override
2	Disabled	Disabled	No-override
3	Disabled	Disabled	No-override
4	Disabled	Disabled	No-override

1	Disabled	Disabled	No-override
2	Disabled	Disabled	No-override
3	Disabled	Disabled	No-override
4	Disabled	Disabled	No-override

Operating Notes

The following information is displayed for each installed transceiver:

- Port number on which transceiver is installed.
- Type of transceiver.
- Product number — Includes revision letter, such as A, B, or C. If no revision letter follows a product number, this means that no revision is available for the transceiver.
- Part number — Allows you to determine the manufacturer for a specified transceiver and revision number.
- For a non-Aruba switches installed transceiver, no transceiver type, product number, or part information is displayed. In the Serial Number field, `non-operational` is displayed instead of a serial number.
- The following error messages may be displayed for a non-operational transceiver:
 - `Unsupported Transceiver. (SelfTest Err#060)`
 - `This switch only supports revision B and above transceivers.`
 - `Self test failure.`
 - `Transceiver type not supported in this port.`
 - `Transceiver type not supported in this software version.`
 - `Not an Switch Transceiver.`

Guaranteed minimum bandwidth (GMB)

GMB provides a method for ensuring that each of a given port's outbound traffic priority queues has a specified minimum consideration for sending traffic out on the link to another device. This can prevent a condition where applications generating lower-priority traffic in the network are frequently or continually "starved" by high volumes of higher-priority traffic. You can configure GMB per-port and, in the case of the 2920 and 5400R switches, per static trunk.

GMB operation



NOTE: Earlier software releases supported GMB configuration on a per-port basis. Beginning with software release 15.18, the 2920 and 5400R switches also support GMB configuration on static trunks. (GMB configuration is not supported on dynamic LACP or distributed (DT) trunks.)

For application to static trunk interfaces (2920 and 5400r only), GMB enforcement is applied individually to each port belonging to the trunk, and not to the trunk as a whole.

For any port, group of ports or, static trunks, you can use the default minimum bandwidth settings for each outbound priority queue or a customized bandwidth profile. It is also possible to disable the feature entirely.

The switch services per-port outbound traffic in a descending order of priority; that is, from the highest priority to the lowest priority. By default, each port (including each port in a static trunk) offers eight prioritized, outbound traffic queues. Tagged VLAN traffic is prioritized according to the 802.1p priority the traffic carries. Untagged VLAN traffic is assigned a priority of **0** (normal).

Table 15: Per-port outbound priority queues

802.1p Priority settings in tagged VLAN packets ¹	Outbound priority queue for a given port
1 (low)	1
2 (low)	2
0 (normal)	3
3 (normal)	4
4 (medium)	5
5 (medium)	6
6 (high)	7
7 (high)	8

¹ The switch processes outbound traffic from an untagged port at the "0" (normal) priority level.

You can use GMB to reserve a specific percentage of each port's available outbound bandwidth for each of the eight priority queues. This means that regardless of the amount of high-priority outbound traffic on a port (including each port in a static trunk), you can ensure that there will always be bandwidth reserved for lower-priority traffic.

Since the switch services outbound traffic according to priority (highest to lowest), the highest-priority outbound traffic on a given port automatically receives the first priority in servicing. Thus, in most applications, it is necessary only to specify the minimum bandwidth you want to allocate to the lower priority queues. In this case, the high-priority traffic automatically receives all unassigned bandwidth without starving the lower-priority queues.

Conversely, configuring a bandwidth minimum on only the high-priority outbound queue of a port or static trunk (and not providing a bandwidth minimum for the lower-priority queues) is not recommended, because it may "starve" the lower-priority queues.



NOTE: For a given port, when the demand on one or more outbound queues exceeds the minimum bandwidth configured for those queues, the switch apportions unallocated bandwidth to these queues on a priority basis. As a result, specifying a minimum bandwidth for a high-priority queue but not specifying a minimum for lower-priority queues can starve the lower-priority queues during periods of high demand on the high priority queue. For example, if a port or static trunk configured to allocate a minimum bandwidth of 80% for outbound high-priority traffic experiences a demand above this minimum, this burst starves lower-priority queues that **do not have a minimum configured**. Normally, this will not altogether halt lower priority traffic on the network, but will likely cause delays in the delivery of the lower-priority traffic.

The sum of the GMB settings for all outbound queues on a given port or static trunk cannot exceed 100%.

Impacts of QoS queue configuration on GMB operation

The section **Configuring GMB for outbound traffic** on page 230 assumes the ports on the switch offer eight prioritized, outbound traffic queues. This may not always be the case, however, because the switch supports a QoS queue configuration feature that allows you to reduce the number of outbound queues from eight (the default) to four queues, or two.

Changing the number of queues affects the GMB commands (`interface bandwidth-min` and `show bandwidth output`) such that they operate only on the number of queues currently configured. If the queues

are reconfigured, the guaranteed minimum bandwidth per queue is automatically re-allocated according to the following percentages:

Table 16: Default GMB percentage allocations per QoS queue configuration

802.1p priority	8 queues (default)	4 queues	2 queues
1 (lowest)	2%	10%	90%
2	3%		
0 (normal)	30%	70%	
3	10%		
4	10%	10%	10%
5	10%		
6	15%	10%	
7 (highest)	20%		



NOTE: For more information on queue configuration and the associated default minimum bandwidth settings, see the "Quality of Service (QoS): managing bandwidth more effectively" in the advanced traffic management guide for your switch.

Configuring GMB for outbound traffic

For any port, group of ports, or static trunk, you can configure either the default minimum bandwidth settings for each outbound priority queue or a customized bandwidth allocation. For most applications, Hewlett Packard Enterprise recommends configuring GMB with the same values on all ports on the switch so that the outbound traffic profile is consistent for all outbound traffic. However, there may be instances where it may be advantageous to configure special profiles on connections to servers or to the network infrastructure (such as links to routers, other switches, or to the network core).

Syntax:

```
[no] int <port-list|trk_#> bandwidth-min output
```

Configures the default minimum bandwidth allocation for the outbound priority queue for each port or static trunk in the `<port-list|trk_#>`. In the eight-queue configuration, the default values per priority queue are:

- Queue 1 (low priority): 2%
- Queue 2 (low priority): 3%
- Queue 3 (normal priority): 30%
- Queue 4 (normal priority): 10%
- Queue 5 (medium priority): 10%
- Queue 6 (medium priority): 10%
- Queue 7 (high priority): 15%
- Queue 8 (high priority): 20%

The `no` form of the command disables GMB for all ports and trunks in the `<port-list>`. In this state, which is the equivalent of setting all outbound queues on a port or static trunk to **0** (zero), a high level of higher-priority traffic can starve lower-priority queues, which can slow or halt lower-priority traffic in the network.

You can configure bandwidth minimums from either the global configuration level (as shown above) or from the port or static trunk context level. For information on outbound port queues, see [Per-port outbound priority queues](#).

Syntax:

```
[no] int <<port-list|trk_#>> bandwidth-min output [0-100|strict] [0-100]
```

Select a minimum bandwidth.

For ports and trunks in `<port-list|trk_#>`, specifies the minimum outbound bandwidth as a percent of the total bandwidth for each outbound queue. The queues receive service in descending order of priority of each port.



NOTE: For application to static trunk interfaces (2920 and 5400R only), GMB enforcement is applied individually to each port belonging to the trunk, and not to the trunk as a whole.

You must specify a bandwidth percent value for all except the highest priority queue, which may instead be set to "strict" mode. The sum of the bandwidth percentages below the top queue cannot exceed 100%. (**0** is a value for a queue percentage setting.)

Configuring a total of less than 100% across the eight queues results in unallocated bandwidth that remains harmlessly unused unless a given queue becomes oversubscribed. In this case, the unallocated bandwidth is apportioned to oversubscribed queues in descending order of priority. For example, if you configure a minimum of 10% for queues 1 to 7 and 0% for queue 8, the unallocated bandwidth is available to all eight queues in the following prioritized order:

- Queue 8 (high priority)
- Queue 7 (high priority)
- Queue 6 (medium priority)
- Queue 5 (medium priority)
- Queue 4 (normal priority)
- Queue 3 (normal priority)
- Queue 2 (low priority)
- Queue 1 (low priority)

A setting of **0** (zero percent) on a queue means that no bandwidth minimum is specifically reserved for that queue for each of the ports (including trunked ports) in the `<port-list|trk_#>`.

Also, there is no benefit to setting the high-priority queue (queue 8) to **0** (zero) unless you want the medium queue (queues 5 and 6) to be able to support traffic bursts above its guaranteed minimum.

[strict]: Provides the ability to configure the highest priority queue as `strict`. Per-queue values must be specified in priority order, with queue 1 having the lowest priority and queue 8 (or 4, or 2) having the highest priority (the highest queue is determined by how many queues are configured on the switch. Two, four, and eight queues are permitted (see the `qos queue-config` command). The strict queue is provided all the bandwidth it needs. Any remaining bandwidth is shared among the non-strict queues based on need and configured bandwidth profiles (the profiles are applied to the leftover bandwidth in this case). The total sum of percentages for non-strict queues must not exceed 100.



NOTE: Configuring 0% for a queue can result in that queue being starved if any higher queue becomes over-subscribed and is then given all unused bandwidth.

The switch applies the bandwidth calculation to the link speed the port or trunk is currently using. For example, if a 10/100 Mbs port negotiates to 10 Mbps on the link, it bases its GMB calculations on 10 Mbps, not 100 Mbps.

Use `show bandwidth output <<port-list|trk_#>>` to display the current GMB configuration. (The `show config` and `show running` commands do not include GMB configuration data.)

Example:

For example, suppose you want to configure the following outbound minimum bandwidth availability for ports 1 and 2:

Priority of outbound port queue	Minimum bandwidth %	Effect on outbound bandwidth allocation
8	20%	<p>Queue 8 has the first priority use of all outbound bandwidth not specifically allocated to queues 1 to 7.</p> <p>If, For example, bandwidth allocated to queue 5 is not being used and queues 7 and 8 become oversubscribed, queue 8 has first-priority use of the unused bandwidth allocated to queue 5.</p>
7	15%	<p>Queue 7 has a GMB of 15% available for outbound traffic. If queue 7 becomes oversubscribed and queue 8 is not already using all of the unallocated bandwidth, queue 7 can use the unallocated bandwidth.</p> <p>Also, any unused bandwidth allocated to queues 6 to queue 1 is available to queue 7 if queue 8 has not already claimed it.</p>
6	10%	<p>Queue 6 has a GMB of 10% and, if oversubscribed, is subordinate to queues 8 and 7 in priority for any unused outbound bandwidth available on the port.</p>
5	10%	<p>Queue 5 has a GMB of 10% and, if oversubscribed, is subordinate to queues 8, 7, and 6 for any unused outbound bandwidth available on the port.</p>
4	10%	<p>Queue 4 has a GMB of 10% and, if oversubscribed, is subordinate to queues, 8, 7, 6, and 5 for any unused outbound bandwidth available on the port.</p>
3	30%	<p>Queue 3 has a GMB of 30% and, if oversubscribed, is subordinate to queues, 8, 7, 6, 5, and 4 for any unused outbound bandwidth available on the port.</p>
2	3%	<p>Queue 2 has a GMB of 3% and, if oversubscribed, is subordinate to queues, 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, and 3 for any unused outbound bandwidth available on the port.</p>
1	2%	<p>Queue 1 has a GMB of 2% and, if oversubscribed, is subordinate to all the other queues for any unused outbound bandwidth available on the port.</p>

Either of the following commands configures ports 1 through 5 with bandwidth settings:

```
Switch(config) # int 1-5 bandwidth-min output 2 3 30 10 10 10 15 strict
Switch(interface 1-5) # bandwidth-min output 2 3 30 10 10 10 15 strict
```

Viewing the current GMB configuration

This command displays the per-port GMB configuration in the `running-config` file.

Syntax:

```
show bandwidth output <port-list|trk_#>
```

Without `<port-list|trk_#>` , this command lists the GMB configuration for all ports and static trunks on the switch.

With `<port-list|trk_#>` , this command lists the GMB configuration for the specified ports and static trunks.

This command operates the same way in any CLI context. If the command lists `Disabled` for a port or trunk, there are no bandwidth minimums configured for any queue on the port or trunk. (See the description of the `no bandwidth-min output` command.)

Listing the GMB configuration on page 233 displays the GMB configuration resulting from either of the above commands.

Listing the GMB configuration

```
switch(config)# show bandwidth output 1-5, trk1
Outbound Guaranteed Minimum Bandwidth %
Port    Q1    Q2      Q3    Q4      Q5    Q6    Q7    Q8
-----
1        2    3        30    10      10    10    15    strict
2        2    3        30    10      10    10    15    strict
3        2    3        30    10      10    10    15    strict
4        2    3        30    10      10    10    15    strict
5        2    3        30    10      10    10    15    strict
Trk1     2    3        30    10      10    10    15    strict
```

GMB operating notes

Impact of QoS queue configuration on GMB commands

Changing the number of queues causes the GMB commands (`interface bandwidth-min` and `show bandwidth output`) to operate only on the number of queues currently configured. In addition, when the `qos queue-config` command is executed, any previously configured `bandwidth-min output` settings are removed from the startup configuration. For the default GMB percentage allocations per number of queues, see **Default GMB percentage allocations per QoS queue configuration**.

Rate-limiting Unknown Unicast Traffic

Unknown unicast traffic consists of unicast packets with unknown destination MAC addresses. The switch floods the unicast packets to all interfaces that are members of the VLAN. An attacker can bring down the network by sending out packets to random destination MAC addresses and hence it is important to rate limit traffic with unknown destination addresses.

You can rate limit the unknown unicast traffic per port level in either percent or kbps mode.

rate-limit unknown-unicast in percent

Syntax

```
interface port-list rate-limit unknown-unicast in percent 0-100
```

Description

Sets a rate limit for unicast flood traffic.

Command context

interface

Parameters

in

Sets a rate limit for incoming unicast flood traffic.

percent

Specifies the rate limit as a percentage of the total available bandwidth.

kbps

Specifies the rate limit in Kb/s.

Examples

```
switch(config)# int 2
switch(eth-2)# rate-limit
all                Set a rate limit for all traffic.
bcast              Set a rate limit for broadcast traffic.
icmp               Set a rate limit for ICMP traffic.
mcast              Set a rate limit for multicast traffic.
queues             Set a rate limit for each traffic queue.
unknown-unicast    Set a rate limit for unicast flood traffic.
switch(eth-2)# rate-limit unknown-unicast
in                  Set a rate limit for incoming unicast flood traffic.
switch(eth-2)# rate-limit unknown-unicast in
kbps
percent
switch(eth-2)# rate-limit unknown-unicast in percent 10
switch(eth-2)# show rate-limit
  bcast              Show broadcast traffic rate limits.
  icmp               Show ICMP traffic rate limits.
  mcast              Show multicast traffic rate limits.
  queues             Show limits for outgoing queue traffic.
  unknown-unicast    Show unicast flood traffic rate limits.
switch(eth-2)# show rate-limit unknown-unicast
[ethernet] PORT-LIST The ports to show information for.

switch(eth-2)# show rate-limit unknown-unicast 2

Unknown-Unicast Traffic Rate Limit Maximum %

Port  | Inbound Limit Mode
-----+-----
2     | 10                %
```

rate-limit unknown-unicast in kbps

Syntax

```
interface port-list rate-limit unknown-unicast in kbps rate
```

Description

Sets a rate limit for unicast flood traffic.

Command context

interface

Parameters

in

Sets a rate limit for incoming unicast flood traffic.

percent

Specifies the rate limit as a percentage of the total available bandwidth.

kbps

Specifies the rate limit in Kb/s.

Examples

```
switch(config)# int 1
switch(eth-1)# rate-limit
all                Set a rate limit for all traffic.
bcast              Set a rate limit for broadcast traffic.
icmp               Set a rate limit for ICMP traffic.
mcast              Set a rate limit for multicast traffic.
queues             Set a rate limit for each traffic queue.
unknown-unicast    Set a rate limit for unicast flood traffic.
switch(eth-1)# rate-limit unknown-unicast
in                  Set a rate limit for incoming unicast flood traffic.
switch(eth-1)# rate-limit unknown-unicast in
kbps
percent
switch(eth-1)# rate-limit unknown-unicast in kbps 100
switch(eth-1)# show rate-limit
all                Show total traffic rate limits.
bcast              Show broadcast traffic rate limits.
icmp               Show ICMP traffic rate limits.
mcast              Show multicast traffic rate limits.
queues             Show limits for outgoing queue traffic.
unknown-unicast    Show unicast flood traffic rate limits.
switch(eth-1)# show rate-limit unknown-unicast
```

Unknown-Unicast Traffic Rate Limit Maximum %

Port	Inbound Limit	Mode
-----	+	-----
1	100	kbps
2	Disabled	Disabled
3	Disabled	Disabled
4	Disabled	Disabled
5	Disabled	Disabled
6	Disabled	Disabled
7	Disabled	Disabled
8	Disabled	Disabled
9	Disabled	Disabled
10	Disabled	Disabled
11	Disabled	Disabled
12	Disabled	Disabled
13	Disabled	Disabled
14	Disabled	Disabled
15	Disabled	Disabled
16	Disabled	Disabled

show rate-limit unknown-unicast

Syntax

```
show rate-limit unknown-unicast
```

Description

Displays the per port rate limit configuration.

Command context

interface

Parameters

ethernet <port-list>

To view the rate limit configuration for the specified port.

Examples

```
switch(eth-2)# show rate-limit unknown-unicast
```

Unknown-Unicast Traffic Rate Limit Maximum %

Port	Inbound Limit	Mode
1	10	kbps
2	10	%
3	Disabled	Disabled
4	Disabled	Disabled
5	Disabled	Disabled
6	Disabled	Disabled
7	Disabled	Disabled
8	Disabled	Disabled
9	Disabled	Disabled
10	Disabled	Disabled
11	Disabled	Disabled
12	Disabled	Disabled
13	Disabled	Disabled
14	Disabled	Disabled
15	Disabled	Disabled
16	Disabled	Disabled
17	Disabled	Disabled
18	Disabled	Disabled

Jumbo frames

The maximum transmission unit(MTU) is the maximum size IP frame the switch can receive for Layer 2 frames inbound on a port. The switch drops any inbound frames larger than the MTU allowed on the port. Ports operating at a minimum of 1 Gbps can accept forward frames of up to 9220 bytes (including four bytes for a VLAN tag) when configured for jumbo traffic. You can enable inbound jumbo frames on a per-VLAN basis. That is, on a VLAN configured for jumbo traffic, all ports belonging to that VLAN and **operating** at a minimum of 1 Gbps allow inbound jumbo frames of up to 9220 bytes.

Operating rules

- **Required port speed:** This feature allows inbound and outbound jumbo frames on ports operating at a minimum of 1 Gbps.
- **GVRP operation:** A VLAN enabled for jumbo traffic cannot be used to create a dynamic VLAN. A port belonging to a statically configured, jumbo-enabled VLAN cannot join a dynamic VLAN.
- **Port adds and moves:** If you add a port to a VLAN that is already configured for jumbo traffic, the switch enables that port to receive jumbo traffic. If you remove a port from a jumbo-enabled VLAN, the switch

disables jumbo traffic capability on the port only if the port is not currently a member of another jumbo-enabled VLAN. This same operation applies to port trunks.

- **Jumbo traffic sources:** A port belonging to a jumbo-enabled VLAN can receive inbound jumbo frames through any VLAN to which it belongs, including non-jumbo VLANs. For example, if VLAN 10 (without jumbos enabled) and VLAN 20 (with jumbos enabled) are both configured on a switch, and port 1 belongs to both VLANs, port 1 can receive jumbo traffic from devices on either VLAN. For a method to allow only some ports in a VLAN to receive jumbo traffic, see [Configuring a maximum frame size](#) on page 240.

Jumbo traffic-handling

- Configuring a voice VLAN to accept jumbo frames is not recommended. Voice VLAN frames are typically small, and allowing a voice VLAN to accept jumbo frame traffic can degrade the voice transmission performance.
- You can configure the default, primary, and/or (if configured) the management VLAN to accept jumbo frames on all ports belonging to the VLAN.
- When the switch applies the default MTU (1522-bytes including 4 bytes for the VLAN tag) to a VLAN, all ports in the VLAN can receive incoming frames of up to 1522 bytes. When the switch applies the jumbo MTU (9220 bytes including 4 bytes for the VLAN tag) to a VLAN, all ports in that VLAN can receive incoming frames of up to 9220 bytes. A port receiving frames exceeding the applicable MTU drops such frames, causing the switch to generate an Event Log message and increment the "Giant Rx" counter (displayed by `show interfaces <port-list>`).
- The switch allows flow control and jumbo frame capability to co-exist on a port.
- The default MTU is 1522 bytes (including 4 bytes for the VLAN tag). The jumbo MTU is 9220 bytes (including 4 bytes for the VLAN tag).
- When a port is not a member of any jumbo-enabled VLAN, it drops all jumbo traffic. If the port is receiving "excessive" inbound jumbo traffic, the port generates an Event Log message to notify you of this condition. This same condition also increments the switch's "Giant Rx" counter.
- If you do not want all ports in a given VLAN to accept jumbo frames, you can consider creating one or more jumbo VLANs with a membership comprising only the ports you want to receive jumbo traffic. Because a port belonging to one jumbo-enabled VLAN can receive jumbo frames through any VLAN to which it belongs, this method enables you to include both jumbo-enabled and non-jumbo ports within the same VLAN.

For example, suppose you want to allow inbound jumbo frames only on ports 6, 7, 12, and 13. However, these ports are spread across VLAN 100 and VLAN 200 and also share these VLANs with other ports you want excluded from jumbo traffic. A solution is to create a third VLAN with the sole purpose of enabling jumbo traffic on the desired ports, while leaving the other ports on the switch disabled for jumbo traffic. That is:

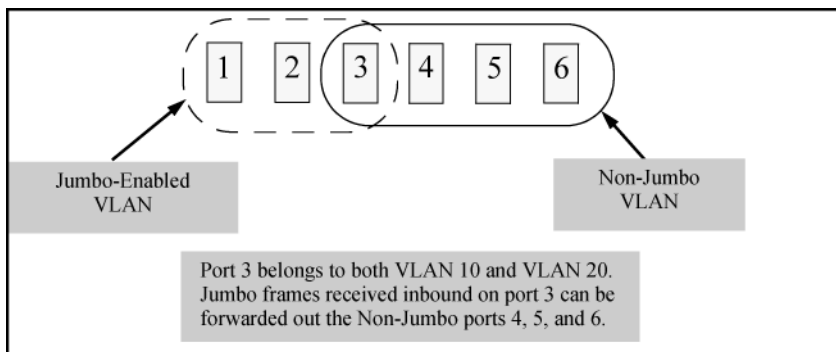
	VLAN 100	VLAN 200	VLAN 300
Ports	6-10	11-15	6, 7, 12, and 13
Jumbo-enabled?	No	No	Yes

If there are security concerns with grouping the ports as shown for VLAN 300, you can either use source-port filtering to block unwanted traffic paths or create separate jumbo VLANs, one for ports 6 and 7, and another for ports 12 and 13.

- **Outbound jumbo traffic.** Any port operating at 1 Gbps or higher can transmit outbound jumbo frames through any VLAN, regardless of the jumbo configuration. The VLAN is not required to be jumbo-enabled, and the port is not required to belong to any other, jumbo-enabled VLANs. This can occur in situations where a non-jumbo VLAN includes some ports that do not belong to another, jumbo-enabled VLAN and some ports that do belong to another, jumbo-enabled VLAN. In this case, ports capable of receiving jumbo frames can forward them to

the ports in the VLAN that do not have jumbo capability, as shown in **Figure 51: Forwarding jumbo frames through non-jumbo ports** on page 238.

Figure 51: Forwarding jumbo frames through non-jumbo ports



Jumbo frames can also be forwarded out non-jumbo ports when the jumbo frames received inbound on a jumbo-enabled VLAN are routed to another, non-jumbo VLAN for outbound transmission on ports that have no memberships in other, jumbo-capable VLANs. Where either of the above scenarios is a possibility, the downstream device must be configured to accept the jumbo traffic. Otherwise, this traffic will be dropped by the downstream device.

Configuring jumbo frame operation

For detailed information about jumbo frames, see **Jumbo frames** on page 236.

Overview

1. Determine the VLAN membership of the ports or trunks through which you want the switch to accept inbound jumbo traffic. For operation with GVRP enabled, refer to the GVRP topic under “Operating Rules”, above.
2. Ensure that the ports through which you want the switch to receive jumbo frames are operating at least at gigabit speed. (Check the Mode field in the output for the `show interfaces brief <port-list>` command.)
3. Use the `jumbo` command to enable jumbo frames on one or more VLANs statically configured in the switch. (All ports belonging to a jumbo-enabled VLAN can receive jumbo frames.)
4. Execute `write memory` to save your configuration changes to the `startupconfig` file.

Viewing the current jumbo configuration

Syntax:

```
show vlans
```

Lists the static VLANs configured on the switch and includes a Jumbo column to indicate which VLANs are configured to support inbound jumbo traffic. All ports belonging to a jumbo-enabled VLAN can receive jumbo

traffic. (For more information, see [Configuring a maximum frame size](#) on page 240.) See Figure **Figure 52: Example: listing of static VLANs to show jumbo status per VLAN** on page 239.

Figure 52: Example: listing of static VLANs to show jumbo status per VLAN

```
Switch(config)# show vlans
Status and Counters - VLAN Information

Maximum VLANs to support : 256
Primary VLAN : DEFAULT_VLAN
Management VLAN :
```

VLAN ID	Name	Status	Voice	Jumbo
1	DEFAULT_VLAN	Port-based	No	Yes
5	VLAN5	Port-based	No	No
22	VLAN22	Port-based	No	No

Indicates which static VLANs are configured to enable jumbo frames.

Syntax:

```
show vlans ports <port-list>
```

Lists the static VLANs to which the specified ports belong, including the `Jumbo` column to indicate which VLANs are configured to support jumbo traffic.

Entering only one port in `<port-list>` results in a list of all VLANs to which that port belongs.

Entering multiple ports in `<port-list>` results in a superset list that includes the VLAN memberships of all ports in the list, even though the individual ports in the list may belong to different subsets of the complete VLAN listing.

Example:

If port 1 belongs to VLAN 1, port 2 belongs to VLAN 10, and port 3 belongs to VLAN 15, executing this command with a `port-list` of `1 - 3` results in a listing of all three VLANs, even though none of the ports belong to all three VLANs. (See [Figure 53: Listing the VLAN memberships for a range of ports](#) on page 239.)

Figure 53: Listing the VLAN memberships for a range of ports

```
Switch(config)# show vlans ports A1-A3
Status and Counters - VLAN Information - for ports A1-A3
```

VLAN ID	Name	Status	Voice	Jumbo
1	DEFAULT_VLAN	Port-based	No	Yes
10	VLAN10	Port-based	No	No
15	VLAN15	Port-based	No	No

Indicates which static VLANs are configured to enable jumbo frames.

Syntax:

```
show vlans <vid>
```

Shows port membership and jumbo configuration for the specified *vid* . (See **Figure 54: Example: of listing the port membership and jumbo status for a VLAN** on page 240.)

Figure 54: Example: of listing the port membership and jumbo status for a VLAN

```
Switch(config)#_show vlan 100
Status and Counters - VLAN Information - VLAN 100
VLAN ID : 100
Name : VLAN100
Status : Port-based Voice : No
Jumbo : No
```

Port	Information Mode	Unknown VLAN	Status
A1	Tagged	Learn	Up
A2	Tagged	Learn	Up
A3	Tagged	Learn	Up
A4	Tagged	Learn	Down
A5	Tagged	Learn	Up

Enabling or disabling jumbo traffic on a VLAN

Syntax:

```
vlan <vid> jumbo
```

```
[no] vlan <vid> jumbo
```

Configures the specified VLAN to allow jumbo frames on all ports on the switch that belong to that VLAN. If the VLAN is not already configured on the switch, `vlan <vid> jumbo` also creates the VLAN.

A port belonging to one jumbo VLAN can receive jumbo frames through any other VLAN statically configured on the switch, regardless of whether the other VLAN is enabled for jumbo frames.

The `[no]` form of the command disables inbound jumbo traffic on all ports in the specified VLAN that do not also belong to another VLAN that is enabled for jumbo traffic. In a VLAN context, the command forms are `jumbo` and `no jumbo`.

(Default: Jumbos disabled on the specified VLAN.)

Configuring a maximum frame size

You can globally set a maximum frame size for jumbo frames that will support values from 1518 bytes to 9216 bytes for untagged frames.

Syntax:

```
jumbo max-frame-size <size>
```

Sets the maximum frame size for jumbo frames. The range is from 1518 bytes to 9216 bytes. (Default: 9216 bytes)



NOTE:

The `jumbo max-frame-size` is set on a GLOBAL level.

Default: 9216 bytes

Configuring IP MTU



NOTE:

The following feature is available on the switches covered in this guide. `jumbos` support is required for this feature. On switches that do not support this command, the IP MTU value is derived from the maximum frame size and is not configurable.

You can set the IP MTU globally by entering this command. The value of `max-frame-size` must be greater than or equal to 18 bytes more than the value selected for `ip-mtu`. For example, if `ip-mtu` is set to 8964, the `max-frame-size` is configured as 8982.

Syntax:

```
jumbo ip-mtu <size>
```

Globally sets the IP MTU size. Values range between 1500 and 9198 bytes. This value must be 18 bytes less than the value of `max-frame-size`.

(Default: 9198 bytes)

SNMP implementation

Jumbo maximum frame size

The maximum frame size for jumbos is supported with the following proprietary MIB object:

```
hpSwitchMaxFrameSize OBJECT-TYPE
```

This is the value of the global `max-frame-size` supported by the switch. The default value is set to 9216 bytes.

Jumbo IP MTU

The IP MTU for jumbos is supported with the following proprietary MIB object:

```
hpSwitchIpMTU OBJECT-TYPE
```

This is the value of the global jumbos IP MTU (or L3 MTU) supported by the switch. The default value is set to 9198 bytes (a value that is 18 bytes less than the largest possible maximum frame size of 9216 bytes). This object can be used only in switches that support `max-frame-size` and `ip-mtu` configuration.

Displaying the maximum frame size

Use the `show jumbos` command to display the globally configured untagged maximum frame size for the switch, as shown in the following Example:

```
switch(config)# show jumbos
```

```
Jumbos Global Values
```

```
Configured : MaxFrameSize : 9216   Ip-MTU : 9198
In Use      : MaxFrameSize : 9216   Ip-MTU : 9198
```

For more information about frame size, see [Jumbo frames](#) on page 236.

Operating notes for maximum frame size

- When you set a maximum frame size for jumbo frames, it must be on a global level. You cannot use the `jumbo max-frame-size` command on a per-port or per-VLAN basis.
- The original way to configure jumbo frames remains the same, which is per-VLAN, but you cannot set a maximum frame size per-VLAN.
- Jumbo support must be enabled for a VLAN from the CLI or through SNMP.

- Setting the maximum frame size does not require a reboot.
- When you upgrade to a version of software that supports setting the maximum frame size from a version that did not, the `max-frame-size` value is set automatically to 9216 bytes.
- Configuring a jumbo maximum frame size on a VLAN allows frames up to `max-frame-size` even though other VLANs of which the port is a member are not enabled for jumbo support.

Troubleshooting

A VLAN is configured to allow jumbo frames, but one or more ports drops all inbound jumbo frames

The port may not be operating at a minimum of 1 Gbps on the other switches covered in this guide. Regardless of a port's configuration, if it is actually operating at a speed lower than 1 Gbps for the other switches, it drops inbound jumbo frames. For example, if a port is configured for `Auto` mode (`speed-duplex auto`), but has negotiated a 7 Mbps speed with the device at the other end of the link, the port cannot receive inbound jumbo frames. To determine the actual operating speed of one or more ports, view the `Mode` field in the output for the following command:

```
show interfaces brief <port-list>
```

A non-jumbo port is generating "Excessive undersize/giant frames" messages in the Event Log

The switches can transmit outbound jumbo traffic on any port, regardless of whether the port belongs to a jumbo VLAN. In this case, another port in the same VLAN on the switch may be jumbo-enabled through membership in a different, jumbo-enabled VLAN, and may be forwarding jumbo frames received on the jumbo VLAN to non-jumbo ports.

Fault Finder

Fault Finder is a feature that helps administrators to debug unusual network activity such as flapping links or transceivers or to troubleshoot issues such as multicast or broadcast storms. Fault Finder helps in preventing network loops and taking care of situations that arise out of defective equipment and malicious attacks.

The following is the list of issues detected by the Fault Finder:

- Excessive CRC/alignment errors (bad cable)
- Excessive flapping of transceivers (bad transceiver)
- Too many undersized/giant packets (bad driver)
- Excessive late collisions (cable too long)
- High collision or drop rate (over bandwidth)
- Excessive broadcast packets (broadcast storm)
- Excessive multicast packets (multicast storm)
- Duplex mismatch (duplex mismatch HDx - reconfigure to Full Duplex)
- Duplex mismatch (duplex mismatch FDx - reconfigure port to Auto)
- Rapid detection of link faults and recoveries (link flap)
- Link loss detection (loss of link)



NOTE: Fault finder is also known as FFI (find-fix-inform).

Fault Finder thresholds

Switches feature automatic fault detection, which helps protect against network loops and defective equipment. The fault detection sensitivity setting determines the types of alerts reported to the Alert Log based on their level of severity or sensitivity. The sensitivity levels are:

- **High Sensitivity.**

This policy directs the switch to send all alerts to the Alert Log. This setting is most effective on networks that have none or few problems.

- **Medium Sensitivity.** This policy directs the switch to send alerts related to network problems to the Alert Log. If you want to be notified of problems which cause a noticeable slowdown on the network, use this setting.
- **Low Sensitivity.** This policy directs the switch to send only the most severe alerts to the Alert Log. This policy is most effective on a network where there are normally a lot of problems and you want to be informed of only the most severe ones
- **Disabled.** Disables the Alert Log and transmission of alerts (traps) to the management server (in cases where a network management tool such as ProCurve Manager is in use). Use this option when you don't want to use the Alert Log.

Enabling Fault Finder

Enter this CLI command to enable fault detection:

Syntax:

```
[no] fault-finder [fault][sensitivity <low|medium|high>][action <warn|warn-and-disable>]
```

Enables or disables Fault Finder and sets sensitivity.

When the `warn-and-disable` action option is configured, Fault Finder may also shut down a bad port in addition to sending an alert to the Alert Log.

Default setting: `fault-finder sensitivity medium action warn`

[fault]: Supported values are:

- `all`: All fault types
- `bad-driver`: Too many undersized/giant packets
- `bad-transceiver`: Excessive jabbering
- `bad-cable`: Excessive CRC/alignment errors
- `too-long-cable`: Excessive late collisions
- `over-bandwidth`: High collision or drop rate
- `broadcast-storm`: Excessive broadcasts
- `duplex-mismatch-HDx`: Duplex mismatch. Reconfigure to Full Duplex
- `duplex-mismatch-FDx`: Duplex mismatch. Reconfigure port to Auto

- `link-flap`: Rapid detection of link faults and recoveries
- `loss-of-link`: Link loss detected. (Sensitivity not applicable)

Examples:

To set Fault Finder with a `high` sensitivity to issue a warning and then disable a port on which there is a high collision or drop rate, you could configure these options:

```
switch(config)# fault-finder over-bandwidth sensitivity
high action warn-and-disable
```

To set Fault Finder with a `medium` sensitivity to issue a warning about excessive CRC or alignment errors on a port, you could configure these options:

```
switch(config)# fault-finder bad-cable sensitivity
medium action warn
```

To set Fault Finder with a `low` sensitivity to issue a warning about rapid detection of link faults, you could configure these options:

```
switch(config)# fault-finder link-flap sensitivity
low action warn
```

To disable Fault Finder, enter this command:

```
switch(config)# no fault-finder all
```

Table 17: Fault finder sensitivities for supported conditions

Condition triggering fault finder	Sensitivities			Units (in packets)	Time period	Fault finder reacts:
	High	Medium	Low			
Bad driver — Too many under-sized packets or too many giant packets	6	21	36	1/10,000 Incoming	20 secs	If (undersized/total) >= (sensitivity/10,000) Or if (giant/total) >= (sensitivity/10,000)
Bad transceiver — Excessive jabbering - Jabbers: (Jabbers are packets longer than the MTU) - Fragments: (packets shorter than they should be)	65	2110	3614	1/10,000 Incoming One Fragments	20 secs 20 secs	If (jabbers/total) >= (sensitivity/10,000) Or If fragment count in the last 20 seconds >= sensitivity

Table Continued

Condition triggering fault finder	Sensitivities			Units (in packets)	Time period	Fault finder reacts:
Bad cable — Excessive CRC/alignment errors	6	21	36	1/10,000 Incoming	20 secs	If (CRC and alignment errors/ total) \geq (sensitivity/ 10,000)
Too Long Cable — Excessive late collisions (a late collision error occurs after the first 512 bit times)	6	21	36	1/10,000 Outgoing	20 secs	If (late collisions/ total) \geq (sensitivity/ 10,000)
Over bandwidth - High collision rate -High drop rate	665	21257	36449	1/10,000 OutgoingOne Packet	5 mins5 mins	If (excessive collisions/ total) \geq (sensitivity/ 10,000)The count of dropped packets \geq sensitivity during the last 5 minutes.
Broadcast storm — Excessive broadcasts	1475	5000	8525	One Broadcast Packet	1 sec	If the average per second of broadcast packets in the last 20 seconds \geq sensitivity
Multicast storm — Excessive multicasts	1475	5000	8525	One Multicast Packet	1 sec	If the average per second of multicast packets in the last 20 seconds \geq sensitivity
Duplex mismatch HDx	6	21	36	1/10,000 Outgoing	20 sec	If (late collisions/ total) \geq (sensitivity/ 10,000)

Table Continued

Condition triggering fault finder	Sensitivities			Units (in packets)	Time period	Fault finder reacts:
Duplex mismatch FDx	6	21	36	1/10,000 Incoming	20 sec	If (CRC and alignment errors/ total) \geq (sensitivity/ 10,000)
Link flap — Excessive transitions between link-up and link-down states.	4	7	11	One Transitions	10 secs	If the Transition count in the last 10s \geq sensitivity.

Example: of sensitivity calculation:

If a sensitivity is set to High, and a bad cable is causing 15 CRC errors out of a total of 3500 packets transmitted in a 20 second period:

1. CRC errors/total must be \geq (sensitivity/10,000) to trigger an alert.
2. CRC errors/total = $15/3500 = .00043$
3. Sensitivity/10,000 = $6/10,000 = .0006$
4. $.00043$ is not greater than or equal to $.0006$, so an alert is not triggered.

Configuring the switch to filter untagged traffic

Enter this command to configure the switch not to learn CDP, LLDP, or EAPOL traffic for a set of interfaces.

ignore-untagged-mac

Syntax

```
ignore-untagged-mac <PORT-LIST>
```

Description

Prevents MAC addresses from being learned on the specified ports when the VLAN is untagged and the destination MAC address is one of the following:

- 01000C-CCCCC (CDP)
- 0180c2- 00000e (LLDP)
- 0180c2-000003 (EAPOL)

ignore packet MAC

Configuring the switch to ignore packet MAC address learns for an untagged VLAN.

```
switch(config) ignore-untagged-mac 1-2
```

Viewing configuration file change information

show running-config

Syntax

```
show running-config [changes-history <1-32>] [detail]
```

Description

Displays the history of changes made to the running-configuration file.

Parameters

changes-history

Shows up to 32 events and displays changes in descending order (the most recent change at the top of the list). You can specify from 1 to 32 entries for display.

detail

Displays a more detailed amount of information for the configuration changes.

Configuration change output

Figure 55: Output for running configuration changes history for all ports

```
Switch(config)# show running-config changes-history

Running Config Last Changed    : 02/19/10 16:30:09
Number of Changes Since Reboot : 150086

Event ID   Config
-----
150086     CLI      02/19/10 16:30:09
150085     SNMP      02/03/10 14:50:12
150084     SNMP      02/03/10 14:50:12
150083     SNMP      02/03/10 14:45:59
150082     SNMP      02/03/10 14:27:15
150081     SNMP      02/03/10 13:11:00
150080     SNMP      02/03/10 13:11:00
150079     CLI      01/18/10 09:09:17
```

Figure 56: Example of output for running config changes history with detail

```
Switch(config)# show running-config changes-history detail

Running Config Last Changed: 01/01/90 00:35:44
Number of changes since last boot : 6

Event ID      : 6
User          :
Remote IP Address :
Config Method : CLI
Date          : 01/01/90
Time          : 00:35:44

Event ID      : 5
User          :
Remote IP Address :
Config Method : CLI
Date          : 01/01/90
Time          : 00:35:39

Event ID      : 4
User          :
Remote IP Address :
Config Method : CLI
Date          : 01/01/90
Time          : 00:35:33

Event ID      : 3
User          :
Remote IP Address :
Config Method : CLI
Date          : 01/01/90
Time          : 00:35:27
```

Current status of SNMP trap type

Figure 57: *SNMP trap configuration status information*

```
Switch(config)# show snmp-server traps
```

Trap Receivers	
Link-Change Traps Enabled on Ports [All] : All	
Traps Category	Current Status
-----	-----
SNMP Authentication	: Extended
Password change	: Enabled
Login failures	: Enabled
Port-Security	: Enabled
Authorization Server Contact	: Enabled
DHCP-Snooping	: Enabled
Dynamic ARP Protection	: Enabled
Dynamic IP Lockdown	: Enabled
Running Configuration Changes	: Enabled

SNMP trap status for running-config changes is enabled.

Address	Community	Events	Type	Retry	Timeout
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
173.33.25.201	public	None	trap	3	15

Excluded MIBs

Minimal interval for successive data change notifications

setmib

Syntax

```
setmib lldpnotificationinterval.0 -i 1 - 3600
```

Description

Change the minimum interval for successive data change notifications for the same neighbor. Globally changes the interval between successive traps generated by the switch. If multiple traps are generated in the specified interval, only the first trap is sent. The remaining traps are suppressed. (A network management application can periodically check the switch MIB to detect any missed change notification traps. See IEEE P802.1AB or later for more information.)

(Default: 5 seconds)

Limiting change notification traps

The following command limits change notification traps from a particular switch to one per minute.

```
switch# setmib lldpnotificationinterval.0 -i 60 lldpNotificationInterval.0=60
```

Viewing the current port speed and duplex configuration on a switch port

show interfaces

Syntax

```
show interfaces [brief | config | custom | display | port-utilization | transceiver | status |  
tunnel | ethernet <PORT-LIST>]
```

Description

Show port configuration and status information.

Parameters

brief

Show port operational parameters.

config

Show port configuration information.

custom

Show port parameters in a customized table.

display

Show summary of network traffic handled by the ports.

internal-use

Show reserved or eligible internal ports.

[ethernet] <PORT-LIST>

Show summary of network traffic handled by the ports.

port-utilization

Show port bandwidth utilization.

status

Show interfaces tagged or untagged VLAN information.

transceiver

Show the transceiver information.

tunnel

Show tunnel configuration and status information.

Show interfaces

```
switch# show interfaces
```

```
Status and Counters - Port Counters
```

Port	Total Bytes	Total Frames	Errors Rx	Drops Tx	Flow Ctrl	Bcast Limit
A1	419,179	1555	0	0	off	0
A2	4217	24	0	0	off	0
A3	0	0	0	0	off	0
A4	0	0	0	0	off	0
A5	0	0	0	0	off	0
A6	0	0	0	0	off	0
A7	0	0	0	0	off	0
A8	0	0	0	0	off	0

A9	0	0	0	0	off	0
A10	0	0	0	0	off	0
A11	0	0	0	0	off	0
A12	0	0	0	0	off	0
A13	0	0	0	0	off	0
A14	0	0	0	0	off	0
A15	0	0	0	0	off	0
A16	0	0	0	0	off	0
A17	0	0	0	0	off	0
A18	0	0	0	0	off	0
A19	0	0	0	0	off	0
A20	0	0	0	0	off	0
A21	3846	21	0	0	off	0
A22	3855	19	0	0	off	0

MACsec Port Counters:

Port	Errors Rx	Drops Tx
-----	-----	-----
A2	0	0

Viewing the configuration

show running-config

Syntax

```
show running-config
```

Description

Displays information about the configuration.

Example

show running-config

Configuration showing interfaces to ignore packet MAC address learns.

```
switch(config) show running-config
Running configuration:
; J9627 Configuration Editor; Created on release K.15.XX
; Ver #03:03.1f.ef:f0
hostname "Switch"
interface 1
ignore-untagged-mac
exit
interface 2
ignore-untagged-mac
exit
...
vlan 1
name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
untagged 1-24
ip address dhcp-bootp
exit
```

RMON advanced management

The switch supports RMON (remote monitoring) on all connected network segments. This allows for troubleshooting and optimizing your network.

The following RMON groups are supported:

- Ethernet Statistics (except the numbers of packets of different frame sizes)
- Alarm
- History (of the supported Ethernet statistics)
- Event

The RMON agent automatically runs in the switch. Use the RMON management station on your network to enable or disable specific RMON traps and events. Note that you can access the Ethernet statistics, Alarm, and Event groups from the Switch Manager network management software.

The CLI supports the configuration of RMON alarm threshold settings. The settings can be saved in the configuration file.

rmon alarm

Syntax

```
[no] rmon alarm entry number alarm-variable sampling-interval absolute | delta  
rising-threshold threshold-value1 falling-threshold2 threshold-value2 owner string
```

Description

This command configures RMON sampling periods and threshold parameters.

Parameters

no

Removes the alarm entry.

entry number <1–65535>

An alarm number that uniquely identifies the alarm threshold entry.

alarm-variable <object-string>

Object identifier of the particular variable to be sampled. Variables must be of type Integer in order to be sampled.

sampling-interval <5-65535>

Time interval in seconds over which data is sampled and compared with the rising-threshold and the falling-threshold.

absolute

The value of the selected variable is compared directly with the thresholds at the end of the sampling interval.



IMPORTANT:

If the absolute option is used for alarm variables of counter-type, an RMON trap is generated only once, when the threshold limit is reached. The RMON trap is never generated again. Hewlett Packard Enterprise recommends using the delta option instead when using a counter-type alarm variable.

delta

The value of the selected variable at the last sample is subtracted from the current value, and the difference is compared with the thresholds.

rising-threshold <threshold-value>

An integer value for the upper threshold for the sampled statistic. A single event is generated when the current sampled value of the specified statistic becomes greater than or equal to this threshold, and if the value at the last sampling intervals was less than this threshold.

The value of the rising-threshold must be greater than the value of the falling-threshold.

falling-threshold <threshold-value2>

An integer value for the lower threshold for the sampled statistic. A single event is generated when the current sampled value of the specified statistic becomes less than or equal to this threshold, and if the value at the last sampling interval was greater than this threshold.

owner <string>

The name of the owner of this alarm.

Using RMON alarm parameters

Figure 58: *Configuring the RMON Alarm Parameters in the CLI*

```
Switch(config)# rmon alarm 1 1.3.6.1.2.1.16.1.1.1.4.1 100 absolute rising-  
threshold 500 falling-threshold 300 owner Joe
```

Figure 59: *Removing an RMON Alarm*

```
Switch(config)# no rmon alarm 1
```

Figure 60: *Show Command Output for a Specific Alarm*

```
Switch(config)# show rmon alarm 1  
  
Alarm table 1 owned by Joe is VALID.  
Sample Type      : absolute  
Object Variable  : 1.3.6.1.2.1.16.1.1.1.4.1 <etherStatsOctets.1>  
  
Sampling Interval : 100(sec)  
Rising Threshold  : 500  
Falling Threshold : 300  
Startup Alarm     : risingOrFallingAlarm  
Last Sampled Value : 2550  
Last Threshold Time : Fri Jun 19 10:03:31 2012
```

Figure 61: *Display Command Output for a Specific Alarm*

```
Switch(config)# display rmon alarm 1  
  
Alarm table 1 owned by Joe is VALID.  
Samples type     : absolute  
Variable formula  : 1.3.6.1.2.1.16.1.1.1.4.1 <etherStatsOctets.1>  
  
Sampling interval : 100(sec)  
Rising threshold  : 500  
Falling threshold : 300  
Startup alarm     : risingOrFallingAlarm  
Latest value      : 2550  
Last threshold time : Fri Jun 19 10:03:31 2012
```

Figure 62: *Output of the running-config File Displaying the Configured RMON Alarm Parameters*

```
Switch(config)# show running-config  
  
Running configuration:  
  
; J9470A Configuration Editor; Created on release #K.15.13.0000x  
; Ver #04:2f.ff.3f.ef:04  
hostname "HP-3500-24"  
module 1 type j94dda  
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted  
snmp-server host 15.255.133.156 community "public"  
snmp-server host 15.255.133.146 community "public"  
vlan 1  
    name "DEFAULT_VLAN"  
    untagged 1-24  
    ip address dhcp-bootp  
    exit  
vlan 2  
    name "VLAN2"  
    ip address 10.10.10.100 255.255.255.0  
    exit  
spanning-tree  
rmon alarm 1 "etherStatsOctets.1" 100 absolute rising-threshold 500  
falling-threshold 300 owner "Joe"
```

Configuring UDLD verify before forwarding

When an UDLD enabled port transitions to link-up, the port will begin with a UDLD blocking state. UDLD will probe via protocol packet exchange to determine the bidirectional state of the link. Until UDLD has completed the probe, all data traffic will be blocked. If the link is found to be bidirectional, UDLD will unblock the port for data traffic to pass. Once UDLD unblocks the port, other protocols will see the port as up and data traffic can be safely forwarded.

The default mode of a switch is “forward first then verify”. Enabling UDLD link-up will default to “forward first then verify”. To change the mode to “verify then forward”, you need to configure using the commands found in section 6.72.



IMPORTANT:

Link-UP data traffic will resumed after probing the link partner completes. All other protocols running will see the port as down.

UDLD time delay

UDLD protocol informs the link partner simultaneously as it detects a state change from unidirectional to bidirectional traffic. Additional packet exchanges will be carried out by UDLD in addition to the existing UDLD exchanges whenever state changes from unidirectional to bidirectional.

Interval 1

5 seconds

With triggered updates: State=blockedPeer; State=blocked

Without triggered updates: State=blockedPeer; State=blocked

Interval 1 + delta

5+(<5) seconds (delta is the time when the unblock event occurs on local side)

With triggered updates: Inform PeerState=unblockedPeer; State=unblocked

Without triggered updates: State=unblockedPeer; State=blocked

Interval 2

10 seconds

With triggered updates: Regular UDLD TX

Without triggered updates: Inform PeerState=unblocked; Peer State=unblocked

Interval 3

15 seconds

With triggered updates: Regular UDLD TX

Without triggered updates: Regular UDLD TX

Restrictions

- There is no support available when configuring this mode from the web and menu interface.
- There are no new packet types are introduced with UDLD.
- There are no new UDLD timers being introduced.

UDLD configuration commands

link-keepalive mode

Syntax

```
link-keepalive mode [verify-then-forward | forward-then-verify]
```

Description

This command configures the link-keepalive mode.

Parameters

verify-then-forward

The port is in a blocking state until the link configured for UDLD establishes bidirectional communication.

forward-then-verify

The port forwards the data then verifies the status of the link-in state. When a unidirectional state is detected, the port is moved to a blocked state. When a bidirectional state is detected, the data is forwarded without interruption.

interval <DECISECONDS>

Configure the interval for link-keepalive. The link-keepalive interval is the time between sending two UDLD packets. The time interval is entered in deciseconds (1/10 sec). For example, a value of 10 is 1 second; 11 is 1.1 seconds. The default keepalive interval is 50 deciseconds.

retries <NUMBER>

Maximum number of sending attempts for UDLD packets before declaring the link as faulty.

Default keepalive attempt is 4.

show link-keepalive

Syntax

```
show link-keepalive
```

Description

Sample output

```
Total link-keepalive enabled ports: 8
Keepalive Retries : 4
Keepalive Interval: 5 sec
Keepalive Mode : verify-then-forward
Physical Keepalive Adjacent UDLD
```

Port	Enabled	Status	Status	Switch	VLAN
1	Yes	down	off-line	000000-000000	untagged
2	Yes	down	off-line	000000-000000	untagged
3	Yes	down	off-line	000000-000000	untagged
4	Yes	down	off-line	000000-000000	untagged
5	Yes	down	off-line	000000-000000	untagged
6	Yes	down	off-line	000000-000000	untagged
7	Yes	down	off-line	000000-000000	untagged
8	Yes	down	off-line	000000-000000	untagged

RMON generated when user changes UDLD mode

RMON events are generated when UDLD is configured. The first time you configure the mode, the UDLD states will be re-initialized. An event log entry is initiated to include the reason for the initial UDLD blocking state during link up.

UDLD mode [verify-then-forward | forward-then-verify] is configured

Severity: - Info.

MAC configurations

Configuring the MAC address count option

The MAC Address Count feature provides a way to notify the switch management system when the number of MAC addresses learned on a switch port exceeds the permitted configurable number.

To enable the mac-count-notify option, enter this command in global config context.

snmp-server mac-count-notify

Syntax

```
[no] snmp-server enable traps mac-count-notify
```

Description

Sends a trap when the number of MAC addresses learned on the specified ports exceeds the configured <learned-count> value.

Parameters

no

Disables mac-count-notify traps.

mac-count-notify

To configure the mac-count-notify option on a port or ports, enter this command. When the configured number of MAC addresses is exceeded (the learned-count), a trap is sent.

traps <PORT-LIST>

Configures mac-count-notify traps on the specified ports for the entire switch. With no <PORT-LIST> specified, configures all ports.

<LEARNED-COUNT>

The number of MAC addresses learned before sending a trap. Values range between 1-128. Defaults to 32.

Usage

```
[no] mac-count-notify traps <PORT-LIST> [<learned-count>]
```

Configuring mac-count notify traps on ports 5–7

```
switch(config)# mac-count-notify traps 5-7 50
```

Configuring the MAC address table change option

When enabled, this feature allows the generation of SNMP traps for each MAC address table change.

Notifications can be generated for each device that connects to a port and for devices that are connected through another device (daisy-chained.)

The `snmp-server enable traps mac-notify` command globally enables the generation of SNMP trap notifications upon MAC address table changes.

snmp-server mac-notify

Syntax

```
[no] snmp-server enable traps mac-notify [mac-move | trap-interval <0- 120>]
```

Description

Globally enables or disables generation of SNMP trap notifications.

Parameters

trap-interval

The time interval (in seconds) that trap notifications are sent. A value of zero disables the interval and traps are sent as events occur. If the switch is busy, notifications can be sent prior to the configured interval. Notifications may be dropped in extreme instances and a system warning is logged. The range is 0-120 seconds. Default: 30 seconds.

mac-move

Configures the switch to capture data for MAC addresses that are moved from one port to another port. The `snmp-server enable traps mac-notify` command must have been enabled in order for this information to be sent as an SNMP notification.

trap-interval

```
switch(config)# snmp-server enable traps mac-notify trap-interval 60
```

mac-move

```
switch(config)# snmp-server enable traps mac-notify mac-move
```

mac-notify at the interface context level

You can also execute the `mac-notify traps` command from the interface context.

```
switch# int 11
switch(int-11)# mac-notify traps learned
```

Per-port MAC change options for mac-notify

mac-notify traps

Syntax

```
[no] mac-notify traps <PORT-LIST>[learned | removed]
```

Description

Configure SNMP traps for learned or removed MAC addresses on a per-port basis.

The switch captures learned or removed events on the selected ports, but does not send an SNMP trap unless you have enabled mac-notify with the `snmp-server enable traps mac-notify` command.



IMPORTANT:

When this command is executed without the learned or removed option, it enables or disables the capture of both learned and removed MAC address table changes for the selected ports in *<PORT-LIST>*.

Parameters

learned

Enables the capture of learned MAC address table changes on the selected ports.

removed

Enables the capture of removed MAC address table changes table on the selected ports.

Options

<PORT-LIST>

Configures MAC address table changes capture on the specified ports. Use all to capture changes for all ports on the switch.

Configuring traps on a per-port basis for learned MAC addresses

```
switch# mac-notify traps 5-6 learned
switch# show mac-notify traps 5-6
Mac Notify Trap Information
Mac-notify Enabled : Yes
Mac-move Enabled : Yes
Trap-interval : 60
Port      MAC Addresses      trap learned/removed
-----
5         Learned
6         Learned
```

Configuring traps on a port-bases for removed MAC addresses

```
switch# mac-notify traps 3-4 removed
switch(config)# show mac-notify traps
Mac Notify Trap Information
Mac-notify Enabled : Yes
Mac-move Enabled : Yes
Trap-interval : 60
Port      MAC Addresses      trap learned/removed
-----
1         None
2         None
3         Removed
4         Removed
```

Viewing the mac-count-notify option

show mac-count-notify

Syntax

```
show mac-count-notify traps [<PORT-LIST>]
```

Description

Displays information about the configured value for sending a trap, the current count, and if a trap has been sent.

Command output

```
switch(config)# show mac-count-notify traps
```

Mac-count-notify Enabled: Yes

Port	Count for sending Trap	Count	Trap Sent
1			
2			
3			
4			
5	50	0	No
6	50	2	No
7	50	0	No
8			
9			
...			

Configuring mac-count-notify traps from the interface context

The interface context can be used to configure the value for sending a trap.

```
switch(config)# interface 5
```

```
switch(eth-5)# mac-count-notify traps 35
```

View information about SNMP traps, including MAC address count being Enabled/Disabled

The `show snmp-server traps` command displays whether the MAC Address Count feature is enabled or disabled.

```
switch# show snmp-server traps
```

Trap Receivers

Link-Change Traps Enabled on Ports [All] : All

Traps Category Current Status

SNMP Authentication :	Extended
Password change :	Enabled
Login failures :	Enabled
Port-Security :	Enabled
Authorization Server Contact :	Enabled
DHCP-Snooping :	Enabled
Dynamic ARP Protection :	Enabled
Dynamic IP Lockdown :	Enabled
MAC address table changes :	Disabled
MAC Address Count :	Enabled

Address	Community	Events	Type	Retry	Timeout
15.146.194.77	public	None	trap	3	15
15.255.134.252	public	None	trap	3	15
16.181.49.167	public	None	trap	3	15
16.181.51.14	public	None	trap	3	15
Excluded MIBs					

Viewing mac-notify traps configuration

show mac-notify traps

Syntax

```
show mac-notify traps <PORT-LIST>
```

Description

Displays information about SNMP trap configuration for MAC Address Table changes.

Output of SNMP trap configuration

Displays SNMP trap information for all ports, or each port in the <PORT-LIST>.

```
switch# show mac-notify traps
Mac Notify Trap Information
Mac-notify Enabled : Yes
Mac-move Enabled : Yes
Trap-interval : 60
Port      MAC Addresses      trap learned/removed
-----
1         None
2         None
3         Removed
4         Removed
5         Learned
6         Learned
```

Running config file with mac-notify parameters configured

The configured mac-notify commands are displayed in the `show running-configuration` output.

```
switch# show running-config
Running configuration:
; J9087A Configuration Editor; Created on release #R.11.XX
hostname "Switch"
snmp-server community "public" Unrestricted
snmp-server host 15.255.133.236 "public"
snmp-server host 15.255.133.222 "public"
snmp-server host 15.255.133.70 "public"
snmp-server host 15.255.134.235 "public"
vlan 1
  name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
  untagged 1-28
  ip address dhcp-bootp
  exit
snmp-server enable traps mac-notify mac-move
snmp-server enable traps mac-notify trap-interval 60
snmp-server enable traps mac-notify
mac-notify traps 5-6 learned
mac-notify traps 3-4 removed
```

Configuring sFlow

Under the multiple instance implementation, sFlow can be configured via the CLI or via SNMP. However, CLI-owned sFlow configurations cannot be modified via SNMP, whereas SNMP-owned instances can be disabled via the CLI using the `no sflow <receiver-instance>` command.

sflow

Syntax

```
[no] sflow <RECEIVER-INSTANCE> destination [<UDP-PORT-NUM> <IP-ADDRESS> [ipv4 |  
ipv6 <UDP-PORT-NUM> oobm] sampling [<PORT-LIST> <SAMPLING RATE>] polling [<PORT-  
LIST> <POLLING INTERVAL>]
```

Description

sFlow commands allow you to configure sFlow instances using the CLI.

Parameters and options

no

To disable an sFlow receiver/destination, enter `no sflow <RECEIVER-INSTANCE>` .

<RECEIVER-INSTANCE> destination

Enables an sFlow receiver/destination. The receiver-instance number must be a 1, 2, or 3.

oobm

A configurable option for sending sFlow packets to a destination through the OOBM port on the switch. Use the OOBM port to reach the specified sFlow receiver.

ipv4 | ipv6

Supports both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

<UDP-PORT-NUM>

The sFlow collector collects sample packets through the OOBM port, allowing the monitoring of network traffic. By default, the udp destination port number is 6343.

<IP-ADDRESS>

The IP address of a single destination.

<RECEIVER-INSTANCE> sampling

Once an sFlow receiver/destination has been enabled, this command enables flow sampling for that instance. The receiver-instance number is 1, 2, or 3.

<PORT-LIST>

Port or list of ports on which to enable flow-sampling. To disable flow-sampling for the specified <PORT-LIST> use a sampling rate of 0.

<SAMPLING-RATE>

The allowable non-zero skipcount for the specified port or ports.

<RECEIVER-INSTANCE> polling

Once an sFlow receiver/destination has been enabled, this command enables counter polling for that instance. The receiver-instance number is 1, 2, or 3.

<PORT-LIST>

Port or list of ports on which to enable polling. To disable counter-polling for the specified <PORT-LIST> use a polling interval of 0.

<POLLING INTERVAL>

An allowable non-zero value to enable polling on the specified port or ports.

Usage

```
[no] sflow <RECEIVER-INSTANCE> destination <IP-ADDRESS> <UDP-PORT-NUM>
sflow <RECEIVER-INSTANCE> sampling <PORT-LIST> <SAMPLING RATE>
sflow <RECEIVER-INSTANCE> polling <PORT-LIST> <POLLING INTERVAL>
[no] sflow <RECEIVER-INSTANCE> destination [ipv4 | ipv6] <UDP-PORT-NUM> oobm
```

sFlow Destination is OOBM port

```
Switch (Config)# sflow 1 destination 192.168.2.3 6000 oobm
```

Figure 63: Output showing OOBM Support Enabled

```
Switch# show sflow 1 destination
Destination Instance      : 1
sflow                    : Enabled
Datagrams Sent           : 0
Destination Address       : 192.168.2.3
Receiver Port             : 6043
Owner                    : Administrator, CLI-Owned, Instance 1
Timeout (seconds)        : 2147479533
Max Datagram Size        : 1400
Datagram Version Support : 5
OOBM Support              : Enabled
```

Figure 64: Output of the running-config File showing the sFlow Destination is the OOBM Port

```
Switch# show running-config
Running configuration:
; J9091A Configuration Editor; Created on release #K.15.06.0006
; Ver #01:0d:0c

hostname "HP Switch"
module 1 type J8702A
module 7 type J8708A
module 12 type J8702A
sflow 1 destination 192.168.2.3 oobm
vlan 1
  name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
  untagged A1-A24,G1-G4,L1-L24
  ip address dhcp-bootp
  exit
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
```

sFlow Configuring multiple instances

In earlier software releases, sFlow was configured on the switch via SNMP using a single sFlow instance. Beginning with software release K.11.34, sFlow can also be configured via the CLI for up to three distinct sFlow instances: once enabled, an sFlow receiver/destination can be independently configured for full flow-sampling and counter-polling. CLI-configured sFlow instances may be saved to the startup configuration to persist across a switch reboot.

Viewing sFlow Configuration and Status

show sflow agent

The following sFlow commands allow you to display sFlow configuration and status via the CLI. **Figure 66: Viewing sFlow destination information** on page 264 is an example of `sflow agent` information.

Syntax

```
show sflow agent
```

Description

Displays sFlow agent information. The agent address is normally the IP address of the first VLAN configured.

The `show sflow agent` command displays read-only switch agent information. The version information shows the sFlow version, MIB support, and software versions; the agent address is typically the IP address of the first VLAN configured on the switch.

sflow agent

Figure 65: *Viewing sflow agent information*

```
Switch# show sflow agent

Version          1.3;HP;K.11.40
Agent Address    10.0.10.228
```

show sflow destination

Syntax

```
show sflow <RECEIVER INSTANCE> destination
```

Description

Displays information about the management station to which the sFlow sampling-polling data is sent. Includes management station information such as destination address, receiver port, and owner, as shown in **Figure 66: Viewing sFlow destination information** on page 264

sflow destination

Figure 66: *Viewing sFlow destination information*

```
Switch# show sflow 2 destination

Destination Instance      2
sflow                    Enabled
Datagrams Sent           221
Destination Address       10.0.10.41
Receiver Port             6343
Owner                    Administrator, CLI-owned, Instance 2
Timeout (seconds)        99995530
Max Datagram Size        1400
Datagram Version Support  5
```

Note the following details:

- Destination Address remains blank unless it has been configured.
- Datagrams Sent shows the number of datagrams sent by the switch agent to the management station since the switch agent was last enabled.
- Timeout displays the number of seconds remaining before the switch agent will automatically disable sFlow (this is set by the management station and decrements with time.)
- Max Datagram Size shows the currently set value (typically a default value, but this can also be set by the management station.)

show sflow sampling-polling

Syntax

```
show sflow <RECEIVER INSTANCE> sampling-polling <PORT-LIST/RANGE>
```

Description

Displays status information about sFlow sampling and polling on the switch as shown in **Figure 67: Viewing sFlow sampling and polling information** on page 265.

Options

<RECEIVER INSTANCE>

The receiver-instance number is 1, 2, or 3.

<PORT-LIST/RANGE>

You can specify a list or range of ports for which to view sampling information.

sflow sampling-polling

Figure 67: Viewing sFlow sampling and polling information

```
Switch# show sflow 2 sampling-polling A1-A4
```

Number denotes the sampling/polling instance to which the receiver is coupled.

Port	Sampling Enabled	Rate	Header	Dropped Samples	Polling Enabled	Interval
A1	Yes (2)	40	128	1234567890	---	---
A2	---	---	---	0	Yes (1)	60
A3	No (1)	0	100	898703	No	30
A4	Yes (3)	50	128	0	No (3)	0



IMPORTANT: The sampling and polling instances (noted in parentheses) coupled to a specific receiver instance are assigned dynamically, and so the instance numbers may not always match. The key thing to note is whether sampling or polling is enabled on a port, and the sampling rates or polling intervals for the receiver instance configured on each port.

show snmpv3 user

Syntax

```
show snmpv3 user
```

Description

Displays information about the management stations configured for SNMPv3

Management stations configured on VLAN 1 to access the switch

```
switch# configure terminal
switch# vlan 1
switch(vlan-1)# show snmpv3 user
```

Status and Counters - SNMPv3 Global Configuration Information

User Name	Auth. Protocol	Privacy Protocol
-----------	----------------	------------------

initial	MD5	CFB AES-128
NetworkAdmin	MD5	CBC-DES

Configuring SNMP

Network security notifications

By default, a switch is enabled to send the SNMP notifications listed in **Supported Notifications** on page 270 when a network security event (for example, authentication failure) occurs. However, before security notifications can be sent, you must first configure one or more trap receivers or SNMPv3 management stations as described in:

- **SNMP trap receiver configuration** on page 283
- **Configuring SNMP notifications** on page 270

You can manage the default configuration of the switch to disable and re-enable notifications to be sent for the following types of security events:

- ARP protection events
- Inability to establish a connection with the RADIUS or TACACS+ authentication server
- DHCP snooping events
- Dynamic IP Lockdown hardware resources consumed
- Link change notification
- Invalid password entered in a login attempt through a direct serial, Telnet, or SSH connection
- Manager password changes
- Port-security (web, MAC, or 802.1X) authentication failure
- SNMP authentication failure
- Running configuration changes

SNMP traps on running configuration changes

You can send a specific SNMP trap for any configuration change made in the switch's running configuration file. The trap will be generated for changes made from any of these interfaces:

- CLI
- Menu
- SNMP (remote SNMP set requests.)

The SNMP trap contains the following information.

Information	Description
Event ID	An assigned number that identifies a specific running configuration change event.
Method	Method by which the change was made—CLI, Menu, or remote SNMP. For configuration changes triggered by internal events, the term "Internal-Event" is used as the source of the change.
IP Address Type	Indicates the source address type of the network agent that made a change. This is set to an address type of "unknown" when not applicable.
IP address	IP address of the remote system from which a user accessed the switch. If not applicable, this is an empty string and nothing is displayed, for example, if access is through a management console port.
User Name	User name of the person who made the change. Null if not applicable.
Date and Time	Date and time the change was made.

The SNMP trap alerts any interested parties that someone has changed the switch's configuration and provides information about the source for that change. It does not specify what has been changed.

Source IP address for SNMP notifications

The switch uses an interface IP address as the source IP address in IP headers when sending SNMP notifications (traps and informs) or responses to SNMP requests.

For multi-netted interfaces, the source IP address is the IP address of the outbound interface of the SNMP reply, which may differ from the destination IP address in the IP header of the received request. For security reasons, it may be desirable to send an SNMP reply with the IP address of the destination interface (or a specified IP address) on which the corresponding SNMP request was received.

To configure the switch to use the source IP address on which an SNMP request was received in SNMP notification/traps and replies, enter the `snmp-server response-source` and `snmp-server trap-source` commands.

Listening mode

For switches that have a separate out-of-band management port, you can specify whether a configured SNMP server listens for SNMP queries over the OOBM interface, the data interface, or both. By default, the switch listens over both interfaces.

This option is not available for switches that do not have a separate OOBM port.

The listening mode is set with parameters to the `snmp-server` command.

Group access levels

The switch supports eight predefined group access levels. There are four levels for use by version 3 users and four are used for access by version 2c or version 1 management applications.

Table 18: Predefined group access levels

Group name	Group access type	Group read view	Group write view
managerpriv	Ver3 Must have Authentication and Privacy	ManagerReadView	ManagerWriteView
managerauth	Ver3 Must have Authentication	ManagerReadView	ManagerWriteView
operatorauth	Ver3 Must have Authentication	OperatorReadView	DiscoveryView
operatornoauth	Ver3 No Authentication	OperatorReadView	DiscoveryView
comanagerrw	Ver2c or Ver1	ManagerReadView	ManagerWriteView
comanagerr	Ver2c or Ver1	ManagerReadView	DiscoveryView
comoperatorrw	Ver2c or Ver1	OperatorReadView	OperatorReadView
comoperatorr	Ver2c or Ver1	OperatorReadView	DiscoveryView

Table 19: SNMPv3 Params and Group Configs Combinations

SNMPv3 Params	SNMPv3 group	Snmpv3 user config
noauth (no authentication and no privacy)	operatornoauth	snmpv3 user "user1"
auth (authentication and no privacy)	managerpriv, managerauth,operatorauth, operatornoauth	snmpv3 user "user1" auth md5 "45800d22ccb8b485ab52fe2d8b92e a85"
priv (authentication and privacy)	managerpriv, managerauth,operatorauth, operatornoauth	snmpv3 user "user1" auth md5 "45800d22ccb8b485ab52fe2d8b92e a85" priv des "45800d22ccb8b485ab52fe2d8b92e a85"

Each view allows you to view or modify a different set of MIBs:

- Manager Read View – access to all managed objects
- Manager Write View – access to all managed objects except the following:
 - vacmContextTable
 - vacmAccessTable
 - vacmViewTreeFamilyTable
- OperatorReadView – no access to the following:

- icfSecurityMIB
- hpSwitchIpTftpMode
- vacmContextTable
- vacmAccessTable
- vacmViewTreeFamilyTable
- usmUserTable
- snmpCommunityTable
- Discovery View – Access limited to samplingProbe MIB.



NOTE: All access groups and views are predefined on the switch. There is no method to modify or add groups or views to those that are predefined on the switch.

SNMPv3 communities

SNMP communities are supported by the switch to allow management applications that use version 2c or version 1 to access the switch. The communities are mapped to Group Access Levels that are used for version 2c or version 1 support. This mapping happens automatically based on the communities access privileges, but special mappings can be added with the `snmpv3 community` command.

SNMP community features

Use SNMP communities to restrict access to the switch by SNMP management stations by adding, editing, or deleting SNMP communities. You can configure up to five SNMP communities, each with either an operator-level or a manager-level view and either restricted or unrestricted write access.

Using SNMP requires that the switch have an IP address and subnet mask compatible with your network.

SNMPv2c informs

On a switch enabled for SNMPv2c, you can use the `snmp-server host inform` command (**SNMPv2c inform option** on page 284) to send inform requests when certain events occur. When an SNMP Manager receives an inform request, it can send an SNMP response back to the sending agent on the switch to let the agent know that the inform request reached its destination.

If the sending agent on the switch does not receive an SNMP response back from the SNMP Manager within the timeout period, the inform request may be resent, based on the retry count value.

When you enable SNMPv2c inform requests to be sent, you must specify the IP address and community name of the management station that will receive the inform notification.

SNMP notifications

The switches:

- Default Traps: A switch automatically sends default traps to trap receivers using the configured community name. You have to configure and supply the community name to use in the trap-receiver config, there is no default. Use the `snmp-server host <IP_ADDRESS> community "<COMMUNITY_NAME>"` command to configure a community name and the `snmp-server host <IP_ADDRESS> community`

"<COMMUNITY_NAME>" trap-level [all | critical | not-info | debug | none] command
to set the level of traps to send to the community.

- SNMPv2c informs
- SNMP v3 notification process, including traps

This section describes how to configure a switch to send network security and link-change notifications to configured trap receivers.

Supported Notifications

By default, the following notifications are enabled on a switch:

- Manager password changes
- SNMP authentication failure
- Link-change traps: when the link on a port changes from up to down (linkDown) or down to up (linkUp)
- Port-security (web, MAC, or 802.1X) authentication failure
- Invalid password entered in a login attempt through a direct serial, Telnet, or SSH connection
- Inability to establish a connection with the RADIUS or TACACS+ authentication server
- DHCP snooping events
- ARP protection events

Configuring SNMP notifications

Procedure

1. Determine the versions of SNMP notifications that you want to use in your network.
If you want to use SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c traps, you must also configure a trap receiver.
If you want to use SNMPv3 notifications (including traps), you must also configure an SNMPv3 management station.
2. To reconfigure any of the SNMP notifications that are enabled by default to be sent to a management station (trap receiver.)
3. (Optional) See the following sections to configure optional SNMP notification features and verify the current configuration:
 - a. **Source IP address for SNMP notifications** on page 291
 - b. **SNMP notification configuration** on page 293

SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c Traps

The switches support the following functionality from earlier SNMP versions (SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c):

- Trap receivers: A **trap receiver** is a management station to which the switch sends SNMP traps and (optionally) event log messages sent from the switch. From the CLI you can configure up to ten SNMP trap receivers to receive SNMP traps from the switch.
- Default Traps: A switch automatically sends default traps to trap receivers using the configured community name. You have to configure and supply the community name to use in the trap-receiver config, there is no

default. Use the `snmp-server host <IP_ADDRESS> community "<COMMUNITY_NAME>"` command to configure a community name and the `snmp-server host <IP_ADDRESS> community "<COMMUNITY_NAME>" trap-level [all | critical | not-info | debug | none]` command to set the level of traps to send to the community.

- **Thresholds:** A switch automatically sends all messages created when a system threshold is reached to the network management station that configured the threshold, regardless of the trap receiver configuration.

SNMP trap receivers

Use the `snmp-server host` command to configure a trap receiver that can receive SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c traps, and (optionally) Event Log messages. When you configure a trap receiver, you specify its community membership, management station IP address, and (optionally) the type of Event Log messages to be sent.

If you specify a community name that does not exist—that is, has not yet been configured on the switch—the switch still accepts the trap receiver assignment. However, no traps are sent to that trap receiver until the community to which it belongs has been configured on the switch.



NOTE:

To replace one community name with another for the same IP address, you must first enter the

```
no snmp-server host <COMMUNITY-NAME> <IP-ADDRESS>
```

command to delete the unwanted community name. Otherwise, if you add a new community name with an IP address that is already used with a different community name, two valid community name entries are created for the same management station.

If you do not specify the event level ([`none` | `all` | `not-info` | `critical` | `debug`]), the switch does not send Event Log messages as traps. However, "well-known" traps and threshold traps (if configured) are still sent.

Overview

You can configure the threshold limit as a percentage for RMON event log memory. Range is between 1 to 100. An RMON log message is generated when the RMON event logging memory reaches the configured threshold percentage. If SNMP traps are enabled, then the same traps are generated for the RMON event.

Use the `rmonlog-set-threshold` command to set the threshold limit for RMON event log memory.

rmonlog-set-threshold

Syntax

```
rmonlog-set-threshold <percentage>
```

```
no rmonlog-set-threshold <percentage>
```

Description

Configures the threshold percentage for RMON event logging. The default value is 80.

The `no` form of this command resets RMON event logging threshold to default value.

Command context

```
config
```

Parameters

percentage

Specifies the threshold percentage value between 1 to 100.

Examples

```
switch (config)# rmonlog-set-threshold 45
```

```
switch (config)# show running-config
```

Running configuration:

```
; JL071A Configuration Editor; Created on release #KB.16.06.0000x
; Ver #13:03.f8.1c.fb.7f.bf.bb.ff.7c.59.fc.7b.ff.ff.fc.ff.ff.3f.ef:05

hostname "switch"
module 1 type jl071x
flexible-module A type JL081A
interface A1
    speed-duplex auto-100
    exit
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
oobm
    ip address dhcp-bootp
    exit
vlan 1
    name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
    untagged 1-24,A1-A4
    ip address dhcp-bootp
    ipv6 enable
    ipv6 address dhcp full
    exit
rmonlog-set-threshold 45
```

The following event log message is logged when the RMON log memory reaches the threshold value.

```
W 03/25/18 07:44:51 03443 system:The event log buffer is 45% full.
```

SNMP trap when MAC address table changes

An SNMP trap is generated when a laptop/PC is removed from the back of an IP phone and the laptop/PC MAC address ages out of the MAC table for the Switch 2920 and 5400 series switch.

The mac-notify trap feature globally enables the generation of SNMP trap notifications on MAC address table changes (learns/moves/removes/ages.)

The following command enables trap for aged MAC addresses:

Show mac-notify traps

Syntax

```
show mac-notify traps
```

Description

Displays the different mac-notify traps configured on an interface.

Output of show mac-notify traps

```
Mac Notify Trap Information
Mac-notify Enabled : No
Mac-move Enabled : No
Trap-interval : 30
Port    MAC Addresses trap learned/removed/aged
-----
1       Learned, Removed & Aged
```

2	Removed & Aged
3	Learned & Aged
4	Learned & Removed
5	Aged
6	Learned
7	Removed

show mac-notify for port 1

```
show mac-notify traps 1
```

```
1 Aged
```

Physical hardware removal/insertion trap generation

The specific events related to a physical module insertion or removal are being added to the default trap list.

Aruba 3810M Switch Series (JL071A, JL072A, JL073A, JL074A, JL075A, JL076A)

Aruba 5400Rzl2 Switch Series (J8698A, J8700A, J9823A-J9824A, J9825A, J9826A, J9868A, J9447A, J9448A)

Aruba 5406R Switch Series (JL002A, JL003A, JL095A, J9850A)

Aruba 5412R Switch Series (J9851A, JL001A)

Current default traps

The default event scenarios for currently generated traps on ArubaOS-Switches are:

- Device cold start notifications
- Device warm start notifications
- Port down notifications
- Port up notifications
- Authentication failure notifications
- Enterprise change notifications
- Intrusion alarm notifications

Event scenario matrix

Different event scenarios for which traps are generated:

Event Id	Severity	Action	Message
68	Info	Slot Insertion	I 06/20/16 09:18:43 00068 chassis: AM1: Slot C Inserted
67	Info	Slot Removal	I 06/20/16 09:18:50 00067 chassis: AM1: Slot C Removed
405	Info	Transceiver Insertion	I 06/20/16 09:18:56 00405 ports: AM1: port A23 xcvr hot-swap insert
406	Info	Transceiver Removal	I 06/20/16 09:19:04 00406 ports: AM1: port A23 xcvr hot-swap remove

Table Continued

Event Id	Severity	Action	Message
552	Warning	Stacking module Insertion	W 04/20/16 09:20:43 00552 chassis: ST1-CMDR: Stacking Module insertion detected: Reboot required
552	Warning	Stacking module Removal	W 06/20/16 09:19:43 00552 chassis: ST1-CMDR: Stacking Module removal detected: Reboot required

Enabling and disabling traps

Action	Command
Disable both the log and trap	<code>setMib eventType.<event_Id> -i 1 - to disable both log & Trap</code>
Enable log only	<code>setMib eventType.<event_Id> -i 2 - to allow only log</code>
Enable both the log and trap (Default)	<code>setMib eventType.<event_Id> -i 4 - to allow both log & Trap</code>
Enable trap only	<code>setMib eventType.<event_Id> -i 3 - to allow only trap</code>



NOTE: If the event is configured to disable a trap, then the trap will not be sent for that particular event. In all other scenarios, a trap is generated for the listed events.

SNMP trap captures examples

Inserting a slot module

Event Id: 68

The image shows a Wireshark packet capture window titled "trap_details". The filter bar shows "snmp && icmp". The packet list shows four packets, all of which are SNMP traps from 10.1.1.1 to 10.1.1.2. The selected packet (No. 1) is expanded, showing the following details:

- Frame 1: 162 bytes on wire (1296 bits), 162 bytes captured (1296 bits)
- Ethernet II, Src: HewlettP_3f:4d:00 (3c:a8:2a:3f:4d:00), Dst: Vmware_bd:79:7b (00:50:56:bd:79:7b)
- Internet Protocol Version 4, Src: 10.1.1.1, Dst: 10.1.1.2
- User Datagram Protocol, Src Port: 161 (161), Dst Port: 162 (162)
- Simple Network Management Protocol

The packet bytes pane shows the raw data of the trap, including the MIB identifier (1.3.6.1.4.1.11.2.3.7.11.160) and the event ID (68).

Removing a slot module

Event Id: 67

The image shows a Wireshark packet capture window titled "trap_details". The filter bar at the top shows "snmp && icmp". The packet list pane displays four packets, all of which are SNMP traps from source 10.1.1.1 to destination 10.1.1.2. Packet 4 is selected, and the packet details pane shows the following information:

- Frame 4: 161 bytes on wire (1288 bits), 161 bytes captured (1288 bits)
- Ethernet II, Src: HewlettP_3f:4d:00 (3c:a8:2a:3f:4d:00), Dst: Vmware_bd:79:7b (00:50:56:bd:79:7b)
- Internet Protocol Version 4, Src: 10.1.1.1, Dst: 10.1.1.2
- User Datagram Protocol, Src Port: 161 (161), Dst Port: 162 (162)
- Simple Network Management Protocol

The packet bytes pane shows the raw data of the selected packet, which is an SNMP trap message. The message content is as follows:

```
0000 00 50 56 bd 79 7b 3c a8 2a 3f 4d 00 08 00 45 00 .PV.y{<. *?M...E.
0010 00 93 02 a4 00 00 40 11 61 b2 0a 01 01 01 0a 01 .....@. a.....
0020 01 02 00 a1 00 a2 00 7f 91 d3 30 75 02 01 00 04 ..... ..0u....
0030 06 70 75 62 6c 69 63 a4 68 06 0c 2b 06 01 04 01 .public. h..+....
0040 0b 02 03 07 0b 81 20 40 04 0a 01 01 01 02 01 06 ..... @ .....
0050 02 01 02 43 03 0b bd 3c 30 47 30 45 06 0b 2b 06 ...C...< 0G0E..+.
0060 01 02 01 10 09 01 01 02 43 04 36 49 20 30 36 2f ..... C.6I 06/
0070 32 30 2f 31 36 20 30 39 3a 31 38 3a 35 30 20 30 20/16 09 :18:50 0
0080 30 30 36 37 20 63 68 61 73 73 69 73 3a 20 41 4d 0067 cha ssis: AM
0090 31 3a 20 53 6c 6f 74 20 43 20 52 65 6d 6f 76 65 1: Slot C Remove
00a0 64 d
```

The status bar at the bottom indicates "Internet Control Message Protocol: Protocol" and "Packets: 11 · Displayed: 4 (36.4%) · Load time: 0:0.120 | Profile: Default".

Inserting a transceiver

Event Id: 405

trap_details

File Edit View Go Capture Analyze Statistics Telephony Wireless Tools Help

snmp && icmp

No.	Time	Source	Destination	Protocol	Length	Info
1	0.000000	10.1.1.1	10.1.1.2	SNMP	162	trap iso.3.6.1.4.1.11.2.3.7.11.160 1.3.6.1.2.1.16.9.1.1.2.68
4	7.288213	10.1.1.1	10.1.1.2	SNMP	161	trap iso.3.6.1.4.1.11.2.3.7.11.160 1.3.6.1.2.1.16.9.1.1.2.67
8	13.808481	10.1.1.1	10.1.1.2	SNMP	176	trap iso.3.6.1.4.1.11.2.3.7.11.160 1.3.6.1.2.1.16.9.1.1.2.405
10	21.280022	10.1.1.1	10.1.1.2	SNMP	176	trap iso.3.6.1.4.1.11.2.3.7.11.160 1.3.6.1.2.1.16.9.1.1.2.406

Frame 8: 176 bytes on wire (1408 bits), 176 bytes captured (1408 bits)

Ethernet II, Src: HewlettP_3f:4d:00 (3c:a8:2a:3f:4d:00), Dst: Vmware_bd:79:7b (00:50:56:bd:79:7b)

Internet Protocol Version 4, Src: 10.1.1.1, Dst: 10.1.1.2

User Datagram Protocol, Src Port: 161 (161), Dst Port: 162 (162)

Simple Network Management Protocol

```

0000 00 50 56 bd 79 7b 3c a8 2a 3f 4d 00 08 00 45 00 .PV.y{<. *?M...E.
0010 00 a2 02 a6 00 00 40 11 61 a1 0a 01 01 01 0a 01 .....@. a.....
0020 01 02 00 a1 00 a2 00 8e ab 20 30 81 83 02 01 00 ..... . 0.....
0030 04 06 70 75 62 6c 69 63 a4 76 06 0c 2b 06 01 04 ..public .v...+...
0040 01 0b 02 03 07 0b 81 20 40 04 0a 01 01 01 02 01 ..... @.....
0050 06 02 01 02 43 03 0b bf c8 30 55 30 53 06 0c 2b ....C... .0U0S...+
0060 06 01 02 01 10 09 01 01 02 83 15 04 43 49 20 30 ..... ....CI 0
0070 36 2f 32 30 2f 31 36 20 30 39 3a 31 38 3a 35 36 6/20/16 09:18:56
0080 20 30 30 34 30 35 20 70 6f 72 74 73 3a 20 41 4d 00405 p orts: AM
0090 31 3a 20 70 6f 72 74 20 41 32 33 20 78 63 76 72 1: port A23 xcvr
00a0 20 68 6f 74 2d 73 77 61 70 20 69 6e 73 65 72 74 hot-swa p insert

```

Internet Control Message Protocol: Protocol

Packets: 11 · Displayed: 4 (36.4%) · Load time: 0:0.120 | Profile: Default

Removing a transceiver

trap_details

File Edit View Go Capture Analyze Statistics Telephony Wireless Tools Help

snmp && icmp

No.	Time	Source	Destination	Protocol	Length	Info
1	0.000000	10.1.1.1	10.1.1.2	SNMP	162	trap iso.3.6.1.4.1.11.2.3.7.11.160 1.3.6.1.2.1.16.9.1.1.2.68
4	7.288213	10.1.1.1	10.1.1.2	SNMP	161	trap iso.3.6.1.4.1.11.2.3.7.11.160 1.3.6.1.2.1.16.9.1.1.2.67
8	13.808481	10.1.1.1	10.1.1.2	SNMP	176	trap iso.3.6.1.4.1.11.2.3.7.11.160 1.3.6.1.2.1.16.9.1.1.2.405
10	21.280022	10.1.1.1	10.1.1.2	SNMP	176	trap iso.3.6.1.4.1.11.2.3.7.11.160 1.3.6.1.2.1.16.9.1.1.2.406

Frame 10: 176 bytes on wire (1408 bits), 176 bytes captured (1408 bits)

Ethernet II, Src: HewlettP_3f:4d:00 (3c:a8:2a:3f:4d:00), Dst: Vmware_bd:79:7b (00:50:56:bd:79:7b)

Internet Protocol Version 4, Src: 10.1.1.1, Dst: 10.1.1.2

User Datagram Protocol, Src Port: 161 (161), Dst Port: 162 (162)

Simple Network Management Protocol

```

0000 00 50 56 bd 79 7b 3c a8 2a 3f 4d 00 08 00 45 00 .PV.y{<. *?M...E.
0010 00 a2 02 a7 00 00 40 11 61 a0 0a 01 01 01 0a 01 .....@. a.....
0020 01 02 00 a1 00 a2 00 8e bc 2c 30 81 83 02 01 00 ..... .,0.....
0030 04 06 70 75 62 6c 69 63 a4 76 06 0c 2b 06 01 04 ..public .v...+...
0040 01 0b 02 03 07 0b 81 20 40 04 0a 01 01 01 02 01 ..... @.....
0050 06 02 01 02 43 03 0b c2 b3 30 55 30 53 06 0c 2b ....C... .0U0S...+
0060 06 01 02 01 10 09 01 01 02 83 16 04 43 49 20 30 ..... ....CI 0
0070 36 2f 32 30 2f 31 36 20 30 39 3a 31 39 3a 30 34 6/20/16 09:19:04
0080 20 30 30 34 30 36 20 70 6f 72 74 73 3a 20 41 4d 00406 p orts: AM
0090 31 3a 20 70 6f 72 74 20 41 32 33 20 78 63 76 72 1: port A23 xcvr
00a0 20 68 6f 74 2d 73 77 61 70 20 72 65 6d 6f 76 65 hot-swa p remove

```

Internet Control Message Protocol: Protocol

Packets: 11 · Displayed: 4 (36.4%) · Load time: 0:0.120 | Profile: Default

SNMP trap when power supply is inserted or removed

SNMP traps generate while inserting or removing a powered up Power Supply Unit (PSU) without pulling out the power cable and also when removing a powered down PSU from the Switch 5406 Series. RMON log events are used to generate SNMP traps for PSU insertion and removal in both powered up and powered down states.

Log event

```
Chassis: Power Supply 1 inserted
Chassis: Power Supply 1 removed while powered
Chassis: Power Supply 2 removed while not powered
```

Power supply inserted while powered off

```
W 09/13/13 09:10:18 03834 chassis: AM1: Power Supply 1 inserted
W 09/13/13 09:10:19 00071 chassis: AM1: Power Supply failure: Supply: 1, Failures: 4
```

Power supply removed while powered off

```
W 09/13/13 09:08:57 03835 chassis: AM1: Power Supply 1 removed while not powered
W 09/13/13 09:08:57 00071 chassis: AM1: Power Supply failure: Supply: 1, Failures: 3
```

Power supply removed while powered on



WARNING: PSUs should never be inserted or removed while the PSU has power applied.

```
W 09/13/13 09:03:36 03835 chassis: AM1: Power Supply 1 removed while powered
W 09/13/13 09:03:36 00071 chassis: AM1: Power Supply failure: Supply: 1, Failures: 2
```

SNMP notification support

You can enable SNMP trap notification of LLDP data changes detected on advertisements received from neighbor devices, and control the interval between successive notifications of data changes on the same neighbor.

SNMPv3 users

To create new users, most SNMPv3 management software requires an initial user record to clone. The initial user record can be downgraded and provided with fewer features, but not upgraded by adding new features. For this reason, Hewlett Packard Enterprise recommends that when you enable SNMPv3, you also create a second user with SHA authentication and DES privacy.

To use SNMPv3 on the switch, you must configure the users that will be assigned to different groups:

Procedure

1. Configure users in the User Table with the `snmpv3 user` command.

To view the list of configured users, enter the `show snmpv3 user` command.

2. Assign users to Security Groups based on their security model with the `snmpv3 group` command.



IMPORTANT: If you add an SNMPv3 user without authentication, privacy, or both, to a group that requires either feature, the user will not be able to access the switch. Ensure that you add a user with the appropriate security level to an existing security group.

Adding users

To configure an SNMPv3 user, you must first add the user name to the list of known users with the `snmpv3 user` command, as shown in the following image.

Figure 68: Adding SNMPv3 users and displaying SNMPv3 configuration

```
Switch(config)# snmpv3 user NetworkAdmin
Switch(config)# snmpv3 user NetworkMgr auth md5 authpass priv privpass
Switch(config)# show snmpv3 user
```

Callouts:

- Add user Network Admin with no authentication or privacy.
- Add user Network Mgr with authentication and privacy.
- MD5 authentication is enabled and the password is set to "authpass".
- Privacy is enabled and the password is set to "privpass".

Output of `show snmpv3 user`:

```
Status and Counters - SNMP v3 Global Configuration Information
```

User Name	Auth. Protocol	Privacy Protocol
initial	MD5	CFB AES-128
NetworkAdmin	MD5	CBC-DES

SNMP tools for switch management

SNMP is a management protocol that allows an SNMP client application to retrieve device configuration and status information and to configure the device (**get** and **set**.) You can manage the switch via SNMP from a network management station.

To implement SNMP management, the switch must have an IP address configured either manually or dynamically (using DHCP or Bootp.) If multiple VLANs are configured, each VLAN interface should have its own IP address.



IMPORTANT: If you use the switch's Authorized IP Managers and Management VLAN features, ensure that the SNMP management station, the choice of switch port used for SNMP access to the switch, or both, are compatible with the access controls enforced by these features. Otherwise, SNMP access to the switch will be blocked.

SNMP management features

SNMP management features on the switch include:

- SNMP version 1, version 2c, or version 3 over IP
- Security via configuration of SNMP communities (**SNMPv3 communities** on page 269)
- Security via authentication and privacy for SNMPv3 access
- Event reporting via SNMP
 - Version 1 traps
 - RMON: groups 1, 2, 3, and 9

- Flow sampling using sFlow
- Standard MIBs, such as the Bridge MIB (RFC 1493), Ethernet MAU MIB (RFC 1515), and others.

The switch SNMP agent also uses certain variables that are included in a Hewlett Packard Enterprise proprietary MIB (management information base) file.

Downloading the latest MIB file

Procedure

1. Go to the Networking website at:
<http://www.hpe.com/Networking/support>
2. Enter the model number of your switch (for example, 8212) or the product number in the **Auto Search** text box.
3. Select an appropriate product from the drop down list.
4. Click **Display selected**.
5. From the options that appear, select **Software downloads**.
6. Locate the list of MIBs with the switch software in the Other category.
7. Click **software updates**, and then click **MIBs**.

SNMPv1 and v2c access to the switch

SNMP access requires an IP address and subnet mask configured on the switch. If you are using DHCP/Bootp to configure the switch, ensure that the DHCP/Bootp process provides the IP address.

Once an IP address is configured, the main steps for configuring SNMPv1 and v2c access management features are:

Procedure

1. Configure the appropriate SNMP communities. (See **SNMPv3 communities** on page 269.)
2. Configure the appropriate trap receivers. (See **SNMP notifications** on page 269.)

In some networks, authorized IP manager addresses are not used. In this case, all management stations using the correct community name may access the switch with the View and Access levels that have been set for that community. If you want to restrict access to one or more specific nodes, you can use the switch's IP Authorized Manager feature. (See the access security guide.)

SNMPv3 access to the switch

SNMPv3 access requires an IP address and subnet mask configured on the switch. If you are using DHCP/Bootp to configure the switch, ensure that the DHCP/Bootp process provides the IP address.

Once you have configured an IP address, the main steps for configuring SNMPv3 access management features are the following:

Procedure

1. Enable SNMPv3 for operation on the switch.
2. Configure the appropriate SNMP users.

3. Configure the appropriate SNMP communities.

4. Configure the appropriate trap receivers.

In some networks, authorized IP manager addresses are not used. In this case, all management stations using the correct User and community name may access the switch with the View and Access levels that have been set for that community. If you want to restrict access to one or more specific nodes, you can use the IP Authorized Manager feature for the switch. (See the access security guide.)

SNMP version 3 (SNMPv3) adds some new commands to the CLI for configuring SNMPv3 functions. To enable SHMPv3 operation on the switch, use the `snmpv3 enable` command. An initial user entry will be generated with MD5 authentication and DES privacy.

You may (optionally) restrict access to only SNMPv3 agents by using the `snmpv3 only` command. To restrict write-access to only SNMPv3 agents, use the `snmpv3 restricted-access` command.



IMPORTANT:

Restricting access to only version 3 messages will make the community named "public" inaccessible to network management applications (such as autodiscovery, traffic monitoring, SNMP trap generation, and threshold setting) from operating in the switch.

Enabling SNMPv3

The `snmpv3 enable` command allows the switch to:

- Receive SNMPv3 messages.
- Configure initial users.
- Restrict non-version 3 messages to "read only" (optional.)



IMPORTANT:

Restricting access to only version 3 messages makes the community named "public" inaccessible to network management applications (such as autodiscovery, traffic monitoring, SNMP trap generation, and threshold setting) from operating in the switch.

SNMP version 3 enable command

```
Switch(config)# snmpv3 enable
SHMPv3 Initialization process.
Creating user 'initial'
Authentication Protocol: MD5
Enter authentication password: *****
Privacy protocol is DES
Enter privacy password: *****

User 'initial' is created
Would you like to create a user that uses SHA? y
Enter user name: templateSHA
Authentication Protocol: SHA
Enter authentication password: *****
Privacy protocol is DES
Enter privacy password: *****

User creation is done. SHMPv3 is now functional.
Would you like to restrict SHMPv1 and SNMPv2c messages to have read only
access (you can set this later by the command 'snmp restrict-access'): n
```

Enable SNMPv3

Create initial user models for SNMPv3
Management Applications

Set restriction on
non-SNMPv3 messages

Configuring users in SNMPv3

snmpv3 user

Syntax

```
[no] snmpv3 user <USER_NAME> [auth md5|sha] <AUTH_PASS> [priv des|aes] <PRIV_PASS>
```

```
[no] snmpv3 remote-engine-id <engineid> user <username> [auth {md5| sha}  
    <authentication password>] [priv {des|aes} <privacy password>]
```

Description

Adds or deletes a user entry for SNMPv3. Authorization and privacy are optional, but to use privacy, you must use authorization.

Parameters and options

no

Used to delete a user entry. When you delete a user, only the user name is required.

<AUTH_PASS>

With authorization, you can set either MD5 or SHA authentication. The authentication password *auth_pass* must be 6 to 32 characters and is mandatory when you configure authentication.

priv des|aes

With privacy, the switch supports DES (56-bit) and AES (128-bit) encryption. Defaults to DES. Only AES 128-bit and DES 56-bit encryption are supported as privacy protocols. Other non-standard encryption algorithms, such as AES-172, AES-256, and 3-DES are not supported.

<PRIV_PASS>

The privacy password *priv_pass* must be 6 to 32 characters and is mandatory when you configure privacy.

remote-engine-id <engineid>

Sets the SNMPv3 remote engine ID in colon-separated hexadecimal notation.

Switch access from SNMPv3 agents

snmpv3 enable

Syntax

```
snmpv3 enable
```

Description

Enables switch access from SNMPv3 agents, including the creation of the initial user record.

Restrict access from SNMPv3 agents

snmpv3 only

Syntax

```
[no] snmpv3 only
```

Description

When enabled, the switch rejects all non-SNMPv3 messages.

Restrict non-SNMPv3 agents to read-only access

snmpv3 restricted-access

Syntax

```
[no] snmpv3 restricted-access
```

Description

Enable or disable restrictions from all non-SNMPv3 agents (read-only access).

Operating status of SNMPv3

show snmpv3

Syntax

```
show snmpv3 enable
```

Description

View the operating status of SNMPv3 (enabled or disabled).

Non-SNMPv3 message reception status

show snmpv3 only

Syntax

```
show snmpv3 only
```

Description

Shows the message reception status of non-SNMPv3 messages.

Non-SNMPv3 write message status

show snmpv3 restricted-access

Syntax

```
show snmpv3 restricted-access
```

Description

Shows the status of non-SNMPv3 write messages.

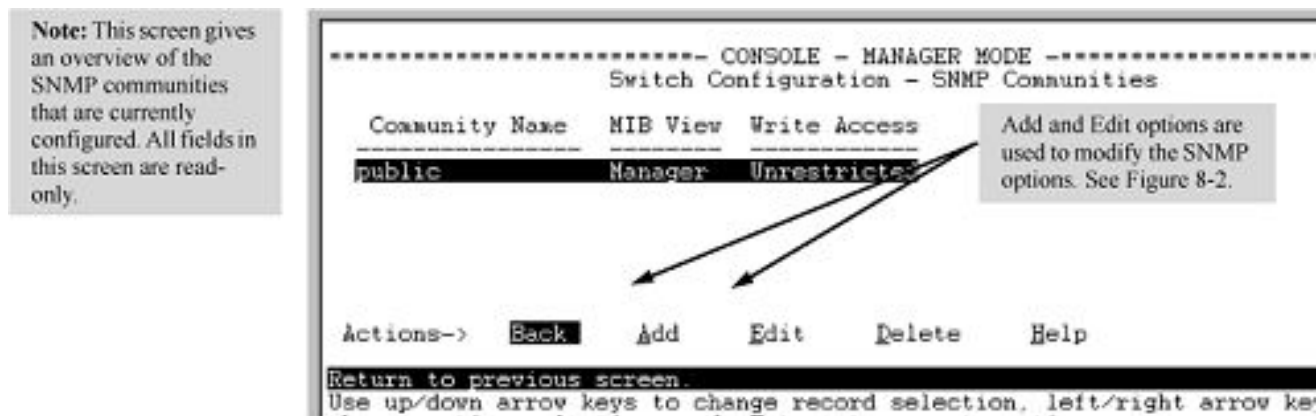
Viewing and configuring non-version-3 SNMP communities (Menu)

Procedure

1. From the Main Menu, select:
2. **Switch Configuration...**

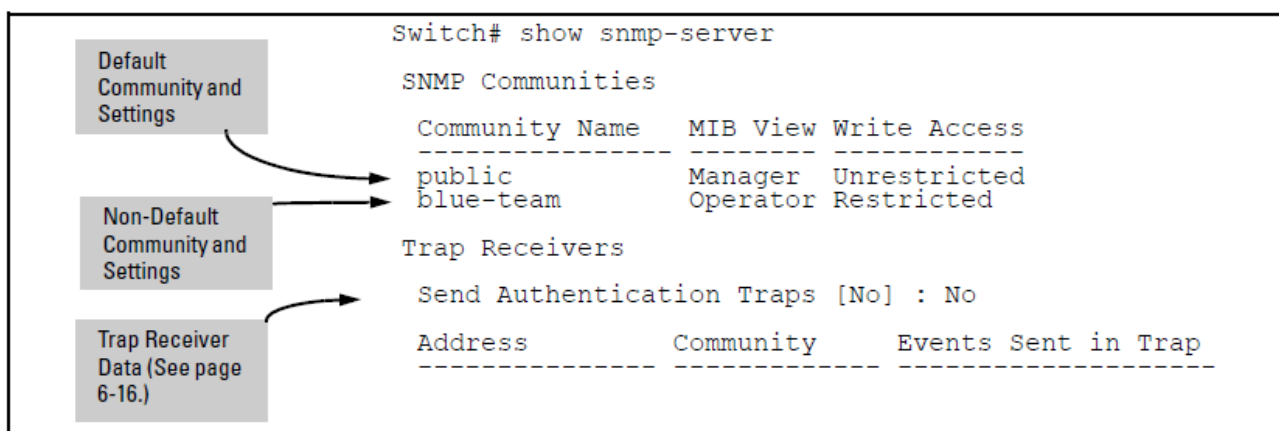
6. SNMP Community Names

Figure 69: SNMP Communities screen (default values)



2. Press **[A]** (for **Add**) to display the following screen:

Figure 70: SNMP add or edit screen



If you need information on the options in each field, press **[Enter]** to move the cursor to the Actions line, then select the Help option. When you are finished with Help, press **[E]** (for Edit) to return the cursor to the parameter fields.

3. Enter the name you want in the Community Name field, and use the Space bar to select the appropriate value in each of the other fields. (Use the **[Tab]** key to move from one field to the next.)
4. Press **[Enter]**, then **[S]** (for **Save**.)

SNMP trap receiver configuration

snmp-server host

Syntax

```
snmp-server host [ipv4-addr|ipv6-addr] <community name>
```

Description

Configures a destination network management station to receive SNMPv1/v2c traps and (optionally) Event Log messages sent as traps from the switch, using the specified community name and destination IPv4 or IPv6

address. You can specify up to ten trap receivers (network management stations.) <COMMUNITY NAME> defaults to **public**.

Parameters and options

Event log messages

Optional: Configures the security level of the Event Log messages you want to send as traps to a trap receiver.

- The type of Event Log message that you specify applies only to Event Log messages, not to threshold traps.
- For each configured event level, the switch continues to send threshold traps to all network management stations that have the appropriate threshold level configured.
- If you do not specify an event level, the switch uses the default value (none) and sends no Event Log messages as traps.

none

Sends no Event Log messages.

all

Sends all Event Log messages.

not info

Sends all Event Log messages that are not for information only.

critical

Sends only Event Log messages for critical error conditions.

debug

Sends only Event Log messages needed to troubleshoot network- and switch-level problems.

[inform]

Optional: Configures the switch to send SNMPv2 inform requests when certain events occur.

Configure a trap receiver

To configure a trap receiver in a community named "red-team" with an IP address of 10.28.227.130 to receive only "critical" event log messages, you can enter the following command:

```
switch# snmp-server host 10.28.227.130 red-team critical
```

SNMPv2c inform option

snmp-server host

Syntax

```
[no] snmp-server host [ipv4-addr|ipv6-addr] <COMMUNITY NAME> inform [retries <COUNT>][timeout <INTERVAL>]
```

Description

Enables (or disables) the `inform` option for SNMPv2c on the switch and allows you to configure options for sending SNMP inform requests.

Parameters and options



IMPORTANT:

The `retries` and `timeout` values are not used to send trap requests.

retries

Maximum number of times to resend an `inform` request if no SNMP response is received. Defaults to 3.

timeout

Number of seconds to wait for an acknowledgement before resending the `inform` request. Defaults to 15 seconds.

Verify SNMPv2c inform configuration

```
switch# show snmp-server
```

```
SNMP Communities
```

Community Name	MIB View	Write Access		Manager	Unrestricted
-----	-----	-----	public		

```
Trap Receivers
```

```
Link-Change Traps Enabled on Ports [All] : All
```

```
...
```

Address	Community	Events Sent	Notify Type	Retry	Timeout
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
15.28.333.456	guest	All	inform	3	15

```
Excluded MIBs
```

```
Snmp Response Pdu Source-IP Information
```

```
Selection Policy : Default rfc1517
```

```
Trap Pdu Source-IP Information
```

```
Selection Policy : Configured IP
```

```
Ip Address : 10.10.10.10
```

Configuring SNMPv3 notifications (CLI)

The SNMPv3 notification process allows messages that are passed via SNMP between the switch and a network management station to be authenticated and encrypted.

Procedure

1. Enable SNMPv3 operation on the switch by entering the `snmpv3 enable` command.

When SNMPv3 is enabled, the switch supports:

- Reception of SNMPv3 notification messages (traps and informs)
- Configuration of initial users
- (Optional) Restriction of non-SNMPv3 messages to "read only"

2. Configure SNMPv3 users by entering the `snmpv3 user` command. Each SNMPv3 user configuration is entered in the User Table.

3. Assign SNMPv3 users to security groups according to their level of access privilege by entering the `snmpv3 group` command.
4. Define the name of an SNMPv3 notification configuration by entering the `snmpv3 notify` command.

Syntax:

```
[no] snmpv3 notify <notify_name> tagvalue <tag_name> type {inform|trap}
```

Associates the name of an SNMPv3 notification configuration with a tag name used (internally) in SNMPv3 commands. To delete a notification-to-tag mapping, enter `no snmpv3 notify notify_name`.

<code>notify <notify_name></code>	Specifies the name of an SNMPv3 notification configuration.
<code>tagvalue <tag_name></code>	Specifies the name of a tag value used in other SNMPv3 commands, such as <code>snmpv3 targetaddress params taglist tag_name</code> in Step 5.
<code>type</code>	Specifies the notification type as <code>inform</code> or <code>trap</code> . By default, the notification type is <code>trap</code> .

5. Configure the target address of the SNMPv3 management station to which SNMPv3 informs and traps are sent by entering the `snmpv3 targetaddress` command.

Syntax:

```
[no] snmpv3 targetaddress <ASCII-STR> params <ASCII-STR> <IP-ADDR> taglist <ASCII-STR>
```

Configures the IPv4 or IPv6 address, name, and configuration filename of the SNMPv3 management station to which notification messages are sent.

<code>params <ASCII-STR></code>	<p>Name of the SNMPv3 station's parameters file. The parameters filename configured with <code>params <ASCII-STR></code> must match the <code>params <ASCII-STR></code> value entered with the <code>snmpv3 params</code> command in Step 6.</p> <p>The <code><IP-ADDR></code> sets the IP address of the destination.</p>
<code>taglist <ASCII-STR> [ASCII-STR] ...</code>	<p>Specifies the SNMPv3 notifications (identified by one or more <code>ASCII-STR</code> values) to be sent to the IP address of the SNMPv3 management station.</p> <p>You can enter more than one <code>ASCII-STR</code> value. Each <code>ASCII-STR</code> value must be already associated with the name of an SNMPv3 notification configuration entered with the <code>snmpv3 notify</code> command in Step 4. Use a blank space to separate values.</p> <p>ASCII-STR</p> <p>You can enter up to 103 characters in <code>ASCII-STR</code> entries following the <code>taglist</code> keyword.</p>
<code>[filter {<none debug all not-info critical>}]</code>	(Optional) Configures the type of messages sent to a management station. (Default: none.)
<code>[udp-port < port >]</code>	(Optional) Specifies the UDP port to use. (Default: 162.)

Table Continued

[port-mask < mask >]	(Optional) Specifies a range of UDP ports. (Default: 0.)
[addr-mask < mask >]	(Optional) Specifies a range of IP addresses as destinations for notification messages.(Default: 0.)
[retries < value >]	(Optional) Number of times a notification is retransmitted if no response is received. Range: 1-255.(Default: 3.)
[timeout < value >]	(Optional) Time (in millisecond increments) allowed to receive a response from the target before notification packets are retransmitted. Range: 0-2147483647.[Default: 1500 (15 seconds).]
[max-msg-size < size >]	(Optional) Maximum number of bytes supported in a notification message to the specified target. (Default: 1472)

6. Create a configuration record for the target address with the `snmpv3 params` command.

Syntax:

```
[no] snmpv3 params <ASCII-STR> user <user_name> sec-model <security_model>
message-processing <security_model> <security_service>
```

Applies the configuration parameters and IP address of an SNMPv3 management station (from the `params <ASCII-STR>` value configured with the `snmpv3 targetaddress` command in Step 5) to a specified SNMPv3 user (from the `user <user_name>` value configured with the `snmpv3 user` command in Step 2).

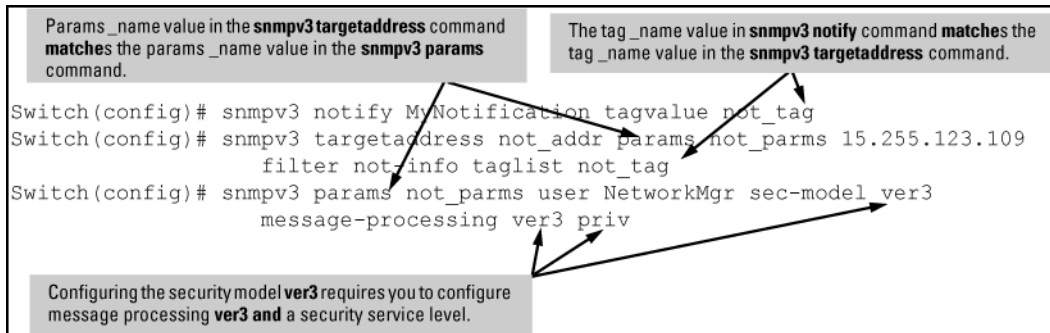
If you enter the `snmpv3 params user` command, you must also configure a security model (`sec_model`) and message processing algorithm (`message-processing`).

{<sec_model [ver1 ver2c ver3>]}	Configures the security model used for SNMPv3 notification messages sent to the management station configured with the <code>snmpv3 targetaddress</code> command in Step 5. If you configure the security model as <code>ver3</code> , you must also configure the message processing value as <code>ver3</code> .
{msg-processing {<ver1 ver2c ver3>} [noauth auth priv]}	Configures the algorithm used to process messages sent to the SNMPv3 target address. If you configure the message processing value as <code>ver3</code> and the security model as <code>ver3</code> , you must also configure a security services level (<code>noauth</code> , <code>auth</code> , or <code>priv</code>).

Example:

An example to how to configure SNMPv3 notification in the following image:

Figure 71: Example: SNMPv3 notification configuration



SNMPv3 community mapping

SNMP communities are supported by the switch to allow management applications that use version 2c or version 1 to access the switch.

snmpv3 community

Syntax

```
[no] snmpv3 community
```

Description

Maps or removes a mapping of a community name to a group access level. To remove a mapping you need to specify only the `index_name` parameter.

Parameters and options

index <INDEX_NAME>

An index number or title for the mapping. The values of 1 to 5 are reserved and can not be mapped.

name <COMMUNITY_NAME>

The community name that is being mapped to a group access level.

sec-name <SECURITY_NAME>

The group level to which the community is being mapped.

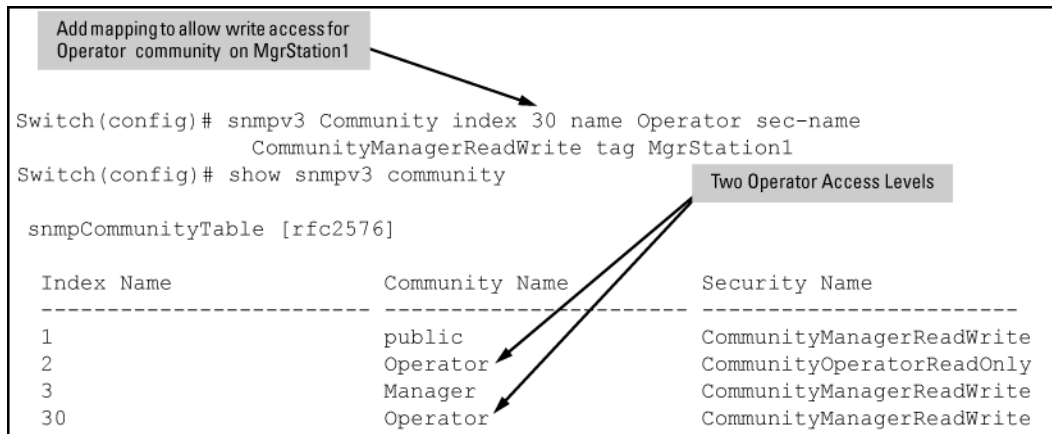
tag <TAG_VALUE>

This is used to specify which target address may have access by way of this index reference.

Assign a community to a group

Figure 72: Assigning a community to a group access level on page 289 shows the assigning of the Operator community on MgrStation1 to the CommunityOperatorReadWrite group. Any other Operator has an access level of CommunityOperatorReadOnly.

Figure 72: Assigning a community to a group access level



Running configuration changes and SNMP traps

Syntax

```
[no] snmp-server enable trapsfig-change transmission-interval <0-4294967295>
```

Description

Enables SNMP traps on running configurations.

Parameters and options

running-con

Enables SNMP traps being sent when changes to the running configuration file are made. Defaults to disabled.

transmission-interval <0-2147483647>

Controls the egress rate for generating SNMP traps for the running configuration file. The value configured specifies the time interval in seconds that is allowed between the transmission of two consecutive traps.

None of the running configuration change events that occur within the specified interval generate SNMP traps, although they are logged in the Configuration Changes History Table.

A value of 0 (zero) means there is no limit; traps can be sent for every running configuration change event. Defaults to 0.

Startup configuration changes and SNMP traps

You can send a specific SNMP trap for any configuration change made in the switch's startup configuration file when the change is written to flash. Changes to the configuration file can occur when executing a CLI write command, executing an SNMP set command directly using SNMP, or when using the WebAgent

**NOTE:**

A log message is always generated when a startup configuration change occurs. An example log entry is:

```
I 07/06/10 18:21:39 02617 mgr: Startup configuration changed by SNMP. New seq. number 8
```

The corresponding trap message is sent if the `snmp-server enable traps startupconfig- change` command is configured.

snmp-server enable traps startup-config-change

Syntax

```
snmp-server enable traps startup-config-change
```

Description

Enables notification of a change to the startup configuration. The change event is logged. Default: Disabled

Startup configuration changes

The number that displays when `show config` is executed is global for the switch and represents the startup configuration sequence number.

Figure 73: Notification of changes to the Startup Configuration file

```
Switch(config)# snmp-server enable traps startup-config-change
```

```
Switch(config)# show config
```

```
Startup configuration: 16
```

The number "16" is global for the switch and represents the startup configuration sequence number.

```
; J8697A Configuration Editor; Created on release #K.14.54
```

```
hostname "Switch"
```

```
module 1 type J8702A
```

```
vlan 1
```

```
    name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
```

```
    untagged A1-A24, B1-B10
```

```
    ip address dhcp-bootp
```

```
    exit
```

```
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
```

Fields in the trap when making a change

Fields in the trap when a change is made via SNMP (station ip=0xAC161251 (172.22.18.81), no username is set, and the new sequence number is 16.)

Figure 74: Fields when the SNMP trap is set

```
+ Internet Protocol, Src: 172.22.18.57 (172.22.18.57), Dst: 172.22.18.81 (172.22.18.81)
+ User Datagram Protocol, Src Port: snmp (161), Dst Port: snmptrap (162)
- Simple Network Management Protocol
  version: version-1 (0)
  community: public
- data: trap (4)
  trap
    enterprise: 1.3.6.1.4.1.11.2.14.11.5.1.7.1.29.1 (SNMPv2-SMI::enterprises.11.2.14.11.5.1.7.1.29.1)
    agent-addr: 1/2.22.18.57 (1/2.22.18.57)
    generic trap: enterpriseSpecific (6)
    specific-trap: 6
    time-stamp: 65437
    variable-bindings: 6 items
      + SNMPv2-SMI::enterprises.11.2.14.11.5.1.7.1.29.1.9 (1.3.6.1.4.1.11.2.14.11.5.1.7.1.29.1.9): 16
      + SNMPv2-SMI::enterprises.11.2.14.11.5.1.7.1.29.1.0.1 (1.3.6.1.4.1.11.2.14.11.5.1.7.1.29.1.0.1): 2
      + SNMPv2-SMI::enterprises.11.2.14.11.5.1.7.1.29.1.0.2 (1.3.6.1.4.1.11.2.14.11.5.1.7.1.29.1.0.2): 4
      + SNMPv2-SMI::enterprises.11.2.14.11.5.1.7.1.29.1.0.3 (1.3.6.1.4.1.11.2.14.11.5.1.7.1.29.1.0.3): AC161251
      + SNMPv2-SMI::enterprises.11.2.14.11.5.1.7.1.29.1.0.4 (1.3.6.1.4.1.11.2.14.11.5.1.7.1.29.1.0.4): <MISSING>
      + SNMPv2-SMI::enterprises.11.2.14.11.5.1.7.1.29.1.0.5 (1.3.6.1.4.1.11.2.14.11.5.1.7.1.29.1.0.5): 1
```

Source IP address for SNMP notifications

When you use the `snmp-server response-source` and `snmp-server trap-source` commands, note the following behavior:

- The `snmp-server response-source` and `snmp-server trap-source` commands configure the source IP address for IPv4 interfaces only.
- You must manually configure the `snmp-server response-source` value if you wish to change the default user-defined interface IP address that is used as the source IP address in SNMP traps (RFC 1517.)
- The values configured with the `snmp-server response-source` and `snmp-server trap-source` commands are applied globally to all interfaces that are sending SNMP responses or SNMP trap PDUs.
- Only the source IP address field in the IP header of the SNMP response PDU can be changed.
- Only the source IP address field in the IP header and the SNMPv1 Agent Address field of the SNMP trap PDU can be changed.

snmp-server response-source

Syntax

```
[no] snmp-server response-source [dst-ip-of-request <ipv4-addr|ipv6-addr> loopback <0-7>]
```

Description

Specifies the source IP address of the SNMP response PDU. The default SNMP response PDU uses the IP address of the active interface from which the SNMP response was sent as the source IP address. Defaults to Interface IP address.

Parameters and options

no

The **no** form of the command resets the switch to the default behavior (compliant with rfc-1517.)

dst-ip-of-request

Destination IP address of the SNMP request PDU that is used as the source IP address in an SNMP response PDU.

ipv4-addr|ipv6-addr

User-defined interface IP address that is used as the source IP address in an SNMP response PDU. Both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are supported.

loopback 0-7

IP address configured for the specified loopback interface that is used as the source IP address in an SNMP response PDU. If multiple loopback IP addresses are configured, the lowest alphanumeric address is used.

Destination interface IP as source IP

To use the IP address of the destination interface on which an SNMP request was received as the source IP address in the IP header of SNMP traps and replies, enter the following command:

```
switch# snmp-server response-source dst-ip-of-request
```

snmp-server trap-source

Syntax

```
[no] snmp-server trap-source ipv4-addr loopback0-7
```

Description

Specifies the source IP address to be used for a trap PDU. To configure the switch to use a specified source IP address in generated trap PDUs, enter the **snmp-server trap-source** command. Defaults to the interface IP address in generated trap PDUs.

Parameters and options

no

The **no** form of the command resets the switch to the default behavior (compliant with rfc-1517.)

dst-ip-of-request

Destination IP address of the SNMP request PDU that is used as the source IP address in an SNMP response PDU.

ipv4-addr

User-defined interface IPv4 address that is used as the source IP address in generated traps. IPv6 addresses are not supported.

loopback 0-7

IP address configured for the specified loopback interface that is used as the source IP address in a generated trap PDU. If multiple loopback IP addresses are configured, the lowest alphanumeric address is used.

SNMP replies and traps configuration

To verify the configuration of the interface IP address used as the source IP address in IP headers for SNMP replies and traps sent from the switch, enter the `show snmp-server` command to display the SNMP policy configuration, as shown in **Figure 75: Display of source IP address configuration** on page 293.

Figure 75: Display of source IP address configuration

```
Switch(config)# show snmp-server

SNMP Communities

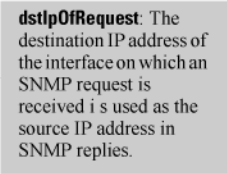
Community Name  MIB View Write Access
-----
public          Manager Unrestricted

Trap Receivers
Link-Change Traps Enabled on Ports [All] : All

...

Excluded MIBs
Snmp Response Pdu Source-IP Information
Selection Policy : dstIpOfRequest

Trap Pdu Source-IP Information
Selection Policy : Configured IP
Ip Address       : 10.10.10.10
```



dstIpOfRequest: The destination IP address of the interface on which an SNMP request is received is used as the source IP address in SNMP replies.

SNMP notification configuration

show snmp-server

Syntax

```
show snmp-server
```

Description

Displays the currently configured notification settings for versions SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c traps, including SNMP communities, trap receivers, link-change traps, and network security notifications.

show snmp-server output

In the following example, the `show snmp-server` command output shows that the switch has been configured to send SNMP traps and notifications to management stations that belong to the "public," "red-team," and "blue-team" communities.

Figure 76: Display of SNMP notification configuration

```
Switch(config)# show snmp-server
```

SNMP Communities		
Community Name	MIB View	Write Access
public	Operator	Restricted
blue-team	Manager	Unrestricted
red-team	Manager	Unrestricted

Trap Receivers

Link-Change Traps Enabled on Ports [All] : All

Trap Category	Current Trap Configuration
SNMP Authentication	extended
Password change	enabled
Login failures	enabled
Port-Security	enabled
Authorization Server Contact	enabled
ARP Protection	enabled
DHCP Snooping	enabled

Address	Community	Events Sent	Notify Type	Retry	Timeout
10.28.227.200	public	All	trap	3	15
10.28.227.105	red-team	Critical	trap	3	15
10.28.227.120	blue-team	Not-INFO	trap	3	15
...					

Assign users to groups

snmpv3 group

Syntax

```
snmpv3 group
```

Description

Sets the group access level for the user by assigning the user to a group. Assigns or removes a user to a security group for access rights to the switch. To delete an entry, include all parameters in the command.

Parameters and options

group <GROUP_NAME>

Identifies the group that has the privileges that will be assigned to the user.

user <USER_NAME>

Identifies the user to be added to the access group. This must match the user name added with the `snmpv3 user` command.

sec-model <aver1|ver2|ver3>

Defines which security model to use for the added user. An SNMPv3 access group should use only the ver3 security model.

snmpv3 group

Figure 77: Using snmpv3 group

Add NetworkAdmin to operator noauth group

```
Switch(config)# snmpv3 group operatornoauth user NetworkAdmin sec-model ver3
Switch(config)# snmpv3 group managerpriv user NetworkMgr sec-model ver3
Switch(config)# show snmpv3 group
```

Add NetworkMgr to managerpriv group

Status and Counters - SNHP v3 Global Configuration Information

Security Name	Security Model	Group Name	Pre-assigned groups for access by Version 2c and version 1 management applications
CommunityManagerReadOnly	ver1	ComManagerR	Pre-assigned groups for access by Version 2c and version 1 management applications
CommunityManagerReadWrite	ver1	ComManagerRW	
CommunityOperatorReadOnly	ver1	ComOperatorRW	
CommunityOperatorReadWrite	ver1	ComOperatorRW	
CommunityManagerReadOnly	ver2c	ComManagerR	
CommunityManagerReadWrite	ver2c	ComManagerRW	
CommunityOperatorReadOnly	ver2c	ComOperatorRW	
CommunityOperatorReadWrite	ver2c	ComOperatorRW	
NetworkMgr	ver3	ManagerPriv	
NetworkAdmin	ver3	OperatorNoAuth	

snmp-server community

Syntax

```
[no] snmp-server community community-name
```

Description

Configures a new community name.

- If you do not also specify `operator` or `manager`, the switch automatically assigns the community to the `operator` MIB view.
- If you do not specify `restricted` or `unrestricted`, the switch automatically assigns the community to `restricted` (read-only) access.

Parameters and options

no

The `no` form uses only the `community-name` variable and deletes the named community from the switch.

operator|manager

Optionally assigns an access level.

- At the `operator` level, the community can access all MIB objects except the CONFIG MIB.
- At the `manager` level, the community can access all MIB objects.

restricted|unrestricted

Optionally assigns MIB access type.

- Assigning the `restricted` type allows the community to read MIB variables, but not to set them.
- Assigning the `unrestricted` type allows the community to read and set MIB variables.

snmp-server community

This example adds the following communities and access level/types:

Community	Access Level	Type of Access
red-team	manager (Access to all MIB objects.)	unrestricted (read/write)
blue-team	operator (Access to all MIB objects except the CONFIG MIB.)	restricted (read-only)

```
switch# snmp-server community red-team
      manager unrestricted
switch# snmp-server community blue-team
      operator restricted
```

no snmp-server community

Eliminates a previously configured community named "gold-team."

```
switch(config) # no snmp-server community gold-team
```

Community names and values

The `snmp-server` command enables you to add SNMP communities with either default or specific access attributes, and to delete specific communities.

Syntax

```
show snmp-server <COMMUNITY-STRING>
```

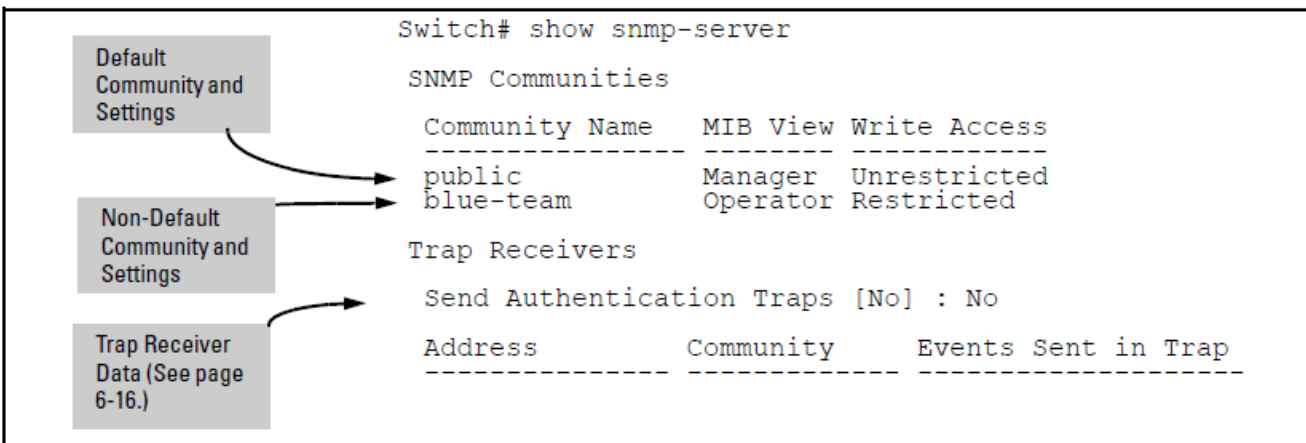
Description

This command lists the data for currently configured SNMP community names along with trap receivers and the setting for authentication traps.

show snmp-server

Lists the data for all communities in a switch; that is, both the default "public" community name and another community named "blue-team."

Figure 78: SNMP community listing with two communities



show snmp-server public

To list the data for only one community, such as the "public" community, use the above command with the community name included. For example:

```
switch# show snmp-server public
```

Enabling or disabling notification/traps for network security failures and other security events (CLI)

Syntax:

```
[no] snmp-server enable traps [arp-protect | auth-server-fail | dhcp-server
| dhcp-snooping | dhcpv6-snooping | dyn-ip-lockdown | dyn-ipv6-lockdown | link-change
| login-failure-mgr | mac-count-notify | mac-notify | macsec | nd-snooping | password-change-mgr
| port-security | running-config-change | snmp-authentication | startup-config-change | vsf ]
```

Enables or disables sending one of the security notification types listed below to configured trap receivers. (Unless otherwise stated, all of the following notifications are enabled in the default configuration.)

The notification sends a trap:

arp-protect	Traps for Dynamic ARP Protection.
auth-server-fail	Traps reporting authentication server unreachable.
dhcp-server	Traps for DHCP-Server.
dhcp-snooping	Traps for DHCP-Snooping.
dhcpv6-snooping	Set the traps for DHCPv6 snooping.

Table Continued

dyn-ip-lockdown	Traps for Dynamic Ip Lockdown.
dyn-ipv6-lockdown	Enable traps for Dynamic IPv6 Lockdown.
link-change	Traps for link-up and link-down.
login-failure-mgr	Traps for management interface login failure.
mac-count-notify	Traps for MAC addresses learned on the specified ports exceeds the threshold.
mac-notify	Traps for (learned/removed) MAC address table changes.
macsec	Configure the traps for MACsec notifications.
nd-snooping	Set the trap for nd snooping
password-change-mgr	Traps for management interface password change.
port-security	Traps for port access authentication failure.
running-config-change	Traps for running config change.
snmp-authentication [extended standard]	Select RFC-1157 (standard) or ICF-SNMP (extended) traps.
Startup-config-change	Traps for changes to the startup configuration.
vsf	Enable traps for the VSF functionality.

To determine the specific cause of a security event, check the Event Log in the console interface to see why a trap was sent. For more information, see *"Using the Event Log for Troubleshooting Switch Problems"*.

Viewing the current configuration for network security notifications (CLI)

Enter the `show snmp-server traps` command, as shown in the following example. Note that command output is a subset of the information displayed with the `show snmp-server` command in **Display of SNMP notification configuration**.

Display of configured network security notifications

```
switch(config)# show snmp-server traps
```

```
Trap Receivers
```

```
Link-Change Traps Enabled on Ports [All] : A1-A24
```

Traps Category	Current Status
SNMP Authentication	: Extended
Password change	: Enabled
Login failures	: Enabled
Port-Security	: Enabled
Authorization Server Contact	: Enabled
DHCP Snooping	: Enabled

```
Dynamic ARP Protection      : Enabled
Dynamic IP Lockdown        : Enabled
```

Address	Community	Events Sent	Notify Type	Retry	Timeout
15.255.5.225	public	All	trap	3	15
2001:0db8:0000:0001 :0000:0000:0000:0121	user_1	All	trap	3	15

Excluded MIBs

Link-Change Traps

snmp-server enable traps link-change

Syntax

```
[no] snmp-server enable traps link-change<PORT-LIST> [all]
```

Description

By default, a switch is enabled to send a trap when the link state on a port changes from up to down (linkDown) or down to up (linkUp.) This command allows you to reconfigure the switch to send link-change traps to configured trap receivers.

Parameters and options

all

Enables or disables link-change traps on all ports on the switch

Viewing SNMP notification configuration (CLI)

Syntax:

```
show snmp-server
```

Displays the currently configured notification settings for versions SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c traps, including SNMP communities, trap receivers, link-change traps, and network security notifications.

Example:

In the following Example:, the `show snmp-server` command output shows that the switch has been configured to send SNMP traps and notifications to management stations that belong to the "public," "red-team," and "blue-team" communities.

Figure 79: Display of SNMP notification configuration

```
Switch(config)# show snmp-server
```

SNMP Communities		
Community Name	MIB View	Write Access
public	Operator	Restricted
blue-team	Manager	Unrestricted
red-team	Manager	Unrestricted

Trap Receivers

Link-Change Traps Enabled on Ports [All] : All

Trap Category	Current Trap Configuration
SNMP Authentication	extended
Password change	enabled
Login failures	enabled
Port-Security	enabled
Authorization Server Contact	enabled
ARP Protection	enabled
DHCP Snooping	enabled

Address	Community	Events Sent	Notify Type	Retry	Timeout
10.28.227.200	public	All	trap	3	15
10.28.227.105	red-team	Critical	trap	3	15
10.28.227.120	blue-team	Not-INFO	trap	3	15

...

Listening mode

snmp-server listen

Syntax

```
snmp-server listen [oobm|data|both]
```

Description

Enables or disables inbound SNMP access on a switch. The `listen` parameter is not available on switches that do not have a separate out-of-band management port.

Parameters and options

no

Disables inbound SNMP access.

listen

Available only on switches that have a separate out-of-band management port. Defaults to both.

oobm

Inbound SNMP access is enabled only on the out-of-band management port.

data

Inbound SNMP access is enabled only on the data ports.

both

Inbound SNMP access is enabled on both the out-of-band management port and on the data ports.

CDP configuration

CDP mode

cdp moden

Syntax

```
[no] cdp moden[pass-through|rxonly]
```

Description

Sets the selected mode of CDP processing. Use this command to set the CDP mode to pass-through or receive only.

CDPv2 for voice transmission

Legacy Cisco VOIP phones only support manual configuration or using CDPv2 for voice VLAN auto-configuration. LLDP-MED is not supported. CDPv2 exchanges information such as software version, device capabilities, and voice VLAN information between directly connected devices such as a VOIP phone and a switch.

When the Cisco VOIP phone boots up (or sometimes periodically), it queries the switch and advertises information about itself using CDPv2. The switch receives the VOIP VLAN Query TLV (type 0x0f) from the phone and then immediately sends the voice VLAN ID in a reply packet to the phone using the VLAN Reply TLV (type 0x0e.) The phone then begins tagging all packets with the advertised voice VLAN ID.

Configure a voice VLAN

A voice VLAN must be configured before the voice VLAN can be advertised. For example, to configure VLAN 10 as a voice VLAN tagged for ports 1 through 10, enter these commands:

```
switch# vlan 10
switch(vlan-10)# tagged 1-10
switch(vlan-10)# voice
switch(vlan-10)# exit
```

The switch CDP packet includes these TLVs:

- CDP Version: 2
- CDP TTL: 180 seconds
- Checksum
- Capabilities (type 0x04): 0x0008 (is a switch)
- Native VLAN: The PVID of the port
- VOIP VLAN Reply (type 0xe): voice VLAN ID (same as advertised by LLDPMED)

- Trust Bitmap (type 0x12): 0x00
- Untrusted port COS (type 0x13): 0x00

CDP should be enabled and running on the interfaces to which the phones are connected. Use the `cdp enable` and `cdp run` commands.

The `pre-standard-voice` option for the `cdp mode` command allows the configuration of CDP mode so that it responds to received CDP queries from a VoIP phone.

cdp mode pre-standard-voice

Syntax

```
[no] cdp mode pre-standard-voice [admin-status <PORT-LIST> [tx_rx | rxonly]]
```

Description

Enable CDP-compatible voice VLAN discovery with pre-standard VoIP phones. In this mode, when a CDP VoIP VLAN query is received on a port from pre-standard phones, the switch replies back with a CDP packet that contains the VID of the voice VLAN associated with that port.

Not recommended for phones that support LLDP-MED.

Parameters and options

pre-standard-voice

Enables CDP-compatible voice VLAN discovery with pre-standard VoIP phones.

admin-status

Sets the port in either transmit and receive mode, or receive mode only.

Default: tx-rx.

<PORT-LIST>

Sets this port in transmit and receive mode, or receive mode only.

rxonly

Enable receive-only mode of CDP processing.

tx_rx

Enable transmit and receive mode.

cdp mode pre-standard-voice

```
Switch# cdp mode pre-standard-voice admin-status A5 rxonly
```

show cdp without cdp run

Show CDP output when CDP Run is disabled.

```
Switch(config)# show cdp
Global CDP information
Enable CDP [yes] : no
```

show cdp with cdp run and sdp

show cdp output when cdp run and sdp mode are enabled.

```
Switch# show cdp
Global CDP Information
Enable CDP [Yes] : Yes
CDP mode [rxonly] : pre-standard-voice
CDP Hold Time [180] : 180
CDP Transmit Interval [60] : 60
Port CDP admin-status
-----
A1   enabled   rxonly
A2   enabled   tx_rx
A3   enabled   tx_rx
```

show cdp with cdp run and cdp mode rxonly

show cdp output when cdp run and cdp mode rxonly are enabled. When CDP mode is not pre-standard voice, the admin-status column is not displayed.

```
switch# show cdp
Global CDP Information
Enable CDP [Yes] : Yes
CDP mode [rxonly] : rxonly
Port CDP
-----
A1   enabled
A2   enabled
A3   enabled
```

show running-config

show running-config when admin-status is configured.

```
switch# show running-config
Running configuration:
; J9477A Configuration Editor; Created on release #K.16.09.0000x
; Ver #03:01:1f:ef:f2
hostname "Switch"
module 1 type J9307A
cdp mode pre-standard-voice admin-status A5 RxOnly
```

CDP operation on individual ports

In the factory-default configuration, the switch has all ports enabled to receive CDP packets. Disabling CDP on a port causes it to drop inbound CDP packets without recording their data in the CDP Neighbors table.

cdp enable

Syntax

```
[no] cdp enable [e] <PORT-LIST>
```

Description

Enable or disable ports to receive CDP packets.

Disable CDP on port A1

```
switch# no cdp enable a1
```

CDP Operation

cdp run

Syntax

```
[no] cdp run
```

Description

Enables or disables CDP read-only operation on the switch. Defaults to enabled.

Parameters and options

no

Disabling CDP operation clears the switch's CDP Neighbors table and causes the switch to drop inbound CDP packets from other devices without entering the data in the CDP Neighbors table.

run

Enabling CDP operation (the default) on the switch causes the switch to add entries to its CDP Neighbors table for any CDP packets it receives from other neighboring CDP devices.

Disable CDP read-only

```
switch# no cdp run
```

When CDP is disabled:

- `show cdp neighbors` displays an empty CDP Neighbors table
- `show cdp` displays

Global CDP information

Enable CDP [Yes]: No

CDP information filter

In some environments it is desirable to be able to configure a switch to handle CDP packets by filtering out the MAC address learns from untagged VLAN traffic from IP phones. This means that normal protocol processing occurs for the packets, but the addresses associated with these packets is not learned or reported by the software address management components. This enhancement also filters out the MAC address learns from LLDP and 802.1x EAPOL packets on untagged VLANs.

The feature is configured per-port.

CDP switch configuration view

show cdp

Syntax

```
show cdp
```

Description

Lists the global and per-port CDP configuration of the switch. CDP is shown as enabled/disabled both globally on the switch and on a per-port basis.

Show CDP with the default CDP configuration

This example shows the default CDP configuration.

```
switch# show cdp

Global CDP information

  Enable CDP [Yes] : Yes (Receive Only)

Port CDP
----
1      enabled
2      enabled
3      enabled
.      .
.      .
.      .
```

CDP neighbors switch table view

show cdp neighbors

Syntax

```
show cdp neighbors
```

Description

Lists the neighboring CDP devices the switch detects, with a subset of the information collected from the device's CDP packet. Devices are listed by the port on which they were detected.

Parameters and options

[e] <PORT-NUM> [detail]

Lists the CDP device connected to the specified port (allows only one port at a time). Using `detail` provides a longer list of details on the CDP device the switch detects on the specified port.

[detail [e] <PORT-NUM>]

Provides a list of the details for all of the CDP devices the switch detects. Using `port-num` produces a list of details for the selected port.

CDP neighbors table listing

This example displays the CDP devices that the switch has detected by receiving their CDP packets.

```
Switch# show cdp neighbors
```

CDP neighbors information

Port	Device ID	Platform	Capability
1	Accounting (0030c1-7fcc40)	J4812A Switch. . .	S
2	Research1-1 (0060b0-889e43)	J4121A Switch. . .	S
4	Support (0060b0_761a45)	J4121A Switch. . .	S
7	Marketing (0030c5_33dc59)	J4313A Switch. . .	S
12	Mgmt NIC(099a05-09df9b)	NIC Model X666	H
12	Mgmt NIC(099a05-09df11)	NIC Model X666	H

LLDP configuration

LLDP and CDP data management

This section describes points to note regarding LLDP and CDP (Cisco Discovery Protocol) data received by the switch from other devices. LLDP operation includes both transmitting LLDP packets to neighbor devices and reading LLDP packets received from neighbor devices. CDP operation is limited to reading incoming CDP packets from neighbor devices. (switches do not generate CDP packets.)

Incoming CDP and LLDP packets tagged for VLAN 1 are processed even if VLAN 1 does not contain any ports. VLAN 1 must be present, but it is typically present as the default VLAN for the switch.



IMPORTANT:

The switch may pick up CDP and LLDP multicast packets from VLAN 1 even when CDP- and /or LLDP-enabled ports are not members of VLAN 1.

LLDP and CDP neighbor data

With both LLDP and (read-only) CDP enabled on a switch port, the port can read both LLDP and CDP advertisements, and stores the data from both types of advertisements in its neighbor database. (The switch **stores** only CDP data that has a corresponding field in the LLDP neighbor database.) The neighbor database itself can be read by either LLDP or CDP methods or by using the `show lldp` commands. Take note of the following rules and conditions:

- If the switch receives both LLDP and CDP advertisements on the same port from the same neighbor, the switch stores this information as two separate entries if the advertisements have different chassis ID and port ID information.
- If the chassis and port ID information are the same, the switch stores this information as a single entry. That is, LLDP data overwrites the corresponding CDP data in the neighbor database if the chassis and port ID information in the LLDP and CDP advertisements received from the same device is the same.
- Data read from a CDP packet does not support some LLDP fields, such as "System Descr," "SystemCapSupported," and "ChassisType." For such fields, LLDP assigns relevant default values. Also:
 - The LLDP "System Descr" field maps to CDP's "Version" and "Platform" fields.
 - The switch assigns "ChassisType" and "PortType" fields as "local" for both the LLDP and the CDP advertisements it receives.
 - Both LLDP and CDP support the "System Capability" TLV. However, LLDP differentiates between what a device is capable of supporting and what it is actually supporting, and separates the two types of information into subelements of the System Capability TLV. CDP has only a single field for this data. Thus, when CDP System Capability data is mapped to LLDP, the same value appears in both LLDP System Capability fields.
 - System Name and Port Descr are not communicated by CDP, and thus are not included in the switch's Neighbors database.



IMPORTANT: Because switches do not generate CDP packets, they are not represented in the CDP data collected by any neighbor devices running CDP.

A switch with CDP disabled forwards the CDP packets it receives from other devices, but does not store the CDP information from these packets in its own MIB.

LLDP data transmission/collection and CDP data collection are both enabled in the switch's default configuration. In this state, an SNMP network management application designed to discover devices running either CDP or

LLDP can retrieve neighbor information from the switch regardless of whether LLDP or CDP is used to collect the device-specific information.

Protocol state	Packet generation	Inbound data management	Inbound packet forwarding
CDP Enabled	N/A	Store inbound CDP data.	No forwarding of inbound CDP packets.
CDP Disabled	N/A	No storage of CDP data from neighbor devices.	Floods inbound CDP packets from connected devices to outbound ports.
LLDP Enabled ¹	Generates and transmits LLDP packets out all ports on the switch.	Store inbound LLDP data.	No forwarding of inbound LLDP packets.
LLDP Disabled	No packet generation.	No storage of LLDP data from neighbor devices.	No forwarding of inbound LLDP packets.

CDP operations

By default the switches have CDP enabled on each port. This is a read-only capability, meaning that the switch can receive and store information about adjacent CDP devices but does not generate CDP packets.

When a CDP-enabled switch receives a CDP packet from another CDP device, it enters that device's data in the CDP Neighbors table, along with the port number where the data was received—and does not forward the packet. The switch also periodically purges the table of any entries that have expired. (The hold time for any data entry in the switch's CDP Neighbors table is configured in the device transmitting the CDP packet and cannot be controlled in the switch receiving the packet.) A switch reviews the list of CDP neighbor entries every three seconds and purges any expired entries.



NOTE:

For details on how to use an SNMP utility to retrieve information from the switch's CDP Neighbors table maintained in the switch's MIB, see the documentation provided with the particular SNMP utility.

LLDP

To standardize device discovery on all switches, LLDP will be implemented while offering limited read-only support for CDP, as documented in this manual. For the latest information on your switch model, consult the Release Notes (available on the Networking website.) If LLDP has not yet been implemented (or if you are running an older version of software), consult a previous version of the *Management and Configuration Guide* for device discovery details.

- LLDP (Link Layer Discovery Protocol): Provides a standards-based method for enabling the switches covered in this guide to advertise themselves to adjacent devices and to learn about adjacent LLDP devices.
- LLDP-MED (LLDP Media Endpoint Discovery): Provides an extension to LLDP and is designed to support VoIP deployments.



NOTE: LLDP-MED is an extension for LLDP, and the switch requires that LLDP be enabled as a prerequisite to LLDP-MED operation.

An SNMP utility can progressively discover LLDP devices in a network by:

1. Reading a given device's Neighbors table (in the Management Information Base, or MIB) to learn about other, neighboring LLDP devices.
2. Using the information learned in step 1 to find and read the neighbor devices' Neighbors tables to learn about additional devices, and so on.

Also, by using show commands to access the switch's neighbor database for information collected by an individual switch, system administrators can learn about other devices connected to the switch, including device type (capability) and some configuration information. In VoIP deployments using LLDP-MED on the switches, additional support unique to VoIP applications is also available.

LLDP operations

An LLDP packet contains data about the transmitting switch and port. The switch advertises itself to adjacent (neighbor) devices by transmitting LLDP data packets out all ports on which outbound LLDP is enabled and by reading LLDP advertisements from neighbor devices on ports that are inbound LLDP-enabled. (LLDP is a one-way protocol and does not include any acknowledgement mechanism.) An LLDP-enabled port receiving LLDP packets inbound from neighbor devices stores the packet data in a Neighbor database (MIB.)

LLDP-MED

This capability is an extension to LLDP and is available on the switches. See **LLDP-MED** on page 314.

Packet boundaries in a network topology

- Where multiple LLDP devices are directly connected, an outbound LLDP packet travels only to the next LLDP device. An LLDP-capable device does not forward LLDP packets to any other devices, regardless of whether they are LLDP-enabled.
- An intervening hub or repeater forwards the LLDP packets it receives in the same manner as any other multicast packets it receives. Thus, two LLDP switches joined by a hub or repeater handle LLDP traffic in the same way that they would if directly connected.
- Any intervening 802.1D device or Layer-3 device that is either LLDP-unaware or has disabled LLDP operation drops the packet.

LLDP operation configuration options

In the default configuration, LLDP is enabled and in both transmit and receive mode on all active ports. The LLDP configuration includes global settings, which apply to all active ports on the switch, and per-port settings, which affect only the operation of the specified ports.

The commands in the LLDP sections affect both LLDP and LLDP-MED operation.

LLDP on the switch

In the default configuration, LLDP is globally enabled on the switch. To prevent transmission or receipt of LLDP traffic, you can disable LLDP operation.

LLDP-MED

In the default configuration for the switches, LLDP-MED is enabled by default which requires that LLDP is also enabled.

LLDP packet transmissions to neighbor devices

On a global basis, you can increase or decrease the frequency of outbound LLDP advertisements.

Time-To-Live for LLDP packets sent to neighbors

On a global basis, you can increase or decrease the time that the information in an LLDP packet outbound from the switch will be maintained in a neighbor LLDP device.

Transmit and receive mode

With LLDP enabled, the switch periodically transmits an LLDP advertisement (packet) out each active port enabled for outbound LLDP transmissions and receives LLDP advertisements on each active port enabled to receive LLDP traffic (**Configuring per-port transmit and receive modes** on page 316.) Per-port configuration options include four modes:

- Transmit and receive (`tx_rx`): This is the default setting on all ports. It enables a given port to both transmit and receive LLDP packets and to store the data from received (inbound) LLDP packets in the switch's MIB.
- Transmit only (`txonly`): This setting enables a port to transmit LLDP packets that can be read by LLDP neighbors. However, the port drops inbound LLDP packets from LLDP neighbors without reading them. This prevents the switch from learning about LLDP neighbors on that port.
- Receive only (`rxonly`): This setting enables a port to receive and read LLDP packets from LLDP neighbors and to store the packet data in the switch's MIB. However, the port does not transmit outbound LLDP packets. This prevents LLDP neighbors from learning about the switch through that port.
- Disable (`disable`): This setting disables LLDP packet transmissions and reception on a port. In this state, the switch does not use the port for either learning about LLDP neighbors or informing LLDP neighbors of its presence.

SNMP notification

You can enable the switch to send a notification to any configured SNMP trap receiver(s) when the switch detects a remote LLDP data change on an LLDP-enabled port (**SNMP notification support** on page 313.)

Per-port (outbound) data options

The following table lists the information the switch can include in the per-port, outbound LLDP packets it generates. In the default configuration, all outbound LLDP packets include this information in the TLVs transmitted to neighbor devices. However, you can configure LLDP advertisements on a per-port basis to omit some of this information (**Remote management address for outbound LLDP advertisements** on page 317.)

Table 20: Data available for basic LLDP advertisements

Data type	Configuration options	Default	Description
Time-to-Live	¹ .	120 Seconds	The length of time an LLDP neighbor retains the advertised data before discarding it.
Chassis Type ²	N/A	Always Enabled	Indicates the type of identifier used for Chassis ID.
Chassis ID ³	N/A	Always Enabled	Uses base MAC address of the switch.

Table Continued

Data type	Configuration options	Default	Description
Port Type ⁴³	N/A	Always Enabled	Uses "Local," meaning assigned locally by LLDP.
Port Id ³	N/A	Always Enabled	Uses port number of the physical port. This is an internal number reflecting the reserved slot/port position in the chassis.
Remote Management Address			
Type ³	N/A	Always Enabled	Shows the network address type.
Address ⁵	Default or Configured	Uses a default address selection method unless an optional address is configured.	
System Name ³	Enable/Disable	Enabled	Uses the switch's assigned name.
System Description ³	Enable/Disable	Enabled	Includes switch model name and running software version, and ROM version.
Port Description ³	Enable/Disable	Enabled	Uses the physical port identifier.
System capabilities supported ³	Enable/Disable	Enabled	Identifies the switch's primary capabilities (bridge, router.)
System capabilities enabled ^{6 3}	Enable/Disable	Enabled	Identifies the primary switch functions that are enabled, such as routing.

¹ The packet time-to-live value is included in LLDP data packets. (See **Changing the time-to-live for transmitted advertisements** on page 322.)

² Subelement of the Chassis ID TLV.

³ Populated with data captured internally by the switch. For more on these data types, refer to the IEEE P802.1AB Standard.

⁴ Subelement of the Port ID TLV.

⁵ Subelement of the Remote-Management-Address TLV.

⁶ Subelement of the System Capability TLV.

Remote management address

The switch always includes an IP address in its LLDP advertisements. This can be either an address selected by a default process or an address configured for inclusion in advertisements.

Debug logging

You can enable LLDP debug logging to a configured debug destination (Syslog server, a terminal device, or both) by executing the `debug lldp` command. Note that the switch's Event Log does not record usual LLDP update messages.

Options for reading LLDP information collected by the switch

You can extract LLDP information from the switch to identify adjacent LLDP devices. Options include:

- Using the switch's `show lldp info` command options to display data collected on adjacent LLDP devices—as well as the local data the switch is transmitting to adjacent LLDP devices (**Global LLDP, port admin, and SNMP notification status** on page 329.)
- Using an SNMP application that is designed to query the Neighbors MIB for LLDP data to use in device discovery and topology mapping.
- Using the `walkmib` command to display a listing of the LLDP MIB objects

LLDP and LLDP-MED standards compatibility

The operation covered by this section is compatible with these standards:

- IEEE P802.1AB
- RFC 2922 (PTOPO, or Physical Topology MIB)
- RFC 2737 (Entity MIB)
- RFC 2863 (Interfaces MIB)
- ANSI/TIA-1057/D6 (LLDP-MED; refer to **LLDP-MED** on page 314.)

Port trunking

LLDP manages trunked ports individually. That is, trunked ports are configured individually for LLDP operation, in the same manner as non-trunked ports. Also, LLDP sends separate advertisements on each port in a trunk, and not on a per-trunk basis. Similarly, LLDP data received through trunked ports is stored individually, per-port.

IP address advertisements

In the default operation, the port uses the following preference order for IP advertisement:

IPv4:

1. IPV4 address of the Management VLAN
2. IPV4 address of first VLAN that the port is a member of (including tagged and untagged memberships)
3. IPV4 address configured on the primary VLAN
4. IPV4 address configured anywhere else in the device

IPv6:

1. Global unicast address (GUC), site local address (SL), and unique local address (UL) of the Management VLAN
2. GUC, SL, and UL of first VLAN that the port is a member of (including tagged and untagged memberships)

3. GUC, SL, and UL configured on the primary VLAN
4. GUC, SL, and UL configured anywhere else in the device
5. LinkLocal Address of a VLAN that the port is a member of

If no IP address is configured on any of the above, the port's MAC address will be advertised.



NOTE: This order is always overridden by the user configured lldp mgmt address on the port.

You can override the default operation by configuring the port to advertise any IP address that is manually configured on the switch, even if the port does not belong to the VLAN configured with the selected IP address (**Remote management address for outbound LLDP advertisements** on page 317.) (Note that LLDP cannot be configured through the CLI to advertise an addresses acquired through DHCP or Bootp. However, as mentioned above, in the default LLDP configuration, if the lowest-order IP address on the VLAN with the lowest VID for a given port is a DHCP or Bootp address, the switch includes this address in its LLDP advertisements unless another address is configured for advertisements on that port.) Also, although LLDP allows configuring multiple remote management addresses on a port, only the lowest-order address configured on the port will be included in outbound advertisements. Attempting to use the CLI to configure LLDP with an IP address that is either not configured on a VLAN or has been acquired by DHCP or Bootp results in the following error message.

```
xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx: This IP address is not configured or is a DHCP address.
```

Spanning-tree blocking

Spanning tree does not prevent LLDP packet transmission or receipt on STP-blocked links.

802.1X blocking

Ports blocked by 802.1X operation do not allow transmission or receipt of LLDP packets.

LLDP operation on the switch

Enabling LLDP operation (the default) causes the switch to:

- Use active, LLDP-enabled ports to transmit LLDP packets describing itself to neighbor devices.
- Add entries to its neighbors table based on data read from incoming LLDP advertisements.

Time-to-Live for transmitted advertisements

The Time-to-Live value (in seconds) for all LLDP advertisements transmitted from a switch is controlled by the switch that generates the advertisement and determines how long an LLDP neighbor retains the advertised data before discarding it. The Time-to-Live value is the result of multiplying the `refresh-interval` by the `holdtime-multiplier`.

Delay interval between advertisements

The switch uses a delay-interval setting to delay transmitting successive advertisements resulting from these LLDP MIB changes. If a switch is subject to frequent changes to its LLDP MIB, lengthening this interval can reduce the frequency of successive advertisements. You can change the delay-interval by using either an SNMP network management application or the CLI `setmib` command.

Re-initialize delay interval

In the default configuration, a port receiving a `disable` command followed immediately by a `txonly`, `rxonly`, or `tx_rx` command delays re-initializing for two seconds, during which LLDP operation remains disabled. If an active port is subjected to frequent toggling between the LLDP disabled and enabled states, LLDP advertisements are more frequently transmitted to the neighbor device. Also, the neighbor table in the adjacent device changes more frequently as it deletes, then replaces LLDP data for the affected port which, in turn, generates SNMP traps (if trap receivers and SNMP notification are configured.) All of this can unnecessarily increase network traffic. Extending the re-initialization-delay interval delays the ability of the port to re-initialize and generate LLDP traffic following an LLDP disable/enable cycle.

SNMP notification support

You can enable SNMP trap notification of LLDP data changes detected on advertisements received from neighbor devices and control the interval between successive notifications of data changes on the same neighbor.

Changing the minimum interval

If LLDP trap notification is enabled on a port, a rapid succession of changes in LLDP information received in advertisements from one or more neighbors can generate a high number of traps. To reduce this effect, you can globally change the interval between successive notifications of neighbor data change.

Basic LLDP per-port advertisement content

In the default LLDP configuration, outbound advertisements from each port on the switch include both mandatory and optional data.

Mandatory Data

An active LLDP port on the switch always includes the mandatory data in its outbound advertisements. LLDP collects the mandatory data, and, except for the Remote Management Address, you cannot use LLDP commands to configure the actual data.

- Chassis Type (TLV subelement)
- Chassis ID (TLV)
- Port Type (TLV subelement)
- Port ID (TLV)
- Remote Management Address (TLV; actual IP address is a subelement that can be a default address or a configured address)

Optional Data

You can configure an individual port or group of ports to exclude one or more of the following data types from outbound LLDP advertisements.

- Port description (TLV)
- System name (TLV)
- System description (TLV)
- System capabilities (TLV)

- System capabilities Supported (TLV subelement)
- System capabilities Enabled (TLV subelement)
- Port speed and duplex (TLV subelement)

Optional data types, when enabled, are populated with data internal to the switch; that is, you cannot use LLDP commands to configure their actual content.

Support for port speed and duplex advertisements

This feature is optional for LLDP operation, but is **required** for LLDP-MED operation.

Port speed and duplex advertisements are supported on the switches to inform an LLDP endpoint and the switch port of each other's port speed and duplex configuration and capabilities. Configuration mismatches between a switch port and an LLDP endpoint can result in excessive collisions and voice quality degradation. LLDP enables discovery of such mismatches by supporting SNMP access to the switch MIB for comparing the current switch port and endpoint settings. (Changing a current device configuration to eliminate a mismatch requires intervention by the system operator.)

An SNMP network management application can be used to compare the port speed and duplex data configured in the switch and advertised by the LLDP endpoint. You can also use the CLI to display this information.

Port VLAN ID TLV support on LLDP

The `port-vlan-id` option enables advertisement of the port VLAN ID TLV as part of the regularly advertised TLVs. This allows discovery of a mismatch in the configured native VLAN ID between LLDP peers. The information is visible using `show` commands and is logged to the Syslog server.

SNMP support

The LLDP-EXT-DOT1-MIB has the corresponding MIB variables for the Port VLAN ID TLV. The TLV advertisement can be enabled or disabled using the MIB object `lldpXdot1ConfigPortVlanTxEnable` in the `lldpXdot1ConfigPortVlanTable`.

The port VLAN ID TLV local information can be obtained from the MIB object `lldpXdot1LocPortVlanId` in the local information table `lldpXdot1LocTable`.

The port VLAN ID TLV information about all the connected peer devices can be obtained from the MIB object `lldpXdot1RemPortVlanId` in the remote information table `lldpXdot1RemTable`.

LLDP-MED

LLDP-MED (ANSI/TIA-1057/D6) extends the LLDP (IEEE 802.1AB) industry standard to support advanced features on the network edge for Voice Over IP (VoIP) endpoint devices with specialized capabilities and LLDP-MED standards-based functionality. LLDP-MED in the switches uses the standard LLDP commands described earlier in this section, with some extensions, and also introduces new commands unique to LLDP-MED operation. The `show` commands described elsewhere in this section are applicable to both LLDP and LLDP-MED operation. LLDP-MED benefits include:

- Plug-and-play provisioning for MED-capable, VoIP endpoint devices
- Simplified, vendor-independent management enabling different IP telephony systems to interoperate on one network
- Automatic deployment of convergence network policies (voice VLANs, Layer 2/CoS priority, and Layer 3/QoS priority)
- Configurable endpoint location data to support the Emergency Call Service (ECS) (such as Enhanced 911 service, 999, 112)

- Detailed VoIP endpoint data inventory readable via SNMP from the switch
- Power over Ethernet (PoE) status and troubleshooting support via SNMP
- support for IP telephony network troubleshooting of call quality issues via SNMP

This section describes how to configure and use LLDP-MED features in the switches to support VoIP network edge devices (media endpoint devices) such as:

- IP phones
- Voice/media gateways
- Media servers
- IP communications controllers
- Other VoIP devices or servers

LLDP-MED interoperates with directly connected IP telephony (endpoint) clients having these features and services:

- Auto-negotiate speed and duplex configuration with the switch
- Use the following network policy elements configured on the client port
- Voice VLAN ID
- 802.1p (Layer 2) QoS
- Diffserv codepoint (DSCP) (Layer 3) QoS
- Discover and advertise device location data learned from the switch
- Support ECS (such as E911, 999, and 112)
- Advertise device information for the device data inventory collected by the switch, including:

◦ Hardware revision	◦ Serial number	Asset ID
◦ Firmware revision	◦ Manufacturer name	
◦ Software revision	◦ Model name	

- Provide information on network connectivity capabilities (for example, a multi-port VoIP phone with Layer 2 switch capability)
- Support the fast-start capability

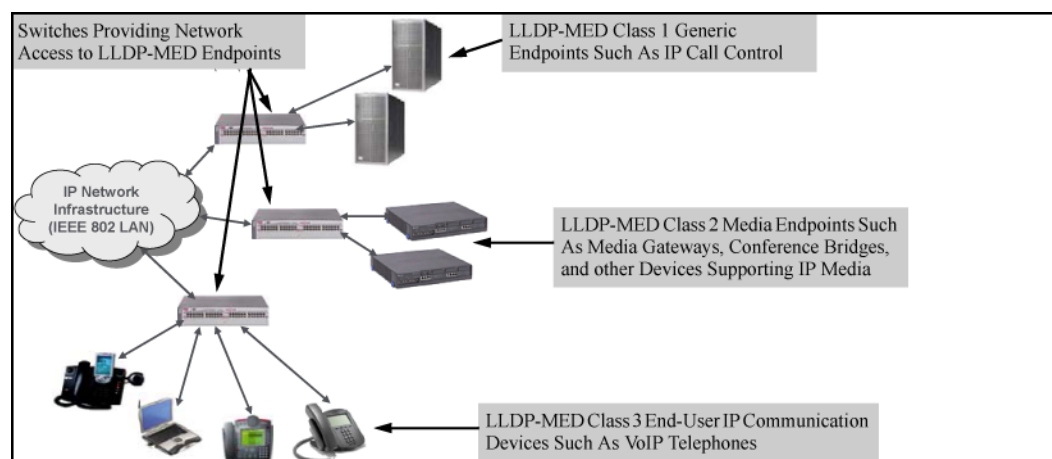


IMPORTANT:

LLDP-MED is intended for use with VoIP endpoints and is not designed to support links between network infrastructure devices, such as switch-to-switch or switch-to-router links.

LLDP-MED network elements

Figure 80: LLDP-MED network elements



LLDP-MED classes

LLDP-MED endpoint devices are, by definition, located at the network edge and communicate using the LLDP-MED framework. Any LLDP-MED endpoint device belongs to one of the following three classes:

- **Class 1 (generic endpoint devices):** These devices offer the basic LLDP discovery services, network policy advertisement (VLAN ID, Layer 2/802.1p priority, and Layer 3/DSCP priority), and PoE management. This class includes such devices as IP call controllers and communication-related servers.
- **Class 2 (media endpoint devices):** These devices offer all Class 1 features plus media-streaming capability, and include such devices as voice/media gateways, conference bridges, and media servers.
- **Class 3 (communication devices):** These devices are typically IP phones or end-user devices that otherwise support IP media and offer all Class 1 and Class 2 features, plus location identification and emergency 911 capability, Layer 2 switch support, and device information management.

LLDP-MED operational support

The switches offer two configurable TLVs supporting MED-specific capabilities:

- **medTlvEnable** (for per-port enabling or disabling of LLDP-MED operation)
- **medPortLocation** (for configuring per-port location or emergency call data)



IMPORTANT:

LLDP-MED operation also requires the port speed and duplex TLV (**dot3TlvEnable**; page 14-41), which is enabled in the default configuration.

Topology change notifications provide one method for monitoring system activity. However, because SNMP normally employs UDP, which does not guarantee datagram delivery, topology change notification should not be relied upon as the sole method for monitoring critical endpoint device connectivity.

Configuring per-port transmit and receive modes

lldp admin-status

Syntax

```
lldp admin-status <PORT-LIST> [txonly|rxonly|tx_rx|disable]
```

Description

With LLDP enabled on the switch in the default configuration, each port is configured to transmit and receive LLDP packets. The options allow you to control which ports participate in LLDP traffic and whether the participating ports allow LLDP traffic in only one direction or in both directions. Defaults to tx_rx.

Parameters and options

txonly

Configures the specified ports to transmit LLDP packets, but block inbound LLDP packets from neighbor devices.

rxonly

Configures the specified ports to receive LLDP packets from neighbors, but block outbound packets to neighbors.

tx_rx

Configures the specified ports to both transmit and receive LLDP packets. (This is the default setting.)

disable

Disables LLDP packet transmit and receive on the specified ports.

Remote management address for outbound LLDP advertisements

lldp config ipAddrEnable

Syntax

```
[no] lldp config <PORT-LIST> ipAddrEnable ip-address
```

Description

This is an optional command you can use to include a specific IP address in the outbound LLDP advertisements for specific ports. Replaces the default IP address for the port with an IP address you specify. This can be any IP address configured in a static VLAN on the switch, even if the port does not belong to the VLAN configured with the selected IP address.

Default: The port advertises the IP address of the lowest-numbered VLAN (VID) to which it belongs. If there is no IP address configured on the VLANs to which the port belongs, and if the port is not configured to advertise an IP address from any other (static) VLAN on the switch, the port advertises an address of 127.0.0.1.)



IMPORTANT: This command does not accept either IP addresses acquired through DHCP or Bootp, or IP addresses that are not configured in a static VLAN on the switch.

Parameters and options

no

Deletes the specified IP address. If there are no IP addresses configured as management addresses, the IP address selection method returns to the default operation.

lldp config

If port 3 belongs to a subnetted VLAN that includes an IP address of 10.10.10.100 and you want port 3 to use this secondary address in LLDP advertisements, you need to execute the following command:

```
switch# lldp config 3 ipAddrEnable 10.10.10.100
```

lldp config basicTlvEnable

Syntax

```
lldp config <PORT-LIST> basicTlvEnable <TLV-Type>
```

Description

Enable basic TLV for LLDP by type and <PORT-LIST> .

Parameters and options

<PORT_DESC>

For outbound LLDP advertisements, this TLV includes an alphanumeric string describing the port. Defaults to enabled.

<SYSTEM_NAME>

For outbound LLDP advertisements, this TLV includes an alphanumeric string showing the assigned name of the system. Defaults to enabled.

<SYSTEM_DESCR>

For outbound LLDP advertisements, this TLV includes an alphanumeric string describing the full name and version identification for the hardware type, software version, and networking application of the system. Defaults to enabled.

<SYSTEM_CAP>

For outbound advertisements, this TLV includes a bitmask of supported system capabilities (device functions.) Also includes information on whether the capabilities are enabled. Defaults to enabled.

no lldp config

To exclude the system name TLV from the outbound LLDP advertisements for all ports on a switch, use this command:

```
switch# no lldp config 1-24 basicTlvEnable system_name
```

lldp config

To reinstate the system name TLV on ports 1-5, use this command:

```
switch# lldp config 1-5 basicTlvEnable system_name
```

Port speed and duplex advertisement support

lldp config dot3TlvEnable

Syntax

```
[no] lldp config <PORT-LIST> dot3TlvEnable macphy_config
```

Description

For outbound advertisements, this TLV includes the (local) switch port's current speed and duplex settings, the range of speed and duplex settings the port supports, and the method required for reconfiguring the speed and duplex settings on the device (autonegotiation during link initialization, or manual configuration.)

Using SNMP to compare local and remote information can help in locating configuration mismatches. Defaults to enabled.



IMPORTANT:

For LLDP operation, this TLV is optional. For LLDP-MED operation, this TLV is mandatory.

Location data for LLDP-MED devices

lldp config medPortLocation

Syntax

```
[no] lldp config <PORT-LIST> medPortLocation Address-Type
```

Description

Configures location of emergency call data the switch advertises per port in the `location_id` TLV. This TLV is for use by LLDP-MED endpoints employing location-based applications. Enables configuration of a physical address on a switch port and allows up to 75 characters of address information.



IMPORTANT:

The switch allows one `medPortLocation` entry per port (without regard to type.) Configuring a new `medPortLocation` entry of any type on a port replaces any previously configured entry on that port.

Parameters and options

COUNTRY-STR

A two-character country code, as defined by ISO 3166. Some examples include `FR` (France), `DE` (Germany), and `IN` (India.) This field is required in a `civic-addr` command. (For a complete list of country codes, see <http://www.iso.org>.)

WHAT

A single-digit number specifying the type of device to which the location data applies: 0: Location of DHCP server 1: Location of switch 2: Location of LLDP-MED endpoint (recommended application) This field is required in a `civic-addr` command.

Type/Value Pairs [CA-TYPE|CA-VALUE]

A series of data pairs, each composed of a location data "type" specifier and the corresponding location data for that type. That is, the first value in a pair is expected to be the civic address "type" number (`CA-TYPE`), and the second value in a pair is expected to be the corresponding civic address data (`CA-VALUE`.)

For example, if the `CA-TYPE` for "city name" is "3," the type/value pair to define the city of Paris is "3 Paris."

Multiple type/value pairs can be entered in any order, although Hewlett Packard Enterprise recommends that multiple pairs be entered in ascending order of the `CA-TYPE`.

When an emergency call is placed from a properly configured class 3 endpoint device to an appropriate PSAP, the country code, device type, and type/value pairs configured on the switch port are included in the transmission. The "type" specifiers are used by the PSAP to identify and organize the location data components in an understandable format for response personnel to interpret.

A `civic-addr` command requires a minimum of one type/value pair, but typically includes multiple type/value pairs as needed to configure a complete set of data describing a given location.

CA-TYPE: This is the first entry in a type/value pair and is a number defining the type of data contained in the second entry in the type/value pair (`CA-VALUE`.) Some examples of `CA-TYPE` specifiers include:

- 3=city
- 6=street (name)
- 25=building name

(Range: 0 - 255)

CA-VALUE: This is the second entry in a type/value pair and is an alphanumeric string containing the location information corresponding to the immediately preceding `CA-TYPE` entry.

Strings are delimited by either blank spaces, single quotes (' ... '), or double quotes ("...").

Each string should represent a specific data type in a set of unique type/value pairs comprising the description of a location, and each string must be preceded by a `CA-TYPE` number identifying the type of data in the string.



NOTE:

A switch port allows one instance of any given `CA-TYPE`. For example, if a type/value pair of 6 Atlantic (to specify "Atlantic" as a street name) is configured on port A5 and later another type/value pair of 6 Pacific is configured on the same port, Pacific replaces Atlantic in the civic address location configured for port A5.

elin-addr emergency-number

This feature is intended for use in ECS applications to support class 3 LLDP-MED VoIP telephones connected to a switch in an MLTS infrastructure.

An ELIN is a valid NANP format telephone number assigned to MLTS operators in North America by the appropriate authority. The ELIN is used to route emergency (E911) calls to a PSAP.

(Range: 1-15 numeric characters)

Usage

```
civic-addr <COUNTRY-STR> <WHAT> <CA-TYPE> <CA-VALUE> ... <CA-TYPE> <CA-VALUE> ... <CA-TYPE> <CA-VALUE>
```

LLDP data change notification for SNMP trap receivers

lldp enable-notification

Syntax

```
[no] lldp enable-notification <PORT-LIST>
```

Description

Enables or disables each port in *<PORT-LIST>* for sending notification to configured SNMP trap receivers if an LLDP data change is detected in an advertisement received on the port from an LLDP neighbor. Defaults to disabled.

Enable SNMP notification on ports 1 - 5

```
switch# lldp enable-notification 1-5
```

LLDP operation on the switch

lldp run

Syntax

```
[no] lldp run
```

Description

Enables or disables LLDP operation on the switch.

Parameters and options

no

Regardless of individual LLDP port configurations, prevents the switch from transmitting outbound LLDP advertisements and causes the switch to drop all LLDP advertisements received from other devices.

The switch preserves the current LLDP configuration when LLDP is disabled. After LLDP is disabled, the information in the LLDP neighbors database remains until it times-out. Defaults to enabled.

Disable lldp on the switch

```
switch# no lldp run
```

LLDP-MED fast start control

lldp fast-start-count

Syntax

```
lldp fast-start-count <1 - 10>
```

Description

An LLDP-MED device connecting to a switch port may use the data contained in the MED TLVs from the switch to configure itself. However, the `lldp refresh-interval` setting (default: 30 seconds) for transmitting advertisements can cause an unacceptable delay in MED device configuration.

To support rapid LLDP-MED device configuration, the `lldp fast-start-count` command temporarily overrides the `refresh-interval` setting for the `fast-start-count` advertisement interval. This results in the port initially advertising LLDP-MED at a faster rate for a limited time. Thus, when the switch detects a new LLDP-MED device on a port, it transmits one LLDP-MED advertisement per second out the port for the duration of the `fast-start-count` interval. In most cases, the default setting should provide an adequate `fast-start-count` interval. Defaults to 5 seconds.

This global command applies only to ports on which a new LLDP-MED device is detected. It does not override the `refresh-interval` setting on ports where non-MED devices are detected.

Changing the packet transmission interval

This interval controls how often active ports retransmit advertisements to their neighbors.

lldp refresh-interval

Syntax

```
lldp refresh-interval <5 - 32768>
```

Description

Changes the interval between consecutive transmissions of LLDP advertisements on any given port. Defaults to 30 seconds.

The `refresh-interval` must be greater than or equal to (4 x `delay-interval`.) (The default `delay-interval` is 2.) For example, with the default `delay-interval`, the lowest `refresh-interval` you can use is 8 seconds (4 x 2=8.) Thus, if you want a `refresh-interval` of 5 seconds, you must first change the `delay-interval` to 1 (that is, 4 x 1 5.) If you want to change the `delay-interval`, use the `setmib` command.

Changing the time-to-live for transmitted advertisements

lldp holdtime-multiplier

Syntax

```
lldp holdtime-multiplier <2 - 10>
```

Description

Changes the multiplier an LLDP switch uses to calculate the Time-to-Live for the LLDP advertisements it generates and transmits to LLDP neighbors. When the Time-to-Live for a given advertisement expires, the advertised data is deleted from the neighbor switch's MIB. Defaults to 4.

If the `refresh-interval` on the switch is 15 seconds and the `holdtime-multiplier` is at the default, the Time-to-Live for advertisements transmitted from the switch is 60 seconds (4 x 15.)

Reduce time-to-live

To reduce the Time-to-Live, you could lower the `holdtime-interval` to 2, which would result in a Time-to-Live of 30 seconds.

```
switch# lldp holdtime-multiplier 2
```

Delay interval

To change the delay interval between advertisements generated by value or status changes to the LLDP MIB, use the following command.

set mib lldpTxDelay.0

Syntax

```
setmib lldpTxDelay.0 -i <1 - 8192>
```

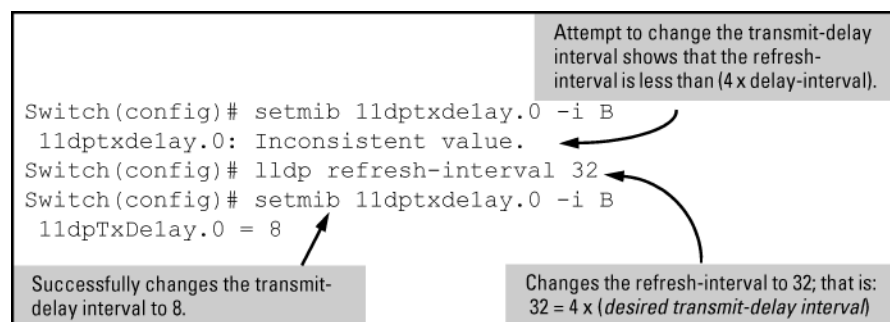
Uses `setmib` to change the minimum time (delay-interval) any LLDP port will delay advertising successive LLDP advertisements because of a change in LLDP MIB content. Defaults to 2.

The LLDP refresh-interval (transmit interval) must be greater than or equal to (4 x delay-interval.) The switch does not allow increasing the delay interval to a value that conflicts with this relationship. That is, the switch displays `Inconsistent value` if (4 x delay-interval) exceeds the current transmit interval, and the command fails. Depending on the current refresh-interval setting, it may be necessary to increase the refresh-interval before using this command to increase the delay-interval.

Change the delay-interval

To change the delay-interval from 2 seconds to 8 seconds when the refresh-interval is at the default 30 seconds, you must first set the refresh-interval to a minimum of 32 seconds ($32 = 4 \times 8$.) (See **Figure 81: Changing the transmit-delay interval** on page 323.)

Figure 81: *Changing the transmit-delay interval*



Changing the reinitialization delay interval

setmib lldpReinitDelay.0

Syntax

```
setmib lldpReinitDelay.0 -i <1-10>
```

Uses `setmib` to change the minimum time (reinitialization delay interval) an LLDP port will wait before reinitializing after receiving an LLDP disable command followed closely by a `txonly` or `tx_rx` command. The delay interval commences with execution of the `lldp admin-status <PORT-LIST> disable` command. Defaults to 2.

Change the reinitialization delay interval

The following command changes the reinitialization delay interval to five seconds:

```
switch# setmib lldpreinitdelay.0 -i 5
```

PVID mismatch log messages

PVID mismatches are logged when there is a difference in the PVID advertised by a neighboring switch and the PVID of the switch port which receives the LLDP advertisement. Logging is an LLDP feature that allows detection of possible vlan leakage between adjacent switches. However, if these events are logged too frequently, they can overwhelm the log buffer and push relevant logging data out of log memory, making it difficult to troubleshoot another issue.

Use the following command to enable or disable the logging of the PVID mismatch log messages:

logging filter

Syntax

```
logging filter [<filter-name> enable] [<filter-name><sub filter id><regularexpression> deny]
```

Description

Filters out PVID mismatch log messages on a per-port basis, allowing you to disable or enable logging using the CLI. This includes displaying the Mac-Address in the PVID mismatch log message when the port ID is Mac-Address instead of displaying garbage characters in the peer device port ID field.

Parameters and options

Regular-expression

The regular expression should match the message which is to be filtered.

Viewing port configuration details

show lldp config

Syntax

```
show lldp config <PORT-LIST>
```

Description

Displays the LLDP port-specific configuration for all ports in <PORT-LIST>, including which optional TLVs and any non-default IP address that are included in the port's outbound advertisements.

show lldp config

Figure 82: Per-port configuration display

```
Switch(config)# show lldp config 1

LLDP Port Configuration Detail

Port : 1
AdminStatus [Tx_Rx] : Tx_Rx
NotificationEnabled [False] : False
Med Topology Trap Enabled [False] : False

TLVS Advertised:
* port_descr
* system_name
* system_descr
* system_cap

[*capabilities]
| * network_policy |
| * location_id   |
| * poe           |
| * _ _ _ _ _ _ _ |
| * macphy_config |

IpAddress Advertised:


```

These fields appear when medtlvenable is enabled on the switch, which is the default setting.

This field appears when dot3tlvenable is enabled on the switch, which is the default setting.

The blank IpAddress field indicates that the default IP address will be advertised from this port.

Available switch information available outbound advertisements

show lldp info local-device

Syntax

```
show lldp info local-device<PORT-LIST>
```

Description

Displays global switch information and per-port information currently available for populating outbound LLDP advertisements. This command displays the information available on the switch. Use the `lldp config <PORT-LIST>` command to change the selection of information that is included in actual outbound advertisements. In the default LLDP configuration, all information displayed by this command is transmitted in outbound advertisements.

Parameters and options

<PORT-LIST>

Without the `<PORT-LIST>` option, displays the global switch information and the per-port information currently available for populating outbound LLDP advertisements.

With the `<PORT-LIST>` option, displays only the following port-specific information that is currently available for outbound LLDP advertisements on the specified ports:

- PortType
- PortId
- PortDesc

show lldp info local-device output

In the default configuration, the switch information currently available for outbound LLDP advertisements appears similar to the display in **Figure 83: Displaying the global and per-port information available for outbound advertisements** on page 326.

Figure 83: Displaying the global and per-port information available for outbound advertisements

```
Switch(config)# show lldp info local-device
```

LLDP Local Device Information

```
Chassis Type : mac-address
Chassis Id   : 00 23 47 4b 68 00
System Name  : Switch1
System Description : J9091A Switch 3500yl, revision K.15.06...
System Capabilities Supported:bridge
System Capabilities Enabled:bridge
```

```
Management Address :
  Type:ipv4
  Address:
```

LLDP Port Information

Port	PortType	PortId	PortDesc
1	local	1	1
2	local	2	2
3	local	3	3
4	local	4	4
5	local	5	5

The Management Address field displays the LLDP-configurable IP addresses on switch. (Only manually-configured IP addresses are LLDP-configurable.) If the switch has only an IP address from a DHCP Bootp server, then the Management Address field is empty (because there are no LLDP-configurable IP addresses available). For more on this topic, refer to "Remote Management Address" on page 6-52.

Default per-port information content for ports 1 and 2

```
switch# show lldp info local 1-2
```

LLDP Local Port Information Detail

```
Port      : 1
PortType  : local
```

```
PortId    : 1
PortDesc  : 1
```

```
Port      : 2
PortType  : local
PortId    : 2
PortDesc  : 2
```

LLDP statistics

show lldp stats

Syntax

```
show lldp stats<PORT-LIST>
```

Description

Displays (globally) an overview of neighbor detection activity on the switch, plus data on the number of frames sent, received, and discarded per-port. The **per-port LLDP** statistics command enhances the list of per-port statistics provided by the global statistics command with some additional per-port LLDP statistics.

Parameters and options

Neighbor Entries List Last Updated

The elapsed time since a neighbor was last added or deleted.

New Neighbor Entries Count

The total of new LLDP neighbors detected since the last switch reboot. Disconnecting, and then reconnecting a neighbor increments this counter.

Neighbor Entries Deleted Count

The number of neighbor deletions from the MIB for AgeOut Count and forced drops for all ports.

For example, if the admin status for port on a neighbor device changes from `tx_rx` or `txonly` to `disabled` or `rxonly`, the neighbor device sends a "shutdown" packet out the port and ceases transmitting LLDP frames out that port.

The device receiving the shutdown packet deletes all information about the neighbor received on the applicable inbound port and increments the counter.

This can occur, for example, when a new neighbor is detected when the switch is already supporting the maximum number of neighbors. See **Neighbor maximum** on page 339.

Neighbor Entries Dropped Count

The number of valid LLDP neighbors the switch detected, but could not add.

Neighbor Entries AgeOut Count

The number of LLDP neighbors dropped on all ports because of Time-to-Live expiring.

NumFramesRecvd

The total number of valid, inbound LLDP advertisements received from any neighbors on `<PORT-LIST>` .

Where multiple neighbors are connected to a port through a hub, this value is the total number of LLDP advertisements received from all sources.

NumFramesSent

The total number of LLDP advertisements sent from *<PORT-LIST>* .

NumFramesDiscarded

The total number of inbound LLDP advertisements discarded by *<PORT-LIST>* .

This can occur, for example, when a new neighbor is detected on the port, but the switch is already supporting the maximum number of neighbors. See **Neighbor maximum** on page 339. This can also be an indication of advertisement formatting problems in the neighbor device.

Frames Invalid

The total number of invalid LLDP advertisements received on the port.

An invalid advertisement can be caused by header formatting problems in the neighbor device.

TLVs Unrecognized

The total number of LLDP TLVs received on a port with a type value in the reserved range.

This can be caused by a basic management TLV from a later LLDP version than the one currently running on the switch.

TLVs Discarded

The total number of LLDP TLVs discarded for any reason. In this case, the advertisement carrying the TLV may be accepted, but the individual TLV is not usable.

Neighbor Ageouts

The number of LLDP neighbors dropped on the port because of Time-to-Live expiring.

A global LLDP statistics display

```
switch# show lldp stats
```

LLDP Device Statistics

```
Neighbor Entries List Last Updated : 2 hours
New Neighbor Entries Count : 20
Neighbor Entries Deleted Count : 20
Neighbor Entries Dropped Count : 0
Neighbor Entries AgeOut Count : 20
```

LLDP Port Statistics

Port	NumFramesRecvd	NumFramesSent	NumFramesDiscarded
A1	97317	97843	0
A2	21	12	0
A3	0	0	0
A4	446	252	0
A5	0	0	0
A6	0	0	0
A7	0	0	0
A8	0	0	0

A per-port LLDP statistics display

```
switch# show lldp stats 1
```

LLDP Port Statistics Detail

```

PortName : 1
Frames Discarded : 0
Frames Invalid : 0
Frames Received : 7309
Frames Sent : 7231
TLVs Unrecognized : 0
TLVs Discarded : 0
Neighbor Ageouts : 0

```

Global LLDP, port admin, and SNMP notification status

In the default configuration, LLDP is enabled and in both transmit and receive mode on all active ports. The LLDP configuration includes global settings that apply to all active ports on the switch, and per-port settings that affect only the operation of the specified ports.

The commands in this section affect both LLDP and LLDP-MED operation.

show lldp config

Syntax

```
show lldp config
```

Displays the LLDP global configuration, LLDP port status, and SNMP notification status.

View default LLDP

`show lldp config` produces the following display when the switch is in the default LLDP configuration. The values displayed in the LLDP column correspond to the `lldp refresh-interval` command.

```
switch# show lldp config
```

```
LLDP Global Configuration
```

```

LLDP Enabled [Yes] :          Yes
LLDP Transmit Interval [30] : 30
LLDP Hold time Multiplier [4] : 4
LLDP Delay Interval [2] :     2
LLDP Reinit Interval [2] :     2
LLDP Notification Interval [5] : 5
LLDP Fast Start Count [5] :    5

```

```
LLDP Port Configuration
```

Port	AdminStatus	NotificationEnabled	Med Topology Trap Enabled
A1	Tx_Rx	False	False
A2	Tx_Rx	False	False
A3	Tx_Rx	False	False
A4	Tx_Rx	False	False
A5	Tx_Rx	False	False
A6	Tx_Rx	False	False
A7	Tx_Rx	False	False
A8	Tx_Rx	False	False

LLDP-MED connects and disconnects—topology change notification

This optional feature provides information an SNMP application can use to track LLDP-MED connects and disconnects.

lldp top-change-notify

Syntax

```
lldp top-change-notify <PORT-LIST>
```

Description

Defaults to disabled. When enabled on an LLDP port, topology change notification causes the switch to send an SNMP trap if it detects LLDP-MED endpoint connection or disconnection activity on the port, or an age-out of the LLDP-MED neighbor on the port.

The trap includes the following information:

- The port number (internal) on which the activity was detected.
- The LLDP-MED class of the device detected on the port.

To send traps, this feature requires access to at least one SNMP server.

If a detected LLDP-MED neighbor begins sending advertisements without LLDP-MED TLVs, the switch sends a top-change-notify trap.

View topology change notification status

You can use the `show running` command shows whether the topology change notification feature is enabled or disabled. For example, if ports A1 to A10 have topology change notification enabled, the following entry appears in the `show running` output:

```
lldp top-change-notify A1-A10
```

Device capability, network policy, PoE status and location data

The `medTlvEnable` option on the switch is enabled in the default configuration and supports the following LLDP-MED TLVs:

- LLDP-MED capabilities: This TLV enables the switch to determine:
 - Whether a connected endpoint device supports LLDP-MED
 - Which specific LLDP-MED TLVs the endpoint supports
 - The device class (1, 2, or 3) for the connected endpoint

This TLV also enables an LLDP-MED endpoint to discover what LLDP-MED TLVs the switch port currently supports.

- Network policy operating on the port to which the endpoint is connected (VLAN, Layer 2 QoS, Layer 3 QoS.)
- PoE (MED Power-over-Ethernet.)
- Physical location data.

LLDP-MED operation requires the `macphy_config` TLV subelement (enabled by default) that is optional for IEEE 802.1AB LLDP operation. For more information, see the `dot3TlvEnable macphy_config` command.

Network policy advertisements

Network policy advertisements are intended for real-time voice and video applications, and include these TLV sub-elements:

- Layer 2 (802.1p) QoS
- Layer 3 DSCP (diffserv code point) QoS
- Voice VLAN ID (VID)

VLAN operating rules

These rules affect advertisements of VLANs in network policy TLVs:

- The VLAN ID TLV subelement applies only to a VLAN configured for voice operation (`vlan vid voice .`)
- If there are multiple voice VLANs configured on a port, LLDP-MED advertises the voice VLAN having the lowest VID.
- The voice VLAN port membership configured on the switch can be tagged or untagged. However, if the LLDP-MED endpoint expects a tagged membership when the switch port is configured for untagged, or the reverse, a configuration mismatch results. (Typically, the endpoint expects the switch port to have a tagged voice VLAN membership.)
- If a given port does not belong to a voice VLAN, the switch does not advertise the VLAN ID TLV through this port.

Policy elements

These policy elements may be statically configured on the switch or dynamically imposed during an authenticated session on the switch using a RADIUS server and 802.1X or MAC authentication. (Web authentication does not apply to VoIP telephones and other telecommunications devices that are not capable of accessing the switch through a Web browser.) The QoS and voice VLAN policy elements can be statically configured with the following CLI commands:

```
vlan <VID> voice
```

```
vlan <VID> [tagged|untagged] <PORT-LIST>
```

```
int <PORT-LIST> qos priority 0 - 7
```

```
vlan vid qos dscp codepoint
```

A codepoint must have an 802.1p priority before you can configure it for use in prioritizing packets by VLAN-ID. If a codepoint you want to use shows `No Override` in the `Priority` column of the DSCP policy table (display with `show qos-dscp map`, then use `qos-dscp map codepoint priority 0 - 7` to configure a priority before proceeding.

For more information on this topic, see the advanced traffic management guide.

PoE advertisements

These advertisements inform an LLDP-MED endpoint of the power (PoE) configuration on switch ports. Similar advertisements from an LLDP-MED endpoint inform the switch of the endpoint's power needs and provide information that can be used to identify power priority mismatches.

PoE TLVs include the following power data:

Power type

Indicates whether the device is a power-sourcing entity (PSE) or a PD. Ports on the J8702A PoE zl module are PSE devices. A MED-capable VoIP telephone is a PD.

Power source

Indicates the source of power in use by the device. Power sources for PDs include PSE, local (internal), and PSE/local. The switches advertise `unknown`.

Power priority

Indicates the power priority configured on the switch (PSE) port or the power priority configured on the MED-capable endpoint.

Power value

Indicates the total power in watts that a switch port (PSE) can deliver at a particular time, or the total power in watts that the MED endpoint (PD) requires to operate.

Location data for LLDP-MED devices

You can configure a switch port to advertise location data for the switch itself, the physical wall-jack location of the endpoint (recommended), or the location of a DHCP server supporting the switch, endpoint, or both. You also have the option of configuring these different address types:

Civic address

Physical address data such as city, street number, and building information.

ELIN (Emergency Location Identification Number)

An emergency number typically assigned to MLTS (Multiline Telephone System) Operators in North America.

Coordinate-based location

Attitude, longitude, and altitude information (Requires configuration via an SNMP application.)

Coordinate-based locations

Latitude, longitude, and altitude data can be configured per switch port using an SNMP management application. For more information, see the documentation provided with the application. A further source of information on this topic is the *RFC 3825: Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol Option for Coordinate-based Location Configuration Information*.



IMPORTANT: Endpoint use of data from a medPortLocation TLV sent by the switch is device-dependent. See the documentation provided with the endpoint device.

The code assignments in the following table are examples from a work-in-progress (the internet draft titled "Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCPv4 and DHCPv6) Option for Civic Addresses Configuration Information draft-ietf-geopriv-dhcp-civil-06" dated May 30, 2005.) For the actual codes to use, contact the PSAP or other authority responsible for specifying the civic addressing data standard for your network.

Table 21: *Some location codes used in CA-TYPE fields*

Location element	Code	Location element	Code
national subdivision	1	street number	19
regional subdivision	2	additional location data	22
city or township	3	unit or apartment	26
city subdivision	4	floor	27

Table Continued

Location element	Code	Location element	Code
street	6	room number	28
street suffix	18		

Example

Suppose a system operator wants to configure the following information as the civic address for a telephone connected to her company's network through port A2 of a switch at the following location:

Description	CA-type	CA-VALUE
national subdivision	1	CA
city	3	Widgitville
street	6	Main
street number	19	1433
unit	26	Suite 4-N
floor	27	4
room number	28	N4-3

Example of a civic address configuration on page 333 shows the commands for configuring and displaying the above data.

Example of a civic address configuration

```
switch# lldp config 2 medportlocation civic-addr US 2 1 CA 3
Widgitville 6 Main 19 1433 26 Suite_4-N 27 4 28 N4-3
```

```
switch# show lldp config 2
LLDP Port Configuration Detail
Port : A2
AdminStatus [Tx_Rx] : Tx_Rx
NotificationEnabled [False] : False
Med Topology Trap Enabled [False] : False
Country Name       : US
What               : 2
Ca-Type            : 1
Ca-Length          : 2
Ca-Value           : CA
Ca-Type            : 3
Ca-Length          : 11
Ca-Value           : Widgitville
Ca-Type            : 6
Ca-Length          : 4
Ca-Value           : Main
Ca-Type            : 19
Ca-Length          : 4
Ca-Value           : 1433
Ca-Type            : 26
Ca-Length          : 9
```

```
Ca-Value      : Suite_4-N
Ca-Type       : 27
Ca-Length     : 1
Ca-Value      : 4
Ca-Type       : 28
Ca-Length     : 4
Ca-Value      : N4-3
```

Viewing the current port speed and duplex configuration

You can compare port speed and duplex information for a switch port and a connected LLDP-MED endpoint for configuration mismatches by using an SNMP application. You can also use the switch CLI to display this information, if necessary. The `show interfaces brief <PORT-LIST>` and `show lldp info remote-device<PORT-LIST>` commands provide methods for displaying speed and duplex information for switch ports. For information on displaying the currently configured port speed and duplex on an LLDP-MED endpoint.

Viewing LLDP statistics

LLDP statistics are available on both a global and a per-port levels. Rebooting the switch resets the LLDP statistics counters to zero. Disabling the transmit and/or receive capability on a port "freezes" the related port counters at their current values.

LLDP over OOBM

The following commands enable the user to configure LLDP for OOBM ports.

lldp admin-status oobm

Syntax

```
lldp admin-status oobm [ txonly | rxonly | tx_rx | disable ]
```

Description

This command sets the OOBM port operational mode.

Parameters and options

`txonly`

Sets in transmit only mode.

`rxonly`

Sets in receive mode.

`tx_rx`

Sets in transmit and receive mode.

`disable`

Disables lldp on OOBM port.

lldp enable-notification oobm

Syntax

```
[no] lldp enable-notification oobm
```

Description

This command enables or disables notification on the OOBM port.

Parameters and options

`oobm`

Enables notification on the OOBM port.

no

Disables notification.

Enable-notification

```
switch(config)#lldp enable-notification ?
oobm          Enable or disable notification on the OOBM port.
[ethernet] PORT-LIST  Enable notification on the specified ports.
```

show lldp config

Syntax

```
show lldp config [[ethernet] PORT-LIST | oobm]
```

Description

This command shows LLDP configuration information.

Parameters and options

[ethernet] PORT-LIST

Shows port-list configuration information.

oobm

Shows oobm LLDP configuration information.

show lldp config

```
switch(config)#show lldp config
```

LLDP Global Configuration

```
LLDP Enabled [Yes] : Yes
LLDP Transmit Interval [30] : 30
LLDP Hold time Multiplier [4] : 4
LLDP Delay Interval [2] : 2
LLDP Reinit Interval [2] : 2
LLDP Notification Interval [5] : 5
LLDP Fast Start Count [5] : 5
```

LLDP Port Configuration

Port	AdminStatus	NotificationEnabled	Med Topology Trap Enabled
1	Tx_Rx	False	False
2	Tx_Rx	False	False
3	Tx_Rx	False	False
4	Tx_Rx	False	False
5	Tx_Rx	False	False
6	Tx_Rx	False	False
7	Tx_Rx	False	False
8	Tx_Rx	False	False
9	Tx_Rx	False	False
OOBM	Tx_Rx	False	False

show lldp config oobm

Syntax

```
show lldp config oobm
```

Description

This command shows oobm LLDP configuration information.

show lldp config oobm

```
switch(config)#show lldp config oobm
```

LLDP Port Configuration Detail

```
Port : OOBM
AdminStatus [Tx_Rx] : Tx_Rx
NotificationEnabled [False] : False
Med Topology Trap Enabled [False] : False
```

TLVS Advertised:

```
* port_descr
* system_name
* system_descr
* system_cap
```

IpAddress Advertised:

```
* 10.0.0.1
```

show lldp info

Syntax

```
show lldp info <local-device | remote-device> [[ethernet] PORT-LIST | oobm]
```

Description

This command shows LLDP information about a local or remote device.

Parameters and options

local-device

Shows LLDP information about a local device.

remote-device

Shows LLDP information about a remote device.

Subcommands

The following are next level parameters of a local-or remote-device.

[ethernet] PORT-LIST

Shows port-list configuration information.

oobm

Shows oobm LLDP configuration information.

show lldp info local-device

Syntax

```
show lldp info local-device
```

Description

This command shows LLDP information about a local device.

show lldp info local-device

```
Switch(config)# show lldp info local-device
```

LLDP Local Device Information

```
Chassis Type : mac-address
Chassis Id   : 08 2e 5f 69 8c 00
System Name  : Switch
System Description : Switch, revision XX.15.15.000...
System Capabilities Supported: bridge, router
System Capabilities Enabled: bridge
```

```
Management Address :
  Type: ipv4
  Address: 20.0.0.1
```

```
OOBM Management Address:
  Type: ipv4
  Address: 100.0.0.1
```

LLDP Port Information

Port	PortType	PortId	PortDesc
1	local	1	1
2	local	2	2
3	local	3	3
4	local	4	4
5	local	5	5
OOBM	local	4000	OOBM

show lldp info local-device oobm

Syntax

```
show lldp info local-device oobm
```

Description

This command shows LLDP information about a local device for the specified oobm ports.

show lldp info local-device oobm

```
switch(config)# show lldp info local-device oobm
```

LLDP Local Port Information Detail

```
Port      : OOBM
PortType  : local
PortId    : 4000
PortDesc  : OOBM
Pvid      : n/a
```

show lldp info remote-device oobm

Syntax

```
show lldp info remote-device oobm
```

Description

This command shows LLDP information about a remote device for the specified oobm ports.

show lldp info remote-device oobm

```
switch(config)# show lldp info remote-device oobm
```

LLDP Remote Device Information Detail

```
Local Port      : OOBM
ChassisType     : mac-address
ChassisId       : b4 b5 2f a8 84 00
PortType        : local
PortId          : 21
SysName         : Switch
System Descr    : Switch, revision XX.15.15.000...
PortDescr       : 21
Pvid            :
```

```
System Capabilities Supported : bridge, router
System Capabilities Enabled   : bridge
```

Remote Management Address

```
Type      : all802
Address   : b4 b5 2f a8 84 00
```

show lldp info remote-device 21

```
switch(config)# show lldp info remote-device 21
```

LLDP Remote Device Information Detail

```
Local Port      : 21
ChassisType     : mac-address
ChassisId       : b4 b5 2f a8 84 00
PortType        : local
PortId          : OOBM
SysName         : Switch
System Descr    : Switch, revision XX.15.15.000...
PortDescr       : OOBM
Pvid            :
```

```
System Capabilities Supported : bridge, router
System Capabilities Enabled   : bridge
```

Remote Management Address

```
Type      : all802
Address   : b4 b5 2f a8 84 00
```

show lldp stats

Syntax

```
show lldp stats [[ethernet] PORT-LIST | oobm]
```

Description

This command shows LLDP statistics.

Parameters and options

Shows statistics for the specified ports.

show lldp stats

```
switch(config)# show lldp stats
```

LLDP Device Statistics

```
Neighbor Entries List Last Updated : 45 mins
New Neighbor Entries Count : 2
Neighbor Entries Deleted Count : 0
Neighbor Entries Dropped Count : 0
Neighbor Entries AgeOut Count : 0
```

LLDP Port Statistics

Port	NumFramesRecvd	NumFramesSent	NumFramesDiscarded
1	91	96	0
2	91	96	0
OoBM	1	6	0

LLDP operating notes

Neighbor maximum

The neighbors table in the switch supports as many neighbors as there are ports on the switch. The switch can support multiple neighbors connected through a hub on a given port, but if the switch neighbor maximum is reached, advertisements from additional neighbors on the same or other ports will not be stored in the neighbors table unless some existing neighbors time-out or are removed.

LLDP packet forwarding

An 802.1D-compliant switch does not forward LLDP packets, regardless of whether LLDP is globally enabled or disabled on the switch.

One IP address advertisement per port

LLDP advertises only one IP address per port, even if multiple IP addresses are configured by `lldp config <PORT-LIST> ipAddrEnable` on a given port.

802.1Q VLAN information

LLDP packets do not include 802.1Q header information and are always handled as untagged packets.

Effect of 802.1X operation

If 802.1X port security is enabled on a port, and a connected device is not authorized, LLDP packets are not transmitted or received on that port. Any neighbor data stored in the neighbor MIB for that port prior to the unauthorized device connection remains in the MIB until it ages out. If an unauthorized device later becomes authorized, LLDP transmit and receive operation resumes.

Disconnecting a neighbor LLDP device

After disconnecting a neighbor LLDP device from the switch, the neighbor can continue to appear in the switch's neighbor database for an extended period if the neighbor's `holdtime-multiplier` is high; especially if the `refresh-interval` is large. See [Changing the time-to-live for transmitted advertisements](#) on page 322.

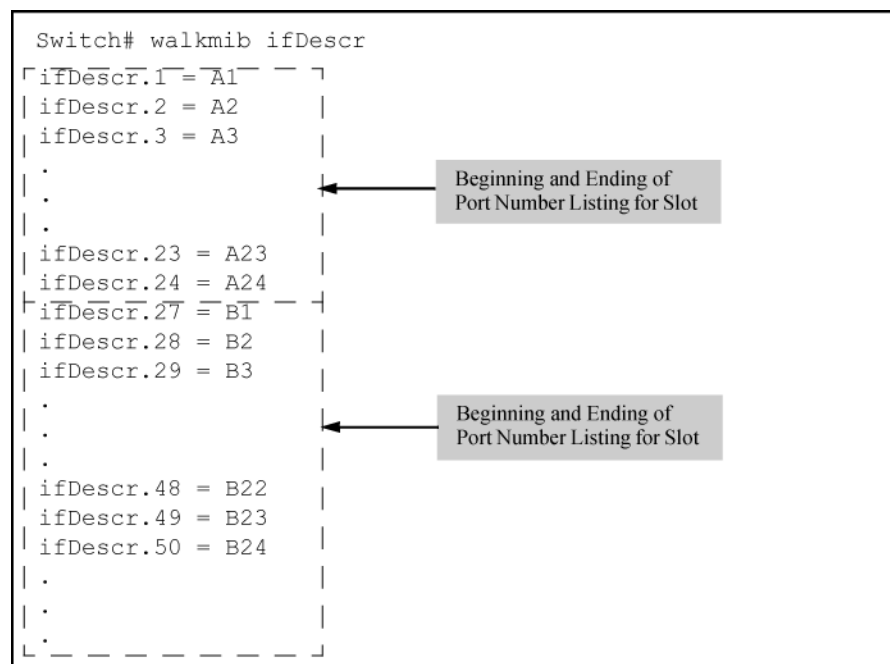
Mandatory TLVs

All mandatory TLVs required for LLDP operation are also mandatory for LLDP-MED operation.

Topology change notification

Enabling topology change notification on a switch port and then connecting or disconnecting an LLDP-MED endpoint on that port causes the switch to send an SNMP trap to notify the designated management stations. The port number included in the trap corresponds to the internal number the switch maintains for the designated port, and not the port's external (slot/number) identity. To match the port's external slot/number to the internal port number appearing in an SNMP trap, use the `walkmib ifDescr` command, as shown in **Figure 84: Matching internal port numbers to external slot/port numbers** on page 340.

Figure 84: Matching internal port numbers to external slot/port numbers



Advertisements currently in the neighbors MIB

show lldp info remote-device

Syntax

```
show lldp info remote-device<PORT-LIST>
```

Description

Without the `<PORT-LIST>` option, provides a global list of the individual devices it has detected by reading LLDP advertisements. Discovered devices are listed by the inbound port on which they were discovered.

Multiple devices listed for a single port indicates that such devices are connected to the switch through a hub.

Discovering the same device on multiple ports indicates that the remote device may be connected to the switch in one of the following ways:

- Through different VLANs using separate links. (This applies to switches that use the same MAC address for all configured VLANs.)
- Through different links in the same trunk.
- Through different links using the same VLAN. (In this case, spanning-tree should be invoked to prevent a network topology loop. Note that LLDP packets travel on links that spanning-tree blocks for other traffic types.)

With the `<PORT-LIST>` option, provides a listing of the LLDP data that the switch has detected in advertisements received on the specified ports.

See also **Table 20: Data available for basic LLDP advertisements** on page 309.

A global listing of discovered devices

```
Switch# show lldp info remote
```

LLDP Remote Devices Information

LocalPort	ChassisId	PortId	PortDescr	SysName
1	00 11 85 3b 80	6	6	Switch 3500y1
2	00 11 85 cf 66 60	8	8	Switch 3500y1

Figure 85: An LLLDP-MED listing of an advertisement received from an LLDP-MED (VoIP telephone) source

```
Switch(config)# show lldp info remote-device 1
```

LLDP Remote Device Information Detail

```

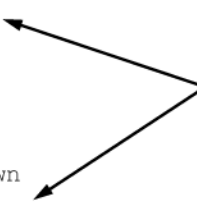
Local Port      : A2
ChassisType     : network-address
ChassisId       : 0f ff 7a 5c
PortType        : mac-address
PortId          : 08 00 0f 14 de f2
SysName         : Switch
System Descr    : Switch, revision K.15.06.0000x
PortDescr       : LAN Port

System Capabilities Supported : bridge, telephone
System Capabilities Enabled   : bridge, telephone

Remote Management Address

MED Information Detail
EndpointClass      :Class3
Media Policy Vlan id :10
Media Policy Priority :7
Media Policy Dscp   :44
Media Policy Tagged  :False
Poe Device Type     :PD
Power Requested     :47
Power Source        :Unknown
Power Priority       :High

```



Indicates the policy configured on the telephone. A configuration mismatch occurs if the supporting port is configured differently.

PoE advertisements

show lldp info remote-device

Syntax

```
show lldp info remote-device <PORT-LIST>
```

Description

Display the current power data for an LLDP-MED device connected to a port.

show power

```
show power <PORT-LIST>
```

Description

Display the current PoE configuration on the switch.

Overview

A command has been written to suppress the IPv4 / IPv6 management address transmission in outgoing LLDP packets.

A local LAN device transmits organization-specific information in the form of type, length, and value (TLV). The organization-associated values are stored in the LLDP organizationally defined local device LLDP MIB extensions. Management address TLV in IPv4 and IPv6 environments is optional from the TLV basic management set.

TLV basic management set

- Port description TLV — Describes the port in an alpha-numeric format. The value equals the `ifDescr` object, if the LAN device supports RFC 2863.
- System name TLV — Assigns the system name in an alpha-numeric format. The value equals the `sysName` object, if the LAN device supports RFC 3418.
- System description TLV — Describes the network entity in an alpha-numeric format. The system description TLV includes the system name, versions of hardware, operating system, and networking software supported in the device. The value equals the `sysDescr` object, if the LAN device supports RFC 3418.
- System capabilities TLV — Indicates primary functions of the device and if they are enabled in the device.
- Management address TLV — Indicates the addresses of the local LLDP agent. Other remote managers can use this address to obtain information related to the local device.

The command `lldp config <all> ipAddrEnable <IP_ADDR>` is used to advertise specific IP address through the port.

The command `[no] lldp config <PORT NO> basicTlvEnable management_addr` suppresses the IP address to be advertised.

Commands

[no] lldp config basicTlvEnable management_addr

Syntax

In the configure context:

```
[no] lldp config <PORT_NUM> basicTlvEnable management_addr
```

Description

The feature suppresses the IPv4 or IPv6 address as well as suppresses the MAC address if the `[no] ip address` is configured. By default this management address TLV is enabled in switch. No other TLV (except management address TLV) suppression will occur when this command is used.

Parameters

Management_addr

Management TLV

Example

```
[no] lldp config all basicTlvEnable management_addr
```

lldp config

Syntax

```
lldp config <port-number>
```

Description

Configure the lldp for the desired port by number.

Parameter

basicTlvEnable

Enables the basic advertised TLV for each port by number.

Options

<management_addr>

Use the option `<management_addr>` to specify specific devices to enable TLV advertisement.

Usage

```
lldp config <port_num> basicTlvEnable <management_addr>
```

Show commands

Use the command `show running-config` to view the lldp configuration.

Example

```
switch# show running-config

Running configuration:
...
no lldp config 1 basicTlvEnable management_addr
```

Example

```
switch# show lldp config 1

LLDP Port Configuration Detail

Port : 1
AdminStatus [Tx_Rx] : Tx_Rx
NotificationEnabled [False] : False
Med Topology Trap Enabled [False] : False
```

TLVS Advertised:

* management_addr

IpAddress Advertised:

TVL configuration

VLAN ID TLV

lldp config dot1T1vEnable

Syntax

```
[no] lldp config <PORT-LIST> dot1TlvEnable port-vlan-id
```

Description

Use this command to enable or disable the VLAN ID TLV advertisement. Defaults to enabled.

Parameters and options

no

Disables the TLV advertisement.

Enabling the VLAN ID TLV

```
switch# lldp config a1 dot1TlvEnable port-vlan-id
```

Advertised TLVs

show lldp config

Syntax

```
show lldp config <PORT_NAME>
```

Description

The show commands display the configuration of the TLVs. The command `show lldp config` lists the TLVs advertised for each port.

Figure 86: *Displaying the TLVs for a port*

```
Switch(config)# show lldp config a1

LLDP Port Configuration Detail

Port : a1
AdminStatus [Tx_Rx] : Tx_Rx
NotificationEnabled [False] : False
Med Topology Trap Enabled [False] : False

TLVS Advertised:
* port_descr
* system_name
* system_descr
* system_cap

* capabilities
* network_policy
* location_id
* poe

* macphy_config

* port_vlan_id ← The VLAN ID TLV is being advertised.

IpAddress Advertised:
:
:
```

Figure 87: *Example of local device LLDP information*

```
Switch(config)# show lldp info local-device a1

LLDP Local Port Information Detail

Port      : A1
PortType  : local
PortId    : 1
PortDesc  : A1

Port VLAN ID : 1 ← The information that LLDP used in its advertisement.
```

Figure 88: *Example of remote device LLDP information*

```
Switch(config)# show lldp info remote-device a1

LLDP Remote Device Information Detail

Local Port      : A1
ChassisType     : mac-address
ChassisId       : 00 16 35 22 ca 40
PortType        : local
PortId          : 1
SysName         : esp-dback
System Descr    : J8693A Switch 3500yl-48G, revision K.13.03, ROM ...
PortDescr       : A1

System Capabilities Supported : bridge, router
System Capabilities Enabled   : bridge, router

Port VLAN ID : 200

Remote Management Address
Type          : ipv4
Address       : 192.168.1.1
```

TLVs controlled by medTLvEnable

lldp config medTlvEnable

Syntax

```
[no] lldp config <PORT-LIST> medTlvEnable <MEDTLV>
```

Description

TLVs controlled by medTlvEnable in the LLDP-MED configuration default to enabled.

This command enables or disables advertisement of the following TLVs on the specified ports:

- Device capability TLV
- Configured network policy TLV
- Configured location data TLV
- Current PoE status TLV

Helps to locate configuration mismatches by allowing use of an SNMP application to compare the LLDP-MED configuration on a port with the LLDP-MED TLVs advertised by a neighbor connected to that port.

Parameters and options

capabilities

This TLV enables the switch to determine:

- Which LLDP-MED TLVs a connected endpoint can discover
- The device class (1, 2, or 3) for the connected endpoint

This TLV also enables an LLDP-MED endpoint to discover what LLDP-MED TLVs the switch port currently supports.

Defaults to enabled. Cannot be disabled unless the `network_policy`, `poe`, and `location_id` TLVs are already disabled.

network-policy

This TLV enables the switch port to advertise its configured network policies (voice VLAN, Layer 2 QoS, Layer 3 QoS), and allows LLDP-MED endpoint devices to autoconfigure the voice network policy advertised by the switch. This also enables the use of SNMP applications to troubleshoot statically configured endpoint network policy mismatches.

Network policy is advertised only for ports that are configured as members of the voice VLAN. If the port belongs to more than one voice VLAN, the voice VLAN with the lowest-numbered VID is selected as the VLAN for voice traffic.

Defaults to enabled. If disabled, this TLV cannot be enabled unless the `capability` TLV is already enabled.

location_id

This TLV enables the switch port to advertise its configured location data (if any.)

Defaults to enabled. If disabled, this TLV cannot be enabled unless the `capability` TLV is already enabled.

poe

This TLV enables the switch port to advertise its current PoE state and to read the PoE requirements advertised by the LLDP-MED endpoint device connected to the port.

Defaults to enabled. If disabled, this TLV cannot be enabled unless the capability TLV is already enabled.

Generic header ID in configuration file

DHCP auto deployment

Auto deployment relies on DHCP options and the current DHCP auto-configuration function. Auto deployment is platform independent, avoiding the J-number validation of the downloaded configuration file when downloaded using DHCP option 66/67. The downloaded configuration file has an `IGNORE` tag immediately after the J-number in its header.

An option to add an `add-ignore-tag` to an existing `copy` command will insert an `ignore` tag into the configuration header. This insertion happens while transferring the configurations, (`startup configuration` files and `running configuration files`) from the switch to a configuration file setup on a remote server. The process uses TFTP/SFTP or can be accomplished with a serially connected workstation using XMODEM.

Add-Ignore-Tag option

The `add-ignore-tag` option is used in conjunction with the `copy` command to transfer the `startup configuration` or `running configuration files` from the switch to a remote server with `IGNORE` tag inserted into it.

The `IGNORE` tag is inserted into the first line of the configuration file directly after the J-number.

Configuration file

```
; J9782A IGNORE Configuration Editor; Created on release #YB.15.14.0000x
; Ver #04:63.ff.37.27:88
hostname "Switch"
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
vlan 1
name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
no untagged 2,20-25
untagged 1,3-19,26-28
ip address dhcp-bootp
```

The J-number validation is ignored only when configuration file that contains the `IGNORE` tag is downloaded to a switch via DHCP option 66/67. When a configuration file containing the `IGNORE` tag is downloaded to a switch using CLI, SNMP or WebUI, the downloaded configuration file is only accepted if the J-number in it matches the J-number on the switch.

There is no change to the current switch configuration when executing the `copy` command with the `add-ignore-tag` option. The `IGNORE` tag is only added to the configuration file being exported to the external server. The configuration file stored on an external server is then downloaded to the switch using DHCP option 66 during bootup. If the `IGNORE` tag is available in the downloaded configuration file then the switch will avoid the J-number validation of the configuration file. The downloaded configuration file will then go through a line by line validation. Once the configuration file passes this validation, it gets updated in the flash. Once the configuration file has been updated, the switch will reboot automatically.

The J-number in the downloaded configuration file is replaced with that of the switch. The `IGNORE` tag is removed from the downloaded configuration file before updating it to flash. The `show running-configuration` command will not display the `IGNORE` tag but displays the switch's J-number as part of the output.

Copy with add-ignore-tag

```
switch(config)# copy startup-config tftp <ip-addr> <filename> add-ignore-tag
switch(config)# copy running-config tftp <ip-addr> <filename> add-ignore-tag
switch(config)# copy startup-config sftp <ip-addr> <filename> add-ignore-tag
switch(config)# copy running-config sftp <ip-addr> <filename> add-ignore-tag
switch(config)# copy startup-config xmodem add-ignore-tag
switch(config)# copy running-config xmodem add-ignore-tag
```

Configuration commands for the add-ignore-tag option

Configuration files can be transferred to the switch from a server using the following `copy` commands:

- `copy tftp`
- `copy xmodem`
- `copy sftp`

Copy commands

```
copy tftp < startup-config | running-config > < ip-address > < remote-file >[ pc | unix ]
copy xmodem startup-config < pc | unix >
copy sftp < startup-config | running-config > < ip-address > < remote-file >
```

Configuration files that are downloaded using the `copy` commands as described in the **example** will be accepted by the switch if they pass J-number validations and line by line validations after download. The downloaded configuration file will be discarded by the switch if the validations fail. If the validations fail, the switch will work with its previous configuration.

Show logging commands for the add-ignore-tag option

The `show logging` command is used to locate errors during a configuration validation process. The event log catalogs entries with the ID#00158 and updates for each invalid entry found in the configuration file.

Show logging

```
-- Reverse event Log listing: Events Since Boot ----
W 01/07/14 00:29:31 00158 update: line 13. Module command missing for port or invalid port: 36
I 01/07/14 00:29:30 00131 tftp: Transfer completed
I 01/07/14 00:29:29 00090 dhcp: Trying to download Config File (using TFTP) received in DHCP from 192.168.1.1
```



NOTE:

Downloading manually edited configuration file is not encouraged.

Exclusions

The `IGNORE` tag is not an available option when using external SCP, SFTP or TFTP clients such as PuTTY, Open SSH, WinSCP and SSH Secure Shell to transfer configuration files out of the switch.

Overview

The Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) is a network protocol that enables a server to automate assignment of IP addresses to hosts. A DHCP server can be configured to provide other network information like IP addresses of TFTP servers, DNS server, boot file name and vendor specific options. Commonly there are two types of address assignments, dynamic and manual. The lease of dynamic addresses is renewed periodically; manual leases are permanently assigned to hosts. With this feature, you can configure multiple pools of IP addresses for IP address assignment and tracking.

IP pools

A DHCP server is configured with IP pools. The server is then instructed to use IP addresses falling into the specified range of IP while offering leases. Multiple IP pools are configured to not have duplicate or overlapping IP subnets. You can also configure a DHCP server with multiple IP ranges within an IP subnet; this confines the allocatable IP addresses within the configured IP pool.

An IP pool will be claimed valid only if it is either:

- Dynamic pool – Has a network address, subnet mask and IP range(s)
- Static pool – Should have a static IP-to-MAC binding.

The DHCP server will discard the invalid and incomplete pools and will only operate on the valid IP pools. The DHCP server will require at least one valid pool to start.

DHCP options

On a DHCP server, an IP pool is configured with various options. These options signify additional information about the network. Options are supported with explicit commands such as `boot-file`. Option codes that correspond to explicit commands can not be configured with a generic option command; the generic option command requires an option code and TLV.



NOTE:

RFC 2132 defines various network information that a client may request when trying to get the lease.

BootP support

The DHCP server also functions as BootP server. A manual binding configured in a static IP Pool may either service a BootP client request or a DHCP client request.

Authoritative server and support for DHCP inform packets

The server message `DHCPinform` may be received when the server is already configured for static IPv4 addresses so that the server can to get configuration parameters dynamically.



NOTE: RFC 2131 states that if a client has obtained a network address through some other means (e.g., manual configuration), it may use a `DHCPinform` request message to obtain other local configuration parameters. Servers receiving a `DHCPinform` message construct a `DHCPACK` message with any local configuration parameters appropriate for the client without: allocating a new address, checking for an existing binding, filling in `yiaddr` or including lease time parameters.

Authoritative pools

To process the `DHCPINFORM` packets received from a client within the given IP pool, a DHCP server has to be configured as `authoritative` for that IP pool. The server is the sole authority for this IP pool so when a client requests an IP address lease where the server is authoritative, and the server has no record of that IP address, the server will respond with `DHCPNAK` message which indicates that the client should no longer use that IP address. Any `DHCPINFORM` packet received for a non-authoritative pool will be ignored by the DHCP server.

The `authoritative` command has no effect when configured on a static pool or an incomplete pool without a network statement. In such cases, the server intentionally not send an error message.

A CLI toggle is provided under the **pool** context that will allow the `authoritative` configuration.



NOTE:

The `authoritative` command requires a network statement to be configured on a pool.

Authoritative dummy pools

A dummy pool, without the range statement, can be configured and made authoritative. A dummy pool allows static-bind entries which do not have matching dynamic pools with network statements to be configured. By creating a dummy pool on a DHCP server, the support for `DHCPinform` packets will not be actively serving the client on this pool. No active leases or resource consumption will be sent to the DHCP server when this option is used.

Dummy pools help the DHCP server learn the network topology.

Example

```
dhcp-server pool dummy192
network 192.168.10.0 255.255.255.255
option 1...
option 2...
:
option n...
authoritative
exit
```

Change in server behavior

Making the server authoritative for an IP pool changes how the server processes `DHCP REQUEST` packets.

The following table exhibits the behavior on the receiving `DHCP REQUEST` and `DHCP inform` packets from DHCP clients residing on either authoritative and non-authoritative pools.

Table 22: *Authoritative and non-authoritative pools*

Authoritative Pool				Non-authoritative pool		
When a DHCP client sending..	For Own IP	For IP belonging to different client	Unknown IP falling outside the range	For Own IP	For IP belonging to different client	Unknown IP falling outside the range
DHCP INFORM	send ACK	send ACK	send ACK	DROP	DROP	DROP
DHCP REQUEST	send ACK	send NACK	send NACK	send ACK	DROP	DROP

DHCPv4 configuration commands

DHCPv4 server

dhcp-server

Syntax

```
[no] dhcp-server [enable | disable]
```

Description

Use this command to nable/disable the DHCPv4 server in a switch. Defaults to disabled.

Parameters and options

no

Removes all DHCPv4 server configurations.

enable

Enables the DHCPv4 server on the device. The `no` form of this command

disable

Disables the DHCPv4 server on the device.

DHCP address pool name

dhcp-server pool

Syntax

```
[no] dhcp-server pool <POOL-NAME>
```

Description

Configure the DHCPv4 server IP address pool with either a static IP or a network IP range.

Parameters and options

pool

DHCPv4 server IP address pool.

ASCII-STR

Enter an ASCII string.

authoritative

Configure the DHCP server authoritative for a pool.

bootfile-name

Specify the boot file name which is used as a boot image.

default-router

List of IP addresses of the default routers.

dns-server

List of IP addresses of the DNS servers.

domain-name

Configure the DNS (Domain Name System) domain name for translation of hostnames to IP addresses.

lease

Lease period of an IP address.

netbios-name-server

List of IP addresses of the NetBIOS (WINS) name servers.

netbios-node-type

NetBIOS node type for a Microsoft DHCPv4 client.

network

Subnet IP and mask of the DHCPv4 server address pool.

option

Raw DHCPv4 server options.

range

Range of IP addresses for the DHCPv4 server address pool.

static-bind

Static binding information for the DHCPv4 server address pool.

tftp-server

Configure a TFTP server for the DHCPv4 server address pool.

Validations

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
Configuring pool when maximum Number of pools already configured.	Maximum number of pools (128) has already been reached
Configuring Pool with a name that exceeds the maximum length requirement.	String %s too long. Allowed length is 32 characters.

Table Continued

Trying to delete non existing pool	The specified address pool does not exist.
Only alphanumeric characters, numerals and underscore is allowed in the pool name. Violating this would throw the following error message.	Invalid name. Only alphanumeric characters and hyphen are allowed.
Trying to delete existing pool or adding new pool when DHCP server enabled.	DHCP server should be disabled before changing the configuration.

Authoritative

Syntax

```
[no] authoritative
```

Description

The DHCP server is the sole authority for the network configured under this pool. When the DHCP server is configured as authoritative, the server will respond with DHCP ACK or NACK as appropriate for all the received DHCP REQUEST and DHCP INFORM packets belonging to the subnet.

Non-authoritative DHCP INFORM packets received from the clients on a non-authoritative pool will be ignored.

Parameters and options

authoritative

Configure the DHCP server authoritative for a pool.

DHCP client boot file

bootfile-name

Syntax

```
[no] bootfile-name <FILENAME>
```

Description

Specify the boot file name to be used as the boot image.

DHCP client default router

default-router

Syntax

```
[no] default-router <IP-ADDR-STR> [IP-ADDR2 IP-ADDR8]
```

Description

Configure the DHCP pool context to the default router for a DHCP client. List all of the IP addresses of the default routers.

Two IP addresses must be separated by a comma.

Maximum of eight default routers can be configured.

DNS IP servers

dns-server

Syntax

```
[no] dns-server <IP-ADDR> [IP-ADDR2 IP-ADDR8]
```

Description

Configure the DHCP pool context to the DNS IP servers that are available to a DHCP client. List of IP addresses of the DNS servers.

Two IP addresses must be separated by comma.

Maximum of eight DNS servers can be configured.

Configure a domain name

domain-name

Syntax

```
[no] domain-name <NAME>
```

Description

Configure the DNS domain name for translation of hostnames to IP addresses.

Configure lease time

lease

Syntax

```
[no] lease [DD:HH:MM | infinite]
```

Description

Configure the lease time for an IP address in the DHCP pool. Lease time is infinite for static pools.

The default lease period is one day.

Parameters and options

DD:HH:MM

Enter lease period.

Lease

Lease period of an IP address.

NetBIOS WINS servers

Syntax

```
[no] netbios-name-server <IP-ADDR-STR> [IP-ADDR2 IP-ADDR8]
```

Description

Configure the DHCP pool for the NetBIOS WINS servers that are available to a Microsoft DHCP client. List all IP addresses of the NetBIOS(WINS) name servers. The Windows Internet Naming Service (WINS) is a name resolution service that Microsoft DHCP clients use to correlate host names to IP addresses within a general grouping of networks.

Two IP addresses must be separated by a comma.

Maximum of 8 NetBIOS (WINS) name servers can be configured.

NetBIOS node type

net bios-ode-type

Syntax

```
[no] netbios-node-type [ broadcast | hybrid | mixed | peer-to-peer ]
```

Description

Configure the DHCP pool mode to the NetBIOS node type for a Microsoft DHCP. The NetBIOS node type for Microsoft DHCP clients can be one of four settings: broadcast, peer-to-peer, mixed, or hybrid.

Parameters and options

broadcast

Broadcast node.

hybrid

Hybrid node.

mixed

Mixed node.

peer-to-peer

Peer to peer node.

Subnet and mask

network

Syntax

```
[no] network <ip-addr/mask-lenght>
```

Description

Configure the DHCPv4 server pool subnet and mask for the DHCP server address pool.

Range is configured to enable pool.

Parameters and options

ip-addr/mask-lenght

Interface IP address/mask.

DHCP server options

Configure DHCP server options

Syntax

```
[no] option <CODE> {ascii <ascii-string>|hex <hex-string>|ip <IP-ADDR-STR>[IP-ADDR2 ... IP-ADDR8]}
```

ascii

Specify ASCII string as option code value.

hex

Specify hexadecimal string as option code value.

ip

Specify one or more IP addresses as option code value.

ip-addr-str

Specify IP address.

ascii-str

Enter an ASCII string.

hex-str

Specify Hexadecimal string.

Configure the raw DHCP server options.



NOTE: Following DHCP options are not supported:

1,3,6,12,15,44,46,50,52,54,55,57,58,59,61,66,67,82.

You can use the following available CLIs for respective DHCP option codes:

DHCP Option code	CLI Syntax
1	[no] network <ip-addr/mask-lenght>
3	[no] default-router <IP-ADDR-STR> [IP-ADDR2 ... IP-ADDR8]
6	[no] dns-server <IP-ADDR> [IP-ADDR2 ... IP-ADDR8]
15	[no] domain-name <name>
44	[no] netbios-name-server <IP-ADDR-STR> [IP-ADDR2 ... IP-ADDR8]
43	[no] option 43 {ascii <ascii-string> hex <hex-string> ip <IP-ADDR-STR>[IP-ADDR2 ... IP-ADDR8]}
46	[no] netbios-node-type <broadcast hybrid mixed peer-to-peer>
60	[no] option 60 {ascii <ascii-string> hex <hex-string> ip <IP-ADDR-STR>[IP-ADDR2 ... IP-ADDR8]}
66	[no] tftp-server server-name < ASCII-STR>
67	[no] bootfile-name<filename>
138	[no] option 138 {ascii <ascii-string> hex <hex-string> ip <IP-ADDR-STR>[IP-ADDR2 ... IP-ADDR8]}
150	[no] tftp-server server-ip <ip-address> or [no] option 150 <IP-ADDR-STR> [IP-ADDR2 ... IP-ADDR8]



NOTE: DHCP server raw Option 43 is supported and it is used for AirWave ZTP.

DHCP server raw Option 60 is supported from 16.06.

DHCP server raw Option 138 is supported and it is used for IPsec tunnel configuration in DHCP client.

IP address range

range

Syntax

```
[no] range <IP-ADDR> [<IP-ADDR>]
```

Description

Configure the DHCP pool to the range of IP address for the DHCP address pool.

Parameters and options

range

Range of IP addresses for the DHCPv4 server address pool.

ip-addr

Low IP address.

High IP address.

Static bindings

static-bind

Syntax

```
static-bind ip <IP-ADDR/MASK-LENGTH> mac <MAC-ADDR>
```

Description

Configure static binding information for the DHCPv4 server address pool. Manual bindings are IP addresses that have been manually mapped to the MAC addresses of hosts that are found in the DHCP database. Manual bindings are just special address pools. There is no limit on the number of manual bindings but you can only configure one manual binding per host pool.

Parameters and options

ip

Specify client IP address.

static-bind

Static binding information for the DHCPv4 server address pool.

ip-addr / mask-length

Interface IP address or mask.

mac

Specify client MAC address.

mac-addr

Enter a MAC address.

TFTP server domain name

tftp-server

Syntax

```
[no] tftp-server [server-name <server-name> | server-ip < ip-address >]
```

Description

Configure the TFTP server domain name for the DHCP address pool.

Parameters and options

tftp-server

Configure a TFTP server for the DHCPv4 server address pool.

server-name

TFTP server name for the DHCPv4 server address pool.

Configure the TFTP server address

tftp-server

Syntax

```
tftp-server server-ip <IP-ADDRESS>
```

Description

Configure the TFTP server address for the DHCP address pool.

Parameters and options

server-ip

TFTP server IP addresses for the DHCPv4 server address pool.

ip-addr

Specify TFTP server IP address.

Number of ping packets

dhcp-server ping

Syntax

```
[no] dhcp-server ping [packets <0-10>|timeout <0-10>]
```

Description

Specify, in the global configuration context, the number of ping packets the DHCP server will send to the pool address before assigning the address. The default is two packets.

Parameters and options

ping

Specify DHCPv4 ping parameters.

packets <0-10>

Specify number of ping packets in the range of 0 to 10. 0 disables ping.

timeout <1-10

Ping timeout in the range of 1–10 seconds. Indicates the amount of time the DHCPv4 server must wait before timing out a ping packet. Defaults to one second.

Save DHCP server automatic bindings

dhcp-server database

Syntax

```
[no] dhcp-server database [file ASCII-STR] [delay<15-86400>][timeout <0-86400>]
```

Description

Specifies DHCPv4 database agent and the interval between database updates and database transfers.

Parameters and options

delay

Seconds to delay writing to the lease database file.

file

URL Format: "tftp://<ip-address>/<filename>".

database

Specifies DHCPv4 database agent and the interval between database updates and database transfers.

timeout

Seconds to wait for the transfer before failing.

ascii-str

Database URL.

<15-86400>

Delay in seconds.

<0-86400>

Timeout in seconds.

DHCP server and SNMP notifications

snmp-server enable traps

Syntax

```
[no] snmp-server enable traps dhcp-server
```

Description

Configure a DHCP server to send SNMP notifications to the SNMP entity. This command enables or disables event traps sent by the switch.

Parameters and options

dhcp-server

Traps for DHCP-Server.

Conflict logging on a DHCP server

dhcp-server conflict-logging

Syntax

```
[no] dhcp-server conflict-logging
```

Description

Enable conflict logging on a DHCP server. Default is disabled.

Parameters and options

conflict-logging

Enable DHCPv4 server address conflict logging.

Enable the DHCP server on a VLAN

dhcp-server

Syntax

```
dhcp-server
```

Description

Enable DHCPv4 server on a VLAN. DHCPv4 client or DHCPv4 relay cannot co-exist with DHCPv4 server on a VLAN.

Parameters and options

dhcp-server

Enable DHCPv4 server on a VLAN.

Clear commands

clear dhcp-server conflicts

Syntax

```
clear dhcp-server conflicts <IP-ADDR>
```

Description

Reset DHCPv4 server conflicts database. If IP address is specified, reset only that conflict.

Parameters and options

dhcp-server

Clears the DHCPv4 server information.

ip-addr

Specify the IP address whose conflict is to be cleared.

Reset all DHCP server and BOOTP counters

clear dhcp-server statistics

Syntax

```
clear dhcp-server statistics
```

Description

Reset all DHCP server and BOOTP counters

Parameters and options

statistics

Reset DHCPv4 server and BOOTP counters.

Delete an automatic address binding

clear dhcp-server statistics

Syntax

```
clear dhcp-server statistics
```

Description

Delete an automatic address binding from the DHCP server database.

Parameters and options

binding

Reset DHCPv4 server automatic address bindings.

ip-addr

Specify IP address of the binding is to be cleared.

Show commands

show dhcp-server

Syntax

```
show dhcp-server [binding|conflicts|database|statistics|pool <POOL-NAME>]
```

Description

Show DHCPv4 server global configuration information for the device.

Parameters and options

binding

Display the DHCPv4 server address bindings on the device..

conflicts

Display address conflicts found by a DHCPv4 server when addresses are offered by a client.

database

Display DHCPv4 server database agent information.

statistics

Display DHCPv4 server statistics.

pool <POOL-NAME>

Display the DHCPv4 server IP pool information.

Event log

Event Log Messages

Cause

Table 23: *Event Log Messages*

Events	Debug messages
DHCP server is enabled globally.	DHCP server is enabled globally.
DHCP server is enabled globally. Warnings - One or more incomplete pool configurations are found during the server startup.	DHCP server is enabled globally.Warning -One or more incomplete pool configurations are found during the server startup.
A dynamic pool is considered invalid, if network IP or subnet mask is not configured. A static pool is considered incomplete, if network IP, subnet mask or MAC address is not configured.	
DHCP server failed to start. The reason for failure is printed as the argument.	DHCP server failed to start: %s "with a manual binding.
DHCP server is disabled globally.	DHCP server is disabled globally.
The DHCP server configurations are deleted.	The DHCP server configurations are deleted
Decline from client when server assigns an illegal Ipv6 address.	%s: Decline offer from %x (server) of %x because the address is illegal.
DHCP server is enabled on a specific VLAN.	DHCP server is enabled on VLAN %d
DHCP server is disabled on a specific VLAN.	DHCP server is disabled on VLAN %d
Ping check is enabled and configured with specified retry count and timeout values	Ping-check configured with retry count = %d, timeout = %d
Ping check is disabled	Ping-check is disabled
Conflict-logging is enabled	Conflict-logging is enabled
Conflict-logging is disabled.	Conflict-logging is disabled.
A specific IP address is removed from the conflict logging database.	IP address %s is removed from the conflict-logging database.

Table Continued

Events	Debug messages
All IP addresses are removed from the conflict-logging database.	"All IP addresses are removed from the conflict-logging database
Dynamic binding for a specific IP address is freed.	Dynamic binding for IP address %s is freed
All the dynamic IP bindings are freed.	All the dynamic IP bindings are freed
Remote binding database is configured for a specific URL.	Remote binding database is configured at %s
Remote binding database is disabled.	Remote binding database is disabled
Binding database is read from the specified URL at the specified time	Binding database read from %s at %s
Failed to read the remote binding from the specified URL.	Failed to read the remote binding database at %s
Binding database is written to the specified URL at the specified time.	Binding database written to %s at %s
Failed to write the binding database to the specified URL. The reason for failure is printed as argument.	Failed to write the binding database to %s. Error: %s
Invalid bindings are found in the database at the specified URL.	Invalid binding database at %s
The specified VLAN does not have a matching IP pool configured. This occurs when the DHCP-server is enabled on the specified VLAN, but no IP pool is configured with a network IP matching the VLAN network IP.	VLAN %d does not have a matching IP pool
Binding database is replicated to standby management module.	Binding database is replicated to standby management module
DHCP server is listening for DHCP packets. This message is displayed when DHCP server is enabled globally and DHCP server is enabled on at least one VLAN.	DHCP server is listening for DHCP packets
DHCP server is disabled on all the VLANs. Server is no longer listening for DHCP packets.	DHCP server is disabled on all the VLANs. Server is no longer listening for DHCP packets
The specified IP is not offered to the DHCP client, as it is already in use.	IP address %s is not offered, as it is already in use

Table Continued

Events	Debug messages
No IP addresses available on the specified pool.	No IP addresses to offer from pool %s
High threshold reached for the specified pool. Count of Active bindings and Free bindings are printed as arguments.	High threshold reached for pool %s. Active bindings: %d, Free bindings: %d
Low threshold reached for the specified pool. Count of Active bindings and Free bindings are printed as arguments.	Low threshold reached for pool %s. Active bindings: %d, Free bindings: %d
No active VLAN with an IP address is available to read binding database from the configured URL.	No active Vlan with an IP address available to read binding database

DHCPv6 hardware address

The incremental deployment of IPv6 to existing IPv4 networks results in dual-stacking network environments. Some devices will act as both DHCPv4 and DHCPv6 clients. For these dual-stack situation, here is a need to associate DHCPv4 and DHCPv6 messages with the same client interface. A DHCPv4 server uses the client link-layer address as the customer identifier and a key for lookup in the client database. The DHCPv6 Relay-Forward message carries the client link-layer address to the DHCPv6 server allowing the association of both DHCPv4 and DHCPv6 messages with the same client interface.

As defined in RFC-6939, DHCPv6 relay agents receiving solicit and request messages that originate from DHCPv6 clients include the link-layer source address of the received DHCPv6 message. This is accomplished in the Client Link-Layer Address option within DHCPv6 Relay-Forward messages. The Client Link-Layer Address enables the server to recognize and service specific clients. DHCPv6 relay agent behavior (as set by the configuration) decides whether the Client Link-Layer Address option is included for each client.

DHCPv6 relays agents include Option-79 for all message types when enabled. The message types are: solicit, request, confirm, decline, renew, rebind, release and information-request. DHCPv6 provides additional information for event debugging and logging related to the client at the server.



NOTE:

All cascading relay-agents simply encapsulate the message received and relay-forward to the server. The service function does not receive any message-types directly from the client even when the feature is enabled.

DHCPv6 snooping and relay

Configuring DHCPv6 and DIPLDv6 through SNMP



NOTE: DHCPv6 snooping and Dynamic IPv6 Lockdown (DIPLDv6) are currently configurable through SNMP using MIBs. For more information, see the *MIB and Trap Matrix*.

dhcpv6-snooping

Syntax

```
[no] dhcpv6-snooping [vlan <VLAN-ID-RANGE>]
```

Description

Enable or disable the global administrative status of DHCPv6 snooping. You must enable DHCP snooping globally (`dhcpv6-snooping`) to enable snooping on any VLAN.

Parameters and options

no

Disabling global administrative status (`no dhcpv6-snooping`) disables snooping on all VLANs.

vlan <VLAN-ID-RANGE>

Disables snooping on a VLAN or a range of VLANs. Requires enabling DHCP global snooping (`dhcpv6-snooping`).

Validation rules for DHCPv6 global snooping

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
Verify whether entered ipv6 address is valid	Invalid Ipv6 address:< ipv6-address>
If an invalid server address is configured	Invalid IP address. Only IPv6 unicast or link-local addresses are supported.
If the limit on configuring the authorized servers had reached.	Cannot configure the authorized server as only 20 authorized servers can be configured.

Validation rules for DHCPv6–snooping VLAN

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
if the VLAN is a SVLAN and the bridge mode is mixed mode	DHCPv6-snooping is not supported on SVLANs and SVLAN ports in QinQ mixed VLAN mode
If number of snooped VLAN count is greater than max_vlans_with_dipv6ld and also the max binding limit has reached.	DHCPv6 snooping cannot be enabled on %s VLANs. The switch will support only 8 DHCPv6 snooping enabled VLANs when Dynamic IPv6 Lockdown feature is enabled.
If the VLAN which is being configured for DHCPv6 Snooping has a Smart Link enabled port.	Cannot configure DHCPv6 Snooping on a VLAN containing Smart Link ports.
If a VLAN is being configured as a Smart Link protected VLAN and DHCPv6 Snooping is enabled on it.	Cannot configure a VLAN as a protected VLAN when DHCPv6 Snooping is enabled on it .
If Smart Link is being configured on a port which is a part of DHCPv6 Snooping VLAN..	Cannot configure the Smart Link feature on a port when DHCPv6 Snooping is enabled on that port.

dhcpv6 snooping trust

Syntax

```
[no] dhcpv6-snooping trust ethernet <PORT-LIST>
```

Description

Configure trusted interfaces. The system forwards server packets received on trusted interfaces only.

Parameters and options

no

Marks the specified interfaces as untrusted. Port state defaults to untrusted.

Validation rules

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
Verify whether the port exist in the device.	Module not present for port or invalid port: <PORT-LIST>
If the port is a part of a SVLAN and the bridge mode is mixed mode.	Port %s cannot be configured as trusted port as it is part of a SVLAN in QinQ mixed VLAN mode.
If the port is not a part of a dsnoopv6 enabled VLAN	Port %s is not a part of a DHCPv6-snooping VLAN.
If trusted attribute is being configured on a port on which max-binding has been already configured.	Disable max-binding feature configured on the port before configuring it as a trusted port.
If a Dynamic trunk is configured as a trusted port.	Cannot configure a port as a DHCPv6 Snooping trusted port when Dynamic Trunking is enabled on that port.
If a Smart Link port is being configured as a trusted port	Cannot configure a Smart Link port as a DHCPv6 Snooping trusted port.
If a trusted port is being configured as a Smart Link port	Cannot configure a DHCPv6 Snooping trusted port as a Smart Link port

dhcpv6-snooping authorized-server

Syntax

```
[no] dhcpv6-snooping authorized-server <IPV6-ADDRESS>
```

Description

Configure authorized DHCPv6 servers. For DHCPv6 snooping to allow a server to client packet to be forwarded, it must be received on a trusted port from an authorized server. If no authorized servers are configured, all server addresses are valid.

ddhcpv6-snooping database file

Syntax

```
[no] dhcpv6-snooping database file [ASCII-STR|delay <15-86400>| timeout<0-86400>]
```

Description

Configure a lease entry file and its options for storing DHCPv6 snooping binding database.

Parameters and options

ASCII-STR

Copies the DHCPv6 snooping lease file to a TFTP server. The parameter ASCII-STR is a URL and is in the format `tftp://<IP-ADDR>/<FILENAME>`. The TFTP address can be up to 255 characters. IP-ADDR can be an IPv4 address or an IPv6 address. The IPv6 address must be enclosed in square brackets [].

timeout seconds

Configures the number of seconds to wait for the DSNOOPv6 lease file transfer to complete. An error message is displayed if the file transfer is not completed within the timeout value. A value of zero indicates

that the attempt to transfer the DHCPv6 lease file retries indefinitely. The default timeout value is 300 seconds.

database

Configure the parameters to copy the DHCPv6 Snooping lease file to a TFTP server.

delay

Configure the number of seconds to wait before copying the DSNOOPv6 lease file to a TFTP server.

file

Copy the DHCPv6 Snooping lease file to a TFTP server.

timeout

Configure the number of seconds to wait for the DSNOOPv6 lease file transfer to complete.

Validation rules

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
Verify whether file name entered is in URL format	database: Bad URL format.
Verify whether the timeout value is within the limit	Invalid input: <value>
Verify whether the delay value is within the limit.	Invalid input: <value>
If the URL format is not proper	Bad URL format.
If the entered URL does not have a valid transfer mode.	URL Transport mode is not supported.

dhcpv6-snooping max-bindings

Syntax

```
[no] dhcpv6-snooping max-bindings <PORT-LIST 1-8192>
```

Description

Configure the maximum number of binding addresses allowed per binding anchor. A binding anchor is a unique attribute that can be associated with a client address.

Parameters and options

max-bindings

Configuring maximum number of binding addresses allowed per port.

- If the max-bindings value is configured **before** enabling `dhcpv6-snooping` the limit is immediately applied and the bindings are not allowed to exceed the max-bindings value.
- The max-bindings value is **set after** enabling `dhcpv6-snooping`.
- The current bindings are greater than the max-binding value, the configuration will be applied as and when clients release their IPv6 addresses.
- Current bindings are lesser than that of the value entered, the configuration will be immediately applied.

<PORT-LIST 1-8192>

Specify the ports on which max-bindings need to be applied in the range of 1–8192.

Validation rules

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
Verify max-bindings value entered is in the range	Invalid input: <value>
If DHCPv6-Snooping is already configured before entering the command and current bindings are greater than the value being set.	Existing bindings %d are more than the max-bindings being configured, and the maximum limit will be applied once the number of existing bindings fall below this limit
If the value is being configured for a trusted port	Cannot configure maximum binding for DHCPv6 snooping feature on a trusted port
If the value is being configured for a port which is not a part of a dhcpv6-snooped vlan	Port %s is not a part of a DHCPv6-snooping VLAN.
If the max-binding value is being set for a Dynamic trunk.	Cannot configure DHCPv6 Snooping on a port when Dynamic Trunking is enabled on that port.
If the number of static bindings is greater than the max-binding value being set.	Cannot configure the maximum binding value because the number of static bindings on the port exceeds the maximum binding value.
If a port on which max-binding is enabled is being put into a trunk.	Cannot add a port to a trunk group when DHCPv6 Snooping Maxbinding is configured on that port.
If a trunk has max-bindings configured on it. And the trunk is being removed.	Cannot remove the port %s from the trunk group because DHCPv6 Snooping max-binding is configured on the trunk and removing the port will delete the trunk.
If DT trunk is being configured on a max-binding enabled port.	Cannot configure Distributed Trunking on a port when DHCPv6 Snooping max-binding is configured on that port.



IMPORTANT: DT trunks can use jumbo VLAN as usual, but user needs to ensure that jumbo is configured on both the DT pairs, otherwise packet drops/fragmentations can be seen.

dhcpv6-relay option 79

Syntax

```
[no] dhcpv6-relay option 79
```

Description

Enabling option 79 will force the DHCPv6 Relay agent to forward the client Link-layer address. Defaults to disabled.

snmp-server enable traps dhcpv6-snooping

Syntax

```
[no] snmp-server enable traps dhcpv6-snooping [out-of-resources|errant-reply]
```

Description

Configure the traps for DHCPv6 snooping.

Parameters and options

out-of-resources

This trap is sent when the number of bindings exceed the maximum limit of 8192 bindings.

errant-reply

This trap is sent when a DHCPv6 reply packet is received on an untrusted port or from an un-authorized server.

clear dhcpv6-snooping stats

Syntax

```
clear dhcpv6-snooping stats
```

Description

Clears dhcpv6 snooping statistics.

Validation rules

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
If dhcp-snooping not enabled globally	DHCPv6 snooping is disabled.

debug security dhcpv6-snooping

Syntax

```
debug security dhcpv6-snooping [config|event|packet]
```

Description

Enable debug for DHCPv6 snooping.

Parameters and options

config

Debug DHCPv6 snooping configuration.

event

Debug a DHCPv6 snooping event.

packet

Debug DHCPv6 snooping by packet.

ipv6 source-lockdown ethernet

Syntax

```
[no] ipv6 source-lockdown ethernet <PORT-LIST>
```

Description

Used to configure DIPv6LD lockdown globally and on specific ports which can be configured on per-port basis using the PORT-LIST option.

Parameters and options

[ethernet] PORT-LIST

Specify the ports being configured for Ipv6 source-lockdown.

source-lockdown

Enable IPv6 source lockdown for a specific port.

Validation rules

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
Verify whether dhcpv6-snooping is enabled globally	DHCPv6 snooping is disabled.
Verify whether port configured is in the VLAN which is dhcpv6-snooping enabled.	Ports <PORT-LIST> are not in a DHCPv6 Snooping VLAN.
If lockdown is being configured on a trusted port	Port %s is a trusted port.
If the HW resources are not available for changing dipv6ld global or a port characteristic	Cannot enable DIPLDv6 as required resources are unavailable.
If global GVRP is enabled	DIPLDv6 cannot be enabled when GVRP is enabled
If no of snooped VLAN count is greater than max_vlans_with_dipv6ld	DHCPv6 snooping cannot be enabled on %s VLANs. The switch support only 8 DhCPv6 snooping enabled VLANs when Dynamic Ipv6 lockdown is enabled.
If Binding limits are exceeded	Cannot enable Dynamic Ipv6 Lockdown on ports %s as manual binding limits are exceeded.
If lockdown is being enabled on an interface which is part of a dynamic trunk (LACP)	Cannot configure Dynamic Ipv6 Lockdown on interface %s, it is a Dynamic trunk.
If lock down is being configured on a mesh port	Cannot configure Dynamic Ipv6 Lockdown on a logical mesh port.
If trunk is being formed using a port which has DIPLDv6 enabled on it.	Cannot add a port to a trunk group when Dynamic IPv6 Lockdown is enabled on that port.
If DIPLDv6 is configured on a trunk and the trunk is being removed.	Cannot remove the port %s from the trunk group because Dynamic IPv6 Lockdown is configured on the trunk and removing the port will delete the trunk.
If DIPLDv6 is being is configured on a Smart Link port	Cannot enable Dynamic IPv6 Lockdown feature on a Smart Link port.
If Smart Link is being enabled on a DIPLDv6 enabled port	Cannot configure the Smart Link feature on a port when the Dynamic IPv6 Lockdown feature is enabled on that port.

ipv6 source-binding

Syntax

```
[no] ipv6 source-binding VLAN-ID IPV6-ADDR MAC-ADDR PORT-NUM IPV6-ADDR
```

Description

Add a DHCPv6 static binding entry into the binding table. Static binding entries will have infinite lifetime.

Parameters and options

VLAN-ID

The VLAN ID of the static binding entry.

Ipv6-ADDRESS

The Ipv6 address of the static binding entry.

MAC-ADDRESS

The MAC address of the static binding entry.

[ethernet] PORT-NUM

Port number of the static binding entry.

IPV6-ADDR

The Ipv6 link-local address of the static binding entry.

Validation rules

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
Verify whether the vlan id is proper	Invalid input:%s
Verify whether the mac-address is valid	Invalid input:%s
Verify whether the ipv6 address is valid	Invalid input:%s
Verify whether the port number is valid on the device	Module not present for port or invalid port: <port-num>
If any other addresses other than global unicast address are entered	Invalid Ipv6 address
If the ipv6 address entered is not a unicast.	Only Ipv6 unicast addresses are supported.
If a multicast ipv6 address is entered to configure a binding.	Cannot configure a binding using a multicast IPV6 address.
If an invalid MAC address is being added into the binding table.	Cannot add a %s MAC address to the table.
If an invalid port is used for configuring a static binding	Port %s is invalid.

Table Continued

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
If DSNOOPV6 is globally disabled when configuring a static binding.	Cannot configure static binding when DHCPv6 Snooping is disabled.
While configuring a static binding if the Ipv6 address is already present in the Binding table but the entered vlanid and MAC address doesnot match with the one present in the binding table.	%s has already been assigned to a VID/MAC. Delete the existing binding first.
If a binding which does not exist in the binding table is tried to be removed.	Binding for %s not found.
If DIPLDv6 limits are exceeded on the switch.	Cannot add the IPv6 source binding because the number of source bindings exceeds the maximum limit of "STR(DSNOOPV6_MAX_STATIC_LEASES)".
If more than 4 IPv6 addresses are being assigned to a VID/MAC pair	Cannot add the IPv6 source binding because only "STR(DHCPV6_MAX_IAADDRS)" IPv6 addresses can be bound to a VID-MAC pair.
If a VID-MAC pair is bound to a link-local address and the same VID-MAC pair is being assigned another link-local address.	%s is already bound to a link-local address. To bind another link-local address, delete the existing binding .
If a binding exists for a particular client in the BST and the same binding is being configured for another port.	The IPv6 source binding already exists for another port.
If the switch total limit for bindings is exceeded.	Cannot add the IPv6 source binding because the number of source bindings exceeds the maximum limit of STR(DSNOOPV6_MAX_STATIC_LEASES).
If a trunk is being configured for a port which has static binding configured on it.	Cannot add a port to a trunk group when IPv6 source binding is configured on that port.
If static binding is being configured on a Smart Link enabled port	Cannot configure IPv6 source binding on a Smart Link port.
If Smart Link is being configured on a port with static binding.	Cannot configure Smart Link feature on a port when IPv6 source binding is configured on that port.

snmp-server enable traps dyn-ipv6-lockdown

Syntax

```
[no] snmp-server enable traps dyn-ipv6-lockdown [out-of-resources | violations]
```

Description

The Dynamic IPv6 Lockdown trap is sent when resources are unavailable for configuring. This trap is sent when a source lockdown violation takes place.

Parameters and options

out-of-resources

Dynamic IPv6 Lockdown out of resources.

violations

Dynamic IPv6 lockdown violations.

debug security dynamic-ipv6-lockdown

Syntax

```
debug security dynamic-ipv6-lockdown
```

Description

Enable debug for DIPLDv6

Show commands for DHCPv6–snooping

show dhcpv6-snooping

Syntax

```
show dhcpv6-snooping
```

Description

Show dhcpv6 snooping configuration.

Validation rules

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
If dhcpv6-snooping not enabled	DHCPv6 snooping is disabled

show dhcpv6 snooping bindings

Syntax

```
show dhcpv6-snooping bindings
```

Description

Show dhcpv6 snooping binding entries. This would show both dynamic and static binding entries.

Validation rules

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
If dhcpv6-snooping not enabled	DHCPv6 snooping is disabled

show dhcpv6 snooping statistics

Syntax

```
show dhcpv6-snooping stats
```

Description

Show dhcpv6-snooping statistics.

show ipv6 source-lockdown

Syntax

```
show ipv6 source-lockdown [bindings | status]
```

Description

Shows IPv6 source bindings that are configured using the command `IPv6 source-bindings`.

Parameters and options

bindings

Show source bindings for Dynamic IPv6 Lockdown ports.

status

Show source bindings for Dynamic IPv6 Lockdown status.

Show source bindings Dynamic IPv6 Lockdown status

Dynamic IPv6 Lockdown Bindings

Port Address	IPv6 Address	Vlan	MAC	Not in HW
A1	3000:abbb:1234:3456:1234:1234:1234:1234	1	123456-789101	Yes
F23	300:ab::2	4092	abcdef-123455	No

show ipv6 source-lockdown status

Syntax

```
show ipv6 source-lockdown status
```

Description

Used to show IPV6 source-lockdown status per port.

Parameters and options

source-lockdown

Show dynamic IPv6 Lockdown.

Show dynamic IPv6 Lockdown configuration

Dynamic IPv6 Lockdown information

Global State: Enabled

Port	Operational State
------	-------------------

1	Active
---	--------

2	Active
---	--------

IPv6 Source Lockdown is disabled on Ports 3-24.

show snmp-server traps

Syntax

```
show snmp-server traps <COMMUNITY-STR>
```

Description

Shows traps controlled. Shows all information on SNMP communities, trap receivers and SNMP response or trap source-ip policy configured on the switch.

Parameters and options

traps

Show all configured traps.

<COMMUNITY-STR>

Displays information for the specified community only.

Show snmp-server traps

```
switch(config)# sh snmp-server traps
```

Trap Receivers

Link-Change Traps Enabled on Ports [All] : All

Traps Category	Current Status
SNMP Authentication	: Extended
Password change	: Enabled
Login failures	: Enabled
Port-Security	: Enabled
Authorization Server Contact	: Enabled
DHCP-Snooping	: Enabled
DHCPv6-Snooping Out of Resource	: Enabled
DHCPv6-Snooping Errant Replies	: Enabled
Dynamic ARP Protection	: Enabled
Dynamic IP Lockdown	: Enabled
Dynamic IPv6 Lockdown Out of Resource	: Enabled
Dynamic IPv6 Lockdown Violations	: Enabled
Startup Config change	: Disabled
Running Config Change	: Disabled
MAC address table changes	: Disabled
MAC Address Count	: Disabled

Address	Community	Events	Type	Retry	Timeout
---------	-----------	--------	------	-------	---------

Excluded MIBs

```
switch(config)#
```

Alignment change - right shifted

show distributed-trunking consistency-parameters

Syntax

```
show distributed-trunking consistency-parameters global feature
```

Description

Parameters and options

dhcp-snooping

Display DHCP snooping peer consistency details.

IGMP

Display IGMP peer consistency details.

loop-protect

Display Loop protect peer consistency details.

MLD

Display MLD peer consistency details.

pim-dm

Display PIM-DM peer consistency details.

pim-sm

Display PIM-SM peer consistency details.

Display PIM-SM peer consistency details.

```
show distributed-trunking consistency-parameters global feature pim-sm

PIM-SM Enabled VLANs on Local : 20,30
PIM-SM Enabled VLANs on Peer : 20,30
```

show distributed-trunking consistency-parameters

Syntax

```
show distributed-trunking consistency-parameters global <PIM-SM>
```

Description

Display global peer consistency details. If the platforms do not match an error message similar to `inconsistent criteria` is returned.

Parameters and options

global

Display global peer consistency details.

<PIM-SM>

Display PIM-SM peer consistency details.

Show distributed-trunking consistency-parameters global

```
switch# show distributed-trunking consistency-parameters global
Local Peer
----
Peer config unavailable.
Image Version KB.15.18.0000x

IP Routing Disabled Disabled
Peer-keepalive interval 1000 0
PIM-DM Support Disabled Disabled
PIM-SM Support Disabled Disabled
```

```
IGMP enabled VLANs on Local :
IGMP enabled VLANs on Peer :
PIM-DM Enabled VLANs on Local : <List of Vlan>
PIM-DM Enabled VLANs on Peer : <List of Vlan>
PIM-SM enabled VLANs on Local : <List of Vlan>
PIM-SM enabled VLANs on Peer : <List of Vlan>
DHCP-snooping Enabled on Local :
DHCP-Snooping Enabled on Peer      : Yes
DHCP-Snooping Enabled VLANs on Local : 1
DHCP-Snooping Enabled VLANs on Peer : 1
DHCP-Snooping Max-Binding Configured on Local : Yes
```

```
Ports  Max-Bindings
-----
Trk2    6
```

```
DHCP-Snooping Max-Binding Configured on Peer : No
```

Feature pim-sm

```
show distributed-trunking consistency-parameters global feature pim-sm
```

```
PIM-SM Enabled VLANs on Local : 20,30
PIM-SM Enabled VLANs on Peer : 20,30
```

show dhcpv6 relay

Syntax

```
show dhcpv6-relay
```

Description

Displays the DHCPv6 relay configuration. Cannot be configured from the WebUI or Menu.

Sample output

```
show dhcpv6-relay
```

```
DHCPV6 Relay Agent : Enabled
Option 79 : Disabled
```

DHCPv6 event log

Cause

Event	Message
RMON_DSNOOPV6_UNTRUSTED_PORT_SERVER_RELAY	%s: %s message received on the untrusted port %s from %s.
RMON_DSNOOPV6_UNTRUSTED_PORT_SERVER_SUSP	%s: Ceasing the log messages for the server packets received on an untrusted port for %s.
RMON_DSNOOPV6_UNTRUSTED_PORT_CLIENT_DEST	%s: Client packet destined to the untrusted port %s is dropped.
RMON_DSNOOPV6_UNTRUSTED_PORT_CLIENT_DEST_SUSP	%s: Ceasing the log messages for the client packets destined to an untrusted port for %s.
RMON_DSNOOPV6_UNAUTHORIZED_SERVER	%s: Unauthorized server %s detected on port %s
RMON_DSNOOPV6_UNAUTHORIZED_SERVER_SUSP	%s: Ceasing unauthorized server logs for %s
RMON_DSNOOPV6_BAD_RELEASE	%s: Illegal IPv6 release from %02X%02X%02X-%02X%02X%02X on port %s; Address leased to other client or not leased. %s.
RMON_DSNOOPV6_BAD_RELEASE_SUSP	%s: Ceasing the log messages for the illegal IPv6 release messages received from the clients for %s
RMON_DSNOOPV6_TABLE_FULL	%s: Unable to add the DHCPv6 lease because the lease table is full.
RMON_DSNOOPV6_TABLE_FULL_SUSP	%s: Ceasing the log messages for the failed lease table updates for %s.

Table Continued

Event	Message
RMON_DSNOOPV6_MAX_BINDING_CROSSED	%s: Droppped IPv6 request from %02X%02X%02X-%02X%02X%02X. The max-binding limit has reached on the port %s. %s
RMON_DSNOOPV6_MAX_BINDING_CROSSED_SUSP	%s: Ceasing max-binding limit crossed packet information logs for %s.
RMON_DSNOOPV6_EVENT_MAXBINDING_REMOVED	%s: The DHCPv6-Snooping max-binding configured on port %s is removed.
RMON_DSNOOPV6_EVENT_MAXBINDING_REMOVED_SUSP	%s: Ceasing the log messages for the removal of DHCPv6-Snooping max-binding from the ports for %s
RMON_DSNOOPV6_EVENT_BINDINGS_EQUALS_MAXBIND	%s: The number of bindings on the port %s equals the maximum binding configured on that port.
RMON_DSNOOPV6_EVENT_BINDINGS_EQUALS_MAXBIND_SUSP	%s: Ceasing the log messages for bindings on port that equals max-binding value for %s.
RMON_DSNOOPV6_EVENT_MAXBIND_BELOW_BINDINGS	%s: The number of bindings on the port %s exceeds the maximum binding configured on that port.
RMON_DSNOOPV6_EVENT_MAXBIND_BELOW_BINDINGS_SUSP	%s: Ceasing the log messages for bindings on port that exceeds max-binding for %s.
RMON_DSNOOPV6_READ_LEASES_ERROR	%s: Reading %s/%s %s
RMON_DSNOOPV6_READ_LEASES_SUSP	%s: Ceasing remote server lease file read status logs for %s
RMON_DSNOOPV6_WRITE_LEASES_ERROR	%s: Writing %s/%s %s
RMON_DSNOOPV6_WRITE_LEASES_SUSP	%s: Ceasing remote server lease file write status logs for %s

Table Continued

Event	Message
RMON_DSNOOPV6_TABLE_FULL_REM_LEASE	%s: The dynamic binding for %s on port %s was replaced with a manual binding.
RMON_DSNOOPV6_TABLE_FULL_REM_LEASE_SUSP	%s: Ceasing removed lease logs for %s.
RMON_DSNOOPV6_BAD_IP_REQ	%s: Illegal IPv6 request from %02X%02X%02X-%02X%02X%02X on port %s; %s.
RMON_DSNOOPV6_BAD_IP_REQ_SUSP	%s: s: Ceasing the log messages for illegal IPv6 requests for %s
RMON_DSNOOPV6_BAD_IP_OFFER	%s: Offered lease from %s conflicts other leases in BST. %s.
RMON_DSNOOPV6_BAD_IP_OFFER_SUSP	%s: Ceasing the log messages for duplicate IPv6 offers for %s.
RMON_DSNOOPV6_ILLEGAL_LEASE	%s: Dropped the IPv6 offer from %s because the offered address is illegal. %s.
RMON_DSNOOPV6_ILLEGAL_LEASE_SUSP	%s: Ceasing the log messages for illegal IPv6 offers for %s
RMON_DSNOOPV6_INVALID_PACKET	%s: Invalid DHCPv6 packet %s. %s.
RMON_DSNOOPV6_INVALID_PACKET_SUSP	%s: Ceasing the log messages for invalid DHCPv6 packets for %s
RMON_DSNOOPV6_DIPLDV6_PORT_REMOVED_VLAN	Port %s removed from dhcpv6-snooping enabled vlan %d
RMON_DIPLDV6_DSNOOPV6_DISABLED_GLOBAL	Dhcpv6-snooping disabled globally, dynamic Ipv6 lockdown also disabled.
RMON_DIPLDV6_DSNOOPV6_DISABLED_VLAN	Dhcpv6-snooping disabled on vlan %d, dynamic Ipv6 lockdown also disabled.

Table Continued

Event	Message
RMON_DSNOOPV6_PORT_TRUSTED_TO_VALIDATING	The port %s is configured as an untrusted port.
RMON_DSNOOPV6_PORT_ADD_TO_TRUNK_ERROR	Unable to add port %s to trunk, insufficient HW resources.
RMON_DIPLDV6_PORT_ADD_HW_RESOURCE_ERROR	Unable to apply dynamic Ipv6 lockdown to port %s, insufficient HW resources.
RMON_DIPLDV6_ADD_BINDING_OUT_OF_RESOURCES	Unable to add binding for %x, %02x%02x%02x-%02x%02x%02x on port %s.
RMON_DIPLDV6_VLAN_DENY_OUT_OF_RESOURCES	Unable to ipv6 lock-down VLAN %d on port %s, not enough HW resources.
RMON_DIPLDV6_VIOLATION	Access denied %s -> %s port %s, %d packets received since last log
RMON_DIPLDV6_DHCPV6_REQUEST_DROPPED	DHCPV6 REQUEST dropped for %02x%02x%02x-%02x%02x%02x port %s, unable to add the binding; a port or switch limit was reached.
RMON_DIPLDV6_VIOLATION_ON_VLAN	Access was denied on VLAN %d, %d packets received since last log.
RMON_DSNOOPV6_CONFLICT_IN_BST	%s: The IPv6 address %s provided by the DHCPv6 server to the client %s is already assigned to another client %s.
RMON_DSNOOPV6_CONFLICT_IN_BST_SUSP	%s: Ceasing status logs for Conflicts in BST for %s

DHCPv6 event messages

Cause

Events	Debug messages
When the BST becomes full, to indicate that lease bindings are being dropped.	Unable to add binding for %x, %02x%02x%02x-%02x%02x%02x on port %s. BST is full.
When DHCPv6 packet validation fails (packets are received on which they are not expected to).	Dropping packet as validation failed, reason %s
When a Dynamic binding is replaced with a static binding on a particular port.	The dynamic binding for %s on port %s was replaced with a manual binding.
While an attempt to release an Ipv6 address from port which is leased to another port.	Unable to release. %02x%02x%02x-%02x%02x%02x is bound not bound to port %u.
Decline from client to server when client finds the address issued by server is already in use in the link where the client is connected.	%s: Decline offer from %x (server) of %x because the address is already assigned to another client.
Decline from client when server assigns an illegal Ipv6 address.	%s: Decline offer from %x (server) of %x because the address is illegal.
When TFTP transfer of binding state table is a success or failure.	TFTP of BST from the dsnoopv6 device is successful / failed.
When a DIPLDv6 enabled port is removed from a DsnoopV6 enabled vlan.	Port %u is removed from a dhcpv6-snooped VLAN
When DsnoopV6 is disabled globally which makes DIPLDv6 no longer configured?	Dhcpv6-snooping disabled globally, dynamic Ipv6 lockdown also disabled.
When DsnoopV6 is disabled on a particular VLAN which makes DIPLDv6 also disabled	Dhcpv6-snooping disabled on VLAN %s, dynamic Ipv6 lockdown also disabled.
When a port moved from SAVI-Trust to validating port.	Port %u is validating.
While adding a port to a trunk for which DIPLDv6 is already enabled.	Unable to add port %u to trunk, dynamic ipv6 lockdown is enabled on it.
While enabling DIPLDv6 on a port which is added to a trunk.	Unable to configure dynamic Ipv6 lockdown on port %u which is a part of a trunk.
While enabling DIPLDv6 on a port for which ACL is configured.	Unable to configure dynamic Ipv6 lockdown on port %u, ACL is configured on port.
When it is unable to add a lock on a particular VLAN for a particular port due to vlan deny rule.	Access was denied on VLAN %d, deny rule exists on the VLAN

Table Continued

Events	Debug messages
When DIPLDv6 violations are detected on a VLAN	Access was denied on VLAN %d, %d packets received since last log.
When max-binding limit is reached on a Port	Max-binding limit reached on Port %s.

Aruba offers on-premise and cloud-based management solutions for switches, access points, and controllers.

AirWave is an award-winning on-premise Network Management Solution (NMS) that manages both Aruba and third-party network devices. AirWave is ideal for Campus networks and for organizations which prefer to have complete control over the hardware and software and have their NMS within premises (for example: either in the head office or data center or one of the large campuses).

Aruba Central is a popular cloud-based management solution for Branch and Distributed Enterprises which prefer simplicity, programmability, and integration with third-party cloud-based solutions for automation. Central offers cloud portal subscriptions through which one can manage the entire network of Aruba devices, without having to set up, upgrade, scale, or manage an NMS.

In this chapter, the focus is primarily on the Zero Touch Provisioning (ZTP) and connection to either AirWave or Central using ZTP for check-in, configuration download, and management.

What is ZTP?

ZTP enables the auto-configuration of factory-default switches without requiring any manual setup process. It helps the administrators to deploy their fleet of switches at multiple branches without requiring a technical expert onsite. It is of use for distributed enterprises (for example: hotels, hospitals, retail stores, educational institutions, and other enterprises) where an administrator is not available at every site.

Aruba offers ZTP solution which reduces the overall cost of ownership. Aruba ships infrastructure devices such as switches, access points, and controllers directly to the site of usage. With ZTP, even a nontechnical user (for example: store manager in a retail chain or a class teacher in a school) can deploy devices at site. When the devices are connected to AirWave or Central, ZTP automatically sets up the required firmware and configurations, and services without the need for technical expertise on site.

ZTP with AirWave

Aruba supports ZTP using:

- DHCP servers for on-premise management (see **DHCP server configuration for DHCP based ZTP**).
- Activate for cloud-based management. Activate is a cloud-based inventory management and provisioning service (see **Activate based ZTP with AirWave**).

You can choose any of the ZTP methods based on your requirement. For example: If all the campuses and branches which an Enterprise manages are reachable within a private network, it is recommended to use DHCP based ZTP. If an Enterprise network spans multiple campuses and branches using WAN to communicate, use Activate based ZTP.

DHCP-based ZTP with AirWave

IPv6 based ZTP is supported from 16.06 switch version. Switches can be connected to AirWave through IPv4 or IPv6 addresses. To enable IPv6 ZTP provisioning, the `ipv6 enable` and `ipv6 address dhcp full` will be enabled by default from 16.06 switch version. These commands also get enabled when the switch upgrades from any older images to 16.06 with factory default configuration. From 16.06 release, the switch can act as DHCP server for IPv4 ZTP. The switch supports DHCP option 60 and 43 which is required for ZTP. AirWave 8.2.6.1 supports IPv6 ZTP over data port and AirWave 8.2.8 will support both IPv4 and IPv6 ZTP over OOBM port.

Configuring DHCP-based ZTP with AirWave

ZTP auto-configures your switches as follows:

Procedure

1. The switch boots up with the factory default configuration.
2. The switch sends out a DHCP discovery from data port/OOBM.

IPv4:

- The preferred configuration method uses DHCP option 43 value as a string to parse AirWave configuration. Switch expects a DHCP option 60 with value `ArubaInstantAP` along with DHCP option 43 to parse AirWave details.
- The alternative configuration method supports both encapsulated values from option 43 and direct value from option 43. Encapsulated vendor-specific sub options, with suboption code 146 is for AirWave details.

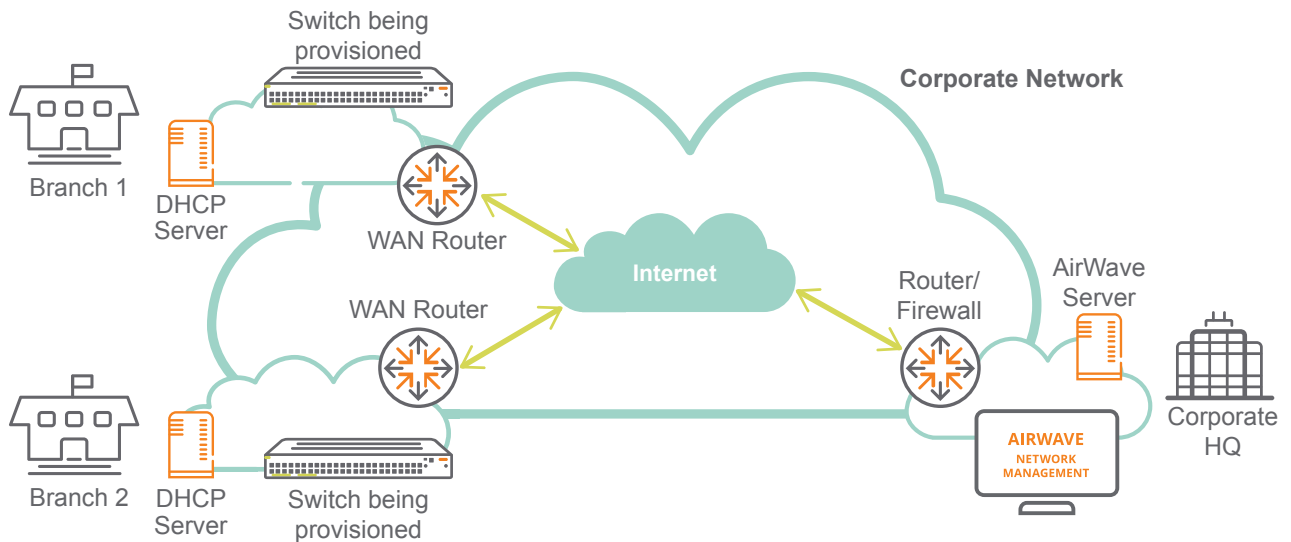


NOTE: IPv4 DHCP sub option 146 is not supported to configure AMP information through OOBM.

IPv6:

- IPv6 uses DHCP option 17 with sub option 100 and vendor class Enterprise ID as 47196.
 - DHCPv6 based ZTP on OOBM interface, `ipv6 enable` and `ipv6 address dhcp full` commands are enabled by default on OOBM interface.
3. After the AirWave details are verified and configured, the switch initiates the check-in into the AirWave server using the HTTPS communication. The AirWave configuration must be in the following format:

```
<Group>:<Topfolder>:<folder1>,<AMP IP >,<shared secret>
```
 4. From 16.08, if AirWave is reachable through both OOBM and Data VLAN, switch tries to register only with AirWave using OOBM.
 5. After a successful registration, AirWave can monitor, configure, and troubleshoot the switches. Refer to *Aruba Networks and AirWave Switch Configuration Guide*.
 6. Check-in failure retry is done every 60 seconds for 10 retries.
 7. If DHCP does not provide AirWave details, the switch connects to Activate (Activate ZTP starts) for AirWave or Aruba Central details. If the DHCP options are not configured for AirWave, the switch is left in its default state for manual configuration.



In the preceding illustration, the workflow is as follows:

1. The switches being provisioned in the branches are booted obtaining the IP address from the DHCP server.
2. The DHCP servers provide information about the AirWave server in the Corporate Head Quarters.
3. The switches connect to the AirWave server through the Corporate Network (MPLS VPN or equivalent).
4. The AirWave server pushes the configuration to the switches based on the AirWave folder, switch model, and branch location.
5. An optional IPsec tunnel can be established between the branches and the Corporate HQ to secure the management traffic. For more information, refer the **Activate-based ZTP with AirWave**.



NOTE: If IPsec tunnel is required for AirWave, the switch requires Aruba Mobility Controller IP address, which is provided through ZTP with DHCP Option 138 (CAPWAP).

DHCP server configuration for DHCP based ZTP

You can configure the DHCP server for AirWave using Windows DHCP server, Linux DHCP server, and ArubaOS DHCP server.

Preferred Methods

The following methods are preferred to configure DHCP server for AirWave:

Configure AirWave details in Windows DHCP server for IPv4

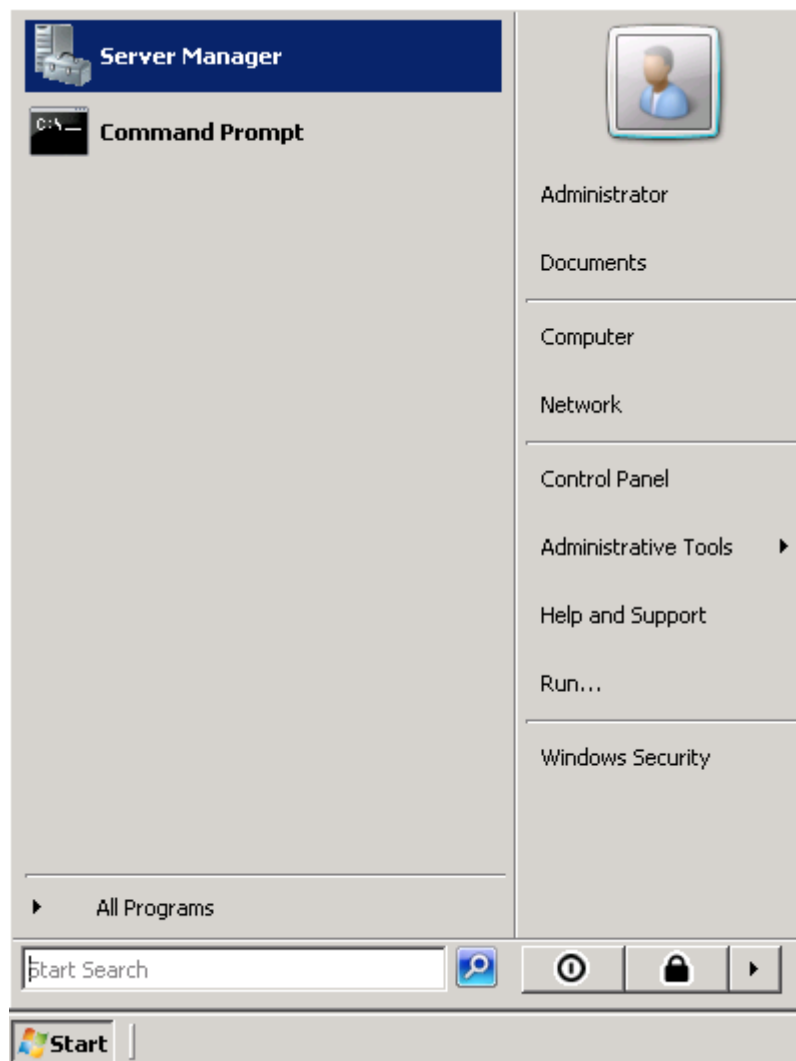


NOTE: AirWave provisioning using IPv6 on Windows based DHCP server is not supported.

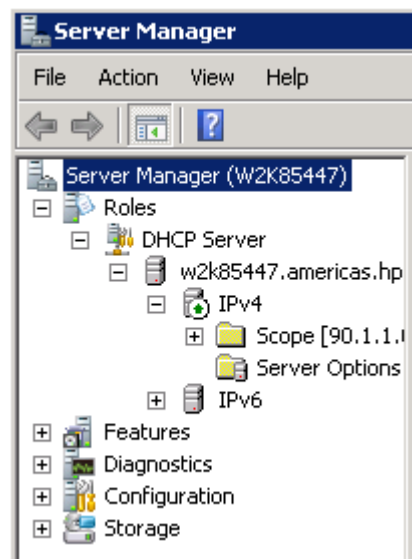
To configure the AirWave details in Windows DHCP server for IPv4, do the following steps:

Procedure

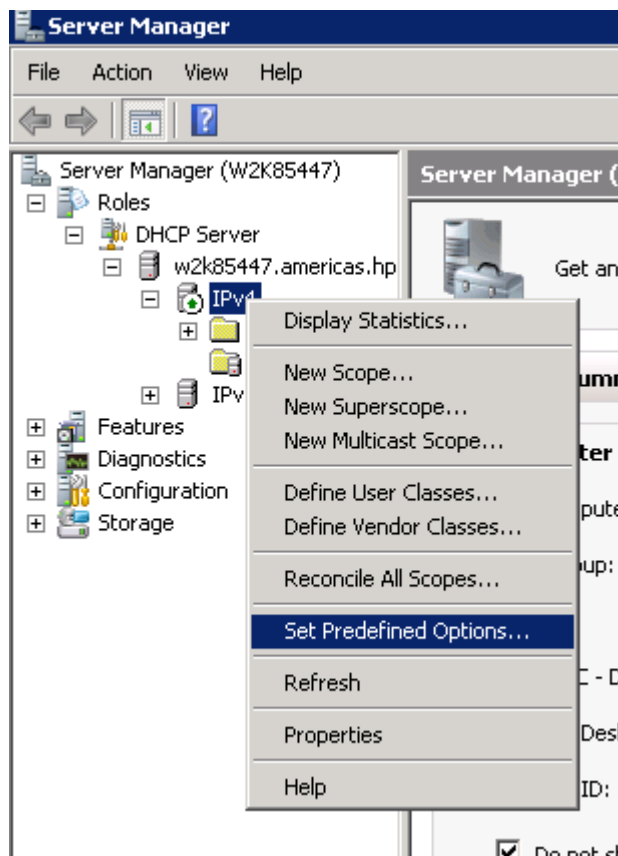
1. From the **Start** menu, select **Server Manager**.



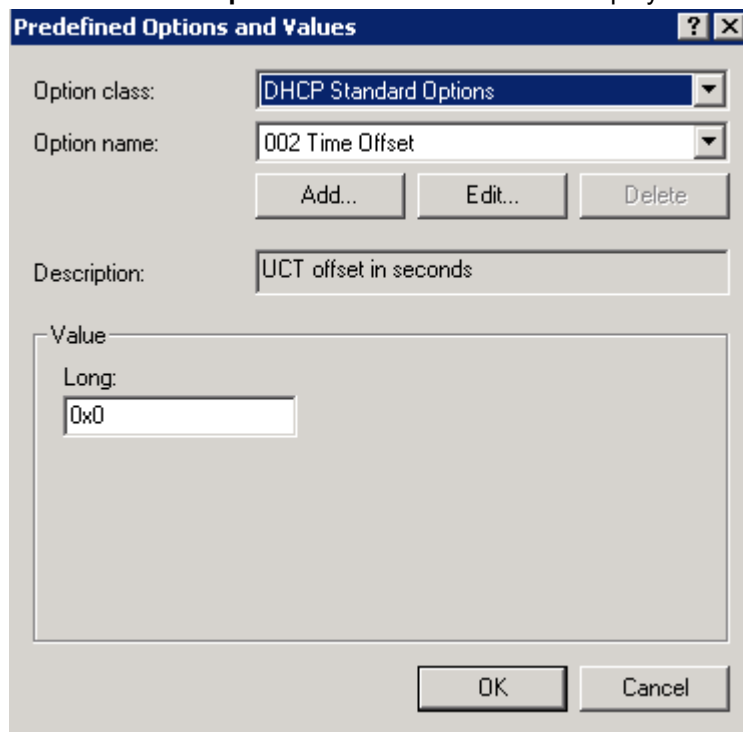
2. Select **Roles -> DHCP -> Server -> w2k8 -> IPv4**.



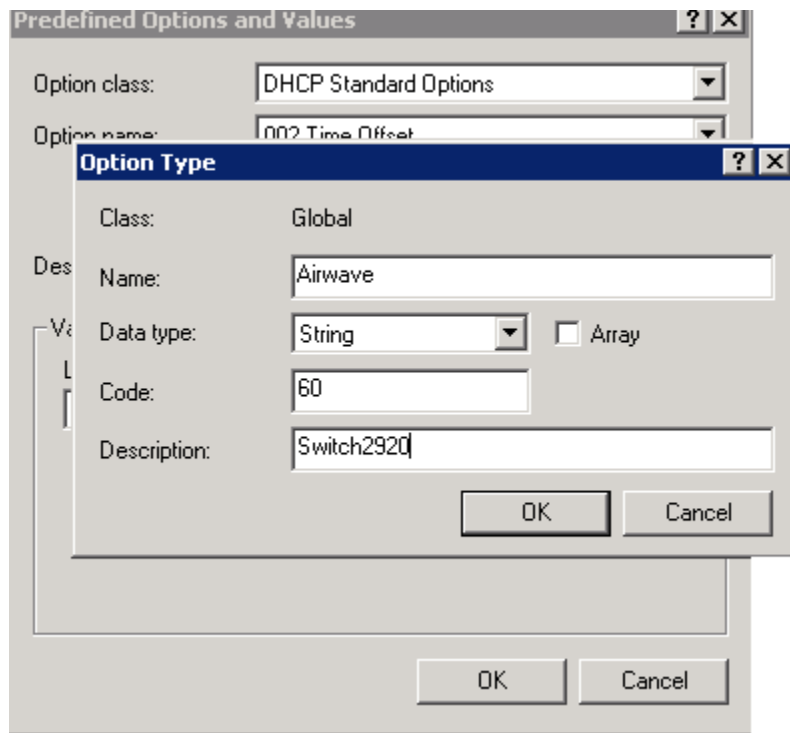
3. Right-click **IPv4** and select **Set Predefined Options...**



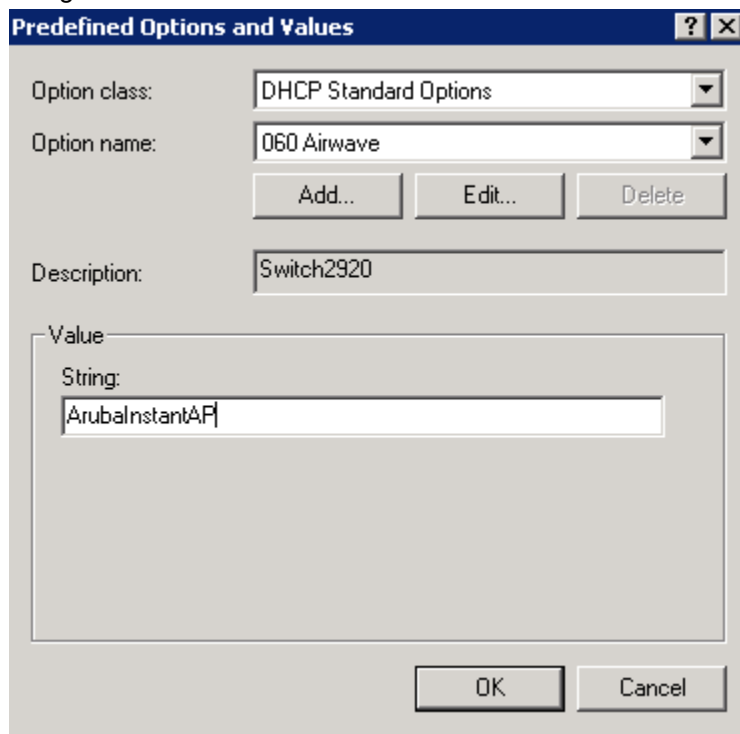
4. The **Predefined Options and Values** screen is displayed. Click **Add...**



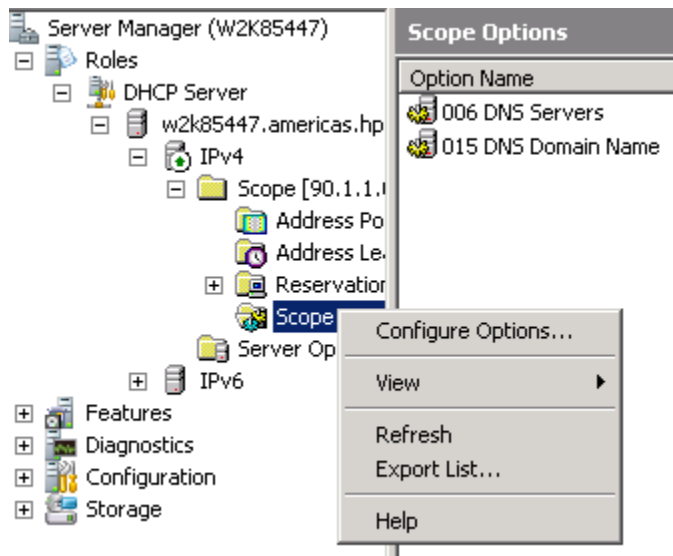
5. Enter the **Name** (any), **Data type** (select **String**), **Code** (enter 60), and **Description** (any).



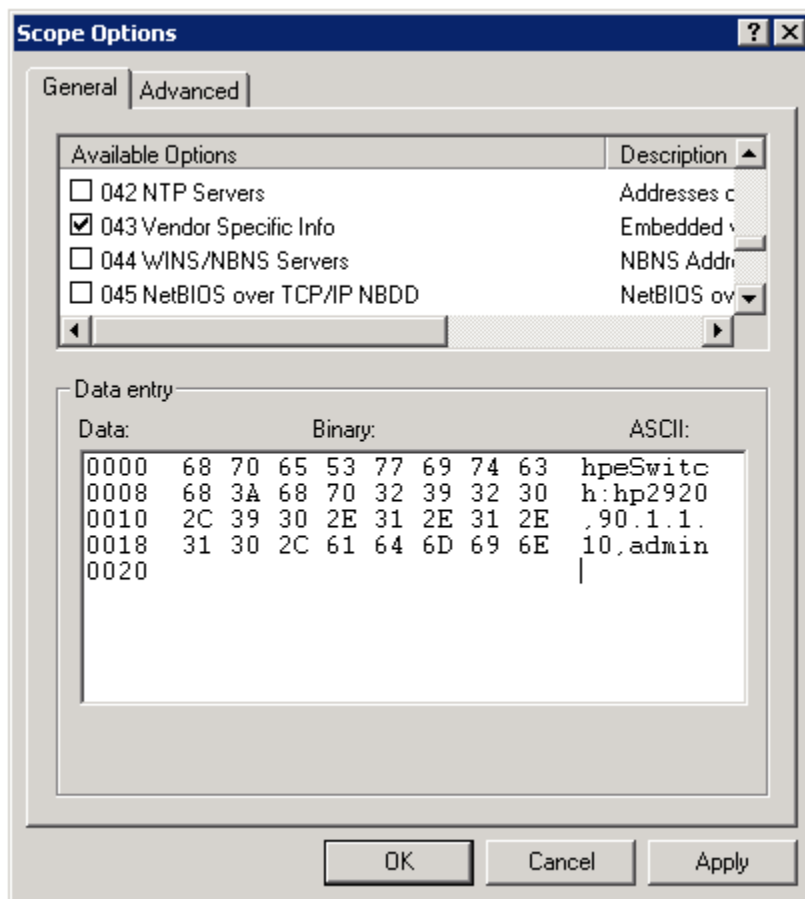
6. Click **OK**.
7. From the **Predefined Options and Values** screen, under **Value**, enter the String **ArubaInstantAP**. The string is case-sensitive and must be **ArubaInstantAP**.



8. Click **OK**.
9. Under IPv4, expand **Scope**. Right-click **Scope Options** and select **Configure Options...**



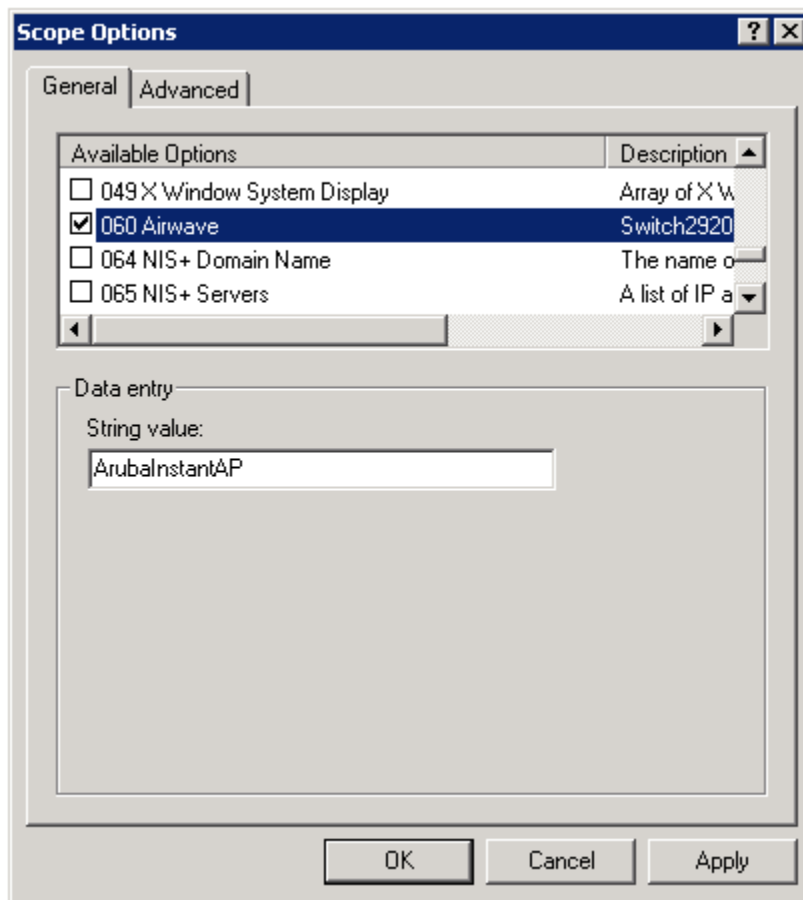
10. Under the General tab, select **043 Vendor Specific Info**. The Data entry data appears. Under ASCII, enter **hpeSwitch:hp2920,90.1.1.10, admin**. The ASCII value has the following format:
`<Group>:<Topfolder>,<AMP IP>,<shared secret>`
11. To add subdirectories, use the following format: `<Group>:<Topfolder>:<folder1>,<AMP IP>,<shared secret>`



12. Under the General tab, select **060 AirWave**. Click **OK**.



NOTE: No changes are required to the 060 option.



13. You can verify the AirWave details as follows:

```
switch# show amp-server
switch# show run
```

Configure AirWave details in Linux DHCP server for IPv4

To configure the AirWave details in Linux DHCP server for IPv4, enter the following information:

```
option CAPWAP code 138 = array of ip-address;
ddns-update-style ad-hoc;
subnet 192.168.20.0 netmask 255.255.255.0 {
    option tftp-server-name "192.168.20.5";
    option routers 192.168.20.31;
    option ntp-servers 192.168.20.5;
    option domain-name "Airport";
    option domain-name-servers 192.168.20.5;
    option CAPWAP 171.0.0.3;

    #option 43 "171.0.0.100";
    range 192.168.20.10 192.168.20.30;
}
```

Configure AirWave details in Linux DHCP server for IPv6

To configure the AirWave details in Linux DHCP server for IPv6, enter the following information:

```
default-lease-time 900;
preferred-lifetime 600;
option dhcp-renewal-time 300;
option dhcp-rebinding-time 600;
allow leasequery;
option dhcp6.info-refresh-time 800;
dhcpv6-lease-file-name "/root/dhcpd6.leases";
host myclient {
    # The entry is looked up by this
    host-identifier option
        dhcp6.client-id 00:01:00:01:00:04:93:e0:00:00:00:00:a2:a2;

    # A fixed address
    fixed-address6 2001::1234;

    # A fixed prefix
    fixed-prefix6 2001::/64;

    # For debug (to see when the entry statements are executed)
    # (log sol when a matching Solicitation is received)
    ##if packet(0,1) = 1 { log(debug,sol); }
}

# The subnet where the server is attached
subnet6 2001::/64 {
    range6 2001::5000 2001::5090;

    # Some /64 prefixes available for Prefix Delegation (RFC 3633)
    #3ffe:501:ffff:100:: 3ffe:501:ffff:111:: /64;
    prefix6 2001:: 2001:3:: /64;

    option dhcp6.name-servers 2001::6001,2001::6002;

    option dhcp6.vendor-opts
        00:00:B8:5C: # HPE enterprise-number
        00:64:00:35: # suboption (100) + length of AW string

    #below hex values are for this ascii string : group:folder,2001::212,secret
    67:72:6f:75:70:3a:66:6f:6c:64:65:72:2c:32:30:30:31:3a:3a:32:34:32:2c:73:65:63:72:65:74;
}
```

Configure AirWave details in ArubaOS-Switch DHCP server for IPv4



NOTE: AirWave provisioning using IPv6 on ArubaOS-Switch based DHCP server is not supported.

To configure the AirWave details in ArubaOS-Switch DHCP server for IPv4, enter the following information:

```
option 43 ascii "group:folder,192.168.240.242,secret1"
option 60 ascii "ArubaInstantAP"
```

Alternate Methods

The following are the alternate methods to configure DHCP server for AirWave:

Configure AirWave details in Windows DHCP server for IPv4



NOTE: AirWave provisioning using IPv6 on Windows based DHCP server is not supported.

To configure the AirWave details in Windows DHCP server for IPv4, do the following steps:

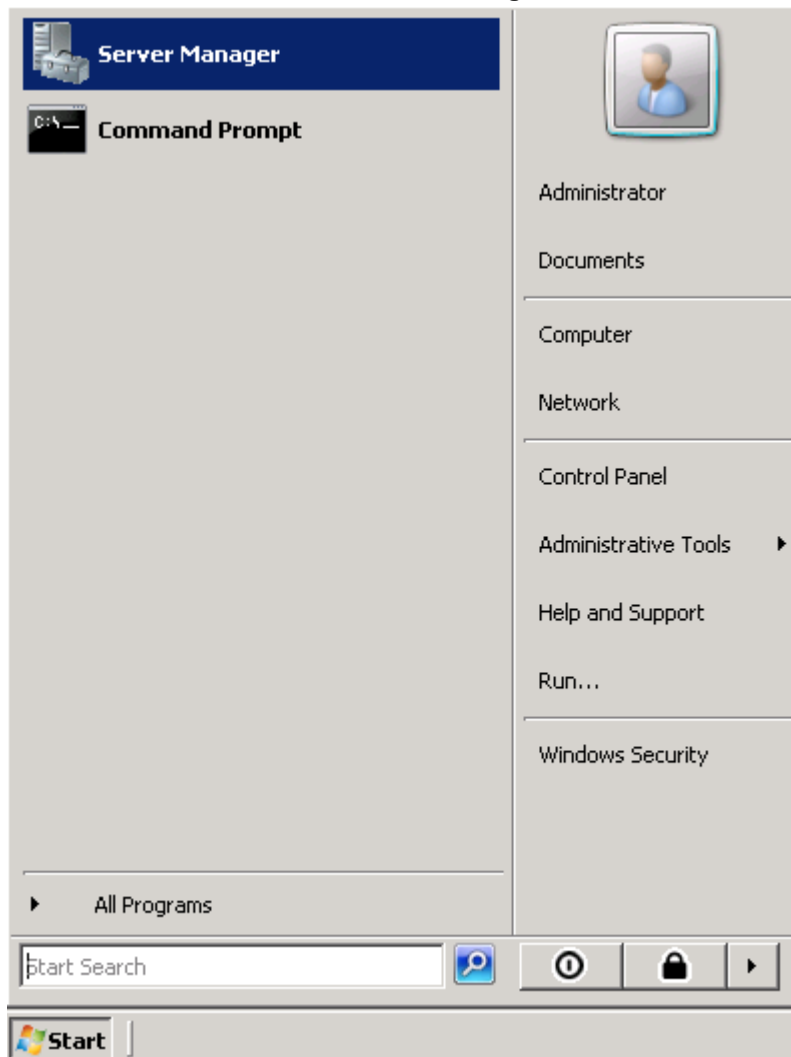


NOTE:

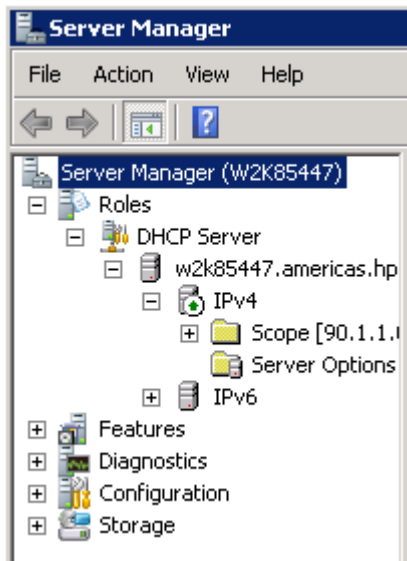
- Use these steps to configure ZTP for every switch by selecting a different Vendor Class for each type of switch.
- This method is not applicable for ZTP through OOBM.

Procedure

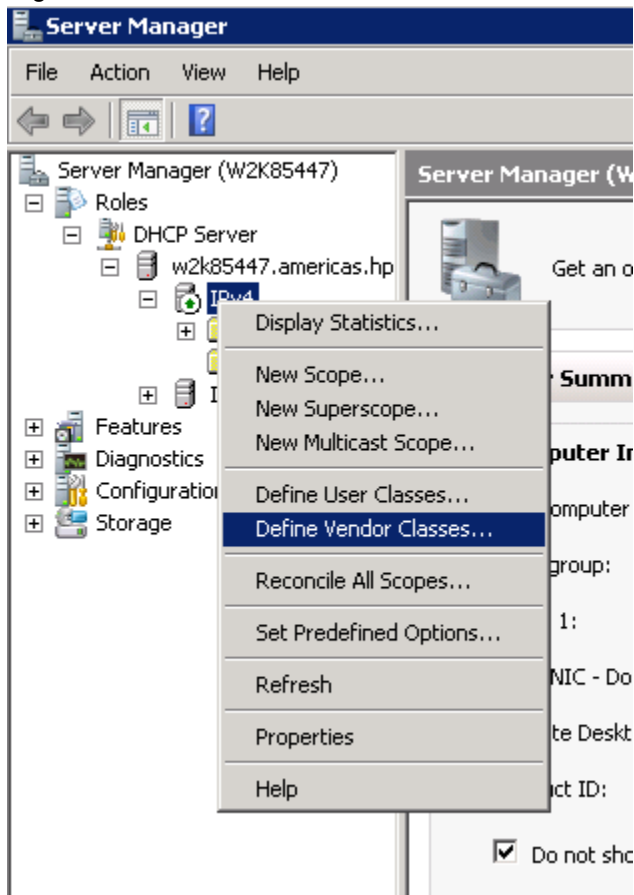
1. From the **Start** menu, select **Server Manager**.



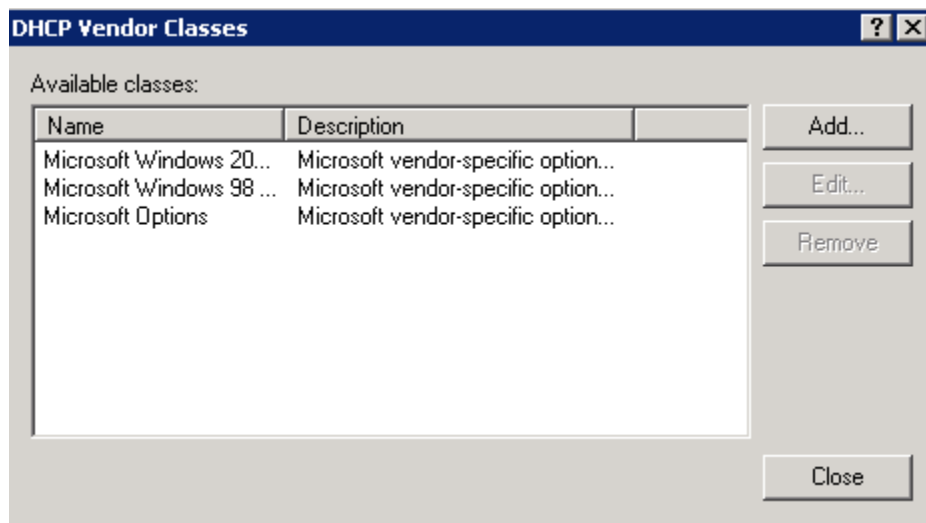
2. Select **Roles -> DHCP -> Server -> w2k8 -> IPv4**.



3. Right-click **IPv4** and select **Define Vendor Classes....**



4. The DHCP Vendor Classes window is displayed. Click **Add....**



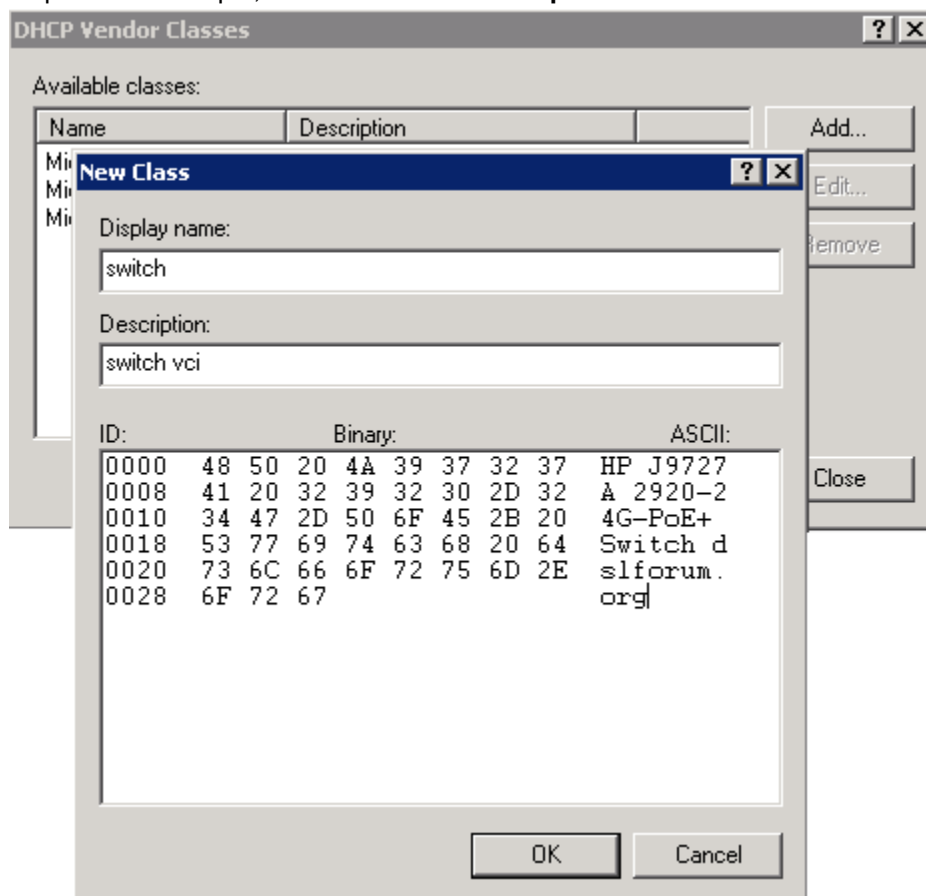
- To get the vendor-specific value of a switch, go to the switch console and enter:

```
switch# show dhcp client vendor-specific
```

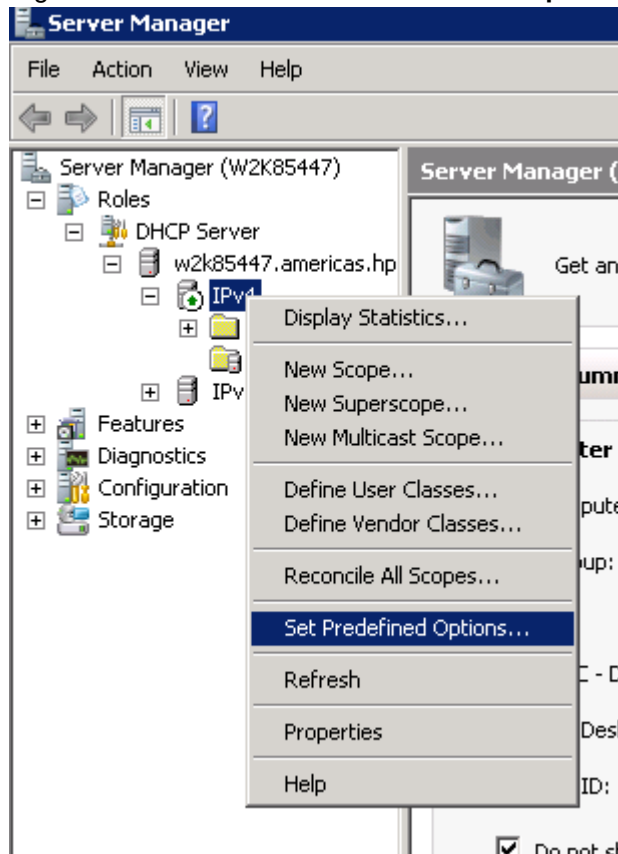
- The following is the sample command output: Processing of Vendor Specific Configuration is enabled.

```
Vendor Class Id = J9729A 2920-24G-PoE+ Switch dslforum.org
```

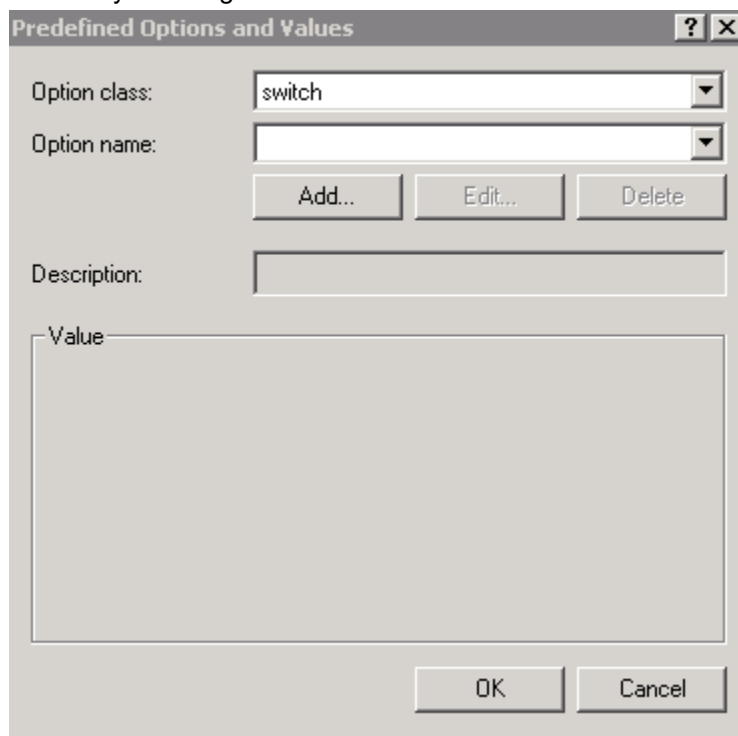
- From the New Class window, enter the desired **Display name** (any) and the **Description** (any). For the **ASCII** field, enter the exact value that you got by executing the `show` command performed in the previous step. In this example, **Hewlett Packard Enterprise J9729A 2920-24G-PoE+ Switch dslforum.org**.



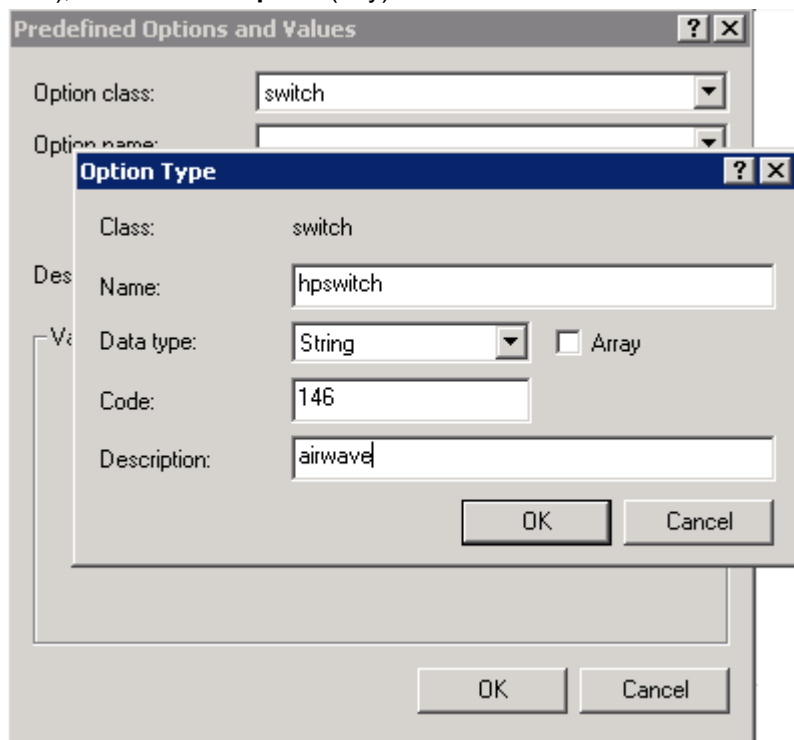
8. Click **OK**.
9. Right-click **IPv4** and select **Set Predefined Options....**



10. From the Predefined Options and Values window, select **Option class**. The Option Class displayed is the one that you configured under **DHCP Vendor Class**. In this example, the Option Class is **switch**.



11. Click **Add....**
12. From the Option Type window, enter the desired **Class** (any), the **Data type** (select **string**), the **Code** (enter **146**), and the **Description** (any).

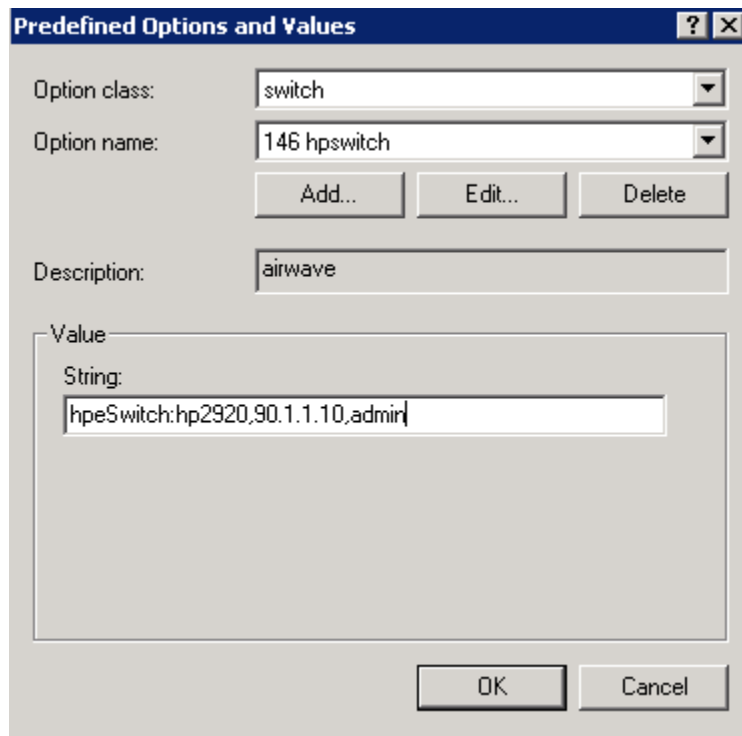


13. Click **OK**.
14. Under the Predefined **Options and Values** window, enter the **Value String**. In this example, enter **hpeSwitch:hp2920,90.1.1.10, admin**. The String has the following format:

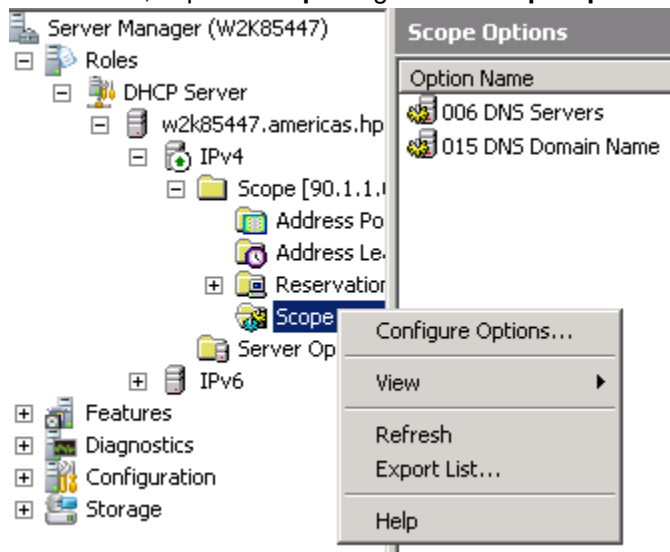
`<Group>:<Topfolder>,<AMP IP>,<shared secret>`

15. To add sub-folders, use the following format:

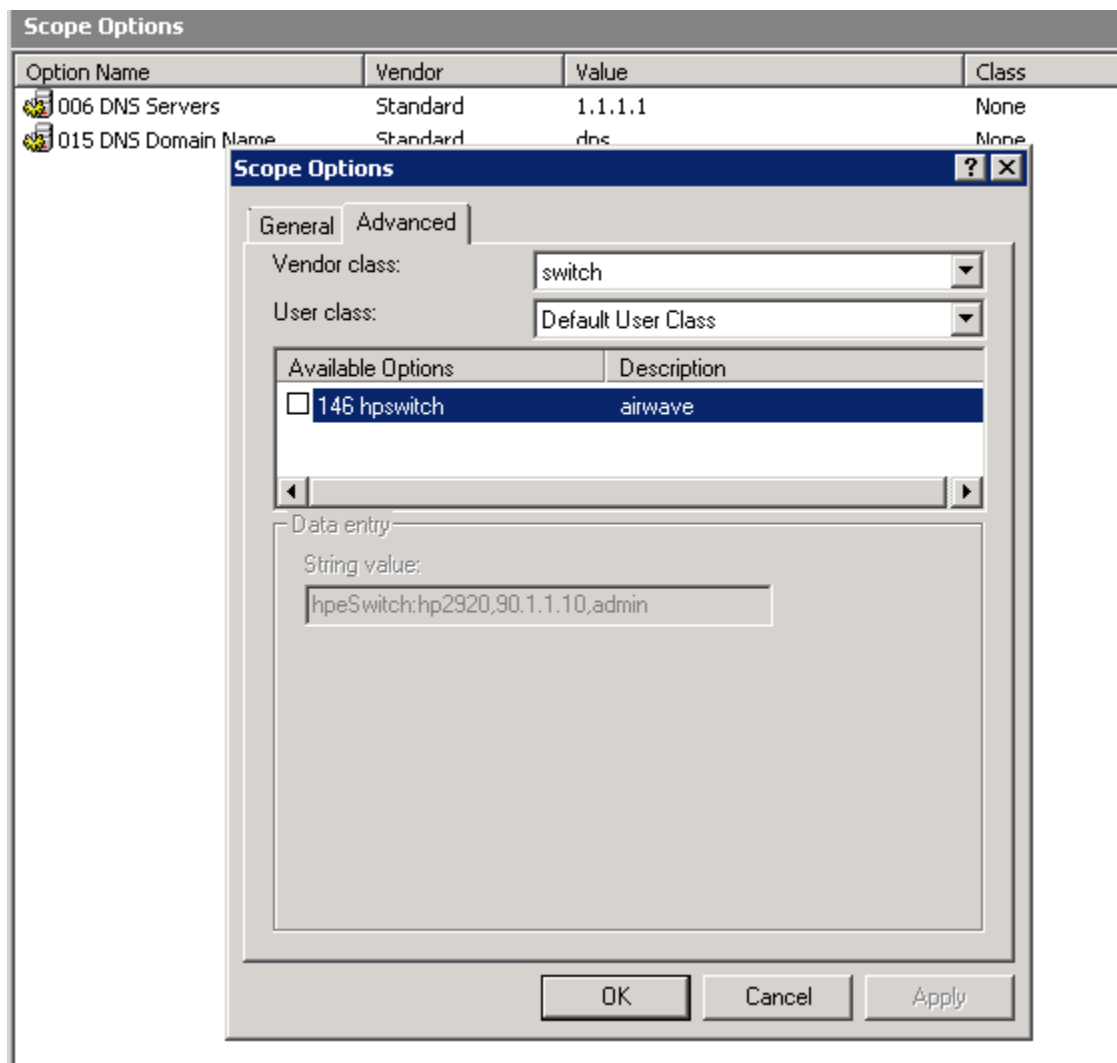
`<Group>:<Topfolder>:<folder1>,<AMP IP>,<shared secret>`



16. Click **OK**.
17. Under **IPv4**, expand **Scope**. Right-click **Scope Options** and select **Configure Options...**



18. From the **Scope Options** window:
 - a. Select the **Advanced** tab.
 - b. Under Vendor class, select the desired switch. In this example, **switch**.
 - c. Select the **146 switch** option.
 - d. Click **OK**.



19. You can verify the AirWave details as follows:

```
switch# show amp-server
switch# show run
```

Configure AirWave details in Linux DHCP server for IPv4

To configure the AirWave details in Linux DHCP server for IPv4, enter the following information:

```
option space ArubaInstantAP;
option ArubaInstantAP.cfg code 144 = text;
option ArubaInstantAP.img code 145 = text;
option ArubaInstantAP.org code 146 = text;
option CAPWAP code 138 = array of ip-address;

ddns-update-style ad-hoc;

subnet 192.168.20.0 netmask 255.255.255.0 {
    option tftp-server-name "192.168.20.5";
    option routers 192.168.20.31;
    option ntp-servers 192.168.20.5;
    option domain-name "Airport";
    option domain-name-servers 192.168.20.5;
```

```

option CAPWAP 171.0.0.3, 192.168.20.31;

class "vendor-class" {
    match substring (option vendor-class-identifier,0,2);
    #match option vendor-class-identifier;
}
subclass "vendor-class" "HP" {
    vendor-option-space ArubaInstantAP;
    #option ArubaInstantAP.cfg "runningConfig_5400R.txt";
    #option ArubaInstantAP.img "KB_16_01_0004.swi";
    option ArubaInstantAP.org "aw_group:fold,171.0.0.100,secret1234";
}
subclass "vendor-class" "Ar" {
    vendor-option-space ArubaInstantAP;
    #option ArubaInstantAP.cfg "runningConfig_5400R.txt";
    #option ArubaInstantAP.img "KB_16_01_0004.swi";
    option ArubaInstantAP.org "aw_group:fold,171.0.0.100,secret1234";
}
range 192.168.20.10 192.168.20.30;
}

```

Limitations

- The HTTPS check-in to AirWave does not support HTTPS proxy.
- For non-ZTP cases, the AirWave check-in starts by validating the following condition:
Primary or Management VLAN must be configured with the IP address and one of the interfaces must be UP.
By default, VLAN 1 is the primary VLAN.
- OOBM redirection is not supported by VSF.

Best Practices

- Implement ZTP in a secure and private environment. Any public access may compromise the security of the switch, as follows:
 - Since ZTP is enabled only on the factory default configuration of the switch, DHCP snooping is not enabled. The Rogue DHCP server must be manually managed.
 - The DHCP offer is in plain data without encryption. Therefore, the offer can be listened by any device on the network and they can in turn obtain the AirWave information.
 - The TLS certificate of the server is not validated by the switch during the HTTPs check-in to AirWave. The AirWave server must be hosted in a private and secure environment of the switch.

Configure AirWave details manually

This section focuses on configuring the switch manually to reach out to AirWave. Manual configuration may be required, if ZTP is disabled due to the following scenarios or if AirWave credentials are not provided during the DHCP offer:

- Switch with configuration that explicitly disables ZTP
- Switch with nondefault configuration
- Switches that have upgraded from older images to 16.xx

In any of the above scenarios, you need to manually configure to reach the AirWave server using the `amp-server` command. This command helps you configure the AirWave IP address, group, folder, and shared secret. You must have the `manager` role to execute this command.

For example:

```
switch(config)# amp-server ip 192.168.1.1 group "group" folder "folder" secret "branch1024"
```

The `show amp-server` command shows the configuration details:

```
AirWave Configuration details
AMP Server IP : 192.168.1.1
AMP Server Group : GROUP
AMP Server Folder : folder
AMP Server Secret : branch1024
AMP Server Config Status: Configured
```

amp-server

Syntax

```
amp-server ip <IP-ADDR | IPv6-ADDR> group <GROUP> folder <FOLDER> secret <SECRET>
```

```
no amp-server
```

Description

The `amp-server` command configures AirWave Management Platform (AMP) IP address, group, folder, and shared secret for triggering the device registration with AMP. The `amp-server` command supports both the IPv4 and IPv6 addresses. Switch cannot be provisioned simultaneously with IPv4 and IPv6 AirWave addresses.



NOTE: The `amp-server` with IPv6 address is supported from 16.06 switch version.

The `no` form of this command removes the configuration for the AMP server.

Command context

```
config
```

Parameters

IP-ADDR

AMP server IPv4 address.

IPv6-ADDR

AMP server IPv6 address.

GROUP

AMP server group name.

FOLDER

AMP server folder name.

SECRET

AMP server shared secret string.

Example

```
Switch(config)# amp-server
ip                               Configure AMP server IP address.
Switch(config)# amp-server ip
IP-ADDR                         Enter an IP address.
IPV6-ADDR                       Enter an IPv6 address.
Switch(config)# amp-server ip 192.168.1.1
group                           AMP server group name.
Switch(config)# amp-server ip 192.168.1.1 group
GROUPNAME-STR                   AMP server group name.
Switch(config)# amp-server ip 192.168.1.1 group grp11
folder                          AMP server folder name.
Switch(config)# amp-server ip 192.168.1.1 group grp11 folder
FOLDERNAME-STR                 AMP server folder name.
Switch(config)# amp-server ip 192.168.1.1 group grp11 folder fld11
secret                          AMP server shared secret string.
Switch(config)# amp-server ip 192.168.1.1 group grp11 folder fld11 secret
SECRET-STR                     AMP server shared secret string.
Switch(config)# amp-server ip 192.168.1.1 group grp11 folder fld11 secret scrt11

Switch(config)# amp-server ip
IP-ADDR                         Enter an IP address.
IPV6-ADDR                       Enter an IPv6 address.
Switch(config)# amp-server ip 2001:1db8:3cd4:1115:1111:2222:1a2f:1a2b
group                           AMP server group name.
Switch(config)# amp-server ip 2001:1db8:3cd4:1115:1111:2222:1a2f:1a2b
group
GROUPNAME-STR                   AMP server group name.
Switch(config)# amp-server ip 2001:1db8:3cd4:1115:1111:2222:1a2f:1a2b
group grp21
folder                          AMP server folder name.
Switch(config)# amp-server ip 2001:1db8:3cd4:1115:1111:2222:1a2f:1a2b
group grp21 folder
FOLDERNAME-STR                 AMP server folder name.
Switch(config)# amp-server ip 2001:1db8:3cd4:1115:1111:2222:1a2f:1a2b
group grp21 folder fld21
secret                          AMP server shared secret string.
Switch(config)# amp-server ip 2001:1db8:3cd4:1115:1111:2222:1a2f:1a2b
group grp21 folder fld21 secret
SECRET-STR                     AMP server shared secret string.
Switch(config)# amp-server ip 2001:1db8:3cd4:1115:1111:2222:1a2f:1a2b
group grp21 folder fld21 secret scrt21
```

To view the AirWave configuration details, use the `show amp-server` command.

show amp-server

AMP Server Configuration details

```
AMP Server IP           : 2001:1db8:3cd4:1115:1111:2222:1a2f:1a2b
AMP Server Group        : grp21
AMP Server Folder       : fld21
AMP Server Secret       : scrt21
AMP Server Config Status : Configured
```

show running-configuration

switch# **show running-config**

```
; JL071A Configuration Editor; Created on release #KB.16.06.0000x
; Ver #13:03.f8.1c.fb.7f.bf.bb.ff.7c.59.fc.7b.ff.ff.fc.ff.ff.3f.ef:05

hostname "Switch"
```

```

module 1 type j1071x
flexible-module A type JL081A
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
oobm
    ip address dhcp-bootp
    exit
vlan 1
    name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
    untagged 1-24,A1-A4
    ip address dhcp-bootp
    ipv6 enable
    ipv6 address dhcp full
    exit
amp-server ip 2001:1db8:3cd4:1115:1111:2222:1a2f:1a2b group "grp21" folder "fld21"
    secret "scrt21"

```



NOTE: `ipv6 enable` and `ipv6 address dhcp full` are enabled by default on VLAN 1 from 16.06 switch version.

debug ztp

Syntax

```

debug ztp
no debug ztp

```

Description

Enables or disables ZTP debug logging.

Parameters and options

ztp

Zero Touch Provisioning.

no

The `no debug ztp` command disables ZTP debug logging.

Stacking support

The ZTP process for stacked switches with AirWave is similar to the one for the standalone switch, with the exception that only the commander in the stack checks in with AirWave.

Disabling ZTP

ZTP is disabled if you make any of the following changes to the switch configuration:

- Enter the switch configuration mode using the `configure terminal` command.
- Enter into Menu and exit without doing any configuration
- Use CLI, SNMP, REST APIs, menu interface, or the web GUI to configure any settings. The change is shown in the running-configuration of the switch.
- When device is upgraded from any 15.xx version to 16.01, see [Image Upgrade](#).
- Once DHCP server or Activate offers Airwave/Central details, ZTP is disabled. If the details are offered again, it is ignored.

Image Upgrade

If you upgrade from any 15.xx version to version 16.xx, the following minimal set of configuration is validated to enable or disable the ZTP process:

- If the switch has any other VLAN apart from the default VLAN, ZTP gets disabled.
- In default VLAN, if the IPv4 address is not set as DHCP (default option is DHCP), ZTP gets disabled.
- In default VLAN, if IPv6 is enabled or configured, ZTP gets disabled.

If you have any other configuration during the upgrade, ZTP will continue to be in the enabled state.

Troubleshooting

Cause

You can troubleshoot switches by using the SSH connection and the device logs available in AirWave. For a list of all RMON message, refer to *ArubaOS-Switch Event Log Message Reference Guide*.

You can enable the debug logging with the `debug ztp` command, see [debug ztp](#).

AMP server messages

To display the AMP server debug messages, enter:

```
switch# debug ztp
```

To print the debug messages to the terminal, enter:

```
switch# debug destination session
```

Activate based ZTP with AirWave

ZTP with Activate is used in the following scenarios to help switches check in through the Internet with public facing instances of Airwave:

- Deployments where administrators do not have a DHCP server to configure Airwave options
- Absence of corporate network reaching every branch

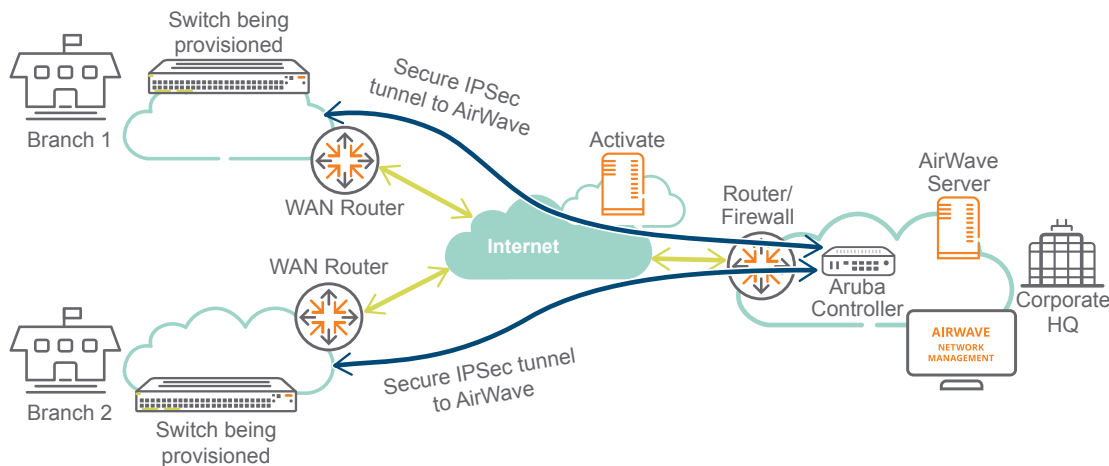


NOTE:

- Activate based ZTP is not supported for IPv6.
 - Activate based ZTP is not supported for both IPv4 and IPv6 through OOBM.
-

Configuring Activate-based ZTP with AirWave

For Activate-based ZTP, the switch connects to Aruba Activate service through the Internet and autoconfiguration takes place based on the settings provided in Activate. For more information on how to set up an Activate account, folder and their rules, refer to the *Aruba Activate User Guide*.



In the preceding illustration, the workflow is as follows:

1. The switches being provisioned in the branches are booted and connect to the Activate on the cloud.
2. Based on the administrator's provisioning (folder, rule), the device is placed in the appropriate folder before getting redirected to the AirWave server in the Corporate HQ.
3. The switches connect to the AirWave server, and the server pushes the configuration to the switches based on the AirWave folder, switch model, and branch location.
4. Optionally, an IPsec tunnel to the Controller in the HQ can be constructed to secure the management traffic to AirWave. This configuration can be set as part of the initial configuration push from Activate.

IPsec for AirWave Connectivity

Overview

This feature supports secure communication between the switch and Aruba mobility controller (VPN concentrator) for AirWave traffic. The switch also provides the necessary support for ZTP by establishing a secure tunnel between the switch and AirWave, which are provided by a DHCP server or Activate.

IPsec ensures that communication between the switch and AirWave server (management traffic) is protected by establishing a secure channel between the switches and the Aruba VPN Controller (connected to AirWave server).

IPsec for Management Traffic

IPsec supports ZTP in deployment scenarios less restrictive than private LANs. ZTP enables switches to be configured and managed automatically without administrator intervention. In a deployment scenario where a switch and AirWave are located in different branches connected through an untrusted public network (the Internet), the communication between the switch and AirWave server can be protected.

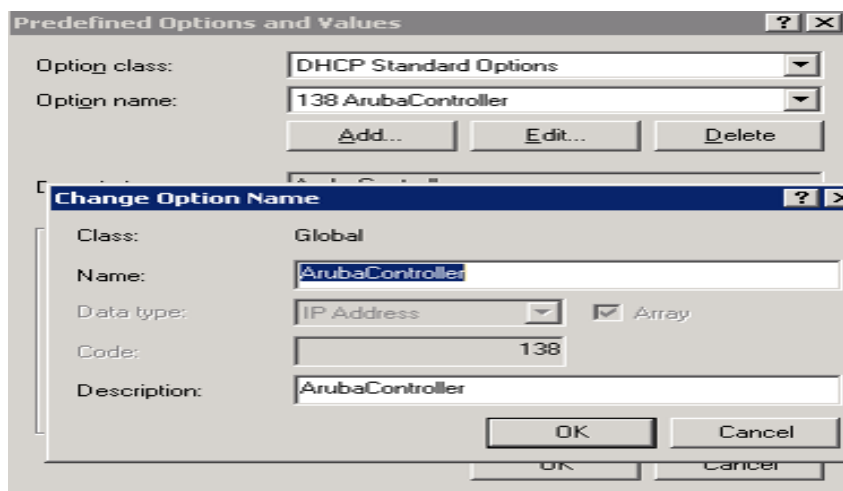


NOTE:

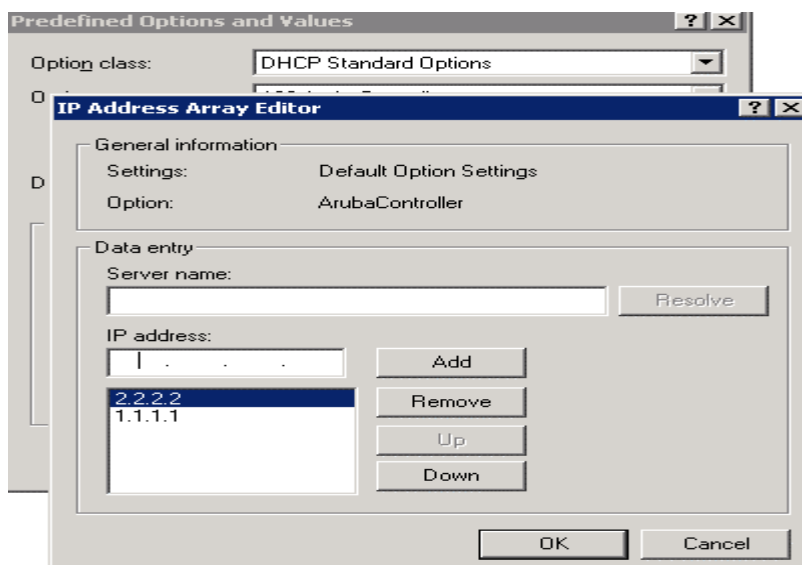
- IPsec tunnel is not supported with IPv6.
- IPsec tunnel is not supported through OOBM.

You can configure IPsec tunnel using any of the following methods:

- Activate ZTP
- DHCP ZTP with option 138
 1. To assign controller IP addresses, select DHCP option 138.



2. Define the controller IP addresses for both the primary and secondary controllers.



- Manual configuration

IPsec Tunnel Establishment

- IPsec tunnel for AirWave is auto-configured. The switch decides to create IPsec tunnel only when an Aruba controller IP is present in the device before establishing the connection to AirWave.
- If the controller IP is not provided, the switch will try to establish a direct connection to AirWave.
- If the controller IP is present, the switch auto configures and initiates an IPsec tunnel interface. Once the tunnel is established, the Aruba controller provides an inner IP which the switch will then use as source IP to send any AirWave bound traffic. The switch then creates a static route to AirWave with the IPsec tunnel interface as the gateway.

IPsec Tunnel Failures

The following behaviors can cause an IPsec tunnel creation failure:

- Time
The time in the switch has to be valid and correct. Ensure that NTP configuration is set up on switch and on the controller where the tunnel is terminating.
- Authentication
The switch MAC addresses for both members must be added to the Aruba controller whitelist.
- Controller IP
The controller IP must be reachable from the switch.
- Inner IP pool
Ensure the inner IP pool is configured on the controller. Tunnel establishment is not successful, if the pool is full.
- Static Route
There must not be any conflicting static route in the system for the AirWave IP configured.
- License
The controller must have sufficient license to support IPsec tunnels.

IPsec tunnel to secondary controller

ArubaOS-Switch assists support for IPsec tunnel between switch and the Aruba Controller (VPN concentrator) to carry the switch generated traffic to multiple services behind the Aruba Controller. The services include AirWave management station, ClearPass, DNS, Syslog, and so on.

IPsec tunnel needs a backup support for IPsec session failure. If the existing IPsec session is lost, the switch is able to establish a new IPsec tunnel session with a backup controller (secondary controller).

Backup controller support for IPsec tunnel

The switch supports two controllers with all the services such as ClearPass, Syslog, DNS, and AirWave. In such scenarios, a controller functions as a backup controller.

1. `aruba-vpn` is modified to support backup controller IP.

```
aruba-vpn type amp peer-ip <IP_addr> backup-peer-ip <IP_addr>
```

```
no aruba-vpn type amp peer-ip <IP_addr> backup-peer-ip <IP_addr>
```

```
switch(config)# aruba-vpn type amp peer-ip 171.0.0.1  
backup-peer-ip      Configure the Aruba VPN backup IP address.  
tos                 Configure the Aruba VPN tos value.  
ttl                 Configure the Aruba VPN ttl value.  
switch(config)# aruba-vpn type amp peer-ip 171.0.0.1 backup-peer-ip 171.0.0.3
```

2. When the switch is configured with both the primary and backup controllers, the switch will establish IPsec tunnel connection with primary controller.
3. Switch initiates a new IPsec session with either primary or backup controller once "Dead Peer Detection" event is triggered for existing IPsec session.
4. Switch retries establishing IPsec session with both primary and backup controllers alternatively until a successful IPsec handshake.

5. Switch tries to establish the IPsec tunnel with the same controller when the following events occur:
- Switch IP change
 - Vlan ID change
 - Redundancy switch over
6. If `aruba-vpn type` is *amp*, after five consecutive AirWave check-in failures, the existing tunnel is destroyed and an IPsec tunnel is established with the other controller.



NOTE: ZTP continues to support existing DHCP options for AirWave or Controller IP discovery. You can configure both the primary and backup controllers IP in DHCP.

Switch reachability to the controllers

Figure 89: *Controllers through same VLAN*

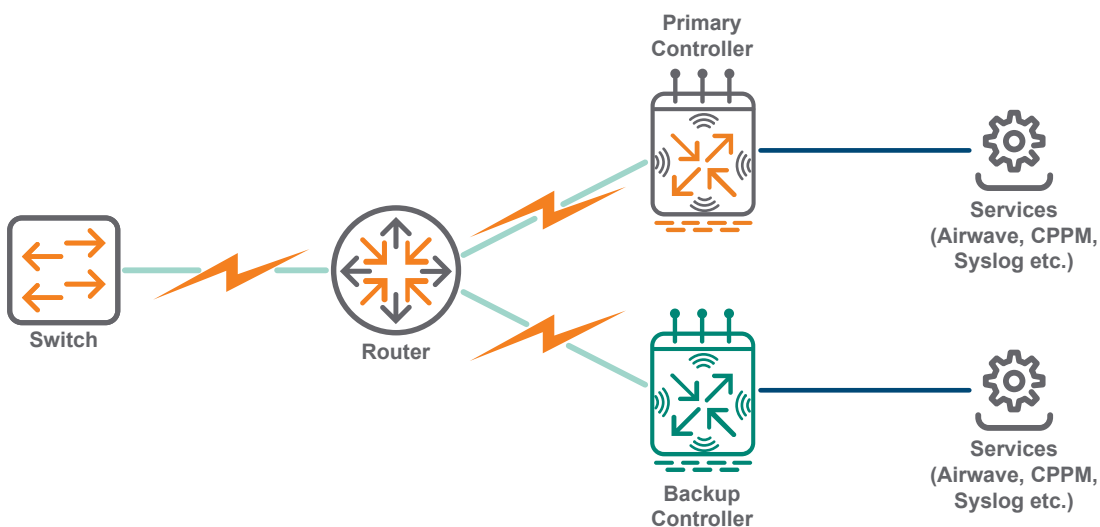
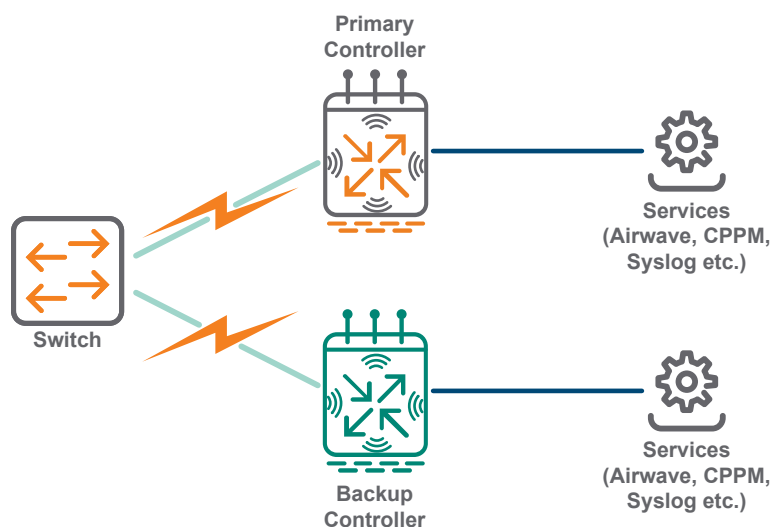


Figure 90: *Controllers through different VLANs*



Restrictions

1. Priority based failover is not supported.
2. When there is a failover to backup controller, the primary controller will not try to re-establish the IPsec session when it becomes active.
3. Failover to the other (either primary or secondary) controller results in data loss. All the existing application sessions in the switch will be terminated.



NOTE: The failover will take up to three minutes.

4. The events such as time change and port flap, breaks the existing IPsec session and triggers a failover. The new IPsec session is established with a backup controller. In such scenario, switch does not perform any reachability test before selecting a controller to retry.

AirWave IP after discovery

AirWave IP and Aruba Controller IP (either from the Activate Server or from a DHCP server) are established and auto configured in an IPsec-IPv4 Tunnel. Once received, the IPsec tunnel is auto configured and established to send AirWave traffic securely. The Aruba Controller provides an inner-ip to the switch which then can communicate with AirWave.

Configuring the Aruba controller

On the Aruba Controller, configure through CLI:

Procedure

1. Add the switch MAC address to whitelist for authentication. For more information, refer http://www.arubanetworks.com/techdocs/ArubaOS_63_Web_Help/Content/ArubaFrameStyles/Control_Plane/Whitelists_on_Campus_and_Remote_APs.htm
2. Add an IP address pool that can be assigned to switch after tunnel creation. The IP range must not overlap with the interfaces IP on the controller.

```
ip local pool "ipsec" 2.0.0.100 2.0.0.255
```

3. Create access lists that permit AirWave traffic and assign them to ap-roles. It is required only if the controller version is less than 6.5.2.0 or 8.1.0.0. If required, you can add specific acls such as `sys-switch-role`.

```
ip access-list session acl
any any tcp 22 permit
any any tcp 443 permit
user-role sys-switch role
access-list session acl
```

4. View the whitelist.

AirWave Controller IP configuration commands

aruba-vpn type

Syntax

```
aruba-vpn type amp peer-ip <IP_addr> backup-peer-ip <IP_addr>

no aruba-vpn type amp peer-ip <IP_addr> backup-peer-ip <IP_addr>

aruba-vpn type any peer-ip <IP_addr> backup-peer-ip <IP_addr>

no aruba-vpn type any peer-ip <IP_addr> backup-peer-ip <IP_addr>
```

Description

Configure the Aruba VPN type, peer IP address. When Aruba VPN type is `any`, the tunnel is established independent of Airwave configuration.

The no form of the command removes the `aruba-vpn type` statement from the configuration.

Parameters

`type`

Configure the controller IP.

`amp`

Configure Remote Access VPN session to protect specific switch generated traffic. It also supports secure ZTP of Airwave Management Platform (AMP) server.

`any`

Configure Remote Access VPN session to protect specific switch generated traffic. Secure ZTP is not supported.

`<IP_addr>`

IP address of the VPN.

Usage

```
switch(config)# aruba-vpn type
```

```
switch(config)# aruba-vpn type amp
```

```
switch(config)# aruba-vpn type amp peer-ip
```

```
switch(config)# aruba-vpn type any
```



NOTE:

- When you configure `aruba-vpn type` as `any`, the switch creates a tunnel and updates the `inner-ip`.
- You can create routes using the `ip route` command for next hop as `aruba-vpn` sends management traffic over the tunnel. For example: `ip route 2.0.0.0 255.255.255.0 tunnel aruba-vpn`

Show commands

`show aruba-vpn`

Syntax

```
show aruba-vpn type <VPN-TYPE>
```

Description

Show Aruba-VPN configuration information.

```
show aruba-vpn
```

```
show aruba-vpn
```


Aruba VPN details

```
Aruba VPN Type           : amp
Aruba VPN Peer IP        : 171.0.0.1
Aruba VPN Backup Peer IP : 171.0.0.3
Aruba VPN Config Status  : Configured
Aruba VPN tos            : Value from IPv4 header
Aruba VPN ttl            : 64
```

show aruba-vpn type amp

```
show aruba-vpn type amp
```

Aruba VPN details

```
Aruba VPN Type           : amp
Aruba VPN Peer IP        : 171.0.0.1
Aruba VPN Backup Peer IP : 171.0.0.3
Aruba VPN Config Status  : Configured
Aruba VPN tos            : Value from IPv4 header
Aruba VPN ttl            : 64
```

show ip route

Syntax

```
show ip route
```

Description

Show the IP route.

show ip route

```
show ip route
```

IP Route Entries

Destination	Gateway	VLAN	Type	Sub-Type	Metric	Dist.
0.0.0.0/0	192.168.20.31	1	static		250	1
**2.0.0.9/32	aruba-vpn		static		1	1
*2.0.0.108/32	aruba-vpn		connected		1	0
127.0.0.0/8	reject		static		0	0
127.0.0.1/32	lo0		connected		1	0
192.168.20.0/24	DEFAULT_VLAN	1	connected		1	0

*The inner IP received from the Aruba Controller.

**Static Route for AirWave IP. Added automatically by the switch after tunnel establishment.

show interfaces tunnel aruba-vpn

Syntax

```
show interfaces tunnel aruba-vpn
```

Description

Auto-configured tunnel interface before creating IPsec. The tunnel ID is auto generated and to avoid conflict with user generated tunnel interface, the tunnel id is always the max tunnel supported by the switch + 1.

aruba-vpn

Display the configuration and status details of aruba-vpn tunnel.

brief

Display brief configuration and status for all tunnels.

Usage

```
show interfaces tunnel aruba-vpn
```

```
show interfaces tunnel brief
```

```
show interfaces [tunnel] [<TUNNEL-LIST> | <TUNNEL-NAME> | brief | type]
```

```
switch(config)# show interfaces tunnel aruba-vpn
```

Tunnel Configuration :

```
Tunnel           : tunnel-129
Tunnel Name      : aruba-vpn-tunnel
Tunnel Status    : Enabled
Source Address   : 192.168.20.10
Destination Address : 171.0.0.3
Mode             : IPsec IPv4
TOS              : Value from IPv4 header
TTL              : 64
IPv6             : Disabled
MTU              : 1280
```

Current Tunnel Status :

```
Tunnel State           : Up
Destination Address Route : 0.0.0.0/0
Next Hop IP            : 192.168.20.31
Next Hop Interface      : vlan-1
Next Hop IP Link Status : Up
Source Address          : Configured on vlan-1
IP Datagrams Received   : 11
IP Datagrams Transmitted : 36
```

```
switch(config)# show interfaces tunnel brief
```

Status - Tunnel Information Brief

```
Tunnel           : tunnel-129
Mode             : IPsec IPv4
Source Address    : 192.168.20.10
Destination Address : 171.0.0.3
Configured Tunnel Status : Enabled
Current Tunnel State : Up
```

show crypto-ipsec sa

Syntax

```
show crypto ipsec sa
```

Description

Show crypto-IPsec statistics.

```
switch# show crypto ipsec sa
```

```
Crypto IPSec Status
Interface           : 1
Source Address      : 192.168.20.10
Destination Address  : 171.0.0.3
Source Port         : 0
SPI                 : 3767553536
Destination Port    : 0
Encapsulation Protocol : ESP
Encryption          : AES
PFS                 : 0
Hash                : SHA1
PFS Group           :
Mode                : tunnel
Key Life            : 3600
Key Size            : 0
Remaining key Life  : 3303
Remaining key Size  : 0
Interface           : 2
Source Address      : 171.0.0.3
Destination Address  : 192.168.20.10
Source Port         : 0
SPI                 : 4173307552
Destination Port    : 0
Encapsulation Protocol : ESP
Encryption          : AES
PFS                 : 0
Hash                : SHA1
PFS Group           :
Mode                : tunnel
Key Life            : 3600
Key Size            : 0
Remaining key Life  : 3301
Remaining key Size  : 0
```

Usage

show crypto ipsec statistics

show running-configuration

Syntax

show running-configuration



NOTE: IP route or tunnel interface will not be displayed in show run as they are auto created.

show running-configuration

```
show running-config
```

Running configuration:

```
; JL258A Configuration Editor; Created on release #XX.XX.XX.XXXX
; Ver #11:10.9b.3f.bf.bb.ef.7c.59.fc.6b.fb.9f.fc.ff.ff.37.ef:bc
hostname "switch"
module 1 type jl258a
ip default-gateway 192.168.20.31
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
vlan 1
    name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
    untagged 1-10
    ip address 192.168.20.10 255.255.255.0
    exit
amp-server ip 2.0.0.9 group "aw_group" folder "fold" secret "secret123"
aruba-vpn type amp peer-ip 171.0.0.3
```

ZTP with Aruba Central

Aruba Central does not require any configuration of local DHCP server or other network components but requires a switch with Internet access.

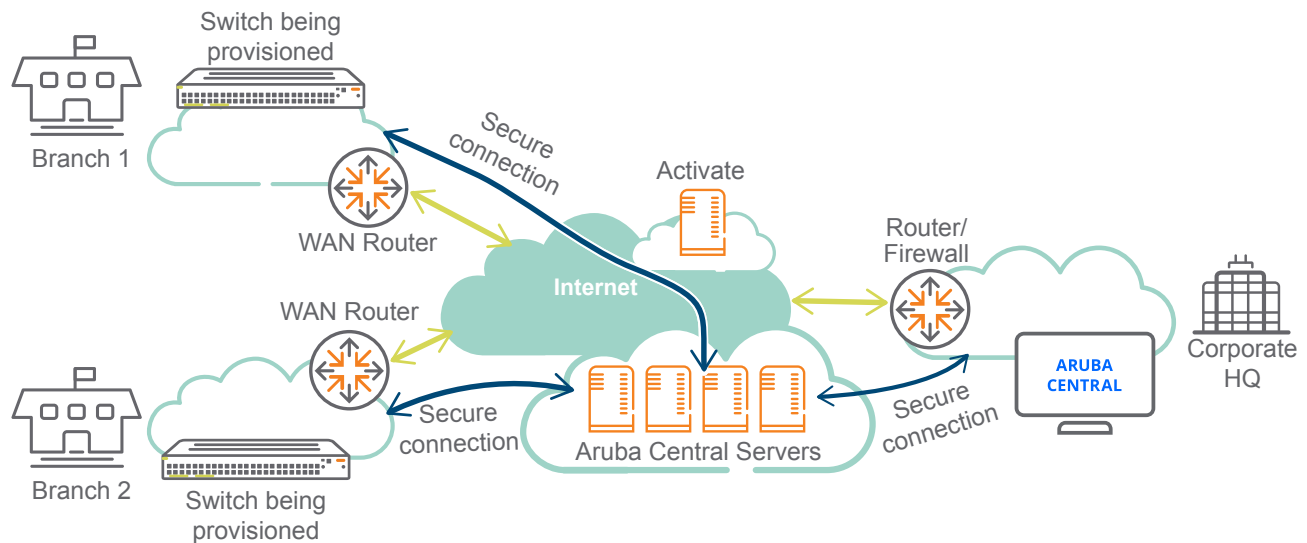
Users with access to Aruba Central cloud portal must provision their switches and assign licenses accordingly. Once complete, Aruba Central will automatically program the Activate portal with the required switch details and the group to which the switch must check in.



NOTE:

- Aruba Central does not support IPv6 connectivity.
- Aruba Central is not applicable for connection through OOBM interface.

The following diagram illustrates the working of Aruba Central ZTP:



The workflow is as follows:

1. The switches being provisioned in branches boot and connect to the Activate on the cloud.
2. Based on administrator's provisioning (such as folder, rule), the device is placed in the appropriate folder before being redirected to the Aruba Central.
3. The switches check-in with Central and the server pushes the configuration to the switches based on the group, switch model, and branch location.

For more information on Aruba Central configuration, refer to the *Aruba Central Configuration Guide*.

After the switch successfully checks-in with Aruba Central, the following management interfaces on the switch are disabled:

- WebUI
- REST
- SNMP

- TR-69
- Menu

There is a restriction on executing the following commands over CLI:

- boot
- recopy
- erase
- reload
- startup-default
- upgrade-software
- setup
- delete
- reboot
- restore
- menu
- write memory
- amp-server

LED Blink feature

Central connectivity loss is indicated by LEDs. If connectivity is broken and Aruba-Central is enabled, the USR/FDX and Locator LEDs will blink. The LEDs will stop blinking once the switch is connected back to Central.

Aruba Central Configuration manually

In factory default switches, ZTP with Central is turned ON. ZTP can be disabled in the following scenarios:

- Switches with edited configuration
- Switches where the administrator has explicitly turned off ZTP with Central

In any of the mentioned scenarios, an administrator can manually configure Aruba Central using the `aruba-central` command.

Activating ArubaOS-Switch Firmware Integration

CLIs are available for Activate firmware updates which enables, update, checks and shows firmware upgrades.

Operating Notes

Switch will periodically check with Activate every seven days for the latest image version.

Download the image from the URL provided by Activate and upgrade the switch with the new image.

Restrictions

When a switch is managed by either AirWave or Aruba Central, the automatic firmware check is disabled.

Activate upgrade from the non-supported build is disabled upon upgrading to version 16.03.

Upon upgrade from version 16.02 to version 16.03 with activate provision enabled, activate software update will be enabled.

activate software-update enable

Syntax

```
activate software-update [enable | disable]
```

Description

Enables or disables the Activate software update.

Activate software-update is enabled by default.

Options

disable

Disables the Activate software update.

enable

Enables the Activate software update.

Example

Switch will check with activate for every seven days for latest image available and RMON logs will be generated:

```
I 10/25/16 14:04:27 05219 activate:  
A system software update is available to version WB.16.02.0012.
```

activate software-update check

Syntax

```
activate software-update check
```

Description

Check the Activate software update manually.

Example

```
switch(config)$# activate software-update check  
  
Configuration and Status - Activate Software Update
```

```
Activate Server Address      : device.arubanetworks.com
Activate Server Polling     : Enabled
Installed Software Version  : WB.16.04.0000x
Server Software Version     : Not available - server communication error.
Server Software Image URL   : Not available - server communication error.
switch(config)$
```



NOTE: This switch is not connected to Activate, hence communication error is shown in “Server Software Version” and “Server Software Image URL” field.

activate software-update update

Syntax

```
switch#(config) activate software-update update
```

Description

Updates the software for Activate.

Options

primary

Update primary software image using the Aruba Activate server.

secondary

Update secondary software image using the Aruba Activate server.

Example

```
switch# activate software-update update
```

This command will save the current configuration, update the selected software image, and reboot the system to the selected partition.

```
Continue (y/n)? y
```

```
000M
```

show activate software-update

Syntax

```
show activate software-update
```

Description

Show the configuration and status of the Activate software update.

Example output

```
switch(config)$ show activate software-update
```

Configuration and Status - Activate Software Update

```
Activate Server Address      : device.arubanetworks.com
Activate Server Polling     : Enabled
Installed Software Version  : WB.16.04.0000x
Server Software Version     : Not available - server communication error.
```

```
Server Software Image URL      : Not available - server communication error.
switch(config)$
```

Show activate provision

Syntax

```
show activate provision
```

Description

Show the configuration and status of the Activate Provision services.

Examples

```
switch(config)#show activate provision
```

```
Configuration and Status - Activate Provision service
Activate server address      : device.arubanetworks.com
Activate server polling      : Enabled
Activation key               : ABC-XYZ-123
```

Default status when Activate server polling is not started

```
switch(config)#show activate provision
```

```
Configuration and Status - Activate Provision Service

Activate Provision Service      : Enabled
Activate Server Address         : device.arubanetworks.com
Activation Key                  : Not Available
NTP/HTTP Time Sync Status      : Not Updated
Activate DNS Lookup             : NA
Proxy Server DNS Lookup        : NA
Activate Connection Status      : NA
Error Reason                    : NA
```

Connected to Activate (post DNS resolution) and got Central URL

```
switch(config)#show activate provision
```

```
Configuration and Status - Activate Provision Service

Activate Provision Service      : Enabled
Activate Server Address         : device.arubanetworks.com
Activation Key                  : ZAELQSRB
NTP/HTTP Time Sync Status      : Time sync from NTP
Activate DNS Lookup             : Success
Proxy Server DNS Lookup        : NA
Activate Connection Status      : Success
Error Reason                    : NA
```

Disable the Activate polling, after getting the Central URL

```
switch(config)#show activate provision
```

```
Configuration and Status - Activate Provision Service

Activate Provision Service      : Disabled
Activate Server Address         : device.arubanetworks.com
Activation Key                  : ZAELQSRB
NTP/HTTP Time Sync Status      : Time sync from NTP
Activate DNS Lookup             : Success
Proxy Server DNS Lookup        : NA
```



```
Activate Connection Status : Success
Error Reason               : NA
```

Unsuccessful Activate connection when device entry not present in Activate

```
switch(config)# show activate provision
```

Configuration and Status - Activate Provision Service

```
Activate Provision Service : Enabled
Activate Server Address   : device.arubanetworks.com
Activation Key            : Not Available
NTP/HTTP Time Sync Status : Time sync from NTP
Activate DNS Resolution   : Success
Proxy Server DNS Lookup   : NA
Activate Connection Lookup : Failure
Error Reason              : Failed response received.
Status code               : not-authenticated
```

Activate pushing AirWave parameters to switch

```
switch(config)#show activate provision
```

Configuration and Status - Activate Provision Service

```
Activate Provision Service : Enabled
Activate Server Address   : device.arubanetworks.com
Activation Key            : ZAELQSRB
NTP/HTTP Time Sync Status : Time sync from NTP
Activate DNS Lookup       : Success
Proxy Server DNS Lookup   : NA
Activate Connection Status : Success
Error Reason              : NA
```

Unsuccessful Activate connection due to unresolved Activate server address

```
switch(config)#show activate provision
```

Configuration and Status - Activate Provision Service

```
Activate Provision Service : Enabled
Activate Server Address   : device.arubanetworks.com
Activation Key            : Not Available
Time Sync Status         : Time sync from NTP pool
Activate DNS Lookup       : Failure
Proxy Server DNS Lookup   : NA
Activate Connection Status : NA
Error Reason              : NA
```



NOTE: DNS resolution is a field in the WebUI (under **Dependencies** section), it will show DNS resolution as *failure* .

Fields added in 16.07.	Status	Validation
Time sync status	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Time sync from NTP Time sync from HTTP Time sync from other source Not updated NA 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Default - Not updated, time is not updated from NTP and HTTP. NA - In this case switch get the time through SNTP/ CLI/time server configuration before NTP/ HTTP.
Activate DNS Lookup.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Success Failure NA 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Default - NA Other outputs are based on device.arubanetworks.com DNS lookup.
Proxy Server DNS Lookup	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Success Failure NA 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> NA - If proxy is not configured. Other outputs are based on proxy lookup.
Activate Connection Status.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Success Failure NA 	Default - NA
Error Reason		Default - NA

aruba-central

Syntax

```
aruba-central {enable | disable | support-mode {enable | disable}}
```

Description

Configure Aruba Central server support. When enabled, and when a server web address has been obtained using Aruba Activate, the system will connect to an Aruba Central server. The system will obtain configuration updates and most local configuration commands will be disabled. This mode is enabled by default.

Enter support mode to enable all configuration commands. Normally, when the system is connected to an Aruba Central server, the configuration is updated from that server and most local configuration commands are disabled. Support mode enables those commands for use in troubleshooting problems. Support mode is disabled by default. When the system is not connected to Aruba Central server, the full command set is enabled for local configuration.

Restrictions

- Switch communication to Aruba Central is not supported via OOBM.
- Aruba-central is not supported in FIPS switches and it will be disabled by default.



CAUTION: To avoid broadcast storm or loops in your network while configuring ZTP, do not have redundant links after you complete ZTP and Airwave registration. Authorize the new switch and then push the Golden Configuration template from Airwave.

Example

Enable Aruba Central server support

```
switch(config)# aruba-central enable
```

Disable Aruba Central server support

```
switch(config)# aruba-central disable
```

Enter support mode to enable all CLI configuration commands

```
switch(config)# aruba-central support-mode enable
```

This mode will enable all CLI configuration commands, including those normally reserved by the Aruba Central service.

Use of this mode may invalidate the configuration provisioned through Aruba Central server.

Continue (y/n)?

Troubleshooting

You can troubleshoot switches by using the SSH connection and the device logs available in AirWave. For a list of all RMON message, refer to *Event Log Messages Guide* of your switch

You can enable the debug logging with the debug ztp command, see **debug ztp** .

Show aruba-central

Syntax

```
show aruba-central
```

Description

Shows Aruba Central server information.

Example

```
switch#show aruba-central
```

Configuration and Status - Aruba Central

Server URL	: https://internal.central.arubanetworks.com/ws
Connected	: Yes
Mode	: Managed
Last Disconnect Time	: NA
Server DNS Lookup	: Success
Proxy Server DNS Lookup	: NA
Error Reason	: NA

Fields added in 16.07.	Status	Validation
Server DNS Lookup	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Success • Failure • NA 	By default status is NA. Other status is based on DNS resolution.
Proxy Server DNS Lookup	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Success • Failure • NA 	If proxy is not configured, status will be NA. Otherwise Status will be set based on proxy server DNS lookup.
Error Reason		Default-NA

Error reason for Aruba Central

Error Reason field is added in the switch firmware as part of Aruba Central Onboarding Feature from 16.07. Error reason log helps in debugging switch firmware for central connectivity failure.

	Preprocessor Directive	Mocana Error Enum	Error Reason
1	CLOUD_TCP_ERR	ERR_TCP	TCP error. Check the server reachability.
2	CLOUD_TCP_READ_ERR	ERR_TCP_READ_ERROR	TCP read error. Malformed packet received or the SSL socket is closed.
3	CLOUD_TCP_READ_TIMEOUT_ERR	ERR_TCP_READ_TIMEOUT	TCP timeout. Server is taking longer time to respond. Check the server reachability.
4	CLOUD_TLS_ERR	ERR_SSL	TLS error. Verify if the device or system certificate is valid.
5	CLOUD_TLS_CERT_VAL_ERR	ERR_SSL_CERT_VALIDATION_FAILED	Certificate validation failed. Verify if it is correctly installed, valid, and trusted.
6	CLOUD_TLS_MUTUAL_AUTH_FAIL_ERR	ERR_SSL_MUTUAL_AUTHENTICATION_FAILED	TLS mutual authentication has failed.
7	CLOUD_TLS_MUTUAL_AUTH_NOT_REQ_ERR	ERR_SSL_MUTUAL_AUTHENTICATION_NOT_REQUESTED	Client authentication is not requested by server.
8	CLOUD_TLS_MUTUAL_AUTH_REQ_IGNORE_ERR	ERR_SSL_MUTUAL_AUTHENTICATION_REQUEST_IGNORED	TLS mutual authentication request is ignored.

Table Continued

	Preprocessor Directive	Mocana Error Enum	Error Reason
9	CLOUD_TLS_INVALID_SIG_ERR	ERR_SSL_INVALID_SIGNATURE	Unable to verify the signature on a certificate.
10	CLOUD_TLS_NO_DATA_RECV_ERR	ERR_SSL_NO_DATA_TO_RECEIVE	No data received from server. Check the server reachability.
11	CLOUD_CERT_ERR	ERR_CERT	System certificate is invalid.
12	CLOUD_CERT_EXPIRE_ERR	ERR_CERT_EXPIRED	System certificate expired. Contact Aruba support.
13	CLOUD_INVALID_TIME_ERR	ERR_CERT_START_TIME_VALID_IN_FUTURE	Wrong system time.
14	CLOUD_TLS_MULTIPLE_CONN	ERR_SSL_TOO_MANY_CONNECTIONS	Too many connections to server. Disconnect the device and connect back.
15	CLOUD_TLS_NO_CIPHER_MATCH	ERR_SSL_NO_CIPHER_MATCH	Cipher suites are not common between device and server.
16	CLOUD_TLS_UNKNOWN_CA	ERR_SSL_UNKNOWN_CERTIFICATE_AUTHORITY	Server certificate is not issued by a trusted CA.
17	CLOUD_TLS_NO_SELF_SIGNET_CERT	ERR_SSL_NO_SELF_SIGNED_CERTIFICATES	Server presented a self-signed certificate. This certificate is not supported for mutual authentication.
18	CLOUD_GENERIC_ERR		TLS generic error (code: -XYZ)
19	CLOUD_HTTP_101_PROT_MISSNG		Internal error: HTTP/1.1 protocol missing. Contact Aruba support.
20	CLOUD_HTTP_UPGRADE_MISSNG_IN_RESP		Internal error: Missing Upgrade in HTTP response. Contact Aruba support.

Table Continued

Preprocessor Directive		Mocana Error Enum	Error Reason
21	CLOUD_HTTP_ACCEPT_KEY_MISSNG_IN_RESP		Internal error: Missing Sec-WebSocket-Accept in HTTP response. Contact Aruba support.
22	CLOUD_HTTP_MISMATCH_ACCEPT_KEY		Internal error: Mismatch Sec-WebSocket-Accept in HTTP response. Contact Aruba support.
23	CLOUD_URL_NOT_REACHABLE_VIA_PXY		Central server is not reachable through proxy.

debug ztp

Syntax

```
debug ztp
no debug ztp
```

Description

Enables or disables ZTP debug logging.

Parameters and options

ztp

Zero Touch Provisioning.

no

The `no debug ztp` command disables ZTP debug logging.

Error Reason log for Activate Provision

Error Reason field is added in the switch firmware as part of Aruba Central Onboarding Feature from 16.07. Error reason log helps in debugging switch firmware for central connectivity failure.

Following table shows the list of error reasons.

Preprocessor Directive	Error Reason
ACTIVATE_RESP_FAIL_CODE	Activate provision fails because of invalid response received from server with status code: %s.
ACTIVATE_CURL_FAIL_CODE	Device fails to reach Activate server with error: %s.
ACTIVATE_FAIL_PROV_NO_DEVICE_ENTRY	Device is not registered with Activate server.
ACTIVATE_NON_TPM_CODE_MISSING	EST provision with activate server fails because of invalid response received from Activate server.

Stacking support

The ZTP process for stacked switches with Central is similar to the one for a standalone switch, with the exception that only the commander in the stack checks in with Central. For switches supported on Central when stacking is ON, refer to the *Aruba Central Switch Configuration Guide*.

Fault finder switch events

Fault finder switch events supported by Aruba Central
EVENT_FF_BAD_DRIVER_NIC
EVENT_FF_BAD_XCVR_NIC
EVENT_FF_BAD_CABLE
EVENT_FF_CABLE_LEN_HOPS
EVENT_FF_LOOP_OVER_BAND
EVENT_FF_BCAST_STORM
EVENT_PPMGR_DMM_SET_FULL_WARN
EVENT_PPMGR_DMM_SET_AUTO_WARN
EVENT_FF_LINKFLAP

interface device-type network-device

Syntax

```
interface <PORT-LIST> device-type network-device
```

```
no interface <PORT-LIST> device-type network-device
```

Description

Configures the type of device and identifies a port connected with a network infrastructure device (such as switch, AP, router). The switch will not report the client entries on the port to Central.

The `no` form of this command removes the configuration of type of the device connected to the ports.

Command context

```
config
```

Parameters

PORT-LIST

Specifies the port number for the device.

Usage

```
[no] device-type { network-device }
```

Example

```
Switch(config)# interface 2  
device-type          Configures the type of device being connected to the port.  
  
switch(config)# interface 2 device-type  
network-device       Marks a port being connected with a network infra
```

```

device (switch / AP / router).

switch(config)# interface 2 device-type network-device

Switch(config)# show running config
; JL074A Configuration Editor; Created on release #KB.16.04.0000x
; Ver #10:9b.7f.bf.bb.ff.7c.59.fc.7b.ff.ff.fc.ff.ff.3f.ef:81

hostname "Aruba-3810M-48G-PoEP-1-slot"
module 1 type jl074x
module 2 type jl074y
flexible-module A type JL078A
interface 2
    device-type network-device
    exit
interface 3
    device-type network-device
    exit

```

HTTP Proxy support with ZTP overview

The Aruba switch connects through Public Cloud or infrastructure to access Aruba Activate and Aruba Central. The switch can use a combination of the Public and Private networks to access Aruba AirWave, and Aruba ClearPass. In this case, the switch is visible as an Internet asset that can cause data breaching. Routing connections through the enterprise proxy servers prevents the data breaching.

The ArubaOS-Switch does not set up an HTTP/SSL connection with the public or private server directly. Instead, the switch sets up a TCP connection with the proxy server.

If the public server is available and reachable through the proxy server, then the switch connection to the destination server is successful. After establishing the connection, the proxy server behaves as a Network Address Translation (NAT) device, in which case, the proxy server forwards the received packets to the intended destinations.

Limitations:

- HTTPS proxy is not supported.
- Authenticating the HTTP proxy is not supported.
- HTTP proxy support is only for IPv4 endpoints.

Configuring ZTP:

When the switch is provisioned for Central or Controller, switch is managed once it is connected to the public network. In case the user wants to reach the public network through the proxy, then the IP address of the proxy server must be present in the switch before initiating the Activate or Central connectivity.

In ZTP mode, the proxy IP address can be received using the DHCP option. The ZTP mode works when the switch is booted with a default configuration. For the switch to connect to public servers through proxy, the proxy IP must be known through DHCP. The switch requests an IP address from the primary VLAN.

The proxy IP address is received through a vendor-specific DHCP option. The switch parses and uses the proxy IP address to connect in ZTP mode. Aruba switches reserve suboption -148 under DHCP vendor-specific option 43 for configuring proxy URL.

After the switch is out of ZTP mode, the proxy IP address if configured through CLI takes precedence. Otherwise, the Aruba OS switch may use the DHCP received proxy IP address for connectivity.

e Proxy Configuration

When configuring the proxy server, the following applications will be taking the proxy route to reach the destination. You can configure the proxy server as indicated in DHCP or `proxy server` command.

- Aruba AirWave
- Aruba Activate
- Firmware download through MNP
- Aruba ClearPass connectivity
- Aruba Central connectivity
- TR69 support

Support for Aruba AirWave

AirWave is used to manage the ArubaOS-Switches and its communication to the switch is over HTTPS. When AirWave is deployed with Aruba controller, an IPsec tunnel is created between the switch and the controller. All the communication between the switch and AirWave occurs through the tunnel. In this case, the proxy is bypassed implicitly.

AirWave establishes ICMP, SNMP, and SSH connections to the switch for switch management. Since AirWave does not have the visibility for the switch IP address, the ICMP, SNMP, and SSH connections will not be initiated to the switch. So reverse NAT functionality must be enabled for ensuring these packets reach the switch. If AirWave must work without proxy, then AirWave IP is bypassed explicitly.

Support for Aruba ClearPass

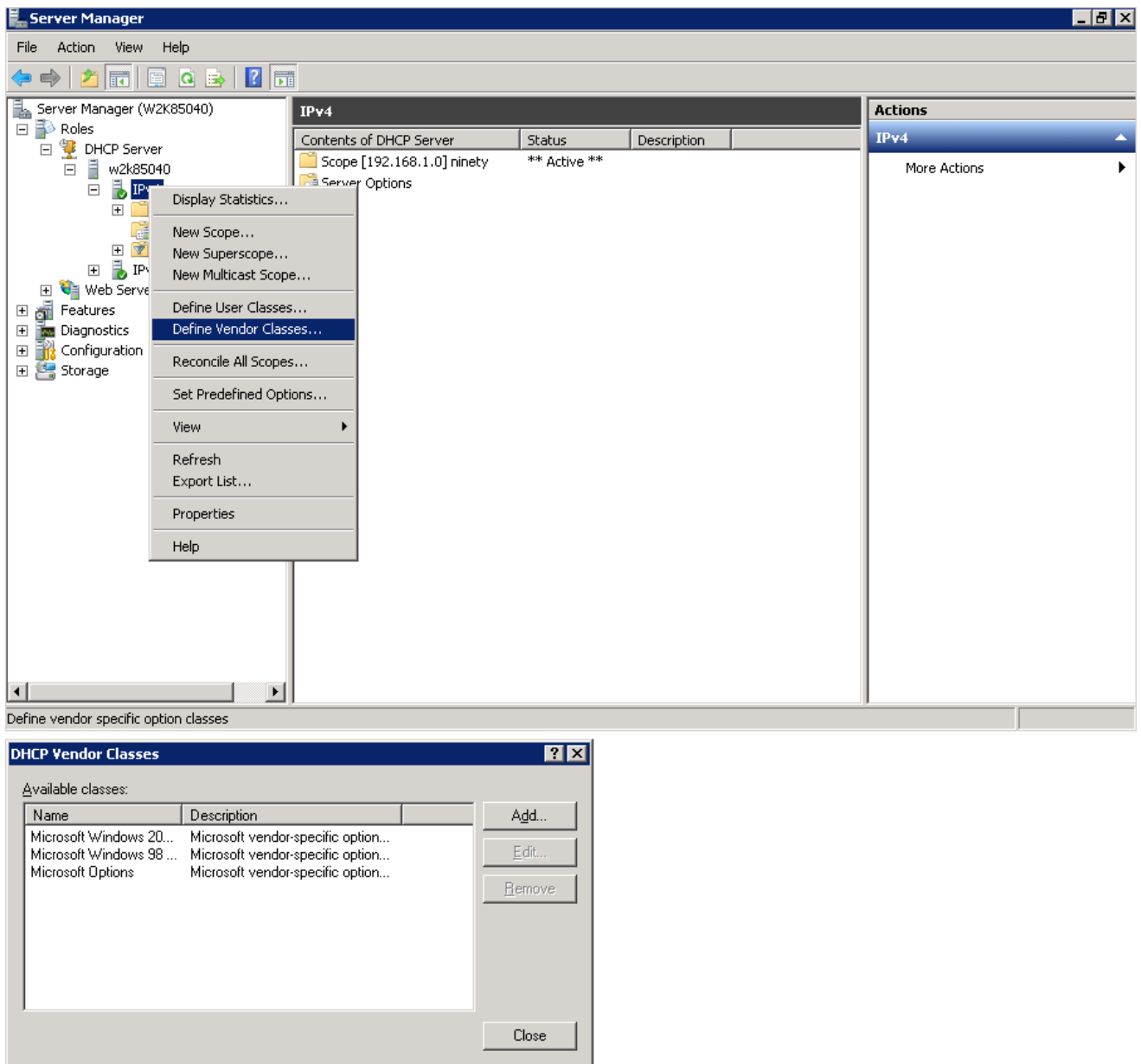
For downloading a user role from ClearPass, switch initiates HTTPS connection with ClearPass. If the proxy is configured, proxy server is used to reach ClearPass. When ClearPass is deployed with Aruba controller, ClearPass must be explicitly exempted from proxy. Add the ClearPass IP address in the exception list of the proxy as the communication happens through the IPsec tunnel or normally.

Proxy Configuration using windows DHCP server

In the ZTP provisioning, you can push the Proxy server and exception configurations through a Windows DHCP server using DHCP option 148.

Procedure

1. Add a new **DHCP Server** role. Navigate to **Server Manager > Roles > DHCP sever > domain DHCP Server > IPv4**. In the master pane of the Server Manager window, click **IPv4** and select **Define Vendor classes**.



2. To get vendor-specific value of a switch, go to switch command prompt and enter `show dhcp client vendor-specific` command. Vendor class identifier for the switch (VCI) appears as follows:

```
Switch# show dhcp client vendor-specific
Vendor Class Id = J9854A 2530-24G-PoE+-2SFP+ Switch
Processing of Vendor Specific Configuration is enabled.
```
3. Add **Displayed name** and **Description** for the **New Vendor Class** in the ASCII field, add J9854A 2530-24G-PoE+-2SFP+ Switch value exactly obtained from the switch, otherwise the option may not work.

New Class

Display name:

HP J9854A 2530-24G-PoE+-2SFP+ Switch

Description:

HP J9854A 2530-24G-PoE+-2SFP+ Switch

ID:

Binary:

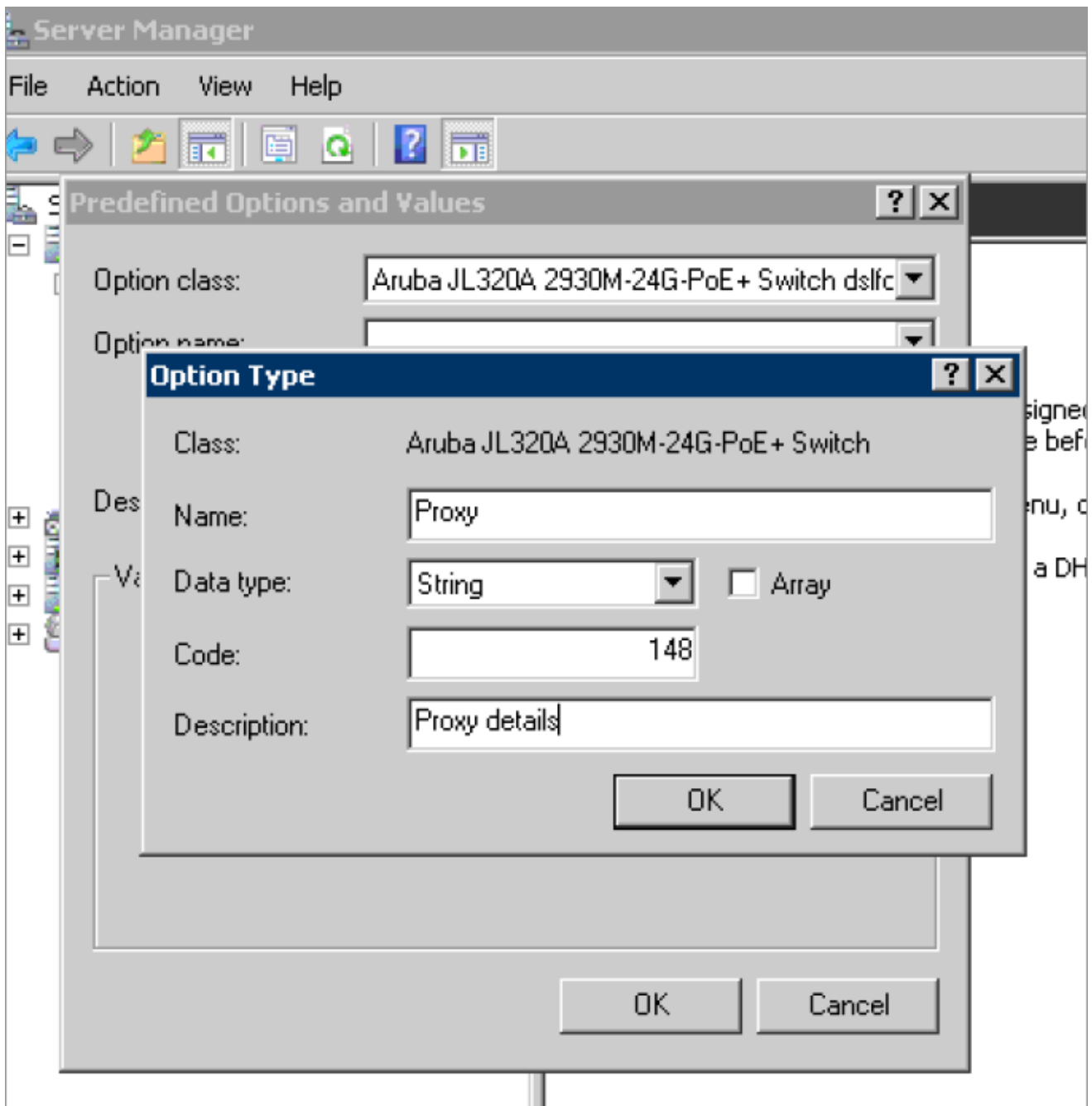
ASCII:

0000	48	50	20	4A	39	38	35	34	HP J9854
0008	41	20	32	35	33	30	2D	32	A 2530-2
0010	34	47	2D	50	6F	45	2B	2D	4G-PoE+-
0018	32	53	46	50	2B	20	53	77	2SFP+ Sw
0020	69	74	63	68					itch

OK

Cancel

4. Right-click **IPv4** and select **Set Predefined Options**. Select option class as the newly defined vendor class, click **ADD** and enter the following information for Proxy details:
 - a. Name - Proxy
 - b. Data Type - String
 - c. Code - 148
 - d. Description - Proxy details.



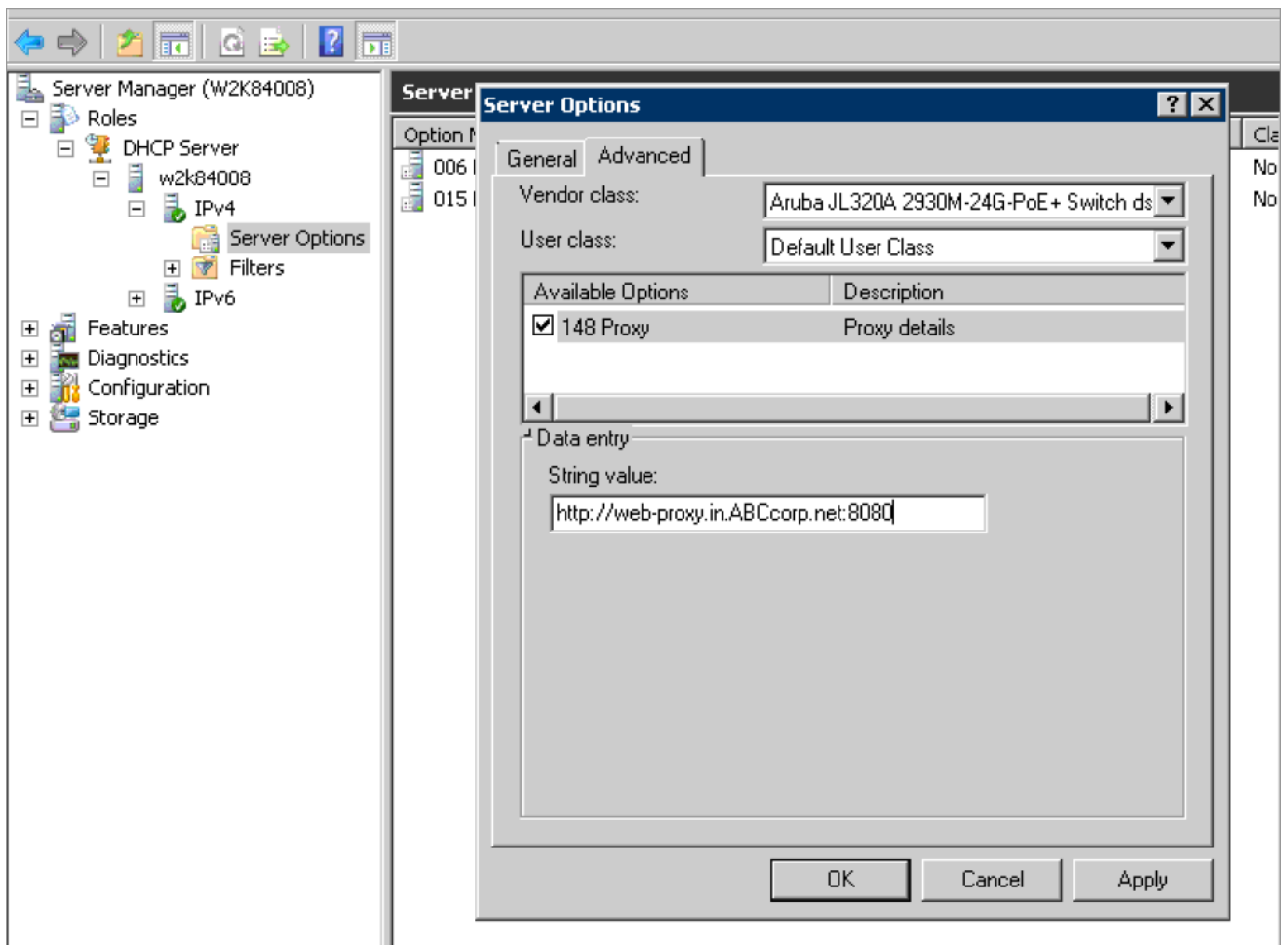
Now the new vendor class will have new suboption with code 148. Next is to add these vendor class and suboptions to the scope. To add proxy server details to scope, navigate to **Server Manager** and select **Server Options** in the **IPv4** window.

5. Right click server options and select **Configure options**. Go to **Advanced** tab, select the vendor class from the menu as the newly defined class. New suboptions that are added appears.

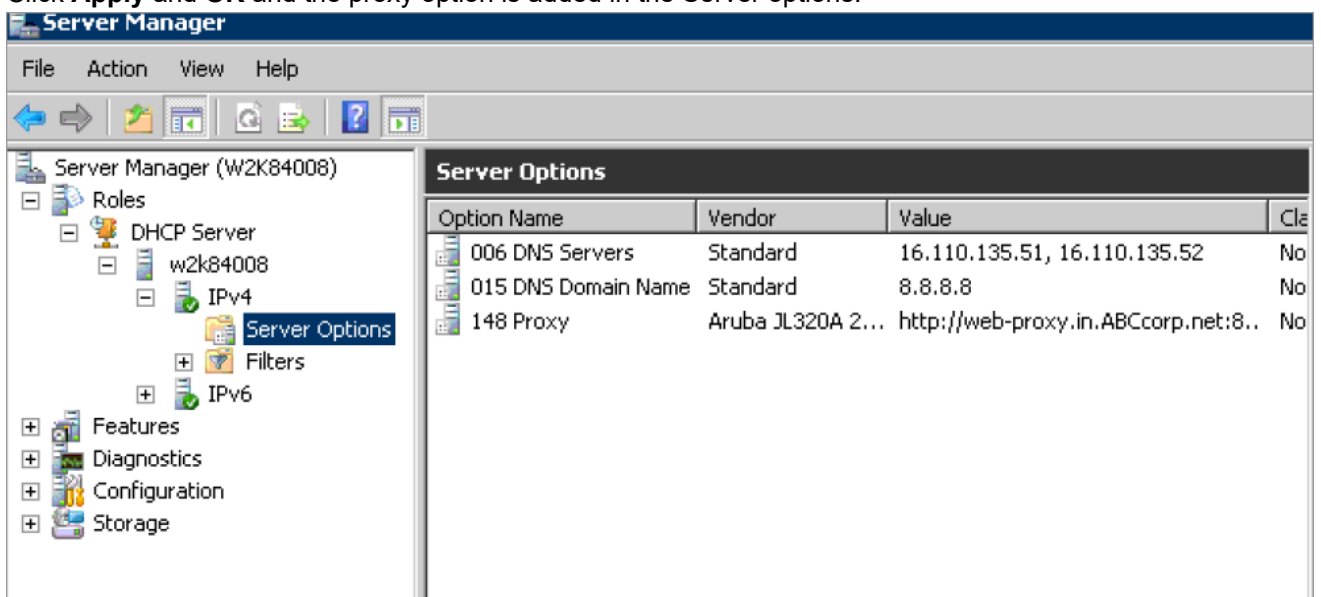
Check 148 and add Proxy details in string value field, in the format as mentioned:

<http://web-proxy.in.ABCcorp.net:8080> or <http://192.168.50.18:3128>

Check 144 and add configuration filename in string value field (optional).



6. Click **Apply** and **OK** and the proxy option is added in the Server options.



7. Now restart the DHCP service and download new DHCP attributes in the switch, you can check that the proxy details are correctly downloaded in the switch using the `show proxy config` command.

proxy server

Syntax

```
proxy server <http://<ip-addr/FQDN>:port number>
```

```
no proxy server
```

Description

Configures the URL/IP address to reach the proxy server. Provide the correct proxy port number along with the URL/IP address. Port number must be in the range of 1024 to 65535. HTTPS proxy server is not supported.

The `no` form of this command removes the proxy server.

Command context

```
config
```

Parameters

url:port number

Specifies the URL address with port number for the proxy server.

Parameters

ip-addr:port number

Specifies the IP address with port number for the proxy server.

Example

```
switch(config)# proxy server "http://web-proxy.au.abccorp.net:3128"  
switch(config)# proxy server "http://192.168.0.6:8080"
```

proxy exception ip | host

Syntax

```
proxy exception ip | host {ip-addr/mask-length | hostname}
```

```
no proxy exception ip | host {ip-addr/mask-length | hostname}
```

Description

Configures an IPv4 address/mask length and URL to the list of IP address and host, which can be reached without the HTTP proxy server.

The `no` form of this command removes the proxy exception for the specified entry (IPv4 address/host name).

Command context

```
config
```

Parameters

ip-addr/mask-length | hostname

Specifies IPv4 address/mask length and host name.

Example

```
switch(config)# proxy exception ip 192.168.0.10/12
switch(config)# proxy exception host "http://web-proxy.au.abdcorp.net:3128"
```

show proxy config

Syntax

```
show proxy config
```

Description

Shows the proxy configuration.

Command context

```
config
```

Examples

```
switch(config)# show proxy config
```

Http Proxy Configuration details

Server URL : http://web-proxy.au.abccorp.net:3128

Manually configured exceptions

No	Exception
1	192.168.0.10/12
2	http://web-proxy.au.abdcorp.net:3128

Automatically added exceptions

No	Exception
1	2.0.0.9



NOTE: On configuring IPsec tunnel, Airwave IP is automatically added as an exception in the switch. The IPsec tunnel is configured directly over the network bypassing the HTTP proxy server.

File transfer methods

The switches support several methods for transferring files to and from a physically connected device or via the network, including TFTP, Xmodem, and USB. This chapter explains how to download new switch software, upload or download switch configuration files and software images, and upload command files for configuring ACLs.

TFTP

TFTP at the switch allows for extensive use of scripts on various customer environments. Such environments, like FW, configurations, backups, and restores all use the TFTP network service.

- SSH/SFTP is needed to secure access to network components.
- Users are allowed to re-enable TFTP and make both TFTP and SFTP work in parallel.
- SFTP support for database of DSNOOPv4, v6 and DHCP Server are also available. To provide a secure way to transfer the database, the SFTP option has been added where the respective database can also be transferred to a SFTP Server.

Prerequisites

Use of the commands in this section assumes that:

- A software version for the switch has been stored on a TFTP server accessible to the switch. (The software file is typically available from the Switch Networking website at <http://www.hpe.com/networking/support>.)
- The switch is properly connected to your network and has already been configured with a compatible IP address and subnet mask.
- The TFTP server is accessible to the switch via IP.

Before you proceed, complete the following:

- Obtain the IP address of the TFTP server in which the software file has been stored.
- If VLANs are configured on the switch, determine the name of the VLAN in which the TFTP server is operating.
- Determine the name of the software file stored in the TFTP server for the switch (for example, E0820.swi.)



NOTE:

If your TFTP server is a UNIX workstation, ensure that the case (upper or lower) that you specify for the filename is the same case as the characters in the software filenames on the server.

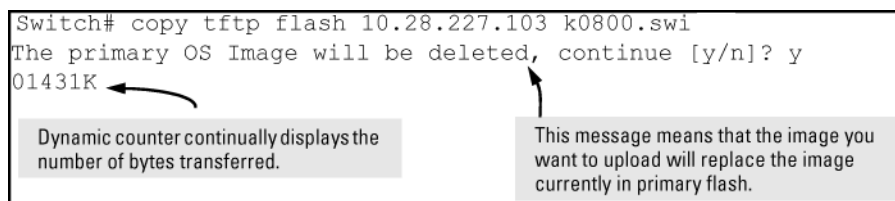
Downloading switch software

To download a switch software file named K.0800.swi from a TFTP server with the IP address of 10.28.227.103 to primary flash:

Procedure

1. Execute **copy tftp flash** on page 437 as shown below:

Figure 91: Download command for an OS (switch software)



2. When the switch finishes downloading the software file from the server, it displays this progress message:
3. **Validating and Writing System Software to FLASH ...**
4. When the download finishes, you must reboot the switch to implement the newly downloaded software image. To do so, use either **boot system flash** on page 437 or **reload** on page 437.
5. To confirm that the software downloaded correctly, execute `show system` and check the **Firmware revision** line.

For information on primary and secondary flash memory and the boot commands, see the basic operation guide.



IMPORTANT: If you use `auto-tftp`

to download a new image in a redundant management system, the active management module downloads the new image to both the active and standby modules. Rebooting after the

`auto-tftp`

process completes reboots the entire system.

copy tftp flash

Syntax

```
copy tftp flash <IP-ADDRESS> <REMOTE-FILE> [primary|secondary] [oobm]
```

Automatically downloads a switch software file to primary or secondary flash. If you do not specify the flash destination, the TFTP download defaults to primary flash.

boot system flash

Syntax

```
boot system flash [primary|secondary]
```

Description

Boots from the selected flash.

reload

Syntax

```
reload
```

Description

Boots from the flash image and startup-config file. A switch covered in this guide (with multiple configuration files), also uses the current startup-config file.

Enabling tftp

Procedure

TFTP defaults to enabled on the switch. If TFTP operation has been disabled, you can re-enable it by specifying TFTP client or server functionality with the following command.



IMPORTANT: For information on how to configure TFTP file transfers on an IPv6 network, see the IPv6 configuration guide

tftp

Syntax

```
[no] tftp [client|server] listen [oobm|data|both]
```

Description

Disables/re-enables TFTP for client or server functionality.

Parameters and options

no

Disables all TFTP client or server operation on the switch except for the auto-TFTP feature. When you disable TFTP, instances of TFTP in the CLI `copy` command and the Menu interface "Download OS" screen become unavailable.



IMPORTANT: The `no tftp [client|server]` command does not disable auto-TFTP operation. To disable an auto-TFTP command configured on the switch, use the `no auto-tftp` command to remove the command entry from the switch's configuration.

client

Use TFTP client functionality to access TFTP servers in the network to receive downloaded files.

server

Use TFTP server functionality to upload files to other devices on the network.

listen

For switches that have a separate out-of-band management port, the `listen` parameter in a server configuration allows you to specify whether transfers take place through the out-of-band management (`oobm`) interface, the `data` interface, or `both`.



IMPORTANT: Using IP SSH file transfer to enable SCP and SFTP functionality on the switch disables TFTP client and server functionality. After enabling `ip ssh` file transfer, you cannot re-enable TFTP and auto-TFTP from the CLI.

show running-configuration

```
switch(config)# show running-config
```

Running configuration:

```
; J8693A Configuration Editor; Created on release #K.15.15.0000x
; Ver #04:7f.ff.3f.ef:54
hostname "Switch"
no tftp client
no tftp server
```

Enable TFTP client

```
switch(config)# tftp client
```

ip ssh filetransfer

The command `ip ssh filetransfer` disables the TFTP Client and TFTP Server, and the user can re-enable them. The command displays the following message.

```
ip ssh filetransfer
tftp and auto-tftp have been disabled.
```

Automatic software download from a TFTP server

The `auto-tftp` command lets you configure the switch to download software automatically from a TFTP server.

At switch startup, the auto-TFTP feature automatically downloads a specified software image to the switch from a specified TFTP server and then reboots the switch. To implement the process, you must first reboot the switch using one of the following methods:

- Enter the `boot system flash primary` command in the CLI.
- With the default flash boot image set to primary flash (the default), enter the `boot` or the `reload` command, or use the reset button on the switch. (To reset the boot image to primary flash, use `boot set-default flash primary`.)

auto-tftp

Syntax

```
auto-tftp <IP-ADDR> filename
```

Description

Configures the switch to automatically download the specified software file from the TFTP server at the specified IP address. The file is downloaded into primary flash memory at switch startup, and then the switch automatically reboots from primary flash. Defaults to disabled.

Parameters and options

no

Disables auto-TFTP operation by deleting the `auto-tftp` entry from the startup configuration. Does not affect the current TFTP-enabled configuration on the switch. However, entering the `ip ssh filetransfer` command automatically disables both `auto-tftp` and `tftp` operation.



IMPORTANT:

To enable auto-TFTP to copy a software image to primary flash memory, the version number of the downloaded software file (for example, K_14_01.swi) must be different from the version number currently in the primary flash image.

The current TFTP client status (enabled or disabled) does not affect auto-TFTP operation. (See **Enabling tftp** on page 438.)

Completion of the auto-TFTP process may require several minutes while the switch executes the TFTP transfer to primary flash and then reboots again.

Downloading to primary flash using TFTP

The menu interface accesses only the primary flash.

Procedure

1. In the console Main Menu, select **Download OS** to display the screen in **Figure 92: Download OS (software) screen (default values)** on page 440. (The term "OS" or "operating system" refers to the switch software):

Figure 92: Download OS (software) screen (default values)

```
===== CONSOLE - MANAGER MODE =====
Download OS

Current Firmware revision : K.11.00

Method [TFTP] : TFTP
TFTP Server :

Remote File Name :

Actions->  _Cancel    _Edit    eXecute    _Help

Select the file transfer method (TFTP and XMODEM are currently supported).
Use arrow keys to change field selection, <Space> to toggle field choices,
and <Enter> to go to Actions.
```

2. Press **[E]** (for **Edit** .)
3. Ensure that the **Method** field is set to **TFTP** (the default.)
4. In the **TFTP Server** field, enter the IP address of the TFTP server in which the software file has been stored.
5. In the **Remote File Name** field, enter the name of the software file (if you are using a UNIX system, remember that the filename is case-sensitive.)
6. Press **[Enter]**, then **[X]** (for **eXecute**) to begin the software download.

7. The screen shown in **Figure 93: Download OS (software) screen during a download** on page 441 appears:

Figure 93: *Download OS (software) screen during a download*

```
----- CONSOLE - MANAGER MODE -----
                          Download OS
Current Firmware revision : E.08.00
Method [TFTP] : TFTP
TFTP Server : 10.28.227.105

Remote File Name : K.11.00.swi

Received 370,000 bytes of OS download.
+-----+
| ***** |
+-----+
```

8. A "progress" bar indicates the progress of the download. When the entire software file has been received, all activity on the switch halts and you will see **Validating and writing system software to FLASH...**
9. After the primary flash memory is updated with the new software, you must reboot the switch to implement the newly downloaded software. Return to the Main Menu and press **[6]** (for **Reboot Switch** .)
10. You will see this prompt:

```
Continue reboot of system? : No
```

11. Press the space bar once to change **No** to **Yes**, then press **[Enter]** to begin the reboot.



IMPORTANT:

When you use the menu interface to download a switch software, the new image is always stored in primary flash. Also, using the

Reboot Switch

command in the Main Menu always reboots the switch from primary flash. Rebooting the switch from the CLI provides more options. See the

basic operation guide

.

12. After you reboot the switch, confirm that the software downloaded correctly:
- From the Main Menu, select **2. Switch Configuration...**, and then select **2. Port/Trunk Settings**
 - Check the **Firmware revision** line.

Disabling TFTP and auto-TFTP for enhanced security

Disabling TFTP and auto-TFTP

Using the `ip ssh filetransfer` command to enable SFTP automatically disables TFTP and auto-TFTP (if either or both are enabled), as shown in **Figure 94: Example of switch configuration with SFTP enabled** on page 442.

Figure 94: Example of switch configuration with SFTP enabled

```
Switch(config)# ip ssh filetransfer
Tftp and auto-tftp have been disabled.
HP-Switch(config)# sho-run

Running configuration:
; J8697 Configuration Editor; Created on release #K.11.XX

hostname "Switch"
module 1 type J8702A
module 2 type J702A
vlan 1
  name "DEFAULT VLAN"
  untagged A1-A24,B1-B24
  ip address 10.28.234.176 255.255.240.0
  exit
ip ssh filetransfer
no tftp-enable
password manager
password operator

ip ssh filetransfer
no tftp-enable
```

If you enable SFTP and then later disable it, TFTP and auto-TFTP remain disabled unless they are explicitly re-enabled.

Operating rules

Prerequisites

To enable SFTP by using an SNMP management application, you must first disable TFTP and, if configured, auto-TFTP on the switch. You can use either an SNMP application or the CLI to disable TFTP, but you must use the CLI to disable auto-TFTP. The following CLI commands disable TFTP and auto-TFTP on the switch.

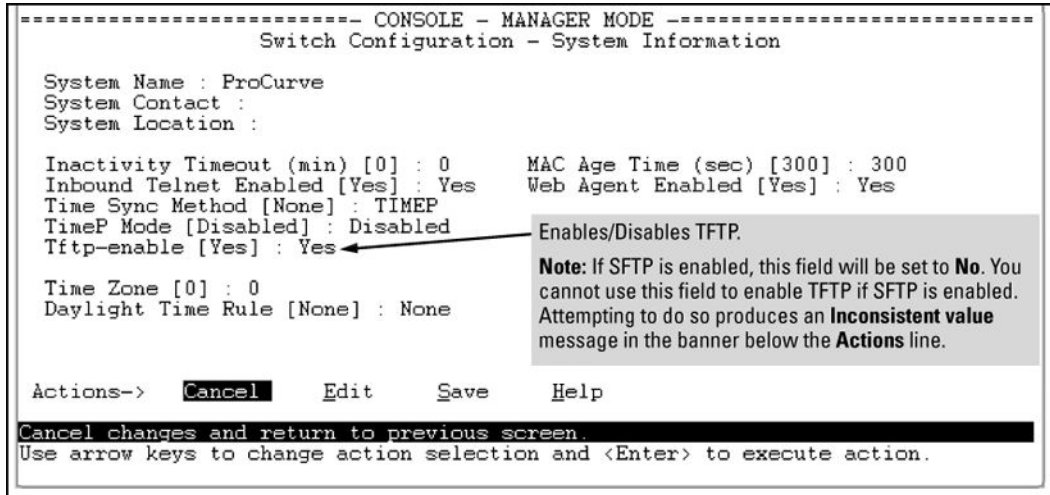
Procedure

1. The TFTP feature is enabled by default, and can be enabled or disabled through the CLI, the Menu interface (see

Figure 95: Using the Menu interface to disable TFTP on page 443

), or an SNMP application. Auto-TFTP is disabled by default and must be configured through the CLI.

Figure 95: Using the Menu interface to disable TFTP



2. While SFTP is enabled, TFTP and auto-TFTP cannot be enabled from the CLI. Attempting to enable either non-secure TFTP option while SFTP is enabled produces one of the following messages in the CLI:

```
SFTP must be disabled before enabling tftp.  
SFTP must be disabled before enabling auto-tftp.
```

Similarly, while SFTP is enabled, TFTP cannot be enabled using an SNMP management application. Attempting to do so generates an "inconsistent value" message. (An SNMP management application cannot be used to enable or disable auto-TFTP.)

Enabling SSH V2 (required for SFTP)



IMPORTANT: As a matter of policy, administrators should **not** enable the SSH V1-only or the SSH V1-or-V2 advertisement modes. SSHv1 is supported on only some legacy switches (such as the Switch Series 2500 switches.)

Any attempts to use SCP or SFTP without using `ip ssh filetransfer` cause the SCP or SFTP session to fail. Depending on the client software in use, you will receive an error message on the originating console, for example:

```
IP file transfer not enabled on the switch
```

1. Enter the following command to enable SSH v2:
`switch(config)# ip ssh version 2`
2. Enter the `show ip ssh` command to confirm that you have enabled an SSH session:
`switch(config)# show ip ssh`
3. Enter the `ip ssh filetransfer` command so that SCP and/or SFTP can run.
4. Open your third-party software client application to being using the SCP or SFTP commands to safely transfer files or issue commands to the switch.

Disabling secure file transfer

To disable SSH, enter the following command:

```
switch(config)# no ip ssh filetransfer
```

Authentication

Switch memory allows up to ten public keys. This means the authentication and encryption keys you use for your third-party client SCP/SFTP software can differ from the keys you use for the SSH session, even though both SCP and SFTP use a secure SSH tunnel.



NOTE:

SSH authentication is mutually exclusive with RADIUS servers.

Some clients, such as PSCP (PuTTY SCP), automatically compare switch host keys for you. Other clients require you to manually copy and paste keys to the `$HOME/.ssh/known_hosts` file. Whatever SCP/SFTP software tool you use, after installing the client software you must verify that the switch host keys are available to the client.

Because the third-party software utilities you may use for SCP/SFTP vary, you should refer to the documentation provided with the utility you select before performing this process.

SCP/SFTP operating notes

- When an SFTP client connects, the switch provides a file system displaying all of its available files and folders. No file or directory creation is permitted by the user. Files may be only uploaded or downloaded, according to the permissions mask. All of the necessary files the switch needs are already in place on the switch. You do not need to (nor can you) create new files.
- The switch supports one SFTP session or one SCP session at a time.
- All files have read-write permission. Several SFTP commands, such as `create` or `remove`, are not allowed and return an error message. The switch displays the following files:

```
/
+---cfg
|   running-config
|   startup-config
+---log
|   crash-data
|   crash-data-a
|   crash-data-b
|   crash-data-c
|   crash-data-d 8212z1 only
|   crash-data-e "      "
|   crash-data-f ""
|   crash-data-g 8212z1 only
|   crash-data-h "      "
|   crash-data-I ""
|   crash-data-J ""
|   crash-data-K ""
|   crash-data-L "      "
|   crash-log
|   crash-log-a
|   crash-log-b
|   crash-log-c
|   crash-log-d 8212z1 only
|   crash-log-e ""
|   crash-log-f ""
```



```

| crash-log-g 8212z1 only
| crash-log-h " "
| crash-log-I " "
| crash-log-J " "
| crash-log-K " "
| crash-log-L " "
| event log
+---os
| primary
| secondary
\---ssh
| +---mgr_keys
| | authorized_keys
| \---oper_keys
| | authorized_keys
\---core (this directory is not available on the 8212z1)
| mml.cor management module or management function
| im_a.cor interface module (chassis switches only)
| im_b.cor interface module (chassis switches only)
| im_1.cor interface module (chassis switches only)
| port_1-24.cor core-dump for ports 1-24 (stackable switches only)
| port_25-48.cor core-dump for ports 25-48 (stackable switches only)

```

- When using SFTP to copy a software image onto the switch, the command return takes only a few seconds. However, this does not mean that the transfer is complete, because the switch requires additional time (typically more than one minute) to write the image to flash in the background. To verify the file transfer has been completed, you can use the `show flash` command or look for a confirmation message in the log, as in the following example:

```
I 01/09/09 16:17:07 00150 update: Primary Image updated.
```

Troubleshooting SSH, SFTP, and SCP operations

Cause



NOTE:

You can verify secure file transfer operations by checking the switch's event log, or by viewing the error messages sent by the switch that most SCP and SFTP clients print out on their console.

Messages that are sent by the switch to the client depend on the client software in use to display them on the user console.

Broken SSH connection

Symptom

Any of the following types of error messages are logged, according to the type of session that is running (SSH, SCP, or SFTP):

```

ssh: read error Bad file number, session aborted I 01/01/90
00:06:11 00636 ssh: sftp session from ::ffff:10.0.12.35 W
01/01/90 00:06:26 00641 ssh:

sftp read error Bad file number, session aborted I 01/01/90
00:09:54 00637 ssh: scp session from ::ffff:10.0.12.35 W 01/01/90

ssh: scp read error Bad file number, session aborted

```

The Bad file number is from the system error value and may differ depending on the cause of the failure. In the third example, the device file to read was closed as the device read was about to occur.

Cause

If an ssh connection is broken at the wrong moment (for instance, the link goes away or spanning tree brings down the link), a fatal exception occurs on the switch. If this happens, the switch gracefully exits the session and produces an Event Log message indicating the cause of failure.

Attempt to start a session during a flash write

Symptom

With some client software, an error message similar to this appears on the client console:

```
Received disconnect from 10.0.12.31: 2: Flash access in progress  
lost connection
```

Cause

If you attempt to start an SCP (or SFTP) session while a flash write is in progress, the switch does not allow the SCP or SFTP session to start.

Action

Wait a few seconds for the flash writing to finish and then try again.

Failure to exit from a previous session

Symptom

```
Received disconnect from 10.0.12.31: 2: Wait for previous  
session to complete  
  
lost connection
```

Cause

The error message might appear on the client console if a new SCP (or SFTP) session is started from a client before the previous client session has been closed (the switch requires approximately ten seconds to timeout the previous session).

Action

Attempt to start a second session

Symptom

```
Received disconnect from 10.0.12.31: 2: Other SCP/SFTP  
session running  
  
lost connection
```

Cause

The switch supports only one SFTP session or one SCP session at a time. If a second session is initiated (for example, an SFTP session is running and then an SCP session is attempted), the error message might appear on the client console.

Action

Use USB to transfer files to and from the switch

The switch's USB port (labeled as **Aux Port**) allows the use of a USB flash drive for copying configuration files to and from the switch.

Operating rules and restrictions:

- Unformatted USB flash drives must first be formatted on a PC (Windows FAT format.) For devices with multiple partitions, only the first partition is supported. Devices with secure partitions are not supported.
- If they already exist on the device, subdirectories are supported. When specifying a **filename**, you must enter either the individual file name (if at the root) or the full path name (for example, /subdir/filename.)
- To view the contents of a USB flash drive, use the `dir` command. This lists all files and directories at the root. To view the contents of a directory, you must specify the subdirectory name (that is, `dir subdirectory`.)
- The USB port supports a single USB device. USB hubs to add more ports are not supported.



NOTE: Some USB flash drives may not be supported on your switch. Consult the latest *Release Notes* for information on supported devices.

SCP and SFTP

Enabling SCP and SFTP

Procedure

1. Open an SSH session as you normally would to establish a secure encrypted tunnel between your computer and the switch. Please note that this is a one-time procedure for new switches or connections. If you have already done it once you should not need to do it a second time.
2. For more detailed directions on how to open an SSH session, see the access security guide.
3. To enable secure file transfer on the switch (once you have an SSH session established between the switch and your computer), open a terminal window and enter the following command:

```
switch(config)# ip ssh filetransfer
```

Using SCP and SFTP



IMPORTANT:

Using IP SSH file transfer to enable SCP and SFTP functionality on the switch disables TFTP client and server functionality. After enabling

```
ip ssh
```

file transfer, you cannot re-enable TFTP and auto-TFTP from the CLI.

The general process for using SCP and SFTP involves three steps:

Procedure

1. Open an SSH tunnel between your computer and the switch if you have not already done so.
2. (This step assumes that you have already set up SSH on the switch.)
3. Execute `ip ssh filetransfer` to enable secure file transfer.
4. Use a third-party client application for SCP and SFTP commands.

For some situations you may want to use a secure method to issue commands or copy files to the switch. By opening a secure, encrypted SSH session and enabling `ip ssh file transfer`, you can then use a third-party

software application to take advantage of SCP and SFTP. SCP and SFTP provide a secure alternative to TFTP for transferring information that may be sensitive (like switch configuration files) to and from the switch. Essentially, you are creating a secure SSH tunnel as a way to transfer files with SFTP and SCP channels.

Once you have configured your switch to enable secure file transfers with SCP and SFTP, files can be copied to or from the switch in a secure (encrypted) environment and TFTP is no longer necessary.

To use these commands, you must install on the administrator workstation a third-party application software client that supports the SFTP and/or SCP functions. Some examples of software that supports SFTP and SCP are PuTTY, Open SSH, WinSCP, and SSH Secure Shell. Most of these are freeware and may be downloaded without cost or licensing from the internet. There are differences in the way these clients work, so be sure you also download the documentation.

As described earlier in this chapter you can use a TFTP client on the administrator workstation to update software images. This is a plain-text mechanism that connects to a standalone TFTP server or another switch acting as a TFTP server to obtain the software image files. Using SCP and SFTP allows you to maintain your switches with greater security. You can also roll out new software images with automated scripts that make it easier to upgrade multiple switches simultaneously and securely.

SFTP is unrelated to FTP, although there are some functional similarities. Once you set up an SFTP session through an SSH tunnel, some of the commands are the same as FTP commands. Certain commands are not allowed by the SFTP server on the switch, such as those that create files or folders. If you try to issue commands such as `create` or `remove` using SFTP, the switch server returns an error message.

You can use SFTP just as you would TFTP to transfer files to and from the switch, but with SFTP, your file transfers are encrypted and require authentication, so they are more secure than they would be using TFTP. SFTP works only with SSH version 2 (SSH v2.)



NOTE:

SFTP over SSH version 1 (SSH v1) is not supported. A request from either the client or the switch (or both) using SSH v1 generates an error message. The actual text of the error message differs, depending on the client software in use. Some examples are:

```
Protocol major versions differ: 2 vs. 1
Connection closed

Protocol major versions differ: 1 vs. 2
Connection closed

Received disconnect from ip-addr : /usr/local/libexec/
sftp-server: command not supported
Connection closed
```

SCP is an implementation of the BSD `rcp` (Berkeley UNIX remote copy) command tunneled through an SSH connection.

SCP is used to copy files to and from the switch when security is required. SCP works with both SSH v1 and SSH v2. Be aware that the most third-party software application clients that support SCP use SSHv1.

Xmodem

Downloading software using Xmodem

Prerequisites

Procedure

1. Connect the switch via the Console RS-232 port to a PC operating as a terminal. (For information on connecting a PC as a terminal and running the switch console interface, see the installation and getting started guide you received with the switch.)
2. Verify that the switch software is stored on a disk drive in the PC.
3. Verify that the terminal emulator you are using includes the Xmodem binary transfer feature. (For example, in the HyperTerminal application included with Windows NT, you would use the

Send File

option in the

Transfer

drop-down menu.)

Downloading to Flash

The following procedure downloads a switch software file named `E0822.swi` from a PC (running a terminal emulator program such as HyperTerminal) to primary flash.

Procedure

1. Execute the following command in the CLI:

```
Switch# copy xmodem flash  
Press 'Enter' and start XMODEM on your host...
```

2. Execute the terminal emulator commands to begin the Xmodem transfer. For example, using HyperTerminal:
 - a. Click on **Transfer**, then **Send File**.
 - b. Type the file path and name in the Filename field.
 - c. In the Protocol field, select **Xmodem**.
 - d. Click on the **[Send]** button. The download can take several minutes, depending on the baud rate used in the transfer.
3. When the download finishes, you must reboot the switch to implement the newly downloaded software.
4. Use either **boot system flash** on page 449 or **reload** on page 450 commands.
5. To confirm that the software downloaded correctly:

```
Switch# show system
```

6. Check the **Firmware revision** line. It should show the software version that you downloaded in the preceding steps.

boot system flash

Syntax

```
boot system flash [primary|secondary]
```

Description

Reboots from the selected flash

reload

Syntax

```
reload
```

Description

Reboots from the flash image currently in use

copy xmodem flash

Syntax

```
copy xmodem flash [primary|secondary]
```

Description

Downloads a software file to primary or secondary flash. If you do not specify the flash destination, the Xmodem download defaults to primary flash.

Downloading to primary flash using Xmodem (Menu)

The menu interface accesses only the primary flash.

Procedure

1. From the console Main Menu, select **7. Download OS**
2. Press **[E]** (for **Edit**) on the keyboard.
3. Use the Space bar to select **XMODEM** in the **Method** field.
4. Press **[Enter]**, then **[X]** (for **eXecute**) to begin the software download.
5. The following message appears:
6. **Press enter and then initiate Xmodem transfer from the attached computer.....**
7. Press **[Enter]** and then execute the terminal emulator commands to begin Xmodem binary transfer.
8. For example, using HyperTerminal:
 - a. Click on **Transfer**, then **Send File**.
 - b. Enter the file path and name in the Filename field.
 - c. In the Protocol field, select **Xmodem**.
 - d. Click on the **[Send]** button.
9. The download then commences. It can take several minutes, depending on the baud rate set in the switch and in your terminal emulator.
10. After the primary flash memory has been updated with the new software, you must reboot the switch to implement the newly downloaded software. Return to the Main Menu and press **[6]** (for **Reboot Switch**.) You then see the following prompt:
11. **Continue reboot of system? : No**
12. Press the space bar once to change **No** to **Yes**, then press **[Enter]** to begin the reboot.
13. To confirm that the software downloaded correctly:

- a. From the Main Menu, select **1. Status and Counters**, and then select **1. General System Information**
- b. Check the **Firmware revision** line.

USB

Downloading switch software using USB

Enable or disable the USB port

This feature allows configuration of the USB port using either the CLI or SNMP.

Prerequisites

Procedure

1. Store a software version for the switch on a USB flash drive. (The latest software file is typically available from the Switch Networking website at <http://www.hpe.com/networking/support>.)
2. Insert the USB device into the switch's USB port.
3. Determine the name of the software file stored on the USB flash drive (for example, `K.0800.swi`).
4. Decide whether the image will be installed in the primary or secondary flash.

USB port status

`show usb-port`

Syntax

```
show usb-port
```

Description

Displays the status of the USB port. It can be enabled, disabled, or not present.

Command context

```
operator
```

Usage

One of the following messages indicates the presence or absence of a USB device:

- `Not able to sense device in USB port`
- `USB device detected in port`
- `no USB device detected in port`

Example

Display USB port status.

```
switch# show usb-port
```

```
USB port status: enabled
USB port power status: power on      (USB device detected in port)
```

Copy a switch software file named `K.0800.swi` from a USB device to primary flash.

Procedure

1. Issue the `copy usb flash` command as shown below:

Figure 96: *The command to copy switch software from USB*

```
Switch# copy usb flash K.0800.swi
The Primary OS Image will be deleted, continue [y/n]? y
```

This message means that the image you want to upload will replace the image currently in primary flash.

2. When the switch finishes copying the software file from the USB device, it displays this progress message:
`Validating and Writing System Software to the Filesystem....`
3. When the save finishes, you must reboot the switch to load the newly loaded software.
4. To confirm that the software downloaded correctly, execute `show system` and check the **Software revision** line.

copy usb flash

Syntax

```
copy usb flash <FILENAME> [primary|secondary]
```

Description

This command automatically downloads a switch software file to primary or secondary flash. If you do not specify the flash destination, the USB download defaults to primary flash.

Switch to Switch

Switch-to-switch download

You can use TFTP to transfer a software image between two switches of the same series. The CLI enables all combinations of flash location options. The menu interface enables you to transfer primary-to-primary or secondary-to-primary.

OS download from another switch

Where two switches in your network belong to the same series, you can download a software image between them by initiating a `copy tftp` command from the destination switch. The options for this CLI feature include:

- Copy from primary flash in the source to either primary or secondary in the destination.
- Copy from either primary or secondary flash in the source to either primary or secondary flash in the destination.

copy tftp flash

Syntax

```
copy tftp flash <IP-ADDR> flash [primary|secondary] [oobm]
```

Description

When executed in the destination switch, downloads the software flash in the source switch's primary flash to either the primary or secondary flash in the destination switch.

Parameters and options

primary

If you do not specify either a primary or secondary flash location for the destination, the download automatically goes to primary flash.

secondary

If you do not specify either a primary or secondary flash location for the destination, the download automatically goes to primary flash.

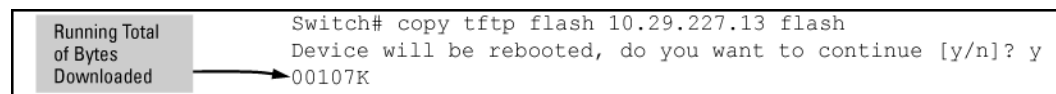
oobm

For switches that have a separate OOBM port, the `oobm` parameter specifies that the TFTP traffic must come in through the OOBM interface. If this parameter is not specified, the TFTP traffic comes in through the data interface. The `oobm` parameter is not available on switches that do not have a separate OOBM port.

Download from primary flash

To download a software file from primary flash in a switch with an IP address of 10.29.227.103 to the primary flash in the destination switch, you would execute the following command in the destination switch's CLI:

Figure 97: Switch-to-switch, from primary in source to either flash in destination



copy tftp flash os

Syntax

```
copy tftp flash <IP-ADDR> [/os/primary|/os/secondary] [primary|secondary] [oobm]
```

Description

This command (executed in the destination switch) gives you the most options for downloading between switches. If you do not specify either a primary or secondary flash location for the destination, the download automatically goes to primary flash.

Parameters and options

oobm

For switches that have a separate out-of-band management port, the `oobm` parameter specifies that the TFTP traffic must come in through the out-of-band management interface. If this parameter is not specified, the TFTP traffic comes in through the data interface. The `oobm` parameter is not available on switches that do not have a separate out-of-band management port.

Switch-to-switch, from either flash in source to either flash in destination

To download a software file from secondary flash in a switch with an IP address of 10.28.227.103 to the secondary flash in a destination switch, you would execute the following command in the destination switch's CLI:

```
switch# copy tftp flash 10.29.227.13 flash /os/secondary secondary
Device will be rebooted, do you want to continue [y/n]? y
00184K
```

Copying

Software images

copy flash tftp

Syntax

```
copy flash tftp <IP-ADDR> <FILENAME> [oobm]
```

Description

Copies the primary flash image to a TFTP server.

Parameters and options

oobm

For switches that have a separate OOBM port, the `oobm` parameter specifies that the transfer is through the OOBM interface. If this parameter is not specified, the transfer is through the data interface.

The `oobm` parameter is not available on switches that do not have a separate OOBM port.

Copy primary flash to TFTP

To copy the primary flash to a TFTP server having an IP address of 10.28.227.105:

```
switch# copy flash tftp 10.28.227.105 K.0800.swi
```

where `K.0800.swi` is the filename given to the flash image being copied.

copy flash xmodem

Syntax

```
copy flash xmodem [pc|unix]
```

Description

Uses Xmodem to copy a designated configuration file from the switch to a PC or UNIX workstation. To use this method, the switch must be connected via the serial port to a PC or UNIX workstation.

Copy primary flash

To copy the primary flash image to a serially connected PC, execute the `copy xmodem flash` command:

```
switch# copy xmodem flash
Press 'Enter' and start XMODEM on your host...
```

At the prompt, press **Enter** on the keyboard, and then execute the terminal emulator commands to begin the file transfer.

Copying using USB

To copy the primary image to a USB flash drive:

Procedure

1. Insert a USB device into the switch's USB port.
2. Execute the command: `switch# copy flash usb K.0800.swi primary/secondary` where `K.0800.swi` is the name given to the primary flash image that is copied from the switch to the USB device.

copy flash usb

Syntax

```
copy flash usb <FILENAME>
```

Description

Uses the USB port to copy the specified flash image from the switch to a USB flash memory device. The default setting will use the primary image.

Copying diagnostic data to a remote host, USB device, PC, or UNIX workstation

copy command-output

Syntax

```
copy command-output <CLI-COMMAND> tftp <IP-ADDRESS> <FILEPATH-FILENAME> [oobm]
```

```
copy command-output <CLI-COMMAND> usb <FILENAME>
```

```
copy command-output <CLI-COMMAND> xmodem
```

Description

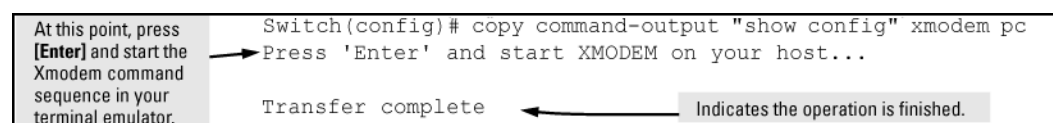
These commands direct the displayed output of a CLI command to a remote host, attached USB device, or to a serially connected PC or UNIX workstation.

For switches that have a separate OOBM port, the `oobm` parameter specifies that the transfer is through the OOBM interface. If this parameter is not specified, the transfer is through the data interface. The `oobm` parameter is not available on switches that do not have a separate OOBM port.

Use Xmodem to copy the output of show config

The command you specify must be enclosed in double quotation marks.

Figure 98: Sending command output to a file on an attached PC



copy command-log

Syntax

```
copy command-log [sftp | smm | tftp | usb | xmodem]
```

Description

This command copies the Command Log content to a remote host or to a serially-connected PC or UNIX workstation.

- Use the `sftp` option to copy data to an SFTP server.
- Use the `smm` option to copy AMM and SMM log events.
- Use the `tftp` option to copy data to a TFTP server.
- Use the `usb` option to copy data to a USB flash drive.
- Use the `xmodem` option to copy data to the console using XMODEM.

copy event-log

Syntax

```
copy event-log [smm] [tftp <IP-ADDRESS> <FILEPATH_FILENAME> [oobm]] [usb <FILENAME>] [xmodem <FILENAME>]
```

Description

These commands copy the Event Log content to a remote host, attached USB device, or to a serially connected PC or UNIX workstation.

Parameters and options

smm

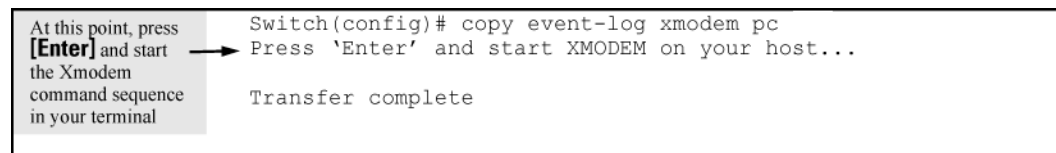
Copies the entire Event Log, both active management module events and standby management module events, to the selected host, USB device, or serially connected PC or UNIX workstation.

oobm

For switches that have a separate OOBM port, the `oobm` parameter specifies that the transfer is through the OOBM interface. If this parameter is not specified, the transfer is through the data interface. The `oobm` parameter is not available on switches that do not have a separate OOBM port.

Copy the event log to a PC connected to the switch

Figure 99: Sending event log content to a file on an attached PC



copy crash-data

Syntax

```
copy crash-data [<SLOT-ID>|master] tftp <IP-ADDRESS> <FILENAME> [oobm]
```

```
copy crash-data [<SLOT-ID>|mm] usb <FILENAME>
```

```
copy crash-data [<SLOT-ID>|mm] xmodem
```

Description

These commands copy the crash data content to a remote host, attached USB device, or to a serially connected PC or UNIX workstation using TFTP, USB, or Xmodem. You can copy individual slot information or the management module's switch information. If you do not specify either, the command defaults to the management function's data. You can copy individual slot information or the management module (mm) switch information. If you do not specify either, the command defaults to the mm data.

Parameters and options

<SLOT-ID>

a - h—Retrieves the crash log or crash data from the processor on the module in the specified slot

mm

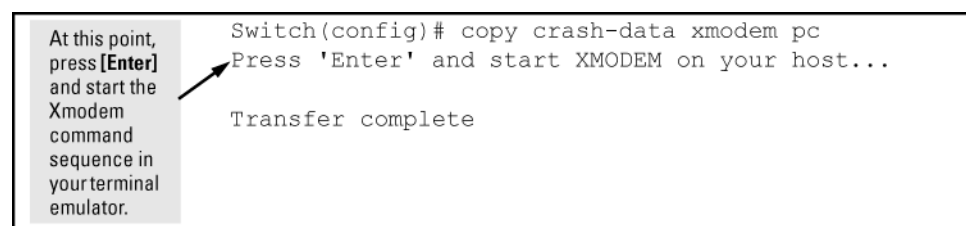
Retrieves crash log or crash data from the switch's chassis processor. When "mm" is specified, crash files from both management modules are copied.

oobm

For switches that have a separate OOBM port, specifies that the transfer is through the OOBM interface. (Default is transfer through the data interface.)

Copy crash data file to a PC

Figure 100: Copying switch crash data content to a PC



copy crash-data (redundant management)

Syntax

```
copy crash-data [<SLOT-ID>|mm] tftp <IP-ADDRESS> <FILENAME> [oobm]
```

Description

Copies the crash data of both the active and standby management modules to a user-specified file. With no parameter specified, concatenates files from all modules (management and interface).

Parameters and options

<SLOT-ID>

Retrieves the crash log or crash data from the module in the specified slot

mm

Retrieves the crash data from both management modules and concatenates them.

oobm

For switches that have a separate OOBM port, specifies that the transfer is through the OOBM interface. (Default is transfer through the data interface.)

copy crash-log

Syntax

```
copy crash-log [<SLOT-ID>|mm] tftp <IP-ADDRESS> <FILEPATH\FILENAME> [oobm]
```

```
copy crash-log [<SLOT-ID>|mm] usb <FILENAME>
```

```
copy crash-log [<SLOT-ID>|mm] xmodem
```

Description

Copies the crash log content to a remote host, attached USB device, or to a serially connected PC or UNIX workstation. You can copy individual slot information or the management module (mm) switch information. If you do not specify either mm or oobm, the command defaults to mm data.

Parameters and options

<SLOT-ID>

a - h—Retrieves the crash log from the processor on the module in the specified slot.

mm

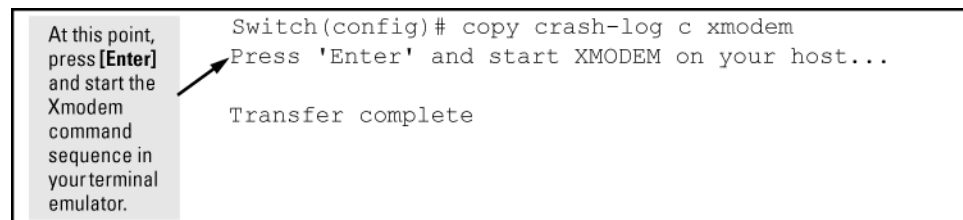
Retrieves the crash log from the switch's chassis processor. With mm specified, copies crash files from both management modules.

oobm

For switches that have a separate OOBM port, specifies that the transfer is through the OOBM interface. (Default is transfer through the data interface.)

Copy the crash log for slot C to a file in a PC connected to the switch

Figure 101: *Sending a crash log for slot C to a file on an attached PC*



copy crash-log (redundant management)

Syntax

```
copy crash-log [<SLOT-ID>|mm] tftp <IP-ADDRESS> <FILENAME> [oobm]
```

Description

Copies the crash logs of both the active and standby management modules to a user-specified file. If no parameter is specified, files from all modules (management and interface) are concatenated.

Parameters and options

<SLOT-ID>

Retrieves the crash log or crash log from the module in the specified slot.

mm

Retrieves the crash data from both management modules and concatenates them.

oobm

For switches with a separate OOBM port, specifies that the transfer is through the OOBM interface. (Default is transfer through the data interface.)

copy core-dump (standby module)

Syntax

```
copy core-dump [mm usb <FILENAME>|standby flash|usb <FILENAME>]
```

Description

Copies the management module coredump, or the standby management module coredump, to the active management module flash or to a USB flash drive, (see **Figure 102: Copying the standby coredump to flash** on page 459.) During the copy, the system displays the number of bytes transferred and the percentage of the total. Management module core files can be quite large. Use **Cntl-C** to cancel the transfer.

Make sure that the coredump files on the standby management module are accessible for diagnostic purposes.

Parameters and options

flash

Copies the core file of the standby management module to the flash of the active management module. The destination file is fixed as `dumpM1.cor` or `dumpM2.cor`, depending on which module is the standby management module.

usb <FILENAME>

Copies the management module's core file or the standby management module's core file to a USB flash drive. The optional filename defaults to `dumpM1.cor` or `dumpM2.cor`, depending on which module is the standby management module.

Copy the standby coredump to flash

Figure 102: *Copying the standby coredump to flash*

```
Switch(config)# copy core-dump standby flash
02816K of 26899K (10%)
```

If there is no coredump on the standby management module, the following error message displays:

```
Standby MM coredump does not exist.
```

If there is not enough destination space before or during the transfer to flash or USB, the following error message displays:

```
Insufficient FLASH space to complete the file copy.
```

copy fdr-log

Syntax

```
copy fdr-log [slot <SLOT-LIST>|mm-active [current|previous]|mm-standby|all] tftp  
[<HOSTNAME>|<IP-ADDR>] <FILENAME>
```

Description

Copies `fdr-log` files to a user-specified file. The FDR log collects information when the switch is not performing correctly, but has not crashed. Writes runtime logs to FDR memory while the switch is running. Crashtime logs are collected and stored in the FDR buffer during a switch crash.

Parameters and options

all

Copies all the log files from both management modules and all slots.

mn-active

Copies the active management module's log.

mn-standby

Copies the standby management module's log.

slot

Retrieves the crash log from the module in the identified slots.

Copy diagnostic data to a remote host, USB device, PC or UNIX workstation

You can use the CLI to copy the following types of switch data to a text file on a destination device:

Command output

Sends the output of a switch CLI command as a file on the destination device.

Event log

Copies the switch's Event Log into a file on the destination device.

Crash data

Software-specific data useful for determining the reason for a system crash.

Crash log

Processor-specific operating data useful for determining the reason for a system crash.

Flight data recorder (FDR) logs

Information that is “interesting” at the time of the crash, as well as when the switch is not performing correctly but has not crashed.

The destination device and copy method options include:

- Remote Host using `TFTP`.
- Physically connected USB flash drive using the `USB` port on the switch.
- Serially connected PC or UNIX workstation using `Xmodem`.

Transferring

Switch configuration transfer

Using CLI commands you can copy switch configurations to and from a switch, or copy a software image to configure or replace an ACL in the switch configuration.

For greater security, you can perform all TFTP operations using SFTP.

You can also use the `include-credentials` command to save passwords, secret keys, and other security credentials in the running config file.

TFTP

copy [startup-config|running-config]

Syntax

```
copy [startup-config|running-config] tftp <IP-ADDR> <REMOTE-FILE> [pc|unix] [oobm]
```

```
copy config <FILENAME> tftp IP-ADDR <REMOTE-FILE> [pc|unix] [oobm]
```

Description

Copy a designated config file in the switch to a TFTP server. For more information, see the basic operation guide.

Parameters and options

oobm

For switches that have a separate OOBM port, the `oobm` parameter specifies that the transfer is through the OOBM interface. If this parameter is not specified, the transfer is through the data interface.

The `oobm` parameter is not available on switches that do not have a separate OOBM port.

Upload current startup configuration

To upload the current startup configuration to a file named `sw8200` in the configs directory on drive "d" in a TFTP server having an IP address of 10.28.227.105:

```
ProCurve# copy startup-config tftp 10.28.227.105
d:\configs\sw8200
```

copy tftp

Syntax

```
copy tftp [startup-config|running-config] tftp <IP-ADDR> <REMOTE-FILE> [pc|unix] [oobm]
```

```
copy tftp config <FILENAME> <IP-ADDR> <REMOTE-FILE> [pc|unix] [oobm]
```

Description

Copies a configuration from a remote host to a designated config file in the switch.

Parameters and options

oobm

For switches that have a separate OOBM port, the `oobm` parameter specifies that the transfer is through the OOBM interface. If this parameter is not specified, the transfer is through the data interface.

The `oobm` parameter is not available on switches that do not have a separate OOBM port.

Download a configuration file

To download a configuration file named **sw8200** in the **configs** directory on drive **"d"** in a remote host having an IP address of 10.28.227.105:

```
switch# copy tftp startup-config 10.28.227.105
d:\configs\sw8200
```

copy tftp show-tech



IMPORTANT:

Exit the global config mode (if needed) before executing `show tech` commands.

Syntax

```
copy tftp show-tech ipv4 or ipv6 address <filename> [oobm]
```

Copies a customized command file to the switch. Using the `copy tftp` command with the `show-tech` option provides the ability to copy a customized command file to the switch.

Parameters and options

show-tech

Allows you to copy a customized command file to the switch.

oobm

For switches that have a separate OOBM port, the `oobm` parameter specifies that the transfer is through the out-of-band management interface. If this parameter is not specified, the transfer is through the data interface. The `oobm` parameter is not available on switches that do not have a separate OOBM port.

Upload a customized command file

```
switch(config)# copy tftp show-tech 10.10.10.3 commandfile1
```

show tech custom

Syntax

```
show tech custom
```

Description

Executes the commands found in a custom file instead of the hard-coded list. If no custom file is found, executes the current hard-coded list. This list contains commands to display data, such as the image stamp, running configuration, boot history, port settings, and so on. You can include `show tech` commands in the custom file, with the exception of `show tech custom`. For example, you can include the command `show tech all`.

No show-tech file found

If no custom file is found, a message displays stating "No SHOW-TECH file found." (No custom file was uploaded with the `copy tftp show-tech` command.)

```
switch# show tech custom
No SHOW-TECH file found.
```

copy tftp config

Syntax

```
copy tftp config <SOURCE CONFIG FILE NAME> <DESTINATION_IP-ADDRESS>  
                <DESTINATION CONFIG FILE> [detail|oobm|pc|unix]
```

Description

Displays the progress, in lines and percentages, of the configuration file copied to or from the switch. A large configuration file takes several minutes to transfer. This feature allows the customer to watch the progress.

Parameters and options

detail

Display copy progress.

oobm

Use the OOBM interface to reach TFTP server.

pc

Change CR/LF to PC style.

unix

Change CR/LF to unix style

copy tftp config

```
Switch# copy tftp config myConfig 10.100.0.12 myConfig.cfg oobm detail  
Processing line 4968 of 20740 (23%)
```

Xmodem

Prerequisites

- Connect the switch to a PC or UNIX workstation using the serial port
- Determine the filename.
- Know the directory path you will use to store the configuration file.

copy config xmodem

Syntax

```
copy [startup-config|running-config] xmodem [pc|unix] [oobm]  
copy config <FILENAME> xmodem [pc|unix]
```

Description

Uses xmodem to copy a designated configuration file from the switch to a PC or UNIX workstation.

Copy a configuration file to a PC

```
switch# copy startup-config xmodem pc  
Press 'Enter' and start XMODEM on your host...
```

Execute the terminal emulator commands to begin the file transfer.

copy xmodem startup-config

Syntax

```
copy xmodem startup-config [pc|unix]
copy xmodem config <FILENAME> [pc|unix]
```

Description

Copies a configuration file from a serially connected PC or UNIX workstation to a designated configuration file on the switch.



IMPORTANT:

When the download finishes, you must reboot the switch to implement the newly downloaded software (see **boot system flash** on page 464 and **reload** on page 464).

Copy a configuration file from a PC

```
switch# copy xmodem startup-config pc
Device will be rebooted, do you want to continue [y/n]? y
Press 'Enter' and start XMODEM on your host...
```

Execute the terminal emulator commands to begin the file transfer.

boot system flash

Syntax

```
boot system flash [primary|secondary]
boot system flash [config <FILENAME>]
```

Description

Used to boot switches from the designated configuration file.

reload

Syntax

```
reload
```

Description

Reboots from the flash image currently in use.

USB

Be sure to connect a USB flash memory device to the USB port on the switch.

copy startup-config

Syntax

```
copy startup-config usb <FILENAME>
copy running-config usb <FILENAME>
```

Description

Copies the startup configuration or the running configuration to a USB flash drive.

copy startup-config

```
switch# copy startup-config usb Switch-config
```

Switch-config is the name given to the configuration file that you copy from the switch to the USB device.

copy usb startup-config

Syntax

```
copy usb startup-config <FILENAME>
```

Description

Copies a configuration file from a USB device to the startup configuration file on the switch. To execute the command, you must know the name of the file to copy.

copy usb startup-config

```
switch# copy usb startup-config Switch-config
```

ACL command file transfer

This section describes how to upload and execute a command file to the switch for configuring or replacing an ACL in the switch configuration. Such files should contain only access control entry (ACE) commands.

tftp

copy tftp command-file

Syntax

```
copy tftp command-file <IP-ADDR> <FILENAME.TXT> [unix|pc] [oobm]
```

Description

Copies and executes the named text file from the specified TFTP server address and executes the ACL commands in the file. Depending on the ACL commands used, this action does one of the following in the running-config file:

- Creates a new ACL.
- Replaces an existing ACL.
- Adds to an existing ACL.

Parameters and options

<IP-ADDR>

The IP address of a TFTP server available to the switch.

<FILENAME.TXT>

A text file containing ACL commands and stored in the TFTP directory of the server identified by <IP-ADDR> .

unix|pc

The type of workstation used for serial, Telnet, or SSH access to the switch CLI.

For switches that have a separate out-of-band management port, specifies that the transfer will be through the out-of-band management interface. (Default is transfer through the data interface.)

Upload an ACL command file from a PC

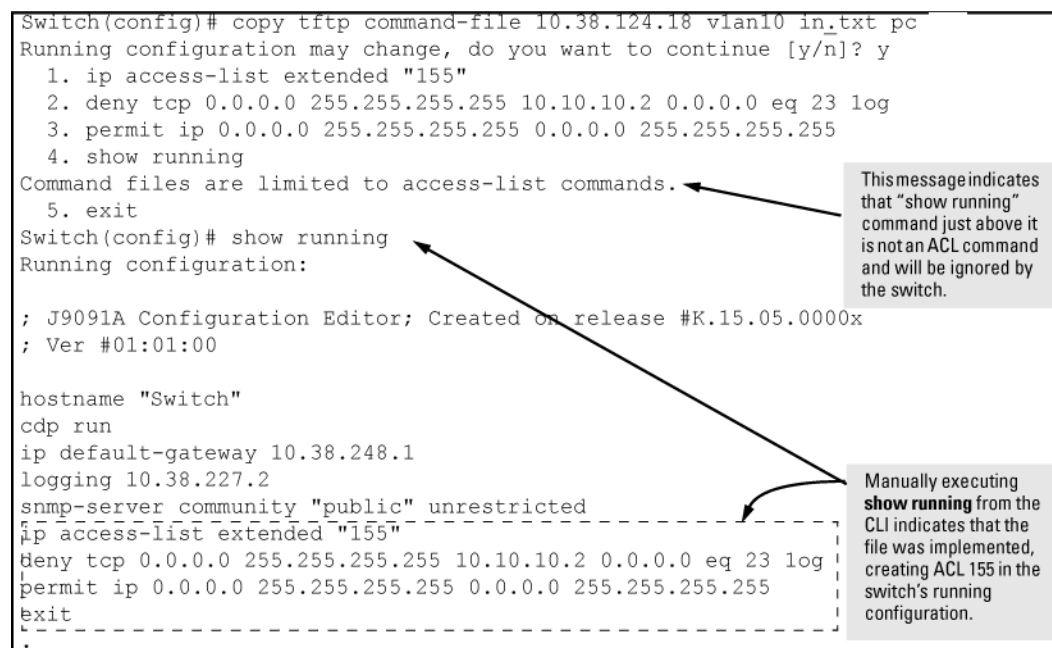
```
switch(config)# copy tftp command-file 18.38.124.16
vlan10_in.txt pc
```

The switch displays this message:

```
Running configuration may change, do you want to continue
[y/n]?
```

If the switch detects an illegal (non-ACL) command in the file, it bypasses the illegal command, displays a notice (as shown in **Figure 103: Using the copy command to download and configure an ACL** on page 466), and continues to implement the remaining ACL commands in the file.

Figure 103: Using the *copy* command to download and configure an ACL



Xmodem

copy xmodem command-file

Syntax

```
copy xmodem command-file [unix|pc]
```

Description

Uses Xmodem to copy and execute an ACL command from a PC or UNIX workstation. Depending on the ACL commands used, this action does one of the following in the running-config file:

- Creates a new ACL.
- Replaces an existing ACL.
- Adds to an existing ACL.

USB

copy usb command-file

Syntax

```
copy usb command-file <FILENAME.TXT> [unix|pc]
```

Description

Copies and executes the named text file from a USB flash drive and executes the ACL commands in the file. Depending on the ACL commands used, this action does one of the following in the running-config file:

- Creates a new ACL.
- Replaces an existing ACL.
- Adds to an existing ACL.

Parameters

<FILENAME.TXT>

A text file containing ACL commands and stored in the USB flash drive.

unix|pc

The type of workstation used to create the text file.

Upload an ACL command file from USB

Using a PC workstation, execute the following from the CLI to upload the file to the switch and implement the ACL commands it contains:

```
switch(config)# copy usb command-file vlan10_in.txt pc
```

The switch displays this message:

```
Running configuration may change, do you want to continue
[y/n]?
```

If the switch detects an illegal (non-ACL) command in the file, it bypasses the illegal command, displays a notice, and continues to implement the remaining ACL commands in the file.

Switch software download

The terms **switch software** and **software image** refer to the downloadable software files the switch uses to operate its networking features. Other terms sometimes include **Operating System, or OS**.

Switch periodically provides switch software updates through the Switch Networking website. For more information, see the support and warranty booklet shipped with the switch, or visit <http://www.hpe.Com/Networking/Support>.

Switch software download rules

Downloading new switch software does not change the current switch configuration. The switch configuration is contained in separate files that can also be transferred. See [copy \[startup-config|running-config\]](#) on page 461.

In most cases, if a power failure or other cause interrupts a flash image download, the switch reboots with the image previously stored in primary flash. In the unlikely event that the primary image is corrupted (which may occur if a download is interrupted by a power failure), the switch goes into boot ROM mode. In this case, use the boot ROM console to download a new image to primary flash.

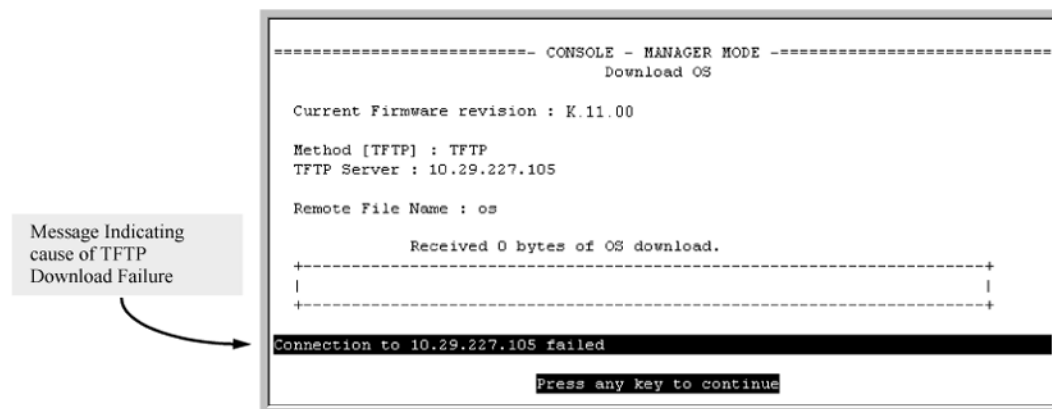
- Switch software that you download using the menu interface always goes to primary flash.
- After a software download, reboot the switch to implement the new software. Until a reboot occurs, the switch continues to run on the software it was using before the download.

TFTP download failures

Symptom

When using the menu interface, if a TFTP download fails, the Download OS (Operating System, or software) screen indicates the failure.

Figure 104: Example of message for download failure



Cause

Some of the causes of download failures include:

- Incorrect or unreachable address specified for the **TFTP Server** parameter. This may include network problems.
- Incorrect VLAN.
- Incorrect name specified for the **Remote File Name** parameter, or the specified file cannot be found on the TFTP server. This can also occur if the TFTP server is a UNIX machine and the case (upper or lower) for the filename on the server does not match the case for the filename entered for the **Remote File Name** parameter in the **Download OS** (Operating System, or software) screen.
- One or more of the switch's IP configuration parameters are incorrect.
- For a UNIX TFTP server, the file permissions for the software file do not allow the file to be copied.
- Another console session (through either a direct connection to a terminal device or through Telnet) was already running when you started the session in which the download was attempted.

Action

Single copy command

When a switch crashes, five files relating to the crash; core-dump, crash-data, crash-log, fdr-log, and event-log are created and should be copied for review. All five files (core-dump, crash-data, crash-log, fdr-log, and event-log) should be copied to a destination specified under a directory by file name.

TFTP

A destination directory and files can be created for all crash files (core-dump, crash-data, crash-log, fdr-log, and event-log) on an TFTP server (with write permissions).

SFTP

Files are auto created on the SFTP server as a secured transfer. The destination directories however can be manually created on the server.

You can use specified directories for the TFTP/SFTP transfers in the `copy` command. If you specify a directory, the command copies all files under one directory. With no directory specified, the command copies all files to the TFTP/SFTP server home directory. You must specify a directory name.

copy source

Syntax

```
copy <SOURCE> <DATA_FILE> <DESTINATION> <DATA_FILE> <OPTIONS>
```

Description

Copies data files to and from the switch.

Parameters and options

<SOURCE>

Specify the source of data using any of the following destinations.

Flash

N/A

SFTP

For transfer of crash-files via SFTP, the destination directory must exist on the SFTP server with write permissions.

File creation is not mandatory as files are automatically created with the chassis serial number suffix to the filename when using SFTP. **See: example**

TFTP

For transfer of crash-files via TFTP, the destination directory along with the file names (core-dump, crash-data, crash-log, fdr-log, and event-log) must exist on the TFTP server with write permissions.

USB

For transfer of crash-files via USB, the destination directory along with the file names (core-dump, crash-data, crash-log, fdr-log, and event-log) must exist on the device with write permissions.

Xmodem

N/A

<DATA_FILES>

Specify the data file to be copied from the source.

command-output <COMMAND>

Specify a command to copy output. When using `command-output`, place the desired CLI command in double-quotes. For example: "show system".

config <FILE-NAME>

Copy named configuration file. The `file-name` option is the source configuration file being copied.

core-dump

Copy core-dump file from flash.

crash-data

Copy the switch crash-data file.

crash-log

Copy the switch crash-log file.

crash-files <A|B|C|D|E|F|G|H|MASTER>

Copy core-dump, crash-data, crash-log, fdr-log, and event-log files to an SFTP/TFTP server, USB, or xmodem terminal.

When using the `crash-files` option, the destination directory alone must be specified as the destination path. Specifying the file names is not mandatory.

default-config

Copy custom default-config file.

event-log

Copy event-log file.

fdr-log

Copy FDR-log file from the switch to an SFTP/TFTP server, USB or xmodem terminal.

flash

Copy the switch system image file.

SFTP server

Copy data from a SFTP server.

startup-config

Copy in-flash configuration file.

ssh-client-known-hosts

Copy the known hosts file.

ssh-server-pub-key

Copy the switch's SSH server public key.

running-config

Copy running configuration file.

TFTP

Copy data from a TFTP server.

USB

Copy data from a USB flash drive.

xmodem

Use xmodem on the terminal as the data source.

<DESTINATION >

Specify the copy target.

SFTP

TFTP

USB

xmodem

<DATA_FILES>

Specify the data file name at the target.

command file

config

default-config

flash

pub-key-file

show-tech

startup-config

ssh-client-key

ssh-client-known-hosts

<OPTIONS>

append

Add the keys for operator access.

directory

Directory name to upload. Required for TFTP, SFTP and USB transfers.

filename

File-name to upload/download. Required for TFTP, SFTP and USB transfers.

hostname

Hostname of the TFTP, SFTP server. Required for TFTP, SFTP transfers.

IPv4 address

TFTP, SFTP server IPv4 address. Required for TFTP, SFTP transfers.

IPv6 address

TFTP, SFTP server IPv6 address. Required for TFTP, SFTP transfers.

manager

Replace the keys for manager access; follow with the `append` option to add the keys.

operator

Replace the keys for operator access (default); follow with the `append` option to add the keys.

pc

N/A

The listed crash-files captured for 3500 switch for both MM and slot using SFTP are as follows:

MM crash-files:

M-SG238TF00K.cor
M-SG238TF00K.cdata
M-SG238TF00K.clog
M-SG238TF00K.evt
M-SG238TF00K.fdr

Slot crash-files:

I-SG238TF00K.cor
I-SG238TF00K.cdata
I-SG238TF00K.clog
I-SG238TF00K.evt
I-SG238TF00K.fdr

copy crash-files

Syntax

```
copy crash-files [slot-id|mm-active|mm-standby|member]
```

Description

Copies multiple management switches.

Parameters and options

slot-id

Copy interface management crash files to SFTP, TFTP, USB, and Xmodem.

mm-active

Copy active management module crash files to SFTP, TFTP, USB, and Xmodem.

mm-standby

Copy standby management module crash files to SFTP, TFTP, USB, and Xmodem.

copy crash-files member

Syntax

```
copy crash-files member [management|interfaces]
```

Description

Copies stacking or standalone switches.

Parameters and options

management

Copy stack member crash files to SFTP, TFTP, USB, and Xmodem.

interfaces

Copy stack member crash files to SFTP, TFTP, USB, and Xmodem.

copy crash-files crash-file-options

Syntax

```
copy crash-files crash-file-options <HOST-NAME-STR> <IP-ADDR> <IPv6-ADDR> <SFTP>  
<DIRNAME-STRX> [oobm] <DESTINATION>
```

Description

Copies crash files using various options.

Parameters and options

<HOST-NAME-STR>

Specify hostname of the SFTP server.

<IP-ADDR>

Specify SFTP server IPv4 address.

<IPv6-ADDR>

Specify SFTP server IPv6 address.

<USER>

Specify the username on the remote system.

<USERNAME@IP-STR>

Specify the username along with remote system. Information (hostname, IPv4 or IPv6 address).

<DIRNAME-STR>

Specify the destination directory name.

oobm

Use the OOBM interface to reach SFTP server.

<DESTINATION>

slot-id

Copy interface core-dump file.

mm-active

Copy active management module crash files.

mm-standby

Copy standby management module crash files.

member

Copy member crash files.

interfaces

Copy interfaces crash files.

management

Copy management crash files.

Switch and network operations

The switches have several built-in tools for monitoring, analyzing, and troubleshooting switch and network operation:

- **Status** Includes options for displaying general switch information, management address data, port status, port and trunk group statistics, MAC addresses detected on each port or VLAN, and STP, IGMP, and VLAN data.
- **Counters** Display details of traffic volume on individual ports.
- **Event Log** Lists switch operating events. See the ProVision switch software troubleshooting guide for troubleshooting information.
- **Configurable trap receivers** Uses SNMP to enable management stations on your network to receive SNMP traps from the switch.
- **Port monitoring (mirroring)** Copy all traffic from the specified ports to a designated monitoring port .



NOTE: Link test and ping test—analysis tools in troubleshooting situations—are described in the *ProVision Switch Software Troubleshooting Guide*.

Status and counters data

This section describes the status and counters screens available through the switch console interface and/or the WebAgent.



NOTE:

You can access all console screens from the WebAgent via Telnet to the console. Telnet access to the switch is available in the **Device View** window under the **Configuration** tab.

show system

Syntax

```
show system [chassislocate | information | temperature]
```

Description

Shows global system information and operational parameters for the switch.

Command context

```
manager and operator
```

Parameters

chassislocate

Shows the chassis locator LED status. Possible values are ON, Off, and Blink. When the status is On or Blink, the number of minutes that the Locator LED will continue to be on or to blink is displayed.

information

Displays global system information and operational parameters for the switch.

temperature

Shows system temperature and settings.

Usage

- To show system fans, see [show system fans](#)
- To show chassis power supply and settings, see [show system power-supply](#)
- To show system fans for VSF members, see [show system fans vsf](#)

Examples

Locating the system chassis by LED blink using the `show system chassislocate` command.

```
Switch(config)# show system chassislocate
Chassis Locator LED: ON 5 minutes 5 seconds

Switch(config)# show system chassislocate
Chassis Locator LED: BLINK 10 minutes 6 seconds

Switch(config)# show system chassislocate
Chassis Locator LED: OFF
```

Showing the general switch system information by using the `show system` command.

```
Switch(config)# show system

Status and Counters - General System Information

System Name       : Switch
System Contact    :
System Location   :

MAC Age Time (sec) : 300

Time Zone         : 0
Daylight Time Rule : None

Software revision : T.13.XX      Base MAC Addr   : 001635-b57cc0
ROM Version       : K.12.12     Serial Number  : LP621KI005

Up Time           : 51 secs      Memory - Total  : 152,455,616
CPU Util (%)      : 3            Free           : 110,527,264

IP Mgmt  - Pkts Rx : 0           Packet - Total  : 6750
          Pkts Tx : 0           Buffers  Free   : 5086
                                   Lowest  : 5086
                                   Missed   : 0
```

chassislocate

Syntax

Description

Identifies the location of a specific switch by activating the blue locator LED on the front panel of the switch.

`chassislocate [blink|on|off]`

Parameters and options

blink <1-1440>

Blinks the chassis locate LED for a specified number of minutes (Default: 30 min.)

on <1-1440>

Turns the chassis locate LED on for a specified number of minutes (Default: 20 min.)

off

Turns the chassis locate LED off.

Chassislocate at startup

The chassislocate command has an optional parameter that configures it to run in the future instead of immediately.

Syntax

```
chassislocate [on|blink] <MINUTES> at [now|startup]
```

```
chassislocate off
```

Parameters and options

<MINUTES>

Specify the number of minutes for the chassis locate LED to remain on or blink.

at

Specify when the command is applied (default immediately.)

now

Turn on the chassis locate LED immediately.

startup

Turn on the chassis locate LED at switch startup.

off

Turn off the chassis locate LED switch

chassislocate at startup

```
chassislocate blink 10 at startup
```

show system chassislocate

Syntax

```
show system chassislocate
```

Description

Displays the current status of the chassislocate settings.

Display locator LED status

Locator	LED Status	Time	Configuration
Member	Current State	Remaining	
-----	-----	-----	-----
1	blink	00:27:05	blink 30 at startup

Collecting processor data with the task monitor

The task monitor feature allows you to enable or disable the collection of processor utilization data. The `task-monitor cpu` command is equivalent to the existing debug mode command `taskusage -d`. (The `taskUsageShow` command is also available.)

When the `task-monitor` command is enabled, the `show cpu` command summarizes the processor usage by protocol and system functions.

task-monitor cpu

Syntax

```
[no] task-monitor cpu
```

Description

Enables or disables the collection of processor utilization data, and requires a manager log in. Settings are not persistent; there are no changes to the configuration. Defaults to disabled.

task-monitor cpu command

Figure 105: *The task-monitor cpu command and show cpu output*

```
Switch(config)# task-monitor cpu
Switch(config)# show cpu

2 percent busy, from 2865 sec ago
1 sec ave: 9 percent busy
5 sec ave: 9 percent busy
1 min ave: 1 percent busy

% CPU | Description
-----+-----
 99 | Idle
```

Switch management address information access

show management

Syntax

```
show management
```

Description

Displays switch management address information.

Component information views

The CLI `show modules` command displays additional component information for the following:

- SSM—identification, including serial number
- Mini-GBICS—a list of installed mini-GBICs displaying the type, "J" number, and serial number (when available)

show modules

Syntax

```
show modules
```

Description

Displays information about the installed modules (**Figure 106: The show modules command output** on page 478), including:

- The slot in which the module is installed
- The module description
- The serial number

Additionally, this command displays the part number (J number) and serial number of the chassis. (See **Figure 107: The show modules details command for the 8212zl, showing SSM and mini-GBIC information** on page 479.)

show modules command

Figure 106: *The show modules command output*

```
Switch(config)# show modules

Status and Counters - Module Information

Chassis: 5406zl J8697A          Serial Number:  SG560TN124
Slot  Module Description          Serial Number
-----
A      Switch J8706A 24p SFP zl Module  AD722BX88F
B      Switch J8702A 24p Gig-T zl Module FE999CV77F
C      Switch J8707A 4p 10-Gbe zl Module FB345DC99D
```

show modules details command

Figure 107: The show modules details command for the 8212zl, showing SSM and mini-GBIC information

```
Switch(config)# show modules details

Status and Counters - Module Information

Chassis: 8212zl J8715A      Serial Number: SG560TN124
Slot  Module Description      Serial Number  St
-----
MM1    Switch J9092A Management Module 8200zl  AD722BX88F    A
SSM    Switch J8784A System Support Module    AF988DC78G    A
C      Switch J8750A 20p +4 Mini-GBIC Module  446S2BX007    A
      GBIC 1: J4859B 1GB LX-LC             4720347DFED734
      GBIC 2: J4859B 1GB LX-LC             4720347DFED735
```

Compatibility mode for v2 zl and zl modules

In the following context, v2 zl modules are the second version of the current zl modules. Both v2 zl and zl modules are supported in the 5400zl series chassis switches.

Compatibility Mode allows the inter-operation of v2 zl modules with zl modules in a chassis switch. When in Compatibility Mode, the switch accepts either v2 zl or zl modules. The default is Compatibility Mode enabled. If Compatibility Mode is disabled by executing the `no allow-v1-modules` command, the switch will only power up v2 zl modules.

allow-v1-modules

Syntax

```
[no] allow-v1-modules
```

Enables Compatibility Mode for interoperation of v2 zl and zl modules in the same chassis. (See **Figure 108: Enabling compatibility mode** on page 479.) The `no` form of the command disables Compatibility Mode. Only the v2 zl modules are powered up. (See **Figure 109: Disabling compatibility mode** on page 480.) Defaults to enabled.

allow-v1-modules

Figure 108: Enabling compatibility mode

```
Switch(config)# allow-v1-modules
This will erase the configuration and reboot the switch.
Continue [y/n]?
```

no allow-v1-modules

Figure 109: *Disabling compatibility mode*

```
Switch(config)# no allow-v1-modules
All V1 modules will be disabled. Continue [y/n]?
```

Port status

You can view port status using either the CLI or the menu.

show interfaces brief

Syntax

```
show interfaces brief
```

Description

View the port status.

Accessing port and trunk group statistics

Use the CLI to view port counter summary reports, and to view detailed traffic summary for specific ports.

Trunk bandwidth utilization

- Trunk interface counters display the accumulated statistics over the trunk members' ports since the time they are added into trunk.
- Bandwidth utilization for trunks is calculated by averaging the value of the sum of bandwidth utilization for each trunk member in the last 5 minute interval .

show interfaces

Syntax

```
show interfaces [brief | config | <PORT-LIST>]
```

Description

Shows interface information for ports or trunk groups in brief or configuration detail.

Command context

```
operator or manager
```

Parameters

brief

Shows the current operating status for all ports or trunk groups on the switch in brief detail.

config

Shows the configuration data for all ports or trunk groups on the switch.

<PORT-LIST>

Specifies the list of ports for which status information will be shown.

<TRUNK-GROUP>

Specifies the trunk group for which status information will be shown. The status information shown consists of total transmit and receive counters and weighted average rate for the trunk group specified. The weighted average rate is calculated in 5 minute intervals.

Usage

Both external and internal ports are supported on the same module. Internal ports have an “I” suffix in the output of the show command to indicate that they are internal ports.

- “10GbE-INT” – Internal 10G data-plane ports (1i-2i, 4i-5i)
- “1GbE-INT” – Internal 1G control-plane port (3i)
- Port 3i always shows as link-down.

Examples

Show brief information and status of all interfaces.

```
switch# show interfaces brief
```

Status and Counters - Port Status

Port	Type	Intrusion		Enabled	Status	Mode	MDI Mode	Flow Ctrl	Bcast Limit
		Alert	+						
B1	100/1000T	No		Yes	Down	Auto-10-100	Auto	off	0
B2	100/1000T	No		Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B3	100/1000T	No		Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B4	100/1000T	No		Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B5	100/1000T	No		Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B6	100/1000T	No		Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0

Show the configuration of the interfaces currently available.

```
switch# show interfaces config
```

Port Settings

Port	Type	Enabled	Mode	Flow Ctrl	MDI
B1	100/1000T	Yes	Auto-10-100	Disable	Auto
B2	100/1000T	Yes	Auto	Disable	Auto
B3	100/1000T	Yes	Auto	Disable	Auto
B4	100/1000T	Yes	Auto	Disable	Auto
B5	100/1000T	Yes	Auto	Disable	Auto
B6	100/1000T	Yes	Auto	Disable	Auto

Show brief information and status of interfaces for ports D1i, D2i, and D3i.

```
switch# show interfaces brief d1i-d3i
```

Status and Counters - Port Status

Port	Type	Intrusion		Enabled	Status	Mode	MDI Mode	Flow Ctrl	Bcast Limit
		Alert	+						
D1i	10GbE-INT	No		Yes	Up	10GigFD	NA	off	0
D2i	10GbE-INT	No		Yes	Up	10GigFD	NA	off	0
D3i	1GbE-INT	No		Yes	Down	1000FDx	NA	off	0

Show the brief information and status of interfaces for ports B1 through internal port B3i.

```
switch# show interfaces brief b1-b3i
```

Status and Counters - Port Status

Port	Type	Intrusion		Status	Mode	MDI	Flow	Bcast
		Alert	Enabled			Mode	Ctrl	Limit
B1	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B2	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B3	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B4	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B5	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B6	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B7	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B8	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B9	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B10	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B11	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B12	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B1i	10GbE-INT	No	Yes	Up	10GigFD	NA	off	0
B2i	10GbE-INT	No	Yes	Up	10GigFD	NA	off	0
B3i	1GbE-INT	No	Yes	Up	1000FDx	NA	off	0

Show detailed interface information for port trunk 1.

```
switch# show interface trk1
```

Status and Counters - Port Counters for port Trk1

```
Name : Trk1
MAC Address : 3464a9-b1b8bf
Link Status : Up
Totals (Since boot or last clear) :
  Bytes Rx : 777,713,956
  Unicast Rx : 1,154,693
  Bcast/Mcast Rx : 48,563
  Errors (Since boot or last clear) :
    FCS Rx : 0
    Alignment Rx : 0
    Runts Rx : 0
    Giants Rx : 0
    Total Rx Errors : 0
  Others (Since boot or last clear) :
    Discard Rx : 0
    Unknown Protos : 0
  Rates (5 minute weighted average) :
    Total Rx(Kbps) : 76,800
    Unicast Rx (Pkts/sec) : 21
    B/Mcast Rx (Pkts/sec) : 114,878
    Utilization Rx : 00.76 %
  Bytes Tx : 596,853,141
  Unicast Tx : 0
  Bcast/Mcast Tx : 607,474,910
  Drops Tx : 0
  Collisions Tx : 0
  Late Colln : 0
  Excessive Colln : 0
  Deferred Tx : 0
  Out Queue Len : 0
  Total Tx(Kbps) : 76,800
  Unicast Tx (Pkts/sec) : 0
  B/Mcast Tx (Pkts/sec) : 114,900
  Utilization Tx : 00.76 %
```

show interfaces trunk-utilization

Syntax

```
show interfaces trunk-utilization
```

Description

Shows the bandwidth utilization calculations for all trunk members.

Command context

operator or manager

Example

Show bandwidth utilization for trunks.

```
Switch(config)# show interfaces trunk-utilization
```

Status and Counters - Port Utilization

Port	Rx			Tx		
	Kbits/sec	Pkts/sec	Util	Kbits/sec	Pkts/sec	Util
Trk1	0	0	0	0	0	0
Trk2	0	0	0	0	0	0
Trk10	0	0	0	0	0	0

Statistic interactions of interface counters

Table 24: *Statistic interactions*

Interface counters are cleared using the command `clear statistics`. When certain actions are taken to ports and trunks, the outcome of the `clear` command differs.

Action taken	Trigger	Interaction with interface counter
Adding Port into trunk	CLI/SNMP	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Interface counters for this port will be cleared across all sessions.Average rate counters are not cleared.
Removing Port from trunk	CLI/SNMP	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Interface counters for this port will be cleared across all sessions.Average rate counters are not cleared.
Trunk port coming Up	CLI enable	<ul style="list-style-type: none">No change in counters.Interface counters for this port are not cleared.Average rate counters are not cleared. Counters will start from 0 when the trunk port comes up.
Trunk port coming Up	Cable connect	<ul style="list-style-type: none">No change in counters.Interface counters for this port are not cleared.Average rate counters are not cleared. Counters will start from 0 when the trunk port comes up.
Trunk port going Down	CLI disable	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Interface counters for this port are not cleared.Average rate counters are cleared.
Trunk port going Down	Cable disconnect	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Interface counters for this port are not cleared.Average rate counters are cleared.

Table Continued

Action taken	Trigger	Interaction with interface counter
Trunk port going Down	Module crash/ module reload	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Interface counters for this port are not cleared. Average rate counters are cleared.
Trunk port going Down	Save power - off	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Interface counters for this port are not cleared. Average rate counters are cleared.
Trunk port going Down	Stacking member reboot/ crash/shutdown.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Interface counters for this port are not cleared. Average rate counters of this port is not cleared. Utilization for the port is cleared. Utilization for the trunk group is updated accordingly
Trunk port going Down	Module remove/ member remove.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Statistics for removed trunk port can not be accessed as the port is removed. Interface counters for the trunk group is updated. Utilization for the trunk group is updated.
Clear statistics on physical port which is part of trunk	CLI	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Not allowed. The error message <code>Module not present for port or invalid port: <PORT-NUM></code> displays when the command <code>clear statistics</code> is executed on a port which part of a trunk.
Clear statistics on trunk.	CLI	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Interface counters for physical ports which are part of trunk will be cleared. Average rate counters are not cleared.

Reset port counters

When troubleshooting network issues, you can clear all counters and statistics without rebooting the switch using the `clear statistics global` command or using the menu.

SNMP displays the counter and statistics totals accumulated since the last reboot, and it is not affected by the `clear statistics global` command or the `clear statistics <PORT-LIST>` command. Clearing statistics initiates an SNMP trap.



IMPORTANT: Once cleared, statistics cannot be reintroduced.

clear statics

Syntax

```
clear statistics [<PORT-LIST> | global | <TRUNK-LIST>]
```

Description

Clears all interface counters and statistics for specified ports, specified trunks or clears statistics globally for all.

Command context

manager

Parameters

<PORT-LIST>

Specifies the list of ports.

global

Specifies all counters and statistics for all interfaces.

<TRUNK-LIST>]

Specifies the list of trunks.

Usage

The `clear statistics` command does not clear SNMP.

MAC address tables

MAC address views and searches

You can view and search MAC addresses using the CLI or the menu.

show mac-address

Syntax

```
show mac-address [vlan <VLAN-ID> ] [<PORT-LIST>] [<MAC-ADDR>] [TUNNEL-ID]
```

Description

Lists all MAC addresses on the switch and their corresponding port numbers. You can also choose to list specific addresses and ports, or addresses and ports on a VLAN. The switches operate with a multiple forwarding database architecture.

Command context

manager

Parameters

vlan <VLAN-ID>

Show MAC addresses learned on a specified VLAN.

PORT-LIST

Show MAC addresses learned on the specified ports.

<MAC-ADDR>

Show the specified port for a specified MAC address.

TUNNEL-ID

Show MAC addresses learned on the specified VXLAN tunnel.

Usage

show mac-address

Lists all learned MAC addresses on the switch and their corresponding port numbers.

show mac-address a1-a4,a6

Lists all learned MAC addresses on one or more ports and their corresponding port numbers.

show mac-address vlan 100

Lists all learned MAC addresses on a VLAN and their corresponding port numbers.

show mac-add detail

Syntax

```
show mac-address detail
```

Description

Shows the age of the learned MAC addresses in the MAC table. The age of a specific MAC-address will be displayed in dd:hr:min:sec.msec format.

Command context

manager

Examples

show mac-add detail on a specified switch.

```
switch# show mac-add detail
```

Status and Counters - Port Address Table

MAC Address	Port	VLAN	Age (d:h:m:s.ms)
3c4a92-31c100	F23	1	0000:00:00:00.34
9cb654-ce6169	A2	1	0000:00:02:37.93
c09134-cd2740	F23	1	0000:00:00:00.28
c09134-cd277d	F23	1	0000:00:00:23.62
f0921c-85b0e0	F24	1	0000:00:00:08.29
f0921c-85b0e9	F24	1	0000:00:00:09.47

show mac-add detail for Vxlan Tunnel supporting and non-supporting platforms.

```
switch# show mac-address detail
```

Status and Counters - Port Address Table

MAC Address	Port	VLAN	Age (d:h:m:s.ms)
f0921c-b6e940	L22	1	0000:00:23:26.93
0180c2-00000f	A24	50	0000:00:00:00.00
d18cc2-00000f	A24	50	0001:21:43:59.92
e18dd2-00000f	A24	50	0000:18:23:24.22

show mac-add detail for platforms not supporting Vxlan Tunnels.

```
stack-Switch# show mac-address detail
```

Status and Counters - Port Address Table

MAC Address	Port	VLAN	Age (d:h:m:s.ms)
009c02-d80f28	1/2	1	0000:00:00:30.18
3464a9-abe500	1/2	1	0030:07:01:20.23

show mac-address <MAC-ADDRESS> detail

Syntax

Syntax

show mac-address <MAC-ADDRESS> detail

Description

Specifies the age and existing details of the specific mac address given.

manager

Parameters

<MAC-ADDRESS>

Specifies the mac-address being requested in detail.

Examples

Show mac-address detail for **f0921c-b6e97e**.

```
switch# show mac-address f0921c-b6e97e detail
```

Status and Counters - Port Address Table			
MAC Address	Port	VLAN	Age (d:h:m:s.ms)
f0921c-b6e97e	L22	1	0000:00:00:30.18

Show mac-address detail for a stacked switch.

```
switch-Stack# show mac-address 009c02-d80f28 detail
```

Status and Counters - Port Address Table			
MAC Address	Port	VLAN	Age (d:h:m:s.ms)
009c02-d80f28	1/2	1	0000:00:00:30.18

Using the menu to view and search MAC addresses

To determine which switch port on a selected VLAN the switch uses to communicate with a specific device on the network:

Procedure

1. From the Main Menu, select **1. Status and Counters ...** , and then select **5. VLAN Address Table**.
2. Use the arrow keys to scroll to the VLAN you want, and then press **Enter** on the keyboard to select it.

```

----- CONSOLE - MANAGER MODE -----
Status and Counters - Address Table

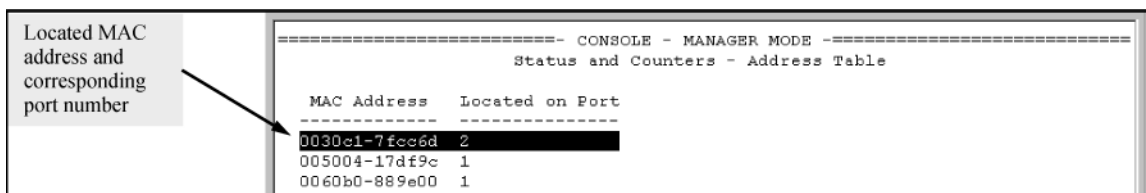
MAC Address    Located on Port
-----
0030c1-7f49c0  A3
0030c1-7fec40  A1
0030c1-b29ac0  A3
0060b0-17de5b  A3
0060b0-880a80  A2
0060b0-df1a00  A3
0060b0-df2a00  A3
0060b0-e9a200  A3
009027-e74f90  A3
080009-21ae84  A3
080009-62c411  A3
080009-6563e2  A3

Actions->  Back  Search  Next page  Prev page  Help
Return to previous screen.
Use up/down arrow keys to scroll to other entries, left/right arrow keys to
change action selection, and <Enter> to execute action.

```

The switch then displays the MAC address table for that VLAN (**Figure 110: Example of the address table** on page 488.)

Figure 110: Example of the address table



3. To page through the listing, use **Next page** and **Prev page** .

Finding the port connection for a specific device on a VLAN

This feature uses a device's MAC address that you enter to identify the port used by that device.

Procedure

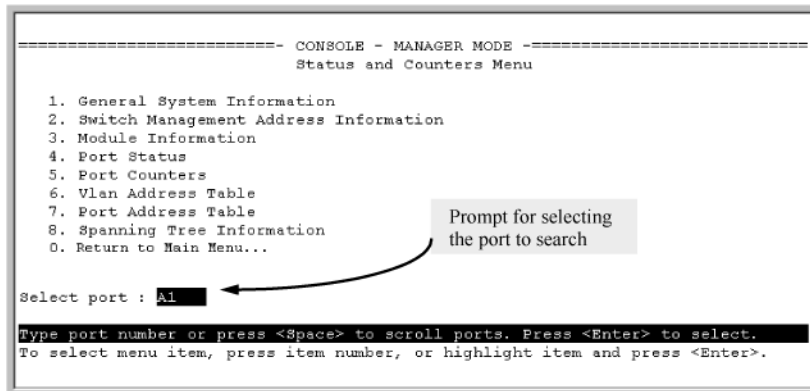
1. Proceeding from **Figure 110: Example of the address table** on page 488, press **[S]** (for **Search**), to display the following prompt:

```
Enter MAC address: _
```

2. Enter the MAC address you want to locate and press **[Enter]**.

- The address and port number are highlighted if found (**Figure 111: Example of menu indicating located MAC address** on page 489.) If the switch does not find the MAC address on the currently selected VLAN, it leaves the MAC address listing empty.

Figure 111: Example of menu indicating located MAC address



- Press **[P]** (for **Prev page**) to return to the full address table listing.

Viewing and searching port-level MAC addresses

This feature displays and searches for MAC addresses on the specified port instead of for all ports on the switch.

Procedure

- From the Main Menu, select:
- 1. Status and Counters ...**
- 7. Port Address Table**

Figure 112: Listing MAC addresses for a specific port

```

Switch-1(config)# show spanning-tree
Multiple Spanning Tree (MST) Information

STP Enabled      : Yes
Force Version    : MSTP-operation
IST Mapped VLANs : 1,66

Switch MAC Address : 0004ea-5e2000
Switch Priority    : 32768
Max Age          : 20
Max Hops         : 20
Forward Delay     : 15

Topology Change Count : 0
Time Since Last Change : 2 hours

CST Root MAC Address : 00022d-47367f
CST Root Priority     : 0
CST Root Path Cost    : 4000000
CST Root Port        : A1

IST Regional Root MAC Address : 000883-028300
IST Regional Root Priority     : 32768
IST Regional Root Path Cost    : 2000000
IST Remaining Hops             : 19

```

Port	Type	Cost	Prio rity	State	Designated Bridge	Hello Time	PtP	Edge
A1	10/100TX	Auto	128	Forwarding	000883-028300	9	Yes	No
A2	10/100TX	Auto	128	Blocking	0001e7-948300	9	Yes	No
A3	10/100TX	Auto	128	Forwarding	000883-02a700	2	Yes	No
A4	10/100TX	Auto	128	Disabled				
A5	10/100TX	Auto	128	Disabled				
.				
.				

- Use the Space bar to select the port you want to list or search for MAC addresses, then press **[Enter]** to list the MAC addresses detected on that port.

Determining whether a specific device is connected to the selected port

Proceeding from [4](#), above:

Procedure

1. Press **[S]** (for **Search**), to display the following prompt:

```
Enter MAC address: _
```

2. Enter the MAC address you want to locate and press **[Enter]**.
3. The address is highlighted if found. If the switch does not find the address, it leaves the MAC address listing empty.
4. Press **[P]** (for **Prev page**) to return to the previous per-port listing.

MSTP data

show spanning-tree

Syntax

```
show spanning-tree
```

Description

Displays the global and regional spanning-tree status for the switch, and displays the per-port spanning-tree operation at the regional level.

Values for the following parameters appear only for ports connected to active devices: *Designated Bridge*, *Hello Time*, *PtP*, and *Edge*.

show spanning-tree command output

Figure 113: show spanning-tree command output

```
Switch(config)# show spanning-tree
```

Multiple Spanning Tree (MST) Information

```
STP Enabled : Yes
Force Version : MSTP-operation
IST Mapped VLANs : 1,66

Switch MAC Address : 0004ea-5e2000
Switch Priority : 32768
Max Age : 20
Max Hops : 20
Forward Delay : 15

Topology Change Count : 0
Time Since Last Change : 2 hours
```

Switch's Spanning Tree Configuration and Identity of VLANs Configured in the Switch for the IST Instance

```
CST Root MAC Address : 00022d-47367f
CST Root Priority : 0
CST Root Path Cost : 4000000
CST Root Port : A1
```

Identifies the overall spanning-tree root for the network.

```
IST Regional Root MAC Address : 00883-028300
IST Regional Root Priority : 32768
IST Regional Root Path Cost : 200000
IST Remaining Hops : 19
```

Lists the switch's MSTP root data for connectivity with other regions and STP or RSTP devices.

```
Protected Ports : A4
Filtered Ports : A7-A10
```

Identifies the spanning-tree root for the IST Instance for the region.

```
Protected Ports : A4
Filtered Ports : A7-A10
```

Internal Spanning Tree Data (IST Instance) for the region in which the Switch Operates

```
Protected Ports : A4
Filtered Ports : A7-A10
```

Identifies the ports with BPDU protection and BPDU filtering enabled.

```
Protected Ports : A4
Filtered Ports : A7-A10
```

Yes means the switch is operating the port as if it is connected to switch, bridge, or end node (but *not* a hub).

Port	Type	Cost	Prio	rity	State	Designated	Hello	Time	PtP	Edge
A1	100/1000T	Auto	128		Forwarding	000883-028300	9		Yes	No
A2	100/1000T	Auto	128		Blocked	0001e7-948300	9		Yes	No
A3	100/1000T	Auto	128		Forwarding	000883-02a700	2		Yes	No
A4	100/1000T	Auto	128		Disabled					
A5	100/1000T	Auto	128		Disabled					
.					
.					

For Edge, No (admin-edge-port operation disabled) indicates the port is configured for connecting to a LAN segment that includes a bridge or switch. Yes indicates the port is configured for a host (end node) link. Refer to the admin-edge-port description under "Configuring MSTP Per-Port Parameters" on page 3-24.

IP IGMP status

show ip igmp

Syntax

```
show ip igmp <VLAN-ID> [config] [group <IP-ADDR>|groups] [statistics]
```

Description

Global command that lists IGMP status for all VLANs configured in the switch, including:

- VLAN ID (VID) and name
- Querier address
- Active group addresses per VLAN
- Number of report and query packets per group
- Querier access port per VLAN

Parameters and options

config

Displays the IGMP configuration information, including VLAN ID, VLAN name, status, forwarding, and Querier information.

vlan-id

Per-VLAN command listing above, IGMP status for specified VLAN (VID).

group <IP-ADDR>

Lists the ports currently participating in the specified group, with port type, Access type, Age Timer data and Leave Timer data.

groups

Displays VLAN-ID, group address, uptime, expiration time, multicast filter type, and the last reporter for IGMP groups.

statistics

Displays IGMP operational information, such as VLAN IDs and names, and filtered and flooding statistics.

Output from show ip igmp config command

```
Switch(config)# show ip igmp config

IGMP Service

VLAN ID  VLAN Name      IGMP    Forward with  Querier Querier
-----  -
1         DEFAULT_VLAN  No      No            Yes     125
2         VLAN2         Yes     No            Yes     125
12        New_Vlan      No      No            Yes     125
```

IGMP statistical information

```
switch(vlan-2)# show ip igmp statistics
```

IGMP Service Statistics

```
Total VLANs with IGMP enabled      : 1
Current count of multicast groups joined : 1
```

IGMP Joined Groups Statistics

VLAN ID	VLAN Name	Filtered	Flood
2	VLAN2	2	1

VLAN information

show vlan

Syntax

show vlan <VLAN-ID>

Description

Lists the maximum number of VLANs to support, existing VLANs, VLAN status (static or dynamic), and primary VLAN.

Parameters and options

<VLAN-ID>

Lists the following for the specified VLAN:

- Name, VID, and status (static/dynamic)
- Per-port mode (tagged, untagged, forbid, no/auto)
- "Unknown VLAN" setting (Learn, Block, Disable)
- Port status (up/down)

List data on specific VLANs

The next three figures show how you can list data for the following VLANs:

Ports	VLAN	VID
A1-A12	DEFAULT_VLAN	1

Table Continued

A1, A2	VLAN-33	33
A3, A4	VLAN-44	44

Figure 114: Listing the VLAN ID (vid) and status for specific ports

```
Switch# show vlan ports A1-A2

Status and Counters = VLAN Information - for ports A1,A2

802.1Q VLAN ID Name          Status
-----
1          DEFAULT_VLAN      Static
33         VLAN-33          Static
```

Because ports A1 and A2 are not members of VLAN-44, it does not appear in this listing.

Figure 115: Example of VLAN listing for the entire switch

```
Switch# show vlan
Status and Counters - VLAN Information

VLAN support : Yes
Maximum VLANs to support : 9
Primary VLAN: DEFAULT_VLAN

802.1Q VLAN ID Name          Status
-----
1          DEFAULT_VLAN      Static
33         VLAN-33          Static
44         VLAN-44          Static
```

Figure 116: Port listing for an individual VLAN

```
Switch(config)# show vlan 1

Status and Counters - VLAN Information - VLAN 1

VLAN ID : 1
Name : DEFAULT_VLAN
Status : Static
Voice : Yes
Jumbo : No

Port Information Mode      Unknown VLAN Status
-----
A1          Untagged Learn      Up
A2          Tagged   Learn      Up
A3          Untagged Learn      Up
A4          Untagged Learn      Down
A5          Untagged Learn      Up
A6          Untagged Learn      Up
A7          Untagged Learn      Up
```

WebAgent status information

The WebAgent Status screen provides an overview of the status of the switch. Scroll down to view more details. For information about this screen, click on ? in the upper right corner of the WebAgent screen.

Figure 117: Example of a WebAgent status screen

The screenshot shows the 'Home > Status' page of a WebAgent interface. It contains several panels: 'Switch Status' with fields for System Name, Location, Contact, Uptime, CPU Util, and Memory; 'Unit Information' with fields for Product Name, IP Address, Base MAC Address, Serial Number, Mgmt Server, and Firmware Version; 'VLAN' with a table showing VLAN details; 'Alert Log' with a search bar and a table of alerts; and a bottom section for 'ProCurve Switch 8212zl(J9091A)' showing power, fan, temperature, and PoE status, along with a 'Details' table for port statistics.

Name	Status	IP Address
DEFAULT_VLAN	Port-based	15.255.133.38

Date & Time	Status	Alert	Description
More >>			

Port Name	Totals	Receive
Enabled	Bytes	
Type	Unicast	

Configuring local mirroring

To configure a local mirroring session in which the mirroring source and destination are on the same switch, follow these general steps:

Procedure

1. Determine the session and local destination port:
 - a. Session number (1-4) and (optional) alphanumeric name
 - b. Exit port (any port on the switch except a monitored interface used to mirror traffic)



IMPORTANT:

Hewlett Packard Enterprise strongly discourages connecting a mirroring exit port to a network because doing so can result in serious network performance problems. Only connect an exit port to a network analyzer, IDS, or other network edge device that has no connection to other network resources.

2. Enter the `mirror session-# [name session-name] port port-#` command to configure the session.
3. Determine the traffic to be selected for mirroring by any of the following methods and the appropriate configuration level (VLAN, port, mesh, trunk, switch):

- a. Direction: inbound, outbound, or both
- b. Classifier-based mirroring policy: inbound only for IPv4 or IPv6 traffic
- c. MAC source and/or destination address: inbound, outbound, or both

4. Enter the `monitor` command to assign one or more source interfaces to the session.

After you complete step 4, the switch begins mirroring traffic to the configured exit port.

The following commands configure mirroring for a local session in which the mirroring source and destination are on the same switch.

- The `mirror` command identifies the destination in a mirroring session.
- The `interface` and `vlan` commands identify the mirroring source, including source interface, traffic direction, and traffic-selection criteria for a specified session.



NOTE:

With no

allow-v2-modules

specified in the configuration of a switch with V3 modules on KB firmware, Egress VLAN ACLs do not filter mirrored traffic. You must use a port ACL to filter mirrored traffic.

Local mirroring sessions

Syntax

```
[no] mirror-port <EXIT-PORT-#>
```

Description

Configure local mirroring sessions.

Parameters and options

mirror-port <EXIT-PORT-#>

When used with `mirror-port <EXIT-PORT-#>` command, removes the mirroring session and any mirroring source previously assigned to that session by the following commands.

Traffic-direction criteria

interface monitor all

Syntax

```
[no] [interface <PORT> |<TRUNK>] monitor
```

ACL criteria for inbound traffic — deprecated



NOTE:

interface monitor ip

Syntax

```
[no] [interface <PORT> |<TRUNK> |<MESH>] |vlan <VID-#>] monitor ip access-group  
<ACL-NAME> in mirror session [session ...]
```

Mirror policy for inbound traffic

class [ipv4|ipv6]

Syntax

```
class [ipv4|ipv6] <CLASSNAME> [no] [seq-number] [match|ignore] <IP-PROTOCOL>  
<SOURCE-ADDRESS> <DESTINATION-ADDRESS>] [precedence <PRECEDENCE-VALUE>] [tos <TOS-  
VALUE>] [ip-dscp <CODEPOINTS>] [vlan <VLAN-ID>]
```

Description

Configures the mirroring policy for inbound traffic on the switch.

Parameters and options

policy mirror

Syntax

```
policy mirror <POLICY-NAME> [no] <SEQ-NUMBER> [class [ipv4|ipv6] <CLASSNAME> action  
mirror <SESSION>] [action mirror <SESSION>] [no] default-class action mirror  
<SESSION> [no] [interface <PORT/TRUNK>| vlan <VID-#>] service-policy <MIRROR-  
POLICY-NAME> in
```

Description

The [no] [interface <PORT/TRUNK>| vlan <VID-#>] service-policy <MIRROR-POLICY-NAME> in command removes the mirroring policy from a port, VLAN, trunk, or mesh interface for a specified session, but leaves the session available for other assignments.

Parameters and options

mirror <SESSION>

Accepts either a number (1 to 4) or a name. To use a name, you must first configure the name <NAME-STR> parameter option for the specified mirroring session using the policy mirror command.

MAC-based criteria to select traffic

monitor mac

Syntax

```
[no] monitor mac <MAC-ADDR> [src|dst|both] mirror session
```

Description

Configures traffic using MAC-based criteria.

Parameters and options

no

Use the **no** form of the complete Command syntax (for example, `no monitor mac 112233-445566 src mirror 3`) to remove a MAC address as mirroring criteria from an active session on the switch without removing the session itself.

mirror

Enter the `monitor mac mirror` command at the global configuration level.

Remote mirroring destination on a remote switch

Syntax

```
mirror endpoint ip <SRC-IP> <SRC-UDP-PORT> <DST-IP> <EXIT-PORT> [truncation]
```

Description

Configures a remote mirroring destination on a remote switch.

Parameters and options

Remote mirroring destination on a local switch

mirror remote ip

Syntax

```
mirror <SESSION> remote ip <SRC-IP> <SRC-UDP-PORT> <DST-IP>
```

Description

Configures a remote mirroring destination on a local switch.

Parameters and options

Local mirroring destination on the local switch

mirror port

Syntax

```
mirror <SESSION> port <EXIT-PORT>
```

Description

Configures a local mirroring destination on a local switch.

Parameters and options

Monitored traffic



IMPORTANT:

In release K.14.01 and greater, the use of ACLs to select inbound traffic in a mirroring session `interface | vlan monitor ip access-group` in `mirror` command has been deprecated and is replaced with classifier-based mirroring policies.

interface

Syntax

```
interface <PORT/TRUNK/MESH>
```

Description

Parameters and options

monitor all

Syntax

```
monitor all [in|out|both] mirror <SESSION> [no-tag-added]
monitor ip access-group ACL-NAME in mirror <SESSION>
monitor mac <MAC-ADDR> [src|dest|both] mirror
show monitor [endpoint|<SESSION-NUMBER>|name <SESSION-NAME>]
```

service-policy

Syntax

```
service-policy <mirror-policy-name> in
```

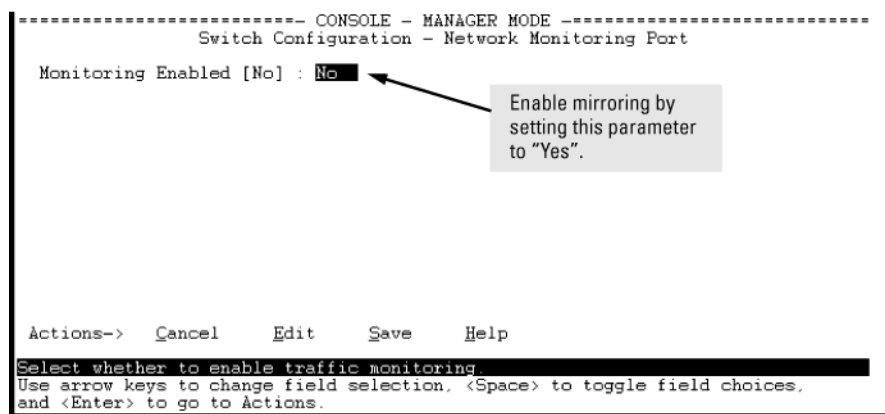
Configuring local mirroring (Menu)

If mirroring has already been enabled on the switch, the Menu screens appear different from the one shown in this section.

Procedure

1. From the Main Menu, select **1. Switch Configuration ...**, and then select **3. Network Monitoring Port**.

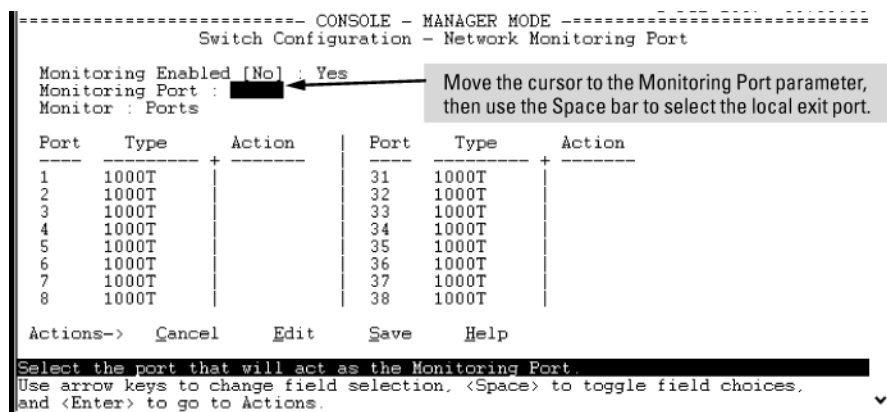
Figure 118: The default network mirroring configuration screen



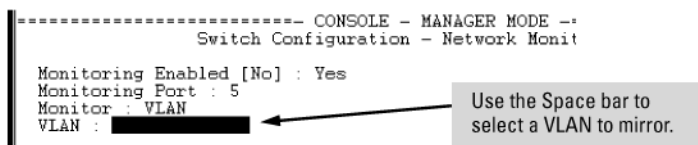
2. In the Actions menu, press **[E]** (for **Edit**.)
3. If mirroring is currently disabled for session 1 (the default), enable it by pressing the Space bar (or **[Y]**) to select **Yes**.

4. Press the down arrow key to display a screen similar to **Figure 119: How to select a local exit port** on page 500, and move the cursor to the **Monitoring Port** parameter.

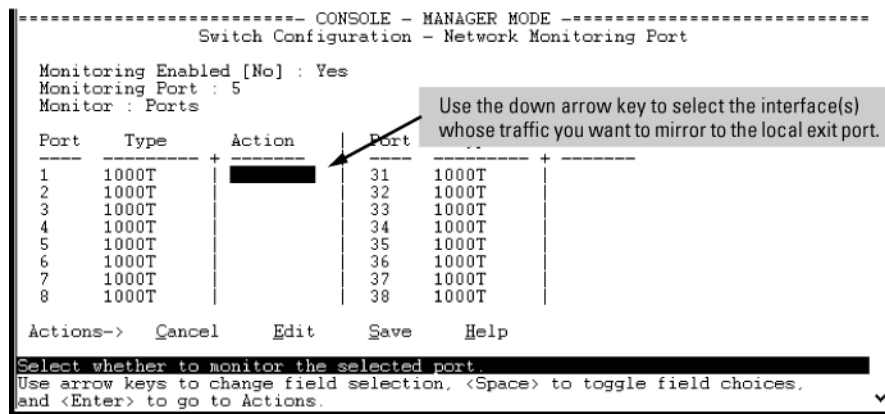
Figure 119: How to select a local exit port



5. Use the Space bar to select the port to use for sending mirrored traffic to a locally connected traffic analyzer or IDS.
6. (The selected interface must be a single port. It cannot be a trunk or mesh.) In this example, port 5 is selected as the local exit port.
7. Highlight the Monitor field and use the Space bar to select the interfaces to mirror:
8. **Ports:** Use for mirroring ports, static trunks, or the mesh.
9. **VLAN:** Use for mirroring a VLAN.
10. Do one of the following:
 - a. If you are mirroring ports, static trunks, or the mesh, go to **11**.
 - b. If you are mirroring a VLAN:
 - I. Press **[Tab]** or the down arrow key to move to the **VLAN** field.



- II. Use the Space bar to select the **VLAN** you want to mirror.
- III. Go to **14**.
11. Use the down arrow key to move the cursor to the **Action** column for the individual port interfaces and position the cursor at a port, trunk, or mesh you want to mirror.



12. Press the Space bar to select **Monitor** for the ports, trunks, mesh, or any combination of these that you want mirrored.
13. Use the down arrow key to move from one interface to the next in the **Action** column. (If the mesh or any trunks are configured, they appear at the end of the port listing.)
14. When you finish selecting interfaces to mirror, press **[Enter]**, then press **[S]** (for **Save**) to save your changes and exit from the screen.
15. Return to the Main Menu.

You can also use the CLI to configure a mirroring session for a destination device connected to an exit port on either:

- The same switch as the source interface (local mirroring.)
- A different switch (remote mirroring.) The remote switch must be an switch offering the full mirroring capabilities described in this chapter.

After you configure a mirroring session with traffic-selection criteria and a destination, the switch immediately starts to mirror traffic to each destination device connected to an exit port.

In a remote mirroring session that uses IPv4 encapsulation, if the exit switch is not already configured as the destination for the session, its performance may be adversely affected by the stream of mirrored traffic.

For this reason, Switch strongly recommends that you configure the exit switch for a remote mirroring session before configuring the source switch for the same session.

Destination mirror on a remote switch

mirror endpoint

Syntax

```
mirror endpoint ip <SRC-IP-ADDR> <SRC-UDP-PORT> <DST-IP-ADDR> port <EXIT-PORT>
```

Description

Enter this command on a remote switch to configure the exit port to use in a remote mirroring session. to configure the mirroring source on the local switch.

The `mirror endpoint ip` command configures:

- The unique UDP port number to be used for the mirroring session on the source switch. The recommended port range is from 7933 to 65535.
- The IP address of the source switch to use in the session.
- The IP address and exit-port number on the remote (endpoint) switch.

In a remote mirroring endpoint, the IP address of exit port and the remote destination switch can belong to different VLANs.

Source mirror on the local switch

mirror remote ip

Syntax

```
[no] mirror 1 - 4 [name <NAME-STR>] remote ip <SRC-IP> <SRC-UDP-PORT> <DST-IP>
[truncation]
```

Description

Configures the mirroring source on the local switch.

Parameters and options

no mirror 1-4

Removes both the mirroring session and any mirroring sources previously assigned to the session by the following commands.

Traffic-direction criteria

Syntax

```
[no] [interface <PORT> <TRUNK> <MESH>|vlan <VID-#>] monitor all in|out|both mirror 1-4|<NAME-STR> [1 - 4|<NAME-STR> . . .>]
```

Description

Configures traffic direction criteria for specific traffic

Configure ACL criteria to select inbound



NOTE:

interface monitor ip access-group

Syntax

```
[no] [interface <PORT> <TRUNK> <MESH>|vlan <VID-#>] monitor ip access-group <ACL-NAME> inmirror [1-4|<NAME-STR>] [1 - 4|<NAME-STR> . . .>]
```

Mirror policy for inbound traffic

class [ipv4|ipv6]

Syntax

```
class [ipv4|ipv6] <CLASSNAME> [no] [seq-number] [match|ignore] <IP-PROTOCOL>
<SOURCE-ADDRESS> <DESTINATION-ADDRESS> [precedence <PRECEDENCE-VALUE>] [tos <TOS-VALUE>] [ip-dscp <CODEPOINTS>] [vlan <VLAN-ID>]
```

Description

Configures the mirroring policy for inbound traffic on the switch.

Parameters and options

policy mirror

Syntax

```
policy mirror <POLICY-NAME> [no] <SEQ-NUMBER> [class [ipv4|ipv6] <CLASSNAME> action mirror <SESSION>] [action mirror <SESSION>] [no] default-class action mirror <SESSION> [no] [interface <PORT/TRUNK>| vlan <VID-#>] service-policy <MIRROR-POLICY-NAME> in
```

Description

The `[no] [interface <PORT/TRUNK>| vlan <VID-#>] service-policy <MIRROR-POLICY-NAME> in` command removes the mirroring policy from a port, VLAN, trunk, or mesh interface for a specified session, but leaves the session available for other assignments.

Parameters and options

mirror <SESSION>

Accepts either a number (1 to 4) or a name. To use a name, you must first configure the `name <NAME-STR>` parameter option for the specified mirroring session using the `policy mirror` command.

Configuring a destination switch in a remote mirroring session



CAUTION: When configuring a remote mirroring session, **always** configure the destination switch first. Configuring the source switch first can result in a large volume of mirrored, IPv4-encapsulated traffic arriving at the destination without an exit path, which can slow switch performance.

Syntax

```
mirror endpoint ip src-ip src-udp-port dst-ip exit-port-# no mirror endpoint ip src-ip src-udp-port dst-ip
```

Used on a destination switch to configure the remote endpoint of a mirroring session. The command uniquely associates the mirrored traffic from the desired session on a monitored source with a remote exit port on the destination switch. You must use the same set of source and destination parameters used when you configure the same session on both the source and destination switches.

For a given mirroring session, the same `src-ip`, `src-udp-port` and `dst-ip` values must be entered with the `mirror endpoint ip` command on the destination switch, and later with the `mirror remote ip` command on the source switch.



CAUTION: Do not remove the configuration of a remote mirroring endpoint support for a given session if there are source switches currently configured to mirror traffic to the endpoint.

<i>src-ip</i>	Must exactly match the <i>src-ip</i> address you configure on the source switch for the remote session.
<i>src-udp-port</i>	Must exactly match the <i>src-udp-port</i> value you configure on the source switch for the remote session. The recommended port range is 7933 to 65535. This setting associates the monitored source with the desired remote endpoint in the remote session by using the same, unique UDP port number to identify the session on the source and remote switches.
<i>dst-ip</i>	Must exactly match the <i>dst-ip</i> setting you configure on the source switch for the remote session.
<i>exit-port-#</i>	Exit port for mirrored traffic in the remote session, to which a traffic analyzer or IDS is connected.

The `no` form of the command deletes the mirroring endpoint for the configured session on the remote destination switch.

Configuring a source switch in a local mirroring session

Enter the `mirror port` command on the source switch to configure an exit port on the same switch. To create the mirroring session, use the information gathered in [High-level overview of the mirror configuration process](#) on page 528.

Syntax

```
mirror 1 port exit-port-# [name name-str] no mirror 1
```

Assigns the exit port to use for the specified mirroring session and must be executed from the global configuration level.

1	Identifies the mirroring session created by this command. (Multiple sessions on the switch can use the same exit port.)	
name <i>name-str</i>	Optional alphanumeric name string used to identify the session (up to 15 characters)	
port <i>exit-port-#</i>	Exit port for mirrored traffic in the remote session. This is the port to which a traffic analyzer or IDS is connected.	

The `no` form of the command removes the mirroring session and any mirroring source previously assigned to that session.

Configuring a source switch in a remote mirroring session

Syntax


```
[no] mirror 1 - 4 [name name-str] remote ip src-ip src-udp-port dst-ip [truncation]
```

Used on the source switch to uniquely associate the mirrored traffic in the specified session with a remote destination switch. You must configure the same source and destination parameters when you configure the same session on both the source and destination switches. (If multiple remote sessions use the same source and destination IP addresses, each session must use a unique UDP port value.)

When you execute this command, the following message is displayed:

Caution: Please configure destination switch first.
Do you want to continue [y/n]?

- If you have not yet configured the session on the remote destination switch, follow the configuration procedure in **Configure a mirroring destination on a remote switch** on page 528 before using this command.
- If you have already configured the session on the remote destination switch, enter **y** (for "yes") to complete this command.

1 - 4	Identifies the mirroring session created by this command.
name <i>name-str</i>	Optional alphanumeric name string used as an additional session identifier (up to 15 characters.)
<i>src-ip</i>	The IP address of the VLAN or subnet on which the traffic to be mirrored enters or leaves the switch.
<i>src-udp-port</i>	<p>Associates the remote session with a UDP port number. When multiple sessions have the same source IP address <i>src-ip</i> and destination IP address <i>dst-ip</i>, the UDP port number must be unique in each session. The UDP port number used for a given session should be in the range of 7933 to 65535.</p> <div>CAUTION: UDP port numbers below 7933 are reserved for various IP applications. Using them for mirroring can result in the interruption of other IP functions and in non-mirrored traffic being received on the destination switch and sent to a device connected to the remote exit port.</div> <p>The configured UDP port number is included in the frames mirrored from the source switch to the remote destination switch (<i>mirror endpoint</i>), and enables the remote switch to match the frames to the exit port configured for the combined UDP port number, source IP address, and destination IP address..</p>
<i>dst-ip</i>	For the remote session specified in the command, this is the IP address of the VLAN or subnet on which the remote exit port exists. (The exit port to which a traffic analyzer or IDS is connected is configured on the remote switch in section.) .)
[truncation]	Enables truncation of oversize frames, causing the part of the frame in excess of the MTU size to be truncated. Unless truncation is enabled, oversize frames are dropped. The frame size is truncated to a multiple of 18 bytes—for example, if the MTU is 1000 bytes, the frame is truncated to 990 bytes (55 * 18 bytes.)

The **no** form of the command removes the mirroring session and any mirroring source previously assigned to the session. To preserve the session while deleting a monitored source assigned to it.

Selecting all traffic on a port interface for mirroring according to traffic direction

Syntax

```
[no] interface port/trunk/mesh monitor all [in | out | both] [mirror 1 - 4 | name-str] [{1 - 4 | name-str} | {1 - 4 | name-str} | {1 - 4 | name-str}] [no-tag-added]
```

Assigns a mirroring source to a previously configured mirroring session on a source switch by specifying the port, trunk, and/or mesh sources to use, the direction of traffic to mirror, and the session.

<code>interface <i>port/trunk/mesh</i></code>	Identifies the source ports, static trunks, and/or mesh on which to mirror traffic. Use a hyphen for a range of consecutive ports or trunks (a5-a8, Trk2-Trk4.) Use a comma to separate non-contiguous interfaces (b11, b14, Trk4, Trk7.)
<code>monitor all [<i>in out both</i>]</code>	<p>For the interface specified by <i>port/trunk/mesh</i> , selects traffic to mirror based on whether the traffic is entering or leaving the switch on the interface:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><code>in:</code> Mirrors entering traffic.<code>out:</code> Mirrors exiting traffic.<code>both:</code> Mirrors traffic entering and exiting. <p>If you enter the <code>monitor all</code> command without selection criteria or a session identifier, the command applies by default to session 1</p>
<code>mirror [<i>1 - 4 name-str</i>]</code>	<p>Assigns the traffic specified by the interface and direction to a session by number or—if configured—by name. The session must have been previously configured. Depending on how many sessions are already configured on the switch, you can use the same command to assign the specified source to up to four sessions, for example, <code>interface a1 monitor all in mirror 1 2 4.</code></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><code>1 - 4</code> : Configures the selected port traffic to be mirrored in the specified session number.<code>[name <i>name-str</i>]</code> Optional: configures the selected port traffic to be mirrored in the specified session name. The string can be used interchangeably with the session number when using this command to assign a mirroring source to a session.
<code>[no-tag-added]</code>	Prevents a VLAN tag from being added to the mirrored copy of an outbound packet sent to a local or remote mirroring destination.

The `no` form of the command removes a mirroring source assigned to the session, but does not remove the session itself. This enables you to repurpose a session by removing an unwanted mirroring source and adding another in its place.

Selecting all traffic on a VLAN interface for mirroring according to traffic direction

Syntax

```
vlan vid-# monitor all [in | out | both] [mirror 1 - 4 | name-str] [{1 - 4 | name-str} | {1 - 4 | name-str} | {1 - 4 | name-str}]
```

This command assigns a monitored VLAN source to a previously configured mirroring session on a source switch by specifying the VLAN ID, the direction of traffic to mirror, and the session.

<code>vlan vid-#</code>	Identifies the VLAN on which to mirror traffic.
<code>monitor all [in out both]</code>	Uses the direction of traffic on the specified <code>vid-#</code> to select traffic to mirror. If you enter the <code>monitor all</code> command without selection criteria or a session identifier, the command applies by default to session 1.
<code>mirror [1 - 4 name-str]</code>	<p>Assigns the VLAN traffic defined by the VLAN ID and traffic direction to a session number or name. Depending on how many sessions are already configured on the switch, you can use the same command to assign the specified VLAN source to up to four sessions, for example, <code>interface a1</code> <code>monitor all in mirror 1 2 4.</code></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <code>1 - 4</code> : Configures the selected VLAN traffic to be mirrored in the specified session number. <code>[name name-str]:</code> Optional; configures the selected port traffic to be mirrored in the specified session name. The string can be used interchangeably with the session number when using this command to assign a mirroring source to a session. To configure an alphanumeric name for a mirroring session, see the command description under <u>Configuring a source switch in a remote mirroring session</u> on page 504.

Assigning a VLAN to a mirroring session precludes assigning any other mirroring sources to the same session. If a VLAN is already assigned to a given mirroring session, using this command to assign another VLAN to the same mirroring session results in the second assignment replacing the first. Also, if there are other (port, trunk, or mesh) mirroring sources already assigned to a session, the switch displays a message similar to:

```
Mirror source port exists on session N. Can not add mirror source VLAN.
```

The `no` form of the command removes a mirroring source assigned to the session, but does not remove the session itself. This allows you to repurpose a session by removing an unwanted mirroring source and adding another in its place.


Configuring a MAC address to filter mirrored traffic on an interface

Enter the `monitor mac mirror` command at the global configuration level.

Syntax

```
[no] monitor mac mac-addr [src | dest | both] {mirror 1 - 4 | name-str} [1 - 4 | name-str] [1 - 4 | name-str] [1 - 4 | name-str]
```

Use this command to configure a source and/or destination MAC address as criteria for selecting traffic in one or more mirroring sessions on the switch. The MAC address you enter is configured to mirror inbound (`src`), outbound (`dest`), or both inbound and outbound (`both`) traffic on any port or learned VLAN on the switch.

<pre>monitor mac mac-addr</pre> <p>Configures the MAC address as selection criteria for mirroring traffic on any port or learned VLAN on the switch.</p>	
<pre>{src dest both}</pre>	<p>Specifies how the MAC address is used to filter and mirror packets in inbound and/or outbound traffic on the interfaces on which the mirroring session is applied:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><code>src</code>: Mirrors all packets in inbound traffic that contain the specified MAC address as source address.<code>dest</code>: Mirrors all packets in outbound traffic that contain the specified MAC address as destination address. <div>NOTE: The MAC address of the switch is not supported as either the source or destination MAC address used to select mirrored traffic.</div> <p><code>both</code>: Mirrors all packets in both inbound and outbound traffic that contain the specified MAC address as either source or destination address.</p>
<pre>mirror [1 - 4 name-str]</pre>	<p>Assigns the inbound and/or outbound traffic filtered by the specified MAC address to a previously configured mirroring session. The session is identified by a number or (if configured) a name. Depending on how many sessions are configured on the switch, you can use the same command to configure a MAC address as mirroring criteria in up to four sessions. To identify a session, you can enter either its name or number; for example: <code>mirror 1 2 3 traffsrc4</code></p> <p><code>1 - 4</code> : Specifies a mirroring session by number, for which the configured MAC address is used to select and mirror inbound and/or outbound traffic.</p>

Packets that are sent or received on an interface configured with a mirroring session and that contain the MAC address as source and/or destination address are mirrored to a previously configured destination device.

To remove a MAC address as selection criteria in a mirroring session, you must enter the complete Command syntax, for example, `no monitor mac 998877-665544 dest mirror 4`.

The `no` form of the command removes the MAC address as a mirroring criteria from an active session, but does not remove the session itself. This enables you to repurpose a session by removing an unwanted mirroring criteria and adding another in its place.

Configuring classifier-based mirroring

For more information and a list of general steps for the process beginning with this command, see the information about restrictions on classifier-based mirroring.

Context: Global configuration

Syntax

```
[no] class [ipv4 | ipv6 classname]
```

Defines the name of a traffic class and specifies whether a policy is to be applied to IPv4 or IPv6 packets, where *classname* is a text string (64 characters maximum.)

After you enter the `class` command, you enter the class configuration context to specify match criteria. A traffic class contains a series of `match` and `ignore` commands, which specify the criteria used to classify packets.

To configure a default traffic class, use the `default-class` command as described below. A default class manages the packets that do not match the match/ignore criteria in any other classes in a policy.

Context: Class configuration

Syntax

```
[no] seq-number  
[match | ignore ip-protocol source-address destination-address] [ip-dscp  
codepoint] [precedence precedence-value] [tos tos-value] [vlan vlan-id]
```

For detailed information about how to enter `match` and `ignore` commands to configure a traffic class, the *Advanced Traffic Management Guide*.

Context: Global configuration

Syntax

```
[no] policy mirror policy-name
```

Defines the name of a mirroring policy and enters the policy configuration context.

A traffic policy consists of one or more classes and one or more mirroring actions configured for each class of traffic. The configured actions are executed on packets that match a `match` statement in a class. No policy action is performed on packets that match an `ignore` statement.

Context: Policy configuration

Syntax

```
[no] seq-number  
class [ipv4 | ipv6 classname] action mirror session
```

Defines the mirroring action to be applied on a pre-configured IPv4 or IPv6 traffic class when a packet matches the `match` criteria in the traffic class. You can enter multiple `class action mirror` statements in a policy.

<code>[seq-number]</code>	The (optional) <code>seq-number</code> parameter sequentially orders the mirroring actions that you enter in a policy configuration. Actions are executed on matching packets in numerical order. Default: Mirroring action statements are numbered in increments of 10, starting at 10.
<code>class [ipv4 ipv6 classname]</code>	Defines the preconfigured traffic class on which the mirroring actions in the policy are executed and specifies whether the mirroring policy is applied to IPv4 or IPv6 traffic in the class. The <i>classname</i> is a text string (64 characters maximum.)
<code>action mirror session</code>	Configures mirroring for the destination and session specified by the <code>session</code> parameter.

Context: Policy configuration

Syntax

```
[no] default-class action mirror session [action mirror session ...]
```

Configures a default class that allows packets that are not matched nor ignored by any of the class configurations in a mirroring policy to be mirrored to the destination configured for the specified session.

Applying a mirroring policy on a port or VLAN interface

Enter one of the following `service-policy` commands from the global configuration context.

Context: Global configuration

Syntax

```
interface <PORT-LIST> service-policy policy-name in
```

Configures the specified ports with a mirroring policy that is applied to inbound traffic on each interface.

Separate individual port numbers in a series with a comma, for example, `a1,b4,d3`. Enter a range of ports by using a dash, for example, `a1-a5`.

The mirroring policy name you enter must be the same as the policy name you configured with the `policy mirror` command.

Syntax

```
vlan vlan-id service-policy policy-name in
```

Configures a mirroring policy on the specified VLAN that is applied to inbound traffic on the VLAN interface.

Valid VLAN ID numbers range from 1 to 4094.

The mirroring policy name you enter must be the same as the policy name you configured with the `policy mirror` command in the syntax **policy mirror**.

Viewing a classifier-based mirroring configuration

To display information about a classifier-based mirroring configuration or statistics on one or more mirroring policies, enter one of the following commands:

Syntax

```
show class [ipv4 class-name | ipv6 class-name | config]
```

Syntax

```
show policy [policy-name | config]
```

Syntax

```
show policy resources
```

Syntax

```
show statistics policy [policy-name] [interface port-num | vlan vid in]
```

Viewing all mirroring sessions configured on the switch

Syntax

`show monitor`

If a monitored source for a remote session is configured on the switch, the following information is displayed. Otherwise, the output displays: Mirroring is currently disabled.

Sessions	Lists the four configurable sessions on the switch.
Status	Displays the current status of each session: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• active: The session is configured.• inactive: Only the destination has been configured; the mirroring source is not configured.• not defined: Mirroring is not configured for this session.
Type	Indicates whether the mirroring session is local (<code>port</code>), remote (<code>IPv4</code>), or MAC-based (<code>mac</code>) for local or remote sessions.
Sources	Indicates how many monitored source interfaces are configured for each mirroring session.
Policy	Indicates whether the source is using a classifier-based mirroring policy to select inbound IPv4 or IPv6 traffic for mirroring.

If a remote mirroring endpoint is configured on the switch, the following information is displayed. Otherwise, the output displays: There are no Remote Mirroring endpoints currently assigned.

Type	Indicates whether the mirroring session is local (<code>port</code>), remote (<code>IPv4</code>), or MAC-based (<code>mac</code>) for local or remote sessions.
UDP Source Addr	The IP address configured for the source VLAN or subnet on which the monitored source interface exists. In the configuration of a remote session, the same UDP source address must be configured on the source and destination switches.
UDP port	The unique UDP port number that identifies a remote session. In the configuration of a remote session, the same UDP port number must be configured on the source and destination switches.

Table Continued

UDP Dest Addr	The IP address configured for the destination VLAN or subnet on which the remote exit port exists. In the configuration of a remote session, the same UDP destination address must be configured on the source and destination switches.
Dest Port	Identifies the exit port for a remote session on a remote destination switch.

Figure 120: *Displaying the currently configured mirroring sessions on the switch*

Switch# show monitor				
Network Monitoring				
Sessions	Status	Type	Sources	Policy
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
1	active	port	1	yes
Remote Mirroring - Remote Endpoints				
Type	UDP Source Addr	UDP port	UDP Dest Addr	
----	-----	-----	-----	
IPv4	10.10.30.1	7950	10.10.20.1	

Local and Remote Mirroring Sources:

- **Session 1** is performing local mirroring using a classifier-based policy as traffic-selection criteria.

Remote Mirroring Destination:

The switch is configured as a remote mirroring destination (endpoint) for a source at 10.10.30.1, using port B10 as the exit port.

Viewing the remote endpoints configured on the switch

Syntax

```
show monitor endpoint
```

Displays the remote mirroring endpoints configured on the switch. Information on local sessions configured on the switch is not displayed. (To view the configuration of a local session, use the

```
show monitor [1-4 | name name-str ]]
```

command, as described on page 74 and page 77.)

Type	Indicates whether the session is a <code>port</code> (local) or <code>IPv4</code> (remote) mirroring session.
show monitor endpoint	The IP address configured for the source VLAN or subnet on which the monitored source interface exists. In the configuration of a remote session, the same UDP source address must be configured on the source and destination switches.
UDP port	The unique UDP port number that identifies a remote session. In the configuration of a remote session, the same UDP port number must be configured on the source and destination switches.
UDP Dest Addr	The IP address configured for the destination VLAN or subnet on which the remote exit port exists. In the configuration of a remote session, the same UDP destination address must be configured on the source and destination switches.
Dest Port	ifies the exit port for a remote session on a remote destination switch.

Example

In **Figure 121: Displaying the configuration of remote mirroring endpoints on the switch** on page 513, the `show monitor endpoint` output shows that the switch is configured as the remote endpoint (destination) for two remote sessions from the same monitored source interface.

Figure 121: *Displaying the configuration of remote mirroring endpoints on the switch*

Switch(config)# show monitor endpoint					
Remote Mirroring - Remote Endpoints					
Type	UDP Source Addr	UDP port	UDP Dest Addr	Dest Port	
IPv4	10.10.10.1	8001	10.10.30.2	4	
IPv4	10.10.10.1	8003	10.10.30.2	5	

These two sessions monitor traffic from the same source switch, but use different UDP port numbers.

Viewing the mirroring configuration for a specific session

Syntax

```
show monitor [1 - 4 | name name-str]
```

Displays detailed configuration information for a specified local or remote mirroring session on a source switch.

Session	Displays the number of the specified session.
Session Name	Displays the name of the session, if configured.
Policy	Indicates whether the source is using a classifier-based mirroring policy to select inbound IPv4 or IPv6 traffic for mirroring.
Mirroring Destination	For a local mirroring session, displays the port configured as the exit port on the source switch. For a remote mirroring session, displays <code>IPv4</code> , which indicates mirroring to a remote (endpoint) switch.
UDP Source Addr	The IP address configured for the source VLAN or subnet on which the monitored source interface exists. In the configuration of a remote session, the same UDP source address must be configured on the source and destination switches.
UDP port	The unique UDP port number that identifies a remote session. In the configuration of a remote session, the same UDP port number must be configured on the source and destination switches.
UDP Dest Addr	The IP address configured for the destination VLAN or subnet on which the remote exit port exists. In the configuration of a remote session, the same UDP destination address must be configured on the source and destination switches.

Table Continued

Status	<p>For a remote session, displays current session activity:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • active: The session is configured and is mirroring traffic. A remote path has been discovered to the destination. • inactive: The session is configured, but is not currently mirroring traffic. A remote path has not been discovered to the destination. • not defined: Mirroring is not configured for this session.
Monitoring Sources	For the specified local or remote session, displays the source (port, trunk, or VLAN) interface and the MAC address (if configured) used to select mirrored traffic.
Direction	For the selected interface, indicates whether mirrored traffic is entering the switch (<i>in</i>), leaving the switch (<i>out</i>), or <i>both</i> .

Viewing a remote mirroring session

After you configure session 2 for remote mirroring (**Figure 122: Configuring a remote mirroring session and monitored source** on page 514), you can enter the `show monitor 2` command to verify the configuration (**Figure 123: Displaying the Configuration of a Remote Mirroring Session** on page 514.)

Figure 122: Configuring a remote mirroring session and monitored source

```
Switch(config)# mirror 2 name test-10 remote ip 10.10.10.1 8010 10.10.30.2
Caution: Please configure destination switch first.
Do you want to continue [y/n]? y
HP Switch(config)# interface bl monitor all both mirror 2
```

Figure 123: Displaying the Configuration of a Remote Mirroring Session

```
Switch(config)# show monitor 2
Network Monitoring

Session: 2      Session Name: test-10
Policy: no policy relationship exists

Mirror Destination:  IPv4
  UDP Source Addr  UDP port  UDP Dest Addr  Status
-----
  10.10.10.1      8010      10.10.30.2     active

Monitoring Sources  Direction
-----
Port: B1            Both
```

If no monitored (source) interface is configured for a mirroring session, no information is displayed in the Monitoring Sources and Direction columns.

Viewing a MAC-based mirroring session

After you configure a MAC-based mirroring session ([Figure 124: Configuring a MAC-based mirroring session](#) on page 515), you can enter the `show monitor 3` command to verify the configuration ([Figure 125: Displaying a MAC-based mirroring session](#) on page 515.)

Figure 124: *Configuring a MAC-based mirroring session*

```
Switch(config)# mirror 3 port a1
Switch# monitor mac 112233-445566 src mirror 3
```

Figure 125: *Displaying a MAC-based mirroring session*

```
Switch(config)# show monitor 3
Network Monitoring

Session: 3      Session Name:
Policy: no policy relationship exists

Mirror Destination:  A1      (Port)

Monitoring Sources  Direction
-----
MAC:  112233-445566 Source
```

← The MAC address used to select packets in a local mirroring session is displayed in these columns.

Viewing a local mirroring session

When used to display the configuration of a local session, the `show monitor` command displays a subset of the information displayed for a remote mirroring session.

Example

Figure 126: Displaying the configuration of a local mirroring session on page 515 displays a local mirroring configuration for a session configured as follows:

- Session number: 1
- Session name: Detail
- Classifier-based mirroring policy, "MirrorAdminTraffic", is used to select inbound traffic on port B1.
- Mirrored traffic is sent to exit port B3.

Figure 126: *Displaying the configuration of a local mirroring session*

```
Switch(config)# show monitor 1
Network Monitoring

Session: 1      Session Name: Detail
Policy: MirrorAdminTraffic

Mirror Destination:  B3      (Port)

Monitoring Sources  Direction
-----
Port: B1           In
```

Viewing information on a classifier-based mirroring session

In the following example, a classifier-based mirroring policy (`mirrorAdminTraffic`) mirrors selected inbound IPv4 packets on VLAN 5 to the destination device configured for mirroring session 3.

Figure 127: *Configuring a classifier-based mirroring policy in a local mirroring session*

```
Switch(config)# mirror 3 port cl
Caution: Please configure destination switch first.
Do you want to continue [y/n]? y
HP Switch(config)# class ipv4 AdminTraffic
HP Switch(config-class)# match ip 15.29.61.1 0.63.255.255 0.0.0.0
255.255.255.255
HP Switch(config-class)# match ip 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255 15.29.61.1
0.63.255.255
HP Switch(config-class)# exit
HP Switch(config)# policy mirror MirrorAdminTraffic
HP Switch(config-policy)# class ipv4 AdminTraffic action mirror 3
HP Switch(config-policy)# exit
HP Switch(config)# vlan 5 service-policy MirrorAdminTraffic in
```

Displaying a classifier-based policy in a local mirroring session

```
switch(config)# show monitor 3
```

Network Monitoring

```
Session: 3    Session Name:
Policy: MirrorAdminTraffic
```

```
Mirror Destination:  C1    (Port)
```

```
Monitoring Sources  Direction
-----
VLAN: 5             Source
```

Viewing information about a classifier-based mirroring configuration

Syntax

```
show class ipv4 classname show class ipv6 classname show class config
```

<code>ipv4 <i>classname</i></code>	Lists the statements that make up the IPv4 class identified by <i>classname</i> .
<code>ipv6 <i>classname</i></code>	Lists the statements that make up the IPv6 class identified by <i>classname</i> .
<code>config</code>	Displays all classes, both IPv4 and IPv6, and lists the statements that make up each class.

Additional variants of the `show class ...` command provide information on classes that are members of policies that have been applied to ports or VLANs.

Figure 128: *show class output for a mirroring policy*

```
Switch(config)# show class ipv4 AdminTraffic
Statements for Class ipv4 "AdminTraffic"
10 match ip 15.29.16.1 0.63.255.255 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255
20 match ip 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255 15.29.16.1 0.63.255.255
```

Viewing information about a classifier-based mirroring configuration

Syntax

`show policy policy-name show policy config`

policy-name	Lists the statements that make up the specified policy.
config	Displays the names of all policies defined for the switch and lists the statements that make up each policy.

Additional variants of the `show policy` command provide information on policies that have been applied to ports or VLANs.

Figure 129: *show policy output for a mirroring policy*

```
Switch(config)# show policy MirrorAdminTraffic
Statements for Policy "MirrorAdminTraffic"
10 class ipv4 "AdminTraffic" action mirror 3
```

Viewing information about statistics on one or more mirroring policies

Syntax

`[show | clear] statistics policy policy-name port port-num`

`[show | clear] statistics policy policy-name vlan vid in`

show	Displays the statistics for a specified policy applied to a specified port or VLAN.
clear	Clears statistics for the specified policy and port or VLAN.
policy-name	The name of the policy.
port-num	The number of the port on which the policy is applied (single port only, not a range.)

Table Continued

vid	The number or name of the vlan on which the policy is applied. VLAN ID numbers range from 1 to 4094.
in	Indicates that statistics are shown for inbound traffic only.

Figure 130: `show statistics policy output for a mirroring policy` on page 518 shows the number of packets (in parentheses) that have been mirrored for each match/ignore statement in the mirroring policy.

Figure 130: *show statistics policy output for a mirroring policy*

```
Switch# show statistics policy MirrorAdminTraffic vlan 30 in
HitCounts for Policy MirrorAdminTraffic
10 class ipv4 "AdminTraffic" action mirror 3
(5244) 10 match ip 15.29.16.1 0.63.255.255 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255
(9466) 20 match ip 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255 15.29.16.1 0.63.255.255
```

Viewing resource usage for mirroring policies

Syntax

```
show policy resources
```

Displays the number of hardware resources (rules, meters, and application port ranges) used by classifier-based mirroring policies (local and remote) that are currently applied to interfaces on the switch, as well as QoS policies and other software features.

**NOTE:**

The information displayed is the same as the output of the `show qos resources` and `show access-list resources` commands.

Figure 131: *Displaying the hardware resources used by currently configured mirroring policies*

Switch# show policy resources

Includes the hardware resources used by classifier-based local and remote mirroring policies that are currently applied to interfaces on the switch.

Resource usage in Policy Enforcement Engine								
Ports	Rules Available	Rules Used	ACL	QoS	IDM	VT	Mirror	Other
1-24	3014	15	11	0	1	1	0	3
25-48	3005	15	10	10	1	1	0	3
A	3017	15	8	0	1	1	0	3

Meters usage in Policy Enforcement Engine								
Ports	Meters Available	Meters Used	ACL	QoS	IDM	VT	Mirror	Other
1-24	250	5	0	0	0	0	0	0
25-48	251	4	0	0	0	0	0	0
A	253	2	0	0	0	0	0	0

Application Port Ranges usage in Policy Enforcement Engine								
Ports	Application Port Ranges Available	Application Port Ranges Used	ACL	QoS	IDM	VT	Mirror	Other
1-24	3014	2	0	0	0	0	0	0
25-48	3005	2	0	0	0	0	0	0
A	3017	2	0	0	0	0	0	0

0 of 8 Policy Engine management resources used.

Key:

ACL = Access Control Lists

QoS = Device & Application Port Priority, QoS Policies, ICMP rate limits

IDM = Identity Driven Management

VT = Virus Throttling blocks

Mirror = Mirror Policies, Remote Intelligent Mirror endpoints

Other = Management VLAN, DHCP Snooping, ARP Protection, Jumbo IP-MTU.

Resource usage includes resources actually in use, or reserved for future use by the listed feature. Internal dedicated-purpose resources, such as port bandwidth limits or VLAN QoS priority, are not included.

Viewing the mirroring configurations in the running configuration file

Use the `show run` command to view the current mirroring configurations on the switch. In the `show run` command output, information about mirroring sources in configured sessions begins with the `mirror` keyword; monitored source interfaces are listed per-interface.

Example

Figure 132: Displaying mirroring sources and sessions in the running configurations

```
Switch(config)# show run
Running configuration:
; J8697A Configuration Editor; Created on release #K.12.XX
max-vlans 300
ip access-list extended "100"
  10 permit icmp 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255 0
  exit
no ip address
exit
. . .
mirror 1 port B3
mirror 2 name "test-10" remote ip 10.10.10.1 8010 10.10.30.2
. . .
interface B1
  monitor ip access-group "100" In mirror 1
  monitor all Both mirror 2
  exit
. . .
```

Mirroring sessions with exit ports configured on the switch: B3 is an exit port for a local session; session 2 has a remote destination and exit port.

Selection criteria used to monitor traffic on port B1 for mirroring sessions 1 (ACL-based) and 2 (direction-based)

Information about remote endpoints configured for remote sessions on the switch begin with the `mirror` endpoint keywords. In the following example, two remote sessions use the same exit port:

Figure 133: Displaying remote mirroring endpoints in the running configuration

```
Switch(config)# show run
Running configuration:
; J8693A Configuration Editor; Created on release #K.12.XX
module 3 type J8694A
. . .

mirror endpoint ip 10.10.20.1 8010 10.10.30.2 port 4
mirror endpoint ip 10.10.51.10 7955 10.10.30.2 port 4
. . .
```

Remote endpoints configured on the switch, including source IP address, UDP port number, destination IP address, and remote exit port. Each remote session is identified by a unique UDP port number.

Compatibility mode

Table 25: Modules compatibility mode (enabled versus disabled)

Modules	Compatibility mode enabled	Compatibility mode disabled
v2 zl modules only	Can insert zl module and the module will come up. Any v2 zl modules are limited to the zl configuration capacities.	v2 zl modules are at full capacity.ZL modules are not allowed to power up.
Mixed v2 zl and zl modules	Can insert zl module and the module will come up. Any v2 zl modules are limited to the zl configuration capacities.If compatibility mode is disabled, the zl modules go down.	ZL modules are not allowed to power up.

Table Continued

Modules	Compatibility mode enabled	Compatibility mode disabled
ZL modules only	Same as exists already.If a v2 zl module is inserted, it operates in the same mode as the zl module, but with performance increases.	The Management Module is the only module that powers up.
	In Compatibility Mode, no v2 zl features are allowed, whether the modules are all v2 zl or not.	If Compatibility Mode is disabled and then enabled, the startup config is erased and the chassis reboots.

Port and trunk group statistics and flow control status

The features described in this section enable you to determine the traffic patterns for each port since the last reboot or reset of the switch. You can display:

- A general report of traffic on all LAN ports and trunk groups in the switch, along with the per-port flow control status (On or Off.)
- A detailed summary of traffic on a selected port or trunk group.

You can also reset the counters for a specific port.

The menu interface provides a dynamic display of counters summarizing the traffic on each port. The CLI lets you see a static "snapshot" of port or trunk group statistics at a particular moment.

As mentioned above, rebooting or resetting the switch resets the counters to zero. You can also reset the counters to zero for the current session. This is useful for troubleshooting.



NOTE: The Reset action resets the counter display to zero for the current session, but does not affect the cumulative values in the actual hardware counters. (In compliance with the SNMP standard, the values in the hardware counters are not reset to zero unless you reboot the switch.) Exiting from the console session and starting a new session restores the counter displays to the accumulated values in the hardware counters.

Traffic mirroring overview

Starting in software release K.12.xx, traffic mirroring (Intelligent Mirroring) allows you to mirror (send a copy of) network traffic received or transmitted on a switch interface to a local or remote destination, such as a traffic analyzer or IDS.)

Traffic mirroring provides the following benefits:

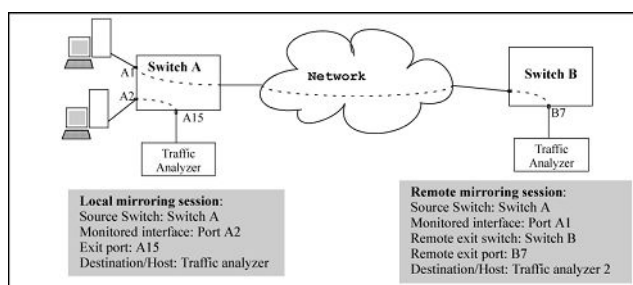
- Allows you to monitor the traffic flow on specific source interfaces.
- Helps in analyzing and debugging problems in network operation resulting from a misbehaving network or an individual client. The mirroring of selected traffic to an external device makes it easier to diagnose a network problem from a centralized location in a topology spread across a campus.
- Supports remote mirroring to simultaneously mirror switch traffic on one or more interfaces to multiple remote destinations. (In remote mirroring, you must first configure the remote mirroring endpoint—remote switch and exit port—before you specify a mirroring source for a session.)

Mirroring overview

Figure 134: Local and remote sessions showing mirroring terms on page 522 shows an example of the terms used to describe the configuration of a sample local and remote mirroring session:

- In the local session, inbound traffic entering Switch A is monitored on port A2 and mirrored to a destination (host), traffic analyzer 1, through exit port A15 on the switch. A local mirroring session means that the monitored interface (A2) and exit port (A15) are on the same switch.
- In the remote session, inbound traffic entering Switch A is monitored on port A1. A mirrored copy of monitored traffic is routed through the network to a remote mirroring endpoint: exit port B7 on Switch B. A destination device, traffic analyzer 2, is connected to the remote exit port. A remote mirroring session means that:
 - The monitored interface (A1) and exit port (B7) are on different switches.
 - Mirrored traffic can be bridged or routed from a source switch to a remote switch.

Figure 134: Local and remote sessions showing mirroring terms



Mirroring destinations

Traffic mirroring supports destination devices that are connected to the local switch or to a remote switch:

Traffic can be copied to a destination (host) device connected to the same switch as the mirroring source in a local mirroring session. You can configure up to four exit ports to which destination devices are connected.

Mirroring sources and sessions

Traffic mirroring supports the configuration of port in up to **four** mirroring sessions on a switch. Each session can have one or more sources (ports and/or static trunks) that monitor traffic entering and/or leaving the switch.



NOTE: Using the CLI, you can make full use of the switch's local and remote mirroring capabilities.

Mirroring sessions

A mirroring session consists of a mirroring source and destination (endpoint.) Although a mirroring source can be one of several interfaces, as mentioned above, for any session, the destination must be a single (exit) port. The exit port cannot be a trunk.

You can map multiple mirroring sessions to the same exit port, which provides flexibility in distributing hosts, such as traffic analyzers or an IDS. In a remote mirroring endpoint, the IP address of the exit port and the remote destination switch.

Mirroring sessions can have the same or a different destination. You can configure an exit port on the local (source) switch and/or on a remote switch as the destination in a mirroring session. When configuring a mirroring destination, consider the following options:

You can segregate traffic by type, direction, or source.

Mirroring session limits

A switch running software release K.12.xx or greater supports the following:

A maximum of one mirroring (local and remote) sessions.

Selecting mirrored traffic

You can use any of the following options to select the traffic to be mirrored on a port, trunk, mesh, or VLAN interface in a local or remote session:

- All trafficMonitors all traffic entering or leaving the switch on one or more interfaces (inbound and outbound.)
- Direction-based traffic selectionMonitors traffic that is either entering or leaving the switch (inbound or outbound.) Monitoring traffic in only one direction improves operation by reducing the amount of traffic sent to a mirroring destination.
- MAC-based traffic selectionMonitors only traffic with a matching source and/or destination MAC address in packet headers entering and/or leaving the switch on one or more interfaces (inbound and/or outbound.)
- Classifier-based service policyProvides a finer granularity of match criteria to zoom in on a subset of a monitored port or VLAN traffic (IPv4 or IPv6) and select it for local or remote mirroring (inbound only.)

Deprecation of ACL-based traffic selection

In software release K.14.01 or greater, the use of ACLs for selecting traffic in a mirroring session has been deprecated and is replaced by the use of advanced classifier-based service policies.

As with ACL criteria, classifier-based match/ignore criteria allow you to limit a mirroring session to selected inbound packets on a given port or VLAN interface (instead of mirroring all inbound traffic on the interface.)

The following commands have been deprecated:

- ```
interface port/trunk/mesh monitor ip access-group acl-name in mirror [1 - 4 | name-str]
```
- ```
vlan vid-# monitor ip access-group acl-name in mirror [1 - 4 | name-str]
```

After you install and boot release K.14.01 or greater, ACL-based local and remote mirroring sessions configured on a port or VLAN interface are automatically converted to classifier-based mirroring policies.

If you are running software release K.13.XX or earlier, ACL permit/deny criteria are supported to select IP traffic entering a switch to mirror in a local or remote session, using specified source and/or destination criteria.

Mirrored traffic destinations

Local destinations

A local mirroring traffic destination is a port on the same switch as the source of the traffic being mirrored.

Remote destinations

A remote mirroring traffic destination is an switch configured to operate as the exit switch for mirrored traffic sessions originating on other switches.



CAUTION: After you configure a mirroring session with traffic-selection criteria and a destination, the switch immediately starts to mirror traffic to each destination device connected to an exit port. In a remote mirroring session that uses IPv4 encapsulation, if the intended exit switch is not already configured as the destination for the session, its performance may be adversely affected by the stream of mirrored traffic. For this reason, Switch strongly recommends that you configure the exit switch for a remote mirroring session before configuring the source switch for the same session.

Monitored traffic sources

You can configure mirroring for traffic entering or leaving the switch on:

Ports and static trunks

Provides the flexibility for mirroring on individual ports, groups of ports, static port trunks, or any combination of these..

Criteria for selecting mirrored traffic

On the monitored sources listed above, you can configure the following criteria to select the traffic you want to mirror:

- Direction of traffic movement (entering or leaving the switch, or both.)
- Type of IPv4 or IPv6 traffic entering the switch, as defined by a classifier-based service policy.
- Source and/or destination MAC addresses in packet headers.

Mirroring configuration

The table below shows the different types of mirroring that you can configure using the CLI, Menu, and SNMP interfaces.

Table 26: *Mirroring configuration options*

Monitoring interface and configuration level	Traffic selection criteria	Traffic direction		
		CLI config	Menu and web i/f config ¹	Snmp config
Port(s) Trunk(s) Mesh	All traffic	Not Applicable	Not Applicable	Not Applicable

¹ Configures only session 1, and only for local mirroring.

Configuration notes

Using the CLI, you can configure all mirroring options on a switch.

You can use the CLI can configure sessions 1 to 4 for local or remote mirroring in any combination, and override a Menu configuration of session 1.

You can also use SNMP configure sessions 1 to 4 for local or remote mirroring in any combination and override a Menu configuration of session 1, **except** that SNMP cannot be used to configure a classifier-based mirroring policy.

Remote mirroring endpoint and intermediate devices

The remote mirroring endpoint that is used in a remote mirroring session must be an switch that supports the mirroring functions described in this chapter. (A remote mirroring endpoint consists of the remote switch and exit port connected to a destination device.) Because remote mirroring on an switch uses IPv4 to encapsulate mirrored traffic sent to a remote endpoint switch, the intermediate switches and routers in a layer 2/3 domain can be from any vendor if they support IPv4.

The following restrictions apply to remote endpoint switches and intermediate devices in a network configured for traffic mirroring:

- The exit port for a mirroring destination must be an individual port and **not** a trunk, mesh, or VLAN interface.
- A switch mirrors traffic on static trunks, but not on dynamic LACP trunks.
- A switch mirrors traffic at line rate. When mirroring multiple interfaces in networks with high-traffic levels, it is possible to copy more traffic to a mirroring destination than the link supports. However, some mirrored traffic may not reach the destination. If you are mirroring a high-traffic volume, you can reduce the risk of oversubscribing a single exit port by:
 - Directing traffic from different session sources to multiple exit ports.
 - Configuring an exit port with a higher bandwidth than the monitored source port.

Migration to release K.12.xx

On a switch that is running a software release earlier than K.12.xx with one or more mirroring sessions configured, when you download and boot release K.12.xx, the existing mirroring configurations are managed as follows:

- A legacy mirroring configuration on a port or VLAN interface maps to session 1.
- Traffic-selection criteria for session 1 is set to `both`; both inbound and outbound traffic (traffic entering **and** leaving the switch) on the configured interface is selected for mirroring.
- In a legacy mirroring configuration, a local exit port is applied to session 1.

Booting from software versions earlier than K.12.xx

If it is necessary to boot the switch from a legacy (pre-K.12.xx) software version after using version K.12.xx or greater to configure mirroring, remove mirroring from the configuration before booting with the earlier software.

Maximum supported frame size

The IPv4 encapsulation of mirrored traffic adds a 54-byte header to each mirrored frame. If a resulting frame exceeds the MTU allowed in the path from the mirroring source to the mirroring destination, the frame is dropped, unless the optional `[truncation]` parameter is set in the `mirror` command.

Frame truncation

Mirroring does not truncate frames unless the `truncation` parameter in the `mirror` command is set. If that parameter is not set, oversized mirroring frames are dropped. Also, remote mirroring does not allow downstream devices in a mirroring path to fragment mirrored frames.

Migration to release K.14.01 or greater



NOTE:

If a switch is running software release K.12.xx, you must first upgrade to release K.13.xx before migrating the switch to release K.14.01 or greater.

When you download and boot software release K.14.01 or greater on a switch that is running release K.13.xx and has one or more mirroring sessions configured, an ACL-based mirroring configuration on a port or VLAN interface is mapped to a class and policy configuration based on the ACL.

The new mirroring policy is automatically configured on the same port or VLAN interface on which the mirroring ACL was assigned. The behavior of the new class and mirroring-policy configuration exactly matches the traffic-selection criteria and mirroring destination used in the ACL-based session.)

Figure 135: Mirroring configuration in show run output in release K.13.xx on page 526 and **Figure 136: Mirroring configuration in show run output in release K.14.01 or greater** on page 526 show how ACL-based selection criteria in a mirroring session are converted to a classifier-based policy and class configuration when you install release K.14.01 or greater on a switch.

Figure 135: Mirroring configuration in show run output in release K.13.xx

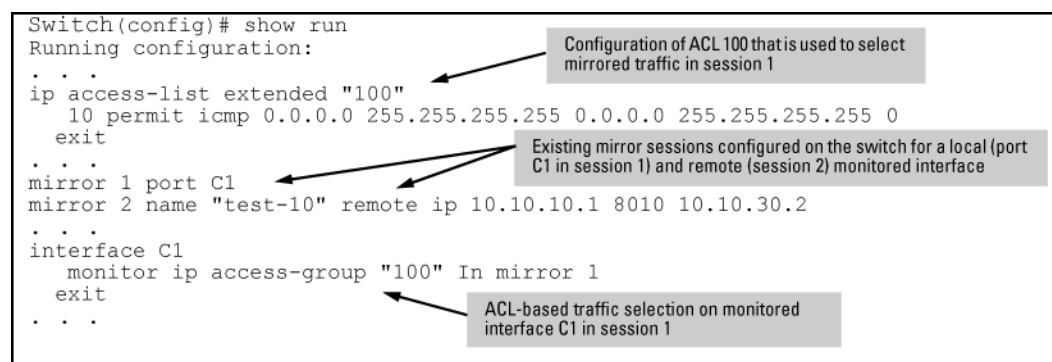
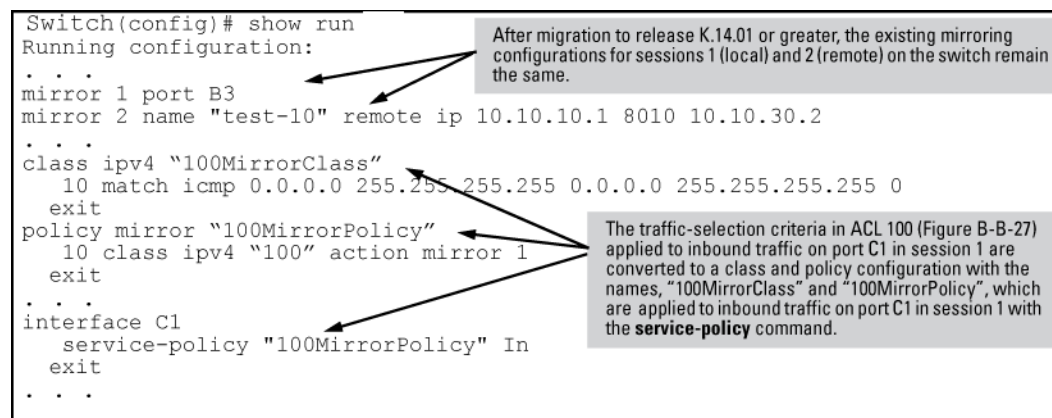


Figure 136: Mirroring configuration in show run output in release K.14.01 or greater



Using the Menu to configure local mirroring

Menu and WebAgent limits

You can use the Menu and WebAgent to quickly configure or reconfigure local mirroring and allow one of the following two mirroring source options:

- Any combination of source ports, trunks, and a mesh.
- One static, source VLAN interface.

Remote mirroring overview

To configure a remote mirroring session in which the mirroring source and destination are on different switches, follow these general steps:

After you complete **6.b** on page 527, the switch begins mirroring traffic to the remote destination (endpoint) configured for the session.

1. Determine the IP addressing, UDP port number, and destination (exit) port number for the remote session:
 - a. Source VLAN or subnet IP address on the source switch.
 - b. Destination VLAN or subnet IP address on the destination switch.
 - c. Random UDP port number for the session (7933-65535.)
 - d. Remote mirroring endpoint: Exit port and IP address of the remote destination switch (In a remote mirroring endpoint, the IP address of the exit port and remote switch can belong to different VLANs. Any loopback IP address can be used except the default loopback address 127.0.0.1.)
2. Requirement: For remote mirroring, the same IP addressing and UDP port number must be configured on both the source and destination switches.
3. On the remote destination (endpoint) switch, enter the `mirror endpoint` command with the information from **1** on page 527 to configure a mirroring session for a specific exit port.
4. Determine the session (1 to 4) and (optional) alphanumeric name to use on the **source** switch.
5. Determine the traffic to be filtered by any of the following selection methods and the appropriate configuration level (VLAN, port, mesh, trunk, global):
 - a. Direction: inbound, outbound, or both.
 - b. Classifier-based mirroring policy: inbound only for IPv4 or IPv6 traffic.
 - c. MAC source and/or destination address: inbound, outbound, or both.
6. On the **source** switch:
 - a. Enter the `mirror` command with the session number (1 to 4) and the IP addresses and UDP port number from **1** on page 527 to configure a mirroring session. If desired, enter the `[truncation]` parameter to allow oversized packets to be truncated rather than dropped.
 - b. Enter one of the following commands to configure one or more of the traffic-selection methods in **5** on page 527 for the configured session:

```
interface port/trunk/mesh [monitor | service-policy policy-name in] vlan vid
[monitor | service-policy policy-name in] monitor mac mac-addr
```

Quick reference to remote mirroring setup

The commands beginning with **Destination mirror on a remote switch** on page 501, configure mirroring for a remote session in which the mirroring source and destination are on different switches:

- The `mirror` command identifies the destination in a mirroring session.
- The `interface` and `vlan` commands identify the monitored interface, traffic direction, and traffic-selection criteria for a specified session.

**CAUTION:**

When configuring a remote mirroring session, always configure the destination switch first. Configuring the source switch first can result in a large volume of mirrored, IPv4-encapsulated traffic arriving at the destination without an exit path, which can slow switch performance.

High-level overview of the mirror configuration process

Determine the mirroring session and destination

For a local mirroring session

Determine the port number for the exit port (such as A5, B10, and so forth).

For a remote mirroring session

Determine the following information and then go to "Configure a mirroring destination on a remote switch" on page 498.

- The IP address of the VLAN or subnet on which the exit port exists on the destination switch.
- The port number of the remote exit port on the remote destination switch. (In a remote mirroring endpoint, the IP address of the exit port and the remote destination switch can belong to different VLANs.)
- The IP address of the VLAN or subnet on which the mirrored traffic enters or leaves the source switch.



CAUTION: Although the switch supports the use of UDP port numbers from 1 to 65535, UDP port numbers below 7933 are reserved for various IP applications. Using these port numbers for mirroring can result in an interruption of other IP functions, and in non-mirrored traffic being received on the destination (endpoint) switch and sent to the device connected to the remote exit port.

- The unique UDP port number to use for the session on the source switch. (The recommended port range is from 7933 to 65535.)

Configure a mirroring destination on a remote switch

This step is required only if you are configuring a remote mirroring session in which the exit port is on a different switch than the monitored (source) interface. If you are configuring local mirroring, go to **Configure a mirroring session on the source switch** on page 529.

For remote mirroring, you must configure the **destination** switch to recognize each mirroring session and forward mirrored traffic to an exit port before you configure the **source** switch. Configure the destination switch with the values you determined for remote mirroring in **High-level overview of the mirror configuration process** on page 528.

**NOTE:**

A remote destination switch can support up to 32 remote mirroring endpoints (exit ports connected to a destination device in a remote mirroring session.)

Configure a destination switch in a remote mirroring session

Enter the `mirror endpoint ip` command on the remote switch to configure the switch as a remote endpoint for a mirroring session with a different source switch.

Configure a mirroring session on the source switch

To configure local mirroring, only a session number and exit port number are required.

If the exit port for a mirroring destination is on a remote switch instead of the local (source) switch, you must enter the source IP address, destination IP address, and UDP port number for the remote mirroring session. You may also wish to enable frame truncation to allow oversized frames to be truncated rather than dropped.

Frames that exceed the maximum size (MTU) are either dropped or truncated, according to the setting of the `[truncation]` parameter in the `mirror` command. Frames that are near the MTU size may become oversized when the 54-byte remote mirroring tunnel header is added for transport between source switch and destination switch. (The addition of the header is a frequent cause for frames becoming oversized, but note that all oversized frames, whatever the cause of their excess size, are dropped or truncated.) If a frame is truncated, bytes are removed from the end of the frame. This may cause the checksum in the original frame header to fail. Some protocol analyzers may flag such a checksum mismatch as an alert.



NOTE:

Note that if you enable jumbo frames to allow large frames to be transmitted, you must enable jumbo frames on all switches in the path between source and destination switches.

Configure a source switch in a remote mirroring session

Enter the `mirror remote ip` command on the source switch to configure a remote destination switch for a mirroring session on the source switch. The source IP address, UDP port number, and destination IP address that you enter must be the same values that you entered with the `mirror endpoint ip` command.



CAUTION: After you configure a mirroring session with traffic-selection criteria and a destination, the switch immediately starts to mirror traffic to the destination device connected to each exit port. In a remote mirroring session that uses IPv4 encapsulation, if the remote (endpoint) switch is not already configured as the destination for the session, its performance may be adversely affected by the stream of mirrored traffic. For this reason, Hewlett Packard Enterprise strongly recommends that you configure the endpoint switch in a remote mirroring session, as described on the previous page in the section titled "For a remote mirroring session", before using the `mirror remote ip` command in this section to configure the mirroring source for the same session.

Configure the monitored traffic in a mirror session

This step configures one or more interfaces on a source switch with traffic-selection criteria to select the traffic to be mirrored in a local or remote session configured in section.

Traffic selection options

To configure traffic mirroring, specify the source interface, traffic direction, and criteria to be used to select the traffic to be mirrored by using the following options:

- Interface type

- Port, trunk, and/or mesh
- VLAN
- Switch (global configuration level)
- Traffic direction and selection criteria
 - All inbound and/or outbound traffic on a port or VLAN interface
 - Only inbound IP traffic selected with an ACL (deprecated in software release K.14.01 and greater)
 - Only inbound IPv4 or IPv6 traffic selected with a classifier-based mirroring policy
 - All inbound and/or outbound traffic selected by MAC source and/or destination address

The different ways to configure traffic-selection criteria on a monitored interface are described in the following sections.

Mirroring-source restrictions

In a mirroring session, you can configure any of the following sources of mirrored traffic:

- Multiple port and trunk, and/or mesh interfaces
- One VLAN

If you configure a VLAN as the source interface in a mirroring session and assign a second VLAN to the session, the second VLAN overwrites the first VLAN as the source of mirrored traffic.
- One classifier-based policy

If you configure a mirroring policy on a port or VLAN interface to mirror inbound traffic in a session, you cannot configure a port, trunk, mesh, ACL, or VLAN as an additional source of mirrored traffic in the session.
- Up to 320 MAC addresses (used to select traffic according to source, destination MAC address, or both) in all mirroring sessions configured on a switch

About selecting all inbound/outbound traffic to mirror

If you have already configured session 1 with a local or remote destination, you can enter the `vlan vid monitor` or `interface port monitor` command without additional parameters for traffic-selection criteria and session number to configure mirroring for all inbound and outbound traffic on the specified VLAN or port interfaces in session 1 with the preconfigured destination.

Untagged mirrored packets

Although a VLAN tag is added (by default) to the mirrored copy of untagged outbound packets to indicate the source VLAN of the packet, it is sometimes desirable to have mirrored packets look exactly like the original packet. The `no-tag-added` parameter gives you the option of not tagging mirrored copies of outbound packets,

as shown in **Figure 137: Mirroring commands with the no-tag-added option** on page 531 and **Figure 138: Displaying a mirror session configuration with the no-tag-added option** on page 531.

Figure 137: *Mirroring commands with the no-tag-added option*

```
Switch(config)#interface 3 monitor all in mirror 1 no-tag-added
Switch(config)#interface mesh monitor all both mirror 1 no-tag-added
```

Figure 138: *Displaying a mirror session configuration with the no-tag-added option*

```
Switch# show monitor 1

Network Monitoring

  Session: 1   Session Name:
  ACL: no ACL relationship exists

  Mirror Destination: 48
  Untagged traffic   : untagged
  Monitoring Sources Direction
  -----
  Port: 3           Both
```

← Indicates the no-tag-added option is configured.

About using SNMP to configure no-tag-added

The MIB object `hpicfBridgeDontTagWithVlan` is used to implement the `no-tag-added` option, as shown below:

```
hpicfBridgeDontTagWithVlan OBJECT-TYPE
    SYNTAX INTEGER
        {
            enabled(1),
            disabled(2)
        }
    MAX-ACCESS read-write
    STATUS current
    DESCRIPTION
        "This oid mentions whether VLAN tag is part of the
        mirror'ed copy of the packet. The value 'enabled'
        denotes that the VLAN tag shouldn't be part
        of the mirror'ed copy; 'disabled' does put
        the VLAN tag in the mirror'ed copy. Only one
        logical port is allowed.
        This object is persistent and when written
        the entity
        SHOULD save the change to non-volatile storage."
    DEFVAL { 2 }
    ::= { hpicfBridgeMirrorSessionEntry 2 }
```

Operating notes

The following conditions apply for the `no-tag-added` option:

- The specified port can be a physical port, trunk port, or mesh port.
- Only a single logical port (physical port or trunk) can be associated with a mirror session when the `no-tag-added` option is specified. No other combination of ACL mirroring, VLAN mirroring, or port mirroring can be associated with the mirror session. If more than one logical port is specified, the following error message is displayed:

Cannot monitor more than one logical port with no-tag-added option

- If a port changes its VLAN membership and/or untagged status within the VLAN, the "untagged port mirroring" associated with that port is updated when the configuration change is processed.
- Only four ports or trunks can be monitored at one time when all four mirror sessions are in use (one logical port per mirror session) without VLAN tags being added to a mirrored copy.
- The `no-tag-added` option can also be used when mirroring is configured with SNMP.
- A VLAN tag is still added to the copies of untagged packets obtained via VLAN-based mirroring.

About selecting inbound traffic using an ACL (deprecated)

Deprecation of ACL-based traffic selection

In release K.14.01 or greater, the use of ACLs to select inbound traffic in a mirroring session has been replaced with classifier-based mirroring policies.

The following commands have been deprecated:

- ```
interface port/trunk/mesh monitor ip access-group acl-name in mirror {1 - 4 | name-str}
```
- ```
vlan vid-# monitor ip access-group <ACL-NAME> in mirror {1 - 4 | <NAME-STR>}
```

After you install and boot release K.14.01 or greater, ACL-based local and remote mirroring sessions configured on a port or VLAN interface are automatically converted to classifier-based mirroring policies.

About selecting inbound/outbound traffic using a MAC address

Use the `monitor mac mirror` command at the global configuration level to apply a source and/or destination MAC address as the selection criteria used in a local or remote mirroring session.

While classifier-based mirroring allows you to mirror traffic using a policy to specify IP addresses as selection criteria, MAC-based mirroring allows you monitor switch traffic using a source and/or destination MAC address. You can apply MAC-based mirroring in one or more mirroring sessions on the switch to monitor:

- Inbound traffic
- Outbound traffic
- Both inbound and outbound traffic

MAC-based mirroring is useful in Switch Network Immunity security solutions that provide detection and response to malicious traffic at the network edge. After isolating a malicious MAC address, a security administrator can mirror all traffic sent to and received from the suspicious address for troubleshooting and traffic analysis.

The MAC address that you enter with the `monitor mac mirror` command is configured to select traffic for mirroring from all ports and learned VLANs on the switch. Therefore, a suspicious MAC address used in wireless applications can be continuously monitored as it re-appears in switch traffic on different ports or VLAN interfaces.

You can configure MAC-based mirroring from the CLI or an SNMP management station and use it to mirror:

- All inbound and outbound traffic from a group of hosts to one destination device.
- Inbound and/or outbound traffic from each host to a different destination device.
- Inbound and outbound traffic from all monitored hosts separately on two destination devices: mirroring all inbound traffic to one device and all outbound traffic to another device.

Restrictions

The following restrictions apply to MAC-based mirroring:

- Up to 320 different MAC addresses are supported for traffic selection in all mirroring sessions configured on the switch.
- A destination MAC address is not supported as mirroring criteria for routed traffic, because in routed packets, the destination MAC address is changed to the next-hop address when the packet is forwarded. Therefore, the destination MAC address that you want to mirror will not appear in routed packet headers.

This restriction also applies to the destination MAC address of a host that is directly connected to a routing switch. (Normally, a host is connected to an edge switch, which is directly connected to the router.)

To mirror routed traffic, we recommend that you use classifier-based policies to select IPv4 or IPv6 traffic for mirroring, as described in.

- On a switch, you can use a MAC address only once as a source MAC address and only once as a destination MAC address to filter mirrored traffic.

For example, after you enter the following commands:

```
monitor mac 111111-222222 src mirror 1
monitor mac 111111-222222 dest mirror 2
```

The following commands are not supported:

```
monitor mac 111111-222222 src mirror 3
monitor mac 111111-222222 dest mirror 4
```

In addition, if you enter the `monitor mac 111111-222222 both mirror 1` command, you cannot use the MAC address 111111-222222 in any other `monitor mac mirror` configuration commands on the switch.

- To re-use a MAC address that has already been configured as a source and/or destination address for traffic selection in a mirror session, you must first remove the configuration by entering the `no` form of the command and then re-enter the MAC address in a new `monitor mac mirror` command.

For example, if you have already configured MAC address 111111-222222 to filter inbound and outbound mirrored traffic, and you decide to use it to filter only inbound traffic in a mirror session, you could enter the following commands:

```
monitor mac 111111-222222 both mirror 1
no monitor mac 111111-222222 both mirror 1
monitor mac 111111-222222 src mirror 1
```

- A mirroring session in which you configure MAC-based mirroring is not supported on a port, trunk, mesh, or VLAN interface on which a mirroring session with a classifier-based mirroring policy is configured.

About selecting inbound traffic using advanced classifier-based mirroring

In software release K.14.01 or greater, in addition to the traffic selection options described in **Configure the monitored traffic in a mirror session** on page 529, traffic mirroring supports the use of advanced classifier-based functions that provide:

- A finer granularity for selecting the inbound IP traffic that you want to mirror on an individual port or VLAN interface (instead of mirroring all inbound traffic on the interface)
- Support for mirroring both IPv4 and IPv6 traffic
- The ability to re-use the same traffic classes in different software-feature configurations; for example, you can apply both a QoS rate-limiting and mirroring policy on the same class of traffic.

Deprecation of ACL-based traffic selection

In software release K.14.01 or greater, advanced classifier-based policies replace ACL-based traffic selection in mirroring configurations.

Like ACL-based traffic-selection criteria, classifier-based service policies apply only to inbound traffic flows and are configured on a per-port or per-VLAN basis. In a mirroring session, classifier-based service policies do not support:

- The mirroring of outbound traffic exiting the switch
- The use of meshed ports as monitored (source) interfaces

Classifier-based mirroring is **not** designed to work with other traffic-selection methods in a mirroring session applied to a port or VLAN interface:

- If a mirroring session is already configured with one or more traffic-selection criteria (MAC-based or all inbound and/or outbound traffic), the session does not support the addition of a classifier-based policy.
- If a mirroring session is configured to use a classifier-based mirroring policy, no other traffic-selection criteria (MAC-based or all inbound and/or outbound traffic) can be added to the session on the same or a different interface.

Classifier-based mirroring policies provide greater precision when analyzing and debugging a network traffic problem. Using multiple match criteria, you can finely select and define the classes of traffic that you want to mirror on a traffic analyzer or IDS device.

Classifier-based mirroring configuration

1. Evaluate the types of traffic in your network and identify the traffic types that you want to mirror.
2. Create an IPv4 or IPv6 traffic class using the `class` command to select the packets that you want to mirror in a session on a preconfigured local or remote destination device.

A traffic class consists of match criteria, which consist of match and ignore commands.

- `match` commands define the values that header fields must contain for a packet to belong to the class and be managed by policy actions.
- `ignore` commands define the values which, if contained in header fields, exclude a packet from the policy actions configured for the class.



NOTE: Be sure to enter match/ignore statements in the **precise order** in which you want their criteria to be used to check packets.

The following match criteria are supported in match/ignore statements for inbound IPv4/IPv6 traffic:

- a. IP source address (IPv4 and IPv6)
- b. IP destination address (IPv4 and IPv6)

- c. IP protocol (such as ICMP or SNMP)
 - d. Layer 3 IP precedence bits
 - e. Layer 3 DSCP codepoint
 - f. Layer 4 TCP/UDP application port (including TCP flags)
 - g. VLAN ID
3. Enter one or more match or ignore commands from the class configuration context to filter traffic and determine the packets on which policy actions will be performed.
 4. Create a mirroring policy to configure the session and destination device to which specified classes of inbound traffic are sent by entering the `policy mirror` command from the global configuration context.



NOTE: Be sure to enter each class and its associated mirroring actions in the **precise order** in which you want packets to be checked and processed.

5. To configure the mirroring actions that you want to execute on packets that match the criteria in a specified class, enter one or more class action mirror commands from the policy configuration context.

You can configure only one mirroring session (destination) for each class. However, you can configure the same mirroring session for different classes.

A packet that matches the match criteria in a class is mirrored to the exit (local or remote) port that has been previously configured for the session, where session is a value from 1 to 4 or a text string (if you configured the session with a name when you entered the `mirror` command.)

Prerequisite: The local or remote exit port for a session must be already configured before you enter the `mirror session` parameter in a class action statement:

- In a local mirroring session, the exit port is configured with the `mirror <SESSION-NUMBER> port` command.
- In a remote mirroring session, the remote exit port is configured with the `mirror endpoint ip` and `mirror <SESSION-NUMBER> remote ip` commands.

Restriction: In a policy, you can configure only one mirroring session per class. However, you can configure the same session for different classes.

Mirroring is not executed on packets that match ignore criteria in a class.

The execution of mirroring actions is performed in the order in which the classes are numerically listed in the policy.

The complete no form of the `class action mirror` command or the `no <SEQ-NUMBER>` command removes a class and mirroring action from the policy configuration.

6. To manage packets that do not match the match or ignore criteria in any class in the policy, and therefore have no mirroring actions performed on them, you can enter an optional default class. The default class is placed at the end of a policy configuration and specifies the mirroring actions to perform on packets that are neither matched nor ignored.
7. (Optional) To configure a default-class in a policy, enter the `default-class` command at the end of a policy configuration and specify one or more actions to be executed on packets that are not matched and not ignored.

Prerequisite: The local or remote exit port for a session must be already configured with a destination device before you enter the `mirror <SESSION>` parameter in a default-class action statement.

8. Apply the mirroring policy to inbound traffic on a port (`interface service-policy in` command) or VLAN (`vlan service-policy in` command) interface.



CAUTION: After you apply a mirroring policy for one or more preconfigured sessions on a port or VLAN interface, the switch immediately starts to use the traffic-selection criteria and exit port to mirror traffic to the destination device connected to each exit port.

In a remote mirroring session that uses IPv4 encapsulation, if the remote switch is not already configured as the destination for the session, its performance may be adversely affected by the stream of mirrored traffic.

For this reason, Switch strongly recommends that you first configure the exit switch in a remote mirroring session, as described in [Configure a mirroring destination on a remote switch](#) on page 528 and [Configure a mirroring session on the source switch](#) on page 529, before you apply a mirroring service policy on a port or VLAN interface.

Restrictions: The following restrictions apply to a mirroring service policy:

- Only one mirroring policy is supported on a port or VLAN interface.
- If you apply a mirroring policy to a port or VLAN interface on which a mirroring policy is already configured, the new policy replaces the existing one.
- A mirroring policy is supported only on inbound traffic.

Because only one mirroring policy is supported on a port or VLAN interface, ensure that the policy you want to apply contains all the required classes and actions for your configuration.

Classifier-based mirroring restrictions

The following restrictions apply to mirroring policies configured with the classifier-based model:

- A mirroring policy is supported only on **inbound** IPv4 or IPv6 traffic.
- A mirroring policy is not supported on a meshed port interface. (Classifier-based policies are supported only on a port, VLAN, or trunk interface.)
- Only one classifier-based mirroring policy is supported on a port or VLAN interface. You can, however, apply a classifier-based policy of a different type, such as QoS.
- You can enter multiple `class action mirror` statements in a policy.
 - You can configure only one mirroring session (destination) for each class.
 - You can configure the same mirroring session for different classes.

- If a mirroring session is configured with a classifier-based mirroring policy on a port or VLAN interface, no other traffic-selection criteria (MAC-based or all inbound and/or outbound traffic) can be added to the session.

Figure 139: *Mirroring configuration in which only a mirroring policy is supported*

```
Switch-B(config)# mirror endpoint 10.10.40.4 9200 10.10.50.5 port a1
...
Switch-A(config)# mirror 1 remote ip 10.10.40.4 9200 10.10.50.5
Caution: Please configure destination switch first.
Do you want to continue [y/n]? y
Switch-A(config)# class ipv4 Data2
Switch-A(config-class)# match ip 10.28.31.1 any
Switch-A(config-class)# match ip any host 10.28.31.0/24
Switch-A(config-class)# exit
Switch-A(config)# policy mirror SalesData
Switch-A(config-policy)# class ipv4 Data2 action mirror 1
Switch-A(config-policy)# exit
Switch-A(config)# vlan 10 service-policy SalesData in
Switch-A(config)# vlan 10 monitor all out mirror 1
A prior mirror policy relationship exists with mirror session 1. Please remove.
```

Classifier-based policy used to select mirrored traffic in session 1

The configuration of additional traffic-direction criteria to select mirrored traffic is not supported in session 1.

- If a mirroring session is already configured with one or more traffic-selection criteria (MAC-based or all inbound and/or outbound traffic), the session does not support the addition of a classifier-based policy.

Figure 140: *Mirroring configuration in which only traffic-selection criteria are supported*

```
Switch-B(config)# mirror endpoint 10.10.40.4 9200 10.10.50.5 port a1
...
Switch-A(config)# mirror 1 remote ip 10.10.40.4 9200 10.10.50.5
Caution: Please configure destination switch first.
Do you want to continue [y/n]? y
Switch-A(config)# vlan 10 monitor all out mirror 1
Switch-A(config)# class ipv4 Data2
Switch-A(config-class)# match ip 10.28.31.1 any
Switch-A(config-class)# match ip any host 10.28.31.0/24
Switch-A(config-class)# exit
Switch-A(config)# policy mirror SalesData
Switch-A(config-policy)# class ipv4 Data2 action mirror 1
Switch-A(config-policy)# exit
Switch-A(config)# vlan 10 service-policy SalesData in
Mirror source VLAN exists on mirror session 1. Cannot add this mirror source.
```

Configuration of traffic-direction criteria to select all outbound traffic on VLAN 10 in mirror session 1

The configuration of an additional classifier-based policy to select mirrored traffic on VLAN 10 is not supported in session 1.

About applying multiple mirroring sessions to an interface

You can apply a mirroring policy to an interface that is already configured with another traffic-selection method (MAC-based or all inbound and/or outbound traffic) for a different mirroring session.

The classifier-based policy provides a finer level of granularity that allows you to zoom in on a subset of port or VLAN traffic and select it for local or remote mirroring.

In the following example, traffic on Port b1 is used as the mirroring source for two different, local mirroring sessions:

- All inbound and outbound traffic on Ports b1, b2, and b3 is mirrored in session 4.
- Only selected voice traffic on Port b1 is mirrored in session 2.

Figure 141: Example of applying multiple sessions to the same interface

```
Switch(config)# mirror 4 port a2
Switch(config)# interface b1-b3 monitor all both mirror 4
Switch(config)# mirror 2 port b4
Switch(config)# class ipv4 voice
Switch(config-class)# match ip any any ip-dscp ef
Switch(config-class)# exit
Switch(config)# policy mirror IPphones
Switch(config-policy)# class ipv4 voice action mirror 2
Switch(config-policy)# exit
Switch(config)# interface b1 service-policy IPphones in
```

Mirroring configuration examples

Local mirroring using traffic-direction criteria

An administrator wants to mirror the inbound traffic from workstation "X" on port A5 and workstation "Y" on port B17 to a traffic analyzer connected to port C24 (see **Figure 142: Local mirroring topology** on page 538.) In this case, the administrator chooses "1" as the session number. (Any unused session number from 1 to 4 is valid.) Because the switch provides both the source and destination for the traffic to monitor, local mirroring can be used. In this case, the command sequence is:

- Configure the local mirroring session, including the exit port.
- Configure the monitored source interfaces for the session.

Figure 142: Local mirroring topology

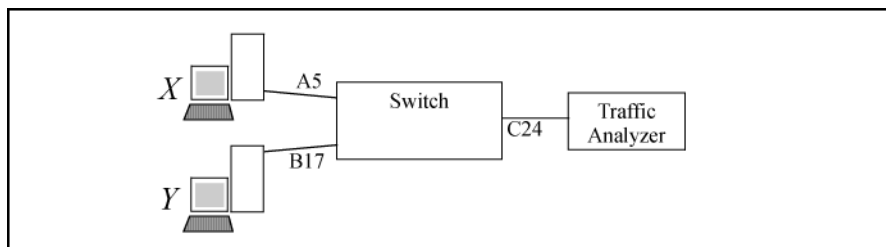


Figure 143: Configuring a local mirroring session for all inbound and outbound port traffic

```
Switch(config)# mirror 1 port c24
Caution: Please configure destination switch first.
Do you want to continue [y/n]? y
Switch(config)# interface a5,b17 monitor all in mirror
1
```

Configures port C24 as the mirroring destination (exit port) for session 1.

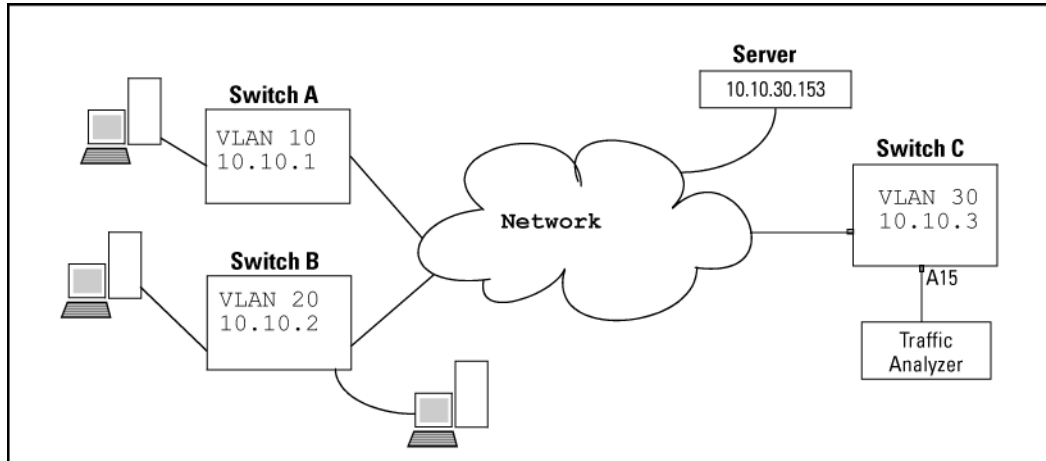
Reminder to configure mirroring destination before configuring source.

Mirrors all inbound and outbound traffic on ports A5 and B17 to the mirroring destination configured for session 1.

Remote mirroring using a classifier-based policy

In the network shown in **Figure 144: Sample topology in a remote mirroring session** on page 539, an administrator has connected a traffic analyzer to port A15 (in VLAN 30) on switch C to monitor the TCP traffic to the server at 10.10.30.153 from workstations connected to switches A and B. Remote mirroring sessions are configured on switches A and B, and a remote mirroring endpoint on switch C. TCP traffic is routed through the network to the server from VLANs 10 and 20 on VLAN 30.

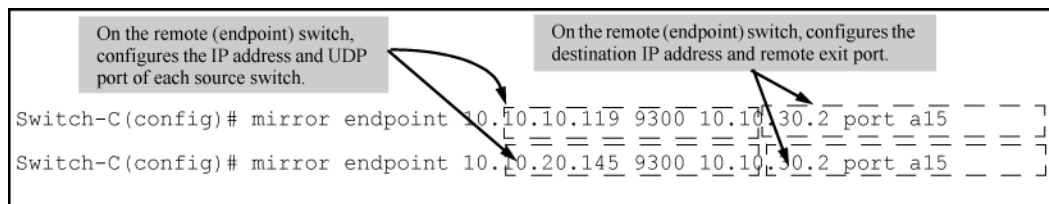
Figure 144: Sample topology in a remote mirroring session



To configure this remote mirroring session using a classifier-based policy to select inbound TCP traffic on two VLAN interfaces, take the following steps:

1. On remote switch C, configure a remote mirroring endpoint using port A15 as the exit port (as described in **Configure a mirroring destination on a remote switch** on page 528.)

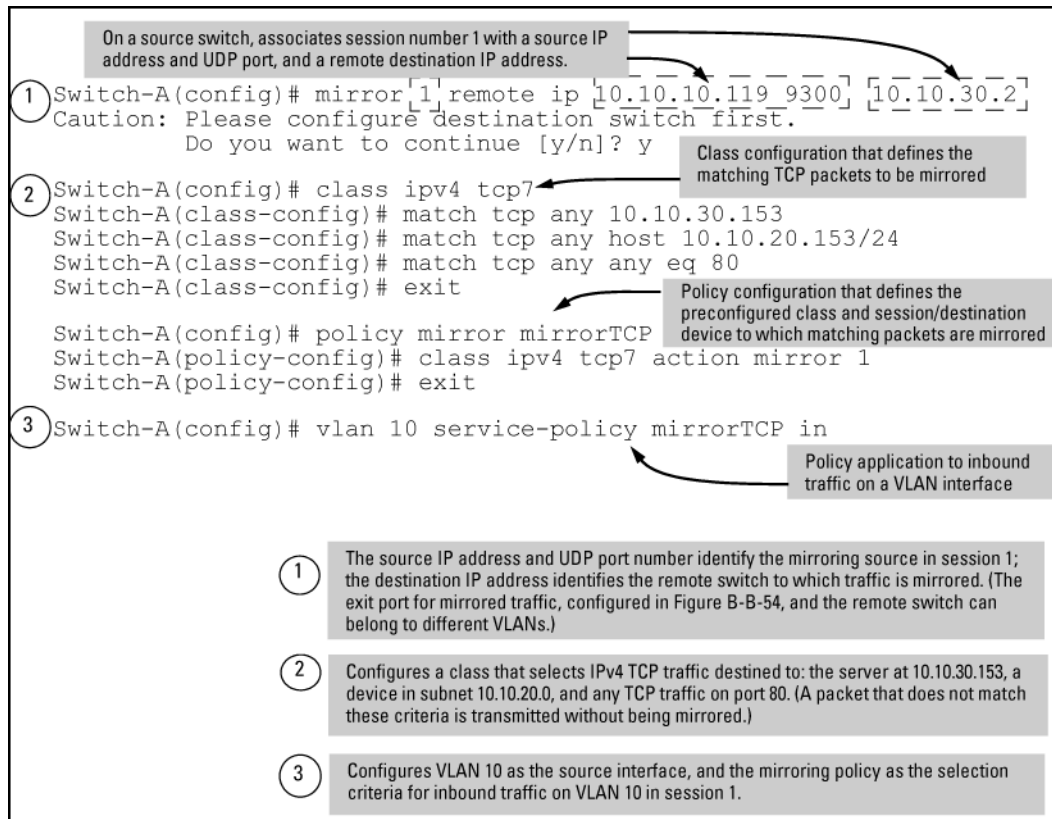
Figure 145: Configuring a remote mirroring endpoint: remote switch and exit port



2. On source switch A, configure an association between the remote mirroring endpoint on switch C and a mirroring session on switch A (as described in **Configure a mirroring session on the source switch** on page 529.)

3. On switch A, configure a classifier-based mirroring policy to select inbound TCP traffic destined to the server at 10.10.30.153, and apply the policy to the interfaces of VLAN 10 (as described in **About selecting inbound traffic using advanced classifier-based mirroring** on page 533.)

Figure 146: Configuring a classifier-based policy on source switch A



4. On source switch B, repeat steps 2 and 3:
 - a. Configure an association between the remote mirroring endpoint on switch C and a mirroring session on switch B.
 - b. Configure a classifier-based mirroring policy to select inbound TCP traffic destined to the server at 10.10.30.153, and apply the policy to a VLAN interface for VLAN 20.

Because the remote session has mirroring sources on different switches, you can use the same session number (1) for both sessions.

Figure 147: *Configuring a classifier-based policy on source switch B*

The configuration of remote-mirroring session 1 on Switch B is the same as on Switch A (figure B-55), except for the difference in source VLAN and source IP address. Note that on different switches, the UDP port number (9300) can be the same.

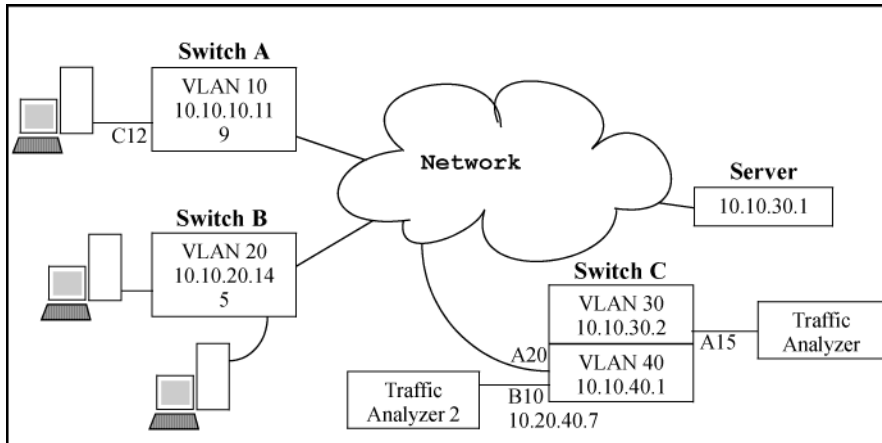
```
Switch-B(config)# mirror 1 remote ip 10.10.20.145 9300 10.10.30.2
Caution: Please configure destination switch first.
Do you want to continue [y/n]? y
Switch-B(config)# class ipv4 tcp7
Switch-B(class-config)# match tcp any 10.10.30.153
Switch-B(class-config)# match tcp any host 10.10.20.153/24
Switch-B(class-config)# match tcp any any eq 80
Switch-B(class-config)# exit
Switch-B(config)# policy mirror mirrorTCP
Switch-B(policy-config)# class ipv4 tcp7 mirror 1
Switch-B(policy-config)# exit
Switch-B(config)# vlan 20 service-policy mirrorTCP in
```

Remote mirroring using traffic-direction criteria

In the network shown in **Figure 148: Sample topology for remote mirroring from a port interface** on page 541, the administrator connects another traffic analyzer to port B10 (in VLAN 40) on switch C to monitor all traffic entering switch A on port C12. For this mirroring configuration, the administrator configures a mirroring destination (with a remote exit port of B10) on switch C, and a remote mirroring session on switch A.

If the mirroring configuration in the proceeding example is enabled, it is necessary to use a different session number (2) and UDP port number (9400.) (The IP address of the remote exit port [10.10.40.7] connected to traffic analyzer 2 [exit port B10] can belong to a different VLAN than the destination IP address of the VLAN used to reach remote switch C [10.20.40.1]).

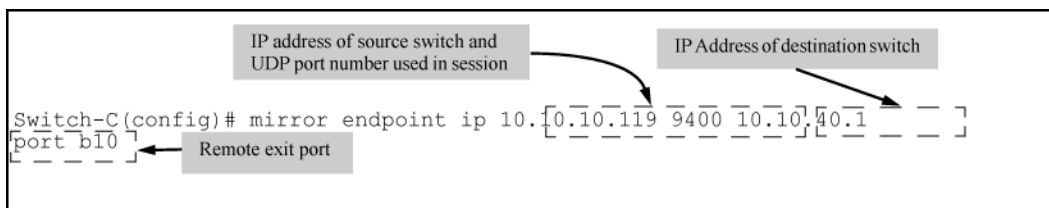
Figure 148: *Sample topology for remote mirroring from a port interface*



To configure this remote mirroring session using a directional-based traffic selection on a port interface, the operator must take the following steps:

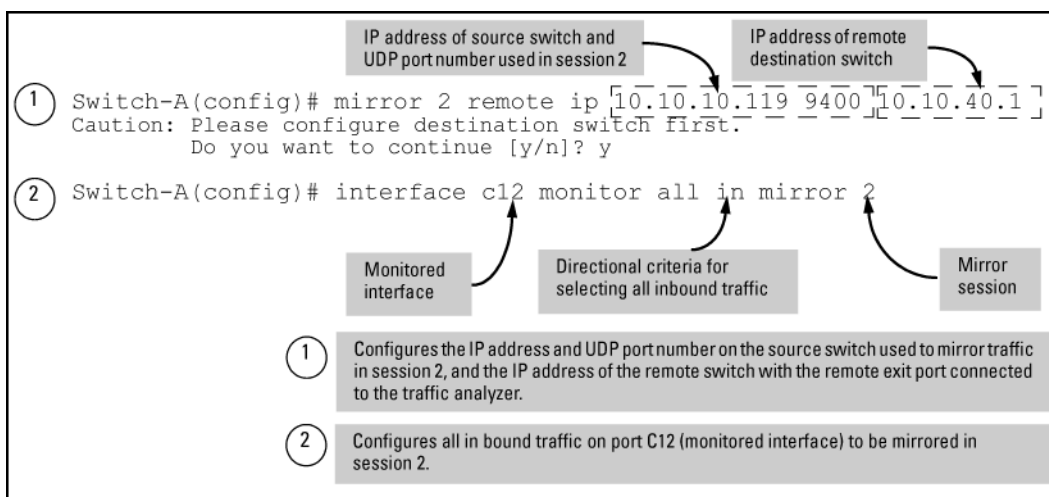
1. On remote switch C, configure the remote mirroring endpoint using port B10 as the exit port for a traffic analyzer (as described in [Configure a mirroring destination on a remote switch](#) on page 528):

Figure 149: Configuring a remote mirroring endpoint



2. On source switch A, configure session 2 to use UDP port 9400 to reach the remote mirroring endpoint on switch C (10.10.40.1): `mirror 2 remote ip 10.10.10.119 9400 10.10.40.1`
3. On source switch A, configure the local port C12 to select all inbound traffic to send to the preconfigured mirroring destination for session 2: `interface c12 monitor all in mirror 2`

Figure 150: Configuring a remote mirroring session for inbound port traffic



Maximum supported frame size

The IPv4 encapsulation of mirrored traffic adds a 54-byte header to each mirrored frame. If a resulting frame exceeds the MTU allowed in the network, the frame is dropped or truncated.



NOTE:

Oversized mirroring frames are dropped or truncated, according to the setting of the `[truncation]` parameter in the `mirror` command. Also, remote mirroring does not allow downstream devices in a mirroring path to fragment mirrored frames.

If jumbo frames are enabled on the mirroring source switch, the mirroring destination switch and all downstream devices connecting the source switch to the mirroring destination must be configured to support jumbo frames.

Enabling jumbo frames to increase the mirroring path MTU

On 1-Gbps and 10-Gbps ports in the mirroring path, you can reduce the number of dropped frames by enabling jumbo frames on all intermediate switches and routers. (The MTU on the switches covered by this manual is 9220 bytes for frames having an 802.1Q VLAN tag, and 9216 bytes for untagged frames.)

Table 27: Maximum frame sizes for mirroring

	Frame type configuration	Maximum frame size	VLAN tag	Frame mirrored to local port	Frame mirrored to remote port	
				Data	Data	IPv4 header
Untagged	Non-jumbo (default config.)	1518	0	1518	1464	54
	Jumbo on all VLANs	9216	0	9216	9162	54
	Jumbo ¹¹ On all but source VLAN	1518	0	n/a	1464	54
Tagged	Non-jumbo	1522	4	1522	1468	54
	Jumbo ¹¹ on all VLANs	9220	4	9218	9164	54
	Jumbo ¹¹ On all but source VLAN	1522	4	n/a ²²	1468	54

¹ Jumbo frames are allowed on ports operating at or above 1 Gbps

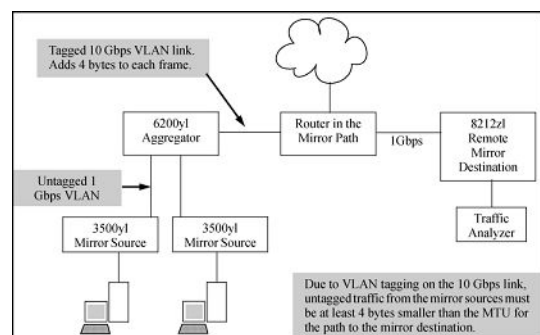
² For local mirroring, a non-jumbo configuration on the source VLAN dictates an MTU of 1518 bytes for untagged frames, and an MTU of 1522 for tagged frames, regardless of the jumbo configuration on any other VLANs on the switch.

Effect of downstream VLAN tagging on untagged, mirrored traffic

In a remote mirroring application, if mirrored traffic leaves the switch without 802.1Q VLAN tagging, but is forwarded through a downstream device that adds 802.1Q VLAN tags, the MTU for untagged mirrored frames leaving the source switch is reduced below the values shown in **Maximum frame sizes for mirroring**.

For example, if the MTU on the path to the destination is 1522 bytes, untagged mirrored frames leaving the source switch cannot exceed 1518 bytes. Likewise, if the MTU on the path to the destination is 9220 bytes, untagged mirrored frames leaving the source switch cannot exceed 9216 bytes.

Figure 151: Effect of downstream VLAN tagging on the MTU for mirrored traffic



Operating notes for traffic mirroring

- Mirroring dropped traffic

When an interface is configured to mirror traffic to a local or remote destination, packets are mirrored regardless of whether the traffic is dropped while on the interface. For example, if an ACL is configured on a VLAN with a `deny` ACE that eliminates packets from a Telnet application, the switch still mirrors the Telnet packets that are received on the interface and subsequently dropped.

- Mirroring and spanning tree

Mirroring is performed regardless of the STP state of a port or trunk. This means, for example, that inbound traffic on a port blocked by STP can still be monitored for STP packets during the STP setup phase.

- Tagged and untagged frames

For a frame entering or leaving the switch on a mirrored port, the mirrored copy retains the tagged or untagged state the original frame carried when it entered into or exited from the switch. (The tagged or untagged VLAN membership of ports in the path leading to the mirroring destination does not affect the tagged or untagged status of the mirrored copy itself.)

Thus, if a tagged frame arrives on a mirrored port, the mirrored copy is also tagged, regardless of the status of ports in the destination path. If a frame exits from the switch on a mirrored port that is a tagged member of a VLAN, the mirrored copy is also tagged for the same reason.

To prevent a VLAN tag from being added to the mirrored copy of an outbound packet sent to a mirroring destination, you must enter the `no-tag-added` parameter when you configure a port, trunk, or mesh interface to select mirrored traffic.

- Effect of IGMP on mirroring

If both inbound and outbound mirroring is operating when IGMP is enabled on a VLAN, two copies of mirrored IGMP frames may appear at the mirroring destination.

- Mirrored traffic not encrypted

Mirrored traffic undergoes IPv4 encapsulation, but mirrored encapsulated traffic is not encrypted.

- IPv4 header added

The IPv4 encapsulation of mirrored traffic adds a 54-byte header to each mirrored frame. If a resulting frame exceeds the maximum MTU allowed in the network, it is dropped or truncated (according to the setting of the `[truncation]` parameter in the `mirror` command.)

To reduce the number of dropped frames, enable jumbo frames in the mirroring path, including all intermediate switches and/or routers. (The MTU on the switch is 9220 bytes, which includes 4 bytes for the 802.1Q VLAN tag.)

- Intercepted or injected traffic

The mirroring feature does not protect against either mirrored traffic being intercepted or traffic being injected into a mirrored stream by an intermediate host.

- Inbound mirrored IPv4-encapsulated frames are not mirrored

The switch does not mirror IPv4-encapsulated mirrored frames that it receives on an interface. This prevents duplicate mirrored frames in configurations where the port connecting the switch to the network path for a mirroring destination is also a port whose inbound or outbound traffic is being mirrored.

For example, if traffic leaving the switch through ports B5, B6, and B7 is being mirrored through port B7 to a network analyzer, the mirrored frames from traffic on ports B5 and B6 will not be mirrored a second time as they pass through port B7.

- Switch operation as both destination and source

A switch configured as a remote destination switch can also be configured to mirror traffic to one of its own ports (local mirroring) or to a destination on another switch (remote mirroring.)

- Monitor command note

If session 1 is already configured with a destination, you can enter the `[no] vlan <VID>monitor` or `[no] interface <PORT> monitor` command without mirroring criteria and a mirror session number. In this case, the switch automatically configures or removes mirroring for inbound and outbound traffic from the specified VLAN or ports to the destination configured for session 1.

- Loss of connectivity suspends remote mirroring

When a remote mirroring session is configured on a source switch, the switch sends an ARP request to the configured destination approximately every 60 seconds. If the source switch fails to receive the expected ARP response from the destination for the session, transmission of mirrored traffic in the session halts. However, because the source switch continues to send ARP requests for each configured remote session, link restoration or discovery of another path to the destination enables the source switch to resume transmitting the session's mirrored traffic after a successful ARP response cycle occurs.

Note that if a link's connectivity is repeatedly interrupted ("link toggling"), little or no mirrored traffic may be allowed for sessions using that link. To verify the status of any mirroring session configured on the source switch, use the `show monitor` command.

Troubleshooting traffic mirroring

Cause

If mirrored traffic does not reach the configured remote destination (endpoint) switch or remote exit port, check the following configurations:

- In a remote mirroring session, the `mirror remote ip` command parameters configured on the source switch for source IP address, source UDP port, and destination IP address must be identical to the same parameters configured with the `mirror endpoint ip` command on the remote destination switch.
- The configured remote exit port must not be a member of a trunk or mesh.
- If the destination for mirrored traffic is on a different VLAN than the source, routing must be correctly configured along the path from the source to the destination.
- On the remote destination (endpoint) switch, the IP addresses of the remote exit port and the switch can belong to different VLANs.
- All links on the path from the source switch to the destination switch must be active.



CAUTION:

A mirroring exit port should be connected only to a network analyzer, IDS, or other network edge device that has no connection to other network resources. Configuring a mirroring exit port connection to a network can result in serious network performance problems, and is strongly discouraged by Switch Networking.

The Hewlett Packard Enterprise Virtual Technician is a set of tools aimed at aiding network switch administrators in diagnosing and caring for their networks. VT provides tools for switch diagnoses when faced with unforeseen issues.

To improve the Virtual Technician features of our devices, Hewlett Packard Enterprise has added the following tools:

- Cisco Discovery Protocol
- Enabling Debug tracing for MOCANA code
- User diagnostic crash via front panel security button
- User diagnostic crash via the serial console

Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP)

show cdp traffic

Syntax

```
show cdp traffic
```

Description

Displays the number of Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP) packets transmitted, received and dropped.

CDP frame Statistics

Port No	Transmitted Frames	Received Frames	Discarded Frames	Error Frames
A1	46	26	6	7
A2	30	35	7	9
A3	120	420	670	670

clear cdp counters

Syntax

```
clear cdp counters
```

Description

Allows a user to clear CDP statistics.

Clear cdp counters

Port No	Transmitted Frames	Received Frames	Discarded Frames	Error Frames
A1	46	26	6	7

A2	30	35	7	9
A3	120	420	670	670

show cdp neighbors detail

Syntax

```
show cdp neighbors detail
```

Description

Shows CDP neighbors on specified port only.

```
show cdp neighbor detail
```

CDP neighbors information

```

Port : 1/13
Device ID : 0.0.0.0
Address Type : IP
Address      : 0.0.0.0
Platform    :
Capability   : Switch
Device Port  : 00 1b 4f 49 e7 76
Version     :
```

```

-----
Port : 2/25
Device ID : 94 18 82 55 50 20
Address Type : IP
Address      : 172.31.99.143
Platform    : Aruba JL356A 2540-24G-PoE+-4SFP+ Switch, revision YC.16....
Capability   : Switch
Device Port  : 3
Version     : Aruba JL356A 2540-24G-PoE+-4SFP+ Switch, revision YC.16....
```

Enable/Disable debug tracing for MOCANA code

debug security

Syntax

```
debug security ssl
```

Description

Enables the debug tracing for MOCANA code.

Use the [no] parameter to disable debug tracing.

ssl

Display all SSL messages.

User diagnostic crash via Front Panel Security (FPS) button

Allows the switch's front panel **Clear** button to manually initiate a diagnostic reset. In the case of an application hang, this feature allows you to perform reliable diagnostics by debugging via the front panel **Clear** button. Diagnostic reset is controlled via Front Panel Security (FPS) options.

front-panel-security password-clear

Syntax

```
[no] front-panel-security [password-clear <RESET-ON-CLEAR>| factory-reset |  
password-recovery | diagnostic-reset <CLEAR-BUTTON | SERIAL-CONSOLE>]
```

Description

Enables the ability to clear the passwords and/or configuration via the front panel buttons.

Parameters and options

no

Disables the password clear option.

password-clear

When disabled, you cannot reset the passwords using the clear button on the front panel of the device.

factory-reset

When disabled, you cannot reset the configuration/password using the clear and reset button combination at boot time.

password-recovery

When enabled (and the front panel buttons disabled), contact Hewlett Packard Enterprise customer support to recover a lost password. When disabled, there is no way to access a device after losing a password with the front panel buttons disabled.

diagnostic-reset

When disabled, the user cannot perform a diagnostic switch reset on those rare events where the switch becomes unresponsive to user input because of unknown reasons. When enabled, the user can perform a diagnostic hard reset which will capture valuable diagnostic data and reset the switch.

factory-reset

Enable/Disable factory-reset ability.

password-clear

Enable/Disable password clear.

password-recovery

Enable/Disable password recovery.

diagnostic-reset

Enable/Disable diagnostic reset.

front-panel-security diagnostic-reset

Syntax

```
[no] front-panel-security diagnostic-reset <CLEAR-BUTTON | SERIAL-CONSOLE>
```

Description

Enables the diagnostic reset so that the switch can capture diagnostic data.

- To initiate diagnostic reset via the clear button, press the clear button for at least 30 seconds but not more than 40 seconds.
- To initiate diagnostic switch reset via the serial console, enter the diagnostic reset sequence on the serial console.

Parameters and options

no

Disables the diagnostic reset feature so that the user is prevented from capturing diagnostic data and performing a diagnostic reset on the switch. Disables both serial console and the clear button. This is necessary if the switch becomes unresponsive (hangs) for unknown reasons.

<CLEAR BUTTON>

Enables diagnostic-reset using the clear button, allowing the user to perform diagnostic reset by pressing the clear button for 30 seconds and not more than 40 seconds.

<SERIAL CONSOLE>

Enables the diagnostics by choosing the serial console option.



IMPORTANT:

Disabling the diagnostic reset prevents the switch from capturing diagnostic data on those rare events where the switch becomes unresponsive to user input because of unknown reasons. Ensure that you are familiar with the front panel security options before proceeding.

Front-panel-security diagnostic-rest clear-button

```
front-panel-security diagnostic-rest clear-button
```

Diagnostic Reset	- Enabled
clear-button	- Enabled
serial-console	-Disabled

No front-panel-security diagnostic-reset

```
no front-panel-security diagnostic-reset
```

Clear Password	- Enabled
Reset-on-clear	- Disabled
Factory Reset	- Enabled
Password Recovery	- Enabled
Diagnostic Reset	- Disabled

show front-panel-security

Syntax

```
show front-panel-security
```

Description

User initiated diagnostic reset defaults to enabled.



Show front-panel-security

Clear Password - Enabled
Reset -on-clear - Disabled
Factory Reset - Enabled
Password Recovery - Enabled
Diagnostic Reset - Enabled

Diagnostic table

To accomplish this	Do this	Result
Soft Reset (Standalone switch)	Press and release the Reset button	The switch operating system is cleared gracefully (such as data transfer completion, temporary error conditions are cleared), then reboots and runs self tests.
Hard Reset (Standalone switch)	Press and hold the Reset button for more than 5 seconds (until all LEDs turn on), then release.	The switch reboots, similar to a power cycle. A hard reset is used, for example, when the switch CPU is in an unknown state or not responding.
Soft Reset (Stacked switch)	Press and release the Reset button	Same as a standalone switch, except: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If the Commander, the Standby switch will become Commander.• If the Standby, a new Standby will be elected.
Hard Reset (Stacked switch)	Press and hold the Reset button for more than 5 seconds (until all LEDs turn on), then release.	Same as a standalone switch, except: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If the Commander, the Standby switch will become Commander.• If the Standby, a new Standby will be elected.
Delete console and management access passwords	Press Clear for at least one second, but not longer than 5 seconds.	The switch deletes all access password.
Restore the factory default configuration	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press Clear and Reset simultaneously.2. While continuing to press Clear, release Reset.3. When the Test LED begins blinking (after approximately 25 seconds), release Clear.	The switch removes all configuration changes, restores the factory default configuration, and runs self test.

Table Continued

To accomplish this	Do this	Result
Diagnostic reset	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press Clear to 30–40 seconds. 2. When the test LED begins blinking (approximately after 30 seconds), release Clear. <div>  <p>NOTE: Releasing the Clear button when TEST LED is not blinking (approximately after 40 seconds) will not honor the diagnostic reset request.</p> </div>	This initiates diagnostic reset, collects diagnostic information, and reboots the switch.
<div>  <p>NOTE: These buttons are provided for the user's convenience. If switch security is a concern, ensure that the switch is installed in a secure location, such as a locked writing closet. To disable the buttons, use the <code>front-panel-security</code> command.</p> </div>		

Validation rules

Cause

Validation	Error
Extra 'token' passed after diagnostic-reset.	Invalid input: <token>.

FPS Error Log

Cause









Event	Message
RMON_BOOT_CRASH_RECORD1	<p>Diagnostic reset sequence detected on serial console; user has initiated diagnostic reset.</p> <div>  <p>NOTE: On detection on local serial</p> </div>
RMON_BOOT_CRASH_RECORD1	<p>SMM: Diagnostic reset sequence detected on serial console; user has initiated diagnostic reset.</p> <div>  <p>NOTE: On detection on SMM serial console and signaled to AMM</p> </div>

Table Continued

Event	Message
RMON_BOOT_CRASH_RECORD1	<p>STKM: Diagnostic reset sequence detected on serial console; user has initiated diagnostic reset.</p> <hr/>  <p>NOTE: On detection on non-commander serial console and signaled to commander</p> <hr/>
RMON_BOOT_CRASH_RECORD1	<p>User has initiated diagnostic reset via the serial console.</p> <hr/>  <p>NOTE: Sw_panic() message</p> <hr/>
RMON_BOOT_CRASH_RECORD1	<p>SMM: User has initiated diagnostic reset via the serial console.</p> <hr/>  <p>NOTE: Sw_panic() message when triggered via SMM</p> <hr/>
RMON_BOOT_CRASH_RECORD1	<p>STKM: User has initiated diagnostic reset via the serial console.</p> <hr/>  <p>NOTE: Sw_panic() message when triggered via non-commander</p> <hr/>
Console print	<p>STKM: HA Sync in progress; user initiated diagnostic request via the serial console rejected. Retry after sometime.</p> <hr/>  <p>NOTE: Printed on the device console. When standby is in sync state, we don't want to crash the commander. So we report to the user to retry later</p> <hr/>
Console print	<p>STKM: Member is booting; user initiated diagnostic request via the serial console rejected. Retry after sometime.</p> <hr/>  <p>NOTE: Printed on the device console. When the member is till booting, it doesn't have the commander member number, thus we can't issue UIDC on the commander. So we report to the user to retry later.</p> <hr/>

User initiated diagnostic crash via the serial console

Remotely triggers a diagnostic reset of the switch via a serial console. This reset reboots the switch and collects diagnostic data for debugging an application hang, a system hang or any other rare occurrence. Diagnostic reset is controlled via FPS options.

The serial sequence to initiate the User Initiated Diagnostic Reset via Serial console is Ctrl+S, Ctrl+T, Ctrl+Q, Ctrl+T, Ctrl+S.

front-panel-security diagnostic-reset serial-console

Syntax

```
[no] front-panel-security diagnostic-reset serial-console
```

Description

Enables the diagnostic-reset via serial console. Allows the user to perform diagnostic reset by keying-in diagnostic reset sequence.

Parameters and options

no

Disables the diagnostic-reset via serial console.

Front-panel-security diagnostic-reset serial-console

```
front-panel-security diagnostic-reset serial-console
```

Diagnostic Reset	- Enabled
clear-button	- Disabled
serial-console	- Enabled

No front-panel-security diagnostic-reset serial-console

```
no front-panel-security diagnostic-reset serial-console
```

Diagnostic Reset	- Disabled
------------------	------------



IMPORTANT:

Disabling the diagnostic reset prevents the switch from capturing diagnostic data on those rare events where the switch becomes unresponsive to user input because of unknown reasons. Ensure that you are familiar with the front panel security options before proceeding.

Serial console error messages

Error	Message
RMON_BOOT_CRASH_RECORD1	Diagnostic reset sequence detected on serial console; user has initiated diagnostic reset.
RMON_BOOT_CRASH_RECORD1	SMM: Diagnostic reset sequence detected on serial console; user has initiated diagnostic reset.
RMON_BOOT_CRASH_RECORD1	STKM: Diagnostic reset sequence detected on serial console; user has initiated diagnostic reset.
RMON_BOOT_CRASH_RECORD1	User has initiated diagnostic reset via the serial console.
RMON_BOOT_CRASH_RECORD1	SMM: User has initiated diagnostic reset via the serial console.
RMON_BOOT_CRASH_RECORD1	STKM: User has initiated diagnostic reset via the serial console.
Console print	STKM: HA Sync in progress; user initiated diagnostic request via the serial console rejected. Retry after sometime.
Console print	STKM: Member is booting; user initiated diagnostic request via the serial console rejected. Retry after sometime.

Overview

This chapter addresses performance-related network problems that can be caused by topology, switch configuration, and the effects of other devices or their configurations on switch operation. (For switch-specific information on hardware problems indicated by LED behavior, cabling requirements, and other potential hardware-related problems, see the installation guide you received with the switch.)



NOTE: Switch software updates are periodically placed on the Switch Networking website. It is recommended that you check this website for software updates that may have fixed a problem you are experiencing.

For information on support and warranty provisions, see the Support and Warranty booklet shipped with the switch.

Troubleshooting approaches

Cause

Use these approaches to diagnose switch problems:

- Check the HPE website for software updates that may have solved your problem: <http://www.hpe.com/networking>
- Check the switch LEDs for indications of proper switch operation:
 - Each switch port has a Link LED that should light whenever an active network device is connected to the port.
 - Problems with the switch hardware and software are indicated by flashing the Fault and other switch LEDs. For a description of the LED behavior and information on using the LEDs for troubleshooting, see the installation guide shipped with the switch.
- Check the network topology/installation. For topology information, see the installation guide shipped with the switch.
- Check cables for damage, correct type, and proper connections. You should also use a cable tester to check your cables for compliance to the relevant IEEE 802.3 specification. For correct cable types and connector pin-outs, see the installation guide shipped with the switch.
- Use the Port Utilization Graph and Alert Log in the WebAgent included in the switch to help isolate problems. These tools are available through the WebAgent:
 - Port Utilization Graph
 - Alert log
 - Port Status and Port Counters screens
 - Diagnostic tools (Link test, Ping test, configuration file browser)
- For help in isolating problems, use the easy-to-access switch console built into the switch or Telnet to the switch console. For operating information on the Menu and CLI interfaces included in the console, see chapters 3 and 4. These tools are available through the switch console:

- Status and Counters screens
- Event Log
- Diagnostics tools (Link test, Ping test, configuration file browser, and advanced user commands)

Browser or Telnet access problems

Cannot access the WebAgent

- Access may be disabled by the Web Agent Enabled parameter in the switch console. Check the setting on this parameter by selecting:

2. Switch Configuration

1. System Information

- The switch may not have the correct IP address, subnet mask, or gateway. Verify by connecting a console to the switch's Console port and selecting:

2. Switch Configuration

5. IP Configuration

Note: If DHCP/Bootp is used to configure the switch, the IP addressing can be verified by selecting:

1. Status and Counters...

2. Switch Management Address Information

Also check the DHCP/Bootp server configuration to verify correct IP addressing.

- If you are using DHCP to acquire the IP address for the switch, the IP address "lease time" may have expired so that the IP address has changed. For more information on how to "reserve" an IP address, see the documentation for the DHCP application that you are using.
- If one or more IP-authorized managers are configured, the switch allows inbound telnet access only to a device having an authorized IP address. For more information on IP Authorized managers, see the access security guide for your switch.
- Java™ applets may not be running on the web browser. They are required for the switch WebAgent to operate correctly. Refer to the online Help on your web browser for how to run the Java applets.

Cannot Telnet into the switch console from a station on the network

- Off-subnet management stations can lose Telnet access if you enable routing without first configuring a static (default) route. That is, the switch uses the IP default gateway only while operating as a Layer 2 device. While routing is enabled on the switch, the IP default gateway is not used. You can avoid this problem by using the ip route command to configure a static (default) route before enabling routing. For more information, see "IP Routing Features" in the multicast and routing guide for your switch.
- Telnet access may be disabled by the `Inbound Telnet Enabled` parameter in the System Information screen of the menu interface:

2. Switch Configuration

1. System Information

- The switch may not have the correct IP address, subnet mask, or gateway. Verify by connecting a console to the switch's Console port and selecting:

2. Switch Configuration

5. IP Configuration

- If you are using DHCP to acquire the IP address for the switch, the IP address "lease time" may have expired so that the IP address has changed. For more information on how to "reserve" an IP address, see the documentation for the DHCP application that you are using.
- If one or more IP-authorized managers are configured, the switch allows inbound telnet access only to a device having an authorized IP address. For more information on IP Authorized managers, see the access security guide for your switch.

Unusual network activity

Network activity that fails to meet accepted norms may indicate a hardware problem with one or more of the network components, possibly including the switch. Such problems can also be caused by a network loop or simply too much traffic for the network as it is currently designed and implemented. Unusual network activity is usually indicated by the LEDs on the front of the switch or measured with the switchconsole interface or with a network management tool. For information on using LEDs to identify unusual network activity, see the installation guide you received with the switch.

A topology loop can also cause excessive network activity. The Event Log "FFI" messages can be indicative of this type of problem.

General problems

The network runs slow; processes fail; users cannot access servers or other devices

Broadcast storms may be occurring in the network. These may be caused by redundant links between nodes.

- If you are configuring a port trunk, finish configuring the ports in the trunk before connecting the related cables. Otherwise you may inadvertently create a number of redundant links (that is, topology loops) that will cause broadcast storms.
- Turn on STP to block redundant links
- Check for FFI messages in the Event Log

Duplicate IP addresses

This is indicated by this Event Log message:

```
ip: Invalid ARP source: IP address on IP address
```

where both instances of *IP address* are the same address, indicating that the switch's IP address has been duplicated somewhere on the network.

Duplicate IP addresses in a DHCP network

If you use a DHCP server to assign IP addresses in your network, and you find a device with a valid IP address that does not appear to communicate properly with the server or other devices, a duplicate IP address may have been issued by the server. This can occur if a client has not released a DHCP-assigned IP address after the intended expiration time and the server "leases" the address to another device. This can also happen, For example, if the server is first configured to issue IP addresses with an unlimited duration, and then is subsequently configured to issue IP addresses that will expire after a limited duration. One solution is to configure "reservations" in the DHCP server for specific IP addresses to be assigned to devices having specific MAC addresses. For more information, see the documentation for the DHCP server.

One indication of a duplicate IP address in a DHCP network is this Event Log message:

```
ip: Invalid ARP source: <IP-address>  
on <IP-address>
```

where both instances of *IP-address* are the same address, indicating that the IP address has been duplicated somewhere on the network.

The switch has been configured for DHCP/Bootp operation, but has not received a DHCP or Bootp reply

When the switch is first configured for DHCP/Bootp operation, or if it is rebooted with this configuration, it immediately begins sending request packets on the network. If the switch does not receive a reply to its DHCP/Bootp requests, it continues to periodically send request packets, but with decreasing frequency. Thus, if a DHCP or Bootp server is not available or accessible to the switch when DHCP/Bootp is first configured, the switch may not immediately receive the desired configuration.

After verifying that the server has become accessible to the switch, reboot the switch to re-start the process.

802.1Q Prioritization problems

Ports configured for non-default prioritization (level 1 to 7) are not performing the specified action

If the ports were placed in a trunk group after being configured for non-default prioritization, the priority setting was automatically reset to zero (the default). Ports in a trunk group operate only at the default priority setting.

Addressing ACL problems

ACLs are properly configured and assigned to VLANs, but the switch is not using the ACLs to filter IP layer 3 packets

Procedure

1. The switch may be running with IP routing disabled. To ensure that IP routing is enabled, execute `show running` and look for the IP routing statement in the resulting listing. For Example:
Indication that routing is enabled

```
switch(config)# show running
Running configuration:
; J9091A Configuration Editor; Created on release #XX.15.06
hostname "Switch"
ip default-gateway 10.33.248.1
ip routing
logging 10.28.227.2
snmp-server community "public" Unrestricted
ip access-list extended "Controls for VLAN 20"
permit tcp 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255 10.10.20.98 0.0.0.0 eq 80
permit tcp 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255 10.10.20.21 0.0.0.0 eq 80
deny tcp 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255 10.10.20.1 0.0.0.255 eq 80
deny tcp 10.10.20.1? 0.0.0.0 10.10.10.100 0.0.0.0 eq 20 log
deny tcp 10.10.20.20 0.0.0.0 10.10.10.100 0.0.0.0 eq 20 log
deny tcp 10.10.20.43 0.0.0.0 10.10.10.100 0.0.0.0 eq 20 log
permit ip 10.10.20.1 0.0.0.255 10.10.10.100 0.0.0.0
deny ip 10.10.30.1 0.0.0.255 10.10.10.100 0.0.0.0
permit ip 10.10.30.1 0.0.0.255 10.10.10.1 0.0.0.255
exit
```

1

Indicates that routing is enabled, a requirement for ACL operation. (There is an exception. Refer to the **Note**, below.)



NOTE: If an ACL assigned to a VLAN includes an ACE referencing an IP address on the switch itself as a packet source or destination, the ACE screens traffic to or from this switch address regardless of whether IP routing is enabled. This is a security measure designed to help protect the switch from unauthorized management access.

If you need to configure IP routing, execute the `ip routing` command.

2. ACL filtering on the switches applies only to routed packets and packets having a destination IP address (DA) on the switch itself.

Also, the switch applies assigned ACLs only at the point where traffic enters or leaves the switch on a VLAN. Ensure that you have correctly applied your ACLs ("in" and/or "out") to the appropriate VLANs.

The switch does not allow management access from a device on the same VLAN

The implicit `deny any` function that the switch automatically applies as the last entry in any ACL always blocks packets having the same DA as the switch's IP address on the same VLAN. That is, bridged packets with the switch itself as the destination are blocked as a security measure.

To preempt this action, edit the ACL to include an ACE that permits access to the switch's DA on that VLAN from the management device.

Error (Invalid input) when entering an IP address

When using the "host" option in the Command syntax, ensure that you are not including a mask in either dotted decimal or CIDR format. Using the "host" option implies a specific host device and therefore does not permit any mask entry.

Correctly and incorrectly specifying a single host

```
Switch(config)# access-list 6 permit host 10.28.100.100 1

Switch(config)# access-list 6 permit host 10.28.100.100 255.255.255.2552
Invalid input: 255.255.255.255

Switch(config)# access-list 6 permit host 10.28.100.100/32 3
Invalid input: 10.28.100.100/32
```

- ¹Correct.
- ²Incorrect. No mask needed to specify a single host.
- ³Incorrect. No mask needed to specify a single host.

Apparent failure to log all "deny" matches

Where the `log` statement is included in multiple ACEs configured with a "deny" option, a large volume of "deny" matches generating logging messages in a short period of time can impact switch performance. If it appears that the switch is not consistently logging all "deny" matches, try reducing the number of logging actions by removing the `log` statement from some ACEs configured with the "deny" action.

The switch does not allow any routed access from a specific host, group of hosts, or subnet

The implicit `deny any` function that the switch automatically applies as the last entry in any ACL may be blocking all access by devices not specifically permitted by an entry in an ACL affecting those sources. If you are using the ACL to block specific hosts, a group of hosts, or a subnet, but want to allow any access not specifically permitted, insert `permit any` as the last explicit entry in the ACL.

The switch is not performing routing functions on a VLAN

Two possible causes of this problem are:

- Routing is not enabled. If `show running` indicates that routing is not enabled, use the `ip routing` command to enable routing.
- An ACL may be blocking access to the VLAN (on a switch covered in this guide). Ensure that the switch's IP address on the VLAN is not blocked by one of the ACE entries in an ACL applied to that VLAN. A common mistake is to either not explicitly permit the switch's IP address as a DA or to use a wildcard ACL mask in a `deny` statement that happens to include the switch's IP address. For an Example: of this problem, see section "General ACL Operating Notes" in the "Access Control Lists (ACLs)" of the latest access security guide for your switch.

Routing through a gateway on the switch fails

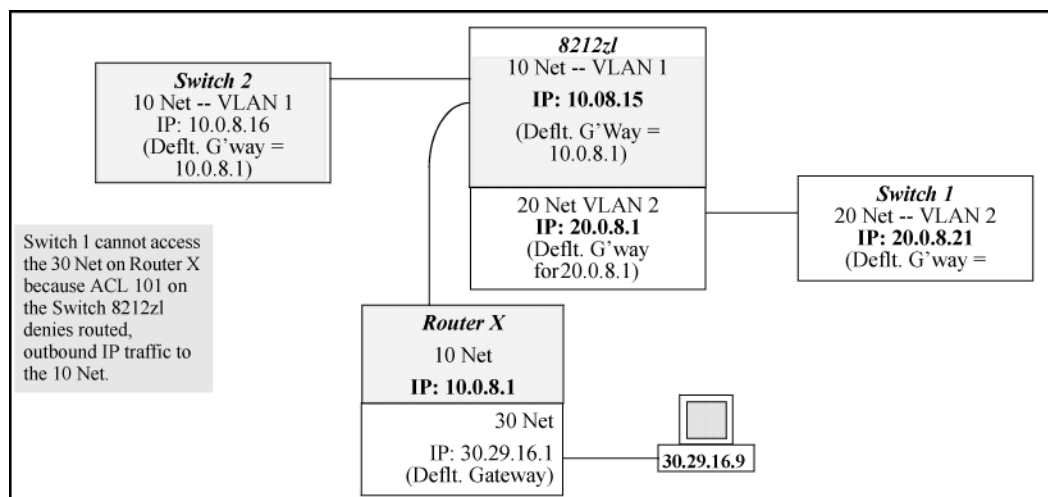
Configuring a "deny" ACE that includes a gateway address can block traffic attempting to use the gateway as a next-hop.

Remote gateway case

Configuring ACL "101" (example below) and applying it outbound on VLAN 1 in the figure below includes the router gateway (10.0.8.1) needed by devices on other networks. This can prevent the switch from sending ARP and other routing messages to the gateway router to support traffic from authorized remote networks.

In **Figure 152: Inadvertently blocking a gateway** on page 560, this ACE (see data in bold below) denies access to the 10 Net's 10.0.8.1 router gateway needed by the 20 Net (Subnet mask is 255.255.255.0). **See: example**

Figure 152: *Inadvertently blocking a gateway*



To avoid inadvertently blocking the remote gateway for authorized traffic from another network (such as the 20 Net in this Example):

Procedure

1. Configure an ACE that specifically permits authorized traffic from the remote network.
2. Configure narrowly defined ACEs to block unwanted IP traffic that would otherwise use the gateway; such ACEs might deny traffic for a particular application, particular hosts, or an entire subnet.
3. Configure a "permit any" ACE to specifically allow any IP traffic to move through the gateway.

ACE blocking an entire subnet

```
switch(config)# access-list config
ip access-list extended "101"
  deny ip 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255 10.0.8.30 0.0.0.255
  permit ip 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255
exit
```

Local gateway case

If you use the switch as a gateway for traffic you want routed between subnets, use these general steps to avoid blocking the gateway for authorized applications:

Procedure

1. Configure gateway security first for routing with specific permit and deny statements.
2. Permit authorized traffic.
3. Deny any unauthorized traffic that you have not already denied in step 1.

IGMP-related problems

IP multicast (IGMP) traffic that is directed by IGMP does not reach IGMP hosts or a multicast router connected to a port

IGMP must be enabled on the switch and the affected port must be configured for "Auto" or "Forward" operation.

IP multicast traffic floods out all ports; IGMP does not appear to filter traffic

The IGMP feature does not operate if the switch or VLAN does not have an IP address configured manually or obtained through DHCP/Bootp. To verify whether an IP address is configured for the switch or VLAN, do one of the following:

- **Try using the WebAgent:** If you can access the WebAgent, then an IP address is configured.
- **Try to telnet to the switch console:** If you can Telnet to the switch, an IP address is configured.
- **Use the switch console interface:** From the Main Menu, check the Management Address Information screen by clicking on:
 1. Status and Counters
 2. Switch Management Address Information

LACP-related problems

Unable to enable LACP on a port with the `interface <port-number> lacp` command

In this case, the switch displays the following message:

```
Operation is not allowed for a trunked port.
```

You cannot enable LACP on a port while it is configured as a static Trunk port. To enable LACP on a static-trunked port:

Procedure

1. Use the `no trunk <port-number>` command to disable the static trunk assignment.
2. Execute `interface <port-number> lacp` .



CAUTION: Removing a port from a trunk without first disabling the port can create a traffic loop that can slow down or halt your network. Before removing a port from a trunk, Hewlett Packard Enterprise recommends that you either disable the port or disconnect it from the LAN.

Port-based access control (802.1X)-related problems



NOTE:

To list the 802.1X port-access Event Log messages stored on the switch, use `show log 802`.

See also [Radius-related problems](#) on page 564.

The switch does not receive a response to RADIUS authentication requests

In this case, the switch attempts authentication using the secondary method configured for the type of access you are using (console, Telnet, or SSH).

There can be several reasons for not receiving a response to an authentication request. Do the following:

- Use `ping` to ensure that the switch has access to the configured RADIUS servers.
- Verify that the switch is using the correct encryption key (RADIUS secret key) for each server.
- Verify that the switch has the correct IP address for each RADIUS server.
- Ensure that the `radius-server timeout` period is long enough for network conditions.

The switch does not authenticate a client even though the RADIUS server is properly configured and providing a response to the authentication request

If the RADIUS server configuration for authenticating the client includes a VLAN assignment, ensure that the VLAN exists as a static VLAN on the switch. See "How 802.1X Authentication Affects VLAN Operation" in the access security guide for your switch.

During RADIUS-authenticated client sessions, access to a VLAN on the port used for the client sessions is lost

If the affected VLAN is configured as untagged on the port, it may be temporarily blocked on that port during an 802.1X session. This is because the switch has temporarily assigned another VLAN as untagged on the port to support the client access, as specified in the response from the RADIUS server. See "How 802.1X Authentication Affects VLAN Operation" in the access security guide for your switch.

The switch appears to be properly configured as a supplicant, but cannot gain access to the intended authenticator port on the switch to which it is connected

If `aaa authentication port-access` is configured for Local, ensure that you have entered the local **login** (operator-level) username and password of the authenticator switch into the `identity` and `secret` parameters of the supplicant configuration. If instead, you enter the enable (manager-level) username and password, access will be denied.

The supplicant statistics listing shows multiple ports with the same authenticator MAC address

The link to the authenticator may have been moved from one port to another without the supplicant statistics having been cleared from the first port. See "Note on Supplicant Statistics" in the chapter on Port-Based and User-Based Access Control in the access security guide for your switch.

The `show port-access authenticator <port-list>` command shows one or more ports remain open after they have been configured with `control unauthorized`

802.1X is not active on the switch. After you execute `aaa port-access authenticator active`, all ports configured with `control unauthorized` should be listed as Closed.

Authenticator ports remain "open" until activated

```
switch(config)# show port-access authenticator e 9
Port Access Authenticator Status
  Port-access authenticator activated [No] : No
      Access Authenticator Authenticator
Port Status Control  State Backend  State
----
9      Open  1      FU          Force Auth  Idle

Switch(config)# show port-access authenticator active
Switch(config)# show port-access authenticator e 9
Port Access Authenticator Status
  Port-access authenticator activated [No] : Yes
      Access Authenticator Authenticator
Port Status Control  State Backend  State
----
9      Closed FU          Force Unauth Idle
```

¹Port A9 shows an "Open" status even though Access Control is set to Unauthorized (Force Auth). This is because the port-access authenticator has not yet been activated.

RADIUS server fails to respond to a request for service, even though the server's IP address is correctly configured in the switch

Use `show radius` to verify that the encryption key (RADIUS secret key) the switch is using is correct for the server being contacted. If the switch has only a global key configured, it either must match the server key or you must configure a server-specific key. If the switch already has a server-specific key assigned to the server's IP address, it overrides the global key and must match the server key.

Displaying encryption keys

```
switch(config)# show radius
Status and Counters - General RADIUS Information
  Deadtime(min) : 0
  Timeout(secs) : 5
```

```
Retransmit Attempts : 3
Global Encryption Key : My-Global-Key
Dynamic Authorization UDP Port : 3799
```

Server	IP Addr	Auth Port	Acct Port	DM/ CoA	Time Window	Encryption Key
10.33.18.119		1812	1813			119-only-key

Also, ensure that the switch port used to access the RADIUS server is not blocked by an 802.1X configuration on that port. For example, `show port-access authenticator <port-list>` gives you the status for the specified ports. Also, ensure that other factors, such as port security or any 802.1X configuration on the RADIUS server are not blocking the link.

The authorized MAC address on a port that is configured for both 802.1X and port security either changes or is re-acquired after execution of `aaa port-access authenticator <port-list> initialize`

If the port is force-authorized with `aaa port-access authenticator <port-list> control authorized` command and port security is enabled on the port, then executing `initialize` causes the port to clear the learned address and learn a new address from the first packet it receives after you execute `initialize`.

A trunked port configured for 802.1X is blocked

If you are using RADIUS authentication and the RADIUS server specifies a VLAN for the port, the switch allows authentication, but blocks the port. To eliminate this problem, either remove the port from the trunk or reconfigure the RADIUS server to avoid specifying a VLAN.

QoS-related problems

Loss of communication when using VLAN-tagged traffic

If you cannot communicate with a device in a tagged VLAN environment, ensure that the device either supports VLAN tagged traffic or is connected to a VLAN port that is configured as `Untagged`.

Radius-related problems

The switch does not receive a response to RADIUS authentication requests

In this case, the switch attempts authentication using the secondary method configured for the type of access you are using (console, Telnet, or SSH).

There can be several reasons for not receiving a response to an authentication request. Do the following:

- Use `ping` to ensure that the switch has access to the configured RADIUS server.
- Verify that the switch is using the correct encryption key for the designated server.
- Verify that the switch has the correct IP address for the RADIUS server.
- Ensure that the `radius-server timeout` period is long enough for network conditions.
- Verify that the switch is using the same UDP port number as the server.



NOTE: Because of an inconsistency between the Windows XP 802.1x supplicant timeout value and the switch default timeout value, which is 5, when adding a backup RADIUS server, set the switch radius-server timeout value to 4. Otherwise, the switch may not failover properly to the backup RADIUS server.

RADIUS server fails to respond to a request for service, even though the server's IP address is correctly configured in the switch

Use `show radius` to verify that the encryption key the switch is using is correct for the server being contacted. If the switch has only a global key configured, it either must match the server key or you must configure a server-specific key. If the switch already has a server-specific key assigned to the server's IP address, it overrides the global key and must match the server key.

Global and unique encryption keys

```
Switch(config)# show radius
Status and Counters - General RADIUS Information
  Deadtime(min) : 0
  Timeout(secs) : 5
  Retransmit Attempts : 3
  Global Encryption Key : My-Global-Key 1
  Dynamic Authorization UDP Port : 3799

  Server IP Addr      Auth Port  Acct Port  DM/CoA Window  Encryption Key
  -----
  10.33.18.119       1812  1813      -   -   -   119-only-key 2
```

- 1
Global RADIUS Encryption Key
- 2
Unique RADIUS Encryption Key for the RADIUS server at 10.33.18.119

MSTP and fast-uplink problems



CAUTION:

If you enable MSTP, Hewlett Packard Enterprise recommends that you leave the remainder of the MSTP parameter settings at their default values until you have had an opportunity to evaluate MSTP performance in your network. Because incorrect MSTP settings can adversely affect network performance, you should avoid making changes without having a strong understanding of how MSTP operates. To learn the details of MSTP operation, see the IEEE802.1s standard.

Broadcast storms appearing in the network

This can occur when there are physical loops (redundant links) in the topology. Where this exists, you should enable MSTP on all bridging devices in the topology to detect the loop.

STP blocks a link in a VLAN even though there are no redundant links in that VLAN

In 802.1Q-compliant switches, MSTP blocks redundant physical links even if they are in separate VLANs. A solution is to use only one, multiple-VLAN (tagged) link between the devices. Also, if ports are available, you can improve the bandwidth in this situation by using a port trunk. See "Spanning Tree Operation with VLANs" in "Static Virtual LANs (VLANs)" in the advanced traffic management guide for your switch.

Fast-uplink troubleshooting

Some of the problems that can result from incorrect use of fast-uplink MSTP include temporary loops and generation of duplicate packets.

Problem sources can include:

- Fast-uplink is configured on a switch that is the MSTP root device.
- Either the `Hello Time` or the `Max Age` setting (or both) is too long on one or more switches. Return the `Hello Time` and `Max Age` settings to their default values (2 seconds and 20 seconds, respectively, on a switch).
- A "downlink" port is connected to a switch that is further away (in hop count) from the root device than the switch port on which fast-uplink MSTP is configured.
- Two edge switches are directly linked to each other with a fast-uplink (`Mode = Uplink`) connection.
- Fast uplink is configured on both ends of a link.
- A switch serving as a backup MSTP root switch has ports configured for fast-uplink MSTP and has become the root device because of a failure in the original root device.

SSH-related problems

Switch access refused to a client

Even though you have placed the client's public key in a text file and copied the file (using the `copy tftp pub-key-file` command) into the switch, the switch refuses to allow the client to have access. If the source SSH client is an SSHv2 application, the public key may be in the PEM format, which the switch (SSHv1) does not interpret. Check the SSH client application for a utility that can convert the PEM-formatted key into an ASCII-formatted key.

Executing IP SSH does not enable SSH on the switch

The switch does not have a host key. Verify by executing `show ip host-public-key`. If you see the message

```
ssh cannot be enabled until a host key is configured (use 'crypto' command).
```

you need to generate an SSH key pair for the switch. To do so, execute `crypto key generate` (see "Generating the switch's public and private key pair" in the SSH chapter of the access security guide for your switch.)

Switch does not detect a client's public key that does appear in the switch's public key file (`show ip client-public-key`)

The client's public key entry in the public key file may be preceded by another entry that does not terminate with a new line (CR). In this case, the switch interprets the next sequential key entry as simply a comment attached to the preceding key entry. Where a public key file has more than one entry, ensure that all entries terminate with a new line (CR). While this is optional for the last entry in the file, not adding a new line to the last entry creates an error potential if you either add another key to the file at a later time or change the order of the keys in the file.

An attempt to copy a client public-key file into the switch has failed and the switch lists one of the following messages

Download failed: overlength key in key file.

Download failed: too many keys in key file.

Download failed: one or more keys is not a valid RSA public key.

The public key file you are trying to download has one of the following problems:

- A key in the file is too long. The maximum key length is 1024 characters, including spaces. This could also mean that two or more keys are merged together instead of being separated by a <CR> <LF>.
- There are more than ten public keys in the key file.
- One or more keys in the file is corrupted or is not a valid rsa public key.

Client ceases to respond ("hangs") during connection phase

The switch does not support data compression in an SSH session. Clients often have compression turned on by default, but then disable it during the negotiation phase. A client that does not recognize the compression-request FAILURE response may fail when attempting to connect. Ensure that compression is turned **off** before attempting a connection to prevent this problem.

TACACS-related problems

Event Log

When troubleshooting TACACS+ operation, check the switch's Event Log for indications of problem areas.

All users are locked out of access to the switch

If the switch is functioning properly, but no username/password pairs result in console or Telnet access to the switch, the problem may be caused by how the TACACS+ server and/or the switch are configured. Use one of the following methods to recover:

- Access the TACACS+ server application and adjust or remove the configuration parameters controlling access to the switch.
- If the above method does not work, try eliminating configuration changes in the switch that have not been saved to flash (boot-up configuration) by causing the switch to reboot from the boot-up configuration (which includes only the configuration changes made prior to the last `write memory` command.) If you did not use `write memory` to save the authentication configuration to flash, pressing the `Reset` button reboots the switch with the boot-up configuration.
- Disconnect the switch from network access to any TACACS+ servers and then log in to the switch using either Telnet or direct console port access. Because the switch cannot access a TACACS+ server, it defaults to local authentication. You can then use the switch's local Operator or Manager username/password pair to log on.
- As a last resort, use the `Clear/Reset` button combination to reset the switch to its factory default boot-up configuration. Taking this step means you will have to reconfigure the switch to return it to operation in your network.

No communication between the switch and the TACACS+ server application

If the switch can access the server device (that is, it can `ping` the server), a configuration error may be the problem. Some possibilities include:

- The server IP address configured with the switch's `tacacs-serverhost` command may not be correct. (Use the switch's `show tacacs-server` command to list the TACACS+ server IP address.)
- The encryption key configured in the server does not match the encryption key configured in the switch (by using the `tacacs-server key` command). Verify the key in the server and compare it to the key configured

in the switch. (Use `show tacacs-server` to list the global key. Use `show config` or `show config running` to list any server-specific keys.)

- The accessible TACACS+ servers are not configured to provide service to the switch.

Access is denied even though the username/password pair is correct

Some reasons for denial include the following parameters controlled by your TACACS+ server application:

- The account has expired.
- The access attempt is through a port that is not allowed for the account.
- The time quota for the account has been exhausted.
- The time credit for the account has expired.
- The access attempt is outside of the time frame allowed for the account.
- The allowed number of concurrent logins for the account has been exceeded.

For more help, see the documentation provided with your TACACS+ server application.

Unknown users allowed to login to the switch

Your TACACS+ application may be configured to allow access to unknown users by assigning them the privileges included in a *default user* profile. See the documentation provided with your TACACS+ server application.

System allows fewer login attempts than specified in the switch configuration

Your TACACS+ server application may be configured to allow fewer login attempts than you have configured in the switch with the `aaa authentication num-attempts` command.

TimeP, SNTP, or Gateway problems

The switch cannot find the time server or the configured gateway

TimeP, SNTP, and Gateway access are through the primary VLAN, which in the default configuration is the `DEFAULT_VLAN`. If the primary VLAN has been moved to another VLAN, it may be disabled or does not have ports assigned to it.

VLAN-related problems

Monitor port

When using the monitor port in a multiple-VLAN environment, the switch handles broadcast, multicast, and unicast traffic output from the monitor port as follows:

- If the monitor port is configured for tagged VLAN operation on the same VLAN as the traffic from monitored ports, the traffic output from the monitor port carries the same VLAN tag.
- If the monitor port is configured for untagged VLAN operation on the same VLAN as the traffic from the monitored ports, the traffic output from the monitor port is untagged.
- If the monitor port is not a member of the same VLAN as the traffic from the monitored ports, traffic from the monitored ports does not go out the monitor port.

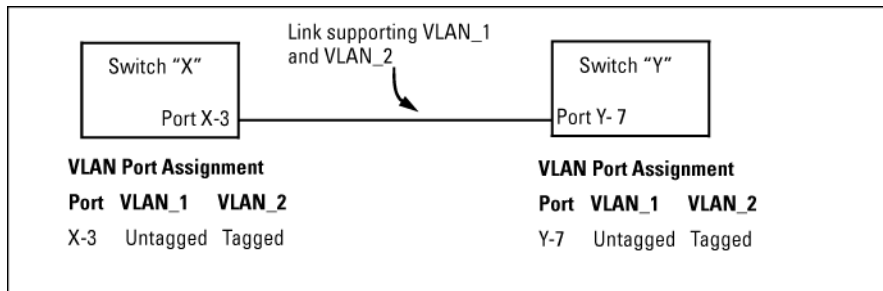
None of the devices assigned to one or more VLANs on an 802.1Q-compliant switch are being recognized

If multiple VLANs are being used on ports connecting 802.1Q-compliant devices, inconsistent VLAN IDs may have been assigned to one or more VLANs. For a given VLAN, the same VLAN ID must be used on all connected 802.1Q-compliant devices.

Link configured for multiple VLANs does not support traffic for one or more VLANs

One or more VLANs may not be properly configured as "Tagged" or "Untagged." A VLAN assigned to a port connecting two 802.1Q-compliant devices must be configured the same on both ports. For example, VLAN_1 and VLAN_2 use the same link between switch "X" and switch "Y," as shown in **Figure 153: Example: of correct VLAN port assignments on a link** on page 569.

Figure 153: Example: of correct VLAN port assignments on a link



- If VLAN_1 (VID=1) is configured as "Untagged" on port 3 on switch "X," it must also be configured as "Untagged" on port 7 on switch "Y." Make sure that the VLAN ID (VID) is the same on both switches.
- Similarly, if VLAN_2 (VID=2) is configured as "Tagged" on the link port on switch "A," it must also be configured as "Tagged" on the link port on switch "B." Make sure that the VLAN ID (VID) is the same on both switches.

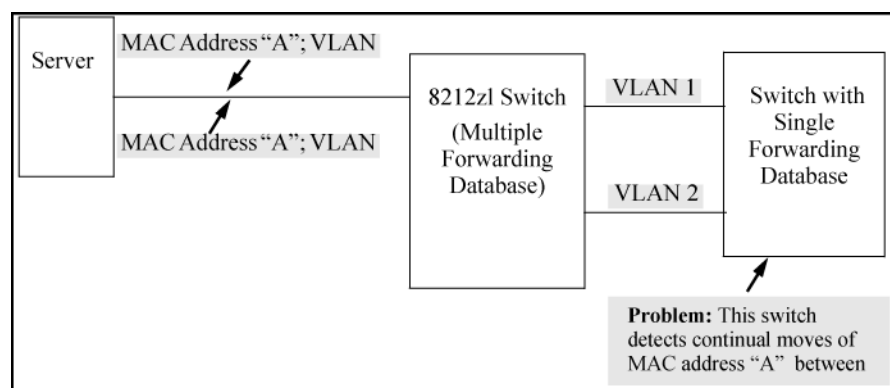
Duplicate MAC addresses across VLANs

The switches operate with multiple forwarding databases. Thus, duplicate MAC addresses occurring on different VLANs can appear where a device having one MAC address is a member of more than one 802.1Q VLAN, and the switch port to which the device is linked is using VLANs (instead of MSTP or trunking) to establish redundant links to another switch. If the other device sends traffic over multiple VLANs, its MAC address consistently appears in multiple VLANs on the switch port to which it is linked.

Be aware that attempting to create redundant paths through the use of VLANs causes problems with some switches. One symptom is that a duplicate MAC address appears in the Port Address Table of one port and then later appears on another port. While the switches have multiple forwarding databases and thus do not have this problem, some switches with a single forwarding database for all VLANs may produce the impression that a connected device is moving among ports because packets with the same MAC address but different VLANs are

received on different ports. You can avoid this problem by creating redundant paths using port trunks or spanning tree.

Figure 154: Example: of duplicate MAC address



Fan failure

Mitigating flapping transceivers

In traditional switches, the state of a link is driven directly by the reported state of the port, which is required for rapid detection of link faults. However, the consequence of this is that a marginal transceiver, optical, or wire cabling, one that "flaps" up and down several times per second, can cause STP and other protocols to react poorly, resulting in a network outage. The link-flap option expands the functionality of the existing fault finder function to include a "link-flap" event and a new action of "warn-and-disable." Together, these additions allow the errant condition to be detected, and the port in question can be optionally disabled.

Syntax:

```
fault-finder <link-flap> sensitivity {<low | medium | high> } action {<warn | warn-and-disable>}
```

Default settings: Sensitivity = Medium; Action = Warn

Sensitivity thresholds are static. In a 10-second window, if more than the threshold number of link state transitions (up or down) are detected, the event is triggered. The 10-second window is statically determined, that is, the counters are reset every 10 seconds, as opposed to being a sliding window. The counters are polled twice per second (every 500 milliseconds), and the event is triggered if the sensitivity threshold is crossed at that time.

The sensitivity thresholds are:

High	3 transitions in 10 seconds
Medium	6 transitions in 10 seconds
Low	10 transitions in 10 seconds

Configuring the link-flap event and corresponding action applies to all ports and port types (it is a global setting per FFI event type). Note that normal link transition protocols may prevent link state changes from occurring fast enough to trigger the event for some port types, configurations, and sensitivity settings.

When the link-flap threshold is met for a port configured for warn (For example, `fault-finder link-flap sensitivity medium action warn`), the following message is seen in the switch event log.

```
02672 FFI: port <number>-Excessive link state transitions
```

When the link-flap threshold is met for a port configured for warn-and-disable (For example, `fault-finder linkflap sensitivity medium action warn-and-disable`), the following messages are seen in the switch event log.

```
02672 FFI: port <number>-Excessive link state transitions
```

```
02673 FFI: port <number>-Port disabled by Fault-finder.
```

```
02674 FFI: port <number>-Administrator action required to re-enable.
```

The warn-and-disable action is available for all fault-finder events on an individual basis. It may be used, For example, to disable a port when excessive broadcasts are received. Because the fault-generated disabling of a port requires operator intervention to re-enable the port, such configuration should be used with care. For example, link-flap-initiated disablement is not desired on ports that are at the client edge of the network, because link state changes there are frequent and expected.

Hewlett Packard Enterprise does not recommend automatic disabling of a port at the core or distribution layers when excessive broadcasts are detected, because of the potential to disable large parts of the network that may be uninvolved and for the opportunity to create a denial-of-service attack.

Fault Finder thresholds

Switches feature automatic fault detection, which helps protect against network loops and defective equipment. The fault detection sensitivity setting determines the types of alerts reported to the Alert Log based on their level of severity or sensitivity. The sensitivity levels are:

- **High Sensitivity.**

This policy directs the switch to send all alerts to the Alert Log. This setting is most effective on networks that have none or few problems.

- **Medium Sensitivity.** This policy directs the switch to send alerts related to network problems to the Alert Log. If you want to be notified of problems which cause a noticeable slowdown on the network, use this setting.

- **Low Sensitivity.** This policy directs the switch to send only the most severe alerts to the Alert Log. This policy is most effective on a network where there are normally a lot of problems and you want to be informed of only the most severe ones

- **Disabled.** Disables the Alert Log and transmission of alerts (traps) to the management server (in cases where a network management tool such as ProCurve Manager is in use). Use this option when you don't want to use the Alert Log.

Enabling Fault Finder

Enter this CLI command to enable fault detection:

Syntax:

```
[no] fault-finder [fault][sensitivity <low|medium|high>][action <warn|warn-and-disable>]
```

Enables or disables Fault Finder and sets sensitivity.

When the `warn-and-disable` action option is configured, Fault Finder may also shut down a bad port in addition to sending an alert to the Alert Log.

Default setting: `fault-finder sensitivity medium action warn`

[fault]: Supported values are:

- `all`: All fault types
- `bad-driver`: Too many undersized/giant packets

- `bad-transceiver`: Excessive jabbering
- `bad-cable`: Excessive CRC/alignment errors
- `too-long-cable`: Excessive late collisions
- `over-bandwidth`: High collision or drop rate
- `broadcast-storm`: Excessive broadcasts
- `duplex-mismatch-HDx`: Duplex mismatch. Reconfigure to Full Duplex
- `duplex-mismatch-FDx`: Duplex mismatch. Reconfigure port to Auto
- `link-flap`: Rapid detection of link faults and recoveries
- `loss-of-link`: Link loss detected. (Sensitivity not applicable)

Examples:

To set Fault Finder with a `high` sensitivity to issue a warning and then disable a port on which there is a high collision or drop rate, you could configure these options:

```
switch(config)# fault-finder over-bandwidth sensitivity
high action warn-and-disable
```

To set Fault Finder with a `medium` sensitivity to issue a warning about excessive CRC or alignment errors on a port, you could configure these options:

```
switch(config)# fault-finder bad-cable sensitivity
medium action warn
```

To set Fault Finder with a `low` sensitivity to issue a warning about rapid detection of link faults, you could configure these options:

```
switch(config)# fault-finder link-flap sensitivity
low action warn
```

To disable Fault Finder, enter this command:

```
switch(config)# no fault-finder all
```

Table 28: Fault finder sensitivities for supported conditions

Condition triggering fault finder	Sensitivities			Units (in packets)	Time period	Fault finder reacts:
	High	Medium	Low			
Bad driver — Too many under-sized packets or too many giant packets	6	21	36	1/10,000 Incoming	20 secs	If (undersized/total) >= (sensitivity/10,000) Or If (giant/total) >= (sensitivity/10,000)

Table Continued

Condition triggering fault finder	Sensitivities			Units (in packets)	Time period	Fault finder reacts:
Bad transceiver — Excessive jabbering - Jabbers: (Jabbers are packets longer than the MTU) - Fragments: (packets shorter than they should be)	65	2110	3614	1/10,000 IncomingOne Fragments	20 secs20 secs	If (jabbers/ total) >= (sensitivity/ 10,000)Or If fragment count in the last 20 seconds >= sensitivity
Bad cable — Excessive CRC/ alignment errors	6	21	36	1/10,000 Incoming	20 secs	If (CRC and alignment errors/ total) >= (sensitivity/ 10,000)
Too Long Cable — Excessive late collisions (a late collision error occurs after the first 512 bit times)	6	21	36	1/10,000 Outgoing	20 secs	If (late collisions/ total) >= (sensitivity/ 10,000)
Over bandwidth - High collision rate -High drop rate	665	21257	36449	1/10,000 OutgoingOne Packet	5 mins5 mins	If (excessive collisions/ total) >= (sensitivity/ 10,000)The count of dropped packets >= sensitivity during the last 5 minutes.
Broadcast storm — Excessive broadcasts	1475	5000	8525	One Broadcast Packet	1 sec	If the average per second of broadcast packets in the last 20 seconds >= sensitivity

Table Continued

Condition triggering fault finder	Sensitivities			Units (in packets)	Time period	Fault finder reacts:
Multicast storm — Excessive multicasts	1475	5000	8525	One Multicast Packet	1 sec	If the average per second of multicast packets in the last 20 seconds \geq sensitivity
Duplex mismatch HDx	6	21	36	1/10,000 Outgoing	20 sec	If (late collisions/ total) \geq (sensitivity/ 10,000)
Duplex mismatch FDx	6	21	36	1/10,000 Incoming	20 sec	If (CRC and alignment errors/ total) \geq (sensitivity/ 10,000)
Link flap — Excessive transitions between link-up and link-down states.	4	7	11	One Transitions	10 secs	If the Transition count in the last 10s \geq sensitivity.

Example: of sensitivity calculation:

If a sensitivity is set to High, and a bad cable is causing 15 CRC errors out of a total of 3500 packets transmitted in a 20 second period:

1. CRC errors/total must be \geq (sensitivity/10,000) to trigger an alert.
2. CRC errors/total = $15/3500 = .00043$
3. Sensitivity/10,000 = $6/10,000 = .0006$
4. .00043 is not greater than or equal to .0006, so an alert is not triggered.

Viewing transceiver information

This feature provides the ability to view diagnostic monitoring information for transceivers with Diagnostic Optical Monitoring (DOM) support. The following table indicates the support level for specific transceivers:

Product #	Description	Support ¹
J8436A	10GbE X2-SC SR Optic	V
J8437A	10GbE X2-SC LR Optic	V
J8440B	10GbE X2-CX4 Xcver	NA
J8440C	10GbE X2-CX4 Xcver	NA
J4858A	Gigabit-SX-LC Mini-GBIC	V
J4858B	Gigabit-SX-LC Mini-GBIC	V
J4858C	Gigabit-SX-LC Mini-GBIC	V (some)
J9054B	100-FX SFP-LC Transceiver	N
J8177C	Gigabit 1000Base-T Mini-GBIC	NA
J9150A	10GbE SFP+ SR Transceiver	D
J9151A	10GbE SFP+ LR Transceiver	D
J9152A	10GbE SFP+ LRM Transceiver	D
J9153A	10GbE SFP+ ER Transceiver	D
J9144A	10GbE X2-SC LRM Transceiver	D
J8438A	10GbE X2-SC ER Transceiver	D

¹ Support indicators:

- V - Validated to respond to DOM requests
- N - No support of DOM
- D - Documented by the component suppliers as supporting DOM
- NA - Not applicable to the transceiver (copper transceiver)



NOTE: Not all transceivers support Digital Optical Monitoring. If DOM appears in the Diagnostic Support field of the `show interfaces transceiver detail` command, or the `hpicfTransceiverMIB hpicfXcvrDiagnostics` MIB object, DOM is supported for that transceiver.

Viewing information about transceivers (CLI)

Syntax:

```
show interfaces transceiver [port-list] [detail]
```

Displays information about the transceivers. If a port is specified, displays information for the transceiver in that port.

[detail]	Displays detailed transceiver information.
----------	--

MIB support

The `hpicfTransceiver` MIB is available for displaying transceiver information.

Viewing transceiver information

The transceiver information displayed depends on the `show` command executed.

The output for `show interfaces transceiver [port-list]` is shown below. You can specify multiple ports, separated by commas, and the information for each transceiver will display.

Output for a specified transceiver

```
switch(config)# show interfaces transceiver 21
```

Transceiver Technical information:

Port	Type	Product Number	Serial Number	Part Number
21	1000SX	J4858C	MY050VM9WB	1990-3657

If there is no transceiver in the port specified in the command, the output displays as shown below.

Output when no transceiver is present in specified interface

```
switch(config)# show interfaces transceiver 22
```

No Transceiver found on interface 22

When no ports are specified, information for all transceivers found is displayed.

Output when no ports are specified

```
switch(config)# show interfaces transceiver
```

Transceiver Technical information:

Port	Type	Product Number	Serial Number	Part Number
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

21	1000SX	J4858C	MY050VM9WB	1990-3657
22	1000SX	J4858B	P834DIP2	

You can specify all for port-list as shown below.

Output when “all” is specified

```
switch(config)# show interfaces transceiver all
```

No Transceiver found on interface 1

No Transceiver found on interface 2

.

.

No Transceiver found on interface 24

Transceiver Technical information:

Port	Type	Product Number	Serial Number	Part Number
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
21	1000SX	J4858C	MY050VM9WB	1990-3657
22	1000SX	J4858B	P834DIP2	

Information displayed with the detail parameter

When the show interfaces transceiver [port-list] detail command is executed, the following information displays.

Table 29: General transceiver information

Parameter	Description
Interface Index	The switch interface number
Transceiver-type	Pluggable transceiver type
Transceiver model	Pluggable transceiver model
Connector-type	Type of connector of the transceiver
Wavelength	For an optical transceiver: the central wavelength of the laser sent, in nm. If the transceiver supports multiple wavelengths, the values will be separated by a comma.
Transfer Distance	Link-length supported by the transceiver in meters. The corresponding transfer medium is shown in brackets following the transfer distance value, For example, 50um multimode fiber. If the transceiver supports multiple transfer media, the values are separated by a comma.

Table Continued

Parameter	Description
Diagnostic Support	Shows whether the transceiver supports diagnostics: None Supported DOM Supported VCT Supported
Serial Number	Serial number of the transceiver

The information in the next three tables is only displayed when the transceiver supports DOM.

Table 30: DOM information

Parameter	Description
Temperature	Transceiver temperature (in degrees Centigrade)
Voltage	Supply voltage in transceiver (Volts)
Bias	Laser bias current (mA)
RX power	Rx power (mW and dBm))
TX power	Tx power (mW and dBm)

The alarm information for GBIC/SFP transceivers is shown in this table.

Table 31: Alarm and error information (GBIC/SFP transceivers only)

Alarm	Description
RX loss of signal	Incoming (RX) signal is lost
RX power high	Incoming (RX) power level is high
RX power low	Incoming (RX) power level is low
TX fault	Transmit (TX) fault
TX bias high	TX bias current is high
TX bias low	TX bias current is low
TX power high	TX power is high

Table Continued

Alarm	Description
TX power low	TX power is low
Temp high	Temperature is high
Temp low	Temperature is low
Voltage High	Voltage is high
Voltage Low	Voltage is low

The alarm information for XENPAK transceivers is shown in this table.

Table 32: *Alarm and error information (XENPAK transceivers)*

Alarm	Description
WIS local fault	WAN Interface Sublayer local fault
Receive optical power fault	Receive optical power fault
PMA/PMD receiver local fault	Physical Medium Attachment/Physical Medium Dependent receiver local fault
PCS receiver local fault	Physical Coding Sublayer receiver local fault
PHY XS receive local fault	PHY Extended Sublayer receive local fault
RX power high	RX power is high
RX power low	RX power is low
Laser bias current fault	Laser bias current fault
Laser temperature fault	Laser temperature fault
Laser output power fault	Laser output power fault
TX fault	TX fault
PMA/PMD transmitter local fault	PMA/PMD transmitter local fault
PCS Transmit local fault	PCS transmit local fault
PHY XS transmit local fault	PHY SX transmit local fault
TX bias high	TX bias current is high
TX bias low	TX bias current is low

Table Continued

Alarm	Description
TX power high	TX power is high
TX power low	TX power is low
Temp high	Temperature is high
Temp low	Temperature is low

An Example: of the output for the show interfaces transceiver [port-list] detail for a 1000SX transceiver is shown below.

Detailed information for a 1000SX Mini-GBIC transceiver

```
switch(config)# show interfaces transceiver 21 detail
```

```
Transceiver in 21
Interface index      : 21
Type                 : 1000SX
Model                : J4858C
Connector type       : LC
Wavelength           : 850nm
Transfer distance    : 300m (50um), 150m (62.5um),
Diagnostic support    : DOM
Serial number        : MY050VM9WB
```

```
Status
Temperature : 50.111C
Voltage      : 3.1234V
TX Bias      : 6mA
TX Power     : 0.2650mW, -5.768dBm
RX Power     : 0.3892mW, -4.098dBm
```

```
Time stamp      : Mon Mar 7 14:22:13 2011
```

An Example: of the output for a 10GbE-LR transceiver is shown below.

Detailed information for a 10GbE-LR transceiver

```
switch(config)# show interfaces transceiver 23 detail
```

```
Transceiver in 23
Interface Index      : 24
Type                 : 10GbE-LR
Model                : J8437A
Connector type       : SC
Wavelength           : Channel #0: 1310nm, #1:0nm, #2:0nm, #3:0nm
Transfer distance    : 10000m (SM)
Diagnostic support    : DOM
Serial number        : ED456SS987
```

```
Status
Temperature : 32.754C
TX Bias      : 42.700mA
TX Power     : 0.5192mW, -2.847dBm
RX Power     : 0.0040mW, -23.979dBm
```

```
Recent Alarms:
```



```
Rx power low alarm
Rx power low warning
```

Recent errors:

```
Receive optical power fault
PMA/PMD receiver local fault
PMA/PMD transmitter local fault
PCS receive local fault
PHY XS transmit local fault
```

Time stamp : Mon Mar 7 16:26:06 2013

Viewing transceiver information for copper transceivers with VCT support

This feature provides the ability to view diagnostic monitoring information for copper transceivers with Virtual Cable Test (VCT) support. The cable quality of the copper cables connected between transceivers can be ascertained using the transceiver cable diagnostics. Results of the diagnostics are displayed with the appropriate CLI show commands and with SNMP using the `hpicfTransceiver` MIB.

The J8177C 1000Base-T Mini-GBIC is supported.

Testing the Cable

Enter the `test cable-diagnostics` command in any context to begin cable diagnostics for the transceiver. The diagnostic attempts to identify cable faults. The tests may take a few seconds to complete for each interface. There is the potential of link loss during the diagnostic.

Syntax:

```
test cable-diagnostics [port-list]
```

Invokes cable diagnostics and displays the results.

Output from test cable-diagnostics command

```
Switch # test cable-diagnostics a23-a24
```

The 'test cable-diagnostics' command will cause a loss of link and will take a few seconds per interface to complete.

Continue (Y/N)? y

MDI Port	Cable Pair	Distance Status	Pair to Fault	Pair Skew	MDI Polarity	Mode
A23	1-2	OK	0 m	6 ns	Normal	MDIX
	3-6	OK	0 m	0 ns	Normal	
	4-5	OK	0 m	6 ns	Normal	
	7-8	OK	0 m	6 ns	Normal	
A24	1-2	Short	2 m			
	3-6	Impedance	3 m			
	4-5	Impedance	3 m			
	7-8	Open	1 m			

Copper cable diagnostic test results

```
switch# show interfaces transceiver a23 detail
```

```
Transceiver in A23
Interface Index   : 23
Type             : 1000T-sfp
```

Model : J8177C
 Connector Type : RJ45
 Wavelength : n/a
 Transfer Distance : 100m (copper),
 Diagnostic Support : VCT
 Serial Number : US051HF099

Link Status : Up
 Speed : 1000
 Duplex : Full

Port	MDI Pair	Cable Status	Distance to Fault	Pair Skew	Pair Polarity	MDI Mode
A23	1-2	OK	0 m	6 ns	Normal	MDIX
	3-6	OK	0 m	0 ns	Normal	
	4-5	OK	0 m	6 ns	Normal	MDIX
	7-8	OK	0 m	6 ns	Normal	

Test Last Run : Fri Apr 22 20:33:23 2011

General transceiver information

Parameter	Description
Interface Index	The switch interface number
Transceiver-type	Pluggable transceiver type
Transceiver model	Pluggable transceiver model
Connector-type	Type of connector of the transceiver
Wavelength	For an optical transceiver: the central wavelength of the laser sent, in nm. If the transceiver supports multiple wavelengths, the values will be separated by a comma. An electrical transceiver value is displayed as N/A.
Transfer Distance	Link-length supported by the transceiver in meters. The corresponding transfer medium is shown in brackets following the transfer distance value, For example, 50um multimode fiber. If the transceiver supports multiple transfer media, the values are separated by a comma.
Diagnostic Support	Shows whether the transceiver supports diagnostics: None Supported DOM Supported VCT Supported
Serial Number	Serial number of the transceiver
Link Status	Link up or down

Table Continued

Parameter	Description
Speed	Speed of transceiver in Mbps
Duplex	Type of duplexing
Cable Status	Values are OK, Open, Short, or Impedance
Distance to Fault	The distance in meters to a cable fault (accuracy is +/- 2 meters); displays 0 (zero) if there is no fault
Pair Skew	Difference in propagation between the fastest and slowest wire pairs
Pair Polarity	Signals on a wire pair are polarized, with one wire carrying the positive signal and one carrying the negative signal.
MDI Mode	The MDI crossover status of the two wire pairs (1&2, 3&6, 4&5, 7&8), will be either MDI or MDIX

Using the Event Log for troubleshooting switch problems

The Event Log records operating events in single- or double-line entries and serves as a tool to isolate and troubleshoot problems.

Once the log has received 2000 entries, it discards the oldest message each time a new message is received. The Event Log window contains 14 log entry lines. You can scroll through it to view any part of the log.

Once the log has received 2000 entries, it discards the oldest message each time a new message is received. The Event Log window contains 14 log-entry lines. You can scroll through it to view any part of the log.



NOTE:

The Event Log is **erased** if power to the switch is interrupted or if you enter the `boot system` command. The contents of the Event Log are **not** erased if you:

- Reboot the switch by choosing the **Reboot Switch** option from the menu interface.
- Enter the `reload` command from the CLI.

Event Log entries

As shown in **Figure 155: Format of an event log entry** on page 583, each Event Log entry is composed of six or seven fields, depending on whether numbering is turned on or not:

Figure 155: *Format of an event log entry*

Severity	Date	Time	Event number	System Module	Management Module	Event Message
M	10/28/09	21:45:42	03002	system:	AM1:	System reboot due to Reset Switch

Item	Description
Severity	<p>One of the following codes (from highest to lowest severity):</p> <p>M—(major) indicates that a fatal switch error has occurred.</p> <p>E—(error) indicates that an error condition occurred on the switch.</p> <p>W—(warning) indicates that a switch service has behaved unexpectedly.I—(information) provides information on normal switch operation.</p> <p>D—(debug) is reserved for internal diagnostic information.</p>
Date	The date in the format mm/dd/yy when an entry is recorded in the log.
Time	The time in the format hh:mm:ss when an entry is recorded in the log.
Event number	The number assigned to an event. You can turn event numbering on and off with the <code>[no] log-number</code> command.
System module	The internal module (such as "ports:" for port manager) that generated a log entry. If VLANs are configured, a VLAN name also appears for an event that is specific to an individual VLAN.
Event message	A brief description of the operating event.

Using the Menu

To display the Event Log from the Main Menu, select `Event Log`. The following example shows a sample event log display.

An event log display

```
Switch 5406z1                               25-Oct-2013  18:02:52
=====CONSOLE - MANAGER MODE -
=====
M 10/25/13 16:30:02 sys: 'Operator cold reboot from CONSOLE session.'
I 10/25/13 17:42:51 00061 system: -----
-
I 10/25/13 17:42:51 00063 system: System went down : 10/25/13 16:30:02
I 10/25/13 17:42:51 00064 system: Operator cold reboot from CONSOLE session.
W 10/25/13 17:42:51 00374 chassis: WARNING: SSC is out of Date: Load 8.2 or
newer
I 10/25/13 17:42:51 00068 chassis: Slot D Inserted
I 10/25/13 17:42:51 00068 chassis: Slot E Inserted
I 10/25/13 17:42:51 00068 chassis: Slot F Inserted
I 10/25/13 17:42:51 00690 udpf: DHCP relay agent feature enabled
I 10/25/13 17:42:51 00433 ssh: Ssh server enabled
I 10/25/13 17:42:51 00400 stack: Stack Protocol disabled
I 10/25/13 17:42:51 00128 tftp: Enable succeeded
I 10/25/13 17:42:51 00417 cdp: CDP enabled

----  Log events stored in memory 1-751. Log events on screen 690-704.

  Actions->    Back    Next page    Prev page    End    Help

Return to previous screen.
Use up/down arrow to scroll one line, left/right arrow keys to
change action selection, and <Enter> to execute action.
```

The **log status line** below the recorded entries states the total number of events stored in the event log and which logged events are currently displayed.

To scroll to other entries in the Event Log, either preceding or following the currently visible portion, press the keys indicated at the bottom of the display (**Back**, **Nextpage**, **Prev page**, or **End**) or the keys described in the following table.

Event Log control keys

Key	Action
[N]	Advances the display by one page (next page).
[P]	Rolls back the display by one page (previous page).
[V]	Advances display by one event (down one line).
[^]	Rolls back display by one event (up one line).
[E]	Advances to the end of the log.
[H]	Displays Help for the Event Log.

Using the CLI

Syntax:

By default, the `show logging` command displays the log messages recorded since the last reboot in chronological order:

-a	Displays all recorded log messages, including those before the last reboot.
-b	Displays log events as the time since the last reboot instead of in a date/time format.
-r	Displays all recorded log messages, with the most recent entries listed first (reverse order).
-s	Displays the active management module (AM) and standby management module (SM) log events.
-t	Displays the log events with a granularity of 10 milliseconds.
-m	Displays only major log events.
-e	Displays only error event class.
-p	Displays only performance log events.
-w	Displays only warning log events.
-i	Displays only informational log events.
-d	Displays only debug log events.

Table Continued

<code>filter</code>	Displays only log filter configuration and status information.
<code><option-str></code>	Displays all Event Log entries that contain the specified text. Use an <code><option-str></code> value with <code>-a</code> or <code>-r</code> to further filter <code>show logging</code> command output.

Example:

To display all Event Log messages that have "system" in the message text or module name, enter the following command:

```
switch# show logging -a system
```

To display all Event Log messages recorded since the last reboot that have the word "system" in the message text or module name, enter:

```
switch# show logging system
```

Clearing Event Log entries

Syntax:

Removes all entries from the event log display output.

Use the `clear logging` command to hide, but not erase, Event Log entries displayed in `show logging` command output. Only new entries generated after you enter the command will be displayed.

To redisplay all hidden entries, including Event Log entries recorded prior to the last reboot, enter the `show logging -a` command.

Turning event numbering on

Syntax:

```
[no] log-numbers
```

Turns event numbering on and off

Using log throttling to reduce duplicate Event Log and SNMP messages

A recurring event can generate a series of duplicate Event Log messages and SNMP traps in a relatively short time. As a result, the Event Log and any configured SNMP trap receivers may be flooded with excessive, exactly identical messages. To help reduce this problem, the switch uses **log throttle periods** to regulate (throttle) duplicate messages for recurring events, and maintains a counter to record how many times it detects duplicates of a particular event since the last system reboot.

When the first instance of a particular event or condition generates a message, the switch initiates a log throttle period that applies to all recurrences of that event. If the logged event recurs during the log throttle period, the switch increments the counter initiated by the first instance of the event, but does not generate a new message.

If the logged event repeats again after the log throttle period expires, the switch generates a duplicate of the first message, increments the counter, and starts a new log throttle period during which any additional instances of the event are counted, but not logged. Thus, for a particular recurring event, the switch displays only one message in the Event Log for each log throttle period in which the event reoccurs. Also, each logged instance of the event message includes counter data showing how many times the event has occurred since the last reboot. The switch manages messages to SNMP trap receivers in the same way.

Log throttle periods

The length of the log throttle period differs according to an event's severity level:

Severity level	Log throttle period
I (Information)	6000 Seconds
W (Warning)	600 Seconds
D (Debug)	60 Seconds
M (Major)	6 Seconds

Example:

Suppose that you configure VLAN 100 on the switch to support PIM operation, but do not configure an IP address. If PIM attempts to use VLAN 100, the switch generates the first instance of the following Event Log message and counter.



NOTE:

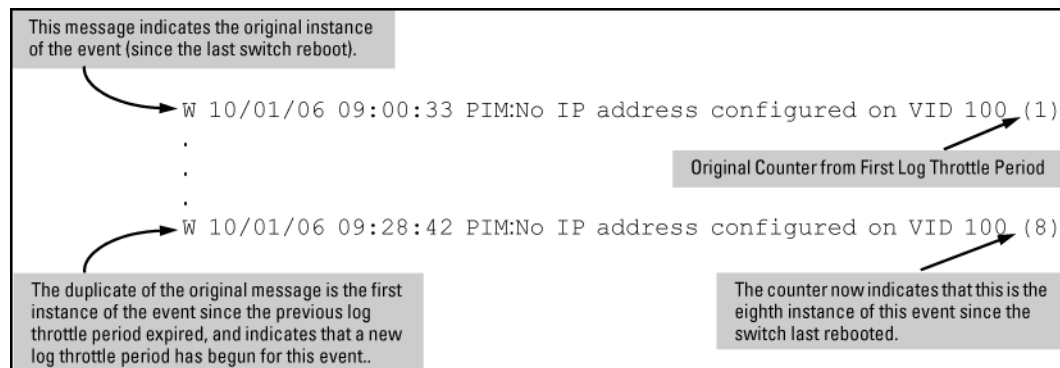
In **The first instance of an event message and counter** on page 587 the counter (1) indicates that this is the first instance of this event since the switch last rebooted.

The first instance of an event message and counter

```
W 10/01/12 09:00:33 PIM:No IP address configured on VID 100 (1)
```

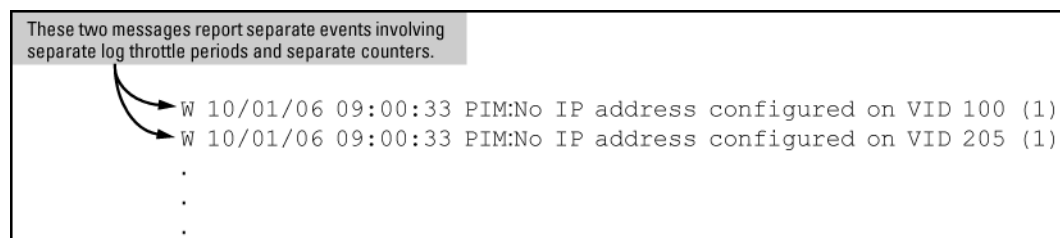
If PIM operation causes the same event to occur six more times during the initial log throttle period, there are no further entries in the Event Log. However, if the event occurs again after the log throttle period has expired, the switch repeats the message (with an updated counter) and starts a new log throttle period.

Figure 156: Duplicate messages over multiple log throttling periods



Note that if the same type of event occurs under different circumstances, the switch handles these as unrelated events for the purpose of Event Log messages. For example, if PIM operation simultaneously detects that VLANs 100 and 205 are configured without IP addresses, you see log messages similar to the following:

Figure 157: Example: of log messages generated by unrelated events of the same type



Example: of event counter operation

Suppose the switch detects the following after a reboot:

- Three duplicate instances of the PIM "Send error" during the first log throttle period for this event
- Five more instances of the same Send error during the second log throttle period for this event
- Four instances of the same Send error during the third log throttle period for this event

In this case, the duplicate message appears three times in the Event Log (once for each log throttle period for the event being described), and the duplicate message counter increments as shown in the following table. (The same operation applies for messages sent to any configured SNMP trap receivers.)

Table 33: *How the duplicate message counter increments*

Instances during 1st log throttle period	Instances during 2nd log throttle period	Instances during 3rd log throttle period	Duplicate message counter ¹
3			1
	5		4
		4	9

¹ This value always comprises the first instance of the duplicate message in the current log throttle period plus all previous occurrences of the duplicate message occurring since the switch last rebooted.

Reporting information about changes to the running configuration

Syslog can be used for sending notifications to a remote syslog server about changes made to the running configuration. The notifications in the syslog messages are sent in ASCII format and contain this information:

- Notice-Type: Describes the syslog notification as a "running config change".
- Event-ID: Identifier for the running config change event that occurred on the switch.
- Config-Method: The source for the running config change.
- Device-Name: The managed device.
- User-Name: User who made the running config change.
- Remote-IP-Address: IP address of a remote host from which the user is connected.

Syntax:

```
[no] logging notify <running-config-change> [transmission-interval <0-4294967295>
```

Enables sending the running configuration change notifications to the syslog server.

The `no` form of the command disables sending the running configuration changes to the syslog server.

Default: Disabled

<code><running-config-change ></code>	Mandatory option for the notify parameter. Specifies the type of notification to send.
<code>transmission-interval</code> <code><0-4294967295></code>	Specifies the time interval (in seconds) between the transmission of two consecutive notifications. Running config changes occurring within the specified interval will not generate syslog notifications.

A value of zero means there is no limit; a notification is sent for every running config change.

Default: Zero

Sending running config changes to the syslog server

```
switch(config)# logging notify running-config-change
transmission-interval 10
```

Debug/syslog operation

While the Event Log records switch-level progress, status, and warning messages on the switch, the debug/system logging (**syslog**) feature provides a way to record Event Log and debug messages on a remote device. For example, you can send messages about routing misconfigurations and other network protocol details to an external device, and later use them to debug network-level problems.

Debug/syslog messaging

The debug/syslog feature allows you to specify the types of Event Log and debug messages that you want to send to an external device. You can perform the following operations:

- Use the `debug` command to configure messaging reports for the following event types:
 - Events recorded in the switch's Event Log
 - LLDP events
 - SSH events
- Use the `logging` command to select a subset of Event Log messages to send to an external device for debugging purposes according to:
 - Severity level
 - System module

Hostname in syslog messages

The syslog now messages the sender identified by hostname.

The hostname field identifies the switch that originally sends the syslog message. Configurable through the CLI and SNMP, the format of the hostname field supports the following formats:

- `ip-address`: The IP address of the sending interface will be used as the message origin identifier. This is the default format for the origin identifier. The IP address of the sending interface (in dotted decimal notation) is the default format.
- `hostname`: The hostname of the sending switch will be used as the message origin identifier.
- `none`: No origin identifier will be embedded in the syslog message. Nilvalue is used as defined by “-”.

This configuration is system-wide, not per syslog server. There is no support for fully-qualified domain name.

Logging origin-id

Use the `logging origin-id` command to specify the content for the hostname field.

Syntax:

```
logging origin-id [ip-address|hostname|none]
```

```
[no] logging origin-id [ip-address|hostname|none]
```

To reset the hostname field content back to default (IP-address), use the `no` form of the command.

filter

Creates a filter to restrict which events are logged.

IP-ADDR

Adds an IPv4 address to the list of receiving syslog servers.

IPV6-ADDR

Adds an IPv6 address to the list of receiving syslog servers.

origin-id

Sends the Syslog messages with the specified origin-id.

notify

Notifies the specified type sent to the syslog server(s).

priority-descr

A text string associated with the values of facility, severity, and system-module.

severity

Event messages of the specified severity or higher sent to the syslog server.

system-module

Event messages of the specified system module (subsystem) sent to the syslog server.

hostname

Sets the hostname of the device as the origin-id.

none

Disables origin-id in the syslog message.

Add an IP address to the list of receiving syslog servers.

Use of `no` without an IP address specified will remove all IP addresses from the list of syslog receivers. If an IP address is specified, that receiver will be removed. Both link-local with zone ID and global IPv6 addresses are supported.

- Specify syslog server facility with the option `<facility>`. The command `no logging <facility>` sets the facility back to defaults.
- Specify filtering rules.
- Specify severity for event messages to be filtered to the syslog server with the option `<severity>`. The command `no logging <severity>` sets the severity back to default.

- Event messages of specified system module will be sent to the syslog server. Using `no` sends messages from all system modules. Messages are first filtered by selected severity.
- Specify syslog server transport layer with options `[udp] | [tcp] | [tls]`.
- Specify syslog server port number with options `[udp PORT-NUM] | [tcp PORT-NUM] | [tls PORT-NUM]`.
- Specify notification types to be sent to the syslog server.
- Use the option `transmission-interval` to control the egress rate limit for transmitting notifications, 0 value means there is no rate limit. The values are in seconds. Only one syslog message is allowed for transmission within specified time interval.
- Specify the origin information for the syslog messages with the option `origin-id`.



NOTE: When the syslog server receives messages from the switch, the IPv6 address of the switch is partly displayed.

Example:

Configured Host Ipv6 Address: 2001::1

Expected Syslog message:

Syslog message: USER.INFO: Oct 11 02:40:02 2001::1 00025 ip: ST1CMDR: VLAN60: ip address 30.1.1.1/24 configured on vlan 60

Actual Truncated syslog message:

Syslog message: USER.INFO: Oct 11 02:40:02 2001:: 00025 ip: ST1CMDR: VLAN60: ip address 30.1.1.1/24 configured on vlan 60

Use the command in the following example to set the origin-id to the hostname.

Setting the origin-id to the hostname

```
switch(config)# logging origin-id hostname
```

The following syslog message will occur:

```
<14> Jan 1 00:15:35 2910a1-24G 00076 ports: port 2 is now on-line
```

Use the command in the following example to set the origin-id to none (nilvalue).

Setting the origin-id to none (nilvalue)

```
switch(config)# logging origin-id none
```

The following syslog message will occur:

```
<14> Jan 1 00:15:35 - 00076 ports: port 2 is now on-line
```

Use any of the commands in the following example to set the origin-id to ip-address (default).

Setting the origin-id to ip-address (default)

```
switch(config)# logging origin-id ip-address
```

```
switch(config)# no logging origin-id hostname
```

```
switch(config)# no logging origin-id none
```

The following syslog message will occur:

```
<14> Jan 1 00:15:35 169.254.230.236 00076 ports: port 2 is now on-line
```

Viewing the identification of the syslog message sender

Use the commands `show debug` or `show running-config` to display the identification of the syslog message sender. The default option for `origin-id` is `ip-address`. The command `show running-config` will not display the configured option when `origin-id` is set to the default value of `ip address`.

When `hostname` or `none` is configured using `logging origin-id`, the same displays as part of the `show running-config` command.

Syntax:

```
show debug
```

Default option is `ip-address`.

The following shows the output of the `show debug` command when configured without `login origin-id`.

Output of the show debug command when configured without login origin-id

```
Debug Logging
  Origin identifier: Outgoing Interface IP
  Destination:      None
```

```
Enabled debug types:
  None are enabled.
```

The command `logging origin-id hostname` will produce the syslog message shown in the following example.

Syslog message for logging origin-id hostname

```
Debug Logging
  Origin identifier: Hostname
  Destination:      None
```

```
Enabled debug types:
  None are enabled.
```

The command `logging origin-id none` will produce the syslog message shown in the following example.

Syslog message for logging origin-id none

```
Debug Logging
  Origin identifier: none
  Destination:      None
```

```
Enabled debug types:
  None are enabled.
```

Syntax:

```
show running-config
```

The following example shows the output of the `show running-config` command.

Output of the show running-config command

The command logging **origin-id hostname** will display the following:
logging origin-id hostname

The command logging origin-id none will display as the following:
logging origin-id none

SNMP MIB

SNMP support will be provided through the following MIB objects.

HpicfSyslogOriginId = textual-convention

Description

This textual convention enumerates the origin identifier of syslog message.

Syntax: integer

ip-address
hostname
none

Status

current

hpicfSyslogOriginId OBJECT-TYPE

Description

Specifies the content of a Hostname field in the header of a syslog message.

Syntax:

HpicfSyslogOriginId

Max-access

read-write

Status

current

Default

ip-address

Debug/syslog destination devices

To use debug/syslog messaging, you must configure an external device as the logging destination by using the logging and debug destination commands. For more information, see [Debug destinations](#) on page 598 and [Configuring a syslog server](#) on page 599.

A debug/syslog destination device can be a syslog server and/or a console session. You can configure debug and logging messages to be sent to:

- Up to six syslog servers
- A CLI session through a direct RS-232 console connection, or a Telnet or SSH session

Debug/syslog configuration commands

Using the Debug/Syslog feature, you can perform the following operations:

- Configure the switch to send Event Log messages to one or more Syslog servers. In addition, you can configure the messages to be sent to the User log facility (default) or to another log facility on configured Syslog servers.
- Configure the switch to send Event Log messages to the current management- access session (serial-connect CLI, Telnet CLI, or SSH).
- Disable all Syslog debug logging while retaining the Syslog addresses from the switch configuration. This allows you to configure Syslog messaging and then disable and re-enable it as needed.
- Display the current debug configuration. If Syslog logging is currently active, the list of configured Syslog servers is displayed.
- Display the current Syslog server list when Syslog logging is disabled.

Configuring debug/syslog operation

Procedure

1. To use a syslog server as the destination device for debug messaging, follow these steps:
 - a. Enter the `logging <syslog-ip-addr>` command at the global configuration level to configure the syslog server IP address and enable syslog logging. Optionally, you may also specify the destination subsystem to be used on the syslog server by entering the `logging facility` command. If no other syslog server IP addresses are configured, entering the `logging` command enables both debug messaging to a syslog server and the event debug message type. As a result, the switch automatically sends Event Log messages to the syslog server, regardless of other debug types that may be configured.
 - b. Re-enter the `logging` command in Step 1a to configure additional syslog servers. You can configure up to a total of six servers. (When multiple server IP addresses are configured, the switch sends the debug message types that you configure in **Step 3** to all IP addresses.)
2. To use a CLI session on a destination device for debug messaging:
 - a. Set up a serial, Telnet, or SSH connection to access the switch's CLI.
 - b. Enter the `debug destination session` command at the manager level.
3. Enable the types of debug messages to be sent to configured syslog servers, the current session device, or both by entering the `debug <debug-type>` command and selecting the desired options.

Repeat this step if necessary to enable multiple debug message types.

By default, Event Log messages are sent to configured debug destination devices. To block Event Log messages from being sent, enter the `no debug event` command.

4. If necessary, enable a subset of Event Log messages to be sent to configured syslog servers by specifying a severity level, a system module, or both using the following commands:

```
switch(config)# logging severity <debug | major | error | warning | info>
switch(config)# logging system-module <system-module>
```

To display a list of valid values for each command, enter `logging severity` or `logging system-module` followed by `?` or pressing the Tab key.

5. If you configure system-module, severity-level values, or both to filter Event Log messages, when you finish troubleshooting, you may want to reset these values to their default settings so that the switch sends all Event Log messages to configured debug destinations (syslog servers, CLI session, or both).

To remove a configured setting and restore the default values that send all Event Log messages, enter one or both of the following commands:

```
switch(config)# no logging severity <debug | major | error | warning | info>
switch(config)# no logging system-module <system-module>
```



CAUTION: If you configure a severity-level, system-module, logging destination, or logging facility value and save the settings to the startup configuration (For example, by entering the `write memory` command), the debug settings are saved after a system reboot (power cycle or reboot) and re-activated on the switch. As a result, after switch startup, one of the following situations may occur:

- Only a partial set of Event Log messages may be sent to configured debug destinations.
- Messages may be sent to a previously configured syslog server used in an earlier debugging session.

Viewing a debug/syslog configuration

Use the `show debug` command to display the currently configured settings for:

- Debug message types and Event Log message filters (severity level and system module) sent to debug destinations
- Debug destinations (syslog servers or CLI session) and syslog server facility to be used

Syntax:

```
show debug
```

Displays the currently configured debug logging destinations and message types selected for debugging purposes. (If no syslog server address is configured with the `logging <syslog-ip-addr>` command, no `show debug` command output is displayed.)

Output of the show debug command

```
switch(config)# show debug
```

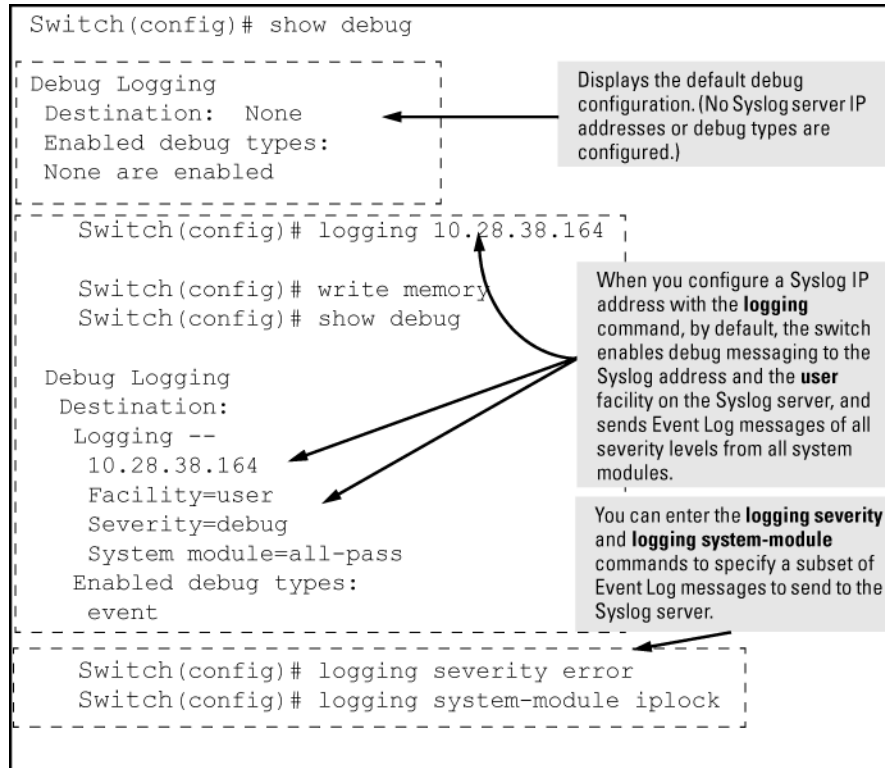
```
Debug Logging
Destination:
Logging --
 10.28.38.164
Facility=kern
Severity=warning
System module=all-pass
```

```
Enabled debug types:
event
```

Example:

In the following Example:, no syslog servers are configured on the switch (default setting). When you configure a syslog server, debug logging is enabled to send Event Log messages to the server. To limit the Event Log messages sent to the syslog server, specify a set of messages by entering the `logging severity` and `logging system-module` commands.

Figure 158: Syslog configuration to receive event log messages from specified system module and severity levels



As shown at the top of **Figure 158: Syslog configuration to receive event log messages from specified system module and severity levels** on page 596, if you enter the `show debug` command when no syslog server IP address is configured, the configuration settings for syslog server facility, Event Log severity level, and system module are not displayed. However, after you configure a syslog server address and enable syslog logging, all debug and logging settings are displayed with the `show debug` command.

If you do not want Event Log messages sent to syslog servers, you can block the messages from being sent by entering the `no debug event` command. (There is no effect on the normal logging of messages in the switch's Event Log.)

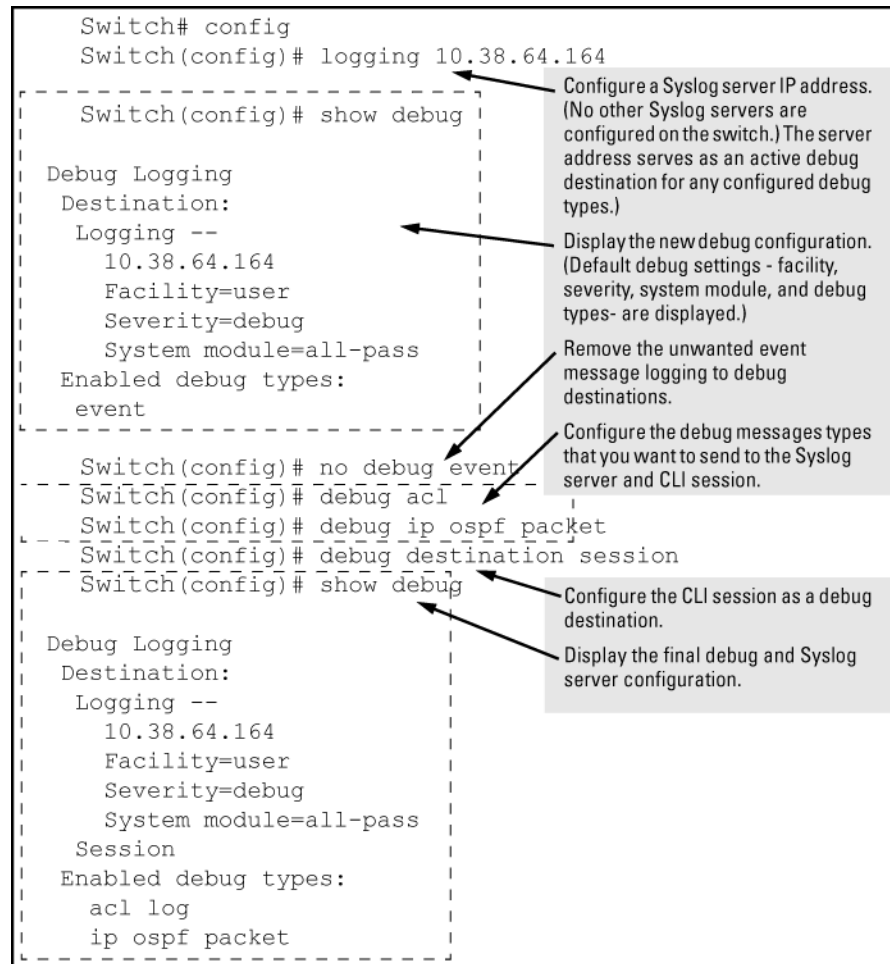
Example:

The next Example: shows how to configure:

- Debug logging of ACL and IP-OSPF packet messages on a syslog server at 18.38.64.164 (with user as the default logging facility).
- Display of these messages in the CLI session of your terminal device's management access to the switch.
- Blocking Event Log messages from being sent from the switch to the syslog server and a CLI session.

To configure syslog operation in these ways with the debug/syslog feature disabled on the switch, enter the commands shown in **Figure 159: Debug/syslog configuration for multiple debug types and multiple destinations** on page 597.

Figure 159: Debug/syslog configuration for multiple debug types and multiple destinations



Debug command

At the manager level, use the `debug` command to perform two main functions:

- Specify the types of event messages to be sent to an external destination.
- Specify the destinations to which selected message types are sent.

By default, no debug destination is enabled and only Event Log messages are enabled to be sent.



NOTE:

To configure a syslog server, use the `logging <syslog-ip-addr>` command. For more information, see **Configuring a syslog server** on page 599.

Debug messages

Syntax:


```
[no] debug <debug-type>
```

Debug destinations

Use the `debug destination` command to enable (and disable) syslog messaging on a syslog server or to a CLI session for specified types of debug and Event Log messages.

Syntax:

```
[no] debug destination {<logging | session | buffer>}
```

logging	<p>Enables syslog logging to configured syslog servers so that the debug message types specified by the <code>debug <debug-type></code> command (see Debug messages on page 598) are sent. (Default: Logging disabled) To configure a syslog server IP address, see Configuring a syslog server on page 599.</p> <div> NOTE: Debug messages from the switches covered in this guide have a debug severity level. Because the default configuration of some syslog servers ignores syslog messages with the debug severity level, ensure that the syslog servers you want to use to receive debug messages are configured to accept the debug level. For more information, see Operating notes for debug and Syslog on page 604.</div>
session	<p>Enables transmission of event notification messages to the CLI session that most recently executed this command. The session can be on any one terminal emulation device with serial, Telnet, or SSH access to the CLI at the Manager level prompt (<code>switch#_</code>). If more than one terminal device has a console session with the CLI, you can redirect the destination from the current device to another device. Do so by executing <code>debug destination session</code> in the CLI on the terminal device on which you now want to display event messages. Event message types received on the selected CLI session are configured with the <code>debug <debug-type></code> command.</p>
buffer	<p>Enables syslog logging to send the debug message types specified by the <code>debug <debug-type></code> command to a buffer in switch memory. To view the debug messages stored in the switch buffer, enter the <code>show debug buffer</code> command.</p>

Logging command

At the global configuration level, the `logging` command allows you to enable debug logging on specified syslog servers and select a subset of Event Log messages to send for debugging purposes according to:

- Severity level
- System module

By specifying both a severity level and system module, you can use both configured settings to filter the Event Log messages you want to use to troubleshoot switch or network error conditions.



CAUTION:

After you configure a syslog server and a severity level and/or system module to filter the Event Log messages that are sent, if you save these settings to the startup configuration file by entering the `write memory` command, these debug and logging settings are automatically re-activated after a switch reboot or power recycle. The debug settings and destinations configured in your previous troubleshooting session will then be applied to the current session, which may not be desirable.

After a reboot, messages remain in the Event Log and are not deleted. However, after a power recycle, all Event Log messages are deleted.

If you configure a severity level, system module, or both to temporarily filter Event Log messages, be sure to reset the values to their default settings by entering the `no` form of the following commands to ensure that Event Log messages of all severity levels and from all system modules are sent to configured syslog servers:

```
switch(config)# no logging severity <debug | major | error | warning | info>
switch(config)# no logging system-module <system-module>
```

Configuring a syslog server

Syslog is a client-server logging tool that allows a client switch to send event notification messages to a networked device operating with syslog server software. Messages sent to a syslog server can be stored to a file for later debugging analysis.

To use the syslog feature, you must install and configure a syslog server application on a networked host accessible to the switch. For instructions, see the documentation for the syslog server application.

To configure a syslog service, use the `logging <syslog-ip-addr>` command as shown below.

When you configure a syslog server, Event Log messages are automatically enabled to be sent to the server. To reconfigure this setting, use the following commands:

- `debug`
Specifies additional debug message types (see [Debug messages](#) on page 598).
- `logging`
Configures the system module or severity level used to filter the Event Log messages sent to configured syslog servers. (See [Configuring the severity level for Event Log messages sent to a syslog server](#) on page 603 and [Configuring the system module used to select the Event Log messages sent to a syslog server](#) on page 603.)

To display the currently configured syslog servers as well as the types of debug messages and the severity-level and system-module filters used to specify the Event Log messages that are sent, enter the `show debug` command (See [Debug/syslog configuration commands](#) on page 594).

Syntax:

```
[no] logging <syslog-ip-addr>
```

Enables or disables syslog messaging to the specified IP address. You can configure up to six addresses. If you configure an address when none are already configured, this command enables destination logging (syslog) and the Event debug type. Therefore, at a minimum, the switch begins sending Event Log messages to configured syslog servers. The ACL, IP-OSPF, and/or IP-RIP message types are also sent to the syslog servers if they are currently enabled as debug types. (See [Debug messages](#) on page 598.)

<code>no logging</code>	Removes all currently configured syslog logging destinations from the running configuration. Using this form of the command to delete the only remaining syslog server address disables debug destination logging on the switch, but the default Event debug type does not change.
<code>no logging <syslog-ip-address></code>	Removes only the specified syslog logging destination from the running configuration. Removing all configured syslog destinations with the <code>no logging</code> command (or a specified syslog server destination with the <code>no logging <syslog-ip-address></code> command) does not delete the syslog server IP addresses stored in the startup configuration.

Deleting syslog addresses in the startup configuration

Enter a `no logging` command followed by the `write memory` command.

Verifying the deletion of a syslog server address

Display the startup configuration by entering the `show config` command.

Blocking the messages sent to configured syslog servers from the currently configured debug message type

Enter the `no debug <debug-type>` command. (See [Debug messages](#) on page 598.)

Disabling syslog logging on the switch without deleting configured server addresses

Enter the `no debug destination logging` command. Note that, unlike the case in which no syslog servers are configured, if one or more syslog servers are already configured and syslog messaging is disabled, configuring a new server address does not re-enable syslog messaging. To re-enable syslog messaging, you must enter the `debug destination logging` command.

Sending logging messages using TCP

Syntax:

```
[no] logging <ip-addr> [udp 1024-49151 | tcp 1024-49151]
```

Allows the configuration of the UDP or TCP transport protocol for the transmission of logging messages to a syslog server.

Specifying a destination port with UDP or TCP is optional.

Default ports: UDP port is 514

TCP port is 1470

Default Transport Protocol: UDP

Because TCP is a connection-oriented protocol, a connection must be present before the logging information is sent. This helps ensure that the logging message will reach the syslog server. Each configured syslog server needs its own connection. You can configure the destination port that is used for the transmission of the logging messages.

Configuring TCP for logging message transmission using the default port

```
switch(config)# logging 192.123.4.5 tcp
```

(Default TCP port 1470 is used.)

Configuring TCP for logging message transmission using a specified port

```
switch(config)# logging 192.123.4.5 9514
```

(TCP port 9514 is used.)

Configuring UDP for logging message transmission using the default port

```
switch(config)# logging 192.123.4.5 udp
```

(Default UDP port 514 is used.)

Configuring UDP for logging message transmission using a specified port

```
switch(config)# logging 192.123.4.5 9512
```

(UDP port 9512 is used.)

Syntax:

```
[no] logging facility <facility-name>
```

The logging facility specifies the destination subsystem used in a configured syslog server. (All configured syslog servers must use the same subsystem.) Hewlett Packard Enterprise recommends the default (user) subsystem unless your application specifically requires another subsystem. Options include:

user	(default) Random user-level messages
kern	Kernel messages
mail	Mail system
daemon	System daemons
auth	Security/authorization messages
syslog	Messages generated internally by syslog
lpr	Line-printer subsystem
news	Netnews subsystem
uucp	uucp subsystem
cron	cron/at subsystem
sys9	cron/at subsystem
sys10 - sys14	Reserved for system use
local10 - local17	Reserved for system use

Use the `no` form of the command to remove the configured facility and reconfigure the default (user) value.

Adding a description for a Syslog server

You can associate a user-friendly description with each of the IP addresses (IPv4 only) configured for syslog using the CLI or SNMP.



NOTE:

The Hewlett Packard Enterprise MIB `hpicfSyslog.mib` allows the configuration and monitoring of syslog for SNMP (RFC 3164 supported).



CAUTION:

Entering the `no logging` command removes ALL the syslog server addresses without a verification prompt.

The CLI command is:

Syntax:

```
logging <ip-addr> [control-descr ZZZZTRISHZZZZ <text_string>]
no logging <ip-addr> [control-descr]
```

An optional user-friendly description that can be associated with a server IP address. If no description is entered, this is blank. If `<text_string>` contains white space, use quotes around the string. IPv4 addresses only.

Use the `no` form of the command to remove the description. Limit: 255 characters



NOTE:

To remove the description using SNMP, set the description to an empty string.

The logging command with a control description

```
switch(config)# logging 10.10.10.2 control-descr syslog_one
```

Adding a priority description

This description can be added with the CLI or SNMP. The CLI command is:

Syntax:

```
logging priority-descr <text_string>
no logging priority-descr
```

Provides a user-friendly description for the combined filter values of `severity` and `system module`. If no description is entered, this is blank.

If `<text_string>` contains white space, use quotes around the string.

Use the `no` form of the command to remove the description.

Limit: 255 characters

The logging command with a priority description

```
switch(config)# logging priority-descr severe-pri
```

**NOTE:**

A notification is sent to the SNMP agent if there are any changes to the syslog parameters, either through the CLI or with SNMP.

Configuring the severity level for Event Log messages sent to a syslog server

Event Log messages are entered with one of the following severity levels (from highest to lowest):

Major	A fatal error condition has occurred on the switch.
Error	An error condition has occurred on the switch.
Warning	A switch service has behaved unexpectedly.
Information	Information on a normal switch event.
Debug	Reserved for switch internal diagnostic information.

Using the `logging severity` command, you can select a set of Event Log messages according to their severity level and send them to a syslog server. Messages of the selected and higher severity will be sent. To configure a syslog server, see [Configuring a syslog server](#) on page 599.

Syntax:

```
[no] logging severity {< major | error | warning | info | debug >}
```

Configures the switch to send all Event Log messages with a severity level equal to or higher than the specified value to all configured Syslog servers.

Default: `debug` (Reports messages of all severity levels.)

Use the `no` form of the command to remove the configured severity level and reconfigure the default value, which sends Event Log messages of all severity levels to syslog servers.



NOTE: The severity setting does not affect event notification messages that the switch normally sends to the Event Log. All messages remain recorded in the Event Log.

Configuring the system module used to select the Event Log messages sent to a syslog server

Event Log messages contain the name of the system module that reported the event. Using the `logging system-module` command, you can select a set of Event Log messages according to the originating system module and send them to a syslog server.

Syntax:

```
[no] logging system-module <system-module>
```

Configures the switch to send all Event Log messages being logged from the specified system module to configured syslog servers. (To configure a syslog server, see [Configuring a syslog server](#).)

Default: `all-pass` (Reports all Event Log messages.)

Use the `no` form of the command to remove the configured system module value and reconfigure the default value, which sends Event Log messages from all system modules to syslog servers.

You can select messages from only one system module to be sent to a syslog server; you cannot configure messages from multiple system modules to be sent. If you re-enter the command with a different system module name, the currently configured value is replaced with the new one.



NOTE: This setting has no effect on event notification messages that the switch normally sends to the Event Log.

Enabling local command logging

Use this command to enable local command logging. This satisfies the NDcPP certification requirement that:

- All administrative actions (commands) are logged locally.
- Local command log storage can be enabled and disabled.
- The identity of the user causing an event is logged.
- When the command log is exhausted by 80% and wraparound occurs, the event is logged and a trap is generated.
- Log messages have a maximum of 240 characters (the RMON event maximum string length) and are stored in the command log buffer.
- Log messages greater than the maximum length are truncated and are not stored in the command log buffer.

Syntax:

```
[no] logging command
```

Operating notes for debug and Syslog

- Rebooting the switch or pressing the `Reset` button resets the debug configuration.

Debug option	Effect of a reboot or reset
logging (debug destination)	If syslog server IP addresses are stored in the startup-config file, they are saved across a reboot and the logging destination option remains enabled. Otherwise, the logging destination is disabled.
session (debug destination)	Disabled.
ACL (debug type)	Disabled.
All (debug type)	Disabled.
event (debug type)	If a syslog server IP address is configured in the startup-config file, the sending of Event Log messages is reset to <code>enabled</code> , regardless of the last active setting. If no syslog server is configured, the sending of Event Log messages is <code>disabled</code> .
IP (debug type)	Disabled.

- Debug commands do not affect normal message output to the Event Log.

Using the `debug event` command, you can specify that Event Log messages are sent to the debug destinations you configure (CLI session, syslog servers, or both) in addition to the Event Log.

- Ensure that your syslog servers accept debug messages.

All syslog messages resulting from a debug operation have a "debug" severity level. If you configure the switch to send debug messages to a syslog server, ensure that the server's syslog application is configured to accept the "debug" severity level. (The default configuration for some syslog applications ignores the "debug" severity level.)

- Duplicate IP addresses are not stored in the list of syslog servers.
- If the default severity value is in effect, all messages that have severities greater than the default value are passed to syslog. For example, if the default severity is "debug," all messages that have severities greater than debug are passed to syslog.
- There is a limit of six syslog servers. All syslog servers are sent the same messages using the same filter parameters. An error is generated for an attempt to add more than six syslog servers.

Diagnostic tools

Port auto-negotiation

When a link LED does not light (indicating loss of link between two devices), the most common reason is a failure of port auto-negotiation between the connecting ports. If a link LED fails to light when you connect the switch to a port on another device, do the following:

Procedure

1. Ensure that the switch port and the port on the attached end-node are both set to `Auto` mode.
2. If the attached end-node does not have an `Auto` mode setting, you must manually configure the switch port to the same setting as the end-node port.

Ping and link tests

The ping test and the link test are point-to-point tests between your switch and another IEEE 802.3-compliant device on your network. These tests can tell you whether the switch is communicating properly with another device.



NOTE:

To respond to a ping test or a link test, the device you are trying to reach must be IEEE 802.3-compliant.

Ping test

A test of the path between the switch and another device on the same or another IP network that can respond to IP packets (ICMP Echo Requests). To use the `ping` (or `tracert`) command with host names or fully qualified domain names, see **DNS resolver** on page 617.

Link test

A test of the connection between the switch and a designated network device on the same LAN (or VLAN, if configured). During the link test, IEEE 802.2 test packets are sent to the designated network device in the same VLAN or broadcast domain. The remote device must be able to respond with an 802.2 Test Response Packet.

Executing ping or link tests (WebAgent)

To start a ping or link test in the WebAgent:

1. In the navigation pane, click **Troubleshooting**.
2. Click **Ping/Link Test**.
3. Click **Start**.
4. To halt a link or ping test before it concludes, click **Stop**.

For an Example: of the text screens, see **Figure 160: Ping test and link test screen on the WebAgent** on page 606.

Figure 160: Ping test and link test screen on the WebAgent

The image shows two screenshots of the WebAgent interface. The top screenshot is titled 'Ping Test' and contains a 'Ping Status' section with three input fields: 'Destination IP Address:', 'Number of Packets:' (set to 5), and 'Time Out in Seconds:' (set to 1). The bottom screenshot is titled 'Link Test' and contains a 'Link Status' section with four input fields: 'Destination MAC Address:', 'VLAN:' (a dropdown menu), 'Number of Packets:' (set to 5), and 'Time Out in Seconds:' (set to 1). Both sections have 'Start', 'Stop', and '?' buttons at the top right.

Destination IP Address is the network address of the target, or destination, device to which you want to test a connection with the switch. An IP address is in the X.X.X.X format where X is a decimal number between 0 and 255.

Number of Packets to Send is the number of times you want the switch to attempt to test a connection.

Timeout in Seconds is the number of seconds to allow per attempt to test a connection before determining that the current attempt has failed.

Testing the path between the switch and another device on an IP network

The ping test uses ICMP echo requests and ICMP echo replies to determine if another device is alive. It also measures the amount of time it takes to receive a reply from the specified destination. The `ping` command has several extended commands that allow advanced checking of destination availability.

Syntax:

Sends ICMP echo requests to determine if another device is alive.

Ping tests

```
switch# ping 10.10.10.10
10.10.10.10 is alive, time = 15 ms

switch# ping 10.10.10.10 repetitions 3
10.10.10.10 is alive, iteration 1, time = 15 ms
10.10.10.10 is alive, iteration 1, time = 15 ms
10.10.10.10 is alive, iteration 1, time = 15 ms

switch# ping 10.10.10.10 timeout 2
10.10.10.10 is alive, time = 10 ms
```

```
switch# ping 10.11.12.13
The destination address is unreachable.
```

Halting a ping test

To halt a ping test before it concludes, press **[Ctrl] [C]**.



NOTE:

To use the `ping` (or `traceroute`) command with host names or fully qualified domain names, see **DNS resolver** on page 617.

Issuing single or multiple link tests

Single or multiple link tests can have varying repetitions and timeout periods. The defaults are:

- Repetitions: 1 (1 to 999)
- Timeout: 5 seconds (1 to 256 seconds)

Syntax:

```
link <mac-address> [repetitions <1-999>] [timeout <1-256>] [vlan < vlan-id >]
```

Example:

Figure 161: *Link tests*

Basic Link Test	Switch# link 0030c1-7fcc40 Link-test passed.
Link Test with Repetitions	Switch# link 0030c1-7fcc40 repetitions 3 802.2 TEST packets sent: 3, responses received: 3
Link Test with Repetitions and Timeout	Switch# link 0030c1-7fcc40 repetitions 3 timeout 1 802.2 TEST packets sent: 3, responses received: 3
Link Test Over a Specific VLAN	Switch# link 0030c1-7fcc40 repetitions 3 timeout 1 vlan 1 802.2 TEST packets sent: 3, responses received: 3
Link Test Over a Specific VLAN; Test Fail	Switch# link 0030c1-7fcc40 repetitions 3 timeout 1 vlan 222 802.2 TEST packets sent: 3, responses received: 0

Tracing the route from the switch to a host address

The `traceroute` command enables you to trace the route from the switch to a host address.

This command outputs information for each (router) hop between the switch and the destination address. Note that every time you execute `traceroute`, it uses the same default settings unless you specify otherwise for that instance of the command.

Syntax:

Lists the IP address or hostname of each hop in the route, plus the time in microseconds for the `traceroute` packet reply to the switch for each hop.



NOTE: For information about `traceroute6`, see the IPv6 configuration guide for your switch.

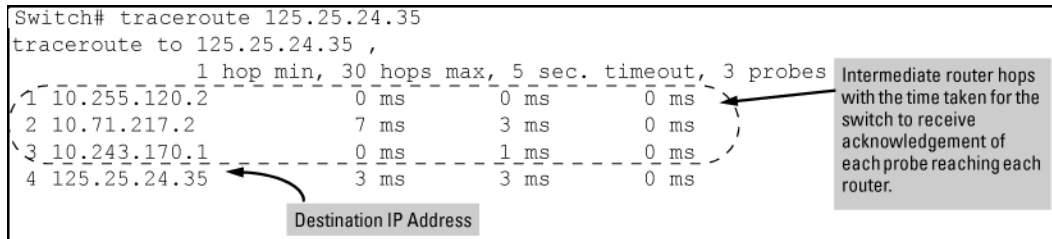
Halting an ongoing traceroute search

Press the **[Ctrl] [C]** keys.

A low `maxttl` causes traceroute to halt before reaching the destination address

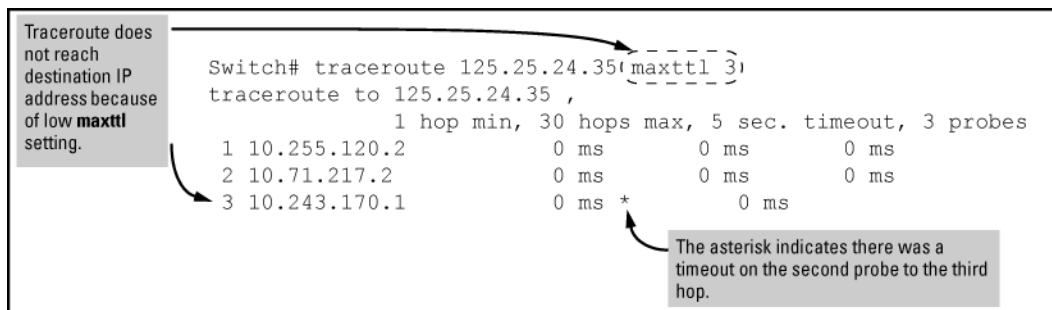
Executing `traceroute` with its default values for a destination IP address that is four hops away produces a result similar to this:

Figure 162: A completed traceroute enquiry



Continuing from the previous Example: (**Figure 162: A completed traceroute enquiry** on page 608), executing `traceroute` with an insufficient `maxttl` for the actual hop count produces an output similar to this:

Figure 163: Incomplete traceroute because of low `maxttl` setting



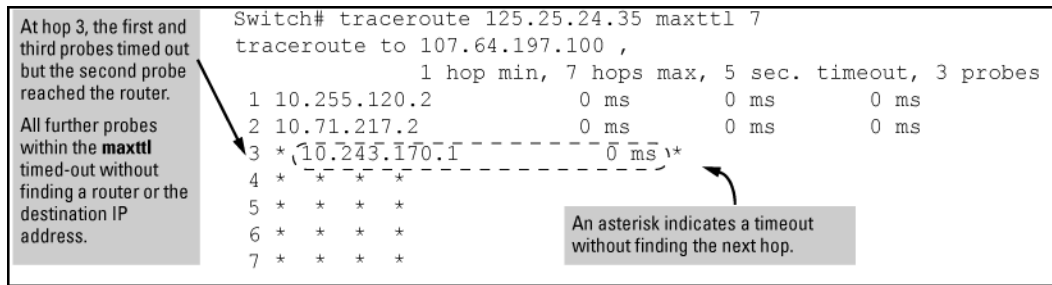
If a network condition prevents traceroute from reaching the destination

Common reasons for `traceroute` failing to reach a destination include:

- Timeouts (indicated by one asterisk per probe, per hop)
- Unreachable hosts
- Unreachable networks
- Interference from firewalls
- Hosts configured to avoid responding

Executing `traceroute` where the route becomes blocked or otherwise fails results in an output marked by timeouts for all probes beyond the last detected hop. For example, with a maximum hop count of 7 (`maxttl = 7`), where the route becomes blocked or otherwise fails, the output appears similar to this:

Figure 164: *Traceroute failing to reach the destination address*



Viewing switch configuration and operation

In some troubleshooting scenarios, you may need to view the switch configuration to diagnose a problem. The complete switch configuration is contained in a file that you can browse from the CLI using the commands described in this section.

Viewing the startup or running configuration file

Syntax:

```
write terminal
```

Displays the running configuration.

<code>show config</code>	Displays the startup configuration.
<code>show running-config</code>	Displays the running-config file.

For more information and examples of how to use these commands, see “Switch Memory and Configuration” in the basic operation guide.

Viewing the configuration file (WebAgent)

To display the running configuration using the WebAgent:

1. In the navigation pane, click **Troubleshooting**.
2. Click **Configuration Report**.
3. Use the right-side scroll bar to scroll through the configuration listing.

Viewing a summary of switch operational data

Syntax:

```
show tech
```

By default, the `show tech` command displays a single output of switch operating and running-configuration data from several internal switch sources, including:

- Image stamp (software version data)
- Running configuration
- Event Log listing
- Boot history
- Port settings
- Status and counters — port status
- IP routes
- Status and counters — VLAN information
- GVRP support
- Load balancing (trunk and LACP)

The `show tech` command on page 610 shows sample output from the `show tech` command.

The `show tech` command

```
switch# show tech

show system

Status and Counters - General System Information

System Name       : Switch
System Contact    :
System Location   :

MAC Age Time (sec) : 300

Time Zone         : 0
Daylight Time Rule : None

Software revision : XX.14.xx      Base MAC Addr  : 001871-c42f00
ROM Version       : XX.12.12      Serial Number  : SG641SU00L

Up Time          : 23 hours      Memory - Total :
CPU Util (%)     : 10             Free           :

IP Mgmt - Pkts Rx : 759          Packet - Total : 6750
                Pkts Tx : 2          Buffers Free  : 5086
                                   Lowest           : 4961
                                   Missed            : 0

show flash
Image      Size(Bytes)   Date   Version
-----
-----
```

To specify the data displayed by the `show tech` command, use the `copy show tech` command.

Saving `show tech` command output to a text file

When you enter the `show tech` command, a summary of switch operational data is sent to your terminal emulator. You can use your terminal emulator's text capture features to save the `show tech` data to a text file for viewing, printing, or sending to an associate to diagnose a problem.

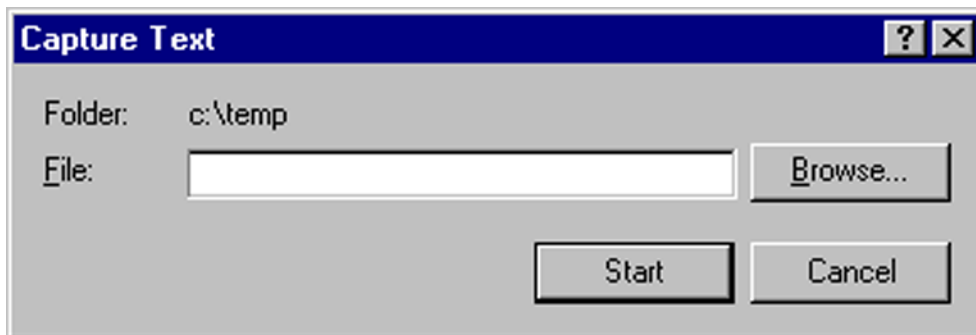
For example, if your terminal emulator is the Hyperterminal application available with Microsoft® Windows® software, you can copy the `show tech` output to a file and then use either Microsoft Word or Notepad to display the data. (In this case, Microsoft Word provides the data in an easier-to-read format.)

The following example uses the Microsoft Windows terminal emulator. If you are using a different terminal emulator application, see the documentation provided with the application.

Procedure

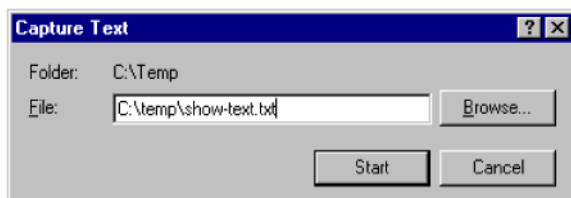
1. In Hyperterminal, click on `Transfer|Capture Text...`

Figure 165: *Capture text window of the Hyperterminal application*



2. In the `File` field, enter the path and file name in which you want to store the `show tech` output.

Figure 166: *Entering a path and filename for saving show tech output*



3. Click **[Start]** to create and open the text file.
4. From the global configuration context, enter the `show tech` command:

```
switch# show tech
```

The `show tech` command output is copied into the text file and displayed on the terminal emulator screen. When the command output stops and displays `-- MORE --`, press the Space bar to display and copy more information. The CLI prompt appears when the command output finishes.

5. Click on `Transfer|Capture Text|Stop` in HyperTerminal to stop copying data and save the text file.
If you do not stop HyperTerminal from copying command output into the text file, additional unwanted data can be copied from the HyperTerminal screen.
6. To access the file, open it in Microsoft Word, Notepad, or a similar text editor.

Viewing more information on switch operation

Use the following commands to display additional information on switch operation for troubleshooting purposes.

Syntax:

```
show boot-history
```

Displays the crash information saved for each management module on the switch.

```
show history
```

Displays the current command history. This command output is used for reference or when you want to repeat a command (See **Displaying the information you need to diagnose problems** on page 613).

```
show system-information
```

Displays globally configured parameters and information on switch operation.

```
show version
```

Displays the software version currently running on the switch and the flash image from which the switch booted (primary or secondary). For more information, see "Displaying Management Information" in the "Redundancy (Switch 8212zl)".

```
show interfaces
```

Displays information on the activity on all switch ports (see "Viewing Port Status and Configuring Port Parameters" in the "Port Status and Configuration").

```
show interfaces-display
```

Displays the same information as the `show interfaces` command and dynamically updates the output every three seconds. Press **Ctrl + C** to stop the dynamic updates of system information. Use the Arrow keys to view information that is off the screen.

Searching for text using pattern matching with show command

Selected portions of the output are displayed, depending on the parameters chosen.

Syntax:

```
show {< command option > | < include | exclude | begin >} <regular expression>
```

Uses matching pattern searches to display selected portions of the output from a `show` command. There is no limit to the number of characters that can be matched. Only regular expressions are permitted; symbols such as the asterisk cannot be substituted to perform more general matching.

include	Only the lines that contain the matching pattern are displayed in the output.
exclude	Only the lines that contain the matching pattern are not displayed in the output.
begin	The display of the output begins with the line that contains the matching pattern.



NOTE: Pattern matching is case-sensitive.

Following are examples of what portions of the running config file display depending on the option chosen.

Pattern matching with include option

```
switch(config)# show run | include ipv6 1
  ipv6 enable
  ipv6 enable
```



```
ipv6 access-list "EH-01"  
switch(config)#
```

¹Displays only lines that contain “ipv6”.

Pattern matching with begin option

```
switch(config)# show run | begin ipv6 1  
    ipv6 enable  
    no untagged 21-24  
    exit  
vlan 20  
    name "VLAN20"  
    untagged 21-24  
    ipv6 enable  
    no ip address  
    exit  
policy qos "michael"  
    exit  
ipv6 access-list "EH-01"  
    sequence 10 deny tcp 2001:db8:255::/48 2001:db8:125::/48  
    exit  
no autorun  
password manager
```

¹Displays the running config beginning at the first line that contains “ipv6”.

The following is an Example: of the `show arp` command output, and then the output displayed when the `include` option has the IP address of 15.255.128.1 as the regular expression.

The show arp command and pattern matching with the include option

```
switch(config)# show arp  
  
IP ARP table  
  
  IP Address      MAC Address      Type      Port  
  -----      -  
  15.255.128.1    00000c-07ac00    dynamic   B1  
  15.255.131.19   00a0c9-b1503d    dynamic  
  15.255.133.150  000bcd-3cbeec    dynamic   B1  
  
switch(config)# show arp | include 15.255.128.1  
15.255.128.1    00000c-07ac00    dynamic   B1
```

Displaying the information you need to diagnose problems

Use the following commands in a troubleshooting session to more accurately display the information you need to diagnose a problem.

Syntax:

```
alias
```

Creates a shortcut alias name for commonly used commands and command options.

Syntax:

kill

Terminates a currently running, remote troubleshooting session. Use the `show ip ssh` command to list the current management sessions.

Syntax:

[no] page

Toggles the paging mode for `show` commands between continuous listing and per-page listing.

Syntax:

repeat

Repeatedly executes one or more commands so that you can see the results of multiple commands displayed over a period of time. To halt the command execution, press any key on the keyboard.

Syntax:

setup

Displays the Switch Setup screen from the menu interface.

Restoring the factory-default configuration

As part of your troubleshooting process, it may become necessary to return the switch configuration to the factory default settings. This process:

- Momentarily interrupts the switch operation
- Clears any passwords
- Clears the console Event Log
- Resets the network counters to zero
- Performs a complete self test
- Reboots the switch into its factory default configuration, including deleting an IP address

There are two methods for resetting to the factory-default configuration:

- CLI
- `Clear/Reset` button combination



NOTE: Hewlett Packard Enterprise recommends that you save your configuration to a TFTP server before resetting the switch to its factory-default configuration. You can also save your configuration via Xmodem to a directly connected PC.

Resetting to the factory-default configuration

Using the CLI

This command operates at any level **except** the Operator level.

Syntax:

```
erase startup-configuration
```

Deletes the startup-config file in flash so that the switch will reboot with its factory-default configuration.

**NOTE:**

The `erase startup-config` command does not clear passwords unless `include-credentials` has been set, at which time this command does erase username/password information and any other credentials stored in the config file. For more information, see the section on "Saving Security Credentials in a Config File" in the access security guide for your switch.

Using Clear/Reset

Procedure

1. Using pointed objects, simultaneously press both the `Reset` and `Clear` buttons on the front of the switch.
2. Continue to press the `Clear` button while releasing the `Reset` button.
3. When the Self Test LED begins to flash, release the `Clear` button.

The switch then completes its self test and begins operating with the configuration restored to the factory default settings.

Restoring a flash image

The switch can lose its operating system if either the primary or secondary flash image location is empty or contains a corrupted OS file and an operator uses the `erase flash` command to erase a good OS image file from the opposite flash location.

Recovering from an empty or corrupted flash state

Use the switch's console serial port to connect to a workstation or laptop computer that has the following:

- A terminal emulator program with Xmodem capability, such as the HyperTerminal program included in Windows PC software.
- A copy of a good OS image file for the switch



NOTE: The following procedure requires the use of Xmodem and copies an OS image into primary flash only.

This procedure assumes you are using HyperTerminal as your terminal emulator. If you use a different terminal emulator, you may need to adapt this procedure to the operation of your particular emulator.

1. Start the terminal emulator program.

Ensure that the terminal program is configured as follows:

- Baud rate: 9600
- No parity
- 8 Bits

- 1 stop bit
- No flow control

2. Use the `Reset` button to reset the switch.

The following prompt should then appear in the terminal emulator:

```
Enter h or ? for help.
```

```
=>
```

3. Because the OS file is large, you can increase the speed of the download by changing the switch console and terminal emulator baud rates to a high speed. For Example:

a. Change the switch baud rate to 115,200 Bps.

```
=> sp 115200
```

b. Change the terminal emulator baud rate to match the switch speed:

- I. In HyperTerminal, select **Call|Disconnect**.
- II. Select **File|Properties**.
- III. Click on **Configure**.
- IV. Change the baud rate to **115200**.
- V. Click on **[OK]**, then in the next window, click on **[OK]** again.
- VI. Select **Call|Connect**.
- VII. Press **[Enter]** one or more times to display the => prompt.

4. Start the Console Download utility by entering `do` at the => prompt and pressing **[Enter]**:

```
=> do
```

5. You then see this prompt:

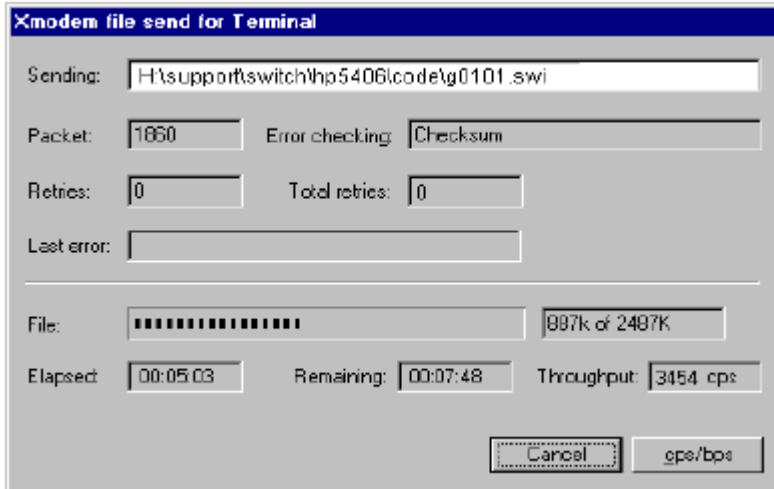
```
You have invoked the console download utility.  
Do you wish to continue? (Y/N)>_
```

6. At the above prompt:

- a. Enter **y** (for Yes)
- b. Select **Transfer|File** in HyperTerminal.
- c. Enter the appropriate filename and path for the OS image.
- d. Select the **Xmodem** protocol (and not the 1k Xmodem protocol).
- e. Click on **[Send]**.

If you are using HyperTerminal, you will see a screen similar to the following to indicate that the download is in progress:

Figure 167: *Example: of Xmodem download in progress*



When the download completes, the switch reboots from primary flash using the OS image you downloaded in the preceding steps, plus the most recent startup-config file.

DNS resolver

The domain name system (DNS) resolver is designed for use in local network domains, where it enables the use of a host name or fully qualified domain name with DNS-compatible switch CLI commands.

DNS operation supports both IPv4 and IPv6 DNS resolution and multiple, prioritized DNS servers. (For information on IPv6 DNS resolution, see the latest IPv6 configuration guide for your switch.)

Basic operation

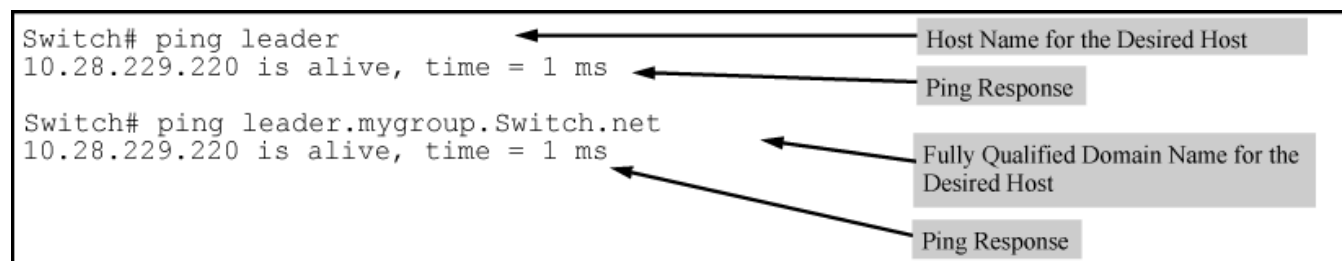
- When the switch is configured with only the IP address of a DNS server available to the switch, a DNS-compatible command, executed with a fully qualified domain name, can reach a device found in any domain accessible through the configured DNS server.
- When the switch is configured with both of the following:
 - The IP address of a DNS server available to the switch
 - The domain suffix of a domain available to the configured DNS server then:
 - A DNS-compatible command that includes the host name of a device in the same domain as the configured domain suffix can reach that device.
 - A DNS-compatible command that includes a fully qualified domain name can reach a device in any domain that is available to the configured DNS server.

Example:

Suppose the switch is configured with the domain suffix `mygroup.switch.net` and the IP address for an accessible DNS server. If an operator wants to use the switch to ping a target host in this domain by using the

DNS name "leader" (assigned by a DNS server to an IP address used in that domain), the operator can use either of the following commands:

Figure 168: Example: of using either a host name or a fully qualified domain name



In the proceeding Example:, if the DNS server's IP address is configured on the switch, but a domain suffix is either not configured or is configured for a different domain than the target host, the fully qualified domain name **must** be used.

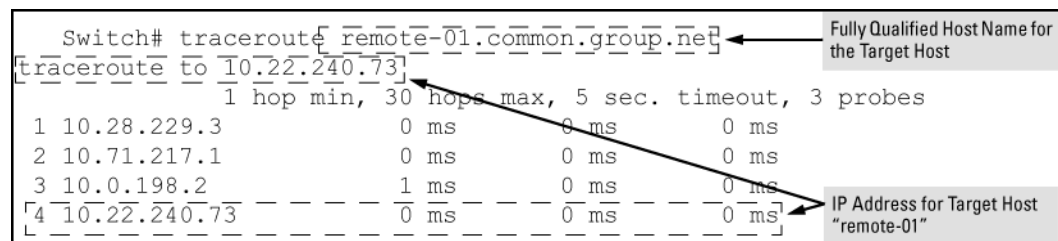
Note that if the target host is in a domain **other than** the domain configured on the switch:

- The host's domain must be reachable from the switch. This requires that the DNS server for the switch must be able to communicate with the DNS servers in the path to the domain in which the target host operates.
- The fully qualified domain name must be used, and the domain suffix must correspond to the domain in which the target host operates, regardless of the domain suffix configured in the switch.

Example:

Suppose the switch is configured with the domain suffix `mygroup.Switch.net` and the IP address for an accessible DNS server in this same domain. This time, the operator wants to use the switch to trace the route to a host named "remote-01" in a different domain named `common.group.net`. Assuming this second domain is accessible to the DNS server already configured on the switch, a `traceroute` command using the target's fully qualified DNS name should succeed.

Figure 169: Example: using the fully qualified domain name for an accessible target in another domain



Configuring and using DNS resolution with DNS-compatible commands

The DNS-compatible commands include `ping` and `traceroute`.)

Procedure

1. Determine the following:

- a. The IP address for a DNS server operating in a domain in your network.
- b. The priority (1 to 3) of the selected server, relative to other DNS servers in the domain.
- c. The domain name for an accessible domain in which there are hosts you want to reach with a DNS-compatible command. (This is the domain suffix in the fully qualified domain name for a given host

operating in the selected domain. See **Basic operation** on page 617.) Note that if a domain suffix is not configured, fully qualified domain names can be used to resolve DNS-compatible commands.

- d. The host names assigned to target IP addresses in the DNS server for the specified domain.
2. Use the data from the first three bullets in step1 to configure the DNS entry on the switch.
 3. Use a DNS-compatible command with the host name to reach the target devices.

Configuring a DNS entry

The switch allows up to two DNS server entries (IP addresses for DNS servers). One domain suffix can also be configured to support resolution of DNS names in that domain by using a host name only. Including the domain suffix enables the use of DNS-compatible commands with a target's host name instead of the target's fully qualified domain name.

Syntax:

```
[no] ip dns server-address priority <1-3> <ip-addr>
```

Configures the access priority and IP address of a DNS server accessible to the switch. These settings specify:

- The relative priority of the DNS server when multiple servers are configured
- The IP address of the DNS server

These settings must be configured before a DNS-compatible command can be executed with host name criteria.

The switch supports two prioritized DNS server entries. Configuring another IP address for a priority that has already been assigned to an IP address is not allowed.

To replace one IP address at a given priority level with another address having the same priority, you must first use the `no` form of the command to remove the unwanted address. Also, only one instance of a given server address is allowed in the server list. Attempting to enter a duplicate of an existing entry at a different priority level is not allowed .

To change the priority of an existing server address, use the `no` form of the command to remove the entry, then re-enter the address with the new priority.

The `no` form of the command replaces the configured IP address with the null setting. (Default: null)

Syntax:

```
[no] ip dns domain-name <domain-name-suffix>
```

This optional DNS command configures the domain suffix that is automatically appended to the host name entered with a DNS-compatible command. When the domain suffix and the IP address for a DNS server that can access that domain are both configured on the switch, you can execute a DNS-compatible command using only the host name of the desired target. (For an Example:, see **Example: of using either a host name or a fully qualified domain name**.) In either of the following two instances, you must manually provide the domain identification by using a fully qualified DNS name with a DNS-compatible command:

- If the DNS server IP address is configured on the switch, but the domain suffix is not configured (null).
- The domain suffix configured on the switch is not the domain in which the target host exists.

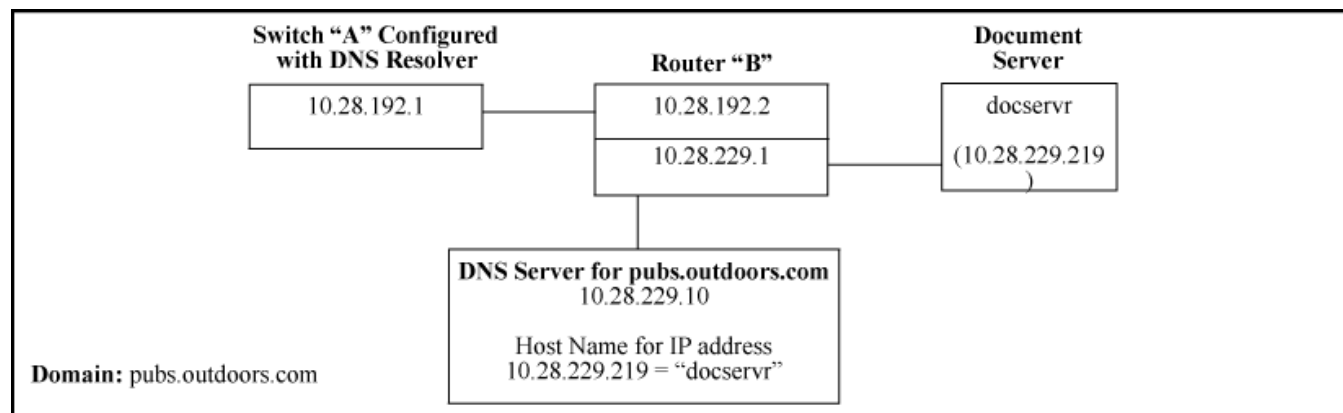
The switch supports one domain suffix entry and three DNS server IP address entries. (See the preceding command description.)

The `no` form of the command replaces the configured domain suffix with the null setting. (Default: null)

Using DNS names with ping and traceroute: Example:

In the network illustrated in **Figure 170: Example: network domain** on page 620, the switch at 10.28.192.1 is configured to use DNS names for DNS-compatible commands in the **pubs.outdoors.com** domain. The DNS server has been configured to assign the host name **docservr** to the IP address used by the document server (10.28.229.219).

Figure 170: Example: network domain



Configuring switch "A" with the domain name and the IP address of a DNS server for the domain enables the switch to use host names assigned to IP addresses in the domain to perform `ping` and `traceroute` actions on the devices in the domain. To summarize:

Entity	Identity
DNS server IP address	10.28.229.10
Domain name (and domain suffix for hosts in the domain)	pubs.outdoors.com
Host name assigned to 10.28.229.219 by the DNS server	docservr
Fully qualified domain name for the IP address used by the document server (10.28.229.219)	docservr.pubs.outdoors.com
Switch IP address	10.28.192.1
Document server IP address	10.28.229.219

With the above already configured, the following commands enable a DNS-compatible command with the host name `docserver` to reach the document server at 10.28.229.219.

Configuring switch "A" in Example: network domain to support DNS resolution

```
switch(config)# ip dns server-address 10.28.229.10
switch(config)# ip dns domain-name pubs.outdoors.com
```


Ping and traceroute execution for the network in Example: network domain

```
switch(config)# ping docservr
10.28.229.219 is alive, time = 1 ms

switch# traceroute docservr
traceroute to 10.28.229.219
          1 hop min, 30 hops max, 5 sec. timeout, 3 probes
 1 10.28.192.2 1 1 ms 0 ms 0 ms
 2 10.28.229.219 2 0 ms 0 ms 0 ms
```

- ¹First-Hop Router (“B”)
- ²Traceroute Target

As mentioned under the following example, if the DNS entry configured in the switch does not include the domain suffix for the desired target, you must use the target host's fully qualified domain name with DNS-compatible commands. For example, using the document server in **Figure 170: Example: network domain** on page 620 as a target:

Figure 171: Example: of ping and traceroute execution when only the DNS server IP address is configured

```
Switch# ping [docservr.pubs.outdoors.com]
10.28.229.219 is alive, time = 1 ms

Switch# traceroute [docservr.pubs.outdoors.com]
traceroute to 10.28.229.219
          1 hop min, 30 hops max, 5 sec. timeout, 3 probes
 1 10.28.192.2 1 ms 0 ms 0 ms
 2 10.28.229.219 0 ms 0 ms 0 ms
```

Target's Fully Qualified Domain Name

Viewing the current DNS configuration

The `show ip` command displays the current domain suffix and the IP address of the highest priority DNS server configured on the switch, along with other IP configuration information. If the switch configuration currently includes a non-default (non-null) DNS entry, it will also appear in the `show run` command output.

Figure 172: Example: of viewing the current DNS configuration

```
Switch# show ip

Internet (IP) Service

IP Routing : Disabled

Default Gateway : 10.28.192.2
Default TTL     : 64
Arp Age        : 20
Domain Suffix   : pubs.outdoors.com
DNS server      : 10.28.229.10

VLAN | IP Config | IP Address | Subnet Mask
-----+-----
DEFAULT_VLAN | Manual | 10.28.192.1 | 255.255.255.0
```

DNS Resolver Configuration in the show ip command output

Operating notes

- Configuring another IP address for a priority that has already been assigned to an IP address is not allowed. To replace one IP address at a given priority level with another address having the same priority, you must first use the `no` form of the command to remove the unwanted address. Also, only one instance of a given server address is allowed in the server list. Attempting to enter a duplicate of an existing entry at a different priority level is not allowed. To change the priority of an existing server address, use the `no` form of the command to remove the entry, then re-enter the address with the new priority.
- To change the position of an address already configured with priority `x`, you must first use `no ip dns server-address priority x <ip-addr>` to remove the address from the configuration, then use `ip dns server-address priority <ip-addr>` to reconfigure the address with the new priority. Also, if the priority to which you want to move an address is already used in the configuration for another address, you must first use the `no` form of the command to remove the current address from the target priority.
- The DNS servers and domain configured on the switch must be accessible to the switch, but it is not necessary for any intermediate devices between the switch and the DNS server to be configured to support DNS operation.
- When multiple DNS servers are configured on the switch, they can reside in the same domain or different domains.
- A DNS configuration must include the IP address for a DNS server that is able to resolve host names for the desired domain. If a DNS server has limited knowledge of other domains, its ability to resolve DNS-compatible command requests is also limited.
- If the DNS configuration includes a DNS server IP address but does not also include a domain suffix, then any DNS-compatible commands should include the target host's fully qualified domain name.
- Switch-Initiated DNS packets go out through the VLAN having the best route to the DNS server, even if a Management VLAN has been configured.
- The DNS server address must be manually input. It is not automatically determined via DHCP.

Event Log messages

Please see the *Event Log Message Reference Guide* for information about Event Log messages.

Supported Platforms

Aruba 3810M Switch Series (JL071A, JL072A, JL073A, JL074A, JL075A, JL076A)
 Aruba 5400Rzl2 Switch Series (J8698A, J8700A, J9823A-J9824A, J9825A, J9826A, J9868A, J9447A, J9448A)
 Aruba 5406R Switch Series (JL002A, JL003A, JL095A, J9850A)
 Aruba 5406zl Switch Series (J9821A, J9822A))
 Aruba 5412R Switch Series (J9851A, JL001A)

Job Scheduler

The Job Scheduler feature enables the user to schedule commands or jobs on the switch for one time or multiple times. This is similar in concept to the UNIX ‘cron’ utility. The user can schedule any CLI command that the user would otherwise enter interactively. This includes commands to enable or disable ports, LEDs, and Power-Over-Ethernet. Jobs can also be scheduled to be triggered by certain pre-defined events such as switch reboot. The only major restriction on commands scheduled is that, it should not prompt/ask for any user inputs.

Commands

Job at | delay | enable | disable

Set schedule jobs using the options and set the count for the number of times the job is repeated.

Syntax

```
job <JOB NAME> at | delay | enable | disable
```

Description

Schedule a command to run automatically. Jobs can be scheduled to run once, multiple times on a recurring basis, or after certain events such as reboots. All commands run with manager privilege in configuration context.

The [no] form of the command deletes a scheduled job.

By default, jobs will be repeated an infinite number of times.

Restrictions

Jobs scheduled at any event will not be counted.

Jobs that are scheduled at the event “reboot” will not work in some multi management switches.

Range

- <1-1000>: is the value range for the `count` option.
- ([[DD:]HH:]MM): is the format used for the specific delay.

Options**count**

Specify the number of times the job should run.

delay

Specify the delay before running the job.

enable

Enable a job that is disabled or expired.

disable

Disable a job. By default, a job is enabled.

Usage

```
job <JOB NAME> at <([DD:]HH:]MM on <WEEKDAY-LIST>)> config-save <COMMAND> count <1-1000>
```

```
job <JOB NAME> at <[HH:]MM on [MM/]DD> config-save <COMMAND> count <1-1000>
```

```
job <JOB NAME> at <EVENT> config-save <COMMAND>
```

```
job <JOB NAME> delay <([DD:]HH:]MM> config-save <COMMAND> count <1-1000>
```

```
job <JOB NAME> enable | disable
```

```
[no] job <JOB NAME>
```

Show job

Syntax

```
show job
```

Description

Show the jobs scheduled.

Show job

```
switch# show job
```

Job Scheduler Status and Configuration

Scheduler Status : Waiting for the system time to be set

Name	Event or Time	Repeat Count	Save Cfg	Command
Burrrrrrrrrrrrr...	reboot	--	Yes	chassislocate blink
baz	reboot	--	No	show time
foo	17:00 SxTWTxS	--	No	savepower led
a1	12:00	2	Yes	sh time
a2	Every 2:14:30 days	75	Yes	vlan 3
a3	Every 00:00:25 days	1	No	vlan 4



NOTE: Caution

The scheduler does not run until the system time is set.

Show job <Name>

Syntax

```
show job <JOB NAME>
```

Description

Show the job by name.

Overview

The traditional way of restoring a configuration from a backup configuration file required a switch reboot for the new configurations to be effective. There were network outages and a planned downtime for even minor changes. The switch configuration can now be restored from a backup configuration without reboot. It also provides hash of the current running configuration, which can be used for auditing.

The backup configuration can be created using the new command `cfg-backup`. An existing method of copying a configuration file from a remote location (for example, TFTP server) can also be used to backup a configuration or copied from flash.

More information

[show hash](#) on page 646

[cfg-backup](#) on page 630

[cfg-restore config_bkp](#) on page 639

Benefits of configuration restore without reboot

- Restores a new or modified configuration without reboot, with minimal network outage. Any NMS can use this method for configuration rebase workflows. Only configurations that were exported from the switch can be imported or restored on the switch.
- Restores the configuration without reboot from a backup configuration when the running configuration has functional issues, like misconfigurations from remote management stations.

Recommended scenarios

- Use the configuration restore feature for incremental configuration updates.
- Use the `force` option with `cfg-restore`, for commands which require reboot.
- Use the `verbose` option to get detailed progress on the configuration restore process.

More information

[Force configuration restore](#) on page 634

[cfg-restore verbose](#) on page 638

Use cases

- A user can switch to a new configuration without rebooting the switch.
- If a user loses connectivity after applying the new configuration, a job scheduler executes the job after a specific time frame. This restores the current configuration to the switch, without rebooting it.

More information

[Switching to a new configuration](#) on page 627

[Rolling back to a stable configuration using job scheduler](#) on page 628

Switching to a new configuration

Procedure

1. Back up the configuration using `cfg-backup running-config config <config_name>` command. In the following example, the configuration name used is “stable”.

```
cfg-backup running-config config stable
```

2. Check the backup configuration using `show config files` command.

```
switch(config)# show config files
```

Configuration files:

id	act	pri	sec	name
1	*	*	*	config
2				stable
3				
4				
5				

3. Change the running configuration as required, and backup the new configuration as “newfile”.

```
cfg-backup running-config config newfile
```

```
switch(config)# show config files
```

Configuration files:

id	act	pri	sec	name
1	*	*	*	config
2				stable
3				newfile
4				
5				

4. Check the difference between the “newfile” (running configuration) and “stable” (backed up configuration) using `cfg-restore flash stable diff` command. Based on the difference, apply the backed-up configuration using `cfg-restore flash stable` command.
5. Check the status of the configuration restore using `show cfg-restore status` command.

```
switch(config)# show cfg-restore status
```

```
Status                               : Success
Config File Name                     : stable
Source                               : Flash
Time Taken                           : 3 Seconds
Last Run                             : Tue Nov 28 18:24:09 2017

Recovery Mode                         : Enabled
Failure Reason                       : -

Number of Add Commands               : 14
Number of Remove Commands            : 0

Time Taken for Each Phase :
    Calculating diff              : 1 Seconds
```

```
Adding commands      : 2 Seconds
Removing commands    : 0 Seconds
```

Rolling back to a stable configuration using job scheduler

Procedure

1. Configure the job using `alias` with the required configuration.

```
alias <name> <command-list>
job <name> delay [[DD:]HH:]MM <command>
```

To schedule a job execution with `cfg-restore` operation once after 15 minutes (00:00:15):

```
alias "cfg_rollback" "cfg-restore flash stable"
job "cfg_stable" delay 00:00:15 "cfg_rollback" count 1
```

2. Back up the current stable configuration using the command `cfg-backup running-config config <config_name>`.

```
cfg-backup running-config config stable
```

3. Check the backup configuration using the command `show config files`.

```
switch(config)# show config files
```

Configuration files:

id	act	pri	sec	name
1	*	*	*	config
2				stable
3				
4				
5				

4. Edit the configuration as needed. If the user is still connected to the switch, the configuration is stable and the job which reloads the older configuration can be cancelled using the command `no job cfg_stable`.

```
switch(config)# no job cfg_stable
```

5. If the user loses connectivity after applying the new configuration, the job scheduler executes the job after the 15-minute timer expires, and "stable" configuration is restored. Use the following commands to check the output:

- `switch(config)# show job cfg_stable`
- `switch(config)# show cfg-restore status`

```
switch(config)# show job cfg_stable
```

Job Information

```
Job Name      : cfg_stable
Runs At       : Every 00:00:15 days:hours:minutes
Config Save   : No
Repeat Count  : 1
Job Status    : Enabled
Running Status : Active
```



```

Run Count      : 0
Error Count    : 0
Skip Count     : 0
Command       : cfg_rollback

switch(config)# show cfg-restore status
Status        : Success
Config File Name : stable
Source        : Flash
Time Taken    : 9 Seconds
Last Run      : Tue Nov 28 20:50:00 2017

Recovery Mode  : Enabled
Failure Reason : -

Number of Add Commands : 27
Number of Remove Commands : 0

Time Taken for Each Phase :
  Calculating diff : 4 Seconds
  Adding commands  : 1 Seconds
  Removing commands : 0 Seconds

```



NOTE: If the configuration involves any sensitive information, backup and restore the configuration by enabling the `include-credentials` command.

Commands used in switch configuration restore without reboot

cfg-backup

Backs up the selected configuration to the flash file.

show config files details

Shows a detailed list of configuration files available in the flash.

cfg-restore

Restores the given configuration as the running configuration without reboot.

show cfg-restore status

Shows the status of latest restore performed.

show cfg-restore latest-diff

Views the list of configuration changes that are removed, modified, or added to the running configuration.

show hash

Shows the SHA ID of a startup or running configuration.

Configuration backup

The configuration backup creates a backup of the running or startup configuration of ArubaOS-Switch on-demand to the flash storage on the switch. The maximum number of backup files supported has increased from three to five.



NOTE: When you downgrade configuration backup files from five to three, and if the current number of files is either a four or five, an error message Configuration file <name> stored in config index 5 is not supported in lower image versions is displayed.

cfg-backup

Syntax

```
cfg-backup {running-config | startup-config} config <FILE-NAME>
```

Description

Backs up the selected configuration to the flash file mentioned. When the firmware is downgraded to lower versions, the details of only three configuration files appear in the `show config files` command.

Command context

```
config
```

Parameters

running-config

Copies the running configuration to switch flash file.

startup-config

Copies the startup configuration to switch flash file.

flash

Name of the configuration file in flash.

Usage

```
copy {startup-config | running-config} {sftp | tftp} <server address> <FILE-NAME>
```

The existing `copy` command copies the startup and running configuration to the TFTP or SFTP server.

Examples

```
switch(config)# cfg-backup
  running-config      Backup the running configuration to the flash file
                      mentioned.
  startup-config      Backup the startup configuration to the flash file
                      mentioned.

switch(config)# cfg-backup {running-config | startup-config}
  config              Backup the named configuration file.

switch(config)# cfg-backup {running-config | startup-config} config
  ASCII-STR           Enter an ASCII string.
```

show config files

Syntax

```
show config files
```

Description

Shows a list of configuration files available in the flash.

Command context

```
config
```

Examples

```
switch# show config files
Configuration files:
```

id	act	pri	sec	name
1	*	*	*	config
2				add
3				modify
4				golden_config
5				poe2

To show the details of saved configuration files:

```
switch(config)# show config files
details          Show details of saved configuration files.
```

```
switch(config)#show config files details
```

Backup Configuration files:

File Name : config
File ID : 1
File Size : 35902 Bytes
Last Modified : Mon Jan 01 1990 00:09:28
Version : WC.16.05.0000x

File Name : add
File ID : 2
File Size : 35902 Bytes
Last Modified : Mon Oct 23 2017 03:42:38
Version : WC.16.05.0000x

File Name : modify
File ID : 3
File Size : 35902 Bytes
Last Modified : Mon Oct 23 2017 03:42:38
Version : WC.16.05.0000x

To view the contents of a configuration file in the flash:

```
switch# show config add
```

```
; JL255A Configuration Editor; Created on release #WC.16.05.0000x
; Ver #12:08.1d.9b.3f.bf.bb.ef.7c.59.fc.6b.fb.9f.fc.ff.ff.37.ef:ba
hostname "Aruba-2930F-24G-PoEP-4SFPP"
module 1 type jl255a
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
vlan 1
    name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
    no untagged 3-10
    untagged 1-2,11-28
    ip address dhcp-bootp
    exit
vlan 100
    name "VLAN100"
    untagged 3-5
    no ip address
    exit
vlan 200
name "VLAN200"
    untagged 6-10
```

```
no ip address
exit
```

Configuration restore without reboot

The `cfg-restore without reboot` command restores the configuration without reboot from a backup configuration to the running configuration of the switch.

The details about the difference between a running and a backup configuration can be displayed using `cfg-restore {flash | tftp | sftp} <FILE-NAME> diff` command.

More information

[Configuration backup](#) on page 629

[Viewing the differences between a running configuration and a backup configuration](#) on page 644

cfg-restore

Syntax

```
cfg-restore {flash | tftp <IP-ADDRESS> | sftp <IP-ADDRESS>} <FILE-NAME> [diff |
force | non-blocking | recovery-mode | verbose]
```

Description

Restores the given configuration as the running configuration without reboot. If the configuration is not suitable to successfully restore without reboot, the command will return a failure message with details.



NOTE: The restored configuration commands will be executed on a running configuration, so the name of the current active configuration does not change after configuration restore, except for the `force` option.

Command context

config

Parameters

flash

Copies file from flash.

tftp

Copies file from TFTP server.

sftp

Copies file from SFTP server.

<IP-ADDRESS>

IP address of the TFTP server.

<FILE-NAME>

Name of the backup configuration file to restore into the running configuration.

diff

Provides the list of changes that will be applied on the running configuration.

force

Forces a reboot if configuration in restored configuration requires a reboot. Applies the configuration with reboot if the configuration has reboot required commands or system-wide change commands. After a forced reboot, the name of the configuration changes.

non-blocking

Configuration restoration in non-blocking mode, where actual process happens in the background.

recovery-mode

Enables or disables recovery-mode. Recovery-mode is enabled by default and this retains the current running configuration if configuration restoration fails.

verbose

Provides the details of configuration restore status and the list of commands to be added or deleted.

Usage

- `cfg-restore flash <FILE-NAME> [non-blocking | diff | force | recovery-mode{enable | disable}]] | [verbose [force | [recovery-mode{enable | disable}]] | [diff | force]`
- `cfg-restore tftp {<IPV4-ADDR> | <IPV6-ADDR> | <HOSTNAME-STR> <FILE-NAME> [non-blocking | diff | force | recovery-mode{enable | disable}]] | [verbose [force | [recovery-mode{enable | disable}]] | [diff | force]`
- `cfg-restore sftp {<IPV4-ADDR> | <IPV6-ADDR> | <HOSTNAME-STR> | user <name> {<IP-ADDRESS|IPV6-ADDRESS|HOSTNAME-STR>} | <USERNAME@>{<HOST-NAME> | <IPV4-ADDR> | <IPV6-ADDR>}} [port <1-65535>] <FILE-NAME> [non-blocking | diff | force | recovery-mode{enable | disable}]] | [verbose [force | [recovery-mode{enable | disable}]] | [diff | force]`

Examples

```
switch# cfg-restore
flash          Copy file from flash.
sftp           Copy file from SFTP Server.
tftp           Copy file from TFTP Server.

switch# cfg-restore flash
FILE-NAME      Name of the backup configuration file to restore into the running
                configuration.

switch# cfg-restore flash config_file
diff           Provide the list of changes that will be applied on the
                running configuration.

force          Apply the configuration with reboot if the
                configuration has reboot required commands or
                system-wide change commands present.

non-blocking   Config restoration in non-blocking mode.
recovery-mode  To enable/disable recovery-mode.
verbose        Provide the details of config restore status and the list of commands to be added
                or deleted.

switch# cfg-restore tftp
HOSTNAME-STR   Specify hostname of TFTP Server.
IP-ADDR        IP Address of the TFTP Server.
IPV6-ADDR      IPV6 Address of the TFTP Server.

switch# cfg-restore tftp 10.100.0.12
FILE-NAME      Name of the backup configuration file to restore into the running
                configuration.

switch# cfg-restore tftp 10.100.0.12 config_file
diff           Provide the list of changes that will be applied on the
                running configuration.

force          Apply the configuration with reboot if the
                configuration has reboot required commands or
```

non-blocking	system-wide change commands present.
recovery-mode	Config restoration in non-blocking mode.
verbose	To enable/disable recovery-mode.
	Provide the details of config restore status and the list of commands to be added or deleted.

```

switch(config)# cfg-restore flash add non-blocking
diff          Provide the list of changes that will be applied on
               the running configuration.
force         Apply the configuration with reboot if the configuration has reboot required commands or
               system-wide change commands present.
recovery-mode To enable/disable recovery-mode.

```

Force configuration restore

The `cfg-restore` command fails if a reboot is required. The Configuration restoration is not allowed as the configuration has reboot required commands error is displayed, along with lines requiring a reboot. The force option in the `cfg-restore` command allows a user to force a reboot. The command is: `cfg-restore {flash | tftp | sftp} <FILE-NAME> force`.

Before reboot, config is the active configuration. After the device reboots, the backup file becomes the new active configuration.

id	act	pri	sec	name
1	*	*	*	config
2				def
3				golden_config
4				
5				

```

switch(config)# cfg-restore flash golden_config
Current running-configuration will be replaced with 'golden_config'.
Continue (y/n)? y
Configuration restore is in progress, configuration changes are temporarily
disabled.
Configuration restoration is not allowed as the configuration has reboot required commands.

```

```

switch(config)# show cfg-restore status
Status          : Failed
Config File Name : golden_config
Source          : Flash
Time Taken      : 5 Seconds
Last Run        : Mon Oct 30 23:03:19 2017

Recovery Mode   : Enabled
Failure Reason  : Reboot required commands present.
Command : console terminal none

```

```

Number of Add Commands : 0
Number of Remove Commands : 1

```

```

Time Taken for Each Phase :
  Calculating diff      : 3 Seconds
  Adding commands       : 0 Seconds
  Removing commands     : 0 Seconds

```

```

switch# cfg-restore flash golden_config force
Device may be rebooted if the configuration file has reboot required or
system-wide change commands. Do you want to continue (y/n)?
Current running-configuration will be replaced with 'golden_config'.
Continue (y/n)?
Configuration restore is in progress, configuration changes are temporarily
disabled.

```

Successfully applied configuration 'golden_config' to running configuration.

Rebooting switch...

In the preceding output, Command : console terminal none shows that cfg-restore failed because a reboot is required.

After the switch reboots and comes up, the golden_config becomes the active configuration.



NOTE: In case of a switch reboot, the switch comes up with the configuration associated with the primary or secondary.

```
id | act pri sec | name
---+-----+-----
 1 |      *   *   | config
 2 |      *   *   | def
 3 | *         *   | golden_config
 4 |      *   *   |
 5 |      *   *   |

switch# show cfg-restore status
Status                : Success
Config File Name      : default
Source                : Flash
Time Taken             : 1 Seconds
Last Run              : Mon Oct 23 07:17:03 2017

Recovery Mode         : Enabled
Failure Reason        : -

Number of Add Commands : 0
Number of Remove Commands : 5

Time Taken for Each Phase :

    Calculating diff      : 1 Seconds
    Adding commands      : 0 Seconds
    Removing commands     : 0 Seconds
```



NOTE: Time taken for adding and deleting commands is zero, as the switch reboots. It is similar to downloading a startup-configuration to the device.

cfg-restore non-blocking

Syntax

```
cfg-restore {flash | tftp | sftp} <FILE-NAME> non-blocking
```

Description

Performs restore in non-blocking mode.

Command context

config

Example

```
switch(config)# cfg-restore flash add non-blocking
Current running-configuration will be replaced with 'add'.
Continue (y/n)? y
Configuration restore is in progress, configuration changes are
temporarily disabled.
switch(config)#
```

```

switch(config)# show cfg-restore status
Status                : Success
Config File Name      : add
Source                : Flash
Time Taken            : 2 Seconds
Last Run              : Sun Oct 22 22:09:02 2017

Recovery Mode         : Enabled
Failure Reason        : -

Number of Add Commands : 7
Number of Remove Commands : 10

Time Taken for Each Phase :
    Calculating diff    : 1 Seconds
    Adding commands     : 0 Seconds
    Removing commands   : 0 Seconds

```

cfg-restore recovery-mode

Syntax

```
cfg-restore {flash | tftp | sftp} <FILE-NAME> recovery-mode {enable | disable}
```

Description

Restores the current running configuration, if a restore to the backup configuration fails. By default, recovery-mode is enabled.

Command context

config

Usage

To disable recovery mode, use `cfg-restore {flash | tftp | sftp} <FILE-NAME> recovery-mode disable`.

Example

With the following running configuration, a restore to the backup file `modify` fails, but this configuration will be retained as recovery mode is enabled.

```

switch(config)# show running-config

Running configuration:

; JL255A Configuration Editor; Created on release #WC.16.05.0000x
; Ver #12:08.1d.9b.3f.bf.bb.ef.7c.59.fc.6b.fb.9f.fc.ff.ff.37.ef:ba
hostname "Aruba-2930F-24G-PoEP-4SFPP"
module 1 type jl255a
ip routing
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
vlan 1
    name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
    untagged 1-28
    ip address dhcp-bootp
    exit
vlan 10
    name "VLAN10"
    no ip address

```



```

exit

switch(config)# show config modify
; JL255A Configuration Editor; Created on release #WC.16.05.0000x
; Ver #12:08.1d.9b.3f.bf.bb.ef.7c.59.fc.6b.fb.9f.fc.ff.ff.37.ef:ba
hostname "Aruba-2930F-24G-PoEP-4SFPP"
module 1 type jl255a
ip default-gateway 172.20.0.1
ip routing
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
vlan 1
    name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
    untagged 1-28
    ip address dhcp-bootp
    exit
vlan 100
    name "VLAN100"
    no ip address
    exit

switch(config)# cfg-restore flash modify
Current running-configuration will be replaced with 'modify'.
Continue (y/n)? y
Configuration restore is in progress, configuration changes are
temporarily disabled.

Configuration restore to config 'modify' failed, restored source
configuration to running configuration.

switch(config)# show running-config

Running configuration:

; JL255A Configuration Editor; Created on release #WC.16.05.0000x
; Ver #12:08.1d.9b.3f.bf.bb.ef.7c.59.fc.6b.fb.9f.fc.ff.ff.37.ef:ba
hostname "Aruba-2930F-24G-PoEP-4SFPP"
module 1 type jl255a
ip routing
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
vlan 1
    name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
    untagged 1-28
    ip address dhcp-bootp
    exit
vlan 10
    name "VLAN10"
    no ip address
    exit

switch(config)# cfg-restore flash modify recovery-mode disable
Current running-configuration will be replaced with 'modify'.
Continue (y/n)? y
Configuration restore is in progress, configuration changes are
temporarily disabled.

Partially applied configuration 'modify' to running configuration.
Aruba-2930F-24G-PoEP-4SFPP(config)# show running-config

Running configuration:

; JL255A Configuration Editor; Created on release #WC.16.05.0000x
; Ver #12:08.1d.9b.3f.bf.bb.ef.7c.59.fc.6b.fb.9f.fc.ff.ff.37.ef:ba
hostname "Aruba-2930F-24G-PoEP-4SFPP"
module 1 type jl255a

```

```

ip routing
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
vlan 1
    name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
    untagged 1-28
    ip address dhcp-bootp
    exit
vlan 100
    name "VLAN100"
    no ip address
    exit

```

cfg-restore verbose

Syntax

```
cfg-restore {flash | tftp | sftp} <FILE-NAME> verbose
```

Description

Provides the details of configuration restore status and the list of commands to be added or deleted along with `cfg-restore`.

Command context

```
config
```

Examples

```

switch(config)# cfg-restore flash config verbose
Current running-configuration will be replaced with 'config'.
Continue (y/n)? y

```

Configuration restore is in progress, configuration changes are temporarily disabled.

Configuration Restore Information:

```

Status                : Success
Config File Name      : config
Source                : Flash
Time Taken            : 6 Seconds
Last Run              : Tue Nov  7 03:43:07 2017

```

```

Recovery Mode         : Enabled
Failure Reason        : -

```

```

Number of Add Commands : 0
Number of Remove Commands : 12

```

```

Time Taken for Each Phase :
    Calculating diff      : 2 Seconds
    Adding commands       : 0 Seconds
    Removing commands      : 0 Seconds

```

Configuration delete list:

```

vlan 2
    name "VLAN2"
    no ip address
    exit
vlan 3
    name "VLAN3"
    no ip address

```

```

    exit
vlan 4
    name "VLAN4"
    no ip address
    exit
vlan 5
    name "VLAN5"
    no ip address
    exit

```

Successfully applied configuration 'config' to running configuration.

cfg-restore config_bkp

Syntax

```
cfg-restore {tftp <ip-address> | sftp <ip-address>} config_bkp
```

Description

Downloads and restores a configuration from the TFTP or SFTP server, without rebooting the switch.



NOTE: The commands from the restored configuration will be executed on the running configuration. The name of the current active configuration will not change after a configuration restore.

Command context

config

Example

```

switch(config)# cfg-restore tftp
  HOSTNAME-STR      Specify hostname of TFTP Server.
  IP-ADDR           IP Address of the TFTP Server.
  IPV6-ADDR         IPV6 Address of the TFTP Server.

switch(config)# cfg-restore sftp
  HOSTNAME-STR      Specify hostname of the SFTP server.
  IP-ADDR           IP Address of the SFTP Server.
  IPV6-ADDR         IPV6 Address of the SFTP Server.
  user              Specify username on the remote system information
  USER@IP-STR      Specify username along with remote system
                    information

switch(config)# cfg-restore tftp 10.100.0.12 pvos/tftp_2930_config_file
Current running-configuration will be replaced with 'tftp_2930_config_file'.
Continue (y/n)? y
Configuration restore is in progress, configuration changes are temporarily disabled.

Successfully applied configuration 'tftp_2930_config_file' to running configuration.

switch(config)# sh cfg-restore status
Status                : Success
Config File Name      : tftp_2930_config_file
Source                : TFTP
Time Taken            : 4 Seconds
Last Run              : Wed Nov  8 21:11:10 2017

Recovery Mode         : Enabled
Failure Reason        : -

Number of Add Commands : 4
Number of Remove Commands : 7

```

```
Time Taken for Each Phase :
    Calculating diff      : 1 Seconds
    Adding commands      : 0 Seconds
    Removing commands     : 0 Seconds
```

```
switch(config)# show config files
```

Configuration files:

id	act	pri	sec	name
1	*	*	*	config
2				
3				
4				
5				

Configuration restore with force option

Prerequisites

Back up the configuration using traditional `copy config` or `cfg-backup` commands.

Procedure

1. Execute the `show config files` command. By default, the `config` file provides all the associations.

```
switch(config)# show config files
```

Configuration files:

id	act	pri	sec	name
1	*	*	*	config
2				file1
3				file2
4				
5				

2. Use `cfg-restore flash file1 force` command to see the configuration of file1.

```
switch(config)# cfg-restore flash file1 force
```

As the file1 configuration requires a reboot, a system reboot occurs. When the switch comes up, file1 is the new active configuration.

```
switch(config)# sh config files
```

Configuration files:

id	act	pri	sec	name
1		*	*	config
2	*			file1
3				file2
4				
5				



NOTE: During a configuration restore with reboot, the association changes. To make the configuration as a default configuration for subsequent system reboots, use `startup-default [<primary|secondary>] config FILENAME` command.

For startup-default config file1:

```
switch(config)# show config files
```

Configuration files:

id	act	pri	sec	name
1				config
2	*	*	*	file1
3				file2
4				
5				

System reboot commands

Following commands require a system reboot:

- `secure-mode standard`
- `secure-mode enhanced`
- `mesh id [0-9]`
- `mesh [a-z | A-Z | 0-9]`
- `max-vlans <257-4094>`
- `no allow-v2-modules`
- `qinq (mixedvlan | svlan)`
- `qos queue-config`
- `terminal type (vt100 | ansi)`
- `console (flow-control | terminal)`
- `vsf member [0-9]`
- `vsf remove`
- `access-list grouping`
- `console baud-rate (speed-sense | 1200 | 2400 | 4800 | 9600 | 19200 | 38400 | 57600 | 115200)`

Systemwide change commands

Following commands change the system configuration:

- `module [0-9 | a-z | A-Z]`
- `module [0-9 | a-z | A-Z] type <type>`
- `igmp lookup-mode ip`
- `flexible-module [a-z | A-Z] type <type>`
- `stacking member [0-9] flexible-module [a-z | A-Z] type <type>`

Configuration restore without force option

If the two configuration files backed up are file1 and file2:

Prerequisites

Backup the configuration using either the traditional `copy config` or the `cfg-backup` commands.

Procedure

1. Execute the `show config files` command. By default, the `config` file provides all the associations.

```
switch(config)# show config files
```

Configuration files:

id	act	pri	sec	name
1	*	*	*	config
2				file1
3				file2
4				
5				

2. Use `cfg-restore flash file1` command to see the configuration of file1.

```
switch(config)# cfg-restore flash file1
```

Even after executing the previous command, associations will remain the same, but the running configuration is replaced by file1 configuration.



NOTE: In a configuration restore without reboot, the association remains the same. The default `config` file is updated based on the configuration of the restored file.

show cfg-restore status

Syntax

```
show cfg-restore status
```

Description

Shows the status of latest restore performed. The running configuration is updated based on the configuration of the restored file.

Command context

```
config
```

Usage

```
show cfg-restore {status | latest-diff}
```

This command provides information on:

- how a restore is performed
- whether a flash file was used from SFTP or TFTP server
- the total time taken to restore
- the time when last restore was initiated

- whether a recovery-mode was enabled
- the number of add and delete commands
- reboot commands present (if any), and
- the split time taken for each phase

Examples

```
switch(config)# show cfg-restore
latest-diff      Shows the difference between running and back-up
                  configuration.
status           Show configuration restoration status.

switch(config)# show cfg-restore status
Status           : [Failed| In progress | Success | Not Started]
Config File name : def
Source           : [-|Tftp|sftp|Flash|REST]
Time taken       : [-|20 Seconds.]
Last Run         : [-|Tue March 07 22:12:16 2017.]

Recovery Mode    : Enabled
Failure Reason    : -

Number of Add Commands : 0
Number of Remove Commands : 3

Time Taken for Each Phase :
    Calculating diff      : 1 Seconds
    Adding commands       : 0 Seconds
    Removing commands     : 0 Seconds
```

If the configuration restoration fails, the line number and the failed commands are displayed:

```
switch(config)# show cfg-restore status
Status           : Failed
Config File name : def
Source           : Flash
Time taken       : 20 Seconds
Last Run         : Sun Oct 22 20:22:54 2017

Recovery Mode    : Enabled
Failure Reason    : Add commands have been failed

Number of Add Commands : 0
Number of Remove Commands : 3

Time Taken for Each Phase :
    Calculating diff      : 1 Seconds
    Adding commands       : 0 Seconds
    Removing commands     : 0 Seconds

Failed to remove commands:
    Line: 12 vlan 10
    Line: 15 no ipv6 nd snooping mac-check
Failed to add commands:
    Line: 10 icmp 10.100.0.12 source-inter vlan 1
    Line: 20 udp-echo 10.100.0.12 source vlan 1
```



NOTE: The number of add and delete commands is calculated excluding the `exit` commands in the configuration file.

Viewing the differences between a running configuration and a backup configuration

Prerequisites

Use the `cfg-restore {flash | tftp | sftp} <FILE-NAME> diff` command to view the list of configuration changes that are removed, modified, or added to the running configuration.

Procedure

1. Execute the `show running-config` command to show the running configuration of the switch.

```
switch(config)# show running-config

Running configuration:

; JL255A Configuration Editor; Created on release #WC.16.05.0000x
; Ver #12:08.1d.9b.3f.bf.bb.ef.7c.59.fc.6b.fb.9f.fc.ff.ff.37.ef:ba
hostname "Aruba-2930F-24G-PoEP-4SFPP"
module 1 type jl255a
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
vlan 1
    name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
    no untagged 11-13,15-18
    untagged 1-10,14,19-28
    ip address dhcp-bootp
    exit
vlan 100
    name "VLAN100"
    untagged 11-13
    no ip address
    exit
vlan 300
    name "VLAN300"
    untagged 15-18
    no ip address
    exit
```

2. Execute the `show config golden_config` command to show the backup configuration of the switch.

```
switch(config)# show config golden_config

; JL255A Configuration Editor; Created on release #WC.16.05.0000x
; Ver #12:08.1d.9b.3f.bf.bb.ef.7c.59.fc.6b.fb.9f.fc.ff.ff.37.ef:ba
hostname "Aruba-2930F-24G-PoEP-4SFPP"
module 1 type jl255a
; JL255A Configuration Editor; Created on release #WC.16.05.0000x
; Ver #12:08.1d.9b.3f.bf.bb.ef.7c.59.fc.6b.fb.9f.fc.ff.ff.37.ef:ba
hostname "Aruba-2930F-24G-PoEP-4SFPP"
module 1 type jl255a
```

3. Execute the `cfg-restore flash golden_config diff` command to view the differences that will be applied.

```
switch# cfg-restore flash golden_config diff
```


Configuration delete list:

```
vlan 1
  no untagged 11-13,15-18
  untagged 3-10
  exit
vlan 100
  untagged 11-13
  exit
vlan 300
  name "VLAN300"

  untagged 15-18
  no ip address
  exit
```

Configuration add list:

```
vlan 1
  no untagged 3-10
  untagged 11-13,15-18
  exit
vlan 100
  untagged 3-5
  exit
vlan 200
  name "VLAN200"
  untagged 6-10
  no ip address
  exit
```



NOTE: If the running and the backup configuration is the same, no difference will be displayed.

```
switch(config)# cfg-restore flash modify diff
```

```
Current config and backup config is identical.
```

4. Execute the `show cfg restore latest-diff` command to display the difference between the running and the backup configuration.

```
switch(config)# show cfg-restore
latest-diff      Shows the difference between running and back-up
                  configuration.
status           Show configuration restoration status.
```

```
switch(config)# show cfg-restore latest-diff
```

Configuration delete list:

```
ip default-gateway 172.20.0.1
vlan 100
  name "VLAN100"
  no ip address
  exit
```

Configuration add list:

```
vlan 10
  name "VLAN10"
  no ip address
```

```
exit
switch(config)#
```

Show commands to show the SHA of a configuration

The `show` commands provide SHA details of the running and startup configurations.

show hash

Syntax

```
show {config | running-config} hash {recalculate}
```

Description

Shows SHA ID of startup or running configuration.

Command context

config

Examples

```
switch# show config
config
files          List saved configuration files.
hash           Display the hash calculated for the startup
               configuration.
interface      Show the startup configuration for interfaces.
oobm           Show the startup configuration for OOBM.
```

To display the hash calculated for the startup configuration:

```
switch(config)# show config hash
The hash must be calculated.  This may take several minutes.

Continue (y/n)? y

Calculating hash...
Startup Configuration hash:

4f66 8b77 6b66 e5fb 0c12 f7fb 8ea6 b548 af2e 2e03

This hash is only valid for comparison to a baseline hash if
the configuration has not been explicitly changed (such as
with a CLI command) or implicitly changed (such as by the
removal of a hardware module).

switch(config)# show config hash
recalculate      Calculate hash (if needed) without prompting.

switch(config)# show config hash recalculate
Startup Configuration hash:

4f66 8b77 6b66 e5fb 0c12 f7fb 8ea6 b548 af2e 2e03

This hash is only valid for comparison to a baseline hash if
the configuration has not been explicitly changed (such as
with a CLI command) or implicitly changed (such as by the
removal of a hardware module).
```

To display the hash calculated for the running configuration:

```
switch(config)# show running-config hash
The hash must be calculated. This may take several minutes.

Continue (y/n)? y

Calculating hash...
Running configuration hash:

6d88 0880 98af e8a8 b564 15cd 368e 4269 9d61 4bfa

This hash is only valid for comparison to a baseline hash if
the configuration has not been explicitly changed (such as
with a CLI command) or implicitly changed (such as by the
removal of a hardware module).
```

Scenarios that block the configuration restoration process

The configuration restoration process is blocked in the following scenarios:

- If the restored configuration file requires a reboot.
- If the restored configuration changes the entire configuration (for example, module add or remove).

More information

[cfg-restore](#) on page 632

Limitations

Switch configuration restore without reboot feature does not support the following scenarios:

- Removing a physically present member through `cfg-restore` command
- Flex-module provisioning or removal on standalone or a stack
- Module provisioning or removal on standalone or a stack
- Adding a VLAN when the VLAN limit is already reached by having dynamic VLANs. Due to timing issues, ports or dynamic VLANs take some time to become offline or be removed, even after applying a removal command. In such a case, restore commands fail as normal CLI commands.
- The maximum number of backup configuration files has been increased from three to five. When the firmware is downgraded to lower versions, the `show config files` command displays the details to only three configuration files.
- Restore is allowed based on the available system resource factors.

Blocking of configuration from other sessions

All `write` operations are not allowed from other sessions (CLI/WebUI/SNMP/REST, and so on) during a configuration restoration process. Only `read` operation is allowed. Attempts to use `write` operation results in the Configuration restore is in progress, configuration changes are temporarily disabled error. The following `show` commands are blocked during a configuration restoration process:

- `show-tech`
- `show config`

- `show running-config`
- `show startup-config`

Troubleshooting and support

Switch configuration restore without reboot feature provides CLI support to:

- display the number of commands with line number that failed to restore.
- display the delta between running configuration and the configuration to be restored.

More information

[Viewing the differences between a running configuration and a backup configuration](#) on page 644
[show cfg-restore status](#) on page 642

debug cfg-restore

Syntax

```
debug cfg-restore
```

Description

Debug logs display the commands executed by `cfg-restore`.

Command context

`config` and `manager`

Example

```
switch(config)# debug cfg-restore
switch(config)# debug destination buffer
switch(config)# show debug buffer
0000:01:39:51.58 CFG mCfgRestoreMgr:cfg-restore to config file "backup_conif"
    started.
0000:01:39:56.45 CFG mCfgRestoreMgr:cfg-restore diff calculated, number of
    commands to add =0 number of commands to delete = 3.
0000:01:39:56.45 CFG mCfgRestoreMgr:cfg-restore iteration count = 1.
0000:01:39:56.51 CFG mCfgRestoreMgr:Command executed = no vlan 2 tagged 9,
    Status = Success.
0000:01:39:56.51 CFG mCfgRestoreMgr:Command deleted = vlan 2 tagged 9.
0000:01:39:56.58 CFG mCfgRestoreMgr:Command executed = no vlan 3 tagged 9,
    Status = Success.
0000:01:39:56.58 CFG mCfgRestoreMgr:Command deleted = vlan 3 tagged 9.
0000:01:39:56.64 CFG mCfgRestoreMgr:Command executed = no vlan 4 tagged 9,
    Status = Success.
0000:01:39:56.65 CFG mCfgRestoreMgr:Command deleted = vlan 4 tagged 9.
0000:01:39:56.65 CFG mCfgRestoreMgr:cfg-restore iteration count = 2.
0000:01:39:59.38 CFG mCfgRestoreMgr:Successfully applied configuration
    'backup_conif' to running configuration.
** Total debug messages = 22
```

Supported devices

Code	Switch
KB	Aruba 5400R Switch Series

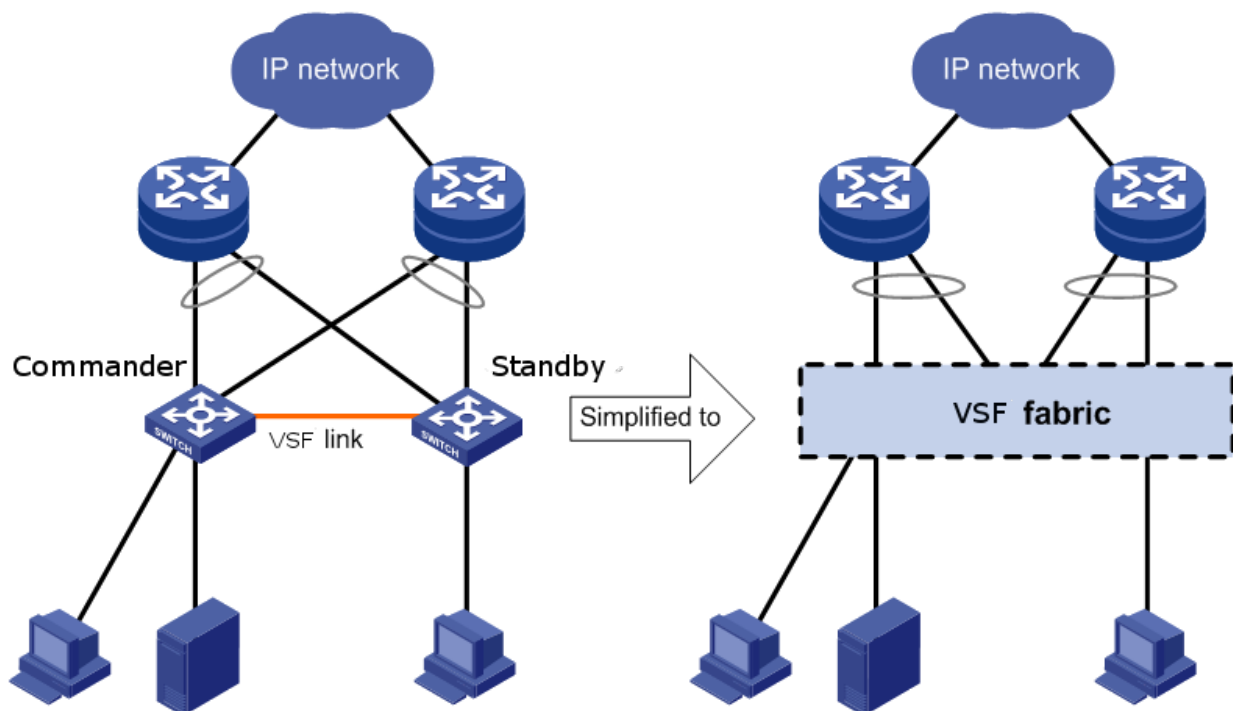


NOTE: VSF is supported only on V3 blades. Once VSF is enabled, the switch will reboot in V3-only mode.

Overview of VSF

Aruba Virtual Switching Framework (VSF) technology virtualizes two physical devices in the same layer into one Virtual Fabric which provides high availability and scalability. VSF allows supported switches connected to each other through normal ethernet connections (copper or fiber) to behave like a single switch.

Figure 173: Two devices using VSF technology appearing as a single node to the upper-layer and lower-layer devices



Benefits of VSF

Simplified topology and ease of management

A VSF fabric appears and behaves as one logical switch and is accessible by the network through a single IP address.



NOTE: Spanning tree features are not necessary among VSF members.

1:1 redundancy

One member acts as the Commander to manage and control the entire VSF fabric. The other switch acts as a Standby and backs up the commander, and takes over in case of commander failure.

VSF port aggregation

A VSF link can aggregate up to eight VSF ports with immediate neighboring member. This provides redundancy till failure of seven VSF ports.

Distributed trunking

The Ethernet link aggregation feature can be used to aggregate physical links between the VSF and its upstream or downstream devices across the VSF members. This eliminates the need for spanning tree and also provides load balancing across all ports of the link aggregate.

Network scalability

The processing power is equal to the Commander. The forwarding capacity is equal to both the Commander and the Standby combined.

Member roles

VSF uses two member roles: Commander and Standby.



NOTE: All switches in the VSF stack will have the same software version. During stack formation, switches which do not have the same software version as the commander, will be updated to the commander's software. This will cause a reboot of the updated switch.

Commander

Control and management plane protocols run on the Commander, which is responsible for managing the forwarding databases, synchronizing them with the Standby and controlling all line cards including that of the Standby.

Standby

Standby is a stateful backup device for the Commander and is ready to take control of the VSF virtual chassis if the Commander device fails. This enables the VSF virtual chassis to continue its operations seamlessly in the event of a failure.

Management module

The switch can have two management modules (dual MM). In a VSF stack with dual MMs, both the Commander and Standby of the VSF stack each have only one MM (say MM1) as Active and the second MM (say MM2) as Offline.

If the Active MM (MM1) of the Commander fails, the Standby changes role and becomes the new Commander. The Offline MM (MM2) of the old Commander boots to join the stack as the new Standby. MM2 of the new Standby is now Active and MM1 is Offline.

VSF member ID

VSF uses member IDs to uniquely identify and manage its members. The first part of the interface module number is the Member ID information, which identifies interfaces in a VSF fabric.

The device that wins election and becomes Commander will keep its member ID while the other will automatically be assigned a different unassigned member ID from the pool and reboot.



NOTE: If the VSF member ID changes when joining a VSF virtual chassis it will cause a reboot of that member not the whole VSF virtual chassis.

VSF link

A VSF link is a logical interface that connects VSF member devices. The VSF link is named `I-Link<Member ID>_1`. To configure a VSF link, bind a minimum of one physical interface to it. The bound physical interfaces automatically aggregate to form a VSF link. A VSF link goes down only if all its VSF physical interfaces are down.

`I-Link<Member ID>_1` is the default name.

vsf member link

Syntax

```
[no] vsf member <MEMBER-ID> link <LINK-ID> [[ethernet] <PORT-LIST> | name <LINK-NAME>]
```

Description

Create the VSF links. A set of physical ports between any 2 members, carrying VSF traffic, is collectively referred to as a VSF link.

Parameters

<MEMBER-ID>

The VSF member-ID for the member command or parameter. Member ID value can be in the range from 1 to 2.

<LINK-ID>

VSF link ID value. For Aruba 5400R devices, allowed Link ID value is 1.

<PORT-LIST>

The port number or a list of ports. Upto 8 ports can be assigned into a VSF link.

<LINK-NAME>

The VSF link name. Upto 10 characters are allowed for link name.

Operating Notes

- A VSF link is a logical port dedicated to the internal connection of an VSF virtual device.
- A VSF link is effective only after it is bound to a physical port.
- When an Ethernet port is bound to a VSF link, it carries VSF data traffic and VSF protocol packets.

Validation rules for VSF member

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
When trunk static/manual and mesh is getting configured as VSF port	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cannot configure VSF on port "A1" because that port is an LACP trunk. Cannot configure VSF on port "A1" because that port is a Mesh. Cannot configure VSF on port "A1" because that port is a Distributed LACP trunk. Cannot configure VSF on port "A1" because that port is a Distributed trunk. Cannot configure VSF on port "A1" because that port is a Dynamic trunk. Cannot configure VSF on port "A1" because that port is an InterSwitch Connect (ISC) portError configuring VSF on port "A1": An unsupported trunking mode is already configured on this port.
Adding a 1G port to a VSF link	Cannot enable VSF on a port operating at other than 10G or 40G.
Adding both 10G and 40G ports to a VSF link	<p>Port 1/A1 does not support the current VSF port speed of 10G and may not be activated. Use compatible transceiver or reconfigure port speed to utilize this port.</p> <p>All configuration on this port has been removed and port is placed in VSF mode.</p>
Max 8 ports per link.	Cannot configure more than 8 physical ports as an VSF link.
For other than physical ports.	VSF capabilities are not supported on port "A1".
Cannot set a link name which is having more than 10 characters.	Cannot configure the VSF link name. The name is not a valid UI display string, or is blank, or exceeds 10 characters.
Direct VSF port removal case	Cannot remove VSF link when it has physical ports associated with it. First remove the associated physical ports and then remove the VSF link.
Removing the last VSF port in a VSF link that is "Up" is forbidden.	Removing of binding between physical ports and VSF link is not allowed since it would result in a stack split.
Using a port reserved for internal use as a VSF port.	Cannot use stolen/reserved ports as VSF ports.

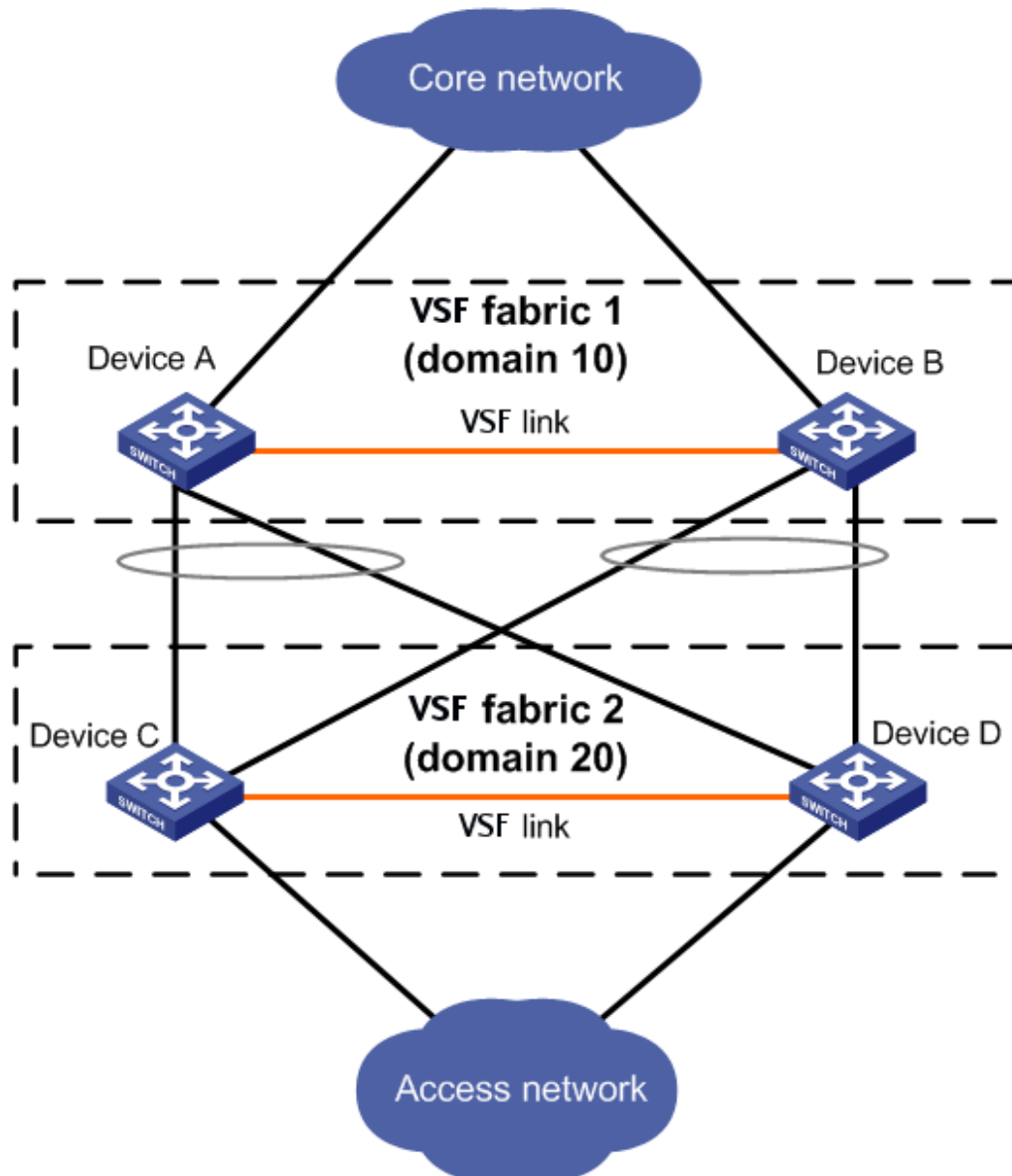
Physical VSF ports

VSF ports connect VSF member devices and must be assembled using a VSF link. These VSF ports forward VSF protocol packets and data traffic.

VSF domain ID

VSF uses VSF domain IDs to uniquely identify VSF fabrics and prevent VSF fabrics from interfering with one another. One VSF fabric forms one VSF domain.

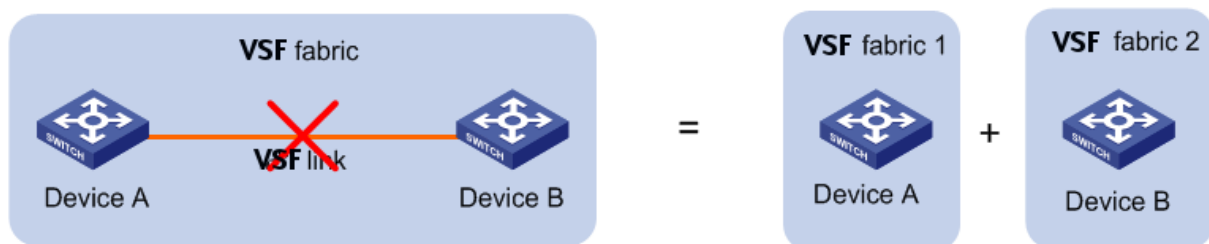
Figure 174: *Two VSF domains*



VSF split

A VSF split can occur due to a VSF link failure where all ports in the VSF link go down. This failure results in independent VSF fabric fragments each having its own Commander role. Recommends configuring a Multiple Active Detection (MAD) mechanism to avoid duplicate IP addresses, routing issues, and traffic forwarding problems when a VSF split occurs.

Figure 175: VSF split



VSF merge

VSF merge happens on connecting two different VSF fragments having same domain-id via VSF links. One of the VSF fragment will go for reboot to merge with the other fragment and forms one VSF fabric. VSF fabric can only be formed among same type of devices. For example Aruba 5406R cannot form a VSF with Aruba 5412R.

Figure 176: VSF Merge



Member priority

Member priority determines the possibility of a member device to get elected as the Commander. A member with higher priority is more likely to be elected as the Commander. The default priority is 128, and ranges from 1 to 255.



NOTE: Changing the priority does not affect the commander immediately. It is only used at the next election, which will be at the next stack reboot

Interface naming conventions

An interface is named in the following format:

Interface name

`<MEMBER-ID>/<interface-module><port-index>`

Example

1/A1, 2/L24

Parameters

<MEMBER-ID>

VSF member ID of the switch. The VSF member ID always takes effect, whether or not the device has formed a VSF fabric with other devices. If the device is alone, the device is considered to be a standalone VSF fabric.

This argument defaults to 1.

<interface-module >

Slot letter of the front panel. Letter can be A-F for Aruba 5406R switch and A-L for Aruba 5412R switch.

<port-index >

Index of the port on the device. Port index depends on the number of ports available on the linecard (or Interface Module).

Interface name

On VSF, an interface name would take this form:

```
<member ID>/<interface-module><port-index>
```

2/B4

where 2 is the member ID and B4 is the port-index.

Running-configuration synchronization

VSF uses a strict running-configuration synchronization mechanism. In a VSF fabric, a device obtains and runs the configuration of the Commander. Commander manages and retains the configuration of all the devices.

VSF deployment methods

There are two ways to configure a VSF: Discovered Configuration Mode and Provisioned Configuration Mode.

Discovered configuration mode procedure

The following procedure configures devices into VSF members:

1. Configure VSF memberID and ports on one switch and enable VSF on that switch
2. After reboot, the device will come up as standalone VSF member. Connect a new device (with the factory default configuration) to this VSF device. The commander should be connected to the VSF ports of the first device.
3. The new device will reboot and join as standby.

Provisioned configuration mode procedure

The following procedure configures devices into VSF members:

Procedure

1. Configure VSF memberID and VSF links on one switch and enable VSF on that switch.
2. After reboot, the device will come up as standalone VSF commander. Provision the second device with its memberID, J-Number, and, optionally, the MAC address.

3. Provision the module with its J-Number. Then, provision VSF link and ports on that module.
4. Connect the new device (with the factory default configuration) to this VSF device. The new device should be connected to the configured VSF ports.
5. The new device will reboot and join as standby.

Configuration commands

copy core-dump

Copy core-dump from the specified VSF member. User can copy available core-dump file from interface module or management module.

Syntax

```
copy core-dump vsf member <MEMBER-ID> <SLOT-ID> | mm-active sftp | tftp | usb |
xmodem <HOST-NAME-STR> | <IP-ADDR> | <IPV6-ADDR> <FILENAME-STR>
```

Description

The VSF member-ID for the member command or parameter. Member ID value can be in the range from 1 to 2.

Parameters

<MEMBER-ID>

Specify the VSF member.

<SLOT-ID>

Copy interface module core-dump file.

copy crash-data

Copy the crash data file of the switch.

Syntax

```
copy crash-data vsf member <MEMBER-ID> <SLOT-ID-RANGE> | mm | sftp | tftp | usb |
xmodem sftp | tftp | usb | xmodem <HOST-NAME-STR> | <IP-ADDR> | <IPV6-ADDR>
<FILENAME-STR>
```

Description

Copy the switch crash data file.

Parameters

<MEMBER-ID>

The VSF member-ID for the member command or parameter. Member ID value can be in the range from 1 to 2.

<SLOT-ID-RANGE>

Enter the single slot identifier.

copy crash-files

Syntax

```
copy crash-files vsf member <MEMBER-ID> [<SLOT-ID-RANGE> | mm-active sftp | tftp |
usb | xmodem] <HOST-NAME-STR> | <IP-ADDR> | <IPV6-ADDR> <FILENAME-STR>
```

Description

Copy the switch crash files from the specific VSF member

Parameters

<MEMBER-ID>

The VSF member-ID for the member command or parameter. Member ID value can be in the range from 1 to 2.

<SLOT-ID-RANGE>

Enter single slot identifier.

mm-active

Copy active management module crash files.

Usage

```
Switch(config)# copy crash-files vsf member
```

```
Switch(config)# copy crash-files vsf member 1
```

copy crash-log vsf-member

Syntax

```
copy crash-log vsf member <MEMBER-ID> | <SLOT-ID-RANGE> | mm | sftp | tftp | usb |  
xmodem sftp | tftp | usb | xmodem <HOST-NAME-STR> | <IP-ADDR> | <IPV6-ADDR>  
<FILENAME-STR>
```

Description

Copy the switch log file.

Parameters

<MEMBER-ID>

The VSF member-ID for the member command or parameter. Member ID value can be in the range from 1 to 2.

<SLOT-ID-RANGE>

Enter the single slot identifier.

copy fdr-log

Copy FDR (Flight data recorder) logs. User can either copy from management module or interface module or both.

Syntax

```
copy fdr-log vsf member <MEMBER-ID> all | mm-active sftp | tftp | usb | xmodem <HOST-NAME-STR> | <IP-ADDR> | <IPV6-ADDR> <FILENAME-STR>
```

Description

Copy FDR logs from the switch to an SFTP/TFTP server, USB or xmodem terminal.

Parameters

<MEMBER-ID>

The VSF member-ID for the member command or parameter. Member ID value can be in the range from 1 to 2.

erase fdr-log vsf

Erase FDR log from the specified member.

Syntax

```
erase fdr-log [vsf member <MEMBER-ID>] [slot | mm-active]
```

Description

Erase the FDR log files.

Parameters

<MEMBER-ID>

The VSF member-ID for the member command or parameter. Member ID value can be in the range from 1 to 2.

power-over-ethernet vsf-member

Syntax

```
[no] power-over-ethernet vsf member <MEMBER-ID> pre-std-detect [slot <SLOT-LIST>]  
[ports <PORT-LIST>]
```

Description

Set Power Over Ethernet (PoE) configuration parameters. Pre-standard detection and redundancy can be configured only at a per-member level when VSF is enabled.

Parameters

<MEMBER-ID>

The VSF member-ID for the 'member' command/parameter. Member ID value can be in the range from 1 to 2.

SLOT-ID-RANGE

Alphabetic device slot identifier or slot range.

<PORT-LIST>

Ethernet port number, a list of ethernet ports or 'all' for all ports.

<SLOT-ID-RANGE>

Enter an alphabetic device slot identifier or slot range preceded with the VSF member-ID [VSF-MEMBER/SLOT].

n+1

One of the highest power supplies will be held in reserve. In the event of a simple power supply failure, no powered devices will be shut down.

full

Half of the available power supplies will be held on reserve.

<THRESHOLD-LEVEL>

Threshold level in the range from 1 to 99.

Usage

```
power-over-ethernet vsf member <MEMBER-ID> redundancy [n+1 | full]  
[no] power-over-ethernet vsf member <MEMBER-ID> redundancy [n+1 | full]  
power-over-ethernet vsf member <MEMBER-ID> slot <SLOT-ID-RANGE> threshold  
<THRESHOLD-LEVEL>
```

redundancy switchover

Redundancy configuration for management modules.

Syntax

```
redundancy switchover
```

Description

The command causes the VSF Commander switch to immediately switch over to the standby switch.

snmp-server enable traps vsf

Syntax

```
[no] snmp-server enable traps vsf
```

Description

Enable traps for the VSF functionality.

Validation rules

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
This command cannot be executed if VSF is not enabled.	VSF is not enabled.

vsf domain

Syntax

```
vsf domain <DOMAIN-ID>
```

Description

Change domain ID for the VSF virtual chassis. Once VSF is enabled and virtual chassis is formed, VSF domain ID can be changed using this command.

Parameters

<DOMAIN-ID>

The VSF virtual chassis domain ID. Domain ID value can be in the range from 1 to 4294967296.

Validation rules

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
Domain ID must be a 32-bit unsigned integer.	The domain ID cannot be zero.

vsf enable

From the config context:

Syntax

```
vsf enable domain <DOMAIN-ID>
```

Description

Enable VSF on the switch. Allows for switches to be stacked using Ethernet ports.

Parameters

<DOMAIN-ID>

The VSF virtual chassis domain ID. Domain ID value can be in the range from 1 to 4294967296.



CAUTION: The command `vsf enable domain` reboots only one switch to form the VSF fabric. Upon reboot, the switches come up in the “VSF enabled” mode. Port numbers are prefixed with member numbers, such as “1/A1,”. The configuration on the switch becoming Commander will be retained, but any pre-existing configuration on other switches **will** be over-written.

The switches will inherit the same switch software as the member becoming Commander. If the software image of a switch needs to be updated, the switch will reboot twice.

vsf disable

Syntax

```
vsf disable
```

Description

Disable VSF on the virtual chassis.

Restriction

This command will not be available until VSF is enabled.

Validation rules

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
When <code>vsf enable</code> is executed on an VSF disabled switch following warning message will be displayed.	This will save the current configuration and reboot the switch. Continue [y/n]?
	Run <code>vsf enable</code> on VSF virtual chassis.
Run VSF disable when VSF links is UP.	VSF cannot be disabled when the VSF virtual chassis is active.
	Run <code>vsf disable</code> command on VSF disabled switch.

vsf member reboot

Syntax

```
boot vsf member <MEMBER-ID>
```

Description

Reboot the VSF member and rejoin the virtual chassis with the current configuration.

Parameters

<MEMBER-ID>

The VSF member-ID for the member command or parameter. Member ID value can be in the range from 1 to 2.

Restriction

This command will not be available until VSF is enabled.

vsf member remove

This command removes the entire configuration for a specified member. After issuing the command, the specified member-ID is available for re-use and may be provisioned or assigned to another device.

If the member physically exists, its configuration will be erased. It will then be powered down by default.

Syntax

```
vsf member <MEMBER-ID> remove
```

Description

This command erases the VSF member configuration and VSF member will be powered off.

Parameters

<MEMBER-ID>

The VSF member-ID for the member command or parameter. Member ID value can be in the range from 1 to 2.

Restriction

This command will not be available until VSF is enabled.

Validation rules

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
If VSF not enabled, this command is not allowed.	VSF is not enabled.
VSF member neither exists nor provisioned	The specified VSF virtual chassis member either does not exist or is not provisioned.
VSF standby syncing add remove member blocked	VSF virtual chassis members cannot be added or removed while the standby is booting.
VSF member remove causes VSF virtual chassis split	Removing this member is not allowed since it would result in a VSF virtual chassis split.
VSF missing member remove	The specified VSF virtual chassis member will be removed and its configuration will be erased. The resulting configuration will be saved. Continue [y/n]?
VSF VC member does not exist	The specified VSF virtual chassis member does not exist.
VSF provision member remove	The specified VSF virtual chassis member configuration will be erased. The resulting configuration will be saved. Continue [y/n]?
VSF remove commander	The VSF virtual chassis commander cannot be removed. Please fail over to standby before trying to remove the commander.

Table Continued

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
VSF member remove	The specified VSF virtual chassis member will be removed and its configuration will be erased. The resulting configuration will be saved. The VSF member will be shut down. Continue [y/n]?
VSF standby remove	The specified VSF virtual chassis member will be removed and its configuration will be erased. The resulting configuration will be saved. The VSF member will be shut down. Continue [y/n]?

vsf member shutdown

For a switch that physically exists, this command will cause the switch to shut down. `shutdown` is used in preparation to remove the switch from the virtual chassis. The switch will not become a deciding member of the virtual chassis again until it is rejoined.

The `shutdown` command can not be used on the Commander. The `shutdown` command will succeed only if the switch physically exists and is an active member of the virtual chassis.

Syntax

```
vsf member <MEMBER-ID> shutdown
```

Description

Shut down the VSF virtual chassis member.

Parameters

<MEMBER-ID>

The VSF member-ID for the member command or parameter. Member ID value can be in the range from 1 to 2.

Restriction

Shutdown will not be available until VSF is enabled.

Validation rules

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
If member switch physically exists	The specified VSF virtual chassis member will be shut down. Continue [y/n]?
If member switch physically exists and is the commander	The VSF virtual chassis commander cannot be shut down. Please fail over to the standby first.
If member switch does not physically exist	The specified VSF virtual chassis member does not exist.
If shutting down a member will cause a VC –split	Shutting down this VSF virtual chassis member is not allowed since it would result in a VSF virtual chassis split.
If VSF not enabled, this command is not allowed.	VSF is not enabled.

vsf member priority

Syntax

```
[no] vsf member <MEMBER-ID> priority <PRIORITY>
```

Description

Assign a priority to the specified VSF virtual chassis member. The higher the priority, the more likely that the virtual chassis member will become the commander at the next virtual chassis reboot. The default priority value is 128.

Parameters

<MEMBER-ID>

The VSF member-ID for the member command or parameter. Member ID value can be in the range from 1 to 2.

<PRIORITY>

The priority value for VSF member. Priority value can be in the range from 1 to 255.

vsf member type

Syntax

```
vsf member <MEMBER-ID> type <TYPE> [mac <MAC-ADDR>]
```

Description

Configure the family of the VSF member-switch being provisioned. After provisioning, the VSF member-switch can be configured as if it were physically present. When an VSF member-switch matching the provisioned details joins the VSF, it is provided this configuration. A new or missing VSF member can be configured as a provisioned device by using this command.

Parameters

<MEMBER-ID >

The VSF member-ID for the member command or parameter. Member ID value can be in the range from 1 to 2.

<TYPE>

Configure the family of the VSF member-switch being provisioned.

<MAC-ADDR >

Configure the MAC address of the VSF member switch being provisioned.

Restrictions

- If switch “N” physically exists, the command will fail.
- If switch “N” is provisioned, the command can be used to change the MAC or type.
- If the J-Number is known to not support stacking, or the J-Number is unknown, the command will fail.
- If the same MAC address is already provisioned or exists on another member ID, the command will fail.

Usage

```
vsf member <2> type <J9850A> mac <001122-334455>
```

Updates the strict provisioning for VSF member 2, and changes the MAC address to 001122-334455.

```
vsf member <2> type <J9850A>
```

Changes the “strict” provisioning for VSF member 2 to “loose” provisioning. The configured MAC address is then removed.

```
vsf member <2> type <J9850A> mac <00aabb-cceedd>
```

Changes “loose” provisioning for VSF member 2 to “strict” provisioning with MAC address 00aabb-cceedd.

Validation rules

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
If the member-ID is not between 1 to 2 for 5400R, then this command will return an error.	The VSF member-ID value is not in range.
The member-ID must physically exist or already be provisioned.	The specified VSF virtual chassis member either does not exist or is not provisioned.
When each time new member is configured, write mem is called.	This will save the current configuration. Continue [y/n]?

Show commands

show vsf

Shows the current status and all current configurations of the provisioned VSF configuration on a switch.

Syntax

```
show vsf [detail]
```

Description

Shows detailed information of VSF virtual chassis members that are provisioned.

```
Switch# show vsf
VSF Domain ID : 44444
MAC Address : 3464a9-b2533f
VSF Topology : Chain
VSF Status : Active
Uptime : 32d 4h 28m
VSF Oobm-MAD : Enabled
Software Version : KB.16.01.0004
Mbr
ID      Mac Address      Model          Pri Status
-----
1       3464a9-b24300 J9850A Switch 5406Rz12 255 Commander
2       288023-98ae00 J9850A Switch 5406Rz12 100 Standby
```

```
Switch(config)# show vsf detail

VSF Domain ID      : 44444
MAC Address        : 3464a9-b2533f
VSF Topology       : Chain
```

```

VSF Status      : Active
Uptime          : 32d 4h 28m
VSF Oobm-MAD    : Enabled
VSF Lldp-MAD    : Disabled
Software Version : KB.16.01.0004

Name            : VSF-Switch
Contact         :
Location        :

Member ID       : 1
MAC Address     : 3464a9-b2533f
Type            : J9850A
Model           : J9850A Switch 5406Rz12
Priority        : 255
Status          : Commander
ROM Version     : KB.16.01.0006
Serial Number   : ff ff ff ff ff ff ff ff ff ff
Uptime          : 32d 4h 28m
CPU Utilization : 0%
Memory - Total  : 704,471,040 bytes
Free            : 522,821,984 bytes
VSF Links -
#1 : Active, Peer member 2

```

```

Member ID       : 2
MAC Address     : 288023-98ae00
Type            : J9850A
Model           : J9850A Switch 5406Rz12
Priority        : 100
Status          : Standby
ROM Version     : KB.16.01.0006
Serial Number   : SG46G4904K
Uptime          : 32d 4h 20m
CPU Utilization : 2%
Memory - Total  : 704,471,040 bytes
Free            : 536,014,360 bytes
VSF Links -
#1 : Active, Peer member 1

```

Validation rules

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
If VSF is not enabled, this command is not applicable.	VSF is not enabled.

show vsf link

Syntax

```
show vsf link [detail]
```

Description

Shows the VSF port state of the VSF links for each VSF member, in detail.

show vsf link

```
Switch# show vsf link
```

VSF Member 1

Link	Link-Name	Link State	Peer Member	Peer Link
1	I-Link1_1	Up	2	1

VSF Member 2

Link	Link-Name	Link State	Peer Member	Peer Link
1	I-Link2_1	Up	1	1

show vsf link detail

```
Switch# show vsf link detail
```

```
vsf Member: 1      Link: 1
```

```
Vsf-Port    Port-State
```

```
-----  
1/E1        Up: Connected to port 2/E1
```

```
vsf Member: 2      Link: 1
```

```
Vsf-Port    Port-State
```

```
-----  
2/E1        Up: Connected to port 1/E1
```

show vsf member

Syntax

```
show vsf member <MEMBER-ID>
```

Description

Shows the virtual chassis information for member.

Parameters

<MEMBER ID>

The VSF member-ID for the member command or parameter. Member ID value can be in the range from 1 to 2.

show vsf member 1

```
Switch# show vsf member 1
```

```
Member ID      : 1  
MAC Address    : a01d48-8f6700  
Type           : J9850A  
Model          : J9850A Switch 5406Rz12  
Priority        : 128  
Status         : Standby  
ROM Version    : KB.16.01.0005  
Serial Number  : SG4ZG95321
```

```
Uptime          : 21d 19h 5m
CPU Utilization  : 2%
Memory - Total   : 698,957,824 bytes
Free            : 528,240,524 bytes
VSF Links -
#1 : Active, Peer member 2
```

show vsf member 2

```
Switch# show vsf member 2
Member ID       : 2
Mac Address     : 288023-98ae00
Type           : J9850A
Model          : J9850A Switch 5406Rz12
Priority        : 100
Status         : Standby
ROM Version     : KB.16.01.0005
Serial Number   : SG46G4906P
Uptime         : 32d 4h 11m
CPU Utilization : 0%
Memory - Total  : 709,357,568 bytes
Free           : 546,939,520 bytes
VSF Links -
#1 : Active, Peer member 1
```

show system information vsf member

Syntax

```
show system information [vsf member <MEMBER-ID>]
```

Description

Show global configured and operational system parameters of the specified VSF members.

Parameters

<MEMBER-ID>

The VSF member-ID for the member command or parameter. Member ID value can be in the range from 1 to 2.

show system

```
Switch(config)# show system
Status and Counters - General System Information
  System Name       : bolt-vsf-sws
  System Contact    :
  System Location   :
  Allow V2 Modules  : No
  MAC Age Time (sec) : 300
  Time Zone        : -480
  Daylight Time Rule : Continental-US-and-Canada
  Software revision : KB.16.01.0004
  Base MAC Addr     : 3464a9-b2533f

VSF-Member :1
  ROM Version       : KB.16.01.0005
  Up Time          : 32 days
  CPU Util (%)     : 2
  MAC Addr         : 3464a9-b24300
  Serial Number    : SG4BG491BL
```

```

Memory   - Total   : 709,357,568   Free      : 529,020,080

VSF-Member :2
ROM Version      : KB.16.01.0005
Up Time         : 32 days
CPU Util (%)    : 0
MAC Addr        : 288023-98ae00
Serial Number    : SG46G4906P
Memory   - Total : 709,357,568   Free      : 546,939,520

```

show system information VSF member 2

```

Switch# show system information vsf member 1
Status and Counters - General System Information
System Name       : bolt-vsf-sws
System Contact    :
System Location   :
Allow V2 Modules  : No
MAC Age Time (sec) : 300
Time Zone        : -480
Daylight Time Rule : Continental-US-and-Canada
Software revision : KB.16.01.0004
Base MAC Addr     : 3464a9-b2533f

VSF-Member :1
ROM Version      : KB.16.01.0005
Up Time         : 32 days
CPU Util (%)    : 0
MAC Addr        : 3464a9-b24300
Serial Number    : SG4BG491BL
Memory   - Total : 709,357,568   Free      : 529,413,568

Switch# show system information vsf member 2
Status and Counters - General System Information
System Name       : bolt-vsf-sws
System Contact    :
System Location   :
Allow V2 Modules  : No
MAC Age Time (sec) : 300
Time Zone        : -480
Daylight Time Rule : Continental-US-and-Canada
Software revision : KB.16.01.0004
Base MAC Addr     : 3464a9-b2533f

VSF-Member :2
ROM Version      : KB.16.01.0005
Up Time         : 32 days
CPU Util (%)    : 0
MAC Addr        : 288023-98ae00
Serial Number    : SG46G4906P
Memory   - Total : 709,357,568   Free      : 546,939,520

```

show system chassislocate

Syntax

```
show system chassislocate [vsf member <MEMBER-ID>]
```

Description

Show locator LED information. If VSF is enabled, this shows locator LED information for all the VSF members.

Parameters

<MEMBER-ID>

The VSF member-ID for the member command or parameter. Member ID value can be in the range from 1 to 2.

show system chassislocate

```
Switch# show system chassislocate
Locator LED Status
VSF      Current  Time
Member   State    Remaining  Configuration
-----
1         off
2         blink   00:29:10
```

show system chassislocate vsf member 2

```
Switch# show system chassislocate vsf member 2
Locator LED Status
Switch# show system chassislocate vsf member 2
Locator LED Status
VSF      Current  Time
Member   State    Remaining  Configuration
-----
2         blink   00:29:45
```

show boot-history

Syntax

```
show boot-history [vsf member <MEMBER-ID>]
```

Description

Display the system boot log for VSF.

Parameters

<MEMBER-ID>

The VSF member-ID for the member command or parameter. Member ID value can be in the range from 1 to 2.

show system temperature

Syntax

```
show system temperature [vsf member <MEMBER-ID>]
```

Description

Show current temperature sensor information. If VSF is enabled, this shows the temperature sensor information for all VSF members.

Parameters

<MEMBER-ID>

The VSF member-ID for the member command or parameter. Member ID value can be in the range from 1 to 2.

show system temperature

```
Switch# show system temperature
```

System Air Temperatures

VSF-Member 1

Temp Sensor	Current Temp	Max Temp	Min Temp	Threshold	OverTemp	Avg Temp
Chassis	31C	33C	27C	55C	NO	29.46C

VSF-Member 2

Temp Sensor	Current Temp	Max Temp	Min Temp	Threshold	OverTemp	Avg Temp
Chassis	30C	32C	28C	55C	NO	29.08C

show system temperature vsf member 2

```
Switch# show system temperature vsf member 2
```

System Air Temperatures

VSF-Member 2

Temp Sensor	Current Temp	Max Temp	Min Temp	Threshold	OverTemp	Avg Temp
Chassis	30C	32C	28C	55C	NO	29.08C

show system fans

Syntax

```
show system fans [vsf member <MEMBER-ID>]
```

Description

Show system fan status. If VSF is enabled, this shows the system fan status for all VSF members.

Parameters

<MEMBER-ID>

The VSF member-ID for the member command or parameter. Member ID value can be in the range from 1 to 2.

show system fans

```
show system fans
```

Fan Information

VSF-Member 1

Num	State	Failures
Sys-1	Fan OK	0
Sys-2	Fan OK	0
Sys-3	Fan OK	0
Sys-4	Fan OK	0

0 / 4 Fans in Failure state
0 / 4 Fans have been in Failure state

```

VSF-Member  2
  Num  | State      | Failures
-----+-----+-----
Sys-1   | Fan OK     | 0
Sys-2   | Fan OK     | 0
Sys-3   | Fan OK     | 0
Sys-4   | Fan OK     | 0
0 / 4 Fans in Failure state
0 / 4 Fans have been in Failure state

```

show system fans vsf member 1

```

show system fans VSF member 1

Fan Information
VSF-Member  1
  Num  | State      | Failures
-----+-----+-----
Sys-1   | Fan OK     | 0
Sys-2   | Fan OK     | 0
Sys-3   | Fan OK     | 0
Sys-4   | Fan OK     | 0
0 / 4 Fans in Failure state
0 / 4 Fans have been in Failure state

```

show CPU

Syntax

```
show cpu <SECONDS>
```

Description

Show average CPU utilization.

Parameters

<INTEGER>

Refresh time.

<SLOT-ID-RANGE>

Alphabetic device slot identifier or slot range.

Usage

```
show cpu slot process refresh <INTEGER>
```

```
show cpu process slot <SLOT-ID-RANGE> refresh <INTEGER>
```

show cpu slot all

```

Switch# show cpu slot all
VSF slot 1/a:
-----
12 percent busy, from 18 sec ago

1 sec ave: 14 percent busy
5 sec ave: 12 percent busy
1 min ave: 12 percent busy
VSF slot 1/f:
-----

```

```
16 percent busy, from 17 sec ago
1 sec ave: 27 percent busy
5 sec ave: 16 percent busy
1 min ave: 15 percent busy
```

VSF slot 2/a:

```
-----
12 percent busy, from 18 sec ago
1 sec ave: 14 percent busy
5 sec ave: 12 percent busy
1 min ave: 12 percent busy
```

VSF slot 2/f:

```
-----
16 percent busy, from 17 sec ago
1 sec ave: 27 percent busy
5 sec ave: 16 percent busy
1 min ave: 15 percent busy
```

show cpu slot 1/A

```
Switch# show cpu slot 1/A
```

VSF slot 1/a:

```
-----
12 percent busy, from 18 sec ago
1 sec ave: 14 percent busy
5 sec ave: 12 percent busy
1 min ave: 12 percent busy
```

show CPU process slot

Syntax

```
show cpu <SECONDS>
```

Description

Show average CPU utilization.

Parameters

<SECONDS >

The time in seconds over which to average CPU utilization.

Usage

```
show cpu slot <SLOT-LIST> <SECONDS>
```

```
show cpu process slot <SLOT-LIST> refresh <COUNT>
```

show cpu process slot all

```
Switch# show cpu process slot all
```

VSF slot 1/A:

```
-----
Process tracker state: ACTIVE
Process tracking time: 30 seconds
```

Total	%	Time Since	Times	Max
-------	---	------------	-------	-----

Process Name	Priority	Time	CPU	Last Ran	Ran	Time
Hardware Mgmt-3	192	3 s	6	234 ms	214	35 ms
System Services-2	156	3 s	5	55 ms	110	50 ms
Idle-3	1	12 s	24	731 us	245918	193 us
Idle-1	226	25 s	51	770 us	123627	319 us
Idle-0	226	5 s	10	459 us	122921	170 us

VSF slot 2/F:

 Process tracker state: ACTIVE
 Process tracking time: 30 seconds

Process Name	Total Priority	% Time	CPU	Time Since Last Ran	Times Ran	Max Time
Hardware Mgmt-3	192	3 s	8	54 ms	189	41 ms
System Services-2	156	3 s	8	2 s	131	50 ms
Idle-3	1	9 s	23	870 us	160197	199 us
Idle-0	226	4 s	10	926 us	80053	162 us
Idle-1	226	19 s	48	1 ms	80545	395 us

show cpu process slot 1/A

Switch# show cpu process slot 1/A

VSF slot 1/A:

 Process tracker state: ACTIVE
 Process tracking time: 30 seconds

Process Name	Priority	Total Time	% CPU	Time Since Last Ran	Times Ran	Max Time
Hardware Mgmt-3	192	3 s	6	234 ms	214	35 ms
System Services-2	156	3 s	5	55 ms	110	50 ms
Idle-3	1	12 s	24	731 us	245918	193 us
Idle-1	226	25 s	51	770 us	123627	319 us
Idle-0	226	5 s	10	459 us	122921	170 us

show modules

Syntax

show modules details vsf member <MEMBER-ID> MM1 | MM2 | slot <SLOT-LIST>

Description

Show module details for VSF members.

Parameters

<MEMBER-ID>

The VSF member-ID for the member command or parameter. Member ID value can be in the range from 1 to 2.

MM1

Show MM1 module information of the specified VSF member.

MM2

Show MM2 module information of the specified VSF member.

slot

Show SLOT module information of the specified VSF member.

<SLOT-LIST>

Enter an alphabetic device slot identifier or a slot range.

show modules

Switch# **show modules**

Status and Counters - Module Information

Chassis: 5406Rzl2 J9850A Serial Number: SG4BG491BL

Allow V2 Modules: No

Slot	Module Description	Serial Number	Status	Core Dump	Mod Ver
1/MM1	J9827A Management Module 5400Rzl2	SG4BG4C0C0	Active	YES	1
1/MM2	J9827A Management Module 5400Rzl2	A123456789	Offline	YES	1
1/A	J9992A 20p PoE+ / 1p 40GbE QSFP+...	B123456789	Up	YES	3
1/F	J9991A 20p PoE+ / 4p 1/2.5/5/XGT...	SG5ZGPH190	Up	YES	3
2/MM1	J9827A Management Module 5400Rzl2	SG45G4C0VZ	Active	YES	1
2/A	J9992A 20p PoE+ / 1p 40GbE QSFP+...	c123456789	Up	YES	3
2/F	J9991A 20p PoE+ / 4p 1/2.5/5/XGT...	SG5ZGPH183	Up	YES	3

Switch# **show modules details vsf member 1**

MM1 Show MM1 module information of the specified VSF member.

MM2 Show MM2 module information of the specified VSF member.

slot Show SLOT module information of the specified VSF member.

Switch# **show modules details vsf member 1**

Status and Counters - Module Information

Chassis: 5406Rzl2 J9850A Serial Number: SG4BG491BL

Allow V2 Modules: No

Slot	Module Description	Serial Number	Status	Core Dump	Mod Ver
1/MM1	J9827A Management Module 5400Rzl2	SG4BG4C0C0	Active	YES	1

Slot	Module Description	Serial Number	Status	Core Dump	Mod Ver
1/MM2	J9827A Management Module 5400Rzl2	D123456789	Offline	YES	1

Slot	Module Description	Serial Number	Status	Core Dump	Mod Ver
1/A	J9992A 20p PoE+ / 1p 40GbE QSFP+...	E123456789	Up	YES	3

Slot	Module Description	Serial Number	Status	Core Dump	Mod Ver
1/F	J9991A 20p PoE+ / 4p 1/2.5/5/XGT...	SG5ZGPH190	Up	YES	3

Switch# **show modules details vsf member 2**

Status and Counters - Module Information

Chassis: 5406Rzl2 J9850A Serial Number: SG4BG491BL

Allow V2 Modules: No

Slot	Module Description	Serial Number	Status	Core Dump	Mod Ver
2/MM1	J9827A Management Module 5400Rzl2	SG45G4C0VZ	Active	YES	1
Slot	Module Description	Serial Number	Status	Core Dump	Mod Ver
2/A	J9992A 20p PoE+ / 1p 40GbE QSFP+...	H123456789	Up	YES	3
Slot	Module Description	Serial Number	Status	Core Dump	Mod Ver
2/F	J9991A 20p PoE+ / 4p 1/2.5/5/XGT...	SG5ZGPH183	Up	YES	3

show modules details vsf member 1 slot 1/a

```
Switch# show modules details vsf member 1 slot 1/a
Status and Counters - Module Information
Chassis: 5406Rzl2 J9850A      Serial Number: SG4BG491BL
Allow V2 Modules: No
```

Slot	Module Description	Serial Number	Status	Core Dump	Mod Ver
1/A	J9992A 20p PoE+ / 1p 40GbE QSFP+...	A123456789	Up	YES	3

show power-over-ethernet

Syntax

```
show power-over-ethernet vsf member <MEMBER-ID>
show power-over-ethernet slot all
```

Description

Show power-over-ethernet for named slots or specified VSF member switches.

Parameters

<MEMBER-ID>

The VSF member-ID for the member command or parameter. Member ID value can be in the range from 1 to 2.

show power-over-ethernet slot all

```
Switch# show power-over-ethernet slot all

Status and Counters - System Power Status for slot 1/A
Maximum Power      : 0 W      Operational Status : On
Power In Use       : 0 W +/- 6 W  Usage Threshold (%) : 80

Status and Counters - System Power Status for slot 2/A
Maximum Power      : 0 W      Operational Status : On
Power In Use       : 0 W +/- 6 W  Usage Threshold (%) : 80
```

show power-over-ethernet slot 1/A

```
Switch# show power-over-ethernet slot 1/A
```

```
Maximum Power      :    0 W          Operational Status : On
Power In Use       :    0 W +/- 6 W   Usage Threshold (%) : 80
```

show power-over-ethernet vsf member 1

```
Switch(config)# show power-over-ethernet vsf member 1
Status and Counters - System Power Status for member 1
```

Slot	Maximum Power	Operational Status	Power In Use	Usage Threshold (%)
1/A	266 W	On	0 W +/- 6 W	80
1/L	0 W	Faulty	0 W +/- 6 W	80

show power-over-ethernet vsf member 2

```
Switch# show power-over-ethernet vsf member 2
Status and Counters - System Power Status for member 2
```

Slot	Maximum Power	Operational Status	Power In Use	Usage Threshold (%)
2/A	266 W	On	0 W +/- 6 W	80
2/C	0 W	On	0 W +/- 6 W	80

show system power-supply

Syntax

```
show system power-supply [detailed | fahrenheit]
```

Description

Shows power supply information in either full detail or full detail in Fahrenheit only. Default temperature is displayed in degrees Celsius.

Command context

manager and operator

Parameters

detailed

Shows detailed switch power supply sensor information.

fahrenheit

Shows detailed switch power supply sensor information with temperatures in degrees Fahrenheit.

Usage

- The `show system power-supply detailed` command shows detailed information for the local power supplies only.
- The `show system power-supply detailed` command shows detailed information for power supplies in the powered state only.

Examples

Use of the command `show system power-supply` shows the power supply status for all active switches.

```
Switch# show system power-supply
```

Power Supply Status:

PS#	Model	Serial	State	AC/DC + V	Wattage
1	J9828A	IN30G4D009	Powered	AC 120V/240V	700
2	J9828A	IN30G4D00C	Powered	AC 120V/240V	700
3			Not Present	--	0
4	J9830A	IN43G4G05H	Powered	AC 120V/240V	2750

3 / 4 supply bays delivering power.
Total power: 4150 W

Use of the command `show system power-supply detailed` shows the power supply status in detail for all active switches.

```
Switch# show system power-supply detailed
```

Status and Counters - Power Supply Detailed Information

PS#	Model	Serial	State	Status
1	J9828A	IN30G4D009	Powered	AC Power Consumption : 44 Watts AC MAIN Voltage : 209 Volts Power Supplied : 31 Watts Power Capacity : 700 Watts Inlet Temp (C/F) : 27.0C/80.6F Internal Temp (C/F) : 30.5C/86.0F Fan 1 Speed : 1600 RPM (47%) Fan 2 Speed : 1600 RPM (47%)
2	J9828A	IN30G4D00C	Powered	AC Power Consumption : 46 Watts AC MAIN Voltage : 209 Volts Power Supplied : 21 Watts Power Capacity : 700 Watts Inlet Temp (C/F) : 27.7C/80.6F Internal Temp (C/F) : 32.5C/89.6F Fan 1 Speed : 1600 RPM (47%) Fan 2 Speed : 1600 RPM (47%)
3			Not Present	
4	J9830A	IN43G4G05H	Powered	AC Power Consumption : 90 Watts AC MAIN/AUX Voltage : 210/118 Volts Power Supplied : 16 Watts Power Capacity : 2750 Watts Inlet Temp (C/F) : 30.9C/86.0F Internal Temp (C/F) : 65.6C/149.0F

```

Fan 1 Speed      : 2000 RPM (37%)
Fan 2 Speed      : 1950 RPM (36%)

```

```

3 / 4 supply bays delivering power.
Currently supplying 68 W / 4150 W total power.

```

Use of the command `show system power-supply fahrenheit` shows the power supply status in Fahrenheit for all active switches.

```

Switch# show system power-supply detailed fahrenheit
Power Supply Status:

```

Mem	PS#	Model	Serial	State	Status
1	1	J9830A	IN5BGZ81KZ	Powered	Power Consumption : 95 Watts AC MAIN/AUX Voltage : 118/208 Volts Inlet/Internal Temp : 85.6F/87.7F Fan 1 Speed (util) : 1650RPM (20%) Fan 2 Speed (util) : 1600RPM (19%)
1	2	J9829A	IN5BGZ81KX	Powered	Power Consumption : 51 Watts AC Input Voltage : 208 Volts Inlet/Internal Temp : 85.6F/87.7F Fan 1 Speed (util) : 1650RPM (20%) Fan 2 Speed (util) : 1600RPM (19%)
1	3	J9828A	IN5BGZ81KY	Powered	Power Consumption : 43 Watts AC Input Voltage : 119 Volts Inlet/Internal Temp : 85.6F/87.7F Fan 1 Speed (util) : 1650RPM (20%) Fan 2 Speed (util) : 1600RPM (19%)
1	4			Not Present	
2	1	J9830A	IN5BGZ81KZ	Powered	Power Consumption : 95 Watts AC MAIN/AUX Voltage : 118/208 Volts Inlet/Internal Temp : 85.6F/87.7F Fan 1 Speed (util) : 1650RPM (20%) Fan 2 Speed (util) : 1600RPM (19%)
2	2	J9829A	IN5BGZ81KX	Powered	Power Consumption : 51 Watts AC Input Voltage : 208 Volts Inlet/Internal Temp : 85.6F/87.7F Fan 1 Speed (util) : 1650RPM (20%) Fan 2 Speed (util) : 1600RPM (19%)
2	3	J9828A	IN5BGZ81KY	Powered	Power Consumption : 43 Watts AC Input Voltage : 119 Volts Inlet/Internal Temp : 85.6F/87.7F Fan 1 Speed (util) : 1650RPM (20%) Fan 2 Speed (util) : 1600RPM (19%)
2	4			Not Present	

```

6 / 8 supply bays delivering power.
Total Input Power: 378 Watts

```

Use of the command `show system power-supply detailed` shows the power supply status all active switches including a nonpowered J9830A PSU.

```

switch# show system power-supply detailed

```

```

Status and Counters - Power Supply Detailed Information

```

PS#	Model	Serial	State	Status
1	J9828A	IN30G4D009	Powered	AC Power Consumption : 44 Watts AC MAIN Voltage : 209 Volts Power Supplied : 31 Watts Power Capacity : 700 Watts Inlet Temp (C/F) : 27.0C/80.6F Internal Temp (C/F) : 30.5C/86.0F Fan 1 Speed : 1600 RPM Fan 2 Speed : 1600 RPM
2	J9828A	IN30G4D00C	Powered	AC Power Consumption : 46 Watts AC MAIN Voltage : 209 Volts Power Supplied : 21 Watts Power Capacity : 700 Watts Inlet Temp (C/F) : 27.7C/80.6F Internal Temp (C/F) : 32.5C/89.6F Fan 1 Speed : 1600 RPM Fan 2 Speed : 1600 RPM
3			Not Present	
4	J9830A	IN43G4G05H	Aux Not Powered	
2 / 4 supply bays delivering power. Currently supplying 68 W / 4150 W total power.				

Use of the command `show system power-supply` shows the power supply status all active switches with power supply #2 showing permanent failure.

```
switch# show system power-supply
```


Power Supply Status:

PS#	Model	Serial	State	AC/DC + V	Wattage
1			Not Present	--	0
2	J9829A	IN30G4D00C	Permanent Failure	AC 120V/240V	1100
3	J9829A	IN30G4D00D	Powered	--	1100
4	J9829A	IN43G4G05H	Powered	AC 120V/240V	1100
3 / 4 supply bays delivering power. Total power: 3300 W					

Table 34: Field key for output of `show system power-supply` detailed

Field	Description
AC Power Consumption	Actual power consumed from AC input
AC MAIN/AUX Voltage	Actual voltage measured on AC Input: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Two voltages are displayed for PS#4, as the J9830A includes two AC input IEC connectors. Most power-supplies contain a single AC Input IEC connector and are labeled MAIN.

Table Continued

Field	Description
Power Supplied	Actual voltage being supplied from the power-supply to the switch for general power and PoE.
Power Capacity	The maximum power that the power-supply can provide to the switch.
Inlet Temp (C/F)	The thermal sensor at the inlet of the power-supply - shown in both Celsius and Fahrenheit
Internal Temp (C/F)	<div> <div>The thermal sensor internal to the power-supply (will vary depending upon the model) - shown in both Celsius and Fahrenheit.</div> <div>  NOTE: There is no "Output Temperature Sensor" on either the 5400R or 3810M switches. </div> </div>
Fan Speed	Shows the current fan speed in RPM and the percent of total fan speed utilization. For PSUs that contain more than one fan, a separate line will be included for each.
Currently Supplying	A summary of the total power being supplied and the total capacity (same summary as seen on the command <code>show system power-supply</code>).

OOBM-MAD commands

vsf oobm-mad

Syntax

```
[no] vsf oobm-mad
```

Description

Enable OOBM-MAD (Multi-Active Detection) on the VSF device.

Validation rules

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
This command cannot be executed if VSF is not enabled.	invalid input: oobm-mad

oobm vsf member

Syntax

```
oobm vsf member <MEMBER-ID> ip address { <IP-ADDR>/<MASK-LENGTH> | dhcp-bootp }
```

Description

This command is used to configure the IPV4 address for the VSF OOBM.

Parameters

<MEMBER-ID>

The VSF member-ID for the member command or parameter. Member ID value can be in the range from 1 to 2.

<IP-ADDR>/<MASK-LENGTH>

Interface IP address/mask.

```
oobm vsf member <MEMBER-ID> ip default-gateway IP-ADDR
```

Specify the default gateway using this form of the command. Configure the IPv4 default gateway address, which will be used when routing is not enabled on the switch. The *<IP-ADDR>* must be specified if the command is not preceded by *[no]*. Preceding the command with *[no]* deletes the default gateway address. The *[no]* form of this command does not take effect on default gateway address obtained via DHCP.

Usage

```
oobm vsf member <VSF-MEMBER> ip
```

```
oobm vsf member <VSF-MEMBER> ip address
```

oobm vsf member interface speed-duplex

Syntax

```
oobm vsf member <MEMBER-ID> interface { disable | enable | <SPEED-DUPLEX> }
```

Description

Configure various interface parameters for OOBM. The *interface* command must be followed by a feature-specific keyword. This is an OOBM context command. It can be called directly from the OOBM context.

Parameters

<MEMBER-ID>

The VSF member-ID for the member command or parameter. Member ID value can be in the range from 1 to 2.

enable

Enable OOBM port.

disable

Disable OOBM.

<SPEED-DUPLEX>

Define mode of operation for the oobm port.

10-half

10 Mbps, half duplex.

100-half

100 Mbps, half duplex.

10-full

10 Mbps, full duplex.

100-full

100 Mbps, full duplex.

1000-full

1000 Mbps, full duplex.

auto

Use Auto Negotiation for speed and duplex mode.

Usage

```
oobm vsf member <VSF-MEMBER-ID> interface enable
oobm vsf member <VSF-MEMBER-ID> interface disable
```

show oobm vsf member

Syntax

```
show oobm vsf member <MEMBER-ID>
```

Description

Show OOBM VSF member.

Parameters

<MEMBER-ID>

The VSF member-ID for the member command or parameter. Member ID value can be in the range from 1 to 2.

show oobm vsf member 1

```
Switch# show oobm vsf member 1

VSF Member 1
  OOBM Port Type       : 100/1000T
  OOBM Interface Status : Up
  OOBM Port            : Enabled
  OOBM Port Speed      : Auto
  MAC Address          : 3464a9-b24301
```

show oobm ip

Syntax

```
show oobm ip [vsf member <MEMBER-ID>]
```

Description

Show OOBM IP for specific members in VSF

Parameters

<MEMBER-ID>

The VSF member-ID for the member command or parameter. Member ID value can be in the range from 1 to 2.

show oobm ip

```
Switch# show oobm ip

IPv4 Status      : Enabled
IPv4 Default Gateway : 120.93.49.1
```

VSF-member	IP Config	IP Address/Prefix Length	Address Status	Interface Status
Global	dhcp	120.93.49.9/24	Active	Up
1	dhcp	120.93.49.9/24	Active	Up
2	disabled		Inactive	Down

show oobm ip vsf member 1

```
Switch# show oobm ip vsf member 1
IPv4 Status      : Enabled
IPv4 Default Gateway : 15.212.178.1
```

VSF-member	IP Config	IP Address/Prefix Length	Address Status	Interface Status
1	dhcp	15.212.178.244/24	Active	Up

show oobm ip vsf member 1,2

```
Switch(config)# show oobm ip vsf member 1,2
IPv4 Status : Enabled
IPv4 Default Gateway :
```

VSF-member	IP Config	IP Address/Prefix Length	Address Status	Interface Status
1	dhcp		Active	Down

```
Switch(config)# sho oobm ip detail
Internet (IP) Service for OOBM Interface
Global Configuration
IPv4 Status : Enabled
IPv6 Status : Disabled
IPv4 Default Gateway :
IPv6 Default Gateway :
```

```
Origin | IP Address/Prefix Length Status
-----|-----
dhcp   |
```

```
VIPv4 SF Member 1
Status : Enabled
IPv6 Status : Disabled
IPv4 Default Gateway :
IPv6 Default Gateway :
```

```
Origin | IP Address/Prefix Length Status
-----|-----
dhcp   |
```

show oobm discovery

Syntax

```
show oobm discovery
```

Description

Show the discovered virtual chassis information.

show oobm discovery

```
Switch# show oobm discovery
```

```
Active Stack (This fragment)
VSF-member Mac Address      Status
ID
-----
2          10604b-b7a140    Global Commander
1          10604b-b66980    Global Member
```

show running-config oobm

Syntax

```
show running-config oobm
```

Description

Show running-config OOBM.

show running-config oobm

```
Switch# show running-config oobm

Running configuration:
oobm
  ip address dhcp-bootp
  VSF-member 1
    ip address dhcp-bootp
    exit

  VSF-member 2
    ip address 192.168.10.1 255.255.255.0
    exit

exit
```

show vsf trunk-designated-forwarder

Syntax

```
show vsf trunk-designated-forwarder
```

Description

Show the designated forwarders for each trunk.

For each trunk, only one member of the trunk will forward L2 flood traffic (unknown destination, Broadcast & Multicast). Use the `show vsf trunk-designated-forwarder` command to know which member will forward flood frames for a given trunk.

For known unicast traffic, trunks will always forward using local member links when possible and traffic will cross the VSF links to the other member only when local links of a trunk are down.

show vsf trunk designated forwarder

```
Switch(config)# show vsf trunk-designated-forwarder

Trunk Designated Forwarders
NAME  TYPE  Member
-----
Trk1  TRK   1
Trk2  LACP  0
```


Trk3	TRK	0
Trk10	TRK	1

Validation rules

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
Downloading a non-VSF config on a VSF switch or downloading an invalid VSF-config for a current VSF must be blocked.	The configuration file for this VSF device is incorrect.
Upon enabling VSF, the hostname of the virtual chassis would change to a different string than it is when VSF is disabled.	5406R-VSF

LLDP-MAD

LLDP-MAD is used to detect multiple-active VSF fragments.

VSF split and MAD operation

The following sequence explains a MAD scheme for a simple 2-member, VSF virtual chassis split scenario.

1. When the VSF link goes down and the VSF virtual chassis splits:
 - The Commander member (Fragment-A for this example) would continue to stay active.
 - The Standby member (Fragment B) would failover and become another commander.
2. Fragment-B sends an SNMP request to the downstream device seeking port status information of all non-local ports of the LACP Trunk. Non-local ports on Fragment-B refers to ports that are part of Fragment-A's member.
 - The downstream device responds to the SNMP request with the appropriate port status information.
 - If Fragment-A receives an unsolicited response to the SNMP request, it is ignored. This is because Fragment A has the pre-split Commander as part of its fragment and therefore will remain active.
3. Fragment-B sends 2 more SNMP queries downstream. If no response is received, the frontplane ports are shut down and turned inactive.
4. Alternatively, if Fragment-B receives an SNMP response:
 - If Fragment A links are UP, the frontplane ports will be shut down.
 - If Fragment-A links are DOWN, Fragment-B would stay UP.
5. Consider that Fragment-A is actually DOWN which has caused the split:
 - Request made to Fragment-B will be received by the downstream device and response will return to Fragment-B.
 - The downstream links to Fragment-A are DOWN therefore Fragment-B will remain UP.
 - Alternately, if Fragment-B is DOWN and caused the split then Fragment-A will neither send a request or act on an unsolicited response and will remain UP.

MAD readiness check

The MAD assist device must be connected over a LACP trunk interface to the VSF device. Once you configure the IP address of a MAD assist device, the VSF switch will perform a MAD readiness check to determine:

- If the MAD assist device is reachable.
- If a trunk interface is used to reach the device.
- If the trunk interface has at least one, linked —up, physical port on each member of the VSF switch.

If the above three conditions are not met, MAD will fail to detect dual active fragments in the event of a VSF split. This error will create a log message.



NOTE:

The MAD readiness check is repeated periodically. If MAD-probe parameters have changed, an appropriate log message will be created.

vsf lldp-mad ipv4

Syntax

```
[no] vsf lldp-mad ipv4 <IPV4_ADDR> v2c <COMMUNITY-STR>
```

Description

Enable LLDP-MAD on the VSF device.



NOTE: The command `vsf lldp mad` requires a peer switch to be configured as the “assist” device. LLDP-MAD is applicable only for a two-member VSF stack.

Parameters

<IPV4_ADDR>

The IPv4 address of the MAD (Multi-Active Detection) device.

<COMMUNITY-STR>

The SNMP community string for the MAD (Multi-Active Detection) device.

Usage

```
Switch(config)# vsf lldp-mad ipv4
Switch(config)# vsf lldp-mad ipv4 <IPv4_ADDR>
Switch(config)# vsf lldp-mad ipv4 <MAD-IP-ADDRESS> v2c
Switch(config)# vsf lldp-mad ipv4 210.10.0.12 v2c <COMMUNITY-STR>
```

Validation rules

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
This command cannot be executed if VSF is not enabled.	<p>VSF is not enabled.</p> <p>Cannot configure VSF LLDP MAD IP address because the specified IP address is a multicast IP address.</p> <p>Cannot configure VSF LLDP MAD IP address because the specified IP address is a link-local IP address.</p> <p>Cannot configure VSF LLDP MAD IP address because the specified IP address is configured on the loopback interface.</p> <p>Cannot configure VSF LLDP MAD IP address because the specified IP address is configured on a local interface.</p>
The MAD assist device and the VSF device must be on a common IP subnet for LLDP-MAD to work.	The MAD (Multi-Active Detection) device and the VSF device are not on the same network.

show vsf lldp-mad

Syntax

```
show vsf lldp-mad [parameters | status]
```

Description

Show the VSF LLDP-MAD information on the switch.

Parameters

parameters

Displays the MAD-assist configuration as well as the readiness state.

status

Displays the current state of the MAD probe.

Usage

```
show vsf lldp-mad parameters
```

```
show vsf lldp-mad status
```

show vsf lldp-mad parameters

```
Switch# show vsf lldp-mad parameters
MAD device IP           : 210.10.0.12
MAD readiness status    : Success
MAD device MAC          : 5065f3-128cc5
Reachable via Vlan      : 916
Local LAG interface     : Trk10
MAD-probe portset       : 1/A21,2/A21,
LAG connectivity        : Full
```

show vsf lldp-mad status

```
Switch# show vsf lldp-mad status
```

```
MAD device IP           : 210.10.0.12
MAD-probe portset       : 1/A21, 2/A21,
VSF split               : No
MAD probe originator    : No
Number of probe requests sent : 0
Number of probe responses received : 0
MAD Active Fragment     : Yes
```

VSF re-join after a split

If split fragment(s) re-join the VSF and become a single device, MAD readiness checks will be re-run and a fresh set of readiness parameters determined.



NOTE: One of the devices will reboot to join the VSF.

Mad assist device requirements

Limitations of MAD

VSF restrictions

- VSF is mutually exclusive with distributed trunking, mesh, and Q-in-Q.
- VSF port restrictions:
 - Must be 10Gbps/40Gbps. 1Gbps links are not supported.
 - A VSF link can only comprise ports with the same speed; either all 10G or all 40G
 - Maximum 8 ports in 1 VSF link.
 - VSF ports must be directly connected and there should be no transit devices between members.
- In a VSF virtual chassis, flow-control is not supported between ports on different chassis across VSF links.

Updates for a VSF virtual chassis

To update the firmware on a VSF virtual chassis, copy the new firmware to the VSF virtual chassis and reboot the VSF virtual chassis with the `boot system flash <primary | secondary>` command.

VSF Fast Software Upgrade

Fast Software Upgrade (FSU) is a feature in VSF stacking which enables users to upgrade switch software with minimal down-time of links by rebooting the standby to boot with the upgraded image while the current commander and its IMs are still intact and forwarding traffic. The traditional software upgrade of a VSF stack consists of:

- Copying the switch software image through a CLI command on to the switch primary or secondary bank.
- Rebooting the entire stack for all members to boot with the newly upgraded SW image.

The down-time of links is longer because when the whole stack reboots, all IMs, on all members, are down during the time of reboot and stack formation.



NOTE: FSU is supported only on two member VSF stacks based on 5400R devices.

Upgrading the VSF stack software

Upgrading the software on a VSF stack consists of two basic steps:

Procedure

1. Copy the new software image into primary or secondary bank in flash.
2. Reboot the stack with new image. See [vsf sequenced-reboot](#) on page 689

FSU differs from the normal software upgrade in the second step where only the standby of the VSF stack boots, using the upgraded image. The current commander is intact, thus ensuring that the IMs and their ports on commander switch are still available for traffic.

Following is the sequence used by FSU:

1. The user downloads new firmware into the primary or secondary bank and issues the CLI command to perform FSU.
2. The standby switch reboots to the new firmware and boots up as a commander switch.
3. The old commander switch reboots to the new firmware when the VSF link is brought up and joins the other switch as a new standby.
4. Traffic starts passing through the new commander as it comes up. However, the switchover is not stateful. L2 traffic is guaranteed to be within the timeline of 3 secs but not L3.

vsf sequenced-reboot

Syntax

```
vsf sequenced-reboot {primary|secondary}
```

Description

Initiates a reboot of the VSF virtual chassis. First the standby reboots and becomes the commander. Then, the existing commander reboots and becomes the standby.

Example output

```
Switch# vsf

sequenced-reboot      Initiate a reboot of the VSF virtual chassis.

Switch# vsf sequenced-reboot
primary Reboot from the primary flash image.
secondary Reboot from the secondary flash image.
```

Validation rules for VSF sequenced reboot

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
Sequenced reboot is not allowed if the update version is KB.16.02 or lower.	Sequenced reboot is supported only if the updated software version is KB.16.03 or higher.
When software update is in progress, configuration commands will be blocked.	Software update is in progress; configuration commands are not allowed.
If the software image sync to standby is in progress and if <code>sequenced-reboot</code> command is executed, the command will fail with an error message.	Software image synchronization to the VSF standby is in progress; try to execute the command later.

Overview

To simplify the deployment of mobility and IoT devices, Aruba switches have a mechanism to automatically detect devices based on their LLDP signatures and apply configuration to the port to which they are connected. This reduces the time needed to add, move, or change devices on the network and also eliminates potential misconfigurations on the port.

Device Profiles allow an administrator to create configuration containers for different classes of devices and associate them with certain device types. The configuration containers are stored as part of the config, but do not come into effect until a device with the right LLDP signature is connected to a port on that switch. Device profiles allow network administrators to apply port settings automatically, eliminating configuration mistakes as well as reducing the time taken to connect wired devices.

Organization-specific TLVs and subtypes that come as part of LLDP messages are used to detect and apply profiles to devices. A maximum of 16 devices can be detected and defined using Device Profiles. The following sections talk about the operational steps that need to be followed to add Mobility and IoT devices as well as features such as Rogue AP detection that can be used for mobile-first deployments with Aruba APs.

Auto configuring Aruba APs

The auto device detection and configuration detects a directly connected Aruba AP dynamically and applies predefined configurations to ports on which the Aruba AP is detected.

You can create port configuration profiles, associate them to a device type, and enable or disable a device type. One of the device types supported is `aruba-ap` and it is used to identify all the Aruba APs.

When a configured device type is connected on a port, the system automatically applies the corresponding port profile. Connected devices are identified using LLDP. When the LLDP information on the port ages out, the device profile is removed.

By default, the device profile feature is disabled. When you enable the device profile support for a device type, if no other device profile is mapped to the device type, the default device profile `default-ap-profile` is associated with the device type. You can modify the AP default device profile configuration but you cannot delete it. The `default-ap-profile` command supports only the AP device type.



NOTE: Only APs which are connected directly will be detected.

Associating a device with a profile

To associate an Aruba access point (AP) device-type to a user-defined profile, use the context `Switch(device-aruba-ap) #`. All Aruba access points use the identifier **aruba-ap**.

The `[no]` form of the command removes the device type association and disables the feature for the device type.

The feature is disabled by default.

device-profile name

Syntax

```
[no] device-profile name <PROFILE-NAME> [untagged-vlan <VLAN-ID> |
                                     tagged-vlan <VLAN-LIST> | cos <COS-VALUE> |
                                     ingress-bandwidth <Percentage> |
                                     egress-bandwidth <Percentage> |
```

```
{poe-priority {critical | high | low} |  
speed-duplex {auto |auto-10 | auto-100 | ...} |  
poe-max-power <Watts> |  
allow-jumbo-frames | allow-tunneled-node]
```

Description

This command is used to create a user-defined profile. A profile is a named collection of port settings applied as a group. You can modify the default profile, `default-ap-profile`, but you cannot delete it. You can create four additional profiles.

The `default-ap-profile` has the following values:

- `untagged-vlan: 1`
- `tagged-vlan: None`
- `ingress-bandwidth: 100`
- `egress-bandwidth: 100`
- `cos: 0`
- `speed-duplex: auto`
- `poe-max-power: class/LLDP`
- `poe-priority: critical`

You can modify these parameters. For example, you can execute `no untagged-vlan` to create a device profile with tagged only ports.

Parameters

`name`

Specifies the name of the profile to be configured. The profile names can be at most 32 characters long.

`cos`

The Class of Service (CoS) priority for traffic from the device.

`untagged-vlan`

The port is an untagged member of specified VLAN.

`tagged-vlan`

The port is a tagged member of the specified VLANs.

`allow-tunneled node`

Configuration to allow Tunneled Node when device profile is applied on port.

`ingress-bandwidth`

The ingress maximum bandwidth for the device port.

`egress-bandwidth`

The egress maximum bandwidth for the device port.

`poe-priority`

The PoE priority for the device port.

`speed-duplex`

The speed and duplex for the device port.

`poe-max-power`

The maximum PoE power for the device port. The value is set based on PD Class detection and/or LLDP negotiation. `poe-max-power` will have class appropriate value depending on the class of your AP. (Example: class4 = 25.5W, class 3=13W, class2=6.49W, class1=3.84W, class0=13W)

Options

`no`

Removes the user-defined profiles.

Restrictions

- You can modify the configuration parameters of the default profile, `default-ap-profile`, but you cannot delete it or change its name.
- The profile configuration is only applicable to access points.

device-profile type

From within the configure context:

Syntax

```
device-profile type <DEVICE> [associate <PROFILE-NAME> | enable | disable ]
```

Description

This command specifies an approved device type in order to configure and attach a profile to it. The profile's configuration is applied to any port where a device of this type is connected.

Approved device types

aruba-ap

Aruba access point device.

arubaos-switch

ArubaOS switch

Options

From within the **device-aruba-ap** context

associate <PROFILE-NAME>

Associated the specified device type by profile name.

enable

Enables the automatic profile association.

disable

Disables the automatic profile association.

Usage

```
[no] device-profile type <DEVICE> [associate <PROFILE-NAME> |enable | disable]
```



NOTE: The device types supported are `aruba-ap` and `arubaos-switch`.

device-profile type device-name

Syntax

```
device-profile type [aruba-ap | aruba-switch | scs-wan-cpe |  
device-name <DEVICE-NAME> associate <PROFILE-NAME> | enable | disable]  
  
no device-profile type [aruba-ap | aruba-switch | scs-wan-cpe |  
device-name <DEVICE-NAME> associate <PROFILE-NAME> | enable | disable]
```

Description

Associates the device profile with the type of device by identity.

The `no` form of this command removes the device profile from the device type.

Command context

`config`

Parameters

associate <PROFILE-NAME>

Selects the profile name associated with the device-type.

enable

Selects the profile of the device being enabled.

disable

Selects the profile of the device being disabled.

Usage

- The command `device-profile type aruba-ap enable` enables profile for Aruba-AP.
- Device Name is defined the same as Device Identity.

show device-profile

Syntax

Within the configure context:

```
show device-profile
```

Description

Show device profile configuration and status.

config

Show the device profile configuration details for a single, or all, profiles.

status

Show currently applied device profiles.

Usage

```
show device-profile config <PROFILE-NAME>
```

```
show device-profile status
```

show device-profile config

```
Switch# Show device-profile config
Device Profile Configuration

Configuration for device-profile : default-ap-profile
untagged-vlan      : 1
tagged-vlan        : None
ingress-bandwidth  : 100%
egress-bandwidth   : 100%
cos                : None
speed-duplex       : auto
poe-max-power      : Class/LLDP
poe-priority       : critical
allow-jumbo-frames : Disabled
allow-tunneled-node: Enabled
```

show device-profile config profile1

```
Switch(device-profile)# show device-p config test

Device Profile Configuration

Configuration for device-profile : profile1
untagged-vlan      : 1
tagged-vlan        : None
ingress-bandwidth  : 100%
egress-bandwidth   : 100%
cos                : None
speed-duplex       : auto
poe-max-power      : Class/LLDP
poe-priority       : critical
allow-jumbo-frames : Disabled
allow-tunneled-node: Enabled
```

show command device-profile status

Syntax

```
show device-profile [config | status]
```

Description

Displays the device-profile configuration or device-profile status.

Options

config

Show device profile configuration details for a single profile or all profiles.

status

Show currently applied device profiles status.

show device-profile status

```
Switch# show device-profile status
```

Device Profile	Status	
Port	Device Type	Applied Device Profile
----	-----	-----
5	aruba-ap	profile1
10	aruba-ap	profile1

show device-profile config

Syntax

```
show device-profile config
```

Description

Shows the device profile configuration.

Command context

```
config
```

Examples

Use the command `show device-profile config` to display the device profile configuration.

```
switch(config)# show device-profile config

Device Profile Configuration

Configuration for device-profile : default-ap-profile
untagged-vlan      : 1
tagged-vlan        : None
ingress-bandwidth  : 100%
egress-bandwidth   : 100%
cos                : None
speed-duplex       : auto
poe-max-power      : Class/LLDP
poe-priority       : critical
allow-jumbo-frames : Disabled
allow-tunneled-node: Enabled

Configuration for device-profile : test
untagged-vlan      : 1
tagged-vlan        : None
ingress-bandwidth  : 100%
egress-bandwidth   : 100%
cos                : None
speed-duplex       : auto
poe-max-power      : Class/LLDP
poe-priority       : critical
allow-jumbo-frames : Disabled
allow-tunneled-node: Enabled

Configuration for device-profile : default-aos-profile
untagged-vlan      : 1
tagged-vlan        : None
ingress-bandwidth  : 100%
egress-bandwidth   : 100%
cos                : None
speed-duplex       : auto
poe-max-power      : Class/LLDP
poe-priority       : critical
allow-jumbo-frames : Disabled
allow-tunneled-node: Enabled
```

```
Configuration for device-profile : default-scs-profile
untagged-vlan      : 1
tagged-vlan        : None
ingress-bandwidth  : 100%
egress-bandwidth   : 100%
cos                : None
speed-duplex       : auto
poe-max-power      : Class/LLDP
poe-priority       : critical
allow-jumbo-frames : Disabled
allow-tunneled-node: Enabled
```

```
Configuration for device-profile : default-device-profile
untagged-vlan      : 1
tagged-vlan        : None
ingress-bandwidth  : 100%
egress-bandwidth   : 100%
cos                : None
speed-duplex       : auto
poe-max-power      : Class/LLDP
poe-priority       : critical
allow-jumbo-frames : Disabled
allow-tunneled-node: Enabled
```

Device Profile Association

```
Device Type   : aruba-ap
Profile Name   : default-ap-profile
Device Status : Disabled

Device Type   : aruba-switch
Profile Name   : default-aos-profile
Device Status : Disabled

Device Type   : scs-wan-cpe
Profile Name   : default-scs-profile
Device Status : Disabled
```

show device-profile status

Syntax

```
show device-profile status
```

Description

Shows the profile status of the device.

Command context

```
config
```

Example

Use the show device-profile status command to view status.

```
switch(config)# show device-profile status
Port      Device-type      Applied device profile
-----
A1         <device-name>         abc
```

Default AP Profile

Creates a user-defined profile.

The profile name is a valid character string with the maximum permissible length of 32. The default profile is named `default-ap-profile` and cannot be modified.

The default configuration parameters may be modified using the command `device-<PROFILE NAME> default-ap-profile`. Up to four different profiles may be configured.

The `[no]` command removes the user-defined profiles.

allow-jumbo-frames

Syntax

```
allow-jumbo-frames
```

Description

Configure jumbo frame support for the device port. Jumbo frames are not enabled by default.

Validation rules

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
Invalid jumbo command.	Invalid input.
If jumbo frame support is configured on a VLAN for which the device profile had overridden the configuration, display the existing warning.	This configuration change will be delayed because a device profile that enables jumbo frame support is applied to a port in this VLAN.

Auto configuring IoT Devices

Wired IoT devices can also be automatically configured using device profiles. Since the market for IoT devices is vast, with several hundred manufacturers and thousands of devices, instead of hardcoding the LLDP signatures, Aruba switches provide a way for an administrator to create a device type for the IoT devices in their deployment. By associating the custom device type that they create with a device profile, users can leverage the power profiles not only for Aruba devices but also for other manufacturers. The requirement for automatic detection of IoT devices is that they should support LLDP.

Creating a device identity and associating a device type

Procedure

1. Create a device identity using the command:

```
switch# device-identity name <DEVICE-NAME>
```

2. Specify the OUI used in LLDP's organization using specific TLV, (type =127). OUI should be in XXXXXX format. The default OUI "000000" indicates that device-identity will not use LLDP to identify device:

```
switch(config)# device-identity name <DEVICE-NAME> lldp oui <MAC_OUI>  
sub-type <SUBTYPE>
```

To add new device on switch:

```
switch(config)# device-identity name abc lldp oui a1b2c3 sub 2
```

To remove device from switch:

```
switch(config)# no device-identity name abc
```

3. Show device identity configuration:

```
switch(config)# show device-identity lldp
```

Device Identity Configuration

Index	Device name	Oui	Subtype
-----	-----	-----	-----
1	abc	a1b2c3	2



NOTE: The maximum devices that can be configured using `device-identity` are 16. The maximum devices that can be associated using `device-profile` are 19. The maximum profiles that can be created using `device-profile` are 17.

show device-identity

Syntax

```
show device-identity
```

Description

Specify name of the device to be discovered.

Command context

```
config
```

Usage

```
device-identity name <device_name> lldp oui <mac_oui> subtype <subtype>
```

```
no device-identity name <device_name> lldp oui <mac_oui> subtype <subtype>
```

Example

```
device-identity name avayaPhone lldp oui 00096e sub-type 1
```

```
switch(device-profile)# show device-identity
```

Device Identity Configuration

Index	Device name	Protocol
-----	-----	-----
1	avayaPhone	LLDP

```
switch(device-profile)# show device-identity lldp
```

Device Identity Configuration

Index	Device name	Oui	Subtype
-----	-----	-----	-----
1	avayaPhone	00096e	1

device-profile type-device associate

From within the configure context:

Syntax

```
device-profile type-device <DEVICE_NAME> [associate <PROFILE-NAME> | enable | disable ]
```

Description

Specify device name defined in device-identity in order to configure and attach a profile to it. Device identity uses discovery protocol like LLDP to identify device. LLDP makes use of OUI and sub type of organizational specific TLV type 127 to detect device.

Approved device types

aruba-ap

Aruba access point device.

arubaos-switch

ArubaOS switch

Options

<DEVICE_NAME>

Defines in device-identity.

associate <PROFILE-NAME>

Associated the specified device type by profile name.

enable

Enables the automatic profile association.

disable

Disables the automatic profile association.

Usage

Use the following command to configure a device:

```
device-identity name <DEVICE_NAME> lldp oui <OUI> subtype <SUBTYPE>.
```

Example

```
device-p device-type avayaPhone associate avaya
```



NOTE: The device types supported are aruba-ap and arubaos-switch.

show device-profile config

Syntax

```
show device-profile config
```

Description

Shows the device profile configuration.

Command context

config

Examples

Use the command `show device-profile config` to display the device profile configuration.

```
switch(device-profile)# show device-p con avaya
```

Device Profile Configuration

Configuration for device-profile : avaya

```
untagged-vlan      : 1
tagged-vlan        : None
ingress-bandwidth  : 100%
egress-bandwidth   : 100%
cos                : None
speed-duplex       : auto
poe-max-power      : Class/LLDP
poe-priority       : critical
allow-jumbo-frames : Disabled
allow-tunneled-node: Enabled
```

show device-profile status

Syntax

```
show device-profile [config | status]
```

Description

Displays the device-profile configuration or device-profile status.

Options

config

Show device profile configuration details for a single profile or all profiles.

status

Show currently applied device profiles status.

show device-profile status

```
Switch# show device-profile status
```

Device Profile Status

Port	Device-type	Applied device profile
-----	-----	-----
A2	avayaPhone	avaya

Support for Aruba device types

The following Aruba device types are supported:

- Aruba-AP
- ArubaOS-Switch
- Any device that can be defined using LLDP OUI and subtype in the switch

Isolating Rogue APs

One of the important features to turn on in a mobile-first deployment is the ability of the switches to detect and quarantine rogue access points. Administrators would like to prevent unauthorized access to their networks and a rogue AP can open up the network to unwanted users and traffic.

The Rogue AP Isolation feature detects and blocks any unauthorized APs in the network. You can either log or block the rogue device. If the action requested is to log the rogue device, the MAC address of the rogue device is logged in the system logs (RMON). If the action is to block the rogue device, the traffic to and from the MAC address of the rogue device is blocked. The MAC is also logged in the system log.

When an Aruba AP detects a rogue AP on the network, it sends out the MAC address of the AP as well as the MAC of the clients connected to the AP to the switch using the ArubaOS-Switch proprietary LLDP TLV protocol. The switch then adds a rule in its hardware table to block all the traffic originating from the rogue AP's MAC address.

The `rogue-ap-isolation` command configures the rogue AP isolation for the switch and gives the option to enable or disable the rogue AP isolation feature. The `rogue-ap-isolation action` command gives you the ability to block the traffic to or from the rogue device or log the MAC of the rogue device. When the action is set to block, the rogue MAC is logged as well. By default, the action is set to block.

The `rogue-ap-isolation whitelist` command lets you add devices detected as possible rogue APs to the whitelist. A maximum of 128 MAC addresses are supported for the whitelist.

The `clear rogue-aps` command clears the detected rogue AP device MAC address.

Using the Rogue AP Isolation feature

Procedure

1. Check the feature state:

```
switch# show rogue-ap-isolation

Rogue AP Isolation

Rogue AP Status : Disabled
Rogue AP Action : Block

Rogue MAC Address Neighbour MAC Address
-----
```

2. Enable the feature:

```
switch# rogue-ap-isolation enable
switch# show rogue-ap-isolation

Rogue AP Isolation

Rogue AP Status : Enabled
Rogue AP Action : Block

Rogue MAC Address Neighbour MAC Address
-----
```

3. Change the action type from block to log:

```
switch# rogue-ap-isolation action log
switch# show rogue-ap-isolation
```

```
Rogue AP Isolation

Rogue AP Status : Enabled
Rogue AP Action : Log

Rogue MAC Address Neighbour MAC Address
-----
```

4. List the current whitelist entries:

```
switch# show rogue-ap-isolation whitelist

Rogue AP Whitelist Configuration

Rogue AP MAC
-----
```

5. Add a new whitelist entry:

```
switch# rogue-ap-isolation whitelist 005056-00326a
switch# show rogue-ap-isolation whitelist

Rogue AP Whitelist Configuration

Rogue AP MAC
-----
00:50:56:00:32:6a
```

rogue-ap-isolation

syntax

```
rogue-ap-isolation {enable | disable}
```

Description

Configures the rogue AP isolation for the switch.

Parameters

enable

Enables the rogue AP isolation.

disable

Disables the rogue AP isolation.

rogue-ap-isolation action

syntax

```
rogue-ap-isolation action {log | block}
```

Description

Configures the action to take for the rogue AP packets. This function is disabled by default.

Parameters

action

Configure the action to take for rogue AP packets. By default, the rogue AP packets are blocked.

Options

log

Logs traffic to or from any rogue access points.

block

Blocks and logs traffic to or from any rogue access points.

rogue-ap-isolation whitelist

syntax

```
[no] rogue-ap-isolation whitelist <MAC-ADDRESS>
```

Description

Configures the rogue AP Whitelist MAC addresses for the switch. Use this command to add to the whitelist the MAC addresses of approved access points or MAC addresses of clients connected to the rogue access points. These approved access points will not be added to the rogue AP list even if they are reported as rogue devices.

Parameters

MAC-ADDRESS

Specifies the MAC address of the device to be moved from the rogue AP list to the whitelist.

Options

no

Removes the MAC address individually by specifying the MAC.

Restrictions

You can add a maximum of 128 MAC addresses to the whitelist.

clear rogue-ap-isolation

syntax

```
clear rogue-ap-isolation { <MAC-ADDRESS> | all }
```

Description

Removes the MAC addresses from the rogue AP list.

Parameters

MAC-ADDRESS

Specifies the MAC address of the device to be moved from the rogue AP list.

all

Clears all MAC addresses from the rogue AP list.

Restrictions

The MAC addresses cleared using this option will be added back to the rogue list under the following cases:

1. The LLDP administrator status of the port on which the AP that reported the MAC is disabled and enabled back.
2. The data that is in the rogue AP TLV sent from the AP that informed the rogue MAC has changed.
3. To permanently ignore a MAC from being detected as rogue, add it to the whitelist.

Feature Interactions

L3 MAC

The Rogue AP isolation feature will not block a MAC configured as an IP receive MAC address on a VLAN interface. This event will be logged in RMON if such MACs are detected as rogue.

Conversely, any MAC already blocked by Rogue AP isolation will not be allowed to be configured as an IP receive MAC address of a VLAN interface.

For example:

```
switch# vlan 1 ip-recv-mac-address 247703-3effbb
Cannot add an entry for the MAC address 247703-3effbb because it is already
blocked by rogue-ap-isolation.
```

Limitations

- You can add a maximum of 128 MAC addresses to the whitelist.
- When a MAC is already authorized by any of the port security features such as LMA, WMA, or 802.1X, the MAC is logged but you cannot block it using the `rogue-ap-isolation` feature. A RMON event is logged to notify the user.
- When a MAC is already configured as an IP received MAC of a VLAN interface, the MAC is logged but you cannot block it by using the `rogue-ap-isolation` feature. A RMON event is logged to notify the user.
- When a MAC is already locked out via `lockout-mac` or locked down using the `static-mac` configuration, the MAC is logged but you cannot block it using the `rogue-ap-isolation` feature. A RMON event is logged to notify the user.
- The number of rogue MACs supported on a switch is a function of the value of `max-vlans` at boot time. Since the resources are shared with the `lockout-mac` feature, the scale is dependent on how many lockout addresses have been configured on the switch using the `lockout-mac` feature. The following table lists the scale when there are no lockout addresses configured on the switch:

Max VLAN	Supported MACs
0 < VLAN <= 8	200
8 < VLAN <= 16	100
16 < VLAN <= 256	64
256 < VLAN <= 1024	16
1024 < VLAN <= 2048	8
2048 < VLAN <= 4094	4

The switch will create an RMON log entry and the rogue MAC will be ignored when the limit is reached.



NOTE: If the `max-vlans` value is changed to a different value, the scale of rogue MACs supported will not change until the next reboot.

Troubleshooting

Switch does not detect the rogue AP TLVs

Symptom

The switch does not detect the rogue AP TLVs that could be sent from the neighboring device.

Cause

The LLDP administrator status of a port is moved from `txOnly` to `tx_rx` or `rx_only` within 120 seconds of the previous state change to `txOnly`.

Action

1. Wait for 120 seconds before moving from the state `txOnly` to the state `tx_rx` or `rx_only`.
2. Move the administrator status to `disable` and then back to `tx_rx` or `rx_only`.

Show commands

Use the following show commands to view the various configurations and status.

Command	Description
<code>show rogue-ap-isolation</code>	Shows the following information: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• The status of the feature: enabled or disabled.• The current action type for the rogue MACs detected.• The list of MAC addresses detected as rogue and the MAC address of the AP that reported them.
<code>show rogue-ap-isolation whitelist</code>	Shows the rogue AP whitelist configuration.

Requirements

Only APs directly connected to the switch will be detected.

Limitations

- Only one device type is supported, `aruba-ap`, and it is used to identify all the Aruba APs.
- You can modify the configuration parameters of the default profile, `default-ap-profile`, but you cannot delete it or change its name.

- If the port was part of any protocol VLANs prior to the device profile application, those VLANs will not be removed while applying the device profile.
- Enabling jumbo frame support in a profile affects other ports with different profiles. When a profile has jumbo frames enabled and is applied to any port, all other ports that are members of any VLAN listed in the profile will also have jumbo frame support.

Feature Interactions

Profile Manager and 802.1X

Profile Manager interoperates with RADIUS when it is working in the client mode. When a port is blocked due to 802.1X authentication failure, the LLDP packets cannot come in on that port. Therefore, the Aruba AP cannot be detected and the device profile cannot be applied. When the port gets authenticated, the LLDP packets comes in, the AP is detected, and the device profile is applied.

You must ensure that the RADIUS server will not supply additional configuration such as VLAN or CoS during the 802.1X authentication as they will conflict with the configuration applied by the Profile Manager. If the RADIUS server supplies any such configurations to a port, the device profile will not be applied on such ports.

Profile Manager and LMA/WMA/MAC-AUTH

If either LMA, WMA, or MAC-AUTH is enabled on an interface, all the MAC addresses reaching the port must be authenticated. If LMA, WMA, or MAC-AUTH is configured on an interface, the user can have more granular control and does not need the device profile configuration. Therefore, the device profile will not be applied on such interface.

Profile manager and Private VLANs

When the device profile is applied, a check is performed to verify if the VLAN addition violates any PVLAN requirements. The following PVLAN related checks are done before applying the VLANs configured in the device profile to an interface:

- A port can be a member of only one VLAN from a given PVLAN instance.
- A promiscuous port cannot be a member of a secondary VLAN.

MAC lockout and lockdown

The Rogue AP isolation feature uses the MAC lockout feature to block MACs in hardware. Therefore, any MAC blocked with the Rogue AP isolation feature cannot be added with the `lockout-mac` or `static-mac` command if the action type is set to `block`.

For example:

```
switch# lockout-mac 247703-7a8950
Cannot add the entry for the MAC address 247703-7a8950 because it is already
blocked by rogue-ap-isolation.
```

```
switch# static-mac 247703-7a8950 vlan 1 interface 1
Cannot add the entry for the MAC address 247703-7a8950 because it is already
blocked by rogue-ap-isolation.
```

Similarly, any MAC that was added with the `lockout-mac` or `static-mac` command and that is being detected as rogue will be logged, but not blocked in hardware as it already is set to block. If the MAC is removed from

`lockout-mac` or `static-mac` but is still in the rogue device list, it will be blocked back in hardware if the action type is `block`.

LMA/WMA/802.1X/Port-Security

Any configuration using LMA, WMA, 802.1X, or Port-Security will not be blocked if the Rogue AP isolation feature is enabled. All these features act only when a packet with the said MAC is received on a port.

If `rogue-ap-isolation` blocks a MAC before it is configured to be authorized, packets from such MACs will be dropped until one of the following happens:

- Rogue action is changed to LOG.
- Rogue-AP isolation feature is disabled.
- The MAC is not detected as rogue anymore.
- LLDP is disabled on the port (or globally).

Once a MAC has been authorized by one of these features, it will not be blocked by Rogue AP isolation. A RMON will be logged to indicate the failure to block.

The Rogue AP module will retry to block any such MACs periodically. In the event of the MAC no longer being authorized, Rogue AP isolation will block the MAC again. No RMON is logged to indicate this event.

Troubleshooting

Dynamic configuration not displayed when using “show running-config”

Symptom

The `show running-config` command does not display the dynamic configuration applied through the device profile.

Cause

The `show running-config` command shows only the permanent user configuration and parameters configured through device profile.

Action

Use the specific `show device-profile` command to display the parameters dynamically configured through the device profile.

The `show run` command displays non-numerical value for untagged-vlan

Symptom

The `show run` command displays one of the following values for `untagged-vlan`:

- `no untagged-vlan`
- `untagged-vlan : None`

Cause

The `no device-profile` or the `no rogue-ap-isolation whitelist` command is executed to configure `untagged-vlan` to 0.

Action

No action is required.

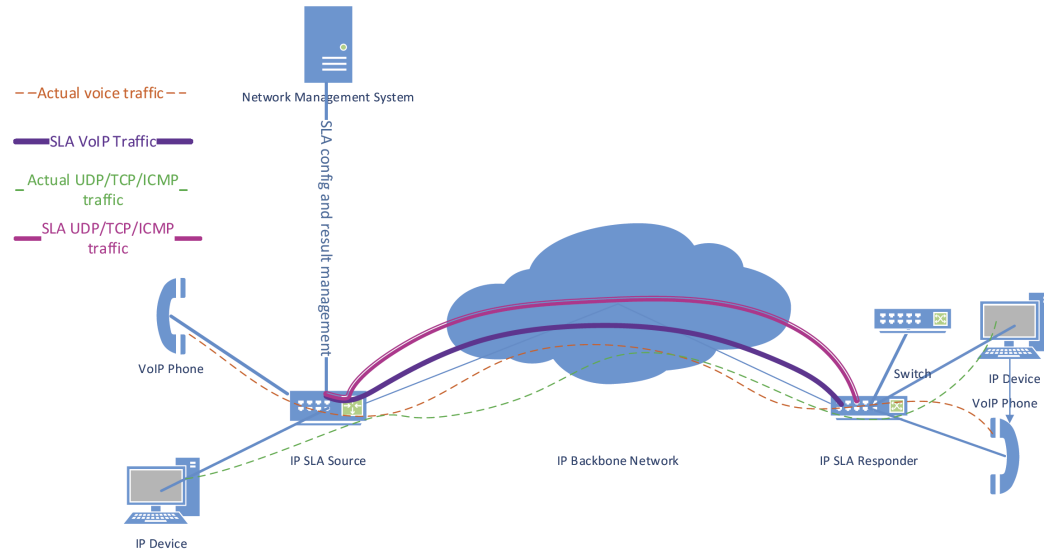
Show commands

Use the following show commands to view the various configurations and status.

Command	Description
<code>show device-profile</code>	Shows the device profile configuration and status.
<code>show device-profile config</code>	Shows the device profile configuration details for a single profile or all profiles.
<code>show device-profile status</code>	Shows currently applied device profiles.
<code>show run</code>	Shows the running configuration.

Overview

IP Service Level Agreement (IP SLA) is a feature that helps administrators collect information about network performance in real time. With increasing pressure on maintaining agreed-upon Service Level Agreements on Enterprises and ISPs alike, IP SLA serves as a useful tool.



Any IP SLA test involves a source node and a destination node. For all discussions in this document, the source is always an ArubaOS-switch with IP SLA support. As shown in the diagram above, a destination can, in most cases, be any IP-enabled device. For some SLA types that expect a nonstandard response to a test packet, an “SLA responder” must be configured. An “SLA responder” is nothing but an ArubaOS-switch with IP SLA configurations on it that enable it to respond to the test packet.

The IP SLA feature provides:

- Application-aware monitoring that simulates actual protocol packets.
- Predictable measures that aid in ease of deployment and help with assessment of existing network performance.
- Accurate measures of delay and packet loss for time-sensitive applications.
- End-to-end measurements to represent actual user experience.

We support the following SLA types:

- UDP Echo, including connectivity testing of transport layer (UDP) services, Round-Trip-Time (RTT) measurement, one-way delay, and packet loss details.
- ICMP Echo, including connectivity testing, RTT measurement, and packet loss details.
- TCP Connect, including connectivity testing of transport layer (TCP) services, and handshake time measurement.
- DHCP, which measures the round-trip time taken to discover a DHCP Server and obtain a leased IP address from it.

- DNS, which measures the time taken for a DNS resolution. This measures the difference between the time taken to send a request to the DNS server and the time the IP SLA source receives a reply.
- User Datagram Protocol (UDP) Jitter, which measures RTT, one way jitter and one way delays.
- UDP Jitter for VoIP, which measures RTT, one way jitter, one way delays, ICPIF (Impairment Calculated Planning Impairment Factor) and MOS (Mean Opinion Score).

Limitations for IPSLA support on Aruba switches:

- IP SLA is not enabled for IPv6.
- DHCP SLA supports DHCPv4 only.
- IP SLA tests cannot be initiated over OOBM interfaces.
- History results for the configured IP SLAs will not be available after a switchover or a reboot.
- Maximum number of IP SLAs that can be configured varies based on the type of SLA test.
- When there are multiple IP SLAs configured with destination as hostname, the DNS resolution happens serially. There can be a delay in sending the test probe (which will be sent only after successful DNS resolution).
- For TCP Connect SLA type, the four-tuple (source IP/port, destination IP/port) must be unique.
- System clocks between the source and the responder must be synchronized with NTP if One Way Delay parameters have to be calculated for UDP Echo tests.
- Timeout for probes is 3 seconds for all SLA types and is not configurable.
- Transient spikes in RTT occur during the tests (in the source and the responder) if processor usage is high. Consider average result values over a period of time rather than point-in-time results. This is not applicable for UDP Jitter nor Jitter for VoIP.

Entity	Limit
Maximum number of SLAs enabled.	50
Maximum history bucket size per SLA. ¹	50
Number of responders that can be configured.	10

¹ Not applicable for UDP Jitter and Jitter for VoIP.

The following are operational restrictions with respect to IP SLA jitter implementation:

- Feature is not supported on 2540.
- Feature is supported only on v3-based platforms (5400R, 3810, 2930F).
- No history results are stored.
- IPSLA Jitter and Jitter for VoIP initiator and responder is only supported on 5400R with v3 modules (noncompatibility mode), 3810, and 2930F switches.
- The maximum number of Jitter responder sessions (UDP Jitter + Jitter For VoIP) supported is 10. The maximum number of Jitter initiator sessions (UDP Jitter + Jitter For VoIP) supported is 5.
- Measurement of RTT and jitter values is in milliseconds.

- IPv6 SLA for UDP jitter and VoIP is not supported.
- UDP jitter and UDP jitter for VoIP tests are not supported over Tunnel, Trunk, and OOBM interfaces.
- UDP jitter and UDP jitter for VoIP results are not carried forward across failover or a device reboot.
- History bucket size cannot be configured for UDP jitter and VoIP tests. Results are aggregated for the last 25 probes.
- System clocks between the source and the responder must be synchronized with NTP if One Way Delay parameters have to be calculated for UDP Jitter & UDP Jitter for VoIP tests.
- The UDP jitter and UDP jitter for VoIP feature on ArubaOS-Switch has the following limited interoperability with Comware 7 SLA v2 version:
 - One Way packet drops (SD packet loss and DS packet loss) on the Comware Jitter initiator is not reported when interoperating with Aruba Jitter Responder.
- IP SLA responder or initiator implementation is not interoperable with Cisco's IP SLA feature.

How IP SLA works

1. The source originates a test packet to the destination.
2. The destination responds to the test packet, at times embedding the needed information in the response packet.
3. Upon receiving the response, the source calculates the test results based on the timestamp, other packet parameters, and so on.
4. The source stores the results and updates the history records for the SLA.
5. The source reschedules the SLA for the next run.



NOTE: For one-way delay calculations, the IP SLA sender and IP SLA responder must be NTP Time Synchronized.

Configuration commands

[no] ip-sla <ID>

Syntax

```
[no] ip-sla <ID>
```

Description

Configure the IP Service Level Agreement (SLA) parameters. The value of ID can range from 1-255.

Options

clear

Clear history records, message statistics, and threshold counters of particular SLA entry.

dhcp

Configure DHCP as the IP SLA test mechanism.

disable

Disable the IP SLA.

dns

Configure DNS as the IP SLA test mechanism.

enable

Enable the IP SLA.

history-size

Configure the number of history records to be stored for the IP SLA.

icmp-echo

Configure ICMP echo as the IP SLA test mechanism.

monitor

Configure monitoring parameters and respective threshold-action values.

schedule

Configure the start time, stop time, lifetime, and frequency of run for the IP SLA.

tcp-connect

Configure TCP connect as the IP SLA test mechanism.

tos

Configure the Type of Service value to be set in the test packet for the IP SLA.

udp-echo

Configure UDP echo as the IP SLA test mechanism.

On platforms that support Jitter and VOIP, the following options are also provided:

udp-jitter

Configure UDP jitter as the IP SLA test mechanism.

udp-jitter-voip

Configure UDP jitter for VoIP as the IP SLA test mechanism.

ip-sla <ID> clear

Syntax

```
ip-sla <ID> clear
```

Description

Clear history records, message statistics, and threshold counters of a particular SLA entry.

Options**records**

Clear history records, message statistics, and threshold counters of particular SLA entry.

[no] ip-sla <ID> history-size

Syntax

```
[no] ip-sla <ID> history-size
```

Description

Configure the number of history records to be stored for the IP SLA. The maximum supported size is 50 and the default value for history-size is 25.

[no] ip-sla <ID> icmp-echo

Syntax

```
[no] ip-sla <ID> icmp-echo [<IP-ADDR> | <HOST-NAME>] [source <IP-ADDR> | source-interface vlan <VLAN-ID>] [payload-size <SIZE>]
```

Description

Configure ICMP echo as the IP SLA test mechanism. Requires destination address/hostname and source address/vlan id for the IP SLA of ICMP-Echo SLA type.

payload-size

: Value can range from 1-1440. By default, payload-size is not set.

[no] ip-sla <ID> udp-echo

Syntax

```
[no] ip-sla <ID> udp-echo [destination [<IP-ADDR> | <HOST-NAME>] <PORT-NUM>] [source <IP-ADDR> | <VLAN-ID>] [payload-size <SIZE>]
```

Description

Configure UDP echo as the IP SLA test mechanism. Requires destination address/hostname and source address/VLAN ID for the IP SLA of UDP-Echo SLA type.

- **PORT-NUM:** Value can range from 1024–65535.
- **payload-size:** Value can range from 1-1440. By default, payload-size is not set.

[no] ip-sla <ID> tcp-connect

Syntax

```
[no] ip-sla <ID> tcp-connect [destination [<IP-ADDR> | <HOST-NAME>] <PORT-NUM>] [source [<IP-ADDR> | <VLAN-ID>] <PORT-NUM>]
```

Description

Configure TCP connect as the IP SLA test mechanism. Requires destination address/hostname and source address/VLAN ID for the IP SLA of TCP connect SLA type. The value of PORT-NUM can range from 1024-65535.

[no] ip-sla <ID> monitor threshold-config

Syntax

```
[no] ip-sla <ID> monitor threshold-config [rtt | srcToDstTime | dstToSrcTime] threshold-type [immediate | consecutive <COUNT>] threshold-value <UPPER-LIMIT> <LOWER-LIMIT> action-type [trap | log | trap-log | none]
```

Description

Set upper and lower threshold parameters.

- **threshold-type immediate:** Take action immediately when the monitored parameters cross the threshold upper limit (subsequent notifications for upper thresholds are not generated until the parameter values go lower than the configured lower threshold value).
- **threshold-type consecutive:** Take action after threshold is hit consecutively for number of times.
- **action-type:** Describes action to be taken when the upper threshold is crossed.
- **trap:** Send snmp-trap when configured threshold is hit.
- **log:** Only log the event when configured threshold is hit.
- **trap-log:** Send snmp-trap and log the event when configured threshold is hit.
- **none:** Take no action.



NOTE: The command option threshold-config can be individually set for rtt, srcToDstTime, and dstToSrcTime.

[no] ip-sla <ID> monitor packet-loss

Syntax

```
[no] ip-sla <ID> monitor packet-loss threshold-type [immediate | consecutive
<COUNT>] action-type [trap | log | trap-log | none]
```

Description

Configure threshold-action values when packet loss happens.

- **threshold-type immediate:** Take action immediately when the monitored parameters cross the threshold upper limit (subsequent notifications for upper thresholds are not generated until the parameter values go lower than the configured lower threshold value).
- **threshold-type consecutive:** Take action after threshold is hit consecutively for number of times.
- **action-type:** Describes action to be taken when the upper threshold is crossed.
- **trap:** Send snmp-trap when configured threshold is hit.
- **log:** Only log the event when configured threshold is hit.
- **trap-log:** Send snmp-trap and log the event when configured threshold is hit.
- **none:** Take no action.

[no] ip-sla <ID> monitor test-completion

Syntax

```
[no] ip-sla <ID> monitor test-completion action-type [trap | log | trap-log | none]
```

Description

Configure action to be taken when test gets completed.

- **trap:** Send snmp-trap when configured threshold is hit.
- **log:** Only log the event when configured threshold is hit.
- **trap-log:** Send snmp-trap and log the event when configured threshold is hit.
- **none:** Take no action.

[no] ip-sla <ID> schedule

Syntax

```
[no] ip-sla <ID> schedule [[now | startTime <START-TIME>] [forever | stopTime <STOP-TIME> | repetitions <NUM>] [frequency <FREQUENCY>
```

Description

Configure the start time, stop time, lifetime, and frequency of run for the IP SLA. The default value for the frequency of operation is 60 seconds.

[no] ip-sla <ID> tos

Syntax

```
[no] ip-sla <ID> tos <VALUE>
```

Description

Configure the Type of Service value to be set in the test packet for the IP SLA.

Valid values: 0–255

[no] ip-sla responder

Syntax

```
[no] ip-sla responder
```

Description

Configure SLA responder to respond to probe packets.

- **IP address:** local interface IP address
- **port:** takes L4 port numbers.
- **SLA types supported:** udp-echo, tcp-connect, UDP Jitter & Jitter For VoIP.

[no] ip-sla <ID> udp-jitter

Syntax

```
[no] ip-sla <ID> udp-jitter destination [<IP-ADDR> | <HOST-NAME>] <PORT-NUM> source [<IP-ADDR> | <VLAN-ID>] [payload-size <SIZE> num-of-packets <NUM> packet-interval <PKT-INTERVAL>]
```

Description

Configures the UDP Jitter test.

- **Payload-size:** Payload size of the test packet. Value can range from 68-8100. Default value is 68.
- **Num-of-packets:** Number of packets sent in one probe. Default is 10. Allowed range: 10-1000.
- **Packet-interval:** Inter packet gap in milliseconds. Time between consecutive packets within a probe. Default is 20ms. Allowed range: 10-60000

[no] ip-sla <ID> udp-jitter-voip

Syntax

```
[no] ip-sla <ID> udp-jitter-voip destination [<IP-ADDR> | <HOST-NAME>] <PORT-NUM>  
source [<IP-ADDR> | <VLAN-ID>] [codec-type <CODEC-TYPE> advantage-factor <ADV-  
FACTOR>]
```

Description

Configures the UDP Jitter for VoIP test.

- **Codec-type:** Codec to be used to encode the test VoIP packets. Available codecs: g711a, g711u, g729a. Default is g711a.
- **Advantage-factor:** Advantage factor to be configured for the test. Default is 0. Allowed range: 0-20.

Show commands

show ip-sla <ID>

Syntax

```
show ip-sla <ID>
```

Description

Show IP SLA configurations.

Options

history

Show the IP SLA results history.

message-statistics

Show the IP SLA message statistics.

results

Show the IP SLA results for UDP Jitter and UDP Jitter VoIP.

aggregated-results

Show the IP SLA aggregated results for UDP Jitter and UDP Jitter VOIP.

show ip-sla <ID>

```
SLA ID: 1  
Status: [Enabled | Admin-disabled | Scheduled | Expired | Running]  
  
SLA Type: [ICMP-echo | tcp-connect | UDP-echo | DHCP | DNS | udp-jitter | voip]  
  
Destination Hostname: www.arubanetworks.com  
Destination Address : 20.0.0.2  
Source Address      : 20.0.0.1  
History Bucket Size : 5  
TOS: 32  
Schedule:  
    Frequency (seconds) : 60  
    Life                  : [Forever | 144 seconds]  
    Start Time           : Tue Oct 27 22:12:16 2015  
    Next Scheduled Run Time : Tue Oct 27 22:43:16 2015
```

```

Threshold-Monitor is      : Enabled
  Threshold Config: RTT
  Threshold Type   : immediate
  Upper Threshold  : 500 ms
  Lower Threshold  : 100 ms
  Action Type      : Trap and Log

  Threshold Config: packet-loss
  Threshold Type   : consecutive (5)
  Action Type      : Trap

  Threshold Config: test-completion
  Action Type      : None

```

show ip-sla <ID> history

Syntax

```
show ip-sla <ID> history
```

Description

Show the IP SLA results history.

show ip-sla <ID> history

```

SLA ID : 1

SLA Type : UDP-Echo

Minimum RTT (ms)      : 1
Maximum RTT (ms)      : 4294967282
Average RTT (ms)      : 3
Total RTT (ms)        : 315
RTT2 (sum of RTT squared): 63681

Start Time              Status  RTT      Description
-----
Mon Jan 1 00:51:28 1990 Failed -      DMA tail drop detected.
Mon Jan 1 00:51:30 1990 Failed -      SLA disabled before probe response arrived.

```

show ip-sla <ID> message-statistics

Syntax

```
show ip-sla <ID> message-statistics
```

Description

Show the IP SLA message statistics.

show ip-sla <ID> message-statistics

```

SLA ID : 1
Status : Running
SLA Type : UDP-Echo
Destination Address : 10.0.0.2
Source Address : 10.0.0.1
Destination Port : 2000

```

```
History Bucket Size : 25
Payload Size : 500
TOS : 0
Messages:
Destination Address Unreachable : 0
Probes Skipped Awaiting DNS Resolution : 0
DNS Resolution Failed : 0
No Route to Target : 0
Internal Error : 0
Local Interface is Down : 0
No Response from Target : 0
Successful Probes Sent : 3
Probe Response received : 3
Possibly Tail Dropped : 0
```

show ip-sla <ID> results

Syntax

```
show ip-sla <ID> results
```

Description

Shows the results for the last IPSLA UDP Jitter or UDP Jitter for VoIP test. Note this command is not valid for any other SLA type.

Switch (config)# sh ip-sla 1 results

```
Test Results for SLA ID: 1
Probe Id           : 10
SLA Type           : UDP-Jitter
Destination IP Address : 10.2.2.2
Destination Port     : 4444
Source IP Address    : 10.2.2.2
Source Port         : 5555

Number of Packets Sent           : 10
Number of Packets Received       : 10
Minimum Round Trip Time         : 15
Maximum Round Trip Time         : 32
Average Round Trip Time         : 17
Square-Sum of Round Trip Time   : 3235
Last Succeeded Probe Time       : 2008-05-29 13:56:17.6

Extended Results:
Packet Loss in Test             : 0%

UDP-Jitter Results:
RTT Number                     : 10
Min Positive SD                 : 4
Max Positive SD                 : 21
Positive SD Number              : 5
Positive SD Sum                 : 52
Positive SD Average             : 10
Positive SD Square Sum          : 754
Min Negative SD                 : 1
Max Negative SD                 : 13
Negative SD Number              : 4
Negative SD Sum                 : 38
Negative SD Average             : 10
Negative SD Square Sum          : 460
Min Positive DS                 : 1
Max Positive DS                 : 28
Positive DS Number              : 4
Positive DS Sum                 : 38
Positive DS Average             : 10
Positive DS Square Sum          : 460
Min Negative DS                 : 6
Max Negative DS                 : 22
Negative DS Number              : 5
Negative DS Sum                 : 52
Negative DS Average             : 10
Negative DS Square Sum          : 754
```

One-way Results:

Max SD Delay	: 15	Max DS Delay	: 16
Min SD Delay	: 7	Min DS Delay	: 7
Number of SD Delays	: 10	Number of DS Delay s	: 10
Sum of SD Delays	: 78	Sum of DS Delays	: 85
Square Sum of SD Delays	: 666	Square Sum of DS Delays	: 787

For UDP Jitter for VoIP SLA, the following parameters are additionally shown:

Voice Scores:

ICPIF		: 4
MOS	: 4.38	

show ip-sla <ID> aggregated-results

Syntax

```
show ip-sla <ID> aggregated-results
```

Description

Shows the aggregated results for the last 25 probes conducted for an IPSLA UDP Jitter or UDP Jitter For VoIP SLA test. Note this command is not valid for any other SLA type.

Switch (config)# show ip-sla 1 aggregated-results

Test results for SLA ID: 1

```
SLA Type           : UDP-Jitter
Destination IP Address : 10.2.2.2
Destination Port      : 4444
Source IP Address     : 10.2.2.2
Source Port           : 5555
First Probe Start Time : 2008-05-29 13:56:17.6
```

```
Number of Packets Sent       : 10
Number of Packets Received   : 10
Minimum Round Trip Time     : 15
Maximum Round Trip Time     : 32
Average Round Trip Time     : 17
Square-Sum of Round Trip Time : 3235
```

Aggregated Results for the Last 25 Probes

Extended Results:

```
Packet Loss in Test      : 0%
Probe Failure Reason     :
```

UDP-Jitter Results:

RTT Number	: 10	Min Positive DS	: 1
Min Positive SD	: 4	Max Positive DS	: 28
Max Positive SD	: 21	Positive DS Number	: 4
Positive SD Number	: 5	Positive DS Sum	: 38
Positive SD Sum	: 52	Positive DS Average	: 10
Positive SD Average	: 10	Positive DS Square Sum	: 460
Positive SD Square Sum	: 754	Min Negative DS	: 6
Min Negative SD	: 1	Max Negative DS	: 22
Max Negative SD	: 13	Negative DS Number	: 5
Negative SD Number	: 4	Negative DS Sum	: 52
Negative SD Sum	: 38	Negative DS Average	: 10
Negative SD Average	: 10	Negative DS Square Sum	: 754
Negative SD Square Sum	: 460		

One-way Results:

Max SD Delay	: 15	Max DS Delay	: 16
Min SD Delay	: 7	Min DS Delay	: 7
Number of SD Delays	: 10	Number of DS Delay s	: 10
Sum of SD Delays	: 78	Sum of DS Delays	: 85
Square Sum of SD Delays	: 666	Square Sum of DS Delays	: 787

For UDP Jitter for VoIP SLA, the following parameters are additionally shown:

Voice Scores:

Max MOS Value	: 4.38	Min MOS Value	: 4.38
Max ICPIF Value	: 0	Min ICPIF Value	: 0

show ip-sla responder

Syntax

```
show ip-sla responder
```

Description

Show the IP SLA responder details.

show ip-sla responder

```
SLA type      : UDP-echo
Listening Address: 1.1.1.1
Listening Port  : 5555
```

show ip-sla responder statistics

Syntax

```
show ip-sla responder statistics
```

Description

Show the IP SLA responder statistics details.

Options

udp-jitter

Show the IP SLA responder statistics for UDP Jitter SLA type.

udp-jitter-voip

Show the IP SLA responder statistics for UDP Jitter VoIP SLA type.

show ip-sla responder statistics

```
IP SLA Responder : Active
Number of packets received : 31
Number of error packets received : 0
Number of packets sent : 0

Recent Sources :
10.12.80.100 [07:23:49.085 UTC Sun Oct 25 2015] UDP
10.12.80.100 [07:22:49.003 UTC Sun Oct 25 2015] TCP
10.12.80.100 [07:20:48.717 UTC Sun Oct 25 2015] TCP
```

```
10.12.80.100 [07:18:48.787 UTC Sun Oct 25 2015] TCP
10.12.80.100 [07:17:48.871 UTC Sun Oct 25 2015] TCP
```

show tech ip-sla

Syntax

```
show tech ip-sla
```

Description

Display output of a predefined command sequence used by technical support.

show tech ip-sla

```
switch# sh tech ip-sla

ipslaShowTech

===== IP SLA show tech BEGIN =====

GLOBALS:
Hash Handle:                1e7bab20
Struct Mem Handle for hash:  1e7ba2a8
Struct Mem Handle for SLA ID LL: 1e7c9430
Struct Mem Handle for FD List: 1e7bd690
FastLog Handle:             dfabf5c
IPSLA Ctrl task ID:         1068091456
IPSLA Sender ID:            1068092544
IPSLA Listener ID:          1068091840
Number of enabled SLA's:    1
SLA ID List Handle:         1ec1ffd4
FD ID List Handle:          0
Ring Full Counter:          0

Details for SLA ID: 1

SLA ID: 1
Status: Running

SLA mechanism: ICMP-Echo

Destination address: 192.168.1.2
Source address: 192.168.1.1
History bucket size: 25
Payload size: 0
TOS: 0
Schedule:
    Frequency (seconds)      : 60
    Life                     : Forever
    Start Time               : Mon Jun 13 10:42:52 2016
    Next Scheduled Run Time  : Mon Jun 13 10:46:52 2016

Threshold-Monitor is : Enabled
    Threshold Config        : RTT
    Threshold Type          : Immediate
    Upper Threshold         : 10
    Lower Threshold         : 2
    Action Type             : Log
```

```

SLA ID: 1
Status: Running

SLA mechanism: ICMP-Echo

Destination address: 192.168.1.2
Source address: 192.168.1.1
History bucket size: 25
Payload size: 0
TOS: 0
Messages:
    Destination address unreachable          : 0
    Probes skipped awaiting DNS resolution  : 0
    DNS resolution failed                   : 0
    No route to target                     : 0
    Internal error                         : 0
    Local interface is down                : 0
    No response from target                 : 0
    Successful probes sent                  : 9
    Probe response received                 : 9
    Possibly tail dropped                   : 0

```

```

Count of Threshold hits:
    RTT          : 0
    packetLoss    : 0

```

```
SLA ID: 1
```

```

Minimum RTT (ms)      : 1
Maximum RTT (ms)      : 1
Average RTT (ms)      : 1
Total RTT (ms)        : 9
RTT2 (sum of RTT squared): 9

```

Start Time	Status	RTT	Description
-----	-----	---	-----
Tue Jun 14 10:43:12 2016	Passed	1	
Mon Jun 13 10:39:05 2016	Passed	1	
Mon Jun 13 10:40:05 2016	Passed	1	
Mon Jun 13 10:41:05 2016	Passed	1	
Mon Jun 13 10:42:05 2016	Passed	1	
Mon Jun 13 10:42:52 2016	Passed	1	
Mon Jun 13 10:43:52 2016	Passed	1	
Mon Jun 13 10:44:52 2016	Passed	1	
Mon Jun 13 10:45:52 2016	Passed	1	

```
ICMP ID hash walk:
```

```
===== IP SLA show tech END =====
```

```

===== IP SLA Server show tech BEGIN =====
Responder not active
IP SLA Responder: Inactive

```

```
===== IP SLA Server show tech END =====
```

```
=== The command has completed successfully. ===
```

clear ip-sla responder statistics

Syntax

```
clear ip-sla responder statistics <SLA-TYPE> <LOCAL-IP-ADDR> <LOCAL-PORT-NUM>  
source <SOURCE-IP-ADDR>
```

Description

Clear IP SLA responder statistics for either UDP jitter or VoIP UDP jitter.

Command context

config

Parameters

<SLA-TYPE>

Specifies the SLA type.

udp-jitter

Selects standard UDP jitter.

udp-jitter-voip

Selects UDP VOIP jitter.

<LOCAL-IP-ADDR>

Specifies the local interface IP address

<LOCAL-PORT-NUM>

Specifies the local interface port number. Range: 1024 to 65535.

<SOURCE-IP-ADDR>

Specifies the Source IP address.

Examples

Clear IP SLA responder statistics for UDP jitter:

```
switch(config)# clear ip-sla responder statistics udp-jitter 1.1.1.1 1100 source 1.1.1.2
```

Validation rules

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
Enabling SLA without configuring SLA type.	Cannot enable IP SLA, no valid source/destination configured.
IP address given for source or destination is multicast or broadcast.	Invalid IP address.
Configure the SLA type with a source IP which is configured in the same switch.	Destination IP cannot be configured as the same as one of the local interface IP addresses.

Table Continued

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
Configure threshold with invalid value.	Invalid threshold count value. For threshold type 'Immediate', count must be 1 and for 'Consecutive', count must be greater than or equals to 2.
Configure threshold value for 'PacketLoss' or 'TestCompletion'	Configuration is not applicable when threshold is configured for 'PacketLoss' or 'TestCompletion'.
Configure threshold type for TestCompletion.	Configuration is not applicable when threshold is configured for 'TestCompletion'.
Configure schedule with proper end time with a frequency which is out of end time.	Invalid endtime. Endtime is not enough to run the tests for configured frequency and repetitions.
Configuring 'srcTodstTime' or 'dstTosrcTime' threshold configuration for 'icmp-echo' or 'tcp-connect'.	Invalid threshold configuration for configured SLA type.
Enabling the IP SLA which is already in enabled state.	IP SLA is already enabled.
Disabling the IP SLA which is already in disabled state.	IP SLA is already disabled.
Show IP SLA history of un-configured SLA.	IP SLA is not configured for this ID.
Enable more number (currently decided 50 as limit) of IP SLA.	Maximum number of enabled IP SLAs at a time is limited to 50.
Removing IP SLA type/tos/history size/schedule/ threshold configuration with un-configured value.	IP SLA configuration does not exist.
Configuring scheduler with a frequency value which is not satisfying the condition $\text{frequency} > \text{number of packets per probe} * \text{packet interval}$.	Frequency value is insufficient to configure the scheduler.
Scheduler already configured and try to configure SLA type with a value of 'number of packets per probe' and 'packet interval' which is not satisfying the condition $\text{frequency} > \text{number of packets per probe} * \text{packet interval}$.	Number of packets/packet interval is insufficient to configure IP SLA type.
Configuring IP SLA with invalid values.	Invalid configuration for IP SLA.
Change the IP SLA configuration when the SLA is enabled.	Configuration changes not allowed when IP SLA is enabled.
When IP address vs port number configured for an SLA is already in use	Error: Socket for configured address, port is already in use, choose different port number
When Source IP address given in SLA configuration is not configured in the switch	Error: Source IP address is not configured in switch

Table Continued

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
Invalid SLA ID given in show command	Error: Invalid IP SLA ID
Configure SLA more than allowed limit	Warning: The maximum number of IP SLAs allowed is 50.
Configure Responder more than allowed limit	Error: IP SLA Responder configurations reached max limit. No more configurations accepted.
Configure inter-packet interval when number of packets to be sent out is one.	Error Not applicable as Number of packets to be sent out is 1.
Upper threshold value is less than lower threshold value.	Error: Upper threshold value X is less than lower threshold value Y.
Configure schedule with start time greater than stop time.	Error: Stop time must be greater than start time.
Configure schedule with past stop time.	Error: Stop time must be greater than current time.
Configure schedule with invalid frequency value.	Error: Schedule frequency is out of range. Valid range is 5 to 604800.
Configuring history size with invalid value.	Error: IP SLA History size is out of range. Valid range is 1–50.
Configuring SLA type with invalid payload value.	IP SLA Payload value is out of range. Valid range is 1–1440.
Configuring SLA type with invalid port number.	Invalid port number. Valid range is 1024 to 65535.
Configure the IPSLA parameters without configuring SLA type.	No valid IP SLA type configuration found.
Configuring the responder with existing details.	IP SLA Responder with same configuration exist.
Configure management VLAN as source VLAN.	Error: Not allowed to configure management VLAN as source interface.
Enabling IP SLA without required configuration parameters.	Configuration is incomplete to enable the entry.
Configure IPSLA UDP Jitter/VoIP session when an OpenFlow custom match mode instance is already enabled.	Cannot enable IP SLA: Initiator cannot co-exist with OpenFlow custom Cannot enable IP SLA: Initiator cannot co-exist with OpenFlow custom
Configure UDP Jitter/VoIP IPSLA Initiator session with a source IP same as tunnel overlay VLAN	Cannot enable IP SLA: The source VLAN cannot be a tunnel overlay VLAN.
Configure UDP Jitter/VoIP IPSLA Initiator session with a source IP same as a service tunnel endpoint.	Cannot enable IP SLA: The source VLAN cannot be a service tunnel endpoint.

Event log messages

Cause

Event	Message
User adds IP SLA endpoint configuration.	I 10/28/15 02:47:12 05020 ipsla: The IP SLA 1 of SLA Type: UDP-Echo, Source IPv4 Address: 10.0.0.1, Destination IPv4 Address: 10.0.0.5, Destination Port: 54563 added.
User removes the endpoint configuration.	I 10/28/15 02:47:12 05021 ipsla: The IP SLA 1 of SLA Type: UDP-Echo, Source IPv4 Address: 10.0.0.1, Destination IPv4 Address: 10.0.0.5, Destination Port: 54563 removed.
When the SLA state changes (can be either system initiated or done by the user)	I 10/28/15 01:42:22 05027 ipsla: IP SLA 1 state changed to Expired.I 10/28/15 01:42:22 05021 ipsla: IP SLA 1 state changed to Enabled.I 10/28/15 01:42:22 05021 ipsla: IP SLA 1 state changed to Scheduled.I 10/28/15 01:42:22 05021 ipsla: IP SLA 1 state changed to Admin-disabled.
User configures a responder	I 10/28/15 01:42:22 05025 ipsla: IP SLA responder configured for SLA Type: TCP-Connect, Listen Address: 10.0.0.7, Listen Port: 38425
User removes a responder	I 10/28/15 01:42:22 05026 ipsla: IP SLA responder removed for SLA Type: TCP-Connect, Listen Address: 10.0.0.7, Listen Port: 38425
SLA test results cross configured threshold	I 10/28/15 01:42:22 05022 ipsla: IP SLA 1, threshold is crossed. Monitored Param: RTT, Threshold Type: immediate, Upper threshold: 500, Lower threshold: 100, Action Type: Trap and Log. Actual Threshold: 600
User adds DNS IP-SLA configuration	I 08/09/16 02:47:12 05029 ipsla: The IP SLA 1 of SLA Type: DNS, Name server IPv4 Address: 10.0.0.1, Target Hostname: a.hpe.com added
User removes DNS IP-SLA configuration	I 08/09/16 02:47:12 05030 ipsla: The IP SLA 1 of SLA Type: DNS, Name server IPv4 Address: 10.0.0.1, Target Hostname: a.hpe.com removed.
The packet loss threshold for the SLA has reached	I 08/09/16 02:47:12 05023 ipsla: The IP SLA 1 of SLA Type: DNS, Packet loss is observed. Threshold type: immediate, Action type: Trap and Log
The SLA test has completed and the threshold config for test completion is present	I 08/09/16 02:47:12 05024 ipsla: The IP SLA 1, Probe for SLA Type: UDP-Echo, Source IPv4 Address:1.1.1.2, Destination IPv4 Address:1.1.1.3, Destination Port:3000 Completed

Table Continued

Event	Message
TCP-Connect Duplicate configuration is present	W 08/09/16 02:47:12 05028 ipsla: Duplicate configuration detected; the IP SLA 10 configuration is the same as the IP SLA 1. For TCP, 4-tuple combination has to be unique.
User adds DHCP SLA configuration	I 08/09/16 02:47:12 05031 ipsla: The IP SLA 1 of SLA Type: DHCP, Vlan: 1 added.
User removes DHCP SLA configuration	I 08/09/16 02:47:12 05032 ipsla: The IP SLA 1 of SLA Type: DHCP, Vlan: 1 removed.
DHCP SLA test has completed and the threshold config for test completion is present	I 08/09/16 02:47:12 05033 ipsla: The IP SLA 1, Probe for SLA Type: DHCP, Source Vlan : 1 Completed

Interoperability

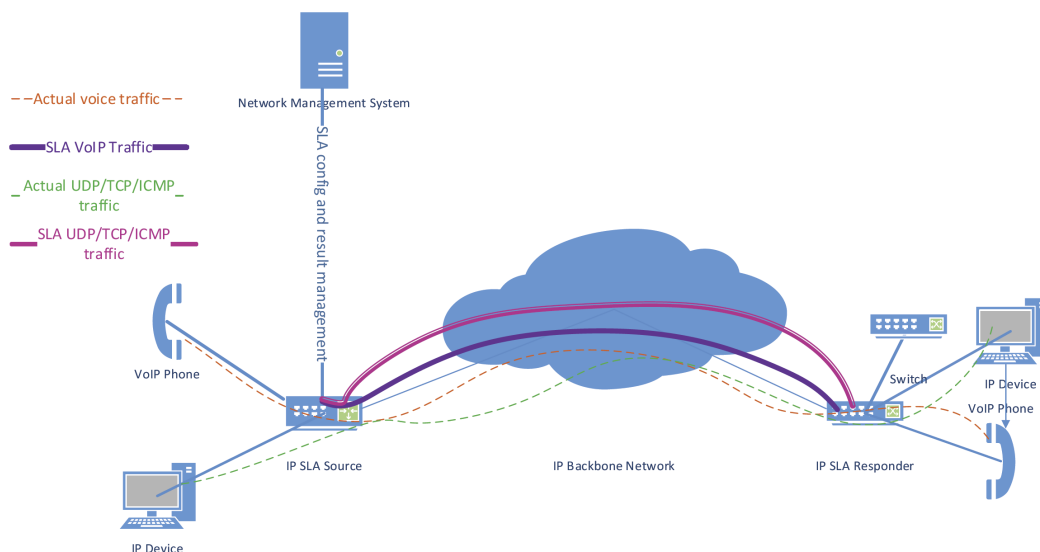


NOTE: Packet loss is expected when H3C TCP-CONNECT source, with a frequency less than or equal to 10 ms, interoperates with TCP-CONNECT responder.

IP SLA UDP Jitter and Jitter for VoIP

Overview

The UDP Jitter and Jitter for VoIP SLA types enable the user to assess the suitability of the network for voice & video related traffic. These SLA's basically calculate parameters like RTT, one way delay, one way positive and negative Jitter etc.



The above diagram shows a typical deployment, where voice & video traffic are exchanged between branch offices of an enterprise over the backbone network. Assessment of the network readiness is always helpful for hosting such services. Parameters like RTT, Jitter and one way delay are a good indicator of network health which assist a network administrator to diagnose latency related issues in the network. VoIP traffic is generally sensitive to delays in the network.

Jitter stands for inter-packet delay variance. If the inter-packet delay increases between successive probe packets, jitter is said to be positive. If the inter-packet delay decreases, jitter is said to be negative. Positive jitter values are undesirable for a network as they indicate increased latencies. A value of 0 jitter is desirable.

Significance of jitter

Consider a media player which plays video streams from a server. Assume that packets take 1 second in flight to reach the media player. This means the moment a user requests a video from the server, the very first packet will arrive after one second and successive packets will be sent immediately (ideally). In real world scenarios, intermediate node latencies, different return paths for different packets and network congestion can contribute to varying delays. To counter such effects, packets are buffered at the media player. The amount of packet buffering needed can be derived from the jitter values.



NOTE: The above analogy is applicable for other voice & video services and can be a good measure to assess the possibility for hosting a service on a network.

Solution components

IP SLA responder

This device receives IP SLA probe packets from a configured initiator, timestamps the frame at a pre-defined location in the packet upon receipt and sends the same frame back to the initiator.

IP SLA initiator

This device initiates IP SLA probe packets to multiple destinations each with a certain user configurable packet content and periodicity.

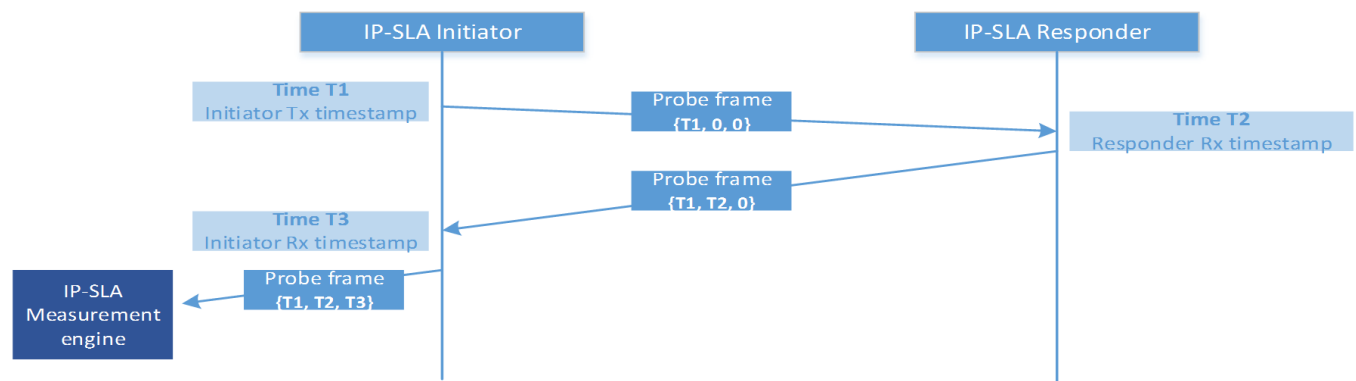
The initiator timestamps the frame at a pre-defined location before sending the frame out to the configured destinations and re-timestamps the frame at a different location once it receives the same back from the responder.

IP SLA measurement engine

This is an application running on the initiator. It processes response frames received from the IP SLA responder and computes one-way delay, jitter and RTT based on the timestamps present in the packet.

This application aggregates this computed information across multiple probe samples and stores this for consumption by an NMS via SNMP or via the device CLI.

It also supports asynchronous user configurable threshold breach notification to an NMS (via SNMP Traps).



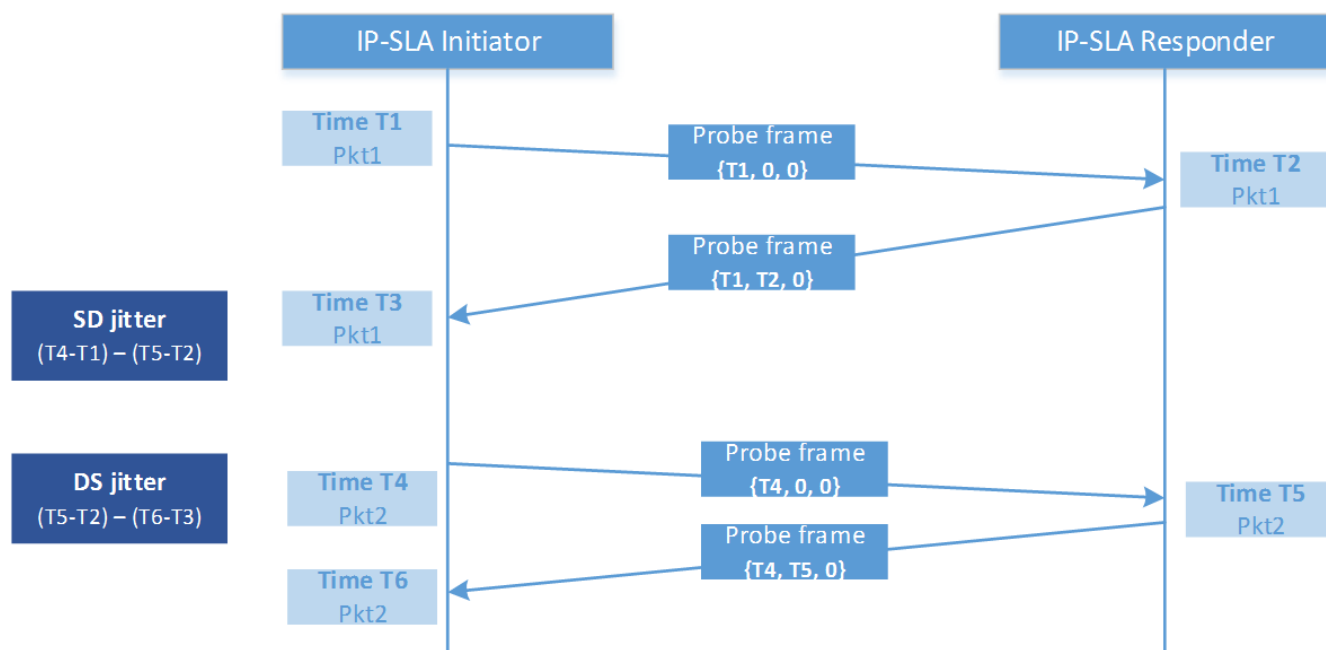
SLA Measurements

The following metrics are measured as part of this IP SLA jitter functionality.

One way jitter

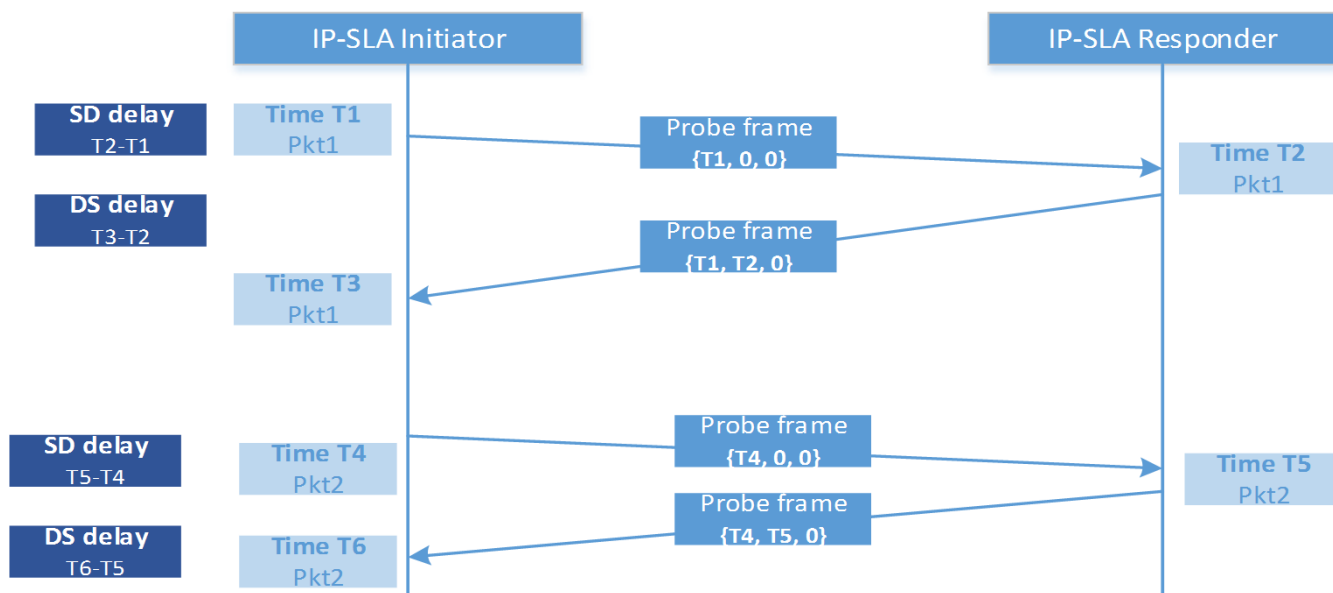
One way jitter is defined as the time difference between inter-packets transmit time and inter-packets arrival time in a given direction. This is measured in both the Initiator to Responder direction (referred to as SD jitter) as well as the Responder to initiator direction (referred to as DS jitter).

Ideally, the jitter in both directions should be 0. A positive value of jitter is bad for VOIP and higher values of jitter will mean poor conversation quality. This is explained in the illustration below:



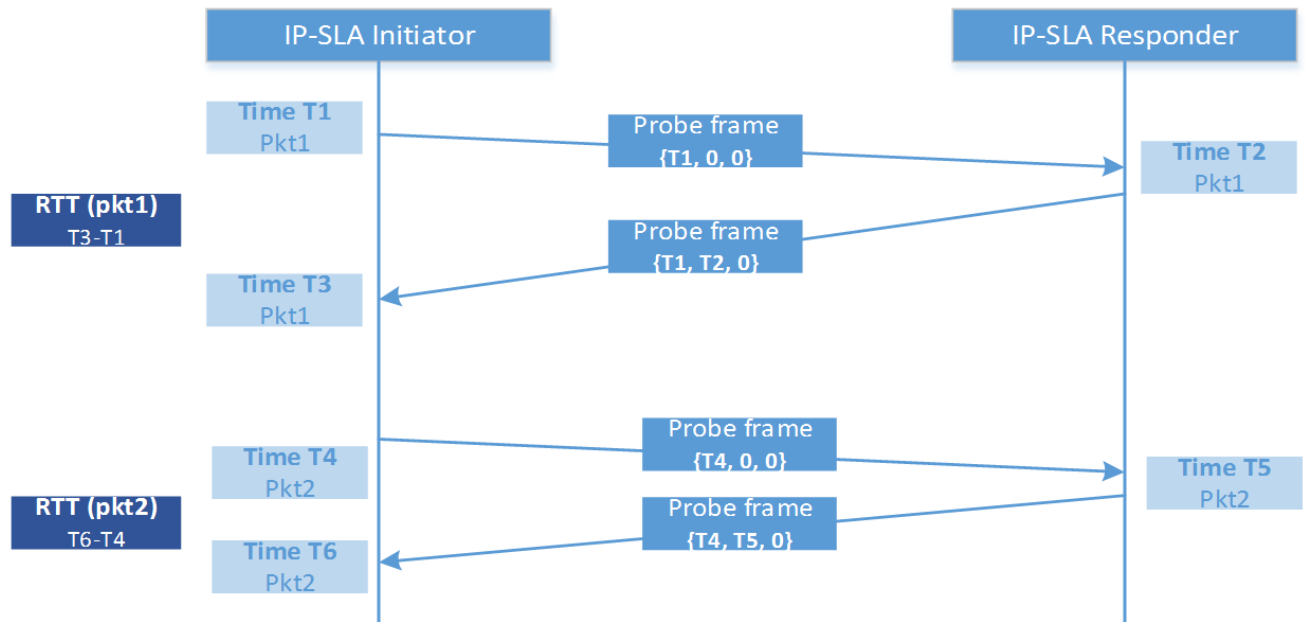
One way delay

One way delay is defined as the time difference between the Initiator transmitting the frame and the Responder receiving the frame. This requires the Initiator and the Responder to be time synchronized with the same clock server. This is explained in the illustration below:



Round trip time

RTT is measured at the initiator on a per packet basis and is as illustrated below:



Definition of Terms

Term	Definition
DCA	Dynamic Configuration Arbiter
ClearPass	ClearPass Policy Manager
GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation
SAC	Switch Anchor Controller
S-SAC	Standby Switch Anchor Controller
UAC	User Anchor Controller
Switch Bootstrap	Control plane protocol packets exchange process between a switch and an SAC to register a switch with the configured SAC.
User Bootstrap	Control plane protocol packets exchange process between a switch and a UAC to register a user with the published UAC.
Secondary role	This information is an indication to the controller that it has to enforce additional policies to user traffic based on policy configuration associated with the secondary role.
Reserved VLAN mode	A VLAN is automatically created and reserved for tunnels in this mode.

Overview

Dynamic Segmentation enables Aruba switches to tunnel traffic (all traffic or the traffic of particular clients) to Aruba controllers.

Dynamic Segmentation includes the following:

- User-Based Tunneling tunnels client traffic on the basis of user roles. This ability to dynamically tunnel traffic is powerful, and when used correctly, can help in solving several deployment problems that are prevalent in legacy campus networks. The policies associated with the client can be driven through a RADIUS server, a downloaded role from ClearPass, or by local MAC authentication in the switch. Many devices that require Power over Ethernet (PoE) and network access, such as security cameras, printers, payment card readers, and medical devices, do not have built in security software such as those on desktop or laptop computers. These devices can pose a risk to networks with the lack security on the device. User-Based Tunneling can authenticate these devices using ClearPass, and tunnel the client traffic, utilizing the advanced firewall and policy capabilities in the Aruba Mobility Controller. For providing secure access to IoT devices within the Aruba Intelligent Edge wired network, controller clustering is available in ArubaOS 8.0.0.0. For more information, see **User-Based Tunneling**.
- Port-Based Tunneling allows the Aruba switch to tunnel traffic to an Aruba Mobility Controller on a per-port basis. All traffic on a configured switch port is statically tunneled to an Aruba Mobility Controller. For more information, see **Port-Based Tunneling**.

Tunneling is enabled in the Aruba user role and can be combined with the Downloadable User Role (DUR) feature for dynamic and flexible policy enforcement and segmentation.



NOTE: Maximum supported user tunnels per switch or stack: 1024
Maximum supported user tunnels per port: 32

Benefits of Dynamic Segmentation

The benefits of dynamic segmentation are:

- Colorless ports / client flexibility
- Client isolation
- Same policy for wired or wireless clients
- With ClearPass, no role preconfiguration is needed.
- Tunnel client traffic over core complexity
- Reduced switch configuration
- Traffic visibility
- Wired guest access
- Simple branch configuration
- Controller supplied client attributes visibility

Use Cases

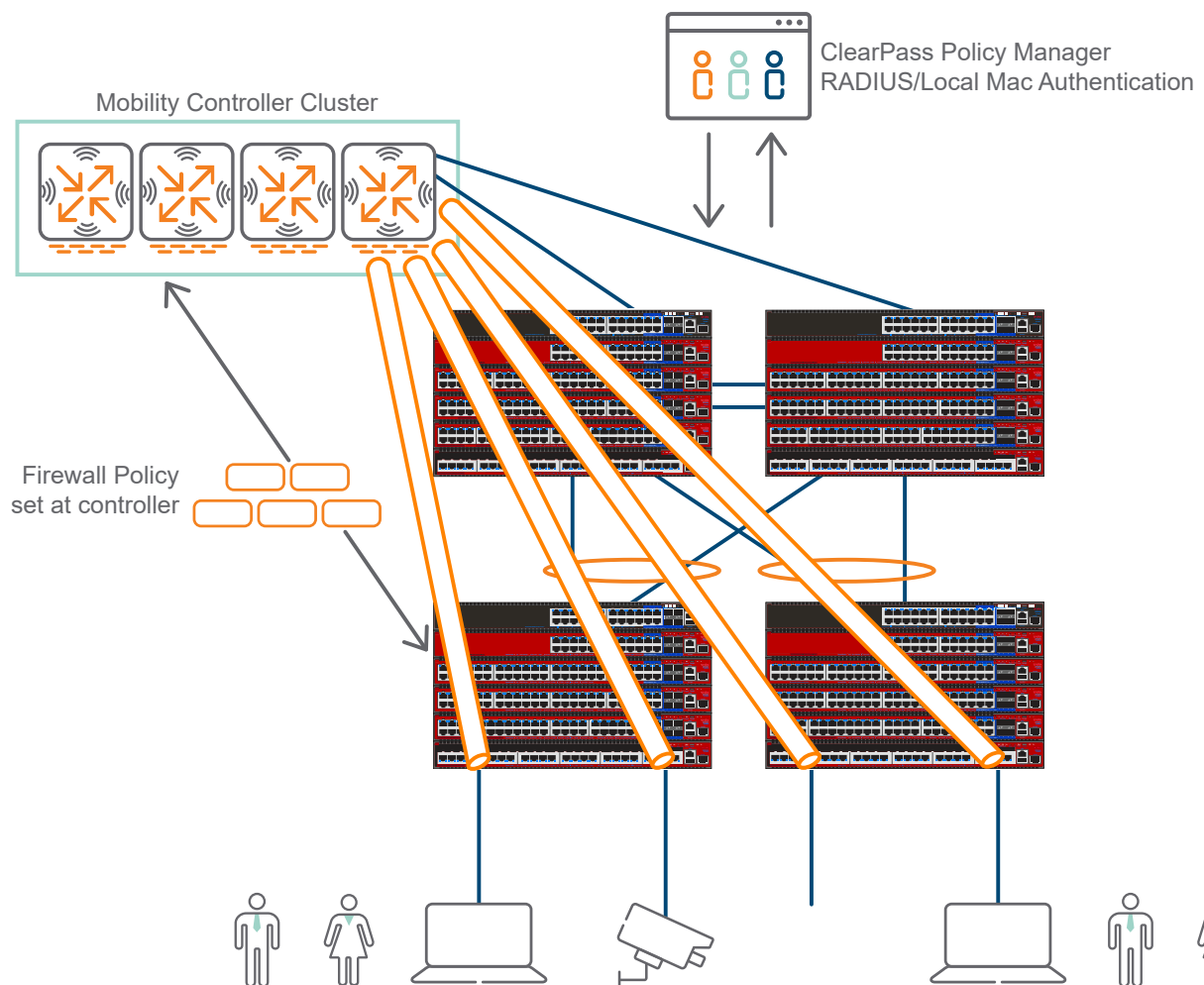
Following are the common use cases for Dynamic Segmentation, apart from the common use case of segmenting traffic based on user role policy:

- Create a wired guest capability.
- Provide a firewall at the Aruba Mobility Controller.

Wired Firewall Access:

To restrict user access, firewall and policies can be implemented for users tunneled to an Aruba Mobility Controller by using the built-in firewall capabilities of the controller.

Figure 177: Wired Firewall Access

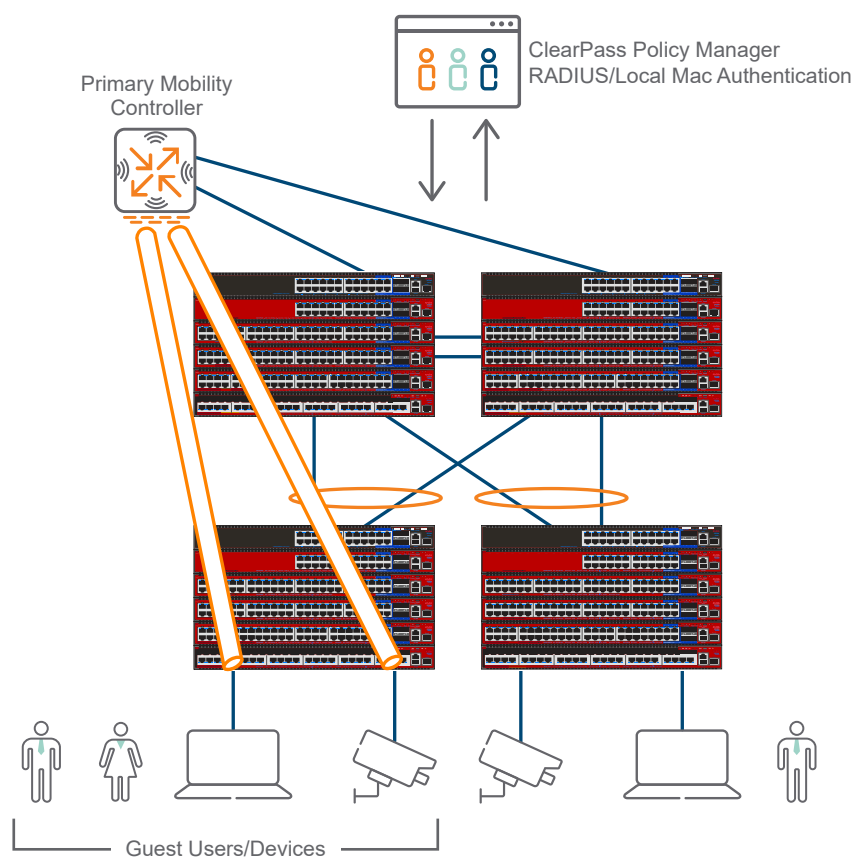


Wired Guest Traffic Segmentation:

The Dynamic Segmentation feature supports segmenting wired guest traffic on the network. This is achieved by creating the secondary role as a guest role on the Aruba Mobility Controller and assigning a specific guest VLAN.

Access and firewall policy is then implemented on the controller to isolate guest access to the rest of the campus network.

Figure 178: Wired Guest Traffic Segmentation



Users/Devices and Policy Enforcement Recommendations

The following table specifies the enforcement recommendations for different type of users and devices. While it is recommended to tunnel the traffic in some cases, other cases can be met by simply using local forwarding on the switch.

Type	Enforcement	Description
Access Point	Local	Local infrastructure device.
Voice/Video Device	Local	Desk and conference phones, security cameras, and room media systems.
Employee on Managed Device	Local	Users connecting from a healthy and managed device can stay local to the Aruba switch.
Employee on Unmanaged device	Tunnel	Users connecting from an unmanaged or potentially untrusted device can be tunneled.
New/Unknown Device	Tunnel	Tunnel new or unknown devices, potentially untrusted devices used for profiling, potential onboarding, guest registration, and quarantine.
Guest User	Tunnel	Guest users to DMZ guest network.

Table Continued

Type	Enforcement	Description
Contractor	Tunnel	Contractors may need more access than a traditional guest user.
Change in User/Device Posture	Tunnel	User or device goes from a healthy to unhealthy state (OnGuard checks, IntroSpect notification, Ingress Event Engine Notification)

Colorless Ports

Within a campus network with a few thousand switch access ports and numerous intermediate distribution frames (IDFs), network admins must put in effort to assign VLAN IDs to the devices. It is also difficult to maintain switch port to VLAN mapping, and a significant configuration effort to manage thousands of lines of configurations on the switches is required.

With colorless ports, all the switches would have similar configuration with IP, credentials, authentication, VLANs, and uplinks. All access ports need only a few lines of configuration common for all ports. No admin intervention is needed to assign a VLAN to a user, since the user is automatically assigned a reserved VLAN ID.

The benefits of colorless ports are:

- Simplified user experience
- Increased visibility: It is easy to see what is on the network.
- Increased security: The network applies the correct policy to a device.
- Simplified switch configuration. All access ports are configured the same.

For more details on the colorless ports, see User Roles in the *Access Security Guide* for your switch.

Port-Based Tunneling

In a traditional campus network, wireless traffic is encapsulated between the access point and controller using a tunnel. With Port-Based Tunneling on the Aruba switches, a similar implementation is done using the same mechanism with an Aruba Mobility Controller. In essence, a wired port becomes a “wired AP”. Each switch port can then be individually configured to create a single tunnel to the Mobility Controller. However, at the Mobility Controller, each tunneled node port is seen as separate tunnel to provide more granular visibility, as each tunnel has a unique GRE key. By tunneling traffic to the Mobility Controller, in Port-Based Tunneling, authentication and network policies are applied and enforced at the controller-side for tunneled, wired traffic. This simplifies configuration on the switch and centralizes policies at the Mobility Controller. Port-Based Tunneling allows using the same enforcement options for wired and wireless clients. This includes stateful session processing, deep packet inspection, URL filtering, and bandwidth contracts.

The main purpose of Port-Based Tunneling is to use the Mobility Controller as a unified policy enforcement point for traffic from both wired and wireless clients.



NOTE: If the Mobility Controller is not reached by the Aruba switch, the user can fall back to local switching, which allows the tunneled ports to communicate with the other ports in the same VLAN.



IMPORTANT:

- Port-Based Tunneling is configured on a per-port basis. Traffic to and from ports that is not configured as tunneled is forwarded using the standard layer switching technology.
- An ArubaOS-switch can be configured with a main and a backup tunnel termination controller called “tunneled-node server”.
- Port-Based Tunneling does not support HA and load balancing over an Aruba Mobility Controller Cluster compared to User-Based Tunneling.

Configuring Port-Based Tunneling

Jumbo frames must be enabled on all devices between the access switch and the controller to support the L2 GRE tunnels.

Follow the steps below to configure port-based tunneling:

Prerequisites

It is recommended to create a specific VLAN for tunneled node operation. The VLAN:

- Must be configured as the only VLAN for tunneled node access ports (untagged)
- Cannot be assigned an IP address – No layer 3 interface
- Must exist on the controller

Procedure

1. Execute the following command to setup the IP address of the Aruba Mobility Controller:

```
Switch(config)# tunneled-node-server controller-ip 10.2.10.11
```

Optional steps:

- a. Set up backup controller IP by issuing the following command:

```
Switch(config)# tunneled-node-server backup-controller-ip 10.2.10.12
```

- b. Set tunneling keepalive timer by issuing the following command. Ensure the time interval between keepalive messages is set to the default value (8):

```
Switch(config)# tunneled-node-server keepalive interval  
<1-8> Configure the time interval between two successive keepalive messages sent to the  
controller
```

2. Execute the following commands to enable port-based tunneling on an interface or a range of interfaces:

```
Switch(config)# vlan 200 untagged 1/21-1/24  
exit  
Switch(config)#interface 1/21-1/24 tunneled-node-server
```

3. Execute the following commands to verify the state of the port-based tunnel(s):

```
Switch(config)# show tunneled-node server state  
Tunneled Node Port State  
Active Controller IP Address : 10.2.10.11  
Port State  
-----  
2/23 Complete
```

View the tunnel statistics by issuing the following command:

```
View tunnel statistics  
Switch(config)# show tunneled-node-server statistics  
Tunneled Node Statistics  
Port : 2/23  
Control Plane Statistics  
Bootstrap packets sent : 1  
Bootstrap packets received : 1  
Bootstrap packets invalid : 0
```

```
Tunnel Statistics
Rx Packets : 302
Tx Packets : 0
Rx 5 Minute Weighted Average Rate (Pkts/sec)
: 0 Tx 5 Minute Weighted Average Rate
(Pkts/sec) : 0
Aggregate Statistics
Heartbeat packets sent : 56607
Heartbeat packets received : 56607
Heartbeat packets invalid : 0
Fragmented Packets Dropped (Rx) : 0
Packets to Non-Existent Tunnel : 0
MTU Violation Drop : 0
```

Operating notes

- Tunneled node profile can be created using CLI and SNMP.
- The tunneled node profile supports configuring of:
 - Primary controller (both IPv4 and IPv6).
 - Backup controller (both IPv4 and IPv6).
 - Heartbeat keepalive timeout – range 1-40 seconds.
- Only one tunneled node profile can be created.
- The tunneled-node profile can be applied to a physical port only via CLI and SNMP.
- The maximum number of physical ports to which the profile may be applied is:
 - Aruba 5400R Switch Series (non-VSF): 256
 - Aruba 5400R Switch Series (VSF): 512
- High availability (HA) will be supported for the tunneled node related configuration.
- A tunnel, associated with a port, is “up” when the following conditions are met. A tunnel is “down” when either of the conditions are not met.
 - Either the primary or backup controller is reachable.
 - A boot strap message response is received from the controller.
- Heartbeat between the switch and controller fails when the controller does not respond after five attempts. All tunnels are brought down with a heartbeat failure.
- A tunnel “up or down” status is logged for each tunnel node port in the event log.
- The `show tech` command dumps all user-mode and test-mode command outputs.
- To reach the Aruba controller, the VLAN must have a manual IP configured.
- With the exception of the 802.1x BPDU, the switch consumes all other BPDUs.
- The controller cluster cannot have mix of IPv4 and IPv6 nodes.
- IPv6 addresses are not allowed for both Primary and Backup controllers when in Port-Based Tunnels.

Interaction table

Features enabled with tunneled node:

Feature
Mirrors (MAC, VLAN, port)
PVST/RPVST/STP
DLDP
UDLD
LLDP/CDP
GVRP/MVRP
LACP
Uplink Failure Detection
sFlow
Loop protect
Smartlink
Global QoS (VLAN, port, rate limit)
MAC lockout/lockdown
ACL/Classifiers (ingress/egress)
IGMP/MLD
GMB
Broadcast-limit
Energy Efficient Ethernet
Flow Control
PoE
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • poe-allocate-by • poe-lldp-detect
Rogue MAC detection
LLDP auto provisioning

Restrictions

- Once a tunneled node profile is applied to a port, the controller IP (primary and backup) cannot be changed.
- IP address cannot be assigned to VLANs that contain ports with Port-Based Tunneling configured.

- No support for fragmentation and reassembly for encapsulated frames that result in an MTU violation. Such frames will be dropped.
- Packets from ports configured with Port-Based Tunnels will not be bridged with locally switched ports.

Features that are blocked when Port-Based Tunnels are configured and the scope of the block (either globally, on a port basis or on a VLAN basis):

Feature	Blocked globally/per port/ VLAN with Port-Based Tunneling
IP multicast routing	Global
Openflow	Global
Q-in-Q	Global
Distributed Trunking	Global
Mesh	Global
VXLAN	Global
IP address: manual and dhcp	VLAN
802.1x, mac auth, webauth, LMA, port security	Port
DIPLD (IPv4/IPv6)	Port
DSNOOP (IPv4/IPv6)	VLAN
ARP protect	VLAN
RA guard	Port
Virus throttling	Port
BYOD	VLAN
Trunk	Profile cannot be applied to a trunk
PBR policies	VLAN
VSF on a Port-Based Tunnel configured port	Port
Source port/Multicast filters	Port
DHCP client/Server/Relay	VLAN

Preventing double tunneling of Aruba Access Points

When an Aruba Access Point (AP) is connected to a port on which Port-Based Tunneling is configured, there are two tunnels from that port to the Controller - one for the AP and another for the tunneled node. To improve

performance of APs connected to tunneled node ports, the following configuration parameter under the device profile feature prevents double tunneling.

The parameter decides whether to allow or not, a tunneled node to be configured on the port on which the device-profile is applied. Use the command `switch(config)# device-profile name <device-profile-name> [no] allow-tunneled-node`.



NOTE: The default setting of `device-profile` allows tunneled node. Device profile is applied on the port only by reading Organizational Specific TLV in LLDP packets.

Preventing double tunneling using device profile

`device-profile name`

Syntax

```
device-profile name <device-profile-name> [no] allow-tunneled-node
```

Description

Allows or disallows tunneled node when device profile is applied on that port.

Command context

config

Parameter

<device-profile-name>

Specifies the name of the device profile to be configured.

Usage

To create a device-profile named “test”, execute the following command:

```
switch(config)# device-profile name test
```

To allow tunneled-node by the configured device profile parameter, execute the following command:

```
switch(device-profile)# allow-tunneled-node
```

Examples

```
switch(config)# device-profile name <device-profile-name>
switch(device-profile)#
allow-jumbo-frames      Configure jumbo frame support for the device port.
allow-tunneled-node     Configure Tunneled Node support for the device port.
cos                     Configure the Class of Service (CoS) priority for
                        traffic from the device.
egress-bandwidth        Configure egress maximum bandwidth for the device port.
ingress-bandwidth       Configure ingress maximum bandwidth for the device
                        port.
poe-max-power           Configure the maximum PoE power for the device port.
poe-priority            Configure the PoE priority for the device port.
speed-duplex            Configure the speed and duplex for the device port.
tagged-vlan             Configure this port as a tagged member of the specified
                        VLANs.
untagged-vlan           Configure this port as an untagged member of specified
                        VLAN.
```

Execute `show run` command to display the tunneled mode configuration in an enabled or disabled state:

```

switch(config)# show run
; J9625A Configuration Editor; Created on release #KB.16.05.0000x
; Ver #0f:02.43.18.82.34.61.1c.28.f3.84.9c.63.ff.37.2f:da
hostname "switch"
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
device-identity name "cpe" lldp oui 33bbcc
device-identity name "cpe" lldp sub-type 1
device-identity name "phone" lldp oui 112233

vlan 1
    name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
    untagged 1-28
    ip address dhcp-bootp
    exit
device-profile name "ram"
    exit
device-profile name "test"
    exit
device-profile type "scs-wan-cpe"
    associate "ram"
    enable
    exit
device-profile type-device "cpe"
    associate "ram"
    enable
    exit
device-profile type-device "phone"
    associate "default-device-profile"
    exit

```

When allow-tunneled-node is disabled:

```

switch(config)# show run
; J9625A Configuration Editor; Created on release #KB.16.05.0000x
; Ver #0f:02.43.18.82.34.61.1c.28.f3.84.9c.63.ff.37.2f:da
hostname "switch"
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
device-identity name "cpe" lldp oui 33bbcc
device-identity name "cpe" lldp sub-type 1
device-identity name "phone" lldp oui 112233

vlan 1
    name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
    untagged 1-28
    ip address dhcp-bootp
    exit
device-profile name "ram"
    exit
device-profile name "test"
    no allow-tunneled-node
    exit
device-profile type "scs-wan-cpe"
    associate "ram"
    enable
    exit
device-profile type-device "cpe"
    associate "ram"
    enable
    exit
device-profile type-device "phone"
    associate "default-device-profile"
    exit

```

show device-profile config

Syntax

```
show device-profile config
```

Description

Displays device profile configuration.

Command context

```
config
```

Usage

To verify whether tunneled-node is allowed (when “test” is device-profile name):

```
switch(device-profile)# show device-profile config test
```

To verify the output when tunneled-node is disabled:

```
switch(device-profile)# no allow-tunneled-node
switch(device-profile)# show device-profile config test
```

Example

```
switch(config)# show device-profile config
Device Profile Configuration

Configuration for device-profile : default-ap-profile
untagged-vlan      : 1
tagged-vlan        : None
ingress-bandwidth  : 100%
egress-bandwidth   : 100%
cos                : 0
speed-duplex       : auto
poe-max-power      : Class/LLDP
poe-priority       : critical
allow-jumbo-frames : Disabled
allow-tunneled-node: Enabled

Device Profile Configuration

Configuration for device-profile : test
untagged-vlan      : 1
tagged-vlan        : None
ingress-bandwidth  : 100%
egress-bandwidth   : 100%
cos                : None
speed-duplex       : auto
poe-max-power      : Class/LLDP
poe-priority       : critical
allow-jumbo-frames : Disabled
allow-tunneled-node: Enabled
```

When tunneled-node is disabled:

```
switch(config)# show device-profile config
Device Profile Configuration

Configuration for device-profile : default-ap-profile
untagged-vlan      : 1
tagged-vlan        : None
```

```
ingress-bandwidth : 100%
egress-bandwidth  : 100%
cos               : 0
speed-duplex      : auto
poe-max-power     : Class/LLDP
poe-priority      : critical
allow-jumbo-frames : Disabled
allow-tunneled-node : Disabled
```

Device Profile Configuration

```
Configuration for device-profile : test
untagged-vlan      : 1
tagged-vlan        : None
ingress-bandwidth  : 100%
egress-bandwidth   : 100%
cos               : None
speed-duplex       : auto
poe-max-power      : Class/LLDP
poe-priority       : critical
allow-jumbo-frames : Disabled
allow-tunneled-node : Disabled
```

User-Based Tunneling

User-Based Tunneling provides Aruba switches the ability to tunnel specific client traffic to an Aruba controller.

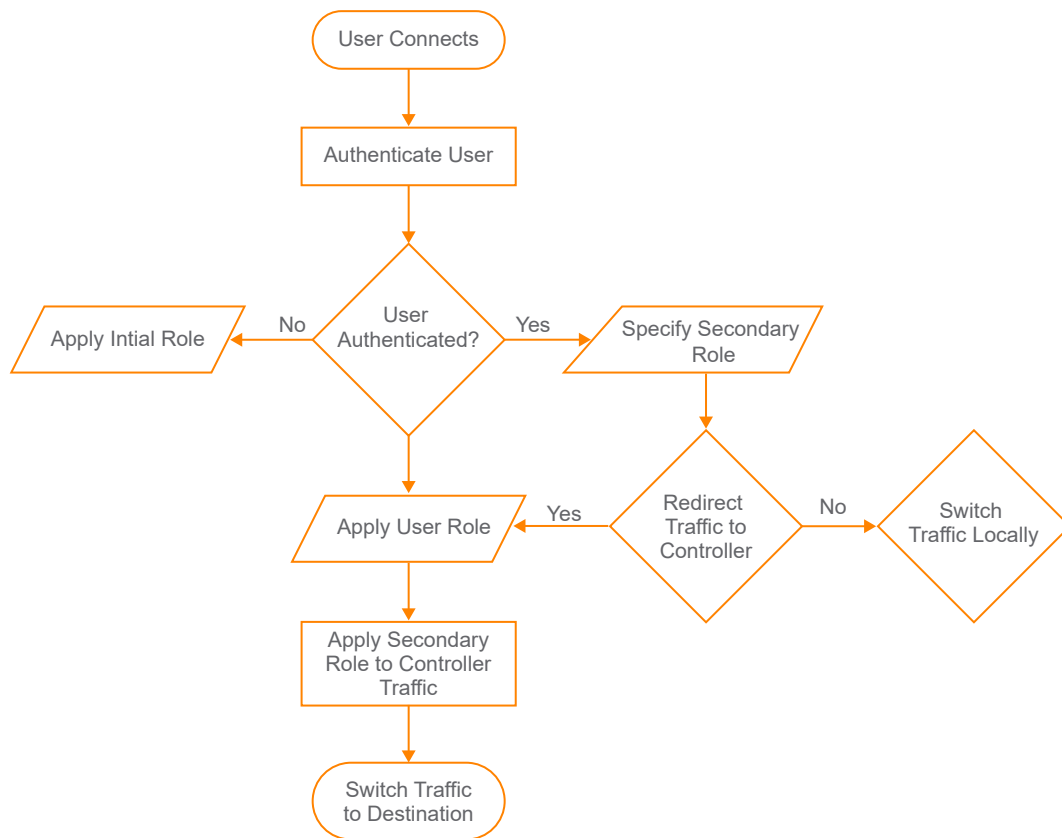
Once User-Based Tunneling is enabled, the Aruba controller provides a centralized security policy, authentication, and access control. The decision to tunnel client traffic is based on the user role. User roles redirect traffic to an Aruba controller when the tunnel status is up. A secondary role, provided by the authentication subsystem, when present in the user role authorizations, notifies the User-Based Tunnel and provides a secondary role. The communication between a User-Based Tunneling switch and the ClearPass is supported only over IPv4.

User-Based Tunneling, combined with ClearPass/LMA policies, is used to indicate if a client's traffic should be tunneled to the controller.

User Authentication Workflow

The flowchart below depicts user authentication workflow for User-Based Tunneling:

1. Authenticate user
2. Apply user role to authenticated user
3. Redirect user traffic to controller
4. Apply secondary user role to user traffic on controller



How it works

The functionality of User-Based Tunneling starts with the tunneled-node server information being discovered on the Aruba switch. User-Based Tunneling module exchanges information with the tunneled-node server to determine its reachability and discover the version details. Once the reachability is confirmed, the user-based tunneling module in the Aruba switch sends a bootstrap message to the tunneled-node server, which replies with an acknowledge message.

Creating a Tunnel

A GRE heartbeat is initiated between the Aruba switch and the managed device creating a tunnel. A GRE heartbeat is exchanged with the managed device, which is the switch anchor controller (SAC). This is the controller-IP in the `tunneled-nodeserver` command. A secondary heartbeat is also established with the standby managed device and acts as a secondary switch anchor controller (s-SAC).

Authenticating the User

As a user connects to a secure port, the Aruba switch sends a request to the RADIUS server (in this case, ClearPass), which authenticates the user and returns a user role attribute to the Aruba switch. Once the attribute containing information on which user role the user will be placed in is received by the Aruba switch, the user role that is configured locally on the Aruba switch or downloaded from the ClearPass.

Aruba User Role

A user role can contain policy, captive portal, and VLAN information. When the user role that is returned from the RADIUS server is applied to the user, the `tunneled-node-server-redirect` command to redirect traffic to a managed device can be included within the user role. When this command is executed and the user-based tunneling feature status is up, the authentication sub system notifies the user-based tunnel node module, providing a secondary role. The secondary role is the user role on the managed device where policy generally exists for tunneled users. This is where the firewall and security will be applied. This secondary-role information is

an indication to the managed device that it has to enforce additional policies to the user traffic based on policy configuration associated with the secondary role and then from the tunnel.

Tunneling to a Controller Cluster

To ensure high availability, customers can tunnel traffic to a Controller Cluster instead of just to a standalone controller. If users are tunneled to a controller cluster, the bucket map containing the mapping between a bucket of clients to the active UAC and s-UAC is populated in the controller. A value based on the client MAC address is assigned when a user is redirected to a controller. This value is then used to look up the bucket map and the client device is then anchored to that particular controller node. This secondary role information is an indication to the controller that it has to enforce additional policies to user traffic based on policy configuration associated with the secondary role. After this process, the per user tunneled node module creates a tunnel to this UAC, if not already created, and forward user traffic to that UAC. If a user role does not contain an attribute to redirect traffic to a controller, then the switch will forward the traffic locally.

Once user tunnels are established to the user anchor controllers, a PAPI (Process Application Programming Interface)-based keepalive packet is exchanged with the controllers that have users anchored to them.



NOTE: Upgrading from earlier images to 16.08 or greater with the same user role configuration is seamless and is supported. After upgrading to 16.08 or later, if Reserved VLAN mode is configured, the VLAN IDs already configured in user roles will not be used for tunneling traffic to the controller.

Downgrading is not allowed when User-Based Tunneling is operating in Reserved VLAN mode. The user cannot downgrade to pre-16.08 image if the user role lacks a VLAN configuration.

Licensing Requirements

A license is required to activate Dynamic Segmentation and if the license is not installed, controllers will not be allowed to form tunnels to Aruba switches and the feature will not be functional. The AP/switch consumes the following license types:

AP

PEFNG

RFP

WebCC

MC-VA (for VMC-MD)

The `show license-usage ap` command displays license usage for User-Based Tunnels. Licenses are consumed per switch and User-Based Tunnels will show up alongside APs for license consumption.

```
switch# show ap license-usage
```

```
AP Licenses
```

```
-----
```

Type	Number
----	-----
AP Licenses	2048
RF Protect Licenses	2048
PEF Licenses	2048
MM Licenses	2048
Controller License	True
Overall AP License Limit	2048

```
AP Usage
```

```
-----
```

Type	Count
----	-----
Active CAPs	0
Active RAPs	0

```

Remote-node APs  0
Active MUX       0
Active PUTN      1
Total APs        1

```

Remaining AP Capacity

```

-----
Type  Number
-----
CAPs  2047
RAPs  2047

```

show license client-table output on a Controller Cluster:

```

(cluster1)# show license client-table

Built-in limit: 0
License Client Table
-----
Service Type                               System Limit  Server Lic.  Used Lic.  Remaining Lic.  FeatureBit
-----
Access Points                             64            510          2          62             enabled
Next Generation Policy Enforcement Firewall Module 64            254          2          62             enabled
RF Protect                                64            510          2          62             enabled
Advanced Cryptography                     4096          512          0          512            enabled
WebCC                                      64            0            0          0              disabled
MM-VA                                      65            494          3          62             enabled
MC-VA-RW                                  64            250          0          64             disabled
MC-VA-EG                                  64            0            0          0              disabled
MC-VA-IL                                  64            0            0          0              disabled
MC-VA-JP                                  64            0            0          0              disabled
MC-VA-US                                  64            0            0          0              disabled
VIA                                        4096          0            0          0              enabled

```

show license server-table output on the Mobility Master:

```

(MM1) [mynode]# show license server-table

License Server Table for pool / profile root
-----
Service Type                               PoolSize  ExpiredLic  ActualPoolSize  UsedLic  RemainingLic  Warnings  FeatureBit
-----
Access Points                             512        0           512             18       494          None      enabled
Next Generation Policy Enforcement Firewall Module 256        0           256             18       238          None      enabled
RF Protect                                512        0           512             18       494          None      enabled
Advanced Cryptography                     512        0           512             0        512          None      enabled
WebCC                                      0          0            0              0         0           None      disabled
MM-VA                                      1000       0          1000            12       988          None      enabled
MC-VA-RW                                  250        0           250             0        250          None      enabled
MC-VA-EG                                  50         0            50              0         50          None      enabled
MC-VA-IL                                  50         0            50              0         50          None      enabled
MC-VA-JP                                  50         0            50              0         50          None      enabled
MC-VA-US                                  50         0            50              0         50          None      enabled
VIA                                        0          0            0              0         0           None      enabled

(MM1) [mynode] #

```

Dependencies

Dynamic Segmentation is supported on the following platforms and firmware versions:

Supported Deployments

- Standalone controller
- Clustered controller

Switch Platform and Firmware Support

- Aruba 3810 Switch Series
- Aruba 2930F Switch Series and Aruba 2930M Switch Series
- Aruba 5400R Switch Series (v3 blades only)
- ArubaOS-Switch 16.04 or later

Controller Firmware Support

- Standalone controller - 7000 Series and 7200 Series running ArubaOS 8.1.0.0 or later
- Clustered controller - 7000 Series and 7200 Series running ArubaOS 8.1.0.0 or later

ClearPass

ClearPass version 6.7.

AirWave

AirWave version 8.2.6.



NOTE: Even though AirWave 8.2.6 or above will work, AirWave 8.2.8 has additional enhancements to provide visibility to tunnels.

Simplifying User-Based Tunneling with Reserved VLAN

Prior to 16.08, authenticated clients were assigned to the VLANs provided by applied user role profile (configured or downloadable). The User-Based Tunnel would then get established between the switch and controller. Client traffic would be tunneled to the controller, provided the client VLAN imposed by the user role profile was created previously in both switch and controller. Otherwise, User-Based Tunneling functionality would fail.

This created an overhead for network administrators while configuring all possible client VLANs in each access switch and controller, so that the client traffic could be tunneled and segregated properly. Since all client traffic was tunneled to the controller, and controller segregated the traffic based on its configured policy (secondary user role), there was no value added for maintaining multiple VLANs for various categories of clients.

ArubaOS-Switch 16.08 allows creation of a reserved VLAN through which all tunneled traffic is taken to the controller. This simplifies deployment of User-Based Tunneling. A fixed/reserved VLAN is configured under tunneled profile, which is assigned to all tunneled clients and the same VLAN is used while tunneling client traffic to the controller. Thus, to use a reserved VLAN, it is not required to preconfigure VLANs configured under user role in switch, prior to initiating client authentication. When a reserved VLAN is configured, if it is not already present on the switch, it will be created and traffic from all clients on the switch will go through the reserved VLAN. By adding a single line configuration to tunneled-node command, existing users can migrate to the Reserved VLAN mode without changing any other configuration.

Differences between User-Based Tunnels with and without Reserved VLAN:

User-Based Tunnels without Reserved VLAN	User-Based Tunnels with Reserved VLAN
Tunnel VLANs should be statically configured on all switches.	Tunnel VLANs need not be statically configured on all switches.
User role should have VLAN attribute configured.	User role need not have VLAN attribute configured.
Multicast traffic is replicated on the switch.	Multicast traffic is replicated on the controller.
VLANs need to be synchronized between the switch and the controller.	VLANs need not be synchronized between the switch and the controller.

Operating Notes:

- The reserved VLAN is used exclusively for User-Based Tunneling feature. Deletion of this VLAN is not allowed outside of tunneled profile configuration.
- The VLANs imposed by user role after successful client authentication is ignored, and the reserved VLAN is used for on-boarding the tunneled clients.
- Controller segregates tunneled client traffic based on assigned secondary role and unicasts the multicast/broadcast traffic to individual clients through UAC tunnel.

- SAC multicast tunnels are no longer used in reserved VLAN mode.
- The reserved VLAN configuration on the controller is optional.
- The default VLAN cannot be configured as a reserved VLAN.
- Migration from Port-Based Tunneling to User-Based Tunneling requires a disable and then, a re-enable of tunneling.
- The user role for tunneled clients will not be allowed to contain untagged and tagged VLAN such as normal clients.

Configuration and show commands

Commands to configure a tunneled node server on the switch

Tunneled node configuration

Commands necessary to configure a tunneled node server for a tunneled node Aruba switch:

- `switch(config)#tunneled-node-server`
- `switch(tunneled-node-server)# controller-ip <IP-ADDR | IPV6-ADDR>`
- **Optional:** `switch(tunneled-node-server)# backup-controller-ip <IP-ADDR | IPV6-ADDR>`
- **Optional:** `switch(tunneled-node-server)# keepalive interval <Integer>`
- `switch(tunneled-node-server)# mode role-based reserved-vlan <vlan-id>`
- `switch(tunneled-node-server)# enable`



NOTE: IPv6 configurations are only available when the switch is operating in role-based mode (User-Based Tunneling).

tunneled-node-server

Syntax

```
tunneled-node-server [controller-ip <IP-ADDR|IPv6-ADDR> | backup-controller-ip
<IP-ADDR|IPv6-ADDR> | [keepalive <TIMEOUT>] | enable | mode role-based {reserved-vlan <VLAN-ID>}]
```

```
no tunneled-node-server [controller-ip <IP-ADDR|IPv6-ADDR> | backup-controller-ip
<IP-ADDR|IPv6-ADDR> | [keepalive <TIMEOUT>] | enable | mode role-based {reserved-vlan <VLAN-ID>}]
```

Description

Configure tunneled node server information.

The no form of the command removes the tunneled node server configuration.

Options

controller-IP

Configure the controller IP address for the tunneled node. Both IPv4 and IPv6 are supported.

backup-controller-IP

Configure the backup controller IP address for the tunneled node. Both IPv4 and IPv6 are supported.

keepalive

Configure the keepalive timeout for the tunneled node in seconds [1-40]. The default is 8 seconds.

enable

Enter the manager command context.

mode role-based

Specifies the tunneled node server mode as role based.

mode role-based reserved-vlan

Specifies the VLAN used as tunneled node server reserved VLAN.

Examples

```
switch(config)# tunneled-node-server controller-ip 15.255.133.148
switch(config)# tunneled-node-server backup-controller-ip 15.255.133.148
switch(config)# tunneled-node-server keepalive 40
```

tunneled-node-server-redirect

Syntax

```
tunneled-node-server-redirect [secondary-role <ROLE-NAME>]

no tunneled-node-server-redirect [secondary-role <ROLE-NAME>]
```

Description

Configures traffic redirect to user-based tunnel. Secondary role is the new user role that will be applied to the tunneled traffic by the controller.

The **no** form of this command stops the traffic re-direction to the controller. Secondary role is the new user role that will be applied to the tunneled traffic by the controller.

Command context

user-role

Parameters

secondary-role <ROLE-NAME>

Specifies the secondary role applied on the user traffic by the controller.

Example

```
switch(config)# aaa authorization user-role name testrole

switch(user-role)#
  tunneled-node-server-redirect
  tunneled-node-server
```

The **tunneled-node-server-redirect** attribute instructs the switch to redirect all traffic with user-role “testrole” to the controller. The secondary-role “authenticated” specified with the **redirect** attribute should be configured and present on the controller. In versions 16.07 and earlier, the client VLAN on the switch needs to be present on the Controller. With the Reserved VLAN mode introduced in 16.08, this is not required.

```
class ipv4 "testclass"
  10 match ip 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255
  20 match tcp 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255
  exit
policy user "testpolicy"
  10 class ipv4 "testclass" action permit
```

```

exit
aaa authorization user-role name "testrole"
  policy "testpolicy"
  vlan-id 100
  tunneled-node-server-redirect secondary-role "authenticated"
exit

```



NOTE: When the `reserved-vlan` option is used, the applied VLAN ID under the user-role "testrole" will not be considered. This is because the traffic will be redirected to the controller using `reserved-vlan`, and not the one configured on the switch.

Show the tunneled-node-server status for all users.

```
switch-PoEP# show tunneled-node-users all
```

PORT	MAC-ADDRESS	TUNNEL-STATUS	SECONDARY-USERROLE	FAILURE-REASON
1	000ffe-c8ce92	UP	authenticated	
5	082e5f-263518	UP	authenticated	



NOTE: Starting from 16.08, the CLI constraint while configuring `tunneled-node-server-redirect` attribute without configuring VLAN ID has been removed.

IP source interface

Syntax

```

switch(config)# ip source-interface tunneled-node-server
[<IP_ADDRESS> | loopback <LOOPBACK_INTERFACE> | vlan <VLAN_ID>]

```

Description

Defines source IP address or interface for specified protocol.



NOTE:

- If interface has multiple addresses, lowest address is used.
- Protocols not configured with a specific address will use the IP address of outbound interface as source.

Command context

```
ip source-interface
```

Parameters

<IP_ADDRESS>

Specifies IP address.

<LOOPBACK_INTERFACE>

Specifies a loopback interface.

<VLAN_ID>

Specifies VLAN ID.

Example

Running configuration:



NOTE: Requires (config)#show run context:

```
; J9850A Configuration Editor; Created on release #KB.16.05.0000x
; Ver #12:08.1f.fb.7f.bf.bb.ff.7c.59.fc.7b.ff.ff.fc.ff.ff.3f.ef:f4
hostname "Anay5400R"
module A type j9989a
module B type j9986a
module C type j9989a
module D type j9986a
module E type j9986a
module F type j9986a
class ipv4 "testclass"
    10 match ip 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255
    20 match tcp 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255
    exit
policy user "testpolicy"
    10 class ipv4 "testclass" action permit
    exit
radius-server host 90.90.90.1
ip routing
ip source-interface tunneled-node-server loopback 1
tunneled-node-server
    controller-ip 21.1.1.2
    mode role-based
    exit
```

Reserved VLAN

Syntax

```
tunneled-node-server mode role-based reserved-vlan <VLAN-ID>
```

```
no tunneled-node-server mode role-based reserved-vlan <VLAN-ID>
```

Description

Enable tunneled node server with a reserved VLAN on which all client traffic is sent to the controller.

Example

To configure a tunneled node server in role-based reserved VLAN mode:

```
switch(tunneled-node-server)# mode
port-based          Configure tunneled node server mode as port based.
role-based          Configure tunneled node server mode as role based.

switch(tunneled-node-server)# mode role-based
reserved-vlan       Configure VLAN Mode as No-VLAN, switch without tunneled-node client's
vlan.

switch(tunneled-node-server)# mode role-based reserved-vlan
VLAN-ID             Configure VLAN to be created and reserved for tunneled-node clients.
```

```
switch(tunneled-node-server)# mode role-based reserved-vlan <VLAN-ID>
```

show tunneled-node-server output:

```
switch(config)# show tunneled-node-server
Tunneled Node Server Information
  State                               : Enabled
  Primary Controller                   : 10.0.0.1
  Backup Controller                    :
  Keepalive Interval (seconds)        : 8
```

Mode	: Role-based
Vlan-Mode	: no-vlan/vlan-extend
Reserved-VLAN	: reserved-VID/0

```
switch(config)# show vlan <reserved-vid>
```

VLAN ID	Name	Status	Voice	Jumbo
<VID>	PUTN-ReservedVLAN	Port-based	No	No

Show commands

show user-role

Syntax

```
show user-role <role-name>
```

Description

Displays the user role information for the specified user role name.

Command context

manager or operator

Parameters

<role-name>

Specifies the user role name.

Examples

Shows the user role by specific name.

```
switch# show user-role testrole
```

User Role Information

Name	: testrole
Type	: local
Reauthentication Period (seconds)	: 0
Cached Reauth Period (seconds)	: 0
Logoff Period (seconds)	: 300
Untagged VLAN	: 100
Tagged VLAN	:
Captive Portal Profile	:
Policy	:
Tunnelednode Server Redirect	: Enabled
Secondary Role Name	: XYZ
Device Attributes	: Disabled

```
switch#
```

show vlan

Syntax

```
show vlan <reserved-vid>
```

Description

Display the details of reserved VLAN ID.

Command context

manager

Parameters

<reserved-vid>

Specifies the reserved VLAN ID.

Examples

```
switch(config)# show vlan <reserved-vid>

Status and Counters - VLAN Information - VLAN <reserved-vid>

VLAN ID : <reserved-vid>
Name      : TUNNELED_NODE_SERVER_RESERVED
Status    : Port-based
Voice     : No
Jumbo     : No
Private VLAN : none
Associated Primary VID      : none
Associated Secondary VIDs   : none

Port Information Mode      Unknown VLAN Status
-----
```



NOTE: The user will not be able to delete the reserved VLAN. Reserved VLAN will be automatically removed once the reserved-vlan parameter is removed from tunneled-node configuration.

show tunneled-node-server

Syntax

```
show tunneled-node-server [information | statistics <controller> | state <controller>]
```

Description

Shows the tunneled-node-server information, statistics, or state.



NOTE: Information for SAC and SSAC Switch Anchor Controller (SAC), Standby Anchor Controller (SSAC) and User Anchor Controller (UAC) is available in the ArubaOS-Switch Controller Guide at <https://support.arubanetworks.com/>.

Command context

manager or operator

Parameters

information

Specifies tunneled-node-server information, node-list, and the bucket map information.

statistics <controller>

Specifies the data plane statistics with respect to a controller for each port.

state <controller>

Specifies the data plane state with respect to a controller.

Example

```
switch(config)# show tunneled-node-server
```

Tunneled Node Server Information

```
State : Enabled
Primary Controller : 10.10.10.148
Backup Controller : 10.10.10.149
Keepalive Interval (seconds) : 1
Mode : Role-based
Vlan-Mode : vlan-extend-disable
Reserved-Vlan : 1111
```

```
switch# show tunneled-node-server state
```

Local Master Server (LMS) State

LMS Type	IP Address	State	Capability	Role
Primary	: 10.10.10.148	Complete	Per User	Operational Primary
Secondary	: 10.10.10.149	Complete	Per User	Operational Secondary

Switch Anchor Controller (SAC) State

	IP Address	Mac Address	State
SAC	: 10.10.10.148	001ale-037520	Registered

User Anchor Controller (UAC) : 10.10.10.148

User	Port	VLAN	State	Bucket ID
00000f-000200	1/24	100	Registered	2

```
switch# show tunneled-node-server statistics
```

Tunneled Node Statistics

Control Plane Statistics

SAC	: 10.10.10.148		
Bootstrap Tx	: 1	Bootstrap Rx	: 1
Nodelist Rx	: 0	Nodelist Ackd	: 0
Bucketmap Rx	: 0	Bucketmap Ackd	: 0
Failover Tx	: 0	Failover Ackd Tx	: 0
Unbootstrap Tx	: 0	Unbootstrap Ackd Tx	: 0
Heartbeat Tx	: 102	Heartbeat Rx	: 102
UAC	: 10.10.10.148		
Bootstrap Tx	: 1	Bootstrap Ack	: 1
Unbootstrap Tx	: 0	Unbootstrap Ack	: 0
Keepalive Tx	: 0	Keepalive Ack	: 0

Data Plane Statistics

SAC tunnel Rx	: 102		
MTU violation Drop	: 0		
Fragmented Packets Dropped (Rx)	: 0		
Packets to Non-Existent Tunnel	: 0		
UAC		Packets Tx	Packets Rx
10.10.10.148		5463693	331

User Statistics

UAC
10.10.10.148

User Count
1

When the controller is a standalone:

```
switch(eth-1/24)# show tunneled-node-server information
```

SAC Information

SAC : 10.10.10.148
Standby-SAC :

UAC List Information

Cluster Name :
Cluster Status : Disabled

[0] ::	10.10.10.148	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0
[4] ::	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0
[8] ::	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0

Bucket Map Information

Bucket Name :

Bucket Map Active : [0 .. 255]

[0] ::	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)
[6] ::	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)
[12] ::	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)
[18] ::	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)
[24] ::	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)
[30] ::	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)
[36] ::	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)
[42] ::	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)
[48] ::	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)
[54] ::	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)
[60] ::	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)
[66] ::	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)
[72] ::	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)
[78] ::	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)
[84] ::	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)
[90] ::	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)
[96] ::	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)
[102] ::	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)
[108] ::	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)
[114] ::	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)
[120] ::	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)
[126] ::	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)
[132] ::	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)	(0, -1, 1)

When the controller is a cluster:

```
switch$ show tunneled-node-server information
```

SAC Information

SAC : 10.10.10.147
Standby-SAC : 10.10.10.146

UAC List Information

Cluster Name : 3NodeProfile
Cluster Status : Enabled


```
[0] :: 10.10.10.147 10.10.10.146 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
[4] :: 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
[8] :: 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
```

Bucket Map Information

Bucket Name : TUNNELED_NODE_ESSID

Bucket Map Active : [0.. 255]

```
[ 0] :: (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1)
[ 6] :: (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1)
[12] :: (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1)
[18] :: (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1)
[24] :: (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1)
[30] :: (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1)
[36] :: (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1)
[42] :: (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1)
[48] :: (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1)
[54] :: (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1)
[60] :: (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1)
[66] :: (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1)
[72] :: (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1)
[78] :: (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1)
[84] :: (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1)
[90] :: (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1)
[96] :: (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1)
[102] :: (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1)
[108] :: (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1)
[114] :: (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1)
[120] :: (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1)
[126] :: (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1)
[132] :: (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1)
[138] :: (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1)
[144] :: (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1)
[150] :: (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1)
[156] :: (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1)
[162] :: (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1) (0, 1, 1) (1, 0, 1)
```

show tunneled-node-users

Syntax

```
show tunneled-node-users [all | count | down | mac <MAC-ADDRESS> | port <PORT-ADDR> | up ]
```

Description

Shows the status of a client after configuring and enabling `tunneled-node-server-redirect`.

Command context

manager or operator

Parameters

<ALL>

Specifies all clients and their status.

<COUNT>

Specifies the total number of clients configured to tunnel their traffic to the controller.

<DOWN>

Specifies the clients which are not able to tunnel their traffic.

PORT <PORT-ADDR>

Specifies the port client status.

MAC <MAC-ADDRESS>

Specifies the client status based on the MAC address desired by the user.

<UP>

Displays the client status which are having their tunnels up and running.

Example

```
switch(config)# show tunneled-node-users
all           Displays all the clients and their status.
count        Displays the total number of clients configured to
             tunnel their traffic to the controller.
down         Displays the clients which are not able to tunnel their
             traffic.
mac          Displays the client status based on the MAC address
             desired by the user.
port         Displays the client status of the particular port
             desired by the user.
up           Displays the client status which are having their
             tunnels up and running
```

```
switch(config)# show tunneled-node-users all
```

PORT	MAC-ADDRESS	TUNNEL-STATUS	SECONDARY-USERROLE	FAILURE-REASON
123	XYZ123	UP	ROLE NAME1	
234	XYZ1234	DOWN	ROLE NAME2	UAC_DOWN

Show the total number of clients configured with the user-based tunneled-node.

```
switch(config)# show tunneled-node-users count
```

Total number of clients configured with user-based tunneled node: 2

Show the port access clients in detail.

```
switch# show port-access clients
```

Downloaded user roles are preceded by *
Port Access Client Status

Port	Client Name	MAC Address	IP Address	User Role	Type	VLAN
1/7	2c41387f35b9	2c4138-7f35b9	n/a	Voice_HPE	MAC	171
1/7	d48564940c46	d48564-940c46	n/a	*DUR_prof2_PUT...	MAC	100
1/16	durl	001517-857121	n/a	*DUR_prof2_PUT...	8021X	100
1/17	durl	d48564-a8afa0	n/a	*DUR_prof2_PUT...	8021X	100
3/7	2c41387fe7f8	2c4138-7fe7f8	n/a	Voice_HPE	MAC	171
3/7	e8393537b4a5	e83935-37b4a5	n/a	*DUR_prof2_PUT...	MAC	100

Show the detailed port-access clients for port 1/7.

```
switch# show port-access clients detailed 1/7
```

Port Access Client Status Detail

Client Base Details :
Port : 1/7 Authentication Type : mac-based

```

Client Status      : authenticated      Session Time       : 18972 seconds
Client Name       : 2c41387f35b9      Session Timeout    : 0 seconds
MAC Address       : 2c4138-7f35b9
IP                : n/a

```

Downloaded user roles are preceded by *
User Role Information

```

Name              : Voice_HPE
Type              :
Reauthentication Period (seconds) : 0
Untagged VLAN     : 171
Tagged VLANs      :
Captive Portal Profile :
Policy            :
Tunnelednode Server Redirect : Disabled
Secondary Role Name :

```

```

Client Base Details :
Port                : 1/7              Authentication Type : mac-based
Client Status      : authenticated      Session Time       : 18947 seconds
Client Name       : d48564940c46      Session Timeout    : 0 seconds
MAC Address       : d48564-940c46
IP                : n/a

```

Downloaded user roles are preceded by *
User Role Information

```

Name              : *DUR_prof2_PUTN-3037-12
Type              : downloaded
Reauthentication Period (seconds) : 0
Untagged VLAN     : 100
Tagged VLANs      :
Captive Portal Profile :
Policy            : upol2_DUR_prof2_PUTN-3037-12

```

```

Statements for policy "upol2_DUR_prof2_PUTN-3037-12"
policy user "upol2_DUR_prof2_PUTN-3037-12"
    10 class ipv4 "remark2_DUR_prof2_PUTN-3037-12" action rate-limit kbps 1000000 action priority 2 action permit
    exit

```

```

Statements for class IPv4 "remark2_DUR_prof2_PUTN-3037-12"
class ipv4 "remark2_DUR_prof2_PUTN-3037-12"
    10 match ip 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255
    exit

```

```

Tunnelednode Server Redirect : Enabled
Secondary Role Name          : authenticated

```

Commands to configure VLAN ID in user role

Local user roles allow user-based policy configuration local to an Aruba switch. Within the user role configuration, use the `tunneled-node-server-redirect` command to tunnel traffic to a Mobility Controller. When this command is processed, the tunnel is formed and applied to the secondary role (user role) that exists on the Mobility Controller.

```

switch(user-role)# vlan-id
Usage: [no] vlan-id <VLAN_ID>

```

Description: Set the untagged VLAN that users will be assigned to.

```

switch(user-role)$ tunneled-node-server-redirect
Usage: [no] tunneled-node-server-redirect [secondary-role <ROLE_NAME>]

```

Description: Configures traffic redirect to user-based tunnel. Secondary role is the new user role that will be applied to the tunneled traffic by the controller.



IMPORTANT: The authenticated secondary-role specified with the redirect attribute should be configured and present on the Mobility Controller.



IMPORTANT: VLAN change for a current User-Based Tunneled client should be done by changing a user role with a new untagged VLAN and doing a port bounce (to refresh client IP).

Tunneled Node profile on a Mobility Controller and Cluster

Use the following commands to configure a secondary user role on the Mobility Controller:

```
switch(config)# user-role authenticated
access-list session global-sacl
access-list session apprf-authenticated-sacl
access-list session ra-guard
access-list session allowall
access-list session v6-allowall
```

If the managed device is in a cluster, deploy the following configuration on the Mobility Master:

```
lc-cluster group-profile "hp2node"
controller 10.0.102.6
controller 10.0.102.218
(ArubaMM) [mm] (config) #cd /md/00:1a:1e:02:a4:c0
(ArubaMM) [00:1a:1e:02:a4:c0] (config) #lc-cluster group-membership hp2node
(ArubaMM) [mm] (config) #cd /md/00:1a:1e:02:a6:40
(ArubaMM) [00:1a:1e:02:a6:40] (config) #lc-cluster group-membership hp2node
(ArubaMM) (config) #show configuration node-hierarchy
Default-node is not configured. Autopark is disabled.
Configuration node hierarchy
-----
Config Node Type
-----
/ System
/md System
/md/00:1a:1e:02:a4:c0 Device
/md/00:1a:1e:02:a6:40 Device
/mm System
/mm/mynode System
```



NOTE: Configure a cluster profile, specify the managed device IP addresses, and map the managed devices to the cluster profile.

```
(ArubaMM) [mynode] (config) #show switches
All Switches
-----
IP Address IPv6 Address Name Location Type Model Version Status Configuration State Config
Sync Time (sec) Config ID
-----
-----
15.212.178.108 None ArubaMM Building1.floor1 master ArubaMM 8.0.0.0_55647 up UPDATE SUCCESSFUL
0 0
10.0.102.218 None C2 Building1.floor1 MD Aruba7210 8.0.0.0-hp-interop_0000 up UNK
(00:1a:1e:02:a6:40) N/A N/A
10.0.102.6 None C1 Building1.floor1 MD Aruba7210 8.0.0.0-hp-interop_0000 up UNK
(00:1a:1e:02:a4:c0) N/A N/A
```

Verify that all managed devices are added and the status is **Update Successful**.

Using User Roles with User-Based Tunneling

User-Based Tunnels can also be used with Local User Roles and any third-party RADIUS server. This requires that the user roles be preconfigured on the switch. For truly colorless and dynamic policy management, Aruba recommends the use of ClearPass to dynamically send policies to both the switch and controller using Downloadable User Roles along with User-Based Tunneling.

- There are two roles required when using Downloadable User Roles with User-Based Tunneling:

Primary user role: Configured on switch

Secondary user role: Configured on controller

- Both primary and secondary role can be either statically configured or downloaded from the ClearPass.



NOTE: This feature is only available for:

- ClearPass 6.7.0 onward
- Aruba Controller Version 8.3.0 onward
 - To support Downloadable User Roles on controller, a new VSA (HP-CPPM-Secondary-Role) is introduced in ClearPass 6.7.0, which contains the secondary user role name.
 - To use the Reserved VLAN mode in 16.08, a minimum version of 8.4 is required on the Controller.

The Aruba switch downloads user policies from ClearPass using downloadable user roles. This makes the ClearPass a centralized point to administer user policy to the access switch and minimize user configuration on the Aruba switch. For downloadable user roles to work appropriately, the signing Certificate Authority (CA) of the ClearPass HTTPS certificate must be added to the Aruba switch and marked as trusted. With ArubaOS-Switch 16.08, there is an automated way to download the CA certificate of ClearPass. Please refer to the *Access Security Guide* on using this feature.

ClearPass Sample Configuration

```
aaa authorization user-role name "<role-name>"
vlan-id <vlan id> tunneled-node-server-redirect VSA
```

When the primary user role is downloaded onto the switch and the secondary user role is downloaded onto the controller:

Enforcement Profiles - Test_Switch_DUR

Summary		Profile	Attributes
Profile:			
Name:	Test_Switch_DUR		
Description:	Test_Switch_DUR		
Type:	RADIUS		
Action:	Accept		
Device Group List:	-		
Product:	ArubaOS-Switch		
Attributes:			
Type	Name		Value
1. Radius:Hewlett-Packard-Enterprise	HPE-CPPM-Role	=	aaa authorization user-role name "testcprole104" vlan-id 5 tunneled-node-server-redirect VSA exit
2. Radius:Hewlett-Packard-Enterprise	HPE-CPPM-Secondary-Role	=	Test_Switch_DUR

When the primary user role is downloaded onto the switch and the secondary user role is manually configured on the controller (not sent through VSA):



Type	Name	Value
1. Radius:Hewlett-Packard-Enterprise	HPE-CPPM-Role	aaa authorization user-role name "netdestrole" vlan-id 100 tunnelled-node-server-redirect secondary-role "authenticated" logoff-period 300 device admin-edge-port exit exit



NOTE: For more information on user roles, see *Access Security Guide for ArubaOS-Switch* for your switch.

User-Based Tunneling in v6 networks

Starting with 16.08, User-Based Tunnels are supported in IPv6 environments where all the components forming tunnels are reachable over IPv6. This is important for users who are in the process of migrating from IPv4 to IPv6-only environments. To support those users, User-Based Tunnels will work not only in IPv6-only environments but also hybrid environments where some components run IPv4 while others run IPv6.

The switch, controller, and AirWave can operate in an IPv6-only environment while ClearPass, as of 6.7, still has to be reachable over IPv4 (but supports v4 and v6 clients). Mixed mode is also supported, where one controller can be reachable through v4 and the backup controller can be reachable through IPv6, and the deployment supports clients with dual stacks (v4/v6). Using User-Based Tunnels in a IPv6 network is similar in setup and the configuration and show command covered in earlier sections work for IPv4 as well as IPv6 environments.

PAPI security

Protocol Application Programming Interface (PAPI)

The PAPI Enhanced Security configuration provides protection to Aruba devices, AirWave, and ALE against malicious users sending fake messages that results in security challenges.

Starting from ArubaOS-Switch version 16.02, a minor security enhancement has been made to Protocol Application Programming Interface (PAPI) messages. Protocol Application Programming Interface endpoint authenticates the sender by performing a check of the incoming messages using MD5 (hash). All PAPI endpoints — APs, Controllers, Mobility Access Switches, AirWave, and ALE — must use the same secret key. The switch software currently uses a fixed key to calculate the MD5 digest and cooperate with the controller for PAPI enhanced security.



NOTE: To use this functionality, the PAPI security profile must be configured on the controller. For more information on the Aruba controller, see the [Aruba Networks Controller Configuration Manual](#).

PAPI configurable secret key

To support enhanced PAPI security, a command is available to configure a MD5 secret key.

papi-security

Syntax

```
switch(config)# papi-security
```

Description

Configure MD5 key for enhanced PAPI security.

Parameters

enhanced-security

The enhanced-security CLI must be enabled in Aruba controller for the connection to be truly secured.

<KEY-STR>

Configure MD5 key for enhanced PAPI security using a key-string parameter.

<KEY-VALUE>

Configure MD5 key for enhanced papi security using a key-value parameter.

Restrictions

- To view the status of the PAPI security, using the `show run` command with the option `include credentials` enabled, the PAPI security key will show in the output as an encrypted form.
- Key length has to be between 10-64.
- By default the enhanced-security is disabled.
- When enhanced-security mode is disabled, any AP can obtain the current shared secret key.
- When enhanced-security mode is enabled, an AP is not updated with the new shared secret key unless the AP knows the previous key and the AP is updated with the new key within one hour of the key creation.
- Key length has to be between 10-64 or the following message will appear:

```
Minimum key-value length allowed is 10 characters and maximum allowed is 64
characters.
```

Usage

```
Switch(config)# papi-security key-value <KEY-VALUE>
Switch(config)# [no] papi-security <KEY-VALUE>
```

papi-security key-value

```
Switch(config)# papi-security key-value TestKey12345678
Switch(config)# no papi-security key-value
```

```
Switch(config)# papi-security key-value Test
Minimum key-value length allowed is 10 characters and maximum allowed is 64 characters.
```

show run with encrypted key

```
Switch(config)# show run
Running configuration:
;J9576A Configuration Editor
;Created on release #KA.16.02.0000x
;Ver #0e:01.f0.92.34.5f.3c.6b.fb.ff.fd.ff.ff.3f.ef:78
```

```
;encrypt-cred +NXT3w7ky2IXNXadlJb1S/1ZRi/o73Qq28XXcLkSCZq9PU30Kl+KMLMva8rQri5g

hostname "Switch"
module 1 type j9576y
module 2 type j9576x
encrypt-credentials
papi-security encrypted-key <"encrypted-key">
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
snmpv3 engineid "00:00:00:0b:00:00:50:65:f3:b4:a6:c0"
oobm
ip address dhcp-bootp
exit

vlan 1
name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
untagged 1-52
ip address dhcp-bootp
exit

activate provision disable
```

show run with include key

```
show run
Running configuration:
; J9576A Configuration Editor
; Created on release #KA.16.02.0000x
; Ver#0e:01.f0.92.34.5f.3c.6b.fb.ff.fd.ff.ff.3f.ef:78

hostname "Switch"
module 1 type j9576y
module 2 type j9576x
include-credentials
papi-security key-value <"key">
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
snmpv3 engineid "00:00:00:0b:00:00:50:65:f3:b4:a6:c0"
oobm
ip address dhcp-bootp
exit

vlan 1
name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
untagged 1-52
ip address dhcp-bootp
exit

activate provision disable
```

Frequently Asked Questions

Following is a list of frequently asked questions and answers relating to per user tunnel node.

In a controller cluster, how does the switch determine which controller to send the user traffic to?

The SAC sends a bucket-map to the switch during the switch bootstrap process. This map is an array of 256 entries with each entry containing the active and standby controller to use. A user's MAC address is hashed into this table to get the controller to tunnel the user traffic to.

When is the heartbeat started to SAC and s-SAC?

Heartbeat is over a GRE tunnel with a specific GRE key (0xDEED). This is initiated with SAC and s-SAC immediately after a switch bootstrap is complete.

What happens when heartbeat to SAC fails?

A heartbeat failure triggers the switch to:

- Remove users anchored to the SAC.
- Fail over to the s-SAC (Example: s-SAC now becomes the new SAC).

What happens when the keepalive to a UAC fails?

The users anchored to the UAC are removed and a message is logged to the same effect in the event log.

Why should jumbo frames be enabled at the switch?

Jumbo frames have to be enabled at the controller uplink VLAN as well as the client VLAN. The GRE tunnel adds an effective 46 bytes to every user packet. The effective tunnel MTU = uplink VLAN MTU -46 bytes for a 1500 MTU, the tunnel MTU gets to be 1454 bytes. This means that a user can send up to only 1,454 bytes of frames. For users to send up to 1500 (default) MTU, jumbo frames need to be enabled.

What happens when a UAC controller goes down?

A node list update is sent by the SAC to the switch to inform that a controller went down. All users anchored to that controller are removed (unbootstrapped). After some time, the controller sends a bucket map update to the switch. The switch then processes the bucket map update and anchors users to the respective controller (standby) as per the bucket map. The users will then be switched over to s-UAC. The s-UAC becomes the new UAC, and is assigned after the bucket map update from SAC.



NOTE: It is important to verify that the bucket map on switch and controller is the same. Also, it should be verified that users are anchored to the right controller identified in the bucket map on both the switch and controller.

What happens when a SAC controller goes down?

A node list update is sent by s-SAC to switch. Since the node list is received from the s-SAC and not the SAC, the switch considers that SAC is down and initiates a failover to s-SAC. Also, the switch removes all users anchored to SAC. Once s-SAC acknowledges the failover request, the s-SAC becomes the new active SAC. The new Active SAC then sends a node list update and bucket map update. In the node list update, the new s-SAC will be provided. The switch will then bootstrap and initiate a heartbeat with new s-SAC. The switch then processes the bucket map update and anchors users to respective controllers.



NOTE: It is important to verify that the bucket map on switch and controller is the same. Also, it should be verified that users are anchored to the right controller identified in the bucket map on both the switch and controller.

What happens when the s-SAC controller goes down?

A node list update is sent by the SAC to the switch. The switch stops the heartbeat with the s-SAC which has gone down and removes all users anchored to it. The switch then initiates a bootstrap to a new s-SAC provided in the node list update. Once a bootstrap acknowledgment is received, the switch starts a heartbeat to the new s-SAC. After some time, the SAC will send a bucket map update. The switch then processes the update and anchors users to their respective controllers.



NOTE: It is important to verify that the bucket map on the switch and controller is the same. Also, it should be verified that users are anchored to the appropriate controller according to the bucket map on both the switch and controller.

What do the states in show tunneled-node-server state mean?

- Registering - Bootstrapping
- Registered - Bootstrapped
- Unregistering – Unbootstrapping

What happens when user-role attributes change?

A rebootstrap is initiated for users applied within that role containing updated role attributes in the bootstrap packet. These users move to registering state. Once an acknowledgment is received from the controller, users then move to registering state. This applies only to VLAN and secondary role changes.

What happens on a client “MAC address move”?

A rebootstrap is initiated for the client. Only after an acknowledgment from the controller is received, the client traffic begins to be tunneled.

What is the recommendation for Per User Tunnel Node client VLAN configuration?

- Tunneled user client VLAN has to be present at the per user tunneled node switch.
- There is no need to specifically add tunneled user ports to this VLAN. Switch AAA takes care of this through MAC-Based VLANs.
- The uplink to the controller port should NOT be part of this VLAN.
- The uplink to the controller VLAN and the tunneled users VLAN cannot be same.

A user is registered at the switch but does not respond to a ping. How do I debug?

- Check that the user roles and VLANs are correctly configured at the switch as well as the controller.
- Check that the IP MTU is set to $\geq (1500+46)$ at all the switches in the path from User-Based Tunneling switch to the controller.

There are two parts to the solution, and the part that is failing should be identified.

- To check if the switch is tunneling the traffic, run the `show tunneled-node-server statistics` command to check if the user traffic is being received and transmitted. If the counters do not increment, then the switch configuration needs to be investigated.
- To check if the Mobility Controller is tunneling traffic, run the `show datapath tunnel` to see if the Encaps and Decaps counters increase.

A packet trace of traffic sent from and received at the switch uplink to the controller can also be useful, GRE encapsulated packets are what will be of interest.

The Time Domain Reflectometry (TDR) or Cable Diagnostics is a new port feature supported on Aruba 3810M switches and Aruba 5400R v3 blades. TDR is introduced to detect cable faults on 100BASE-TX and 1000BASE-T ports.

Supported Platforms

Aruba 2930F switches

Aruba 3810M switches

Aruba 5400R v3 blades (J9986A, J9987A, J9989A, J9990A, J9991A [applicable only for ports 1–20, rest of the four ports are Smart Rate ports], and J9992A)

Virtual cable testing

The Virtual Cable Test (VCT) uses the same command as TDR. It is applicable only for GigT transceivers like copper transceiver (J8177C—ProCurve Gigabit 1000Base-T Mini-GBIC). The VCT test results include distance to the fault, but not the cable length.

Cable Diagnostics

Syntax

```
test cable-diagnostics <PORT-LIST>
```

Description

Use the command to test for cable faults.

Option

PORT-LIST

Specify copper port as a input port number.

Test cable-diagnostics C21

```
test cable-diagnostics C21
```

The 'test cable-diagnostics' command will cause a loss of link and will take a few seconds per interface to complete. Continue [Y/N]? y

MDI Port	Pair	Cable Status	Distance to Fault	Pair Skew	Pair Polarity	MDI Mode
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
C21	1-2	Open	0 m	0 ns		
	3-6	Open	0 m	0 ns		
	4-5	Open	0 m	0 ns		
	7-8	Open	1 m	0 ns		

Test cable-diagnostics 1/1-1/10

```
switch# test cable-diagnostics 1/1-1/10
```

This command will cause a loss of link on all tested ports and will take several seconds per port to complete. Use the 'show cable-diagnostics' command to view the results.

Continue (y/n)? Y

```
switch# show cable-diagnostics 1/1-1/10
```

Cable Diagnostic Status - Copper Ports

Port	MDI Pair	Cable Status	Cable Length or Distance to Fault
1/1	1-2	OK	5m
	3-6	OK	5m
	4-5	OK	7m
	7-8	OK	7m
1/2	1-2	OK	7m
	3-6	OK	7m
	4-5	OK	7m
	7-8	OK	7m
1/3	1-2	OK	5m
	3-6	OK	7m
	4-5	OK	5m
	7-8	OK	7m
1/4	1-2	OK	7m
	3-6	OK	7m
	4-5	OK	7m
	7-8	OK	5m
1/5	1-2	OK	4m
	3-6	OK	5m
	4-5	OK	5m
	7-8	OK	4m
1/6	1-2	OK	4m
	3-6	OK	4m
	4-5	OK	4m
	7-8	OK	4m
1/7	1-2	OK	5m
	3-6	OK	4m
	4-5	OK	5m
	7-8	OK	4m
1/8	1-2	OK	4m
	3-6	OK	5m
	4-5	OK	4m
	7-8	OK	4m
1/9	1-2	OK	5m
	3-6	OK	5m
	4-5	OK	5m
	7-8	OK	5m
1/10	1-2	OK	7m
	3-6	OK	5m
	4-5	OK	5m
	7-8	OK	5m

Good cable tests

```
switch# test cable-diagnostics 51
```

This command will cause a loss of link on all tested ports and will take several seconds per port to complete. Use the 'show cable-diagnostics' command to view the results.

Continue (y/n)? Y

```
switch# show cable-diagnostics 51
```

Cable Diagnostic Status - Transceiver Ports

Port	MDI Pair	Cable Status	Distance to Fault	Pair Skew	Pair Polarity	MDI Mode
51	1-2	OK	0 m	8 ns	Normal	MDI
	3-6	OK	0 m	8 ns	Normal	
	4-5	OK	0 m	8 ns	Normal	MDIX
	7-8	OK	0 m	0 ns	Normal	

```
switch# test cable-diagnostics 52
```

This command will cause a loss of link on all tested ports and will take several seconds per port to complete. Use the 'show cable-diagnostics' command to view the results.

```
Continue (y/n)? Y
```

```
switch# show cable-diagnostics 52
```

Cable Diagnostic Status - Transceiver Ports

Port	MDI Pair	Cable Status	Distance to Fault	Pair Skew	Pair Polarity	MDI Mode
52	1-2	OK	0 m	0 ns	Normal	MDI
	3-6	OK	0 m	0 ns	Normal	
	4-5	OK	0 m	0 ns	Normal	MDIX
	7-8	OK	0 m	0 ns	Normal	

Faulty cable test

```
switch# test cable-diagnostics 51
```

This command will cause a loss of link on all tested ports and will take several seconds per port to complete. Use the 'show cable-diagnostics' command to view the results.

```
Continue (y/n)? y
```

```
switch# show cable-diagnostics 51
```

Cable Diagnostic Status - Transceiver Ports

Port	MDI Pair	Cable Status	Distance to Fault	Pair Skew	Pair Polarity	MDI Mode
51	1-2	OK	0 m	0 ns		
	3-6	Short	1 m	0 ns		
	4-5	Short	1 m	0 ns		
	7-8	OK	0 m	0 ns		

```
switch# test cable-diagnostics 52
```

This command will cause a loss of link on all tested ports and will take several seconds per port to complete. Use the 'show cable-diagnostics' command to view the results.

```
Continue (y/n)? Y
```

```
switch# show cable-diagnostics 52
```

Cable Diagnostic Status - Transceiver Ports

Port	MDI Pair	Cable Status	Distance to Fault	Pair Skew	Pair Polarity	MDI Mode
52	1-2	Open	0 m	0 ns		
	3-6	Open	0 m	0 ns		
	4-5	Open	1 m	0 ns		
	7-8	Open	0 m	0 ns		

Error message

Error Message	Cause
The transceiver on port 1/A1 does not support cable diagnostics.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">usage of invalid(fiber-SFP+) portThe selected range includes an entry for an invalid port.

show cable-diagnostics

Syntax

```
show cable-diagnostics <PORT-LIST>
```

Description

Use the command to generate results of completed tests on single or multiple ports. For incomplete tests, a warning is displayed.

Option

PORT

Specify one copper port as an input port number.

clear cable-diagnostics

Syntax

```
clear cable-diagnostics
```

Description

Use the command to clear the result buffer.

Example

```
switch(config)# clear cable-diagnostics
```

Limitations

TDR has the following limitations:

- TDR length accuracy is ± 5 m
- Does not work on Smart Rate Interfaces with 10GBASE-T and NGBASE-T (2.5G, 5G copper) ports available on:
 - v3 blades

- J9991A — Aruba 20-port 10/100/1000BASE-T PoE+ / 4-port 1/2.5/5/10GBASE-T PoE+ MACsec v3 zl2 Module
 - J9995A — Aruba 8-port 1/2.5/5/10GBASE-T PoE+ MACsec v3 zl2 Module
 - 3810M (JL076A — Aruba 3810M 40G 8 HPE Smart Rate PoE+ 1-slot Switch)
- Not supported on v2 zl modules
- Valid only on 100BASE-TX and 1000BASE-T ports

An end client that gets IP address from a DHCP address will be included by default in RADIUS accounting packets. Visibility of statically assigned IP addresses in RADIUS accounting is available with a command that enables and disables static IP visibility for an authenticated client.

ip client-tracker

Syntax

```
ip client-tracker [trusted | untrusted]

no ip client-tracker [trusted | untrusted]
```

Description

Enables the visibility of statically and dynamically assigned IPv4 and IPv6 addresses for both authenticated and unauthenticated clients.

The `no` form of this command disables the visibility of statically and dynamically assigned IPv4 and IPv6 addresses for both authenticated and unauthenticated client.

Command context

```
config
```

Parameters

trusted

Enables or disables the visibility of statically and dynamically assigned IPv4 and IPv6 addresses for authenticated clients. The `trusted` option makes the feature track clients only on authentication enabled ports (edge ports), excluding uplink ports which are not enabled for authentication with the server.

untrusted

Enables or disables the visibility of statically and dynamically assigned IPv4 and IPv6 addresses for unauthenticated clients.

Usage

- Switch sends ARP probes when IP client tracker feature is enabled. This interval is determined by setting `arp-age timeout`. By default `arp-age timeout` is 20 minutes however the default timeout can be changed by using the command `ip arp-age <timeout value in minutes>`.
 - The periodic ARP probe aids in detecting any change of IP addresses on end clients.
 - Non-chatty clients that do not send packets within regular intervals get deauthenticated due to inactivity after the logoff period. IP client tracker can be used to keep these clients in the network. The customer must always configure the `ip arp-age` value to less than the configured logoff period, to avoid being deauthenticated due to inactivity.

- When the `ip client-tracker` command is executed more than once, it takes the last command's behavior. For example when the command `ip client-tracker trusted` is run after the command `ip client-tracker`, the behavior will follow the last command, `ip client-tracker trusted`.
- When the administrator tries to execute the `no` command that has not been configured (does not exist in running configuration), an error will appear.

Example

Show port-access client with multiple addresses.

```
switch# show port-access clients
```

Port Access Client Status

Port	Client Name	MAC Address	IP Address	User Role	Type	VLAN
1	005056bd3ff7	005056-bd3ff7	3ffe:501:ffff:100::5e		MAC	1

Example

Show the port-access IPv4 client.

```
Switch-Stack(config)# show port-access clients
```

Port Access Client Status

Port	Client Name	MAC Address	IP Address	User Role	Type	VLAN
1/3	000002b85001	000002-b85001	10.1.1.30		MAC	10

Example

Show the port-access IPv6 client.

```
switch(config)# show port-access clients 22
```

Port Access Client Status

Port	Client Name	MAC Address	IP Address	User Role	Type	VLAN
22	0000005daa34	000000-5daa34	n/a		MAC	20

Example

Show the port-access client detail.

```
switch(config)# show port-access clients 22 detailed
```

Port Access Client Status Detail

Client Base Details :

Port	: 22	Authentication Type	: mac-based
Client Status	: authenticated	Session Time	: 64 seconds
Client Name	: 0000005daa34	Session Timeout	: 0 seconds
MAC Address	: 000000-5daa34		
IP	: n/a		

Access Policy Details :

COS Map	: Not Defined	In Limit Kbps	: Not Set
Untagged VLAN	: 20	Out Limit Kbps	: Not Set

```
Tagged VLANs      : No Tagged VLANs
Port Mode         : 1000FDx
RADIUS ACL List   : No Radius ACL List
IPV6 Address      : 2000::10
```



NOTE: If neither `trusted` nor `untrusted` option is configured, the feature is enabled for both trusted (authentication enabled) and untrusted (authentication disabled) ports. Since uplink ports are always authentication disabled, `ip client-tracker` command without any options starts tracking these ports which result in tracking routed clients as well.

ip client-tracker probe-delay

Syntax

```
ip client-tracker probe-delay <INTERVAL>
no ip client-tracker probe-delay <INTERVAL>
```

Description

Enables the delay in the client tracking for static IP visibility. By default, `ip client-tracker probe-delay` is disabled.

The `no` form of this command disables the delay in the client tracking for static IP visibility.

Command context

config

Parameter

<INTERVAL>

Specifies the delay time of static IP tracking probes from 15 to 300 seconds.

Default value is 15 seconds.

Examples

Configures the delay in the client tracking.

```
switch# ip client-tracker probe-delay
switch# show run
ip client-tracker
ip client-tracker probe-delay 15
exit
```

Configures the delay in the client tracking for 250 seconds.

```
switch# ip client-tracker probe-delay 250
switch# show run
ip client-tracker
ip client-tracker probe-delay 250
exit
```

OOBM concepts

Management communications with a managed switch can be:

- In band—through the networked data ports of the switch
- Out of band—through a dedicated management port (or ports) separate from the data ports

Out-of-band ports have typically been serial console ports using DB-9 or specially wired 8-pin modular (RJ-style) connectors. Some recent switches have added networked OOBM ports.

OOBM operates on a "management plane" that is separate from the "data plane" used by data traffic on the switch and by in-band management traffic. That separation means that OOBM can continue to function even during periods of traffic congestion, equipment malfunction, or attacks on the network. In addition, it can provide improved switch security: a properly configured switch can limit management access to the management port only, preventing malicious attempts to gain access via the data ports.

Network OOBM typically occurs on a management network that connects multiple switches. It has the added advantage that it can be done from a central location and does not require an individual physical cable from the management station to each switch's console port.

Table 35: *Switch management ports*

	In band	Out of band	
	Networked	Directly connected	Networked
Management interface	Command line (CLI), menu, Web	Command line (CLI), menu	Command line (CLI), menu
Communication plane	Data plane	Management plane	Management plane
Connection port	Any data port	Dedicated serial or USB console port	Dedicated networked management port
Connector type	Usually RJ-45; also CX4, SFP, SFP+, and XFP	DB9 serial, serial-wired 8-pin RJ	RJ-45
Advantages	Allows centralized management	Not affected by events on data network, shows boot sequence	Not affected by events on data network, allows centralized management, allows improved security
Disadvantages	Can be affected by events on data network; does not show boot sequence	Requires direct connection to console port (can be done via networked terminal server)	Does not show boot sequence

OOBM and switch applications

The table below shows the switch applications that are supported on the OOBM interface as well as on the data interfaces. In this list, some applications are client-only, some are server-only, and some are both.

Application	Inbound OOBM (server)	Outbound OOBM (client)	Inbound data plane (server)	Outbound data plane (client)
Telnet	yes	yes	yes	yes
SSH	yes		yes	¹
SNMP	yes	yes	yes	yes
TFTP	yes	yes	yes	yes
HTTP	yes	¹	yes	¹
SNTP	¹	yes	¹	yes
TIMEP	¹	yes	¹	yes
RADIUS	¹	yes	¹	yes
TACACS	¹	yes	¹	yes
DNS	¹	yes	¹	yes
Syslog	¹	yes	¹	yes
Ping	yes	yes	yes ⁴	yes
Traceroute	yes ⁴	yes	yes ⁴	yes

¹ N/A = not applicable

² ***=Ping and Traceroute do not have explicit servers. Ping and Traceroute responses are sent by the host stack.

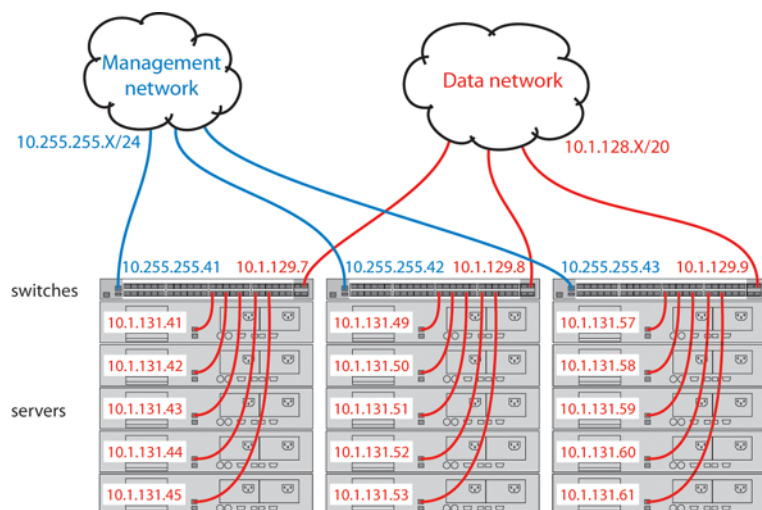
For applications that have servers, `oobm/data/both` options have been added to listen mode. There is now a `listen` keyword in the CLI commands to allow selection of those options. Default **value** is `both` for all servers.

Example

In a typical data center installation, top-of-rack switches connect servers to the data network, while the management ports of those switches connect to a physically and logically separate management network. This allows network administrators to manage the switches even if operation on the data network is disrupted.

In **Figure 179: Network OOBM in a data center** on page 777, the switches face the hot aisle of the data center, allowing easy connection to the network ports on the backs of the servers.

Figure 179: Network OOBM in a data center



For even more control, the serial console ports of the switches can be connected to the management network through a serial console server (essentially, a networked serial switch), allowing the network administrators to view the CLI activity of each switch at boot time and to control the switches through the console ports (as well as through the management ports.)

OOBM Configuration

OOBM configuration commands can be issued from the global configuration context (config) or from a specific OOBM configuration context (oobm.)

Entering the OOBM configuration context from the general configuration context

Syntax

```
oobm
```

Enters the OOBM context from the general configuration context.

Example

```
switch(config)# oobm
Switch (oobm)#
```

Enabling and disabling OOBM

From the OOBM context:

Syntax

```
enable disable
```

From the general configuration context:

Syntax

```
oobm enable oobm disable
```

Enables or disables networked OOBM on the switch.

OOBM is not compatible with either a management VLAN or stacking. If you attempt to enable OOBM when a management VLAN is enabled or when stacking is enabled, the command will be rejected and you will receive an error message.

If an OOBM IP address exists and you disable OOBM, the OOBM IP address configuration is maintained. If you enable OOBM and there is a pre-existing OOBM IP address, it will be reinstated.

Network OOBM is enabled by default.

Examples

```
Switch (oobm)# enable
Switch (oobm)# disable
switch(config)# oobm enable
switch(config)# oobm disable
```

Enabling and disabling the OOBM port

The `OOBM interface` command enables or disables the OOBM interface (that is, the OOBM port, as opposed to the OOBM function.)

From the OOBM context:

Syntax

```
interface [enable | disable]
```

From the general configuration context:

Syntax

```
oobm interface [enable | disable]
```

Enables or disables the networked OOBM interface (port.)

Examples

```
Switch (oobm)# interface enable
switch(config)# oobm interface disable
```

Setting the OOBM port speed

The OOBM port operates at 10 Mbps or 100 Mbps, half or full duplex. These can be set explicitly or they can be automatically negotiated using the `auto` setting.

From the OOBM context:

Syntax

```
interface speed-duplex [10-half | 10-full | 100-half | 100-full | auto]
```

From the general configuration context:

Syntax

```
oobm interface speed-duplex [10-half | 10-full | 100-half | 100-full | auto]
```

Enables or disables the networked OOBM interface (port.) Available settings are:

10-half	10 Mbps, half-duplex
10-full	10-Mbps, full-duplex
100-half	100-Mbps, half-duplex
100-full	100-Mbps, full-duplex
auto	auto negotiate for speed and duplex

Example

```
Switch (oobm)# interface speed-duplex auto
```

Configuring an OOBM IPv4 address

Configuring an IPv4 address for the OOBM interface is similar to VLAN IP address configuration, but it is accomplished within the OOBM context.

From the OOBM context:

Syntax

```
[no] ip address [dhcp-bootp | ip-address/mask-length]
```

From the general configuration context:

Syntax

```
[no] oobm ip address [dhcp-bootp | ip-address/mask-length]
```

Configures an IPv4 address for the switch's OOBM interface.

You can configure an IPv4 address even when global OOBM is disabled; that address will become effective when OOBM is enabled.

Example

```
Switch (oobm)# ip address 10.1.1.17/24
```

Configuring an OOBM IPv4 default gateway

Configuring an IPv4 default gateway for the OOBM interface is similar to VLAN default gateway configuration, but it is accomplished within the OOBM context.

From the OOBM context:

Syntax

```
[no] ip default-gateway ip-address
```

From the general configuration context:

Syntax

```
[no] oobm ip default-gateway ip-address
```

Configures an IPv4 default gateway for the switch's OOBM interface.

Example

```
Switch (oobm)# ip default-gateway 10.1.1.1
```

Configuring an IPv6 default gateway for OOBM devices

An OOBM interface is used for managing devices from remote sites. OOBM devices must be given a default gateway responsible to maintain a network connection when these devices are placed in an IPv6 network enabled with RA suppression.

To configure and enable an IPv6 default gateway for OOBM interfaces, use the `oobm ipv6 default-gateway` command.

`oobm ipv6 default-gateway`

Syntax

```
oobm ipv6 default-gateway <IPV6-ADDR>
```

```
no oobm ipv6 default-gateway
```

Description

Configures the IPv6 default gateway address for OOBM interfaces.

The *no* form of the command deletes the default gateway. It is imperative that an IPv6 address is specified when the *no* form of the command is used.

Command context

```
config
```

Parameters

<IPV6-ADDR>

Specifies the IPv6 address when configuring the OOBM for a specific gateway.

Example

```
switch(config)# oobm ipv6 default-gateway 1001::1/64
```

`oobm member ipv6 default-gateway`

Syntax

```
oobm member <MEMBER-ID> ipv6 default-gateway <IPV6-ADDR>
```

```
no oobm member <MEMBER-ID> ipv6 default-gateway
```

Description

Configures the IPv6 default gateway address for an OOBM member using their unique identifier and the IPv6 address of the default gateway.

When *no* proceeds the command, the default gateway address is deleted.

Command context

config

Parameters

<MEMBER-ID>

Specifies the unique member-id which allows the OOBM device access to the IPv6 default-gateway.

<IPv6-ADDR>

Specifies the IPv6 address of the default gateway for a member OOBM interface.

Example

Configuring and deleting the OOBM member from a specific IPv6 gateway.

```
switch(config)# oobm member 1 ipv6 default-gateway 1001::1
```

```
switch(config)# no oobm member 1 ipv6 default-gateway
```

IPv6 default router preferences

The command `ipv6 nd ra router-preference {high | medium | low}` provides an extension to the Neighbor Discovery Router Advertisement messages for communicating default router preferences from routers to hosts. The extension improves the ability of hosts to pick the appropriate router for an off-link destination. In network topologies, where the host has multiple routers on its Default Router list, the choice of router for an off-link destination is critical for making the communication more efficient. For example, one router may provide much better performance than another for a destination while choosing a wrong router may result in failure to communicate.

ipv6 nd ra router-preference

Syntax

```
ipv6 nd ra router-preference {low | medium | high}
```

```
no ipv6 nd ra router-preference
```

Description

Sets the router-preference configuration for communicating default router preferences from routers to hosts. Improves the ability of hosts to pick the appropriate router for an off-link destination by providing options at the operator level which set the router preference value as low, medium, or high. Depending on the router preference value set, the host receives the value as part of the IPv6 neighbor discovery router advertisement and chooses the best router for communication.

The *no* form of this command removes the router-preference configuration.

Command context

vlan

Parameters

low

Specifies the router-preference value to low.

medium

Specifies the router-preference value to medium. Medium is the default router-preference value.

high

Specifies the router-preference value to high.

Usage

- When VRRP is configured, RA messages for Virtual IP are sent with configured router-preference values.
- This command complies with RFC 4191.

Example

Default router-preferences.

```
switch(vlan-1) # ipv6 nd ra router-preference
low                Set the Default Router Preference to low.
medium            Set the Default Router Preference to medium (default).
high              Set the Default Router Preference to high.

switch(vlan-1) # ipv6 nd ra router-preference high
```

OOBM show commands

The `show` commands for OOBM are similar to the analogous commands for the data plane. Note that you must always include the `oobm` parameter to see the information for the OOBM interface, regardless of the context. For instance, even from the OOBM context, the `show ip` command displays the IP configuration for the data plane; to see the IP configuration of the OOBM interface, you need to use `show oobm ip`.

Showing the global OOBM and OOBM port configuration

Syntax

```
show oobm
```

Summarizes OOBM configuration information. This command displays the global OOBM configuration (enabled or disabled), the OOBM interface status (up or down), and the port status (enabled/disabled, duplex, and speed.)

You can issue this command from any context

Example

```
Switch# show oobm

Global Configuration
OOBM Enabled      : Yes
OOBM Port Type    : 10/100TX
OOBM Interface Status : Up
OOBM Port        : Enabled
OOBM Port Speed   : Auto
```

Showing OOBM IP configuration

Syntax

```
show oobm ip
```

Summarizes the IP configuration of the OOBM interface. This command displays the status of IPv4 (enabled/disabled), the IPv4 default gateway, and the IPv4 address configured for the interface.

You can issue this command from any context.

Example

```
Switch# show oobm ip
```

Showing OOBM ARP information

Syntax

```
show oobm arp
```

Summarizes the ARP table entries for the OOBM interface.

You can issue this command from any context.

Example

```
Switch# show oobm arp
```

show oobm ipv6

Syntax

```
show oobm ipv6
```

Description

Shows the IPv6 service status for OOBM interfaces.

Command context

operator

Example

Shows the IPv6 service status for OOBM interfaces.

```
switch# show oobm ipv6
```

Internet (IPv6) Service for OOBM Interface

```
IPv6 Status      : Enabled
IPv6 Default Gateway : 1000::2
```

Member	IP Config	IP Address/Prefix Length	Address Status	Intf Status
Global	manual	1000::1/64		Up
Global	autoconfig	fe80::42a8:f0ff:fe9e:901/64		Up

show oobm ipv6 (for stacked switches)

Syntax

```
show oobm ipv6
```

Description

Shows the OOBM IPv6 interface for a stacked switch.

Command context

operator

Example

Shows the OOBM IPv6 interface for a stacked switch.

```
stack-switch# show oobm ipv6
```

```
Internet (IPv6) Service for OOBM Interface
```

```
IPv6 Status      : Enabled
IPv6 Default Gateway : 3000::2
```

Member	IP Config	IP Address/Prefix Length	Address Status	Intf Status
Global	manual	3000::1/64	Active	Down
Global	autoconfig	fe80::42a8:f0ff:fe9b:a581/64	Active	Down
1	manual	1000::1/64	Active	Down
2	manual	2000::1/64	Active	Up

show oobm ipv6 member (for stacked switches)

Syntax

```
show oobm ipv6 member <MEMBER-ID>
```

Description

Shows the OOBM IPv6 service detail for a specific member.

Command context

operator

Example

Shows the OOBM IPv6 service detail for a specific member.

```
stack-switch# show oobm ipv6 member 2
```

```
Internet (IPv6) Service for OOBM Interface
```

```
IPv6 Status      : Enabled
IPv6 Default Gateway : 1000::1
```

Member	IP Config	IP Address/Prefix Length	Address Status	Intf Status
2	manual	1000::2/64	Active	Up

show oobm ip detail (for stacked switches)

Syntax

```
show oobm ip detail
```

Description

Shows the OOBM IP detail for a stacked switch.

Command context

operator

Example

Show the OOBM IP detail for a stacked switch.

```
stack-switch# show oobm ip detail
```

Internet (IP) Service for OOBM Interface

Global Configuration

```
IPv4 Status      : Enabled
IPv6 Status      : Enabled
```

```
IPv4 Default Gateway : 3.3.3.1
IPv6 Default Gateway : 3000::1
```

Origin	IP Address/Prefix Length	Status
manual	3.3.3.2/24	preferred
manual	3000::2/64	preferred
autoconfig	fe80::42a8:f0ff:fe9b:a581/64	preferred

Member 1

```
IPv4 Status      : Enabled
IPv6 Status      : Enabled
```

```
IPv4 Default Gateway : 2.2.2.1
IPv6 Default Gateway : 2000::1
```

Origin	IP Address/Prefix Length	Status
manual	2.2.2.2/24	preferred
manual	2000::2/64	preferred

Member 2

```
IPv4 Status      : Enabled
IPv6 Status      : Enabled
```

```
IPv4 Default Gateway : 1.1.1.1
IPv6 Default Gateway : 1000::1
```

Origin	IP Address/Prefix Length	Status
manual	1.1.1.2/24	preferred
manual	1000::2/64	preferred

Application server commands

Application servers (as described in OOBM and server applications in [OOBM concepts](#) on page 775) have added a `listen` keyword with `oobm|data|both` options to specify which interfaces are active.

Default value is `both` for all servers.

Syntax

```
telnet-server [listen {oobm | data | both}]
```

Syntax

```
ip ssh [listen {oobm | data | both}]
```

Syntax

```
snmp-server [listen {oobm | data | both}]
```

Syntax

```
tftp server [listen {oobm | data | both}]
```

Syntax

```
web-management [listen {oobm | data | both}]
```

In all cases, `show running-config` displays the server configurations.

Use the `no` form of the command to prevent the server from running on either interface.

Examples

Telnet: `no telnet-server`

SSH: `no ip ssh ...`

SNMP: `no snmp-server ...`

TFTP: `no tftp server`

HTTP: `no web-management ...`

The `show servers` command shows the listen mode of the servers:

```
Switch# show servers
```

```
Server listen mode
```

```
Server    Listen mode
```

```
-----
```

```
Telnet      | both
```

```
Ssh         | both
```

```
Tftp        | both
```

```
Web-management | both
```

```
Snmp        | both
```

Application client commands

CLI commands for client applications have added the `oobm` keyword to allow you to specify that the outgoing request be issued from the OOBM interface. If you do not specify the `oobm` keyword, the request will be issued from the appropriate in-band data interface. Command syntax is:

Telnet:

```
telnet ip-address [oobm]
```

TFTP:

```
copy tftp ... ip-address filename... [oobm]
```

SNTP:

```
[no] sntp server priority priority ip-address [oobm] [version]
```

TIMEP:

```
[no] ip timep [dhcp | manual ip-address | [oobm]]
```

RADIUS:

```
[no] radius-server host ip-address [oobm]
```

TACACS+:

```
[no] tacacs-server host ip-address [oobm]
```

DNS:

```
[no] ip dns server-address priority priority ip-address [oobm]
```

Syslog:

```
[no] logging ip-address [[control-descr] | [oobm]]
```

Ping:

```
ping [...] [source [ip-address | vlan-id | oobm]]
```

Traceroute:

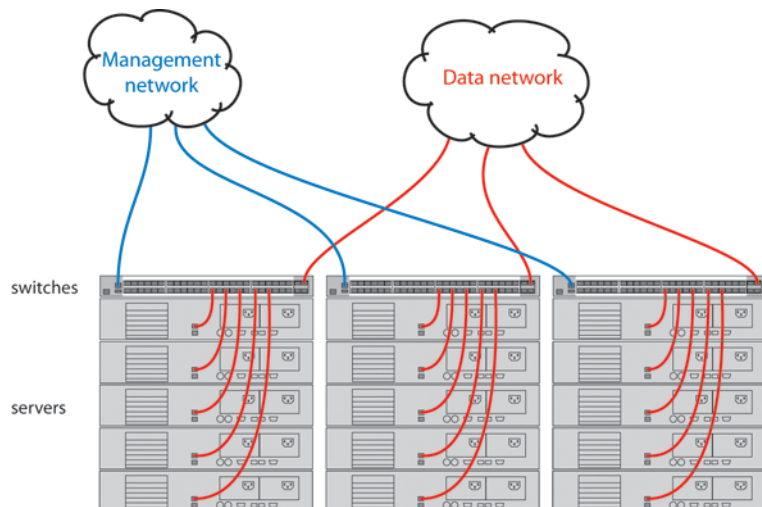
```
traceroute [...] [source [ip-address|vlan-id|oobm]] Management and Configuration Guide
```

Example

Figure 180: Example data center on page 788 shows setup and use of network OOBM using the commands described above.

Assume that the figure below describes how you want to set up your data center.

Figure 180: Example data center



Assume that you are configuring the switch in the left-hand rack to communicate on both the data and management networks. You might do the following:

- Configure an IP address on the data network.
- Verify that out-of-band management is enabled. (It is enabled by default.)
- Configure an IP address on the management network.
- Verify that the switch can communicate on both networks.

The CLI commands that follow would accomplish those tasks. (The first time through the process you might easily make the omission shown near the end of the example.)

```
Switch 41# config
Switch 41(config)# vlan 1
Switch 41(vlan-1)# ip address 10.1.129.7/20          Set up IP address on data network.
Switch 41(vlan-1)# end                               Exit back to manager context.
Switch 41# show oobm                                Look at default OOBM configuration.

Global Configuration
OOBM Enabled      : Yes
OOBM Port Type    : 10/100TX
OOBM Interface Status : Up
OOBM Port         : Enabled
OOBM Port Speed   : Auto

Switch 41# config
Switch 41(config)# oobm                             Go to OOBM context and
Switch 41(oobm)# ip address 10.255.255.41/24         add IP address and
Switch 41(oobm)# ip default-gateway 10.255.255.1     default gateway.
Switch 41(oobm)# end                                 Exit back to manager context.
Switch 41# ping 10.1.131.44                           Ping server in this rack (on data network.)
10.1.131.44 is alive, time = 19 ms
Switch 41# ping 10.1.131.51                           Ping server in adjacent rack.
10.1.131.51 is alive, time = 15 ms
Switch 41# ping 10.255.255.42                           Ping switch in adjacent rack.
The destination address is unreachable.                Oops! It's on the management network.
Switch 41# ping source oobm 10.255.255.42             Go through the management port
10.255.255.42 is alive, time = 2 ms                   and it works fine.
Switch 41#
```


Networking Websites

Hewlett Packard Enterprise Networking Information Library

www.hpe.com/networking/resourcefinder

Hewlett Packard Enterprise Networking Software

www.hpe.com/networking/software

Hewlett Packard Enterprise Networking website

www.hpe.com/info/networking

Hewlett Packard Enterprise My Networking website

www.hpe.com/networking/support

Hewlett Packard Enterprise My Networking Portal

www.hpe.com/networking/mynetworking

Hewlett Packard Enterprise Networking Warranty

www.hpe.com/networking/warranty

General websites

Hewlett Packard Enterprise Information Library

www.hpe.com/info/EIL

For additional websites, see **[Support and other resources](#)**.

Accessing Hewlett Packard Enterprise Support

- For live assistance, go to the Contact Hewlett Packard Enterprise Worldwide website:
<http://www.hpe.com/assistance>
- To access documentation and support services, go to the Hewlett Packard Enterprise Support Center website:
<http://www.hpe.com/support/hpesc>

Information to collect

- Technical support registration number (if applicable)
- Product name, model or version, and serial number
- Operating system name and version
- Firmware version
- Error messages
- Product-specific reports and logs
- Add-on products or components
- Third-party products or components

Accessing updates

- Some software products provide a mechanism for accessing software updates through the product interface. Review your product documentation to identify the recommended software update method.
- To download product updates:
Hewlett Packard Enterprise Support Center
www.hpe.com/support/hpesc
Hewlett Packard Enterprise Support Center: Software downloads
www.hpe.com/support/downloads
Software Depot
www.hpe.com/support/softwaredepot
- To subscribe to eNewsletters and alerts:
www.hpe.com/support/e-updates
- To view and update your entitlements, and to link your contracts and warranties with your profile, go to the Hewlett Packard Enterprise Support Center **More Information on Access to Support Materials** page:
www.hpe.com/support/AccessToSupportMaterials



IMPORTANT: Access to some updates might require product entitlement when accessed through the Hewlett Packard Enterprise Support Center. You must have an HPE Passport set up with relevant entitlements.

Customer self repair

Hewlett Packard Enterprise customer self repair (CSR) programs allow you to repair your product. If a CSR part needs to be replaced, it will be shipped directly to you so that you can install it at your convenience. Some parts do not qualify for CSR. Your Hewlett Packard Enterprise authorized service provider will determine whether a repair can be accomplished by CSR.

For more information about CSR, contact your local service provider or go to the CSR website:

<http://www.hpe.com/support/selfrepair>

Remote support

Remote support is available with supported devices as part of your warranty or contractual support agreement. It provides intelligent event diagnosis, and automatic, secure submission of hardware event notifications to Hewlett Packard Enterprise, which will initiate a fast and accurate resolution based on your product's service level. Hewlett Packard Enterprise strongly recommends that you register your device for remote support.

If your product includes additional remote support details, use search to locate that information.

Remote support and Proactive Care information

HPE Get Connected

www.hpe.com/services/getconnected

HPE Proactive Care services

www.hpe.com/services/proactivecare

HPE Proactive Care service: Supported products list

www.hpe.com/services/proactivecaresupportedproducts

HPE Proactive Care advanced service: Supported products list

www.hpe.com/services/proactivecareadvancedsupportedproducts

Proactive Care customer information

Proactive Care central

www.hpe.com/services/proactivecarecentral

Proactive Care service activation

www.hpe.com/services/proactivecarecentralgetstarted

Warranty information

To view the warranty information for your product, see the links provided below:

HPE ProLiant and IA-32 Servers and Options

www.hpe.com/support/ProLiantServers-Warranties

HPE Enterprise and Cloudline Servers

www.hpe.com/support/EnterpriseServers-Warranties

HPE Storage Products

www.hpe.com/support/Storage-Warranties

HPE Networking Products

www.hpe.com/support/Networking-Warranties

Regulatory information

To view the regulatory information for your product, view the *Safety and Compliance Information for Server, Storage, Power, Networking, and Rack Products*, available at the Hewlett Packard Enterprise Support Center:

www.hpe.com/support/Safety-Compliance-EnterpriseProducts

Additional regulatory information

Hewlett Packard Enterprise is committed to providing our customers with information about the chemical substances in our products as needed to comply with legal requirements such as REACH (Regulation EC No 1907/2006 of the European Parliament and the Council). A chemical information report for this product can be found at:

www.hpe.com/info/reach

For Hewlett Packard Enterprise product environmental and safety information and compliance data, including RoHS and REACH, see:

www.hpe.com/info/ecodata

For Hewlett Packard Enterprise environmental information, including company programs, product recycling, and energy efficiency, see:

www.hpe.com/info/environment

Documentation feedback

Hewlett Packard Enterprise is committed to providing documentation that meets your needs. To help us improve the documentation, send any errors, suggestions, or comments to Documentation Feedback (**docsfeedback@hpe.com**). When submitting your feedback, include the document title, part number, edition, and publication date located on the front cover of the document. For online help content, include the product name, product version, help edition, and publication date located on the legal notices page.

Overview of chassis management redundancy

Some switches provide high availability through the use of hot-swappable, redundant management modules. In the event of a failure on the active management module, management module redundancy allows a quick and unattended transition from the active management module to the standby management module. The standby management module now becomes the active management module. Management module redundancy keeps the switch operating and reduces network downtime.

The advantages of redundant management are:

- Maintaining switch operation if a hardware failure occurs on the active management module
- Minimizing restart time caused by the failure of a management module
- Hotswapping a failed management module with no downtime

Nonstop switching with redundant management modules

Beginning with software version K.15.01, you can use either nonstop switching or warm-standby redundant management.

The advantages of nonstop switching are:

- Quick, seamless transition to the standby management module; no reboot is necessary
- Switching of packets continues without interruption

How the management modules interact

When the switch boots up, the management modules run selftest to decide which is the active module and which is the standby module. The module that becomes active finishes booting and then brings up the interface modules and ports.

If you are using nonstop switching mode, the standby management module is synced continuously with the active management module so that all features and config files are the same on both management modules. The standby management module is ready to become the active management module. If the active management module fails or if there is a manual switchover, switching continues without interruption.

If you are using warm-standby mode, the standby module boots to a certain point, syncs basic files such as the config and security files, and finishes booting only if the active management module fails or you choose to change which module is the active module.

The two management modules communicate by sending heartbeats back and forth.

About using redundant management

The CLI commands for redundant management are shown at the beginning of the chapter. Additionally, other commands are affected by redundant management.

Transition from no redundancy to nonstop switching

While the switch is transitioning from no redundancy mode to nonstop switching mode, no configuration changes are allowed. The management modules are syncing information during the transition period.

About setting the rapid switchover stale timer

After a failover has occurred, use the rapid switchover stale timer to set the amount of time that you want route and neighbor table entries to be re-added to the FIB on the active management module.

Layer 3 applications and protocols rely on existing routing information in the FIB. They restart and operate as if the switch performed a quick reset.

When a failover occurs, the interface modules and the fabric modules continue forwarding Layer 3 traffic based on the information in the FIB. The transitioning standby management module marks all routes in the FIB as "stale". The routing protocols restart, reestablish their neighbors and reconverge. As a route is added in again, the route's stale designation is removed. After the rapid switchover stale timer expires, the remaining stale route entries are removed. Multicast flows are also removed; the multicast application re-adds the flows after failover completes.

About directing the standby module to become active

To make the standby management module become the active management module, use the `redundancy switchover` command. The switch will switchover after all files have finished synchronizing.

In nonstop switching mode:

- The switchover occurs quickly and seamlessly; no reboot is needed.
- There is no interruption in switching operations.

In warm-standby mode:

- The switchover may take several minutes if there have been recent configuration file changes or if you have downloaded a new operating system.
- The standby module finishes booting and becomes the active module.

The formerly active module becomes the standby module if it passes selftest.

Preferred management module



NOTE: ArubaOS-54XXR platform only

On a 54xxR chassis with the ability to support two management modules, one of the management modules can be persistently set as Active management module through a `redundancy preferred-management-module` command.

- A `preferred-active-module` may be configured by command to retain its role as an Active module under both hard power cycle and soft reboot scenarios.
- In the case of a failure of a `preferred-active-module`, the Standby management module takes over and becomes new Active management module.
- The `preferred-active-module` is seen as configured in the `show running config` command.

redundancy active-management

Syntax

```
redundancy active-management {management-module1 | management-module2 | standby}
```

Description

Specifies the management module that will become active at the next boot.

Command context

config

Parameters

management-module <1> | <2>

Specifies the redundant management module to enable.

standby

Specifies the standby management module.

Restrictions

The `redundancy active-management` command will fail if the other module is in a failed state or if VSF is enabled.

Usage

redundancy rapid-switchover <Seconds>

Specifies the rapid-switchover timer in seconds for L3 Hitless forwarding when used as a parameter for redundancy.

management-module

The selected active management module will continue as the active management module on boot until the user issues the command `redundancy active-management` which then changes the selected module.

redundancy switchover

Instructs the switch to immediately switch over to the standby management module.

Example

Show redundancy for management module.

```
Switch(config)# show redundancy
```

```
Configured Mode: Nonstop Switching
Current Mode    : Nonstop Switching
```

```
Rapid Switchover Stale Timer : 90
Failovers                    : 0
Last Failover                :
Preferred Active Management: management-module1
```

Slot	Module Description	State	SW Version	Boot Image
MM1	J9827A Management Module 5400Rz12	Active	KB.16.02.0014	Primary
MM2	J9827A Management Module 5400Rz12	Standby	KB.16.02.0014	Primary

redundancy preferred-active-management

Syntax

```
redundancy preferred-active-management {management-module1 | management-module2}

no redundancy preferred-active-management {management-module1 | management-module2}
```

Description

Configures priority to specified management-module to be active management module across multiple boots. Command does not change management module roles instantaneously and would require a reboot for configuration to come into effect.

The `no` form of this command removes the configuration for the preferred-active-management module.



NOTE: The command `redundancy preferred-active-management` requires a reboot for the configuration to change.

Command context

config

Parameters

management-module <1> | <2>

Configures selected management module as an active management module across multiple reboots.

Restrictions

- The command `redundancy preferred-active-management` is mutually exclusive with VSF. The preferred-management-module must be disabled to enable VSF on an ArubaOS-switch.
- When a preferred module taking over as an Active module fails, a fail-over to another management module will occur. User intervention must rectify the cause for the failure or if a chassis reboot is attempted, the attempt may fail. In the case of a boot, there will be an extra redundancy switchover.

Example

Configuring preferred active management module.

```
switch(config)# redundancy preferred-active-management management-module1
```

```
switch(config)# show running config
```



Running configuration

```
; J9851A Configuration Editor; Created on release #KB.16.03.0000x
; Ver #0f:7f.ff.bb.ff.7c.59.fc.7b.ff.ff.fc.ff.ff.3f.ef:45
hostname "Switch"
module B type j9993a
module G type j9987a
redundancy preferred-active-management management-module1
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
oobm
    ip address dhcp-bootp
    exit
vlan 1
    name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
    untagged B1-B8, G1-G24
```



```
ip address dhcp-bootp
exit
```

CLI warnings in response to preferred-active-management command

CLI Warnings	Scenario	
Active-management cannot be set when preferred-active-management is enabled. Unconfigure before attempting to set active-management.	The command <code>active-management</code> is mutually exclusive with existing <code>redundancy active-management</code> command.	
Preferred-active-management configuration overrides active-management configuration.	<p>If <code>redundancy active-management</code> is set and user attempts to configure <code>preferred-active-management</code> a warning message displays when configuring <code>redundancy preferred-active-management</code>.</p> <div> NOTE: Once set, there is no way to unconfigure active-management setting.</div>	
VSF cannot be enabled when preferred-active-management is enabled. Un-configure before attempting to enable VSF.	<p>The command <code>preferred-active-management</code> is mutually exclusive with VSF configuration.</p> <div> NOTE: No warning/error message would be displayed upon ports being configured as part of VSF.</div>	

show redundancy

Syntax

```
show redundancy
```

Description

Displays the status of the management and fabric modules.

Command context

```
config
```

Examples

Shows the redundancy of the switch for an active management module.

```
switch(config)# show redundancy

Configured Mode: Nonstop Switching
Current Mode   : Nonstop Switching

Rapid Switchover Stale Timer : 90
Failovers           : 0
Last Failover      :
Preferred Active Management: management-module1
```

Slot	Module Description	State	SW Version	Boot Image
MM1	J9827A Management Module 5400Rz12	Active	KB.16.02.0014	Primary
MM2	J9827A Management Module 5400Rz12	Standby	KB.16.02.0014	Primary

Determining active module

Both management modules run selftest routines to determine which module becomes the active management module and which becomes the standby management module. The module that was last active in the chassis is given precedence and becomes the "active" module. This module is the one that is booted going forward. If a module fails selftest and is unable to communicate with the other module, it does not take control as the management module. The other management module takes control and becomes the active module.

If both modules fail selftest, the fault LED flashes and neither module is operational.



NOTE:

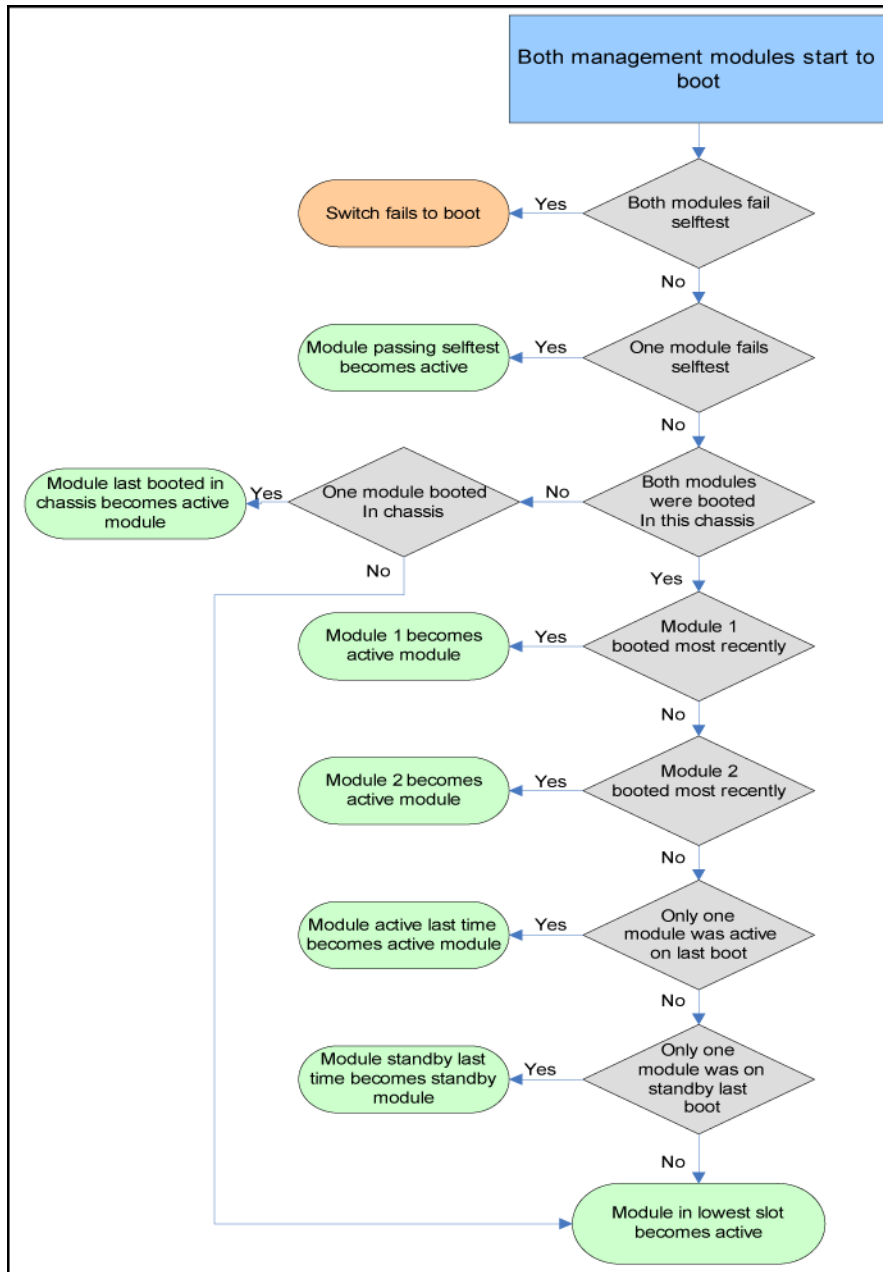
You are not allowed to switchover to a management module that is not in standby mode. The module must have passed selftest and be in standby mode.

The entire boot decision process works as follows:

1. If there is only one management module, that is the active management module.
2. If one module is already booted and operational, a newly inserted module or the other management module booting always becomes the standby module. The standby module does not become active unless a switchover occurs.
3. If there are two management modules and one fails selftest, the one that passes selftest becomes the active management module.
4. If only one of two modules was ever booted in the chassis, that module is given precedence.
5. The module that was active on the last boot becomes the active management module. This guarantees that the active module has the latest configuration data.
6. If both management modules have previously booted in this chassis and were "active" the last time booted, the module that booted most recently becomes the active management module.
7. If none of the above conditions are applicable, the module in the lowest slot becomes the active management module.

Diagram of the decision process

Figure 181: Active module decision flow chart at boot

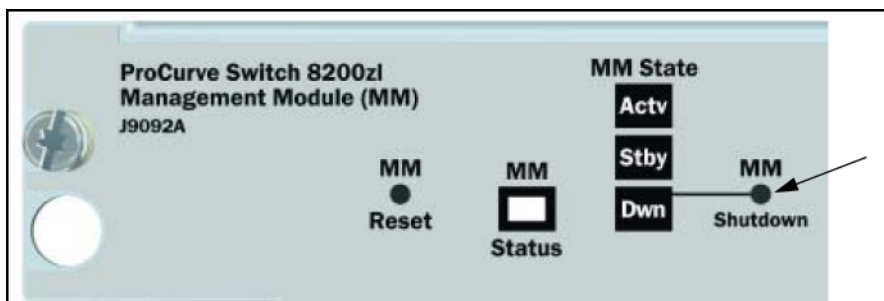


Hotswapping management modules

Hotswapping out the active management module

1. On the management module to be hotswapped out, press the **MM Shutdown** button. It is located between the **Module Operation** and **Component Status** LEDs. (See [Figure 182: The MM Shutdown button](#) on page 800.)

Figure 182: *The MM Shutdown button*



2. The **Dwn** LED to the right of the **MM Shutdown** button begins flashing green. File synchronization will complete before shutdown occurs.
3. The standby module takes control and the switchover occurs. It is now the active management module.
4. The **Dwn** LED on the management module being hotswapped out turns green and all other LEDs go out when it is OK to remove the module.
5. The module being hotswapped out goes into offline mode. In the offline mode, the module cannot take over when the active module fails over.



NOTE:

If you remove the active management module without pressing the **MM Shutdown** button, any files that may have been in the process of synchronizing will not finish synchronizing to the standby module and all file transfer is aborted.

Management module switchover

Events that cause a switchover

There are a number of events that can cause the active management module to switchover to the standby management module when management module redundancy is enabled:

- The active management module crashes
- The standby management module does not receive a heartbeat from the active management module
- The `redundancy switchover` command is executed
- The **MM Reset** button on the active management module is pressed
- The **MM Shutdown** button on the active management module is pressed
- The `boot` or `boot active` command is executed
- The `reload` command is executed
- There is a hardware failure on the active management module

In all of these cases, the standby management module takes control and performs the actual switchover. The reason for the switchover is entered in log messages on the newly active management module and to any configured Syslog servers.

What happens when switchover occurs

When a switchover occurs, the features that support nonstop switching continue to operate in an uninterrupted manner. See **Nonstop switching features** on page 828 for a list of the supported features.

The features that do not support nonstop switching perform as if the switch had just finished booting; however, no actual boot time occurs.



NOTE:

When meshing configuration changes are made on a redundant management system, you must execute `write mem` and then the `boot system` command to boot **both** management modules for the changes to be activated.

Meshing is not supported by nonstop switching.



NOTE:

If the switch is a querier and a failover occurs, the querier continues to be the same on the standby management module; no new querier election process occurs on the standby management module.

When switchover will not occur

There are some events for which a switchover is not triggered:

- When a `boot system` command is executed
- When the **Clear** button on the System Support module is pressed
- When management module redundancy is disabled, unless there is a hardware failure and the system is rebooted.

When a management module crashes while the other management module is rebooting

If the uncommon situation occurs where the active management module (MM1) is trying to reboot and the standby management module (MM2) also crashes, the switch attempts to recover from the crash and eventually the standby management module becomes the active management module if it passes self-test. However, traffic can be disrupted for as long as five minutes before the newly active management module (MM2) has finished rebooting.

Hotswapping out the active management module

You can hotswap out the active management module and have switch operations taken over by the standby management module by following the correct shutdown procedure on the active module using the **MM Shutdown** button. When the **MM Shutdown** button is pressed, any file synchronization in progress completes before the shutdown begins, and then a graceful shutdown of that management module occurs.

When the standby module is not available

If you have disabled management module redundancy with the `no redundancy management-module` command, or the standby module failed selftest, the **Dwn** LED does not turn green to indicate it is OK to hotswap out the active management module.



NOTE:

If you remove the active management module without pressing the **MM Shutdown** button, any files that may have been in the process of synchronizing will not finish synchronizing to the standby module and all file transfer is aborted.

Hotswapping in a management module

If another management module is hotswapped in while there is an active management module booted up, the newly hotswapped management module becomes the standby module.

No negotiating is needed as to which module becomes the active management module, because there is already a functioning active management module. However, the following conditions must be met to determine if the hotswapped module can become a standby management module:

- The hotswapped module must pass selftest
- Management module redundancy is not administratively disabled (using the `no redundancy management-module` command.) If the active management module's config file has redundancy administratively disabled, the hotswapped management module goes into "offline" mode.

In nonstop switching mode—The active management module's files and features are synced with the standby management module. Heartbeats are sent back and forth, and the standby management module is ready to quickly take over in the event of a switchover or a failure on the active management module.

In warm-standby mode—The standby management module partially boots up and heartbeats are sent back and forth with the active management module.

Software version mismatch between active and hotswapped module

If the software version in the hotswapped module does not match the software version in the active module, the following occurs:

Procedure

1. The active module sends the primary and secondary images in flash to the hotswapped module.
2. The module that was hotswapped in then reboots if necessary to primary or secondary flash, whichever matches (if it does not already match.)
3. After the hotswapped management module finishes booting, it is sent the config and other critical files from the active management module.
4. The hotswapped management module goes into standby mode and is ready to take over in case of a switchover.



NOTE: After the `boot standby`

command is executed, if the software versions on the active management module and the standby management module are not compatible, the standby module does not sync with the active management module. The standby module then enters warm-standby redundancy mode.

Other software version mismatch conditions

The following steps describe the behavior that may when a new software image is installed in secondary flash of the AMM and a `redundancy switchover` command is executed.

1. A new software image, K.15.04.0002 containing ROM upgrade K.15.12 is installed in secondary flash of the AMM/MM1.
2. The AMM/MM1 automatically syncs the images to the secondary flash in the SMM/MM2. Now both AMM/MM1 and SMM/MM2 have identical software and ROM in secondary flash.
3. The SMM/MM2 is booted from secondary. It boots into the new K.15.04.0002 software version. The new ROM is applied and the SMM/ MM2 reboots.
4. After the SMM/MM2 finishes rebooting, it reconnects to the AMM/MM1 and prepares to take the standby role by rebooting.
5. However, the AMM/MM1 is running software version K.15.03.0008 in its primary flash, and the SMM/MM2 is running software version K.15.04.0002 in its secondary flash, so the SMM/MM2 pauses its reboot because of the software mismatch.
6. If a `redundancy switchover` command is executed, the AMM/MM1 will give control to the SMM/MM2, which can then finish booting and become the new AMM/MM2. This is the warm-start behavior.
7. The SMM/MM1 (former AMM/MM1) reboots, but unless the reboot is executed from secondary flash, it reboots into primary flash, which contains the older software version K.15.03.0008 with no ROM upgrade.
8. If the SMM/MM1 is forced to boot from secondary before executing the `redundancy switchover` command, it will boot into the new K.15.04.0002 software and upgrade the ROM. After the reboot that occurs with the ROM upgrade, the SMM/MM1 connects to the new AMM/MM2 and takes the standby role.

About turning off redundant management

Disable management module redundancy with two modules present

To troubleshoot a suspect management module, you may want to operate the switch with redundant management disabled by entering this command:

```
switch# no redundancy management-module
```

After executing this command, the second management module will not boot into standby mode—it is offline and no longer receives configuration file changes from the active module. The active management module updates its config file with the information that redundancy is disabled.



NOTE:

Even if redundancy has been disabled, the specified management module becomes the active management module at the next system boot if you use the `redundancy active-management` command. You are warned that you may not be using current configurations. See **Setting the active management module for next boot** on page 812.

The second management module is enabled as the active management module in the event of a hardware failure of the first management module.

Figure 183: Results of disabling redundancy on page 804 shows that redundant management was disabled.

Figure 183: *Results of disabling redundancy*

```
Switch(config)# no redundancy management-module
The other management module may reboot and it will no longer be used for system
redundancy except in the case of a hardware failure of the active
management module. Do you want to continue [y/n]? y

Switch(config)# show redundancy

Settings
-----
Mgmt Redundancy : Nonstop switching disabled
Rapid Switchover Stale Timer : 0

Statistics
-----
Failovers      : 0
Last Failover :

Slot Module Description                Status  SW Version  Boot Image
-----
MM1  Switch J9092A Management Module 8200z1  Offline K.15.01.000x Primary
MM2  Switch J9092A Management Module 8200z1  Active  K.15.01.000x Primary

FM1  Switch J9093A Fabric Module 8200z1      Enabled
FM2  Switch J9093A Fabric Module 8200z1      Enabled
s
```

Disable management module redundancy with only one module present

If you disable redundancy when there is only one management module in the switch, and then you insert a second management module, the second module never goes into standby mode. You must re-enable redundant management using this command:

```
switch# redundancy management-module
```

The currently active module remains active on boot (assuming no selftest failure) unless you make the newly inserted management module active using this command:

```
switch# redundancy active-management standby
```

The standby management module becomes the active management module.

Active management module commands

Viewing modules

The `show modules` command displays information about all the modules in the switch, as well as additional component information for the following:

- System Support Modules (SSM)—identification, including serial number
- Mini-GBICS—a list of installed mini-GBICs displaying the type, "J" number, and serial number (when available)

Syncing commands

The following CLI commands can be executed during initial syncing between the active management module and the standby management module, which occurs when the standby module is inserted or after a reboot of the system. All other CLI commands will not be executed until after the initial syncing completes.

During initial syncing, no SNMP set requests are executed, except the SNMP request for ping.

Operator commands

dir	menu	traceroute6
enable	ping	dbgstack
exit	ping6	wireless-services
link-test	show	services
logout	traceroute	

Manager commands

boot system	copy running-config	page
boot active	copy startup-config	print
boot standby	copy event-log	redo
configure	copy core-dump	reload
copy command-output	recopy	repeat
copy config tftp	display	task-monitor
copy config xmodem	end	telnet
copy crash-data	getMIB	terminal
copy crash-log	kill	walkMIB
copy flash tftp	licenses	write-terminal
copy flash xmodem	log	redundancy

Using the WebAgent for redundant management

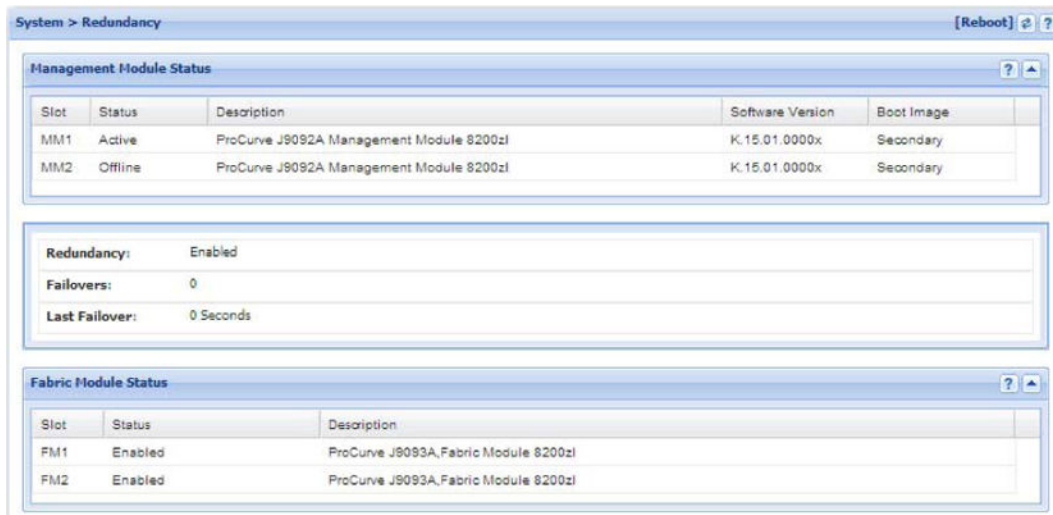
The WebAgent can be used to display information about the active and standby management modules.

Online Help is available for the WebAgent, which you can open by clicking on the question mark (?) in the upper right corner of any of the WebAgent screens. An example redundancy screen is shown in **Figure 184: Example of redundancy screen in the WebAgent** on page 806.

To access the redundancy information in the WebAgent:

1. In the WebAgent navigation panel, click System.
2. Click Redundancy. The following screen displays.

Figure 184: Example of redundancy screen in the WebAgent



Enabling or disabling redundant management

There are two modes for management module redundancy—warm standby mode (the default) and Nonstop switching mode. In warm-standby mode, the active management module does not sync continuously with the standby management module. The standby management module boots to a certain point, syncs basic files, and only finishes booting if the active management module fails or you choose to change which module is the active management module. The transition is not seamless or immediate.

In Nonstop switching mode, the standby management module is synced continuously with the active management module so that all features and config files are the same on both management modules. The standby management module is ready to become the active management module. The transition is quick and seamless; switching continues without interruption.

Syntax

```
[no] redundancy management-module [nonstop-switching]
```

Allows enabling or disabling of redundant management. The current active module continues to be the active module on boot unless you use the `redundancy active-management` command to enable redundant behavior.

(Default: Warm-standby redundancy mode)

The `nonstop-switching` parameter sets the redundancy mode to Nonstop switching.

You are prompted with "All configuration files and software images on the off-line management module will be overwritten with the data from the current active management module. During initial syncing from active to standby management module configuration changes are disallowed. Do you want to continue [y/n]?"

When the `nonstop-switching` option is **not** selected, the switch enters warm-standby redundancy mode.

You are prompted with "All configuration files and software images on the off-line management module will be overwritten with the data from the current active management module. Do you want to continue [y/n]?"

The `no` version of the command disables redundant management. You are prompted with this message: "The other management module may reboot and it will no longer be used for system redundancy, except in the case of a hardware failure of the active management module. Do you want to continue [y/n]?"

Example

The `redundancy management-module` command in **Figure 185: Enabling warm-standby redundancy** on page 807 shows **warm-standby redundant management** being **enabled**. The `show redundancy` command displays "**Mgmt Redundancy**" as **warm-standby redundancy enabled**. Management Module 1 (MM1) is the active management module and Management Module 2 (MM2) is the standby management module.

Figure 185: Enabling warm-standby redundancy

```
Switch(config)# redundancy management-module
All configuration files and software images on the off-line management
module will be overwritten with the data from the current active
management module. Do you want to continue [y/n]? y

Switch(config)# show redundancy

Settings
-----
Mgmt Redundancy : Warm-standby redundancy enabled
Rapid Switchover Stale Timer : 1

Statistics
-----
Failovers      : 0
Last Failover  :

Slot Module Description              Status  SW Version  Boot Image
-----
MM1  Switch J9092A Management Module 8200z1  Active  K.15.01.000x Secondary
MM2  Switch J9092A Management Module 8200z1  Standby K.15.01.000x Secondary

FM1  Switch J9093A, Fabric Module 8200z1      Enabled
FM2  Switch J9093A, Fabric Module 8200z1      Enabled
```

The `redundancy management-module` command in **Figure 186: Enabling nonstop-switching redundancy** on page 807 shows **Non-stop switching redundant management** being **enabled**. The `show redundancy` command displays "**Mgmt Redundancy**" as **Nonstop switching enabled**. Management Module 1 (MM1) is the standby management module and Management Module 2 (MM2) is the active management module.

Figure 186: Enabling nonstop-switching redundancy

```
Switch(config)# redundancy management-module nonstop-switching
All configuration files and software images on the off-line management module
will be overwritten with the data from the current active management module.
During initial syncing from active to standby management module configuration
changes are disallowed. Do you want to continue [y/n]? y

Switch(config)# show redundancy

Settings
-----
Mgmt Redundancy : Nonstop switching enabled
Rapid Switchover Stale Timer : 0

Statistics
-----
Failovers      : 0
Last Failover  :

Slot Module Description              Status  SW Version  Boot Image
-----
MM1  Switch J9092A Management Module 8200z1  Standby K.15.01.000x Primary
MM2  Switch J9092A Management Module 8200z1  Active  K.15.01.000x Primary

FM1  Switch J9093A Fabric Module 8200z1      Enabled
FM2  Switch J9093A Fabric Module 8200z1      Enabled
```

The `no version of the redundancy management-module` command is used to disable management module redundancy on the switch, as seen in **Figure 187: Disabling redundancy** on page 808. The `show redundancy` command displays "**Mgmt Redundancy**" as **Nonstop switching disabled**. The standby

management module in slot MM1 is now offline. The management module in slot MM2 remains the active management module.



NOTE: Hewlett Packard Enterprise recommends that you leave management module redundancy enabled. If the active management module has a hardware failure, the standby module may take over and may have an old configuration since file synchronization has not occurred when management module redundancy was disabled.

The `no redundancy management-module` command allows you to shut down a management module that is not functioning correctly without physically removing the module. If you want to remove the module, first perform the shutdown procedure as explained in **Hotswapping out the active management module** on page 800 and then remove the module.

Figure 187: *Disabling redundancy*

```
Switch(config)# no redundancy management-module
The other management module may reboot and it will no longer be used for system
redundancy except in the case of a hardware failure of the active management
module. Do you want to continue[y/n]? y

Switch(config)# show redundancy

Settings
-----
Mgmt Redundancy : Nonstop switching disabled
Rapid Switchover Stale Timer : 0

Statistics
-----
Failovers      : 1
Last Failover  : Tue Mar 19 12:42:31 2009

Slot Module Description                               Status  SW Version  Boot Image
-----
MM1  Switch J9092A Management Module 8200z1          Offline K.15.01.000x Primary
MM2  Switch J9092A Management Module 8200z1          Active  K.15.01.000x Primary
FM1  Switch J9093A Fabric Module 8200z1               Enabled
FM2  Switch J9093A Fabric Module 8200z1               Enabled
```

The `redundancy management-module` command shows Nonstop switching redundant management being enabled. The `show redundancy` command displays “Mgmt Redundancy” as Nonstop switching enabled. Management Module 1 (MM1) is the standby management module and Management Module 2 (MM2) is the active management module.

Example

Enabling non-stop switching redundancy.

```
switch# redundancy management-module nonstop-switching
All configuration files and software images on the off-line management module
will be overwritten with the data from the current active management module.
During initial syncing from active to standby management module configuration
changes are disallowed. Do you want to continue [y/n]? y
switch# show redundancy

Settings
-----
Mgmt Redundancy : Nonstop switching enabled
Rapid Switchover Stale Timer : 0
Statistics
-----
Failovers : 0
Last Failover :
Slot Module Description                               Status  SW Version  Boot Image
-----
MM1  J9092A Management Module 8200z1                  Standby K.15.01.000x Primary
```

MM2	J9092A Management Module 8200z1	Active	K.15.01.000x	Primary
FM1	J9093A Fabric Module 8200z1	Enabled		
FM2	J9093A Fabric Module 8200z1	Enabled		

The `no version of the redundancy management-module` command is used to disable management module redundancy on the switch, as seen in Figure 7-4. The `show redundancy` command displays “Mgmt Redundancy” as Nonstop switching disabled. The standby management module in slot MM1 is now offline. The management module in slot MM2 remains the active management module.



NOTE: Hewlett Packard Enterprise recommends that you leave management module redundancy enabled. If the active management module has a hardware failure, the standby module may take over and may have an old configuration since file synchronization has not occurred when management module redundancy was disabled.

The `no redundancy management-module` command allows you to shut down a management module that is not functioning correctly without physically removing the module. If you want to remove the module, first perform the shutdown procedure as explained in “Hotswapping Out the Active Management Module” on page 7-25, and then remove the module.

Example

Disabling redundancy:

```
switch# no redundancy management-module
The other management module may reboot and it will no longer be used for system
redundancy except in the case of a hardware failure of the active management
module. Do you want to continue[y/n]? y
switch# show redundancy
Settings
-----
Mgmt Redundancy : Nonstop switching disabled
Rapid Switchover Stale Timer : 0
Statistics
-----
Failovers : 1
Last Failover : Tue Mar 19 12:42:31 2009
```

Slot	Module	Description	Status	SW Version	Boot Image
MM1	J9092A	Management Module 8200z1	Offline	K.15.01.000x	Primary
MM2	J9092A	Management Module 8200z1	Active	K.15.01.000x	Primary
FM1	J9093A	Fabric Module 8200z1	Enabled		
FM2	J9093A	Fabric Module 8200z1	Enabled		

Transitioning from no redundancy to nonstop switching

While the switch is transitioning from no redundancy mode to Nonstop switching mode, no configuration changes are allowed. The management modules are syncing information during the transition period.

Setting the Rapid Switchover Stale Timer

Use the Rapid Switchover Stale Timer to set the amount of time that you want route and neighbor table entries to be re-added to the Forwarding Information Base on the active management module after a failover has occurred.

Layer 3 applications and protocols rely on existing routing information in the FIB. They restart and operate as if the switch performed a quick reset.

When a failover occurs, the interface modules and the fabric modules continue forwarding Layer 3 traffic based on the information in the FIB. The transitioning standby management module marks all routes in the FIB as “stale”. The routing protocols restart, reestablish their neighbors and reconverge. As the routes are added in again, the route’s stale designation is removed. After the Rapid Switchover Stale Timer expires, the remaining stale route entries are removed. Multicast flows are also removed; the multicast application re-adds the flows after failover completes.

Syntax

```
redundancy rapid-switchover <0-36000>
```

Allows configuration of a timer (in seconds) for Layer 3 forwarding of packets when Nonstop switching is configured for redundancy. After failover, the route and neighbor entries in the Forwarding Information Base (FIB) on the active management module are marked as stale. As new routes are added, the stale flag is reset. This continues for the number of seconds indicated by the timer, after which all remaining stale entries (entries not re-added) are removed.

A setting of zero indicates that no Layer 3 Nonstop switching behavior is wanted.

When the switch fails over, the FIB entries and corresponding hardware entries are removed. Default: 90 seconds

To display information about stale FIB routes, enter the `show tech route stale` command. The VLAN ID and IP route are shown, as well as other information used only for technical support.

Directing the standby module to become active

To make the standby management module become the active management module, use the `redundancy switchover` command. The switch will switchover after all files have finished synchronizing.

In Nonstop switching mode:

The switchover occurs quickly and seamlessly. No reboot is needed.

There is no interruption in switching operations.

In warm-standby mode:

- The switchover may take a couple of minutes if there have been recent configuration file changes or if you have downloaded a new operating system.
- The standby module finishes booting and becomes the active module.

The formerly active module becomes the standby module if it passes selftest.

Syntax

```
redundancy switchover
```

Causes a switchover to the standby module.

For Nonstop switching, the warning displays: A nonstop switching failover will occur; L2 operations will not be interrupted. This management module will now reboot and will become the standby module! You will need to use the other management module's console interface. Do you want to continue [y/n]?

In warm-standby mode the warning displays: A warm failover will occur; all networking operations will be interrupted. This management module will now reboot and will become the standby module! You will need to use the other management module's console interface. Do you want to continue [y/n]?

If management module redundancy has been disabled, or there is no standby module, or the standby module is not in standby mode, this message displays: The other management module does not exist or is not in standby mode. An example of the

```
redundancy switchover
```

command when the switch is in Nonstop switching mode is shown in the example below.

Example

Redundancy switchover command when in nonstop switching mode.

```
switch# redundancy switchover
A nonstop switching failover will occur; L2 operations will not be interrupted.
This management module will now reboot and will become the standby
module! You will need to use the other management module's console interface.
Do you want to continue [y/n]? y
This management module will now boot from the primary image and will
become the standby module! You will need to use the other management module's
console interface. Do you want to continue [y/n]? y
ROM information:
Build directory: /sw/rom/build/bmrom(t2g)
Build date: Oct 15 2009
Build time: 08:24:27
Build version: K.15.01
Build number: 13040
Select profile (primary):
Bootting Primary Software Image...
...
Standby Console>
```

Directing the standby module to become active

Syntax

```
redundancy switchover
```

Causes a switchover to the standby module.

For nonstop switching, the warning displays: "A nonstop switching failover will occur; L2 operations will not be interrupted. This management module will now reboot and will become the standby module! You will need to use the other management module's console interface. Do you want to continue [y/n]?"

In warm-standby mode the warning displays: "A warm failover will occur; all networking operations will be interrupted. This management module will now reboot and will become the standby module! You will need to use the other management module's console interface. Do you want to continue [y/n]?"

If management module redundancy has been disabled, or if there is no standby module, or if the standby module is not in standby mode, this message displays:

```
The other management module does not exist or is not in standby mode
```

Example

Figure 188: The redundancy switchover command when in nonstop switching mode on page 812 shows an example of the `redundancy switchover` command when the switch is in **nonstop switching** mode.

Figure 188: *The redundancy switchover command when in nonstop switching mode*

```
Switch(config)# redundancy switchover
A nonstop switching failover will occur; L2 operations will not be interrupted. This management module will now reboot and will become the standby module! You will need to use the other management module's console interface. Do you want to continue [y/n]? y
This management module will now boot from the primary image and will become the standby module! You will need to use the other management module's console interface. Do you want to continue [y/n]? y

ROM information:
  Build directory: /sw/rom/build/bmrom(t2g)
  Build date:      Oct 15 2009
  Build time:      08:24:27
  Build version:   K.15.01
  Build number:    13040
Select profile (primary):

Booting Primary Software Image...
.
.
.

Standby Console>
```

Setting the active management module for next boot

Syntax

```
redundancy active-management [management-module1 | management-module2 | standby]
```

The specified module becomes the active management module at the next system boot. This message displays: On the next system boot, the module specified will become active.

This command does not take effect if the standby management module has failed selftest.

management-module1	Configures management-module 1 as the active management module for the next system boot.
management-module2	Configures management-module 2 as the active management module for the next system boot.
standby	Configures the current standby module as the active management module for the next system boot if management module redundancy is enabled. If redundancy is disabled, it becomes enabled as a standby module at the next boot or failover event.

If the specified management module is not there or is in failed mode, this message displays:

```
The specified module is not present or is in failed state.
```

Example

Figure 189: Setting a management module to be active on the next boot on page 813 shows an example of setting **management module 2** to be the **active management module**.

Figure 189: *Setting a management module to be active on the next boot*

```
Switch(config)# redundancy active-management management-module2
On the next system boot, the management-module2 will become active.
HP Switch(config)# boot system
(boot occurs...)
Switch(config)# show redundancy

Settings
-----
Mgmt Redundancy : Nonstop Switching enabled
Rapid Switchover Stale Timer : 0

Statistics
-----
Failovers      : 0
Last Failover :

Slot Module Description                Status  SW Version  Boot Image
-----
MM1  Switch J9092A Management Module 8200z1  Standby K.15.01.000x Primary
MM2  Switch J9092A Management Module 8200z1  Active  K.15.01.000x Primary

FM1  Switch J9093A Fabric Module 8200z1      Enabled
FM2  Switch J9093A Fabric Module 8200z1      Enabled
```

If management module redundancy has been disabled and you specify the standby module with the `active-management` command, upon rebooting, the offline module becomes the standby module. The state of redundancy (enabled or disabled) is based on the value in the configuration file in the offline (now standby) module. The configuration files have not been synchronized if management module redundancy has been disabled. An example of making the offline management module become the standby management module when

redundancy is disabled is shown in **Figure 190: Showing the results of switching to standby module when redundancy is disabled** on page 814.

Figure 190: Showing the results of switching to standby module when redundancy is disabled

```
Switch(config)# show redundancy

Settings
-----
Mgmt Redundancy : Nonstop switching disabled
Rapid Switchover Stale Timer : 0

Statistics
-----
Failovers      : 0
Last Failover  :

Slot Module Description              Status  SW Version  Boot Image
-----
MM1  HP Switch J9092A Management Module 8200zl Active   K.15.01.000x Primary
MM2  HP Switch J9092A Management Module 8200zl Offline  K.15.01.000x Primary

FM1  HP Switch J9093A Fabric Module 8200zl Enabled
FM2  HP Switch J9093A Fabric Module 8200zl Enabled

Switch(config)# redundancy active-management standby
On the next system boot, the standby will become active.
Redundancy and Synchronization have been disabled, so it will
not have current configurations.

Switch(config)# boot
The other management module is not in standby mode and this command will
not cause a switchover. System will reboot from primary image.
Do you want to continue [y/n]? y

(After system reboots...)

Switch(config)# show redundancy

Settings
-----
Mgmt Redundancy : Nonstop switching disabled
Rapid Switchover Stale Timer : 0

Statistics
-----
Failovers      : 0
Last Failover  :

Slot  Module Description              Status  SW Version  Boot Image
-----
MM1    Switch J9092A Management Module 8200zl Standby  K.15.01.000x Primary
MM2    Switch J9092A Management Module 8200zl Active   K.15.01.000x Primary
```

Resetting the management module

The **MM Reset** button, shown in **Figure 191: The MM Reset button on the management module** on page 815, found on each management module reboots its management module. If the management module is active and management module redundancy is enabled, switchover occurs. The standby management module is notified immediately. It then takes over and becomes the active management module. If the **MM Reset** button is pressed on the standby management module, that module reboots but no other switch operations are affected. The active management module remains in control.

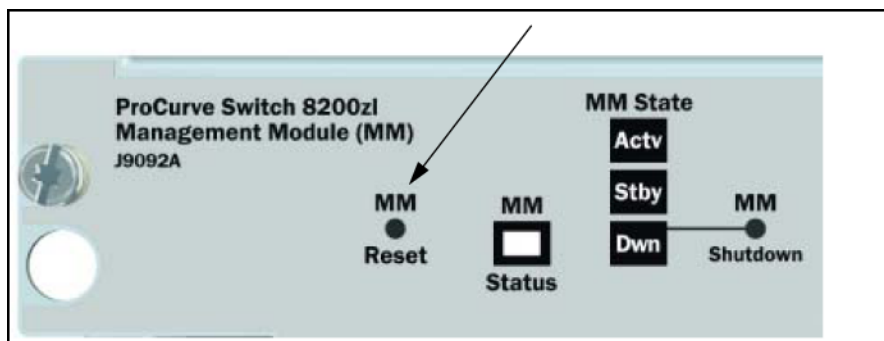
If management module redundancy is disabled, the active management module reboots and remains in control, as long as it passes selftest.



CAUTION:

Hewlett Packard Enterprise does not recommend using the **MM Reset** button to trigger a switchover. Files being copied over at the time of the reset will be aborted.

Figure 191: *The MM Reset button on the management module*



Viewing management information

Syntax

```
show modules [details]
```

Displays information about the installed modules, including:

- The slot in which the module is installed
- The module description
- The serial number
- The status
- Core dump
- Model Version

Additionally, the part number (J number) and serial number of the chassis is displayed.

Example

Status and Counters - Module Information

Chassis: 8212zl J9091A Serial Number: LP713BX004

Allow V1 Modules: Yes

		Core Mod				
Slot	Module Description	Serial Number	Status	Dump	Ver	
MM1	J9092A Management Module 8200zl	sg844bp012	Active	NO	1	
SSM	J9095A System Support Module	SG911BZ00N				
FM1	J9093A Fabric Module 8200zl	SG911BQ015	Enabled	-	1	
FM2	J9093A Fabric Module 8200zl	SG911BQ04T	Enabled	-	1	
A	J9536A 20p GT PoE+/2p SFP+ v2 z1...	SG0607T124	Up	YES	2	
B	Enh Svs v2 z1 Module		Up	YES	2	
C	J8702A 24p Gig-T z1 Module		Up	NO	1	
D	J9840A Adv Svs v2 z1 Module	ID3ZG6N008	Up	YES	2	
E	J8705A Gig-T/SFP z1 Module		Up	NO	1	
F	J9857A Adv Svs v2 z1 Module	SG2ZFNX166	Up	YES	2	
G	J8708A 4p 10G CX4 z1 Module		Up	NO	1	

H	J9154A Services zl Module	SG811GG01N	Up	NO	1
I	J9051A Wireless Edge Services zl...	SG660ZB095	Up	NO	1
J	J9545A ONE Adv Svs zl Module	SG9604P933	Up	NO	1
K	J9051A Wireless Edge Services zl...	1111	Up	NO	1
L	J9154A Services zl Module	SG811GG01M	Up	NO	1

Viewing information about the management and fabric modules

The `show redundancy` command displays information about the management and fabric modules. It displays the flash image last booted from, even if the `boot set-default` command has been set to change the flash booted from on the next boot.

Example

Figure 192: `show redundancy` command

```
Switch(config)# show redundancy
```

Settings

Mgmt Redundancy : Nonstop switching enabled
Rapid Switchover Stale Timer : 0

Statistics

Failovers : 0
Last Failover :

Slot	Module Description	Status	SW Version	Boot Image
MM1	J9092A Management Module 8200zl	Standby	K.15.01.000x	Primary
MM2	J9092A Management Module 8200zl	Active	K.15.01.000x	Secondary
FM1	J9093A Fabric Module 8200zl	Enabled		
FM2	J9093A Fabric Module 8200zl	Enabled		

The active management module was last booted from secondary flash. The standby management module was last booted from primary flash.

Viewing information about the redundancy role of each management module

The `show redundancy` command with the `detail` option displays information about the redundancy role of each management module, as well as statistical information such as how long the module has been up.

Example

Figure 193: `show redundancy detail` command

```
Switch(config)# show redundancy detail
```

Redundancy Information:

Slot	Role	Card Up Since	Role Since	Redundancy State
1	Active	11/11/09 23:40:22	11/04/09 23:33:15	Active
2	Standby	11/11/09 23:40:24	11/04/09 23:33:15	Nonstop switching

Fail-Over Log:

Slot	Role	Time	Reason
2	Standby	11/01/09 10:16:04	Standby Reset
2	Active	11/02/09 17:46:03	Hot Swap
1	Standby	11/03/09 15:39:06	Standby Reset
1	Active	11/04/09 09:25:39	Switchover

Viewing which software version is in each flash image

The `show flash` command displays which software version is in each flash image. The **Default Boot** field displays which flash image will be used for the next boot.

Example

Figure 194: `show flash` command

```
Switch(config)# show flash
Image              Size(Bytes)   Date    Version
-----
Primary Image     : 7463821   09/05/09 K.15.00.0001
Secondary Image   : 7463821   09/05/09 K.15.00.0001

Boot Rom Version: K.15.07
Default Boot    : Primary
```

Will boot from primary flash on the next boot.

Viewing system software image information for both management modules

The `show version` command displays system software image information for both management modules, as well as which module is the active management module and which is the standby management module. The **Boot Image** field displays which flash image last booted from, even if the `boot set-default` command has been set to change the flash booted from on the next boot. The output of the `show version` command when redundancy is enabled is shown in **Figure 195: show version command when redundancy is enabled** on page 817.

Example

Figure 195: `show version` command when redundancy is enabled

```
Switch(config)# show version
Management Module 1: Standby
Image stamp:      /sw/code/build/btm(t2g)
                  Mar  5 2009 13:20:59
                  K.15.01.0001
                  351
Boot Image:       Primary

Management Module 2: Active
Image stamp:      /sw/code/build/btm(t2g)
                  Mar  5 2009 13:20:59
                  K.15.01.0001
                  351
Boot Image:       Primary
```

Both management modules were booted from primary flash.

When redundancy is disabled, the output of the `show version` command changes, as shown in **Figure 196: show version command when redundancy is disabled** on page 817.

Example

Figure 196: `show version` command when redundancy is disabled

```
Switch(config)# show version
Management Module 1: Redundancy and Synchronization has been disabled;
                    enable with the 'redundancy' command.

Management Module 2: Active
Image stamp:      /sw/code/build/btm(t2g)
                  Mar  5 2009 13:20:59
                  K.15.01.0001
                  351
Boot Image:       Primary
```

Viewing the status of the switch and its management modules

The `show logging` command displays the status of the switch and its management modules. See [Displaying module events](#) on page 825. To show log messages in reverse chronological order (most recent messages displayed first), enter `show log -r`.

Example

Figure 197: `show log` command output

```
Switch(config)# show logging
Keys: -- W=Warning -- I=Information
      M=Major      D=Debug E=Error
---- Event Log listing: Events Since Boot ----
I 10/28/09 21:45:42 00061 system: AM1: -----
I 10/28/09 21:45:42 00062 system: AM1: Mgmt Module 1 went down without saving cr
ash information
M 10/28/09 21:45:42 03002 system: AM1: System reboot due to Reset Switch
I 10/28/09 21:45:42 02759 chassis: AM1: Savepower LED timer is OFF.
I 10/28/09 21:45:42 02751 chassis: AM1: LEDs for module in slot A configured ON.
I 10/28/09 21:45:42 02751 chassis: AM1: LEDs for module in slot B configured ON.
I 10/28/09 21:45:42 02751 chassis: AM1: LEDs for module in slot C configured ON.
I 10/28/09 21:45:42 02751 chassis: AM1: LEDs for module in slot D configured ON.
I 10/28/09 21:45:42 02751 chassis: AM1: LEDs for module in slot E configured ON.
I 10/28/09 21:45:42 02751 chassis: AM1: LEDs for module in slot F configured ON.
I 10/28/09 21:45:42 02751 chassis: AM1: LEDs for module in slot G configured ON.
I 10/28/09 21:45:42 02751 chassis: AM1: LEDs for module in slot H configured ON.
I 10/28/09 21:45:42 02751 chassis: AM1: LEDs for module in slot I configured ON.
I 10/28/09 21:45:42 02751 chassis: AM1: LEDs for module in slot J configured ON.
I 10/28/09 21:45:42 02751 chassis: AM1: LEDs for module in slot K configured ON.
I 10/28/09 21:45:42 02751 chassis: AM1: LEDs for module in slot L configured ON.
I 10/28/09 21:45:42 00937 chassis: AM1: Fabric 1 inserted
I 10/28/09 21:45:42 00937 chassis: AM1: Fabric 2 inserted
I 10/28/09 21:45:43 00092 dhcp: AM1: Enabling Auto Image Config Download via
DHCP and turning off auto-tftp if enabled
I 10/28/09 21:45:43 00690 udpf: AM1: DHCP relay agent feature enabled
I 10/28/09 21:45:43 02637 srcip: AM1: TACACS admin policy is 'outgoing interface'
I 10/28/09 21:45:43 02638 srcip: AM1: TACACS oper policy is 'outgoing interface'
```

AM1 = Active management module in slot 1
AM2 = Active management module in slot 2
SM1 = Standby management module in slot 1
SM2 = Standby management module in slot 2

Standby management module commands

The standby management module, by design, has very little console capability. You can use three commands—`show flash`, `show version`, and `show redundancy`. The `show redundancy` command displays when a management module is in standby mode.

Viewing redundancy status on the standby module

Use the `show redundancy` command to display redundancy status on the standby module, as shown in [Figure 198: show redundancy command for standby module](#) on page 819. This command displays the flash image last booted from, even if the `boot set-default` command has been set to change the flash booted from on the next boot.

Example

Figure 198: *show redundancy command for standby module*

```
Standby Console> show redundancy

Settings
-----
Mgmt Redundancy : Nonstop Switching Enabled
Rapid Switchover Stale Timer : 0

Statistics
-----
Failovers      : 1
Last Failover  : Mon Sep 26 09:50:40 2009

Slot Module Description              Status  SW Version  Boot Image
-----
MM1 Switch J9092A Management Module 8200z1 Active   K.15.01.0001 Secondary
MM2 Switch J9092A Management Module 8200z1 Standby  K.15.01.0001 Primary
FM1 Switch J9093A Fabric Module 8200z1 Enabled
FM2 Switch J9093A Fabric Module 8200z1 Enabled
```

The active management module was last booted from secondary flash. The standby management module was last booted from primary flash.

Viewing the flash information on the standby module

Use the `show flash` command to display the flash information on the standby module, as shown in **Figure 199: show flash command for standby module** on page 819. The **Default Boot** field displays which flash image will be used for the next boot.

Example

Figure 199: *show flash command for standby module*

```
Standby Console> show flash

Image          Size(Bytes)  Date    Version
-----
Primary Image  : 7493854   09/21/09 K.15.00.0001
Secondary Image: 7463821   09/05/09 K.15.00.0001

Boot Rom Version: K.15.07
Default Boot    : Primary
```

Will boot from primary flash on the next boot.

Viewing the version information on the standby module

Use the `show version` command to display the version information on the standby module, as shown in **Figure 200: show version command for standby module** on page 819. The **Boot Image** field displays which flash image was last booted from, even if the `boot set-default` command has been set to change the flash booted from on the next boot. Unlike executing the `show version` command on an active management module, this command shows only the running version of software on the standby management module.

Example

Figure 200: *show version command for standby module*

```
Standby Console> show version

Image stamp:    /sw/code/build/btm(t2g)
                Mar 21 2009 15:03:31
                K.15.01.0001
                1617
Boot Image:     Primary
```

Was booted from primary flash.

Setting the default flash for boot

You can set which flash image to boot from as the default image on boot by using this command:

Syntax

```
boot set-default flash [primary | secondary]
```

Sets the flash image to boot from on the next boot.

primary	Boots the primary flash image.
secondary	Boots the secondary flash image.

Example

Figure 201: boot set-default command defaulting to secondary flash on page 820 shows an example of the output when the command is used to set the boot default to secondary flash.

Figure 201: *boot set-default command defaulting to secondary flash*

```
Switch(config)# show flash
Image          Size(Bytes)   Date    Version
-----
Primary Image  : 7463821    11/05/09 K.15.01.0001
Secondary Image: 7463821    11/05/09 K.15.01.0001

Boot Rom Version: K.15.07
Default Boot    : Primary

Switch(config)# boot set-default flash secondary
This command changes the location of the default boot. This
command will change the default flash image to boot from
secondary. Hereafter, 'reload' and 'boot' commands will boot
from secondary. Do you want to continue [y/n]? y

Switch(config)# show flash
Image          Size(Bytes)   Date    Version
-----
Primary Image  : 7463821    03/05/09 K.15.01.0001
Secondary Image: 7463821    03/05/09 K.15.01.0001

Boot Rom Version: K.15.07
Default Boot    : Secondary
```

Booting the active management module from the current default flash

Use the `reload` command to boot the active management module from the current default flash (You can change the default flash with the `boot set-default` command. See [Setting the default flash for boot](#) on page 820.) Switchover occurs if redundancy is enabled and the standby management module is in standby mode. If redundancy is disabled or the standby management module is not present, the `reload` command boots the system.



NOTE: The `reload` command is a "warm" reboot; it skips the Power on Self Test routine.

Syntax

```
reload <cr>
```


Boots (warm reboot) the active management module. Switchover to the standby management module occurs if management module redundancy is enabled. If redundancy is disabled or if there is no standby management module, the reload command boots the system.



NOTE: If the running config file is different from the stored config file, you are prompted to save the config file. The reload at/after versions of this command do not display a prompt to save configuration file changes: the changes are lost on the scheduled reload.

Example

Figure 202: reload command with redundancy enabled

```
Switch(config)# reload
This command will cause a switchover to the other management module
which may not be running the same software image and configurations.
Do you want to continue [y/n]? y

(Boots....)

Switch(config)# show redundancy

Settings
-----
Mgmt Redundancy : Nonstop Switching Enabled
Rapid Switchover Stale Timer : 0

Statistics
-----
Failovers      : 1
Last Failover  : Mon April 30 09:10:11 2009

Slot Module Description                Status  SW Version  Boot Image
-----
MM1  Switch J9092A Management Module 8200zl  Active  K.15.01.0001 Primary
MM2  Switch J9092A Management Module 8200zl  Standby  K.15.01.0001 Primary
```

boot command

In redundant management systems, the boot or boot active command causes a switchover to the standby management module as long as the standby module is in standby mode. This message displays:

```
This management module will now reboot and will become the
standby module! You will need to use the other management
module's console interface. Do you want to continue [y/n]?
```


If you select **y**, switchover is initiated by the standby management module, which becomes the active management module after boot completes.

If the standby module is not in standby mode (for example, it is in failed mode or offline mode), switchover to the standby module does not occur. The system is rebooted and this message displays:

```
The other management module is not in standby mode and this
command will not cause a switchover, but will reboot the
system, do you want to continue [y/n]?
```

If the other management module is not present in the switch, the system simply reboots.

The boot command has these options.

Command	Action
<code>boot cr</code>	<p>Reboots the active management module from the flash image that is specified for the default boot. This can be changed with the <code>boot set-default flash</code> command. You can select which image to boot from during the boot process itself. (See Figure 203: The management module rebooting, showing boot profiles to select on page 822.) The switch will switchover to the standby management module.</p> <hr/> <div>  <p>NOTE: This is changed from always booting from primary flash. You are prompted with a message, which indicates the flash being booted from.</p> </div>
<code>boot active</code>	<p>Boots the active management module. The switch starts to boot from the default flash image. You can select which image to boot from during the boot process itself. (See Figure 203: The management module rebooting, showing boot profiles to select on page 822.) The switch will switchover to the standby management module. If a second management module is not present in the switch, the system is rebooted.</p>
<code>boot standby</code>	<p>Boots the standby management module. The switch does not switchover. If the standby module is not present, this message displays: "The other management module is not present."</p>
<code>boot system [flash [primary secondary]]</code>	<p>Boots both the active and standby management modules. You can specify the flash image to boot from.</p>
<code>boot set-default flash {primary secondary}</code>	<p>Sets the default flash for the next boot to primary or secondary. You see this message: "This command changes the location of the default boot. This command will change the default flash image to boot from flash chosen>. Hereafter, 'reload' and 'boot' commands will boot from flash chosen>. Do you want to continue [y/n]?"</p>

You can select a **boot profile** during the reboot process, as shown in **Figure 203: The management module rebooting, showing boot profiles to select** on page 822. If you make no selection, the boot defaults to the image displayed as the default choice (shown in parentheses.)

Figure 203: *The management module rebooting, showing boot profiles to select*

```

Boot Profiles:
0. Monitor ROM Console
1. Primary Software Image
2. Secondary Software Image

Select profile(primary): 2
Booting Secondary Software Image...

```

An example of the `boot` command with the **default flash** set to **secondary** is shown in **Figure 204: Showing boot command with default flash set to secondary** on page 823.

Figure 204: Showing boot command with default flash set to secondary

```
Switch(config)# boot set-default flash secondary
This command changes the location of the default boot. This command will
change the default flash image to boot from secondary image. Hereafter,
'reload' and 'boot' commands will boot from secondary image. Do you want
to continue [y/n]? y
Switch(config)# show flash

Image                Size(Bytes)    Date    Version
-----
Primary Image       : 7476770    11/01/09 K.15.01.0001
Secondary Image     : 7476770    11/01/09 K.15.01.0001

Boot Rom Version: K.15.07
Default Boot    : Secondary

Switch(config)# boot
This management module will now reboot from secondary and will become
the standby module! You will need to use the other management module's
console interface. Do you want to continue [y/n]?
```



CAUTION:

For a given reboot, the switch automatically reboots from the `startup-config` file assigned to the flash (primary or secondary) being used for the current reboot. The `startup-default` command can be used to set a boot configuration policy. This means that both the flash image and one of the three configuration files can be specified as the default boot policy.

Boot and reload commands with OSPFv2 or OSPFv3 enabled

It is now possible to gracefully shut down OSPFv2 or OSPFv3 routing on switches without losing packets that are in transit. OSPF neighbors are informed that the router should not be used for forwarding traffic, which allows for maintenance on the switch without interrupting traffic in the network. There is no effect on the saved switch configuration

Prior to a switch shutdown, the CLI/SNMP `reload` command or the CLI `boot` command is executed to initiate the sending of OSPF "empty Hello list" messages on the interfaces that are part of the OSPF routing configuration. After a small delay (approximately 2 seconds) that allows the messages to be transmitted on all applicable interfaces the `boot` or `reload` command continues.

Modules operating in nonstop mode

When a switch is in standalone mode and OSPF routing is enabled, the "empty Hello list" is transmitted whenever the `boot` or `reload` command is executed.

When the switch is operating in nonstop switching mode (redundant), and a single module is being reloaded or booted, the standby module notifies neighboring switches of the management module failover. If the failover fails, the "empty Hello list" is transmitted before the switch is rebooted.

When a switch is operating with multiple management modules in warm standby mode, the "empty Hello list" is sent when a `reload` or `boot` command is executed. The standby management module sends out OSPF Hello packets after becoming the active management module.

Additional commands affected by redundant management

The other existing commands operate with redundant management as shown below.


Command	Action
<code>auto-tftp</code>	If a new image is downloaded using <code>auto-tftp</code> , the active management module downloads the new software version to both the active and standby modules. Rebooting after the <code>auto-tftp</code> completes reboots the entire system.
<code>banner</code>	The banner will not be seen on the standby module, only the active module.
<code>chassislocate</code>	If the management module performs a switchover, the LED does not remain lit.
<code>clear</code>	The <code>clear crypto</code> command causes public keys to be deleted from both modules when the second module is in standby mode.
<code>console</code>	Console settings, such as mode, flow-control, and baud-rate, are the same on both management modules. There cannot be individual settings for each management module.
<code>copy</code>	Files are automatically sync'd from the active management module to the standby management module. When no parameter is specified with the <code>copy crash-data</code> or <code>copy crash-log</code> command, files from all modules (management and interface) are concatenated.
	 NOTE: If redundancy is disabled or the standby module failed selftest, the <code>copy</code> command affects only the active management module.
<code>copy core-dump [mm standby flash xmodem usb filename]</code>	<p>The <code>copy core-dump standby flash</code> command copies the standby management module's coredump to the active management module's flash. The destination file is fixed as <code>dumpM1.cor</code> or <code>dumpM2.cor</code>, depending on which module is the standby management module. The</p> <pre>copy core-dump [mm standby flash xmodem usb <filename>]</pre> <p>command copies the core file of the active management module or the standby management module to a USB flash drive or to an xmodem host.</p>
<code>core-dump management-module</code>	Enables or disables a core dump on a management module.
<code>crypto</code>	Authentication files for ssh or the https server are copied to the standby management module. The <code>clear crypto</code> command deletes the public keys from both modules when the second module is in standby mode.
<code>erase flash</code>	Erases the software version on the active and standby modules. If redundancy has been disabled, or if the standby module has not passed selftest, the flash is not erased on the standby module.

Table Continued

Command	Action
<code>erase config</code>	Erases the config file on the active and standby modules. If redundancy has been disabled, or if the standby module has not passed selftest, the config file is not erased on the standby module.
<code>erase startup-config</code>	Affects both modules if the second module is in standby mode. If redundancy has been disabled, or if the standby module has not passed selftest, the <code>startup-config</code> file is not erased on the standby module.
<code>fastboot</code>	When fastboot is enabled, this information is saved to the standby management module when the config files are sync'd. The fastboot value is used during the next boot on both modules.
<code>front-panel-securityfactory-reset password-clear password-recovery</code>	This command and its options affect only the active management module.
<code>kill</code>	Does not affect the console on the standby module.
<code>log</code>	Log messages from a formerly active management module are available on the current active management module after a switchover.
<code>password (set or clear)</code>	Affects only the active management module until a switchover occurs, at which time it affects the new active module.
<code>startup-default</code>	Affects both modules. The config file is immediately sent to the standby module and also becomes the default on that module when the next boot occurs.
<code>update</code>	Affects only the active module. The standby may become the active module when the updated active module is booted.
<code>write</code>	A <code>write memory</code> updates the config file in flash on the active module. The file is then sync'd to the standby module.

Displaying module events

Viewing log events

The log file displays messages about the activities and status of the management modules. Enter this command to display the messages:

Syntax

```
show logging [-a, -b, -r, -s, -t, -m, -e, -p, -w, -i, -d, command, filter, option-str]
```

Displays log events.

The event messages are tagged with the management module state and the management module slot (AM1 or AM2, SM1 or SM2.) Synchronization is maintained by syncing the standby management module log events with the active management module. In this way, events are available for both management modules. Only the active

management module events are shown unless you select the `-s` option. This option works like the `-a` option, except that the events for both the active management module and standby management module are displayed.

Example

Figure 205: Log file listing

```
Switch(config)# show logging
Keys:    W=Warning    I=Information
        M=Major      D=Debug  E=Error
----  Event Log listing: Events Since Boot  ----
I 10/28/09 21:45:42 00061 system:  AM1: -----
I 10/28/09 21:45:42 00062 system:  AM1: Mgmt Module 1 went down without saving
crash information
M 10/28/09 21:45:42 03002 system:  AM1: System reboot due to Reset Switch
I 10/28/09 21:45:42 02759 chassis: AM1: Savepower LED timer is OFF.
I 10/28/09 21:45:42 02751 chassis: AM1: LEDs for module in slot A configured ON.
I 10/28/09 21:45:42 02751 chassis: AM1: LEDs for module in slot B configured ON.
I 10/28/09 21:45:42 02751 chassis: AM1: LEDs for module in slot C configured ON.
I 10/28/09 21:45:42 02751 chassis: AM1: LEDs for module in slot D configured ON.
I 10/28/09 21:45:42 02751 chassis: AM1: LEDs for module in slot E configured ON.
I 10/28/09 21:45:42 02751 chassis: AM1: LEDs for module in slot F configured ON.
I 10/28/09 21:45:42 02751 chassis: AM1: LEDs for module in slot G configured ON.
I 10/28/09 21:45:42 02751 chassis: AM1: LEDs for module in slot H configured ON.
I 10/28/09 21:45:42 02751 chassis: AM1: LEDs for module in slot I configured ON.
I 10/28/09 21:45:42 02751 chassis: AM1: LEDs for module in slot J configured ON.
I 10/28/09 21:45:42 02751 chassis: AM1: LEDs for module in slot K configured ON.
I 10/28/09 21:45:42 02751 chassis: AM1: LEDs for module in slot L configured ON.
I 10/28/09 21:45:42 00937 chassis: AM1: Fabric 1 inserted
I 10/28/09 21:45:42 00937 chassis: AM1: Fabric 2 inserted
I 10/28/09 21:45:43 00092 dhcp:  AM1: Enabling Auto Image Config Download via
DHCP and turning off auto-tftp if enabled
I 10/28/09 21:45:43 00690 udpf:  AM1: DHCP relay agent feature enabled
I 10/28/09 21:45:43 02637 srcip:  AM1: TACACS admin policy is 'outgoing interface'
I 10/28/09 21:45:43 02638 srcip:  AM1: TACACS oper policy is 'outgoing interface'
```

AM1 = Active management module in slot 1
AM2 = Active management module in slot 2
SM1 = Standby management module in slot 1
SM2 = Standby management module in slot 2

Copying crash file information to another file

Crash logs for all modules are always available on the active management module. You can use the `copy crash-log` and `copy crash-data` commands to copy the information to a file of your choice.

Syntax

```
copy crash-log [slot-id | mm] tftp ip-address filename
```

Copies the crash logs of both the active and standby management modules to a user-specified file. If no parameter is specified, files from all modules (management and interface) are concatenated.

slot-id	Retrieves the crash log from the module in the specified slot.
mm	Retrieves the crash logs from both management modules and concatenates them.

Syntax

```
copy crash-data [slot-id | mm] tftp ip-address filename
```

Copies the crash data of both the active and standby management modules to a user-specified file. If no parameter is specified, files from all modules (management and interface) are concatenated.

slot-id	Retrieves the crash data from the module in the specified slot.
mm	Retrieves the crash data from both management modules and concatenates them.

Viewing saved crash information

Syntax

```
show boot-history
```

Displays the system boot log.

Example

Figure 206: *The system boot log file*

```
Switch Switch 8200zl$ show boot-history
Mgmt Module 1 -- Saved Crash Information (most recent first):
=====
Mgmt Module 1 in Active Mode went down: 11/07/09 14:48:36
Operator warm reload from CONSOLE session.

Mgmt Module 1 in Active Mode went down: 11/07/09 11:43:10
Operator cold reboot from CONSOLE session.

Mgmt Module 2 -- Saved Crash Information (most recent first):
=====
No Saved Crash Information
```

Enabling and disabling fabric modules

The fabric modules can be enabled or disabled even if they are not present in the switch. You cannot disable both fabric modules at the same time; one must be enabled.

Use this command to enable or disable the redundant fabric modules. Disabling one fabric module reduces the overall switching capacity of the series switches. On some networks where network utilization is less than 50%, you may not notice any degradation of performance.

Syntax

```
redundancy fabric-module [1 | 2] [enable | disable]
```

Allows enabling or disabling of fabric modules. (You cannot have both fabric modules disabled at the same time.)

Default: Both fabric modules are enabled.



NOTE:

The redundant fabric modules do not support nonstop switching.

Example

Figure 207: *Disabling a fabric module*

```
Switch(config)# redundancy fabric-module 2 disable
Switch(config)# show redundancy

Settings
-----
Mgmt Redundancy : Nonstop switching enabled
Rapid Switchover Stale Timer : 0

Statistics
-----
Failovers      : 0
Last Failover  :

Slot  Module  Description                               Status  SW Version  Boot Image
-----
MM1   Switch J9092A Management Module 8200z1  Active  K.15.01.000x Primary
MM2   Switch J9092A Management Module 8200z1  Standby K.15.01.000x Primary

FM1   Switch J9093A Fabric Module 8200z1      Enabled
FM2   Switch J9093A Fabric Module 8200z1      Disabled
```

Nonstop switching features

Nonstop switching features are synced at initialization of the standby management module.

802.1X and Web/MAC authentication Lockdown Security Protection	MAC Lockout/ ACLs/Qos Policies DHCP Snooping Dynamic IP Lockdown	Spanning Tree (MSTP) GVRP Loop Protection LACP Syslog UDLD Virus Throttling LLDP
---	---	---

Nonstop switching with VRRP

When Nonstop VRRP is enabled, VRRP continues to operate in its current state when a failover from the AMM to the SMM occurs. This provides an additional layer of redundancy in a switched network. VRRP state information is maintained between MMs so that VRRP operations resume immediately after failover from the AMM to SMM. Because of this quick resumption of operations there is no failover to the backup VRRP router in the network. The Master VRRP router continues to be active and operate as is.

The command for enabling Nonstop mode for VRRP must be executed in VRRP context.

Syntax

```
(vrrp#) [no] nonstop
```

Enabling Nonstop VRRP allows the VRRP router to retain control of IP addresses when the AMM fails over. The VRRP Backup router does not take control of the virtual IP addresses on the network.

The no version of the command disables Nonstop VRRP.

When Nonstop behavior is disabled, failure of the AMM on the VRRP Master results in the VRRP Backup router taking control of the virtual IP addresses on the network.

The commands must be executed in VRRP context.



NOTE:

Before this command is executed, the command `redundancy management nonstop-switching` should be configured. Any prerequisites required for VRRP configuration commands, such as IP routing being enabled, remain as required prerequisites.

Default: Disabled

Example

Example of enabling nonstop switching for VRRP and then displaying the output

This example shows nonstop VRRP being enabled. The `show vrrp config` command output displays the enabled status (see bold line below.)

```
switch(vlan-10-vrid-1)# nonstop
switch(vlan-10-vrid-1)# show vrrp config

VRRP Global Configuration Information

VRRP Enabled      : Yes
Traps Enabled     : Yes
Virtual Routers Respond to Ping Requests : Yes
VRRP Nonstop Enabled: Yes

VRRP Virtual Router Configuration Information

Vlan ID : 10
Virtual Router ID : 1

Administrative Status [Disabled] : Enabled
Mode [Uninitialized] : Backup
Priority [100] : 150
Advertisement Interval [1] : 1
Preempt Mode [True] : True
Preempt delay time : 0
Respond to Virtual IP Ping Requests [Yes] : Yes
Primary IP Address : Lowest

IP Address      Subnet Mask
-----
10.0.202.87     255.255.0.0
```

Example nonstop routing configuration

Example of configuring the owner routing switch

```
Switch C(config)# ip routing
Switch C(config)# router vrrp
Switch C(vrrp)# enable
Switch C(vrrp)# vlan 201
Switch C(vlan-201)# untag a1-a10
Switch C(vlan-201)# ip address 20.0.0.1/24
Switch C(vlan-201)# vrrp vrid 1
Switch C(vlan-201-vrid-1)# owner
Switch C(vlan-201-vrid-1)# virtual-ip-address 20.0.0.1/24
Switch C(vlan-201-vrid-1)# enable
```

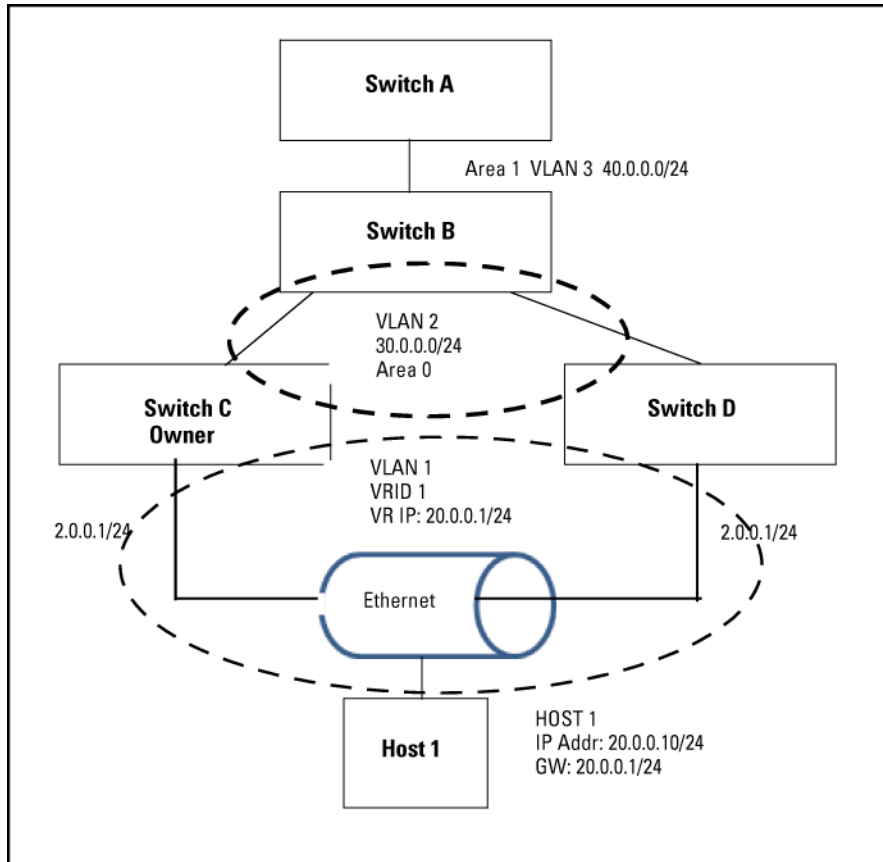
Example of configuring the backup routing switch

```
Switch D(config)# ip routing
Switch D(config)# router vrrp
Switch D(vrrp)# enable
Switch D(vrrp)# vlan 201
Switch D(vlan-201)# untag a1-a10
Switch D(vlan-201)# ip address 20.0.0.2/24
Switch D(vlan-201)# vrrp vrid 1
```

```
Switch D(vlan-201-vrid-1)# backup
Switch D(vlan-201-vrid-1)# virtual-ip-address 2.1.1.1/24
Switch D(vlan-201-vrid-1)# enable
```

The configuration is shown graphically in **Figure 208: Example of nonstop routing configuration** on page 830.

Figure 208: Example of nonstop routing configuration



Nonstop forwarding with RIP

On a Nonstop RIP router, the traffic does not get re-routed when the MM fails over. A request packet is sent on failover that asks for the router's peers to send routing updates to the requesting router. There is no loss of routed traffic.

Nonstop forwarding with OSPFv2 and OSPFv3

On a Nonstop OSPFv2 router, failover of a MM does not result in the OSPF v2 router being removed from the OSPFv2 domain. A restart request is sent by the Nonstop OSPFv2 router to the neighboring OSPFv2 routers, after which the graceful restart process begins. This behavior applies to OSPFv3 as well.

A graceful restart allows an OSPF routing switch to stay on the forwarding path while being restarted. The routing switch sends "grace LSAs" that notify its neighbors that it intends to perform a graceful restart. During the configurable grace period, the restarting switch's neighbors continue to announce the routing switch in their LSAs as long as the network topology remains unchanged. The neighbors run in "helper mode" while the routing switch restarts.

Graceful restart will fail under these conditions:

- There is a topology change during the graceful restart period. The helper switches exit helper mode and adjacencies are lost until the restarting switch rebuilds the adjacencies.
- The neighbor switches do not support helper mode.

**NOTE:**

- Configure router-id or IPv4 loopback address for OSPFv3 Non-Stop Forwarding to work on the switch.
- For OSPF nonstop switching to work without traffic loss (after switchover), redundancy rapid-switchover time should be greater than (~10secs) restart interval time of OSPF.

For more information on OSPFv2 and OSPFv3 graceful restart, see RFC 3623 and RFC 5187.

Enabling nonstop forwarding for OSPFv2

The routing switch must be in `ospf` context when enabling Nonstop forwarding for OSPFv2. To enable Nonstop forwarding, enter this command.

Syntax

```
(ospf)# [no] nonstop
```

Enables nonstop forwarding for OSPFv2.

The `no` version of the command disables nonstop forwarding.

The commands must be executed in `ospf` context.

Default: Disabled

Example of enabling nonstop forwarding for OSPFv2

```
switch(ospf)# nonstop
```

Configuring restart parameters for OSPFv2

Syntax

```
(ospf)# [no] restart interval 1-1800 [strict-lsa-checking]
```

Specify the graceful restart timeout interval in seconds.

The `no` version of the command sets the restart parameters to the default values.

Default: Disabled

interval 1-1800

The graceful restart timeout interval (grace period) in seconds. Default: 120 seconds

strict-lsa-checking

Used in OSPFv2 context to enable or disable strict LSA operation in a network segment for a neighboring router that is attempting a graceful restart. When enabled, this operation halts Helper mode support if a change in LSAs (topology change) is detected during the neighbor's restart period.

The `no` form of this command disables strict LSA operation.

Default: Strict LSA operation enabled

Viewing OSPFv2 nonstop forwarding information

To display the status of Nonstop forwarding information, enter the `show ip ospf general` command.

Example of output showing status of nonstop forwarding for OSPFv2

```
switch# show ip ospf general

OSPF General Status

OSPF protocol      :enabled
Router ID          :10.10.10.80
.
.
.
Nonstop forwarding : Enabled
Graceful Restart Interval : 500
Graceful Restart Helper Mode : Enabled
.
.
.
```

Enabling nonstop forwarding for OSPFv3

The routing switch must be in `ospf3` context when enabling Nonstop forwarding for OSPFv3. To enable nonstop forwarding, enter this command.

Syntax

```
(ospf3)# [no] nonstop
```

Enables nonstop forwarding for OSPFv3.

The `no` version of the command disables nonstop forwarding.

The commands must be executed in `ospf3` context.

Default: Disabled

Example of enabling nonstop forwarding for OSPFv3

```
switch(ospf3)# nonstop
```

Configuring restart parameters for OSPFv3

Syntax

```
(ospf3)# [no] restart interval 1-1800 [strict-lsa-checking]
```

Specify the graceful restart timeout interval in seconds.

The `no` version of the command sets the restart parameters to the default values. Default: Disabled

interval 1-1800

The graceful restart timeout interval (grace period) in seconds. Default: 120 seconds

strict-lsa-checking

Used in OSPFv3 context to enable or disable strict LSA operation in a network segment for a neighboring router that is attempting a graceful restart. When enabled, this operation halts Helper mode support if a change in LSAs (topology change) is detected during the neighbor's restart period.

The no form of this command disables strict LSA operation.

Default: Strict LSA operation enabled

Viewing OSPFv3 nonstop forwarding information

To display the status of Nonstop forwarding information, enter the `show ipv6 ospf3 general` command.

Example of output showing status of nonstop forwarding for OSPFv3

```
switch# show ipv6 ospf3 general

OSPFv3 General Status

  OSPFv3 protocol   :enabled
  Router ID        :10.10.10.80
  .
  .
  .
  Nonstop forwarding : Enabled
  Graceful Restart Interval : 500
  Graceful Restart Helper Mode : Enabled
  .
  .
  .
```

About downloading a new software version

File synchronization after downloading

After downloading a new software version to either the primary or secondary flash of the active management module, the software version is immediately copied to the corresponding flash (primary or secondary) of the standby module, unless the standby module failed selftest or redundancy was disabled with the `no redundancy management-module` command.

The configuration files, including which configuration file to use for that flash image, are synchronized. For example, if the active management module is using `config1`, the standby module is also synchronized to use `config1`.

Table 36: Example of upgrading software version K.15.01.0003 to version K.15.01.0004

Newer code to secondary flash		New code to primary flash	
	Active MM	Standby MM	
Software version downloaded to Primary flash image	K.15.01.0003	K.15.01.0003	K.15.01.0004
Software version downloaded to Secondary flash image	K.15.01.0004	K.15.01.0004	K.15.01.0003

After installing the new software to the active management module, wait a few minutes, and then verify that the standby management module has been synchronized with the new software as well (use the `show flash` command.) If the default flash for boot is set correctly, you can start the standby management module on the new

software by executing the `boot standby` command. This does not interrupt current switch operations yet. After the standby management module has rebooted and is ready for takeover in standby mode (you can verify this using the `show redundancy` command.) you can now switch over to the management module running the newer software with this command:

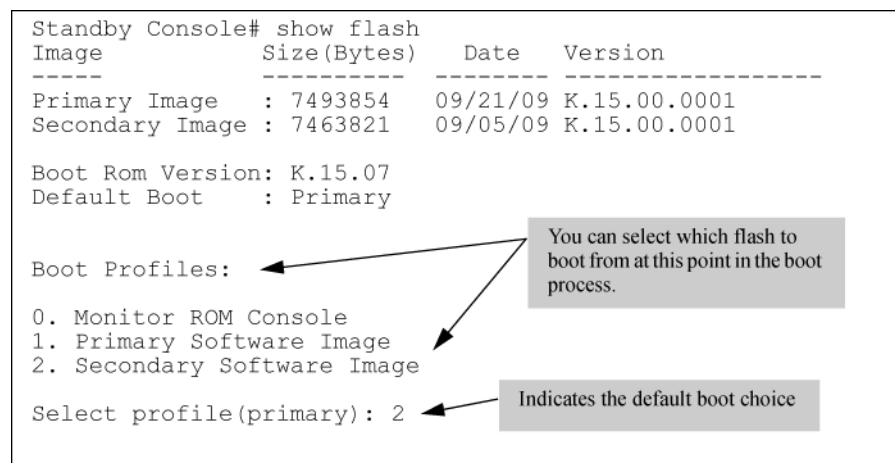
```
Switch# redundancy switchover
```

This causes a switchover to the management module that received the new software version, which becomes the active management module. This method incurs the least amount of network downtime for booting. If downtime is not an issue, use the `boot system` command. Both management modules are then running the new software version.

Potential software version mismatches after downloading

When a new software version is downloaded to the active management module, it is immediately copied to the corresponding flash (primary or secondary) in the standby management module, unless redundancy has been disabled. If the standby management module is rebooted, it will be running a different software version than the active management module. You can direct the standby module to boot from the non-corresponding flash image that has a different software version during the actual reboot process of the standby module when the prompt to select the **Boot Profile** appears, as shown in **Figure 209: Booting the standby management module to secondary flash** on page 834.

Figure 209: Booting the standby management module to secondary flash



CAUTION:

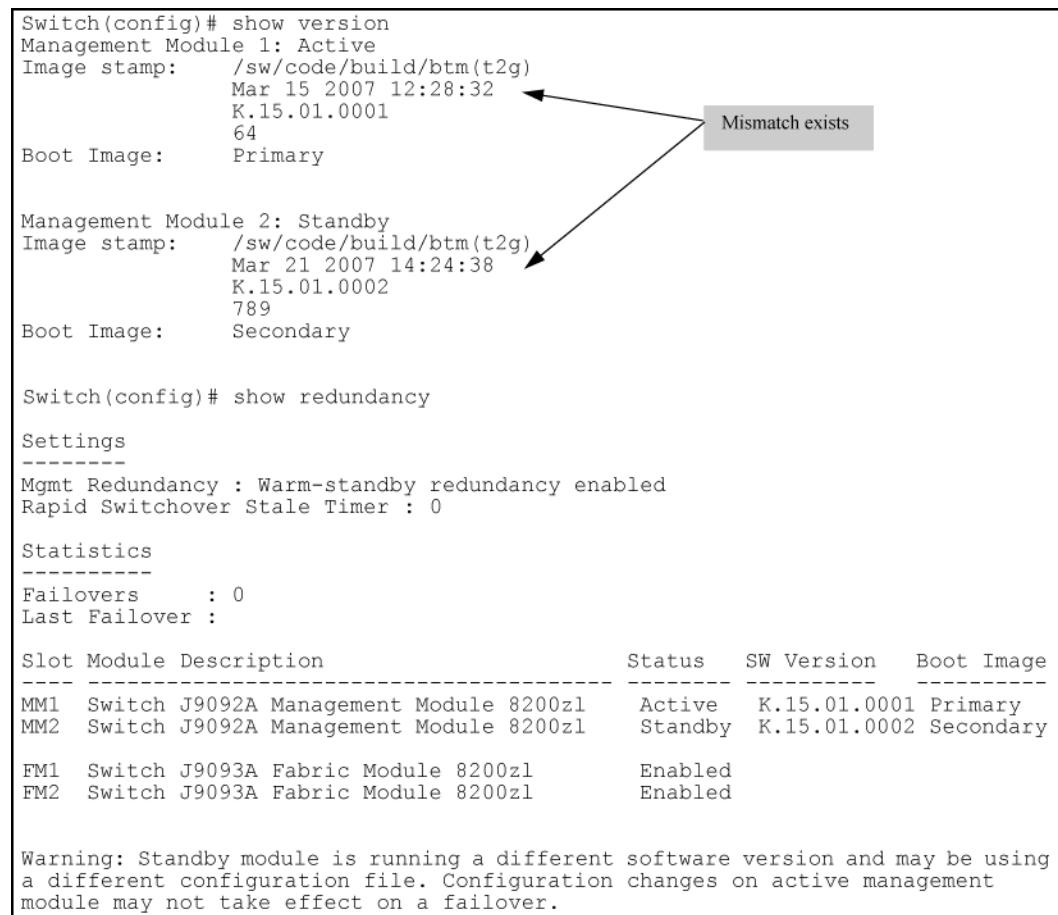
If you have booted one module out of primary flash and one module out of secondary flash, and the secondary flash is running a prior software version because the latest version was never copied over from the primary flash, you will have a software version mismatch. The configuration file may not work with that software version.

The standby module enters warm-standby redundancy mode and boots to a certain point, syncs basic files such as the config and security files, and finishes booting only if the active management module fails or you choose to change which module is the active module..

Additionally, if a switchover occurs, or if you reboot to make the standby module become the active module, any configuration file changes made may not work on the active module if it has a different software version from the standby module.

When you enter the `show redundancy` command and a software version mismatch exists, a warning message is displayed, as shown at the bottom of **Figure 210: Example of a software version mismatch between the active and standby modules** on page 835.

Figure 210: Example of a software version mismatch between the active and standby modules



```
Switch(config)# show version
Management Module 1: Active
Image stamp:      /sw/code/build/btm(t2g)
                  Mar 15 2007 12:28:32
                  K.15.01.0001
                  64
Boot Image:       Primary

Management Module 2: Standby
Image stamp:      /sw/code/build/btm(t2g)
                  Mar 21 2007 14:24:38
                  K.15.01.0002
                  789
Boot Image:       Secondary

Switch(config)# show redundancy

Settings
-----
Mgmt Redundancy : Warm-standby redundancy enabled
Rapid Switchover Stale Timer : 0

Statistics
-----
Failovers       : 0
Last Failover   :

Slot Module Description                               Status  SW Version  Boot Image
-----
MM1  Switch J9092A Management Module 8200z1          Active   K.15.01.0001 Primary
MM2  Switch J9092A Management Module 8200z1          Standby  K.15.01.0002 Secondary
FM1  Switch J9093A Fabric Module 8200z1              Enabled
FM2  Switch J9093A Fabric Module 8200z1              Enabled

Warning: Standby module is running a different software version and may be using
a different configuration file. Configuration changes on active management
module may not take effect on a failover.
```

Downloading a software version serially if the management module is corrupted

If the software version on a management module becomes corrupted, you may need to do a serial download to restore the affected module. The non-corrupted management module becomes the active module. You can then use the serial port on the corrupted management module to download a new software version. When the corrupted module is rebooted, the software version in the corrupted module is immediately overwritten by the software version in the active management module. Both management modules should now operate on the same software version.

Unsupported zl modules

ZL modules/controllers that do not support the nonstop switching feature include the following:

- HPE ONE Services zl Module (J9289A)
- HPE Threat Management Services zl Module (J9155A)
- HPE Threat Management Services zl Module with 1-year IDS/IPS subscription (J9156A)

- HPE Wireless Edge Services zl Module (J9051A) and Redundant Wireless Services zl Module (J9052A)
- HPE MSM765zl Mobility Controller (J9370A)

During a nonstop switching failover, unsupported modules will not failover seamlessly to the standby module. A nonstop switching failover causes a forced reboot on these modules. After rebooting, these modules then sync with the newly active management module and begin operation again. Module traffic is disconnected until the module completes the reboot process.

Hot swapping of management modules

Use the MM Shutdown button on the front of the management module before removal. The Shutdown button ensures that the management module is shut down properly. If nonstop switching is enabled, using the Shutdown button prior to removal ensures failover to the standby module will be successful.

Rapid routing switchover and stale timer

With K.15.01.0031, nonstop switching supports only Layer 2 functions on the switch. During a failover, traffic routed through the switch at Layer 3 will see an interruption. When a failover from active to standby occurs, the routing table is "frozen." All routes that existed at the time of the failover are marked as "stale." While dynamic routing protocols running at the time may act as if the routing protocol has been restarted and rebuilds the table, the switch on which the failover occurred continues to rout traffic using the 'stale routes.'

The "stale timer" begins counting when the switchover occurs. When the "stale timer" expires, any routes that are still marked as stale are purged from the routing table. Because of the nature of rapid routing switchover, if there are multiple simultaneous failures, network loops could occur or traffic could flow through unpredictable paths.

Use caution if setting the "rapid-switchover" timer higher than the default. To disable "rapid routing switchover" and to ensure that all routing is based on the most current routing protocol information, set the "rapid-switchover" timer to 0.

Task Usage Reporting

The task usage reporting feature provides the ability to collect and display CPU usage data (with a refresh rate of 5 seconds) of running tasks on the switch. It includes the following commands:

- `process-tracking`
: Use this command to enable/disable the task-usage collecting capability for a specific module on the switch.
- `show cpu process`
: Use this command to display task-usage statistics for a specific module.

Help text

process-tracking help

Usage: `[no] process-tracking [slot[SLOT-LIST] [<time>]] [<time>]`

Description: Enable/disable module process-tracking functionality.

show cpu help

Usage: `show cpu [<CHASSIS_MIN_CPU_UTIL_INDEX-CHASSIS_MAX_CPU_UTIL_INDEX>]`

`[slot <SLOT-LIST> [<CHASSIS_MIN_CPU_UTIL_INDEX-CHASSIS_MODULE_MAX_CPU_UTIL_INDEX>]]`

`[process [[slot <SLOT-LIST>] [refresh <iterations>]]`


```
[refresh <iterations>]
```

Description: Show average CPU utilization over the last 1, 5, and 60 seconds, or the number of seconds specified.

Use the 'slot' argument to display CPU utilization for the specified modules, rather than the chassis CPU.

Use the 'process' argument to display module process usages.

show cpu process help

Usage: show cpu process [slot [SLOT-LIST][refresh <iterations>]]

```
[refresh <iterations>]
```

Description: Display module process usage.

Command tab

process-tracking

process-tracking <tab>

slot

Enable/disable process-tracking for a module

INTEGER

Specify time to track value between 1 second to 30 seconds

<cr>

process-tracking slot <tab>

SLOT-ID-RANGE

Enter an alphabetic device slot identifier or slot range

process-tracking slot A

INTEGER

Specify time to track value between 1 second to 30 seconds

<cr>

process-tracking slot A 10 <tab>

<cr>

process-tracking 10 <tab>

<cr>

show cpu process

show cpu <tab>

process

Display process usage

slot

Display module CPU statistics

<1-300>

Time (in seconds) over which to average CPU utilization

<cr>

show cpu process <tab>

refresh

Number of times to refresh process usage display

slot

Display module process usage

<cr>

show cpu process refresh <tab>

INTEGER

Enter an integer number

show cpu process refresh 10 <tab>

<cr>

show cpu process slot <tab>

SLOT-ID-RANGE

Enter an alphabetic device slot identifier or slot range

show cpu process slot A <tab>

refresh

Number of times to refresh process usage display

<cr>

show cpu process slot A refresh <tab>

INTEGER

Enter an integer number

show cpu process slot A refresh 10 <tab>

<cr>

Command output

show cpu process

Switch# show cpu process

Process Name	Priority	Recent Time	% CPU	Time Since Last Ran	Times Ran	Max Time
Idle-1	226	10 s	41	57 us	380986	69 us
Idle-3	1	5 s	20	52 us	761665	55 us
Idle-0	226	8 s	33	19 us	380867	66 us
Sessions & I/O-24	171	926 ms	3	1 ms	150	335 ms

show cpu process slot <SLOT-LIST>

Switch# show cpu process slot A

slot a:

Process Name	Priority	Recent Time	% CPU	Time Since Last Ran	Times Ran	Max Time
System Services-2	156	253 ms	2	767 ms	12	35 ms
Idle-3	1	3 s	28	13 ms	101309	150 us
Hardware Mgmt-2	192	282 ms	2	303 us	44	12 ms
Idle-1	226	6 s	55	13 ms	50793	233 us
Idle-0	226	1 s	9	14 ms	50633	106 us

Overview

Link Aggregation Control Protocol-Multi-Active Detection (LACP-MAD) is a detection mechanism deployed by HPE Comware switches to recover from a breakup of the Intelligent Resilient Framework (IRF) stack due to link or other failure.

LACP-MAD is implemented by sending extended LACP data units (LACPDUs) with a type length value (TLV) that conveys the active ID of an IRF device. The active ID is identical to the member ID of the master and is thus unique to the device. When LACP MAD detection is enabled, the members exchange their active IDs by sending extended LACPDUs.

- When the IRF device operates normally, the active IDs in the extended LACPDUs sent by all members are the same, indicating that there is no multiactive collision.
- When there is a breakup in the IRF chassis, the active IDs in the extended LACPDUs sent by the members in different IRF devices are different, indicating that there are multiactive collisions.

LACP-MAD passthrough helps IRF-capable devices detect multiaccess and take corrective action. These devices do not initiate transmission of LACP-MAD frames or participate in any MAD decision-making process. These devices forward LACP-MAD TLVs received on one interface to the other interfaces on the trunk. LACP-MAD passthrough can be enabled for 24 LACP trunks. By default, LACP-MAD passthrough is disabled.



NOTE: This Appendix is applicable only if the customer is using a hybrid deployment of Comware and ArubaOS-Switches.

LACP-MAD Passthrough Configuration

interface lacp

Syntax

```
[no] interface <PORT-LIST> lacp [mad-passthrough [enable|disable]|active|passive|key <KEY>]
```

Description

Defines whether LACP is enabled on a port, and whether it is in active or passive mode when enabled. When LACP is enabled and active, the port sends LACP packets and listens to them. When LACP is enabled and passive, the port sends LACP packets only if it is spoken to.

When LACP is disabled, the port ignores LACP packets. If the command is issued without a mode parameter, 'active' is assumed. During dynamic link aggregation using LACP, ports with the same key are aggregated as a single trunk. MAD passthrough applies only to trunks and not to physical ports.

Parameters

mad-passthrough

Applies only to trunks and not to physical ports.

enable

Allows the port to send LACP packets.

disable

When LACP is disabled, the port ignores LACP packets.

active

When LACP is enabled and active, the port sends LACP packets and listens to them. Defaults to active.

passive

When LACP is enabled and passive, the port sends LACP packets only if it is spoken to.

key <KEY>

During dynamic link aggregation using LACP, ports with the same key are aggregated as a single trunk.

show lacp

Syntax

```
show lacp [counters [<PORT-LIST>] | local [<PORT-LIST>] |peer [<PORT-LIST>] | distributed | mad-passthrough [counters [<PORT-LIST>]]]
```

Description

Show LACP-MAD passthrough configuration on LACP trunks, or show LACP-MAD passthrough counters on ports.

Parameters**counters**

Display the various counters related to LACP ports.

local

Display the various local information related to LACP ports.

peer

Display the LACP peer port information.

distributed

Show distributed LACP information.

mad-passthrough

Display the various counters related to LACP MAD passthrough ports.

Usage

```
show lacp mad-passthrough counters [<PORT-LIST>]
```

clear lacp statistics

Syntax

```
clear lacp statistics
```

Description

Clear all LACP statistics including MAD passthrough counters. Resets LACP packets sent and received on all ports.

Smart Rate is a new technology designed to enable higher port link speeds on legacy cabling where an Ethernet RJ45 port type can link at 1Gbps, 2.5Gbps, 5Gbps, or 10Gbps.

When situations occur where a network link establishes at a lower than expected speed (or not at all) due to marginal or bad cabling, the Smart Rate port technology allows administrators to triage cabling issues and determine root causes of lower than expected performance.

Smart Rate Technology is available on the following products:

- Switch 5400R v3 z12 modules (J9991A, J9995A)
- Switch 5400R chassis switch bundles (JL002A)

Show Smart Rate port

Syntax

```
show interface PORT-LIST smartrate
```

Displays port diagnostics on a Smart Rate port.

Unlinked Smart Rate port

```
show interface C5 smartrate
```

Status and Counters - Smart Rate information for Port C5

```
Model           : 0x03a1
Chip            : 0xb4b3
Firmware (major) : 0x0002
Firmware (minor) : 0x0003
Firmware (candidate) : 0x0005
Firmware (provision) : 0x0001

      Chan1   Chan2   Chan3   Chan4 (in db)
Current SNR  9.000000  6.700000  3.500000  9.200000
Minimum SNR  9.000000  6.700000  3.500000  9.200000

CRC8 errors:      0
LDPC errors:      0
LDPC 1 iteration: 27620089
LDPC 2 iterations: 954117
LDPC 3 iterations: 0
LDPC 4 iterations: 0
LDPC 5 iterations: 0
LDPC 6 iterations: 0
LDPC 7 iterations: 0
LDPC 8 iterations: 0

23  Number of fast retrains requested by Local Device.
32  Number of fast retrains requested by Link Partner.
```

```
150 Accumulated time (ms) spent in fast retrain since last AN.
9  Number of RFI Training Link Recovery Events since last AN.
3  Number of Link Recover Events since last AN.
```

```
Established link speed          : 5000Mbps
Number of attempts to establish link : 5
Uptime since link was last established (ms) : 5099
```

Local port advertised speeds

```
1000Mbps 2500Mbps 5000Mbps 10Gbps
No      Yes      Yes      No
```

Link partner speed capability

```
1000Mbps 2500Mbps 5000Mbps 10Gbps
Yes      Yes      Yes      No
```

Link Partner matching vendor: Yes

Smart Rate port that is linked at 1Gbps

```
show interface C5 smartrate
```

Status and Counters - Smart Rate information for Port C5

```
Model          : 0x03a1
Chip           : 0xb4b3
Firmware (major)      : 0x0002
Firmware (minor)     : 0x0003
Firmware (candidate)  : 0x0005
Firmware (provision)  : 0x0001
```

```
Established link speed          :1000Mbps
Number of attempts to establish link :5
Uptime since link was last established (ms) : 5099
```

Local port advertised speeds

```
1000Mbps 2500Mbps 5000Mbps 10Gbps
No      No      No      No
```

Link partner speed capability

```
1000Mbps 2500Mbps 5000Mbps 10Gbps
Yes      Yes      Yes      Yes
```

Link Partner matching vendor: Yes

Rate-Limiting — GMB features when Fast-Connect SmartRate ports are configured

When Rate-Limiting or Guaranteed Minimum Bandwidths are configured for 5Gbps ports, the granularity of percentage-based rates for the 5Gbps speed is in steps of 2%. For example, a 1% rate-limit for a 5Gbps port will function as a 2% limit while a 5% limit will function as a 6% limit.

The Guaranteed Minimum Bandwidth profiles will show the same behavior. For example on an 8-queue system, the actual default servicing profile will be 2%, 4%, 30%, 10%, 10%, 10%, 16%, and 20%. The CLI and SNMP

values for these ports will show what the customer configured, but the actual hardware results will be in steps of 2%.

This limitation only applies to 5Gbps ports. Ports running at 2.5Gbps have the same 1% granularity as all previously-offered port speeds.

Error messages

When the `show interface PORT-LIST smartrate` command is run on a non-Smart Rate port, the command will fail with an error message similar to the following: `Port A1: This command is only applicable to Smart Rate ports.`

When the `show interface PORT-LIST smartrate` command is run on a Smart Rate port, but is unable to retrieve all results the command will fail with an error message similar to the following: `Port A1: This command did not complete successfully. Please try again.`

Speed-duplex

Syntax

```
interface PORT-LIST speed-duplex
```

Options

auto	Auto-negotiate link parameters.
auto-100	100 Mbps only, auto-negotiate link parameters.
auto-1000	1000 Mbps only, auto-negotiate link parameters.
auto-2500	2500 Mbps only, auto-negotiate link parameters.
auto-5000	5000 Mbps only, auto-negotiate link parameters.
auto-2500-5000	2500 or 5000 Mbps only, auto-negotiate link parameters.
auto-10g	10 Gbps only, auto-negotiate link parameters.

Limitations on 5Gbps ports

For 5Gbps ports, when the customer has Rate-Limiting or Guaranteed Minimum Bandwidths configured, the granularity of percentage-based rates for the 5Gbps speed is in steps of 2%. For example a 1% rate-limit for a 5Gbps port will function as a 2% limit, a 5% limit will function as a 6% limit. The Guaranteed Minimum Bandwidth profiles will show the same behavior. On an 8-queue system, the actual default servicing profile will be 2% 4% 30% 10% 10% 10% 16% 20%. The CLI and SNMP values for these ports will show what the customer configured, but the actual hardware results will be in steps of 2%.



NOTE:

This limitation only applies to the 5Gbps ports. Ports running at 2.5Gbps have a 1% granularity in port speeds.

Error messages

- On ports that do not support the respective speed-duplex option, the command will fail with an error message similar to the following:
Value `auto-10` is not applicable to port E1.
- The following speed-duplex options are not available on switch platforms that do not have Smart Rate ports.
 - `auto-2500`
 - `auto-5000`
 - `auto-2500-5000`

100 Mbps Support on Smart Rate ports

Overview

Smart Rate ports are designed to link devices at 1 Gbps, 2.5 Gbps, 5 Gbps, and 10 Gbps. Older devices such as legacy printers can run at maximum speed of 100 Mbps. To address this issue, the speed duplex auto-100 enhancement is introduced on Smart-Rate ports. Depending on the device model, Smart Rate ports can operate on 100Mbps speed.



NOTE: If MACsec is configured on a port, we cannot configure speed duplex as auto-100 for that particular port, and conversely.

100Mbps is supported on auto speed duplex mode by default.

100 Mbps support on Smart Rate ports is available for 5400R, 3810M and 2930M.

interface speed-duplex auto-100

Syntax

```
interface <PORT> speed-duplex auto-100
```

Description

Configures speed option to support Auto-100 on Smart Rate ports.

Command context

config

Parameter

PORT

Specify a port number.

Example

```
switch(config)#interface A1 speed-duplex auto-100
switch(config)#show interface brief
Status and Counters - Port Status
```

Port	Type	Intrusion		Status	Mode	MDI Mode	Flow Ctrl	Bcast Limit
		Alert	Enabled					
A1	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Up	100FDx	MDI	off	0
A2	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Up	100FDx	Auto	off	0

A3	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	Auto off	0
A4	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	Auto off	0

show interfaces smartrate

Syntax

```
show interfaces <PORT-LIST> smartrate
```

Description

Displays Smart Rate diagnostic information.

Parameter

PORT-LIST

Specify a port number or a list of ports.

Examples

```
switch(config)#show interfaces A1 smartrate
```

Status and Counters - Smart Rate information for Port A1

```
Model           : 0x03a1
Chip            : 0xb582
Firmware        : 3.3.e
Provisioning     : 0x0002
```

```
Established link speed      : 100BASE-T
Number of attempts to establish link : 1
Uptime since link was established : 30 seconds
```

Local Port advertised capabilities

100MBT	1.0GBT	2.5G NBT	5.0G NBT	2.5GBT	5.0GBT	10GBT
Yes	No	No	No	No	No	No

Link Partner advertised capabilities

100MBT	1.0GBT	2.5G NBT	5.0G NBT	2.5GBT	5.0GBT	10GBT
Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes

```
switch(config)# show interface A2 smartrate
```

Status and Counters - Smart Rate information for Port A2

```
Model           : 0x03a1
Chip            : 0xb582
Firmware        : 3.3.e
Provisioning     : 0x0002
```

```
Established link speed      : 100BASE-T
Number of attempts to establish link : 1
Uptime since link was established : 30 seconds
```

Local Port advertised capabilities

100MBT	1.0GBT	2.5G NBT	5.0G NBT	2.5GBT	5.0GBT	10GBT
Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

Link Partner advertised capabilities

100MBT	1.0GBT	2.5G NBT	5.0G NBT	2.5GBT	5.0GBT	10GBT
Yes	No	No	No	No	No	N0

show interface config

Syntax

show interface config

Description

Displays port settings.

Example

```
switch#(config) show interface config
Port Settings
```

Port	Type	Enabled	Mode	Flow Ctrl	MDI
A1	10GbE-T	Yes	Auto-100	Disable	Auto
A2	10GbE-T	Yes	Auto	Disable	Auto
A3	10GbE-T	Yes	Auto	Disable	Auto
A4	10GbE-T	Yes	Auto	Disable	Auto

show running-config

Syntax

show running-config

Description

The Smart Rate port auto-100 is part of the show running config output.

Example

```
switch(config)# show running-config
Running configuration:

; JL320A Configuration Editor; Created on release #WC.16.06.0000x
; Ver #13:03.f8.1c.9b.3f.bf.bb.ef.7c.59.fc.6b.fb.9f.fc.ff.ff.37.ef:49

module 1 type jl320a
flexible-module A type JL081A
interface A1
    speed-duplex auto-100
exit
```

Downgrade with CLI reboot command

Procedure

1. If the Smart Rate port speed configuration is auto-100, boot system flash primary command will prompt user to change the auto-100 to other configuration.
- ```
switch# boot system flash primary
This will reboot the system from the primary image.
```

```
Continue (y/n)? y
```

2. To proceed, select **y**.

```
Firmware downgrade is not allowed when smartrate port is configured with
auto-100. Please change the speed-duplex to other configuration.
```

3. To reject, select **n**.

## Downgrade without CLI `reboot` command (power cycle)

### Procedure

1. **Reboot** with `auto-100` mode configuration on Smart Rate port, the following events occur:
  - a. The speed duplex status is shown blank when you execute the `show interface brief` command.
  - b. The port status is displayed as down.
2. Save the configuration and again **reboot**. The preconfigured auto-100 restores the Smart Rate port to auto mode, thus restoring its functionality.

## Introduction

The Networking 6th Generation Switch ASIC based module creates compatibility between v2 and v3 blades on the 5400R Chassis Switches. When the 5400R Chassis Switch platform detects a mix of v2 and v3 blades, the v3 feature will default the platform to v2 behavior. The default behavior is v2.

The compatibility mode of v2 and v3 modules are controlled by configuration. When the compatibility mode is disabled, v2 modules in the system will be disabled.

## Commands

Configuration commands enable/disable the 5400R Chassis Switch platform v2/v3 interoperability.

### Configuration setup

#### Syntax

```
[no] allow-v2-modules
```

Enables support for V2 modules. When enabled, V3 modules will operate in V2-compatibility mode. When disabled, V3 modules will have full functionality and the ports of any V2 modules will be non-operable. Enabling the V2 module support erases the current configuration of the device and reboots the device. Whereas, disabling the V2 module support clears all V2 module specific configuration from startup configuration and reboots the device.

#### allow-v2-modules

Enable support for V2 modules.

#### Enabled/Disabled state

When V2 compatibility mode is disabled from an enabled state, the below message is displayed for user input.

```
Switch(config)# no allow-v2-modules
This command will disable all V2 modules and reboot the switch.
Continue (y/n)?
```

When V2 compatibility mode is enabled from disabled state, the below message is displayed for user input.

```
Switch(config)# allow-v2-modules
This command will erase the current configuration of the switch and reboot it.
Continue (y/n)?
```

## V3 to V2 compatibility

On an Aruba 5400R switch loaded, when switching from v3 only mode to v2 compatibility mode, the V2 specific module entries and related configuration options are retained. The switch erases the entire configuration when moving from V3 only mode to V2 mode.

### allow-v2-modules

#### Syntax

```
allow-v2-modules
```

#### Description

Enables the use of v2 modules in the switch. Before enabling v2 support, the command determines whether any of the v3-native features are configured. This command is active only in v3-native mode.

V3 modules cannot be changed to v2-compatibility mode when there are v3-specific configuration settings. Use the command 'show running-config v3-specific' to display the settings that must be changed before enabling v2 module support.

Unconfigure all v3-only features before moving to compatibility mode.

If the v3-native configuration is not present, the device reboots with the non-v3 configuration and issues the following message: This command will save the running configuration and reboot the system with all V3 modules operating in v2-compatibility mode. Continue (y/n)?

#### Options

##### erase

Erases the entire configuration and reboots the switch with either the custom default configuration (if it is available) or the factory default configuration. The command with the erase option is active only in v3-native mode.

#### Usage

```
allow-v2-modules erase
```

#### More Information

To list the v3-native configurations present in the current configuration, see [show running-config v3-specific](#) on page 850.

### show running-config v3-specific

#### Syntax

```
show running-config v3-specific
```

#### Description

Provides a list of V3-native configurations present in the current configuration.

##### show running-config v3-specific

```
vsf
 enable domain 40
 member 1
 type "J9850A" mac-address 645106-8a0400
 priority 200
 link 1 1/A24
 link 1 name "I-Link1_1"
```

```

 exit
 member 2
 type "J9850A" mac-address 40a8f0-9e6600
 priority 150
 link 1 2/A24
 link 1 name "I-Link2_1"
 exit
exit
oobm
 vsf member 1
 ip address dhcp-bootp
 exit
 vsf member 2
 ip address dhcp-bootp
 exit
exit
VSF-Switch#

```

## Show commands

The `show module` command shows the configuration status of allowed V2 modules. The output will be available only for the 5400R Chassis Switches.

## Show system

### Syntax

```
show system
```

### Show system output

#### Status and Counters - General System Information

```

System Name : 5406Rz12
System Contact :
System Location :
Allow V2 Modules : Yes
MAC Age Time (sec) : 300
Time Zone : 0
Daylight Time Rule : None
Software revision : KB.15.16.0000x
ROM Version : KB.15.Z1.0012
Opacity Shields : Not Installed
Base MAC Addr : 40a8f0-9d6f00
Serial Number : SG44G490FZ

Up Time : 7 mins
CPU Util (%) : 0
Memory - Total : 763,846,656
Memory - Free : 646,757,632

IP Mgmt - Pkts Rx : 106
 Pkts Tx : 111
 Lowest : 4828
 Missed : 0
Packet - Total : 6750
Buffers - Free : 4830

```

## Show system information

### Syntax

```
show system information
```

## Show system information output

### Status and Counters - General System Information

```
System Name : 5406Rz12
System Contact :
System Location :
Allow V2 Modules : Yes
MAC Age Time (sec) : 300
Time Zone : 0
Daylight Time Rule : None
Software revision : KB.15.16.0000x Base MAC Addr : 40a8f0-9d6f00
ROM Version : KB.15.Z1.0012 Serial Number : SG44G490FZ
Opacity Shields : Not Installed

Up Time : 7 mins Memory - Total : 763,846,656
CPU Util (%) : 0 Free : 646,757,632

IP Mgmt - Pkts Rx : 106 Packet - Total : 6750
 Pkts Tx : 111 Buffers Free : 4830
 Lowest : 4828
 Missed : 0
```

## Show running configuration

The `show running-config` command shows the entry when disabled. This output will be available on 5400R Chassis Switches only.

### Syntax

```
show running-config
```

### Show running configuration output

```
; J9850A Configuration Editor; Created on release #KB.15.16.0000x
; Ver #05:18.7f.ff.3f.ef:4d
hostname "Switch"
module A type j9987a
module F type j9993a
no allow-v2-modules
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
oobm
 ip address dhcp-bootp
 exit
vlan 1
 name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
 untagged A1-A24,F1-F8
 ip address dhcp-bootp
 exit
```



## Event logging

**Table 37: Interoperability messages**

| Event                                                                 | Message                                                          |                                                                                                             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| When switch is rebooting after a change in the interoperability mode. | V2/V3 interoperability message                                   | M 05/23/14 05:50:15 00064 system: Rebooting the device because the module compatibility mode has changed.   |
|                                                                       | V1/V2 Interoperability message for reference                     | M 05/23/14 05:50:15 00064 system: Rebooting for interOperabilityMode change                                 |
|                                                                       | Modified V1/V2 interoperability message ( same as V2/V3 message) | M 05/23/14 05:50:15 00064 system: : Rebooting the device because the module compatibility mode has changed. |

## Version 2 — version 3 blade compatibility on the 5400R switch

### Allow V2 command

The CLI commands `allow-v2-modules` and `[no] allow-v2-modules` enable the configuration for compatibility of V3 and V2 modules to operate simultaneously. Disabling compatibility will disallow V3 and V2 modules from operating simultaneously, allowing only V3 modules to operate.

#### Syntax

```
[no] allow-v2-modules
```

Enable/disable support for V2 modules.

### Validation rules

| Validation                                          | Error/Warning/Prompt                                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Compatibility Mode enabled – ‘no allow-v2-modules’  | Prompt: ‘All V2 modules will be disabled. Continue [y/n] ?’                         |
| Compatibility Mode enabled – ‘allow-v2-modules’     | No prompt                                                                           |
| Compatibility Mode disabled – ‘no allow-v2-modules’ | No prompt                                                                           |
| Compatibility Mode disabled – ‘allow-v2-modules’    | Prompt: ‘This will erase the configuration and reboot the switch. Continue [y/n] ?’ |

### Show commands

#### Syntax

```
show system
```

Enable/disable support for V2 modules.

## Show system

```
Status and Counters - General System Information
System Name : 5406z12
System Contact :
System Location :
Allow V2 Modules : Yes
```

## Event Log

| Event                                            | Message                                   |
|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| Compatibility Mode disabled – 'allow-v2-modules' | Rebooting for interOperabilityMode change |

## Overview

The switch assigns MAC addresses in these areas:

- For management functions, one Base MAC address is assigned to the default VLAN (VID = 1.) (All VLANs on the switches covered in this guide use the same MAC address.)
- For internal switch operations: One MAC address per port.

MAC addresses are assigned at the factory. The switch automatically implements these addresses for VLANs and ports as they are added to the switch.

**NOTE:**

The switch's base MAC address is also printed on a label affixed to the switch.

## Determining MAC addresses

Use the CLI to view the switch's port MAC addresses in hexadecimal format.

Use the menu interface to view the switch's base MAC address and the MAC address assigned to any VLAN you have configured on the switch. (The same MAC address is assigned to VLAN1 and all other VLANs configured on the switch.)

**NOTE:**

The switch's base MAC address is used for the default VLAN (VID =1) that is always available on the switch. This is true for dynamic VLANs as well; the base MAC address is the same across all VLANs.

## Viewing the MAC addresses of connected devices

### Syntax

```
show mac-address [<PORT-LIST> | mac-addr | vlan vid]
```

Lists the MAC addresses of the devices the switch has detected, along with the number of the specific port on which each MAC address was detected.

[<PORT-LIST>]

Lists the MAC addresses of the devices the switch has detected, on the specified ports.

[mac-addr]

Lists the port on which the switch detects the specified MAC address. Returns the following message if the specified MAC address is not detected on any port in the switch:

MAC address mac-addr not found.

[vlan vid]

Lists the MAC addresses of the devices the switch has detected on ports belonging to the specified VLAN, along with the number of the specific port on which each MAC address was detected.

## Viewing the switch's MAC address assignments for VLANs configured on the switch

The Management Address Information screen lists the MAC addresses for:

### Procedure

1. Base switch (default VLAN; VID=1)
2. Any additional VLANs configured on the switch.

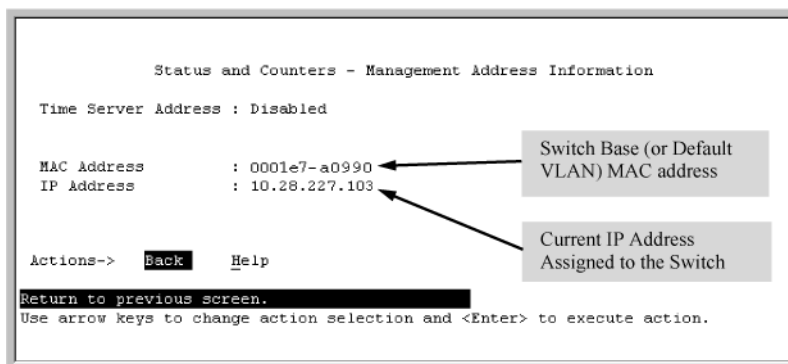
Also, the Base MAC address appears on a label on the back of the switch.



**NOTE:** The Base MAC address is used by the first (default) VLAN in the switch. This is usually the VLAN named "DEFAULT\_VLAN" unless the name has been changed (by using the VLAN Names screen.) On the switches covered in this guide, the VID (VLAN identification number) for the default VLAN is always "1," **and cannot be changed**

- From the Main Menu, select
- **1. Status and Counters**
- **2. Switch Management Address Information**
- If the switch has only the default VLAN, the following screen appears. If the switch has multiple static VLANs, each is listed with its address data.

**Figure 211:** Example of the Management Address Information screen



## Viewing the port and VLAN MAC addresses

The MAC address assigned to each switch port is used internally by such features as Flow Control and the spanning-tree protocol. Using the `walkmib` command to determine the MAC address assignments for individual ports can sometimes be useful when diagnosing switch operation.

**Table 38:** *Switch series' and their MAC address allocations*

| Switch series | MAC address allocation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 8212zl        | The switch allots 24 MAC addresses per slot. For a given slot, if a four-port module is installed, the switch uses the first four MAC addresses in the allotment for that slot, and the remaining 18 MAC addresses are unused. If a 24-port module is installed, the switch uses the first 24 MAC addresses in the allotment, and so on. |
| All Models    | The switch's base MAC address is assigned to VLAN (VID) 1 and appears in the <code>walkmib</code> listing after the MAC addresses for the ports. (All VLANs in the switch have the same MAC address.)                                                                                                                                    |



**NOTE:** This procedure displays the MAC addresses for all ports and existing VLANs in the switch, regardless of which VLAN you select.

### Example

A 8212zl switch with the following module configuration shows MAC address assignments similar to those shown in **Figure 212: Example of Port MAC address assignments on a switch** on page 858:

- A 4-port module in slot A, a 24-port module in slot C, and no modules in slots B and D
- Two non-default VLANs configured

**Figure 212:** Example of Port MAC address assignments on a switch

|                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Switch# walkmib ifphysaddress         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| ifPhysAddress.1 = 00 12 79 88 b1 ff   | ifPhysAddress.1 - 4: Ports A1 - A4 in Slot A<br>(Addresses 5 - 24 in slot A are unused.)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| ifPhysAddress.2 = 00 12 79 88 b1 fe   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| ifPhysAddress.3 = 00 12 79 88 b1 fd   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| ifPhysAddress.4 = 00 12 79 88 b1 fc   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| ifPhysAddress.49 = 00 12 79 88 b1 cf  | ifPhysAddress.49 - 72: Ports C1 - C24 in Slot C<br>(In this example, there is no module in slot B.)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| ifPhysAddress.50 = 00 12 79 88 b1 ce  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| ifPhysAddress.51 = 00 12 79 88 b1 cd  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| ifPhysAddress.52 = 00 12 79 88 b1 cc  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| ifPhysAddress.53 = 00 12 79 88 b1 cb  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| ifPhysAddress.54 = 00 12 79 88 b1 ca  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| ifPhysAddress.55 = 00 12 79 88 b1 c9  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| ifPhysAddress.56 = 00 12 79 88 b1 c8  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| ifPhysAddress.57 = 00 12 79 88 b1 c7  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| ifPhysAddress.58 = 00 12 79 88 b1 c6  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| ifPhysAddress.59 = 00 12 79 88 b1 c5  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| ifPhysAddress.60 = 00 12 79 88 b1 c4  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| ifPhysAddress.61 = 00 12 79 88 b1 c3  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| ifPhysAddress.62 = 00 12 79 88 b1 c2  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| ifPhysAddress.63 = 00 12 79 88 b1 c1  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| ifPhysAddress.64 = 00 12 79 88 b1 c0  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| ifPhysAddress.65 = 00 12 79 88 b1 bf  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| ifPhysAddress.66 = 00 12 79 88 b1 be  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| ifPhysAddress.67 = 00 12 79 88 b1 bd  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| ifPhysAddress.68 = 00 12 79 88 b1 bc  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| ifPhysAddress.69 = 00 12 79 88 b1 bb  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| ifPhysAddress.70 = 00 12 79 88 b1 ba  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| ifPhysAddress.71 = 00 12 79 88 b1 b9  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| ifPhysAddress.72 = 00 12 79 88 b1 b8  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| ifPhysAddress.362 = 00 12 79 88 a1 00 | ifPhysAddress.362 Base MAC Address (MAC Address for default VLAN; VID = 1)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| ifPhysAddress.461 = 00 12 79 88 a1 00 | ifPhysAddress.461 and 488 Physical addresses for non-default VLANs configured on the switch. On the switches covered by this manual, all VLANs use the same MAC address as the Default VLAN. Refer to "Multiple VLAN Considerations" in the "Static LANs (VLANs)" chapter of the <i>Advanced Traffic Management Guide</i> for your switch. |
| ifPhysAddress.488 = 00 12 79 88 a1 00 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| ifPhysAddress.4456 =                  | Virtual                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |



**NOTE:** When configuring an "out" monitor on a VLAN or an interface to a remote mirror, the mirrored packet will always be untagged when the original packet arrives on a zIV2 module.

When configuring a "both" monitor on an interface to a remote mirror, tags will not be present in the mirrored packet in these specific situations:

- For an interface monitor, packets transmitted by the monitored port that originally arrived on a zIV2 module.
- For a VLAN monitor, packets routed onto the monitored VLAN that originally arrived on a zIV2 module.

1. If the switch is at the CLI Operator level, use the `enable` command to enter the Manager level of the CLI.
2. Enter the following command to display the MAC address for each port on the switch:

```
Switch# walkmib ifPhysAddress
```



---

**NOTE:** The above command is not case-sensitive.

---

Beginning with switch software release 16.05, the configuration backup and restore without reboot supports the following features:

|                                                |                                                             |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| Interface Access (Telnet, Console/Serial, web) | Port Shutdown with Broadcast Storm                          |
| Access Control Lists (ACLs)                    | Source-Port Filters                                         |
| AAA Authentication                             | TACACS+ Authentication                                      |
| CoS (Class of Service)                         | Time Protocols (TimeP, SNTP)                                |
| Network Management Applications (SNMP)         | Uni-directional Link Detection (UDLD)                       |
| Port Configuration                             | Virus Throttling (Connection-Rate Filtering)                |
| Port Security                                  | Web-based Authentication                                    |
| Port-Based Access Control (802.1X)             | Backplane stacking                                          |
| Quality of Service (QoS)                       | Job Scheduler                                               |
| Spanning Tree (STP, RSTP, MSTP, RPVST+)        | Authorized IP Managers                                      |
| VLANs                                          | Authorized Manager List (Web, SSH, TFTP)                    |
| 802.1Q VLAN Tagging                            | Auto MDIX Configuration                                     |
| 802.1X Port-Based Priority                     | DHCP Configuration                                          |
| 802.1X Multiple Authenticated Clients Per Port | Flow Control (802.3x)                                       |
| IGMP                                           | Friendly Port Names                                         |
| LACP/Trunk                                     | Guaranteed Minimum Bandwidth (GMB)                          |
| MAC Lockdown                                   | IP Addressing                                               |
| MAC-based Authentication                       | IP Routing                                                  |
| MAC Lockout                                    | Jumbo Packets                                               |
| LMA                                            | LLDP                                                        |
| Multicast Filtering                            | LLDP-MED                                                    |
| Power over Ethernet (PoE and PoE+)             | Loop Protection                                             |
| Protocol Filters                               | MAC Address Management                                      |
| RADIUS Authentication and Accounting           | Management VLAN                                             |
| RADIUS-Based Configuration                     | Passwords and Password Clear Protection/include-credentials |

*Table Continued*



|                                                                |                                                    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| Encrypted-password                                             | QoS: Strict-Priority Queuing                       |
| Port Monitoring                                                | QoS: Turn on/off VLAN Precedence                   |
| Port Status                                                    | QoS: Egress Queue Rate-limiting                    |
| Rate-Limiting                                                  | CDP                                                |
| Syslog                                                         | System Parameters (hostname, Banner)               |
| System Information                                             | Front-panel-security                               |
| Telnet Access                                                  | DLDP                                               |
| Traffic/Security Filters                                       | OOBM                                               |
| VLAN Mirroring (1 static VLAN)/Port mirroring                  | Switch interconnect                                |
| Voice VLAN                                                     | Airwave Controller IP configuration                |
| Web Authentication RADIUS Support                              | Aruba Central integration                          |
| Web UI                                                         | Captive portal commands                            |
| Log IP address of an ACL match                                 | Consolidated Client View                           |
| access-list logtimer                                           | IPsec for Zero Touch Provisioning                  |
| UFD: Uplink Failure Detection                                  | Local User roles                                   |
| Wake-on-LAN for a Specific VLAN                                | Port QoS Trust Mode                                |
| WebUI Inactivity Timer                                         | Per-port Tunneled node                             |
| Control Plane Protection                                       | Zero-touch provisioning - DHCP, Activate           |
| Egress ACLs                                                    | ClearPass support                                  |
| Device profile - switch auto configuration                     | HTTP redirection/Captive portal                    |
| Device profile: Auto configuration with Aruba AP detection     | Device profile: LLDP Authentication Bypass with AP |
| Tunneled Node enhancement: fallback to switching               | RADIUS Port Speed VSA                              |
| Rogue AP isolation                                             | Dynamic ARP Protection                             |
| DHCP Option 82                                                 | Dynamic IP Lockdown                                |
| DHCP snooping                                                  | Eavesdrop Protection                               |
| Distributed Trunking                                           | GVRP                                               |
| RMON 1,2,3,9                                                   | Private VLANs                                      |
| SavePower Features                                             | IP SLA                                             |
| sFlow                                                          | sys-debug acl                                      |
| VxLAN                                                          | MAC Based VLANs (MBV)                              |
| Smartlink                                                      | RBAC: Role Based Access Control                    |
| Fault Finder extended to cover Flapping Transceiver Mitigation | RADIUS Service Tracking                            |
| Fault Finder (Per Port Enable)                                 | sys-debug destination                              |
| SNMP Trap Throttling                                           | Protocol VLANs                                     |